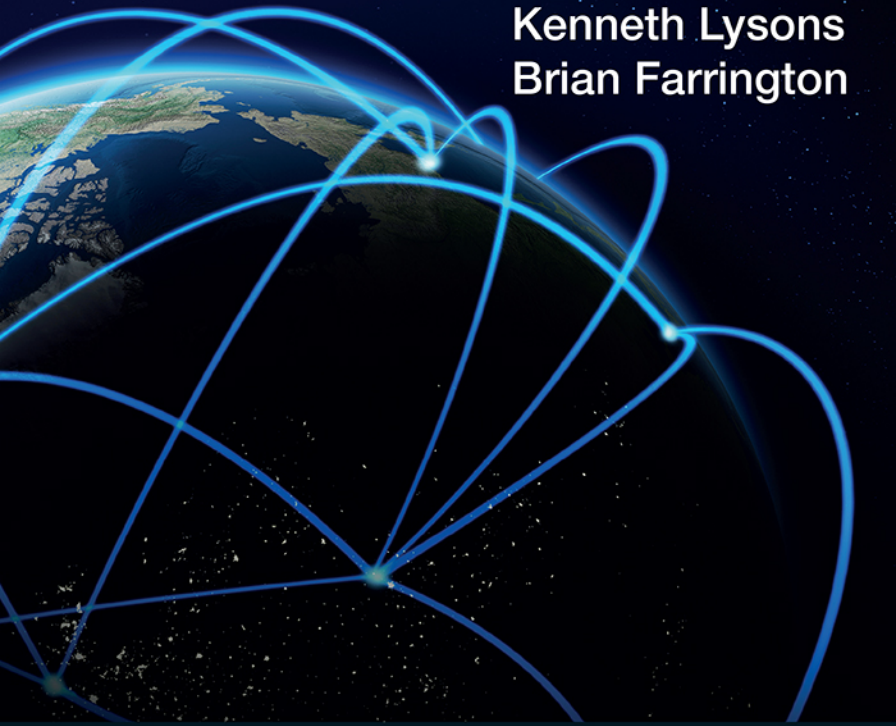
Ninth Edition

PROCUREMENT AND SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT

Kenneth Lysons
Brian Farrington



ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

Procurement and Supply Chain Management

PEARSON

At Pearson, we have a simple mission: to help people make more of their lives through learning.

We combine innovative learning technology with trusted content and educational expertise to provide engaging and effective learning experiences that serve people wherever and whenever they are learning.

From classroom to boardroom, our curriculum materials, digital learning tools and testing programmes help to educate millions of people worldwide - more than any other private enterprise.

Every day our work helps learning flourish, and wherever learning flourishes, so do people.

To learn more please visit us at **www.pearson.com/uk**

Ninth Edition

Procurement and Supply Chain Management

KENNETH LYSONS
MA, MEd, PhD, Dipl.PA, Ac.Dip.Ed.,
DMS, FCIS, FCIPS, FInst M, MILT

BRIAN FARRINGTON
BSc(Econ), MSc, PhD, FCIPS

PEARSON

Boston Columbus Hoboken Indianapolis New York San Francisco Amsterdam
Cape Town Dubai London Madrid Milan Munich Paris Montreal Toronto Delhi
Mexico City São Paulo Sydney Hong Kong Seoul Singapore Taipei Tokyo

Pearson Education Limited
Edinburgh Gate
Harlow CM20 2JE
United Kingdom
Tel: +44 (0)1279 623623

Web: www.pearson.com/uk

First published 1981 Macdonald & Evans Limited (print)
Second edition 1989 Longman Group UK Limited (print)
Third edition 1993 Longman Group UK Limited (print)
Fourth edition 1996 Pitman Publishing, a division of Pearson Professional Limited (print)
Fifth edition 2000 Pearson Education Limited (print)
Sixth edition 2003 Pearson Education Limited (print)
Seventh edition 2006 Pearson Education Limited (print)
Eighth edition 2012 Pearson Education Limited (print)
Ninth edition published 2016 (print and electronic)

© Macdonald & Evans Limited 1981 (print)
© Longman Group Limited 1989, 1993 (print)
© Pearson Professional Limited 1996 (print)
© Pearson Education Limited 2000, 2003 (print)
© Pearson Education Limited 2006, 2012, 2016 (print and electronic)

The rights of Kenneth Lysons and Brian Farrington to be identified as authors of this work have been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

The print publication is protected by copyright. Prior to any prohibited reproduction, storage in a retrieval system, distribution or transmission in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, recording or otherwise, permission should be obtained from the publisher or, where applicable, a licence permitting restricted copying in the United Kingdom should be obtained from the Copyright Licensing Agency Ltd, Barnard's Inn, 86 Fetter Lane, London EC4A 1EN.

The ePublication is protected by copyright and must not be copied, reproduced, transferred, distributed, leased, licensed or publicly performed or used in any way except as specifically permitted in writing by the publishers, as allowed under the terms and conditions under which it was purchased, or as strictly permitted by applicable copyright law. Any unauthorised distribution or use of this text may be a direct infringement of the authors' and the publisher's rights and those responsible may be liable in law accordingly.

All trademarks used herein are the property of their respective owners. The use of any trademark in this text does not vest in the author or publisher any trademark ownership rights in such trademarks, nor does the use of such trademarks imply any affiliation with or endorsement of this book by such owners.

Pearson Education is not responsible for the content of third-party internet sites.

ISBN: 978-1-292-08611-8 (print)
978-1-292-08614-9 (PDF)
978-1-292-17067-1 (eText)

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for the print edition is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Lysons, Kenneth, author. | Farrington, Brian, author.
Title: Procurement and supply chain management / Kenneth Lysons, MA, MEd, PhD, Dipl.PA, Ac.Dip.Ed., DMS, FCIS, FCIPS, FInst M, MILT, Brian Farrington, BSc(Econ), MSc, PhD, FCIPS.
Other titles: Purchasing and supply chain management.
Description: Ninth Edition. | New York : Pearson, 2016. | Revised edition of the authors' Purchasing and supply chain management, 2012.
Identifiers: LCCN 2016000880 (print) | LCCN 2016001151 (ebook) | ISBN 9781292086118 | ISBN 9781292086149 (PDF) | ISBN 9781292170671 (eText)
Subjects: LCSH: Purchasing. | Business logistics.
Classification: LCC HF5437 .L97 2016 (print) | LCC HF5437 (ebook) | DDC 658.7/2—dc23
LC record available at http://lccn.loc.gov/2016000880

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1
20 19 18 17 16

Print edition typeset in 10/12pt Goudy Old Style MT Pro by Lumina Datamatics, Inc.
Printed in Slovakia by Neografia

NOTE THAT ANY PAGE CROSS REFERENCES REFER TO THE PRINT EDITION

Brian Farrington dedicates this book to the memory of Kenneth Lysons, acknowledging all the support he had from his devoted wife, Audrey, and their family.

This book is also dedicated to:

Joyce
Joanne
Sandra
Suzanne
Claire
Jake
Lucy
Spencer

The support of Ray Gambell a colleague of Brian, with specific research is warmly acknowledged.

This page intentionally left blank

Contents

Preface xv
Acknowledgements xvii
Publisher's acknowledgements xviii
Plan of the book xx

Part 1 Introduction, strategy, logistics, supply chain, policies and procedures 1

1 The scope and influence of procurement 3

Learning outcomes 3
Key ideas 3
Introduction 4
1.1 How to define procurement 4
1.2 Strategic roles of procurement 5
1.3 Procurement as organisational buying 7
1.4 The evolution of purchasing through to procurement 9
1.5 Procurement and change 15
1.6 World-class procurement 16
1.7 The status of procurement and supply management (PSM) 18
1.8 Reflections on procurement positioning in business 25
Discussion questions 25
References 26

2 Strategic procurement 28

Learning outcomes 28
Key ideas 28
Introduction 29
2.1 Strategic thinking 30
2.2 What is strategy? 31
2.3 Strategy development 32
2.4 Levels of organisational strategy 36
2.5 Corporate strategy 37
2.6 Growth strategies 37
2.7 Business-level strategy 40
2.8 Strategic management 43
2.9 Strategic analysis 43
2.10 Important environmental factors 45
2.11 Internal scrutiny 49
2.12 Strategy formulation 50
2.13 The evaluation of alternative strategies 54
2.14 Strategy implementation 65
2.15 Post-implementation evaluation, control and review 69

2.16 Strategic procurement and supply chain process models 71
Discussion questions 75
References 76

3 Logistics and supply chains 78

Learning outcomes 78
Key ideas 78
Introduction 79
3.1 What is logistics? 79
3.2 Materials, logistics and distribution management 80
3.3 Reverse logistics 85
3.4 Supply chains 86
3.5 Supply chain management (SCM) 89
3.6 Supply chain vulnerability 94
3.7 SCM and logistics 95
3.8 Value chains 95
3.9 Value chain analysis 100
3.10 Supply chain optimisation 103
3.11 Supply chains and procurement 106
Discussion questions 109
References 110

4 Organisational and supply chain structures 112

Learning outcomes 112
Key ideas 112
Introduction 113
4.1 Organisational structures 113
4.2 New type organisations 121
4.3 Networks 122
4.4 Factors in configurations 129
4.5 Lean organisations 132
4.6 Agile organisations and production 135
4.7 Supply and value chain mapping 139
4.8 Types of change 143
4.9 Centralised procurement 146
4.10 Decentralised procurement 148
4.11 Cross-functional procurement 148
Discussion questions 151
References 152

5 Procurement policies, procedures and support tools 155

Learning outcomes 155
Key ideas 155
Introduction 155
5.1 Exemplar Procurement Policy – The Crossrail Project 156
5.2 Procurement procedures 159
5.3 Analysing a procurement process 161
5.4 E-commerce, e-business, e-SCM and e-procurement 161
5.5 The evolution of e-procurement models 165

5.6 Electronic data interchange (EDI) 165
5.7 E-hubs, exchanges, portals and marketplaces 171
5.8 E-catalogues 173
5.9 E-auctions 176
5.10 Reverse auctions 177
5.11 E-payment 182
5.12 Low-value purchases 183
5.13 Procurement manuals 185
5.14 Supplier manuals 187
Discussion questions 188
References 189

Part 2 Supplier relationships, legal & contractual management, quality management, sourcing, supplier selection, price management and long-term cost in use 191

6 Supplier relationships and partnering 193

Learning outcomes 193
Key ideas 193
Introduction 193
6.1 Relationship procurement and procurement relationships 194
6.2 The contrast between transactional and relationship procurement, taking account of contractual requirements 194
6.3 Collaborative business relationships 194
6.4 Relationship formation 197
6.5 Models of supplier relationships 199
6.6 Practical considerations of supplier relationship management 205
6.7 The termination of relationships 208
6.8 Relationship breakdown on an IT project 211
6.9 Further aspects of relationships 213
Discussion questions 213
References 214

7 Legal and contractual management 216

Learning outcomes 216
Key ideas 216
7.1 The procurement specialist and Contract Law 216
7.2 Offer and acceptance 217
7.3 Acceptance 219
7.4 Contracts for the Sale of Goods 221
7.5 Contract for the Supply of Services 222
7.6 Consideration 223
7.7 Capacity to Contract 224
7.8 Drafting the detail of contract clauses 226
7.9 Misrepresentation 227
7.10 The Right to terminate a contract 228
7.11 HOT TOPICS 230
7.12 Standard Forms of Contract 237
Discussion questions 239
References 239

8 Quality management, service and product innovation 241
Learning outcomes 241
Key ideas 241
8.1 What is quality? 242
8.2 Quality systems 244
8.3 The importance of TQM 244
8.4 Specifications 249
8.5 Alternatives to individual specifications 254
8.6 Standardisation 257
8.7 Variety reduction 262
8.8 Quality assurance and quality control 262
8.9 Tests for quality control and reliability 263
8.10 The cost of quality 275
8.11 Value management, engineering and analysis 276
Discussion questions 287
References 288

9 Matching supply with demand 290
Learning outcomes 290
Key ideas 290
9.1 Inventory, logistics and supply chain management 291
9.2 Reasons for keeping inventory 291
9.3 Inventory classifications 292
9.4 Scope and aims of inventory management 292
9.5 Some tools of inventory management 294
9.6 The economics of inventory 298
9.7 Inventory performance measures 299
9.8 Safety stocks and service levels 300
9.9 The right quantity 303
9.10 The nature of demand 304
9.11 Forecasting demand 304
9.12 'Push' and 'pull' inventories 310
9.13 Independent demand 311
9.14 Dependent demand 315
9.15 Just-in-time (JIT) 315
9.16 Materials and requirements planning (MRP) 322
9.17 Manufacturing resource planning (MRP II) 326
9.18 Enterprise resource planning (ERP) 327
9.19 Supply chain management systems 330
9.20 Distribution requirements planning (DRP) 330
9.21 Vendor-managed inventory (VMI) 332
9.22 Procurement and inventory 335
Discussion questions 335
References 337

10 Sourcing, supplier selection and performance management 338
Learning outcomes 338
Key ideas 338
10.1 What is sourcing? 339
10.2 The strategic sourcing process 339

10.3 Sourcing information 341
10.4 Analysis of market conditions 342
10.5 Directives 344
10.6 E-sourcing 345
10.7 Locating suppliers 346
10.8 Supplier assessment 347
10.9 Supplier approval 355
10.10 Evaluating supplier performance 356
10.11 Policy issues in sourcing 359
10.12 The supplier base 360
10.13 Outsourcing 361
10.14 Outsourcing manufacturing 362
10.15 Outsourcing services 367
10.16 Drivers of outsourcing 369
10.17 Types of outsourcing 369
10.18 Benefits of outsourcing 370
10.19 Problems of outsourcing 370
10.20 Handling an outsourcing project 371
10.21 Sub-contracting 373
10.22 Partnering 375
10.23 Intellectual property rights and secrecy 385
10.24 Procurement support for in-house marketing 386
10.25 Intra-company trading 387
10.26 Local suppliers 388
10.27 Procurement consortia 388
10.28 Sustainability 389
10.29 Sourcing decisions 390
10.30 Factors in deciding where to buy 392
Discussion questions 394
References 396

11 Purchase price management and long-term cost-in-use 398

Learning outcomes 398
Key ideas 398
11.1 What is price? 399
11.2 Strategic pricing – an introduction 399
11.3 The buyer's role in managing purchase prices 400
11.4 Supplier pricing decisions 411
11.5 The supplier's choice of pricing strategy 411
11.6 Price and cost analysis 413
11.7 Competition legislation 417
11.8 Collusive tendering 419
11.9 Price variation formulae 420
Discussion questions 422
References 424

Part 3 Project management and risk management, global sourcing, negotiation skills, contract management, category procurement, world-class procurement to enhance business performance 425

12 Project procurement and risk management 427

Learning outcomes 427
Key ideas 427
12.1 Introduction 428
12.2 The project lifecycle 428
12.3 PID and the project procurement strategy 433
12.4 Design and build 435
12.5 Role of procurement 436
12.6 PRINCE2® 436
12.7 Project management issues 438
12.8 Project risk management 439
12.9 Project procurement risk management 440
12.10 Project procurement management 447
Discussion questions 455
References 455

13 Global sourcing 457

Learning outcomes 457
Key ideas 457
13.1 Terminology 458
13.2 Motives for buying offshore 458
13.3 Sources of information for offshore suppliers 459
13.4 Overcoming challenges when sourcing off-shore 460
13.5 Incoterms® 467
13.6 Shipping terms 468
13.7 Customs and Excise 472
13.8 Transport systems, costs and considerations 473
13.9 Freight agents 475
13.10 Methods of payment 477
13.11 Countertrade 479
13.12 The true cost of offshore buying 482
13.13 Buying capital equipment offshore 482
13.14 Factors in successful offshore procurement 484
Discussion questions 485
References 485

14 Negotiation skills, practice and business benefits 487

Learning outcomes 487
Key ideas 487
Introduction 488
14.1 Approaches to negotiation 491
14.2 The content of negotiation 492
14.3 Factors in negotiation 495
14.4 The negotiation process 499

14.5 Pre-negotiation 500
14.6 The actual negotiation 506
14.7 Post-negotiation actions 511
14.8 What is effective negotiation? 512
14.9 Negotiation and relationships 512
14.10 Negotiation ethics 514
Discussion questions 518
References 519

15 Contract management 521

Learning outcomes 521
Key ideas 521
Introduction 522
15.1 The pre-contract award activities impact on contract management 522
15.2 The contract manager's role, skills and knowledge 523
15.3 Contract management plans 527
15.4 The contract management of specifications/standards 531
15.5 Managing contract performance 534
15.6 Social services contract monitoring audit 536
15.7 Contract management checklist 540
15.8 Contract provisions 541
15.9 Contract clauses and what they mean 542
Discussion questions 543
References 544

16 Category and commodity procurement 545

Learning outcomes 545
Key ideas 545
Introduction 546
16.1 Defining categories 546
16.2 Illustrations of category management issues 547
16.3 The talent challenge 549
16.4 Category management risk profiling 549
16.5 Category management – corporate travel 550
16.6 Category management – ICT 554
16.7 Capital investment procurement 556
16.8 Production materials 567
16.9 Raw materials 568
16.10 Futures dealing 569
16.11 Methods of commodity dealing 573
16.12 Procurement of non-domestic gas and electricity 577
16.13 Energy regulation 577
16.14 Energy supply chains in the UK 577
16.15 Markets 578
16.16 Pricing 579
16.17 Procuring energy contracts 580
16.18 Energy consultants and management 582
16.19 Component parts and assemblies 582
16.20 Procurement and consumables 583
16.21 Construction supplies and bills of quantities 584

16.22 Procurement of services 587
Discussion questions 592
References 593

17 World-class procurement to enhance business performance 594

Learning outcomes 594
Key ideas 594
17.1 Innovation and supplier continuous improvement 595
17.2 Innovation 596
17.3 Environmentally sensitive design 597
17.4 Procurement involvement in product development 599
17.5 Supplier development 599
17.6 Procurement research 603
17.7 Procurement performance evaluation 606
17.8 Accounting approaches 610
17.9 The procurement management audit approach 611
17.10 Benchmarking and ratios 616
17.11 Integrated benchmarking 617
17.12 Procurement ethics 619
17.13 Ethical issues relating to suppliers 621
17.14 Ethical codes of conduct 623
17.15 Procurement and fraud 627
17.16 Environmental aspects of procurement 631
Discussion questions 642
References 644

Appendix 1: Code of professional ethics – Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS) (Approved by the CIPS Council, 11 March 2009) 646

Appendix 2: Principles and standards of ethical supply management conduct (ISM) (Adopted May 2008) 648

Definitions, acronyms and foreign words and phrases 649

Index of names and organisations and some publications mentioned in the text 655

Subject Index 660

Supporting resources

Visit **www.pearsoned.co.uk/farrington** to find valuable online resources

For Instructors:

- Comprehensive Instructor's Manual containing teaching tips and notes on case studies for each chapter
- Downloadable PowerPoint slides containing figures from the book

For more information please contact your local Pearson Education sales representative or visit **www.pearsoned.co.uk/farrington**

Preface

Dr Brian Farrington is the author of the ninth edition of the acclaimed book, originally created by the late Dr Kenneth Lysons. The procurement profession continues to rise to national and international challenges, whilst at the same time contemplating its role in corporate matters. The global economy remains unstable. The private sector requires a competitive edge to survive. The public sector requires cost effective provision of services. The procurement and supply chain profession is in a unique position to help deliver these ideals.

The ninth edition has been reengineered to make the content of immediate benefit to students and practitioners alike. Accordingly, there are a number of important points to make.

1. The content reflects the emphasis of the Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS) education syllabus and modern world-class practice. There are innovative inputs, including contractual issues and hot topics, contract management and category management.
2. The content is informed by Dr Farrington's international research and real-life consultancy experiences in the private and public sectors. His experience spans many sectors, including automotive, aerospace, defence, shipbuilding, mining, airlines, financial services and government departments.
3. Some of the changes have been influenced by active contact with readers, practitioners and specialists in other functions, particularly legal, financial, audit and operations management.
4. The author is an active change agent and is professionally driven to enhance the reputation of procurement and supply chain performance. This new edition aims to be informative, challenging, thought provoking and a stimulus for further learning. The literature is increasing and that is welcome.
5. Case studies and CIPS examination questions are now provided at the end of the book. There are the author's discussion questions at the end of each chapter. This will assist tutors and learners to test their learning in a structured manner.

Finally, to procurement and supply chain practitioners, there is a wealth of reference material designed to enable specific research to be undertaken in specialist areas.

This page intentionally left blank

Acknowledgements

Brian Farrington is indebted to many organisations and people who gave their valuable time and support in the preparation of this book. They know who they are and how much it is appreciated.

Sandra Small has pride of place in my acknowledgements. She has coped superbly well with an author reengineering a book, the management of tight timescales and supporting the extensive research. Her attention to detail and diligence in all facets of her tasks is beyond reproach.

Joyce, my wife, continues to provide unstinting support and tolerates my selfish desire to work all hours of the day and night. Without this support there would not be a book!

Caitlin Lisle at Pearson has given me the expert guidance and advice needed for a project of this type. The quality of the book would not have been possible within the timescale without Caitlin's help.

Finally, my thanks go to CIPS for their permission to include their case studies and examinations questions in this ninth edition.

Publisher's acknowledgements

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:

Figures

Figures 1.3, 1.4 from *Improving Purchase Performance*, Pitman (Syson, R. 1992) pp. 254–5; Figure 2.5 adapted from *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analysing, Industries and Competitors*, Macmillan (Porter, M. 1980), With the permission of The Free Press, a Division of Simon & Schuster, Inc. Copyright © 1980. All rights reserved; Figure 2.10 adapted from Purchasing must become supply management, *Harvard Business Review*, Sept/Oct, pp. 109–17 (Kraljic, P. 1983), Reprinted by permission of Harvard Business Review. Copyright © 1983 by the Harvard Business School Publishing Corporation. All rights reserved; Figure 2.14 from Rob Atkins and Bracknell Forest (UK) Borough Council; Figures 2.16, 2.17, 2.18 adapted from http://www.cips.org/Documents/Resources/PSM_model_Feb03.pdf; Figure 3.11 adapted from Supply chain management: implementation, issues and research opportunities, *The International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol 9(2), p. 2 (Lambert, D.M., Cooper, M.C. and Pagh, J.D. 1992); Figure 3.15 adapted from Integrated materials management: the value chain redefined, *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol 4(1), pp.13–22 (Hines, P. 1993); Figures 3.16, 3.17 from Bourton Group, *Half delivered: a survey of strategies and tactics in managing the supply chain in manufacturing businesses*, 1997, pp. 26–7; Figure 4.7 from *Industrial Technological Development: A Network Approach*, Croom Helm (Hakansson, H. 1987); Figure 4.8 adapted from Managing 21st century network organisations, *Organizational Dynamics*, Vol 20(3), pp. 5, 20 (Snow, C.C., Miles, R.E. and Coleman, H.J. 1992); Figure 4.9 from New organizational forms for competing in highly dynamic environments, *British Journal of Management*, Vol 7, pp. 203–18 (Craven, D.W., Piercy, N.F. and Shipp, S.H. 1996), Reproduced with permission of Blackwell Scientific via Copyright Clearance Center; Figure 5.7 from *The e-Business Study*, ACTIVE Secretariat (2000) p. 20; Figure 5.10 from *The CIPS E-procurement guidelines: measuring the benefits*, CIPS; Figure 6.1 adapted from Regional competence and strategic procurement management *European Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, Vol 2(1), pp. 386–405 (Cox. A. 1996); Figure 14.4 adapted from *Marketing by Agreement: A Cross-cultural Approach to Business Negotiations*, Wiley (McCall, J. M., and Norrington, M. B. 1986), Reproduced with permission of Blackwell Scientific via Copyright Clearance Center; Figure 14.5 adapted from Effect of delivery systems on collaborative negotiations for large-scale infrastructure projects, *Journal of Management in Engineering*, April 2001, pp. 105–21 (Pena-Mora, F., and Tamaki, T.); Figure 14.8 adapted from *Breaking the Impasse*, Basic Books (Susskind, L. and Cruikshank, J. 1987).

Tables

Table 1.2 adapted from Procurement: a competitive weapon, *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol 24 (3), pp. 2–8 (Reck, R. F. and Long, B. 1998); Table 1.3 from Procurement: a competitive weapon, *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol 24(3), pp. 2–8 (Reck, R. F. and Long, B. 1998); Table 4.2 from An initial classification of supply networks, *International Journal of Operations and Production*

Management, Vol 20(6) (Lamming, R., Johnsen, T., Zheng, J. and Harland, C. 2000); Table 4.3 from A taxonomy of supply networks, *Journal of Supply Chain Management*, Vol 37(4), pp. 21–7 (Harland, C., Lamming, R.C., Zheng, J. and Johnsen, T.E. 2001), Reproduced with permission of Blackwell Scientific via Copyright Clearance Center; Table 4.4 from New organizational forms for competing in highly dynamic environments, *British Journal of Management*, Vol 7, pp. 203–18 (Craven, D.W., Piercy, N.F. and Shipp, S.H. 1996), Reproduced with permission of Blackwell Scientific via Copyright Clearance Center.

Plan of the book

Part 1 **Introduction, strategy, logistics, supply chain, policies and procedures**				
Chapter 1 The scope and influence of procurement	Chapter 2 Strategic procurement	Chapter 3 Logistics and supply chains	Chapter 4 Organisational and supply chain structures	Chapter 5 Procurement policies, procedures and support tools

Part 2 **Supplier relationships, legal & contractual management, quality management, sourcing, supplier selection, price management and long-term cost in use**					
Chapter 6 Supplier relationships and partnering	Chapter 7 Legal and contractual management	Chapter 8 Quality management, service and product innovation	Chapter 9 Matching supply with demand	Chapter 10 Sourcing, supplier selection and performance management	Chapter 11 Purchase price management and long-term cost-in-use

Part 3 **Project management and risk management, global sourcing, negotiation skills, contract management, category procurement, world-class procurement to enhance business performance**					
Chapter 12 Project procurement and risk management	Chapter 13 Global sourcing	Chapter 14 Negotiation skills, practice and business benefits	Chapter 15 Contract management	Chapter 16 Category and commodity procurement	Chapter 17 World-class procurement to enhance business performance

Part 1

Introduction, strategy, logistics, supply chain, policies and procedures

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 1

The scope and influence of procurement

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- the scope and influence of procurement
- the stages of procurement development and future trends in procurement development
- factors influencing the internal and external status of procurement
- the strategic dimensions of procurement
- demands for change in the strategic business role of procurement
- characteristics of world-class procurement
- future challenges for procurement.

Key ideas

- Procurement as a function, process, supply or value chain link, a relationship, discipline and profession.
- Definitions of purchasing and procurement.
- The evolution of procurement and supply management (PSM) from a reactive transactional to a proactive strategic activity.
- Globalisation, information technology, changing production and management philosophies as factors in the evolution of procurement.
- Characteristics of world-class procurement.
- Leverage, focus and professionalism as factors contributing to the status of procurement within an organisation.
- Procurement as a business change agent.
- Procurement as a key influencer on business decisions.

Introduction

The first edition of this book was published in 1981. The ninth edition is published in 2016. The fact that thirty five years has passed warrants reflection on the scope and influence of procurement. The optimist will assert that:

- procurement is a profession in its own right
- procurement has visibility at a corporate level
- procurement offers an excellent career choice
- procurement directly impacts on corporate performance
- academic standards have dramatically improved
- chartered status of the Institute of Procurement and Supply exerts world-wide influence.

The pessimist will assert that:

- there is little intellectual context to procurement
- there is no requirement for continuous learning
- there is too much emphasis on price
- in many organisations, procurement is not a respected activity
- insufficient attention is given to risk management and mitigation strategies
- procurement is not an active contributor to corporate strategic planning.

The emphasis of this edition is procurement, although other terms for the function are in widespread use throughout the world.

The author believes, passionately, that procurement has achieved high standards but has far to go in the corporate world. A key purpose of this book is to inform and motivate you the reader. We want to make them inquisitive and aspire to the highest standards.

1.1 How to define procurement

CIPS Australia[1] motivated a debate on an agreed procurement lexicon. The following statements were proposed:

> Procurement is the business management function that ensures identification, sourcing, access and management of the external resources that an organisation needs or may need to fulfil its strategic objectives.
>
> Procurement exists to explore supply market opportunities and to implement resourcing strategies that deliver the best possible supply outcome to the organisation, its stakeholders and customers.
>
> Procurement applies the science and art of external resource and supply management through a body of knowledge interpreted by competent practitioners and professionals.

When CIPSA set out to identify the key issues for Australian procurement professionals they undertook a survey of those active in the profession. In summary they concluded,

> The survey responses indicate that there is a wide variation in the intended meaning of the terms we use. Many are used interchangeably, even loosely, by some, but have specific meanings to others. The word 'purchasing' is a good example. It can be an all-encompassing term synonymous with 'supply management' and 'procurement' or it can indicate just one step in a

much-bigger process. Such variation is of concern as it could lead to miscommunication and hinder the development and sharing of our body of knowledge. A concern, at the most fundamental level, is that unless we can describe what we do and demonstrate our success to our stakeholders we cannot win their recognition and support.

The author provides two more definitions of procurement.

> Procurement is a pro-active, strategic corporate activity to ensure a continuing supply of goods and services to enable world-class organisational performance.
>
> Procurement manages supply chain risks through the effective negotiation of contracts, cost and price models, quality and other essential supply characteristics.

1.2 Strategic roles of procurement

There are unquestionable operational and tactical roles of procurement, such as agreeing the price; placing purchase orders; attending meetings; chasing overdue deliveries; handling stakeholder queries and handling order acknowledgements. These are all necessary roles but they fail to highlight any strategic dimension. The strategic facets are notably absent from some of the literature.

1.2.1 Due diligence

Due diligence is a structured methodology to help determine that a supplier has the necessary qualities to become a partner of the buying organisation. The term 'due diligence' is more usually associated with financial reviews in takeover situations. Within a procurement context it includes consideration of the supplier's:

- financial robustness, including working capital
- competence and availability of key resources
- reliance and extent of sub-contracting
- history of legal disputes and litigious actions
- experience of partnering relationships
- existence of a robust five-year business plan
- history of insurance claims
- IT system robustness.

Conducting due diligence is a far more demanding task than reading responses to a Pre-Qualification Questionnaire. It requires probing beyond a superficial scrutiny of written answers to questions.

1.2.2 Risk Management of the supply chain

Identifying supply chain risks and developing acceptable risk mitigation strategies is a hallmark of a strategically focused procurement operation. All supply chain risks fall into one of three categories:

1. Those risks that only the supplier can manage
2. Those risks that only the buying organisation can manage
3. Those risks that must be jointly managed by the supplier and the buying organisation.

Examples of risks that fall into category 1 are:

- Having a robust business continuity plan
- Ability to match resource planning to programme deliverables
- Contractual relationships with sub-contractors
- Design, inspection and testing
- Having available sufficient working capital
- Through life product support.

1.2.3 Relationship management

The adversarial approach to business life is an outdated concept, a fact that some procurement specialists should realise. The skill of managing relationships with strategic suppliers necessitates attention to, for example:

- conducting regular blame free reviews of contract performance
- a joint commitment to continuous improvement
- sharing long-term business goals
- active involvement of senior people at both organisations
- negotiations based on genuine business objectives
- provision of accurate and timely business and contract management data.

1.2.4 Continuous improvement of supplier performance

All sectors of the economy have competitive challenges, sometimes from off shore organisations. The procurement community has a strategic role to motivate suppliers to continually improve their performance. The performance on long-term contracts can be incentivised to reward the supplier's investment and initiatives. The contract can require continuous improvement as an obligation. In some situations the buying organisation may jointly invest in new technology, providing the supplier agrees to appropriate ownership of intellectual property and perhaps licensing upon payment of a royalty on sales.

1.2.5 The supplier's investment in 'right first time'

An organisation's reputation for quality is a prime business asset. The law courts regularly try cases where non-compliance with the specification is at issue. Suppliers have expert knowledge, or should have, of the goods or services they provide. The supplier can add value to a procurement by ensuring that the specified quality is satisfied or exceeded. The supplier can also advise on through life costs, maintenance support, inspection and testing and continuous improvement. When the procurement specialist is engaged in pre-qualification processes, there should be a penetrating analysis of the bidder's quality management attributes.

1.2.6 The supplier's investment in inventory

The rapid business approach to Just-in-Time has focused attention on who pays for inventory in the supply chain pipeline. Buying organisations are naïve to believe this is a

'free of charge' service, willingly entered into by the supplier. There are costs involved, including strategic warehousing facilities, distribution network costs, danger of product changes, working capital costs and so on. The concept of consignment stock is a proven concept in manufacturing, with some suppliers very adept at completely satisfying the buyer's needs for production line side stock.

1.2.7 The supplier's investment in procurement expertise

It is a strange phenomenon that when buyers visit potential suppliers they often fail to probe the supplier's investment in procurement expertise. When the author engages with clients engaged in a tendering exercise and the supplier makes a presentation, it is most unlikely that there will be a procurement specialist on their team. Why? It can only be concluded that their procurement operation is not seen as contributing to their competitive edge.

1.3 Procurement as organisational buying

Organisational buyers have been defined by Marrian[2] as:

> Those buyers of goods and services for the specific purpose of industrial or agricultural production or for use in the operation or conduct of a plant, business, institution, profession or service.

Organisational buyers are therefore those who buy on behalf of an organisation rather than for individual or family use or consumption. As shown in Table 1.1, organisational buyers can be considered to belong to one of four buying groups, each of which can be further subdivided.

Some of the categories in Table 1.1 may overlap. In the National Health Service, for instance, some supplies may be bought centrally by government agencies, regionally by health authorities and locally by hospitals themselves.

Table 1.1 A typology of organisational buyers

Types of organisation	*Characteristics*	*Examples*
Industrial/producer organisations	Purchase of goods and services for some tangible production and commercially significant purpose	Manufacturers: primary (extractive) producers – agriculture, forestry, fishing, horticulture, mining
Intermediate organisations	Purchase of goods and services for resale or for facilitating the resale of other goods in the industrial or ultimate consumer markets	Distributors, dealers, wholesalers, retailers, banks, hotels and service traders
Government and public-sector organisations	Purchase of goods and services for resale or use by organisations providing a service, often tangible, and not always commercially significant at national, regional and local levels	Central and local government, public utilities
Institutions	Purchase of goods and services for institutions that buy independently on their own behalf	Schools, colleges, hospitals, voluntary organisations

1.3.1 Procurement as supplier management

Supplier management may be defined as:

> That aspect of procurement concerned with rationalising the supplier base and selecting, coordinating, appraising the performance of and developing the potential of suppliers and, where appropriate, building long-term collaborative relationships.

Supplier management is a more strategic and cross-functional activity than 'buying', which is transactionally and commercially biased. The relationship between procurement, purchasing and supplier management is shown in Figure 1.1.

1.3.2 Purchasing as external resource management

The following is the view of Lamming:[3]

> The new strategic function will probably not be called purchasing – that is much too limited a word. The connotations of purse strings and spending money have no relevance to the setting up and management of strategic interfirm relationships. This task is concerned with ensuring the correct external resources are in place to complement the internal resources. Perhaps 'external resource managers' is a term that future purchasing managers will adopt.

Lamming's view, expressed in 1985, has literally come to pass. The emphasis is now on procurement.

Figure 1.1 The relationship between procurement, supplier management and purchasing



1.4 The evolution of purchasing through to procurement

Procurement represents a stage in the evolution of civilised human relationships as it enables a desired object to be obtained by trading rather than conquest, plunder or confiscation. It is a very ancient activity. A cuneiform clay tablet excavated at Ras Shamra, northern Syria, dated about 2800 BC, carries an inscription that, roughly translated, reads:

> HST to deliver 50 jars of fragrant smooth oil each 15 days after [a starting date] and during the reign of AS. In return he will be paid 600 small weight in grain. This order will continue indefinitely until the purchaser or his son removes his consent.

The evolution of purchasing and procurement can be analysed in seven periods.

Period 1: The early years (1850–1900)

Some observers define the early years of procurement history as beginning after 1850. Evidence exists, however, that the procurement function received attention before this date. Charles Babbage's book on the economy of machinery and manufacturers, published in 1832, referred to the importance of the procurement function. Babbage also alluded to a 'materials man' responsible for several different functions. Babbage wrote that a central officer responsible for operating mines was 'a materials man who selects, purchases, receives, and delivers all articles required'.

The greatest interest in and development of procurement during the early years occurred after the 1850s – a period that witnessed the growth of the American railroad. By 1866, the Pennsylvania Railroad had given the procurement function departmental status, under the title of Supplying Department. A few years later, the head procurement agent at the Pennsylvania Railroad reported directly to the president of the railroad. The procurement function was such a major contributor to the performance of the organisation that the chief procurement manager had top managerial status.

The comptroller of the Chicago and North Western Railroad wrote the first book exclusively about the procurement function, *The Handling of Railway Supplies – Their Purchase and Disposition*, in 1887. He discussed procurement issues that are still critical today, including the need for technical expertise in procurement agents along with the need to centralise the procurement department under one individual. The author also commented on the lack of attention given to the selection of personnel to fill the position of procurement agent.

Period 2: Growth of procurement fundamentals (1900–1939)

The second period of procurement evolution began around the turn of the twentieth century and lasted until the beginning of the Second World War. Articles specifically addressing the industrial procurement function began appearing with increasing regularity outside the railroad trade journals. Engineering magazines in particular focused attention on the need for qualified procurement personnel and the development of material specifications.

Procurement gained importance during the First World War because of its role in obtaining vital war materials. This was due largely to procurement's central focus of raw material procurement during this era (versus buying finished or semi-finished goods). Ironically, the years during the First World War featured no publication of any major procurement books. Harold T. Lewis, a respected procurement professional during the 1930s through the 1950s, noted that there was considerable doubt about the existence of any general recognition of procurement as being important to a company. Lewis noted that from the First World War to 1945, at least a gradual if uneven recognition developed of the importance of sound procurement to company operation.

Period 3: The war years (1940–1946)

The Second World War introduced a new period in procurement history. The emphasis on obtaining required (and scarce) materials during the war influenced a growth in procurement interest. In 1933 only nine colleges offered courses related to procurement. By 1945, this number had increased to 49 colleges. The membership of the National Association of Procurement Agents increased from 3,400 in 1934 to 5,500 in 1940 to 9,400 in the autumn of 1945. A study conducted during this period revealed that 76 per cent of all purchase requisitions contained no specifications or stipulation of brand. This suggested that other departments within the firm recognised the role of the procurement agent in determining sources of supply.

Period 4: The quiet years (1947–mid-1960s)

The heightened awareness of procurement that existed during the Second World War did not carry over to the post-war years. John A. Hill, a noted procurement professional, commented about the state of procurement during this period:

> For many firms, purchases were simply an inescapable cost of doing business which no one could do much about. So far as the length and breadth of American industry is concerned, the procurement function has not yet received in full measure the attention and emphasis it deserves.

Articles began appearing during this period describing the practices of various companies using staff members to collect analyse and present data for procurement decisions. Ford Motor Company was one of the first private organisations to establish a commodity research department to provide short-term commodity information. Ford also created a purchase analysis department to give buyers assistance on product and price analysis.

Period 5: Materials management comes of age (mid-1960s–late 1970s)

The mid-1960s witnessed a dramatic growth of the materials management concept. Although interest in materials management grew during this period, the historical origins of the concept date back to the 1800s. Organising under the materials management concept was common during the latter half of the nineteenth century in the US railroads. The combined related functions such as procurement, inventory control, receiving and stores were under the authority of one individual.

The behaviour of procurement during this period was notable. Procurement managers emphasised multiple sourcing through competitive bid pricing and rarely viewed the supplier as a value-added partner. Buyers maintained arm's-length relationships with suppliers. Price competition was the major factor determining supply contracts. The procurement strategies and behaviours that evolved over the last half-century were inadequate when the severe economic recession of the early 1980s and the emergence of foreign global competitors occurred.

Period 6: The global era (late 1970s–1999)

The global era, and its effect on the importance, structure and behaviour of procurement, have already proved different from other historical periods. These differences include the following:

- Never in our industry history had competition become so intense so quickly.
- Global firms increasingly captured world market share from domestic US companies, and emphasised different strategies, organisational structures and management techniques compared with their American counterparts.

- The spread and rate of technology change during this period was unprecedented, with product lifecycles becoming shorter.
- The ability to coordinate worldwide procurement activity by using international data networks and the World Wide Web (via Intranets) emerged.

This intensely competitive period witnessed the growth of supply chain management. Now, more than ever, firms began to take a more coordinated view of managing the flow of goods, services, funds and information from suppliers through end customers.

Managers began to view supply chain management as a way to satisfy intense cost and other improvement pressures.

Period 7: Integrated supply chain management (beyond 2000)

Procurement and supply chain management today reflects a growing emphasis concerning the strategic business importance of suppliers. Supplier relationships are gradually shifting from an adversarial approach to a more cooperative approach with selected suppliers. The activities that the modern procurement organisation must undertake require a different mindset than that traditionally adopted. Supplier development, partnering, supplier-design involvement, the use of full-service suppliers, lifecycle costing, long-term supplier contracts and relationships, strategic cost management, and integrated Internet linkages and shared databases are now seen as ways to create new value within the supply chain. Procurement is attracting high-quality people who aspire to senior business positions once they have established their credibility in dealing with challenging procurement scenarios.

It is possible to reach three conclusions about this new era. First, the reshaping of the role of procurement in the modern economy has been necessary in response to the challenges presented by worldwide competition and rapidly changing technology and customer expectations. Second, the overall impact of the procurement function is increasing, particularly for firms that compete in business environments characterised by worldwide competition and rapid change. Third, procurement must continue to become more sensitive to, and integrated with customer requirements, as well as with operations, logistics, human resources, finance, accounting, marketing, and information systems. This evolution will take time to occur fully, but the integration is inevitable.

The above has been adapted from an article in *Solar Energy Market Express*.[4] For a more detailed exposition of professional development and published literature Fearon[5] details it in his historical evolution of the procurement function.

Reck and Long[6] have identified four strategic stages of development that procurement must pass through to become a competitive weapon in the battle for markets (see Table 1.2).

Reck and Long[7] also identify the effect at each of the four stages of 12 non-operational development variables, as shown in Table 1.3.

Other attempts to trace the evolution of procurement are those of Syson[8] and Morris and Calantone[9] who each identify three stages. Syson refers to 'the changing focus of procurement as it evolves from a purely clerical routine activity to a commercial stage in which the emphasis is on cost savings and finally a proactive strategic function concerned with materials or logistics management'. Morris and Calantone differentiate between (i) clerical, (ii) 'asset management' and profitability and (iii) 'core-strategic' function stages.

Jones,[10] however, criticises the above approaches on two grounds. First, they are non-operational and merely indicate the stage of development of procurement activity, the criteria for which may differ from one procurement organisation to another. Second, the models have a restricted number of development measurement variables. In an attempt to remedy those deficiencies Jones suggests a five-stage development model using 18 measurement criteria. The five stages of procurement development measured on a scale of 1–5 are shown in Table 1.4.

The procurement profile shown in Figure 1.2 enables the stage of development reached by a particular organisation to be identified and assessed on a scale of 1–5. The profile also indicates areas where further development is required, as measured in the 18 criteria shown in Figure 1.2. Appropriate strategies to meet identified shortcomings can then be devised.

Table 1.2 Strategic stages of the development of a procurement function

Stage	*Definition and characteristics*	
Stage 1 Passive	Definition	Purchasing function has no strategic direction and primarily reacts to the requests of other functions
	Characteristics	■ High proportion of time on quick-fix routine operations ■ Functional and individual communications due to purchasing's low visibility ■ Supplier selection based on price and availability
Stage 2 Independent	Definition	Purchasing function adopts the latest procurement techniques and processes, but its strategic direction is independent of the firm's competitive strategy
	Characteristics	■ Performance based primarily on cost reduction and efficiency disciplines ■ Coordination links are established between procurement and technical disciplines ■ Top management recognises the importance of professional development Top management recognises the opportunities in purchasing for contribution to profitability
Stage 3 Supportive	Definition	The purchasing function supports the firm's competitive strategy by adopting purchasing techniques and products, which strengthen the firm's competitive position
	Characteristics	■ Purchasers are included in sales proposal teams ■ Suppliers are considered a resource, with emphasis on experience, motivation and attitude ■ Markets, products and suppliers are continuously monitored and analysed
Stage 4 Integrative	Definition	Purchasing's strategy is fully integrated into the firm's competitive strategy and constitutes part of an integrated effort among functional peers to formulate and implement a strategic plan
	Characteristics	■ Cross-functional training of purchasing professionals and executives is made available ■ Permanent lines of communication are established with other functional areas ■ Professional development focuses on strategic elements of the competitive strategy ■ Purchasing performance is measured in terms of contribution to the firm's success

Source: Adapted from Reck, R. F. and Long, B., 'Purchasing: a competitive weapon', *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol. 24, No. 3, 1998, pp. 2–8

Table 1.3 Stage characteristics – Reck and Long's development model

Characteristics (variable)	*Passive*	*Independent*	*Supportive*	*Integrative*
Nature of long-range planning	None	Commodity or procedural	Supportive of strategy	Integral part of strategy
Impetus for change	Management demands	Competitive parity	Competitive strategy	Integrative management
Career advancement	Limited	Possible	Probable	Unlimited
Evaluation based on	Complaints	Cost reduction and supplier performance	Competitive objectives	Strategic contribution
Organisational visibility	Low	Limited	Variable	High
Computer systems focus	Repetitive	Techniques	Specific to concern	Needs of concern
Sources of new ideas	Trial and error	Current purchasing practices	Competitive strategy	Inter-functional information exchange
Basis of resource availability	Limited	Arbitrary/affordable	Objectives	Strategic requirements
Basis of supplier evaluation	Price and easy availability	Least total cost	Competitive objectives	Strategic contributions
Attitude towards suppliers	Adversarial	Variable	Company resource	Mutual interdependence
Professional development focus	Deemed unnecessary	Current new practices	Elements of strategy	Cross-functional understanding
Overall characteristics	Clerical function	Functional efficiency	Strategic facilitator	Strategic contributor

Table 1.4 Procurement development stages and performance capabilities

Stage of development	*Capabilities*	*Estimated organisational contribution*
Stage 1 Infant	Fragmented purchasing	None or low
Stage 2 Awakening	Realisation of savings potential	Clerical efficiency. Small savings via consolidation 2–5 per cent
Stage 3 Developing	Control and development of purchasing price/negotiation capabilities	Cost reduction 5–10 per cent
Stage 4 Mature	80/20 recognised Specialist buyers Cost reductions Commencement of supplier base management	Cost reduction 10–20 per cent Acquisition costs 1–10 per cent
Stage 5 Advanced	Devolution of purchasing Strong central control Supply chain management	Cost reduction 25 per cent Cost of ownership Acquisition cost and supply chain management 30 per cent + Leverage buying Global sourcing Understanding and practice of acquisition cost and cost of ownership

Figure 1.2 Purchasing profile analysis

Measurement area	Stage of development				
	1 Infant	2 Awakening	3 Developing	4 Mature	5 Advanced
Activity breakdown analysis					
Purchasing organisational structure					
Purchasing services					
Function position in the business					
Extent of training/ development of buyer					
Relative remuneration levels					
Measurement of purchasing performance					
Standard of information systems					
Computer technology					
Standard of operating procedures					
Interface development (buying centre)					
Buying process involvement					
Buyer characteristics/ development					
Degree of purchasing specialism					
Supplier interface development					
Policy on ethics					
Hospitality					
Quality of buyer–supplier relationship					

1.5 Procurement and change

There are a number of drivers influencing and demanding changes in procurement, including those detailed in the following sections.

1.5.1 The challenge to manage escalating costs in purchasing goods and services

In the twenty-first century a number of pressures on costs manifested themselves. Not the least of these has been the volatility in the cost of oil, feeding its way into most supply chain costs. The continuing escalation of acts of terrorism, culture tensions, displacement of people from Africa and the Middle East, tensions in the EU, all impact on costs and economic confidence. The related impact on the cost of living and consequent demands for wage increases are signs of potentially troubling times. The traditional emerging economies supplying, for example, the retail sector cannot escape the pressure on costs, noting that this sector has significant cost pressures. Adding to all this is the impact of difficulties in the financial services sector, making the cost and availability of capital a factor in investment decisions and availability of working capital.

1.5.2 The public sector focus on driving out inefficiencies in public expenditure

Some of the greatest changes in procurement in the 1990s and early in the twenty-first century have been in public expenditure. The large amounts of spend in central and local government have often been tackled through the aggregation of requirements. While significant improvements in procurement have been made there remain challenges to further improve value for money. It can be postulated that procurement will have to adapt across departmental boundaries and the classic silos of procurement will have to be abolished.

1.5.3 The increasing trend to outsource manufacture and services

There has been a rapidly growing trend to outsource a wide range of manufacturing and service delivery. This trend has challenged procurement departments to improve their management of tender processes, due diligence, negotiation with different cultures, managing outsourced contracts and applying open book methodologies. Procurement is not immune from outsourcing actions.

1.5.4 The recognition that procurement is a significant contributor to corporate efficiency

Enlightened organisations have recognised that procurement can contribute to corporate efficiency. An example is long-range business planning which requires input on long-range costs, availability of strategic materials and supplies, supply chain developments and trends in service delivery; for example, voice recognition technology as an anti-fraud measure.

1.5.5 The positive impact of global sourcing

It may be argued that the retail sector has a long-standing expertise in global sourcing and coping with long-range supply issues. Their challenge includes responding to fashion changes and a cycle of product selection for the seasons of the year. The challenge for other buyers is their ability to find excellent suppliers wherever they are in the world. International airlines have used global sources to provide equipment and services. The challenges for procurement include how to structure their organisation. It is not uncommon for retailers to set up a buying organisation in the Far East.

1.5.6 The enhanced use of information technology and e-procurement

The IT revolution has impacted on procurement. What developments lie ahead? The drivers for change in procurement must surely include the objective of eradicating paper. In one procurement process each tender document weighed in excess of six kilograms. The resultant tenders were heavier! Secure networks that facilitate a whole electronic procurement system, through to payment, is a far reaching objective for the global economy. E-procurement is in its relative infancy with relatively few reverse auctions, electronic tendering and knowledge storage and gathering strategies.

1.5.7 The redressing of procurement power

Many suppliers have grown by acquisition and have assumed to themselves a power that has affected buyer's pricing, output allocation and other restrictive practices. The procurement profession has been relatively unsuccessful in countering this power; for example, by forming effective buying clubs, although the public sector has taken significant initiatives in setting up consortia.

1.5.8 The challenge to outdated traditional practices

It is always difficult to look within. The procurement profession itself must challenge outdated traditional practices. A move from transactional operations to strategic activities would be desirable in many organisations. Defensive posturing that involves keeping stakeholders in the dark by denying them access to information; for example, the status of tendering processes is unprofessional. An effective challenge to traditional practices would be useful in the construction sector where quantity surveyors handle the complete procurement cycle to the total-exclusion of procurement specialists.

1.6 World-class procurement

The term 'world class' was popularised by the book *World Class Manufacturing* by Schonberger[11] published in 1986. Schonberger defined world-class manufacturing as analogous to the Olympic motto 'citius, altius, fortius' (translated as faster, higher, stronger). The world-class manufacturing equivalent is continual and rapid improvement.

Twelve characteristics of world-class supplier management were identified by the Center for Advanced Procurement Studies,[12] namely the following:

- *Commitment to total quality management (TQM).*
- *Commitment to just-in-time (JIT).*
- *Commitment to total cycle time reduction.*
- *Long-range strategic plans* that are multidimensional and fully integrated with the overall corporate plan, including the organisation's supply strategy, and related to customers' needs.
- *Supplier relationships*, including networks, partnerships and alliances. Relationships include such matters as supply base rationalisation and the segmentation of suppliers as 'strategic', 'preferred' and 'arm's length'. Relationships with strategic suppliers include a high level of trust, shared risks and rewards, sharing of data and supplier involvement in product improvement.
- *Strategic cost management* – this involves a total life acquisition approach to evaluating bids and the use of IT to support a paperless and seamless procurement process across the whole supply chain.
- *Performance measurements*, including regular benchmarking with and across industries. Performance measures are developed in consultation with customers, other organisational units and suppliers.
- *Training and professional development*, including identification of required skills for higher-level procurement posts and the maintenance of employee skills inventories.
- *Service excellence* – procurement is proactive, anticipates customers' needs and demonstrates flexibility.
- *Corporate social responsibility*, especially regarding ethical, environmental and safety issues and support of local suppliers.
- *Learning* – world-class procurement recognises that learning and education are critical factors in continuous improvement.
- *Management and leadership* – although listed last, this is probably the key factor. Procurement executives earn and enjoy top management support and recognise the importance of transformational change. Such leaders have vision, foster open communications, treat others with respect and develop the potential of both their staff and suppliers.

Ultimately, world-class procurement depends on trading with world-class suppliers. World-class suppliers will tend to mirror the characteristics of world-class procurement listed above. Research reported by Minahan[13] indicates that, to be considered 'world class', suppliers must excel in such areas as competitive pricing, quality and lead times; these attributes are 'just the price of entry to get into the game'. The research identified the following three characteristics of world-class suppliers:

- *continuous improvement* – world-class suppliers have a formal and proven commitment to achieve year-on-year products and process improvements
- *technology and innovation* – world-class suppliers are technology leaders in their respective industries, providing customers with next-generation technologies and a 'leg-up' on their competition

- *adaptability* – world-class suppliers are willing to invest in new equipment, develop new technologies and rework their businesses to better support the strategies of their customers.

World-class supplier management is therefore concerned with:

- searching for suppliers with the above characteristics or the potential to achieve them
- providing such suppliers with specifications of the purchaser's expectations relating to products and services and agreeing how supplier performance will be measured against expectations
- recognising outstanding supplier performance by such means as the award of long-term contracts, and sharing the benefits of collaborative innovation or performance that enhance the purchaser's competitiveness.

Strategic procurement partnerships are partnerships of equals in which suppliers are regarded as a source of the competitive edge responsible for a major share of product costs. As Saunders[14] rightly observes:

> For a firm to reach world class standards in serving its own customers, it is vital to achieve world class standards in controlling its network of suppliers.

1.7 The status of procurement and supply management (PSM)

Within a particular organisation the status of PSM is influenced by leverage, focus and professionalism.

1.7.1 Leverage

Traditionally, leverage of procurement has been focused on enhancing profitability. This is relevant in a manufacturing or purchase for resale context, but is irrelevant for procurement in a central and local government environment where procurement has a direct impact on the quality and timing of public services being offered. The same can be said of procuring goods and services for the National Health Service.

The greatest scope for savings lies in the areas of greatest expenditure. For many organisations these areas are labour and materials. Labour is usually outside the scope of procurement unless outsourcing activities and agency staff are being considered. Within this context, outsourcing call centres to the Far East has reduced some labour costs by more than 20 per cent for European-based organisations. Similarly, when labour is outsourced within Europe under TUPE (Transfer of Undertakings Protection of Employment) regulations, labour costs have also been reduced by more than 20 per cent. This is achieved by finding smarter ways of working and redeploying the labour to other roles. There is also the factor of the labour becoming more productive by using advanced IT systems. These cost improvements require a short-term investment by the new provider of services.

Expenditure on materials and services that are purchased from third parties is where professional buyers must demonstrate their effectiveness in obtaining value for money.

The benefits can be highlighted in organisations driven by the profit motive. It is the case that:

- assuming other variables remain constant, every pound saved on procurement is a pound of profit
- for many reasons, such as increased defects or poorer deliveries, a pound off the purchase price does not necessarily represent a pound of profit
- when purchases form a high proportion of total costs, a modest saving on bought-out items will result in a similar contribution to profits as would a substantial increase in sales; so, as shown below, a 4 per cent reduction in purchase costs makes the same contribution to profits as a 20 per cent expansion in turnover.

Sales			
Then	Now	Increase	Extra profit
£	£	%	£
100,000	120,000	20	2000 (assuming 10 per cent on turnover)
Procurement			
50,000	48,000	–4 (i.e. a saving)	2000

This argument must, however, be used carefully.

- Cost reduction can be counter-profitable if the result is lower quality or higher expenditure on production.
- The total cost of ownership (TCO) approach emphasises that not just the purchase price but also all costs associated with the acquisition, use and maintenance of an item should be considered.
- As the proportion of expenditure on supplies and the complexity of bought-out items varies widely from organisation to organisation, it follows that there will be a corresponding variance in the contribution of procurement to profitability.

The profit contribution may be low; for example, in the pharmaceutical industry where the ingredients of a patent medicine can be insignificant compared with the costs of marketing the product. Conversely, it will be significant in the motor vehicle industry where the proportion of material costs to total factory costs is high.

Procurement as a factor in profitability is likely to be critical where:

- bought-out items form a high proportion of total expenditure
- short-run prices fluctuate
- judgements relating to innovation and fashion are involved
- markets for the finished product are highly competitive.

Procurement will be less critical, though still important, where:

- bought-out items form a small proportion of total expenditure
- prices are relatively stable
- there is an absence of innovation in operations.

Within non-manufacturing organisations the savings resulting from value-for-money efficiency procurement may allow increased expenditure in other areas.

1.7.2 Focus

Syson[15] states that the position of procurement within a particular organisation depends on whether the focus of the function is transactional, commercial or strategic. Each of these foci is appropriate to sustaining commercial advantage for different types of enterprise: 'in terms of effectiveness, the key question is whether the correct focus exists. In terms of efficiency, how well are the key tasks discharged?' Over time, the focus of procurement may, as shown in Figures 1.3 and 1.4, change from transactional to a procedure perspective. The more procurement becomes involved in commercial and strategic areas, the greater will be its effectiveness and consequent standing within the organisation.

In Figures 1.3 and 1.4 it will be noticed that as PSM moves from a transactional to a pro-activity focus, performance measures also change from efficiency to effectiveness.

Figure 1.3 Positioning graph strategies/policies

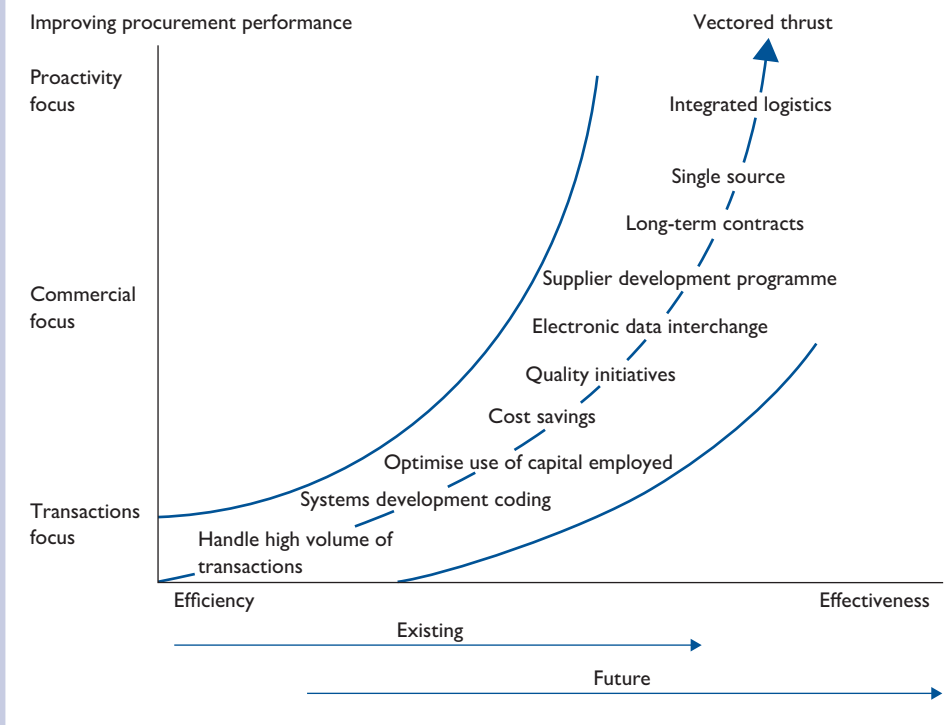
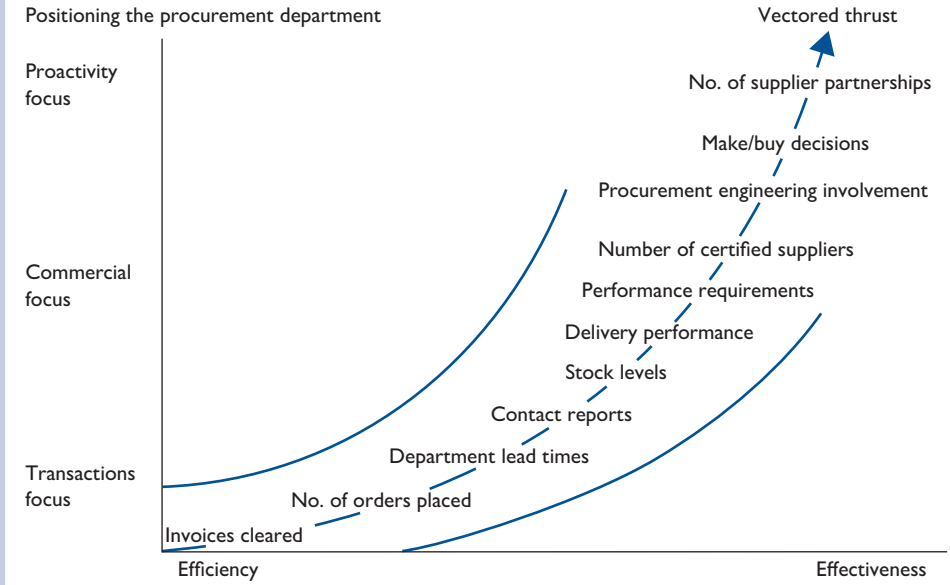


Figure 1.4 Positioning graph: measures of performance



Efficiency is a measure of how well or productively resources are used to achieve a goal.

Effectiveness is a measure of the appropriateness of the goals the organisation is pursuing and of the degree to which those goals are achieved.

Syson[16] refers to the level of the procurement department, implying that the level at which procurement is placed in a hierarchical structure reveals its status within that company. From a different perspective, broadly similar considerations will apply in determining the recognition given to procurement by other supply chain members.

A somewhat different approach to determining the internal status of procurement is provided by the three laws propounded by Farmer:[17]

1 Procurement increases in perceived importance in direct relationship with the reduction in length of the product lifecycle times.

2 Procurement is perceived to be important when the business concerned interfaces significantly with a volatile market(s).

3 Procurement is important whenever the organisation concerned spends a significant proportion of its income on procurement goods and services in order to allow it to do business.

Empirically, the importance of procurement both organisationally and within the supply chain is indicated by structural and influential factors.

Structural factors

These include:

- the job title of the executive responsible for PSM
- to whom and at what level the executive in charge of PSM reports

- the total spend for which PSM is responsible
- the financial limits placed on PSM staff to commit the undertaking without recourse to higher authority
- the committees on which PSM staff are represented.

Influential factors

Ibarra[18] has identified network centrality, power and innovative involvement as important influential factors in the determination of status.

Network centrality, like format authority, implies a high position in a status hierarchy and also varying degrees of access to and control over valued resources. As stated in section 3.2.1, procurement is frequently a key activity in materials management. Procurement is also central in supply chains, as indicated in section 3.11.

Power may be considered from two aspects: the sources of power and the use of power. The sources of power are briefly considered in section 4.1.4. The use of power may be defined as the ability to affect outcomes.

The executives in charge of PSM may have all the five sources of power identified by French and Raven in section 4.1.4. Executives also derive power from having access to information or occupying a boundary-spanning position that links organisations' internal networks to external suppliers and information sources.

Innovative involvement, as Ibarra shows, may be either administrative or technical and may itself be an indicator of power as any change in the status quo requires an individual to use power and mobilise support, information and material resources to overcome resistance to change. Persons with a high position in the organisation are more likely to be successful innovators than those further down with less or little power.

Technical innovators are directly related to the primary work activity of an organisation and include the introduction of new products, services and production technologies.

Administrative innovations involve changes in structure and administrative processes and are more directly related to internal management than the other types of innovation. Kanter's[19] observation that 'corporate entrepreneurs have often to pull in what they need for their innovation from other departments or areas, from peers over whom they have no authority and who have the choice about whether or not to ante up their knowledge, support or resources to invest in or help the innovator' is of relevance to both supply chain management and the centrality of procurement within it.

The status of PSM in any organisation depends on two key factors. First, the ability to impact positively on the bottom line of corporate strategic planning and, second, recognition by PSM of the value of its contribution to profitability and competitive advantage and being able to market that contribution to top management and other supply chain members.

1.7.3 Professionalism

As long ago as 1928, Carr-Saunders[20] made a distinction between professionalism and professionalisation. *Professionalism* is traditionally associated with certain attributes, including:

- skill based on theoretical knowledge
- prolonged training and education

- demonstration of competence by means of tests and examinations
- adherence to a code of professional ethics.

Professionalisation is associated with the development of associations that seek to establish minimum qualifications for entrance to a professional practice or activity and enforce appropriate rules and norms of conduct among the members of the professional group and raise the status of the professional group in the wider society. Thus, attempts to raise the external perception of procurement have included:

- the establishment of institutions concerned with promoting the concept of 'professional' procurement, such as the Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS) in the UK and the Institute of Supply Management (ISM) in the USA (in 2004, over 42 national procurement associations were affiliated to the International Federation of Procurement and Materials Management)
- the development of undergraduate and postgraduate courses with a procurement content
- the establishment of 'Chairs' in procurement or logistics at some universities
- research into PSM and related fields
- the publication of textbooks and specialist journals relating to procurement, such as *Supply Management (UK)*, *European Procurement Management* and the *International Journal of Procurement and Supply Management*, as well as, in the logistics field, *Logistics Focus* and the *International Journal of Logistics*
- published codes of ethics (see Appendices 1 and 2).

Notwithstanding the enhanced status of procurement in the UK by the granting in 1992 of a Royal Charter to the then Institute of Purchasing and Supply, the occupation has to surmount difficulties in its quest for professional status.

Such difficulties include:

- no regulation of entry – it is not necessary to have a professional qualification in procurement to enter the profession
- procurement practitioners carry out their duties with varying degrees of professionalism, so those with only an operational or transactional knowledge of procurement might experience difficulty in moving to strategic procurement
- limited powers to enforce ethical standards.

The general problem, however, is what constitutes the academic content. Procurement is a hybrid subject that draws heavily on other disciplines to build its knowledge base. Such disciplines include accounting, economics, ethics, information technology, marketing, management and psychology.

Even the study of subjects such as negotiation can be enhanced by knowledge of the approaches to negotiation in such fields as politics and industrial relations.

Cox[21] regards much contemporary academic work relating to procurement as 'unscientific', characterised by uncritical accounts of what procurement practitioners do, untheoretical research and the development of 'fads and short-term fixes'. Such academic work is often regarded as irrelevant by procurement practitioners. Cox therefore calls for a proactive, scientific approach to the academic study of procurement. He believes that such an approach will involve the use of systematic theory to provide general laws and the application of deductive and inductive reasoning to respectively

'construct optional procurement strategies based on "fit for purpose" awareness of business and market processes and indicate the optional role for procurement in business'.

The change in emphasis from procurement as a reactive administrative activity to one that is proactive and strategic has resulted in numerous lists of the skills and attributes that procurement staff should possess in order to maximise their contribution to the achievement of organisational goals. Two typical surveys in the USA are those by Kolchin[22] and Giunipero and Pearcy.[23]

The first of these studies, based on the responses of a large sample of American procurement executives, identified the following ten subjects as the most important to purchasers in the year 2000:

1. total cost analysis
2. negotiation strategies and techniques
3. supplier/partner management
4. ethical conduct
5. supplier evaluation
6. quality techniques
7. procurement strategy and planning
8. price/cost analysis
9. electronic data interchange
10. interpersonal communication.

The second study, based on a review of relevant literature and a rating by 136 procurement/supply management professionals, identified 32 skills required of a world-class purchaser. These skills were categorised under seven headings:

1. strategic
2. process management
3. team
4. decision making
5. behavioural
6. negotiation
7. quantitative.

Examples of strategic, behavioural and quantitative skills are:

Strategic skills	*Behavioural skills*	*Quantitative skills*
Strategic thinking	Interpersonal/communication	Computational
Supply base research	Risk-taking/entrepreneurship	Technical
Structuring supplier relationships	Creativity	Blueprint reading
Technology planning	Inquisitiveness	Specification development
Supplier cost targeting		

One further writer, Whittington,[24] has stated that 'the buying task as we know it will disappear … Organisationally, procurement will often find itself in a place called "distribution functionality" or "strategic supply" located where the customer is'. She also

believes that the procurement professional of the future will be concerned with three types of tasks:

- *facilitating* – that is, team leadership and providing the 'proper blending and use of all necessary skills'
- *contract negotiating and developing* – that is, procurement people – this will still be required – to write and negotiate advantageous contracts for the organisation
- *technical expertise (computer skills)* – that is, the challenges of procurement on the Net and funding products in the world of cyberspace as well as other EDI tasks.

This view is supported by Lamming (see section 1.3.2) and others. In the Kolchin study referred to above, almost two-thirds of the respondents believed that the designation of procurement would change. The three most cited new names were 'supply management', 'sourcing management' and 'logistics'.

1.8 Reflections on procurement positioning in business

Procurement specialists should, at all times, question the progress being made by procurement and its positioning in business. There is a plethora of academic studies, independent reviews by audit authorities and consultancy organisations linking their findings to the subliminal message that they can make things a lot better.

On occasions there are credible, forthright comments, such as provided by Kearney.[25] They use the word 'influence' and explain within the context of procurement this means:

1 procurement sourced or assisted in the sourcing process,

2 procurement is involved in the contracting process, or

3 purchases go through a full procurement – designed and supported system.

The study report emphasises that the procurement strategy must align with overall business goals. The leaders engage more with other business functions and take advantage of supply market opportunities and have an impact on more than 94 per cent of external spend.

The study report includes the observation that in the year preceding the report there was one supply chain disruption after another. It says that procurement leaders excel at managing risk, the majority use risk impact analysis, financial risk management (such as hedging) and disaster planning as ways to protect against unforeseen threats. By contrast, just one in five followers use such risk management activities in procurement – which means about 80 per cent of companies are a natural disaster away from a major disruption.

Discussion questions

1.1 Procurement often lacks a strategic focus and, in consequence, is viewed as an administrative function. Do you agree? Why?

1.2 Taking one example of 'an important purchase' in your organisation, prepare a flow chart showing the processes involved in procuring that purchase. Can you then identify the decision points?

1.3 The procurement profession pays inadequate attention to skills development; for example, negotiation skills. Do you agree? Why?

1.4 What do you believe will be the business challenges facing procurement over the next decade?

1.5 Consider the four stages of the development of the procurement function identified by Reck and Long. State, with reasons, the stage reached by procurement in your organisation.

1.6 There are major advantages to transferring technical specialists into procurement whereby they can add their expertise to commercial decisions. Would you agree with this? Why?

1.7 If procurement specialists believe in change and innovation, what steps can be taken to accommodate these factors in long-term contracts?

1.8 Many procurement actions are conducted electronically. What do you foresee as the next major development in this regard? When you answer this, think about reverse auctions and their impact on negotiation of price and cost.

1.9 Would it be true that when procurement is effectively organised and operated the balance of power can never be with a supplier?

1.10 Is procurement a commercial or a technical function?

1.11 It is often alleged that procurement is under-resourced. Why is this? How would you decide on an appropriate staffing resource to manage procurement?

References

[1] CIPS Australia Pty Ltd

[2] Marrian, J., 'Market characteristics of industrial goals and buyers', in Wilson, A. (ed.), *The Marketing of Industrial Products*, Hutchinson, 1965, p. 11

[3] Lamming, R., 'The future of purchasing: developing lean supply', in Lamming, R., and Cox, A., *Strategic Procurement Management in the 1990s*, Earlsgate Press, 1985, p. 40

[4] *Solar Energy Market Express*

[5] Fearon, Harold, Center for Advanced Purchasing Studies, Emeritus

[6] Reck, R. F. and Long, B., 'Purchasing a competitive weapon', *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol. 24, No. 3, 1998, p. 4

[7] Reck, R. F. and Long, B., as 6 above

[8] Syson, R., *Improving Purchasing Performance*, Pitman, 1992, pp. 254–255

[9] Morris, N. and Calantone, R. J., 'Redefining the purchasing function', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Fall, 1992

[10] Jones, D. M., 'Development models', *Supply Management*, 18 March, 1999. The author is particularly grateful to Dr Jones for the use of Figures 1.6 and 1.7

[11] Schonberger, R. J., *World Class Manufacturing: The Next Decade: Building Power, Strength and Value*, Free Press, 1986

[12] Carter, P. L. and Ogden, J. A., *The World Class Purchasing and Supply Organisation: Identifying the Characteristics*, Center for Advanced Purchasing Studies, University of Arizona

[13] Minahan, T., 'What Makes a Supplier World Class?', *Purchasing On Line*, 13 August, 1988

[14] Saunders, M., *Strategic Purchasing and Supply Chain Management*, Pitman, 1994, p. 11

[15] Syson, R., as 8 above

[16] Syson, R., as 8 above

[17] Farmer, D., 'Organisation for purchasing', *Purchasing and Supply Management*, February, 1900, pp. 23–27

[18] Ibarra, H., 'Network centrality, power and innovation involvement, determinants of technical and administrative power', *Academy of Management Journal*, Vol. 36 (3), June, 1993, pp. 471–502

[19] Kanter, R. M., 'When a thousand flowers bloom' in Staw, B. M., and Cummings, L. L. (eds), *Research in Organisational Behaviour*, Vol. 10, 1988, p. 189

[20] Carr-Saunders, A. M. and Wilson, P. A., *The Professions*, Oxford University Press, 1928

[21] Cox, A., 'Relational competence and strategic procurement management', *European Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, 1996, Vol. 2 (1), pp. 57–70

[22] Kolchin, C., 'Study reveals future educational and training trends', *NAPM Insights*, July, 1993

[23] Giunipero, L. C. and Pearcy, D. H., 'World class purchasing skills: an empirical investigation', *Journal of Supply Chain Management*, 2000, Vol. 36 (4), pp. 4–13

[24] Whittington, E., 'Will the Last Buyer Please Stand Up!', Proceedings NAPM 84 Annual Conference, May 1999

[25] Kearney, A.T. 'Follow the procurement leaders: seven ways to lasting results'. 2011 Assessment of Excellence in Procurement Study.

Chapter 2

Strategic procurement

Learning outcomes

With reference, where applicable, to business and procurement, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- strategic procurement and its contribution to corporate strategy
- the origins and development of strategic theory
- corporate, business and functional/operating strategies
- strategy development using Mintzberg's ten schools
- strategic management
- business growth strategies
- strategic analysis
- procurement, portfolio management
- strategy formulation – rational planning or incremental
- the evaluation of alternative strategies
- strategy implementation
- the post implementation, evaluation, control and review of strategies.

Key ideas

- Mintzberg, Johnson and Scholes and the definitions of strategy.
- Mintzberg's ten schools of strategic development.
- Rational planning, incremental and emergent views of strategy.
- Growth, stability, combination and retrenchment strategies.
- Strategic procurement and procurement strategy.
- Environmental and internal scanning to strengthen strategic formulation and challenge.
- Linking procurement strategies to corporate strategic objectives.
- Critical success factors.
- Vision and mission statements and business, procurement and supply objectives.
- Lifecycles, scenario planning, cost–benefit, profitability and risk analysis as approaches to the evaluation of strategies.
- Portfolio planning with special reference to Kraljic and Kamann.
- Policies and strategy implementation plans.
- The CIPS procurement and supply chain model.

Introduction

Procurement occurs within a corporate environment, wherein there will be a long-term business strategy. Understanding and contributing to delivery of the strategy is a vital driver for procurement. Wheelan & Hunger[1] have produced a checklist for conducting a strategic audit of a Corporation. Within the 'Internal Environment: Strengths and Weaknesses' is a checklist for 'Operations and Logistics'. It is an excellent prompt for procurement specialists (noting carefully that they use the term purchasing) and consists of the following:

a What are the corporation's current manufacturing/service objectives, strategies, policies and programs?

i. Are they clearly stated or merely implied from performance or budgets?

ii. Are they consistent with the corporation's mission, objectives, strategies and policies and with internal and external environments?

b What are the type and extent of operations capabilities of the corporation? How much is done domestically versus internationally? Is the amount of outsourcing appropriate to be competitive? Is purchasing being handled appropriately? Are suppliers and distributors operating in an environmentally sustainable manner? Which products have the highest and lowest profit margins?

i. If the corporation is product-oriented, consider plant facilities, type of manufacturing system (continuous mass production, intermittent job shop, or flexible manufacturing), age and type of equipment, degree and role of automation and/or robots, plant capacities and utilisation, productivity ratings, and availability and type of transportation.

ii. If the corporation is service-oriented, consider service facilities (hospital, theatre or school buildings), type of operations systems (continuous service over time to the same clientele or intermittent service over time to varies clientele), age and type of supporting equipment, degree and role of automation and use of mass communication devices (diagnostic machinery, video machines), facility capacities and utilisation rates, efficiency ratings of professional and service personnel, and availability and type of transportation to bring service staff and clientele together.

c Are manufacturing or service facilities vulnerable to natural disasters, local or national strikes, reduction or limitation of resources from suppliers, substantial cost increases of materials, or nationalisation by governments?

d Is there an appropriate mix of people and machines (in manufacturing firms) or of support staff to professionals (in service firms)?

e How well does the corporation perform relative to the competition? Is it balancing inventory costs (warehousing) with logistical costs (just-in-time)? Consider costs per unit of labour, material and overhead; downtime; inventory control management and scheduling of service staff; production ratings; facility utilisation percentages; and number of clients successfully treated by category (of service firm) or percentage of orders shipped on time (if product firm).

i. What trends emerge from this analysis?

ii. What impact have these trends had on past performance and how might these trends affect future performance?

iii. Does this analysis support the corporation's past and pending strategic decisions?

iv. Does operations provide the company with a competitive advantage?

f Are operations managers using appropriate concepts and techniques to evaluate and improve current performance? Consider cost systems, quality control and reliability systems, inventory control management, personnel scheduling, TQM, learning curves, safety programmes and engineering programmes that can improve efficiency of manufacturing or of service.

g Do operations adjust to the conditions in each country in which it has facilities?

h Do operations consider environmental sustainability when making decisions?

i What is the role of the operations manager in the strategic management process?

A critic of Wheelan & Hunger would point to the paucity of procurement's inclusion in 'Operations and Logistics'. The author has developed SPA (Strategic Procurement Audit) to test procurement's ability to withstand a robust audit. The top 12 facets are:

1 Does a comprehensive procurement strategy exist?

2 Is there a linkage between the corporate and procurement strategies?

3 Is there a global dimension to procurement?

4 How is supply guaranteed in times of shortage?

5 How are long-term contract prices controlled?

6 Is the procurement strategy founded on expert supply chain knowledge?

7 Does outsourcing feature in the strategy?

8 How is genuine partnering behaviour incorporated in the strategy?

9 How is single sourced supply situations evaluated for risk?

10 What are the strategic provisions for inventory in our contracts?

11 Has all intellectual property considerations been taken into account?

12 At what frequency is the strategy reviewed and, who is involved in the review?

2.1 Strategic thinking

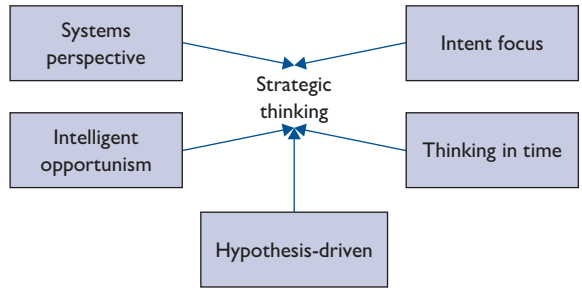
Five elements that make up strategic thinking – as identified by Liedtka[2] – are shown in Figure 2.1.

The characteristics of each of the five elements are discussed in a paper by Lawrence,[3] as follows.

1 *Systems perspective* – A 'system' is a set of independent and interrelated parts that is dependent for survival on its environment. Strategic thinking, from a systems perspective, requires an understanding of:

- the external, internal and business ecosystem in which the organisation operates (an ecosystem in a business context is a network of interrelated enterprises that may cross a variety of industries) and managing within such an ecosystem requires the ability to think strategically about the position of the enterprise within it and the relationships and alliances with the enterprises that it comprises;

Figure 2.1 The elements of strategic thinking



- how corporate, business and functional strategies relate vertically to the external environment and horizontally across departments, functions, suppliers and buyers;
- interrelationships between the individual parts of the system;
- individual roles within the larger system, and how individual behaviour impacts on other parts of the system and the final outcome.

2 *Intent focus* – Strategic thinking is concerned with the identification of goals and devising strategies for their achievement.

3 *Intelligent opportunism* – Strategic thinking is 'openness to new experiences which allows one to take advantage of alternative strategies that may emerge as more relevant to a rapidly changing business environment'.

4 *Thinking in time* – Strategic thinking is concerned with 'bridging the gap' between current reality and future intent. Thus, when current resources and capabilities are insufficient, the organisation must bridge the gap by making the best of what is available. 'By connecting the past with the present and linking this to the future, strategic thinking is always "thinking in time"'.

5 *Hypothesis driven* – Strategic thinking accommodates both creative and analytical thinking. Hypothesis *generation* poses the creative question 'What if . . .?' Hypothesis *testing* follows up with the critical question 'If . . ., then . . .' and evaluates the data relevant to the analysis. Taken together and repeated, this process allows an organisation to pose a variety of hypotheses without sacrificing the ability to explore novel ideas and approaches.

2.2 What is strategy?

Strategy, derived from the Greek word *strategia*, means 'generalship' and is primarily a military concept that, since the end of the Second World War, has been used in a business context.

Ohmae[4] argued that 'what business strategy is all about is, in a word, competitive advantage. The sole purpose of strategic planning is to enable a company to gain, as efficiently as possible, a sustainable edge over its competitors. Corporate strategy thus implies an attempt to alter a company's strength relative to that of its competitors in the most efficient way'.

2.2.1 Definitions – Mintzberg

Mintzberg[5] observes that the word strategy 'has long been used implicitly in different ways even if it has been traditionally used in only one'. He provides five different definitions of strategy, plan, ploy, pattern, position and perspective.

1. As a *plan*, strategy is some sort of consciously intended course of action, a guideline (or set of guidelines) to deal with a situation. From this perspective, strategy is concerned with how leaders try to provide organisational direction and predetermined courses of action. It is also concerned with cognition (knowing) or how plans or intentions are initially conceived in the human brain.
2. As a *ploy*, strategy is a specific manoeuvre intended to outwit an opponent or competitor.
3. As a *pattern*, strategy is a stream of actions demonstrating consistency in behaviour, whether intended or not intended.
4. As a *position*, strategy is a means of locating an organisation in an environment. The positional approach sees strategy as 'a mediating force by which organisations find and protect their positions or "niches" in order to meet, avoid or subvert competition in the external environment'.
5. As a *perspective*, strategy is a concept or ingrained way of perceiving the world. Mintzberg points out that 'strategy in this respect is to the organisation what personality is to the individual' – that is, distinct ways of working deriving from the culture or ideology of the undertaking that become the shared norms, values and determinants of the behaviour of the people who collectively form the organisation.

Mintzberg's five definitions help us to avoid attaching simplistic meanings to strategy. As he observes:[6]

> Strategy is not just a notion of how to deal with an enemy or set of competitors in a market. . .
>
> A good deal of confusion . . . stems from contradictory and ill-defined uses of the term strategy. By explicating and using various definitions we may thereby enrich our ability to understand and manage the processes by which strategies form.

2.2.2 Definitions – Johnson and Scholes

Johnson and Scholes[7] provide the following definition:

> Strategy is the *direction* and *scope* of an organisation over the *long term*, which achieves *advantage* for the organisation through its configuration of resources within a changing *environment* and to fulfil *stakeholder* expectations.

2.3 Strategy development

2.3.1 Mintzberg's ten schools

Mintzberg *et al.*[8] have identified ten 'schools' that have appeared at different stages in the development of strategic development, which they classify under three headings: prescriptive, descriptive and configuration.

Table 2.1 Mintzberg's prescriptive schools of strategy formation

Designation	*Strategy formation process*
The design school	Strategy making as a process of *conception* – that is, abstract thinking or reflective activity Strategy making is an acquired, not a natural or intuitive, skill and must be learned formally
The planning school	Strategy formation as a *formal* process – that is, a course of action or procedures
The positioning school	Strategy formation as an *analytical* process – that is, strategy formation is the selection of generic, specifically common, identifiable positions in the marketplace based on analytical calculations

Prescriptive schools are concerned with how strategies *should* be formulated, rather than how they actually are. Mintzberg's three prescriptive schools are shown in Table 2.1.

Descriptive schools are concerned with representing how, in reality, strategies are formulated rather than how they 'ought' to be made. Mintzberg's six descriptive schools are shown in Table 2.2.

The *configuration school* emphasises two aspects of strategy. The first describes 'organisational states' and their surroundings as *configurations*. An organisation 'state' implies entrenched behaviour. Configurations are therefore relatively stable clusters of characteristics relating to a particular school. Thus, 'planning' is predominant in mechanistic conditions of relative stability and 'entrepreneurship' in more dynamic configurations of start-up and turnaround. The configuration school, therefore, can integrate

Table 2.2 Mintzberg's descriptive schools of strategy formation

Designation	*Strategy formation process*
The entrepreneurial school	Strategy formation as a *visionary* process – that is, strategy exists in the mind of the leader as a vision of the organisation's long-term future
The cognitive school	Strategy formation as a *mental* process – that is, strategy formation takes place in the mind of the strategist as a process of perceiving, knowing and conceiving the environment in an objective way, distinct from emotion or volition
The learning school	Strategy formation as an *emergent* process of learning over time, in which, at the limit, formulation and implementation become indistinguishable
The power school	Strategy formation as a process of *negotiation* – that is, strategy is shaped by political games involving transient interests and coalitions of those holding internal or external power who seek to arrive at a consensus on strategy by means of persuasion, bargaining and sometimes direct confrontation
The cultural school	Strategy formation as a *collective* process – that is, strategy formation is a process of social interaction based on beliefs and understandings shared by organisational members
The environmental school	Strategy formation as a *reactive* process – that is, by adapting to the environment rather than by initiating changes in the environment

the preceding nine schools as it recognises that each school represents a particular configuration contingent on its time and context.

The second aspect is concerned with *transformation*. The configuration school sees strategy formation as a process of transformation or 'shaking loose' entrenched behaviour, so that the organisation can make the transformation or development to a new state or configuration. The key to strategic management, therefore, is to sustain stability but periodically recognise the need for change to a new configuration.

2.3.2 Rational planning and incremental and emergent views

Rational planning encompasses all Mintzberg's prescriptive schools and is the traditional view of strategy formation based on the economist's concept of a rational economical person. The rational economical person is assumed to:

- make decisions to maximise returns
- consider all the alternatives
- know the costs and consequences of all the alternatives
- allow decisions to be made by a single person
- order consequences according to a fixed preference.

Such planning normally involves two stages:

1. summarising external and internal strengths and weaknesses, opportunities and threats (SWOT analysis) and identifying goals or objectives that can be translated into measurable targets
2. identifying the means by which such goals can be achieved and specifying appropriate plans.

Lawrence[9] states that traditional notions of strategic planning have been attacked on the grounds that such planning 'often takes an already agreed upon strategic direction and helps strategists decide how the organisation is to be configured and resources allocated to realise that direction'. Fahey and Prusak[10] regard this predisposition to focus on the past and the present rather than on the future as one of the 11 deadly sins of knowledge management. Other criticisms are that:

- planning is overly focused on analysis and extrapolation rather than creativity and invention
- planners rarely know all the available alternatives and, therefore, have a limited ability to process information
- rational planning assumes a stable environment, yet, when the environment changes, strategic priorities also change.

Incremental and emergent views encompass Mintzberg's descriptive and configuration schools and emphasise that strategies may be formulated over time and implemented step by step.

Logical incrementalism is primarily associated with Charles Lindblom[11] who also referred to this approach as 'muddling through'.

In this view, managers make incremental changes as they learn from experience. Intelligent or strategic opportunism or the managerial ability to stay focused on long-term objectives while retaining the flexibility to cope with short-term problems and

opportunities has already been identified in section 2.1 as an essential element of strategic thinking. Waterman[12] states that, in leading organisations, managers 'sense opportunity where others can't, act while others hesitate and demur when others plunge'.

Such considerations led Mintzberg to develop the concept of *emergent strategies*. An emergent strategy consists of a set of actions that form an unintended pattern that was not initially anticipated in the initial planning phase. Adopting an emergent strategy might help a company adapt more flexibly to changing market conditions.

As Mintzberg observes:[13]

> Managers who craft strategy do not spend much time in reading reports or industry analyses. They are involved, responsive to their materials, learning about their organisation and industries through personal touch. They are also sensitive to experience, recognising that while individual vision may be important, other factors may determine strategy as well.

Emergent strategies become evident when large organisations do not discourage the publication of research reports and learned academic papers. A relevant example is Intel and their emergent strategy explained by the CEO, Andrew Grove.[14] In 1986 Intel lost $173 million and had layoffs, plant closures, salary cuts and time off without pay. There was a dramatic increase in competition from Japanese memory-chip makers. Memory chips were Intel's original business. In brief, Intel redirected its resources away from memories and into the micro-processor business. Grove stated, 'If existing management want to keep their jobs when the basics of the business are undergoing profound change, they must adopt an outsider's intellectual objectivity'.

In late 2014 emergent strategies were on the agenda at Tesco, Sainsbury's and Morrison's (UK retailers). Intense competition from the discounters Aldi and Lidl was impacting on the UK grocery market. It was reported[15] that the share value of the three retailers had fallen by 50 per cent in 2014 as their sales had slumped. The 'Big Four', which includes ASDA, have reined in plans to open new stores in the UK. The eventual outcome will emerge and success or failure will be determined by the quality for the emergent strategies.

2.3.3 Strategic drift

Market types have an impact on procurement; a phenomenon not always recognised.

(i) Slow-cycle markets are those in which products have strongly shielded positions where competitive pressures do not easily penetrate the firm's sources of strategic competitiveness. This is described as a monopoly position, such as that held by IBM for many years.

The impact on procurement may be:

- no pressure to negotiate prices to drive down costs
- tolerance of suppliers who fail to innovate
- insistence that suppliers comply with specifications without challenge
- buyers trapped in traditional procurement practices.

(ii) Standard-cycle markets where business strategy and organisation are designed to serve high-volume or mass markets. The likely focus is on market control as in the automobile and appliance industries. Market dominance is achieved through capital

investment and superior learning. Eventually, competition is attracted by high profits. Examples are Coca-Cola, Ford and Boeing.

The impact on procurement may be:

- long-term contracts with static scheduled deliveries
- reliance on large-scale suppliers
- narrow concentration of buyers on category procurement
- complacent procurement behaviour based on power positioning.

(iii) Fast-cycle markets are characterised by perpetual innovation and shorter product cycles. When a dominant firm fears competition they seek to counter attack before the competitive advantage is eroded. An example of fast-cycle markets is Komatsu challenging Caterpillar's dominance.

The impact on procurement may be:

- a challenge to continually seek supplier's innovation
- application of value engineering
- aggressive negotiation for cost reduction
- constantly changing supplier base.

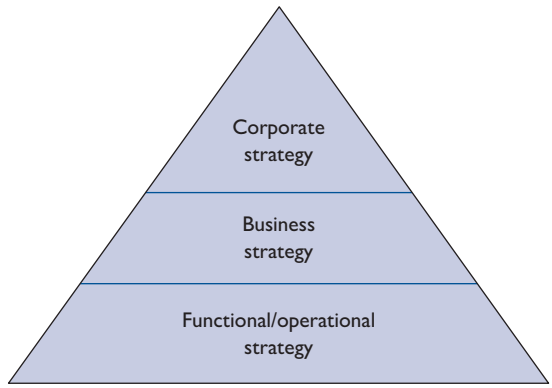
World-class procurement is founded on a recognition that, regardless of the market type, procurement must keep suppliers on their toes and recognise continual improvement.

2.4 Levels of organisational strategy

As shown in Figure 2.2, in a typical large, diversified business, strategies are formulated, evaluated and implemented at three levels.

For non-diversified undertakings and those with only one line of business, corporate and business strategies are normally synonymous.

Figure 2.2 Levels of organisational strategy



2.5 Corporate strategy

Generally, corporate strategies are concerned with:

- determining what business(es) the enterprise should be in to maximise profitability
- deciding 'grand' strategies (see below)
- determining the 'values' of the enterprise and how it is to be managed
- coordinating and managing major resources and relationships between the enterprise, its markets, competitors, allies and other environmental factors
- deciding on business locations and structures.

Because corporate strategies provide long-term direction, they change infrequently. Corporate strategies are usually less specific than those at lower levels and, consequently, are more difficult to evaluate.

'Grand' or 'master' strategies referred to above, fall into four categories: growth, stability, combination and retrenchment.

2.6 Growth strategies

These are adopted when an organisation seeks to expand its relative market share by increasing its level of operations. Growth strategies can be classified as shown in Figure 2.3.

2.6.1 Integration strategies

Vertical integration strategies reflect the extent to which an organisation expands *upstream* into industries that provide inputs (*backward integration*), such as a car manufacturer acquiring a steel rolling mill, or *downstream* (*forward integration*) into industries that distribute the organisation's products, such as a car manufacturer acquiring a car distribution chain.

Backward integration

Backward integration seeks to ensure continuity of supplies by owning or controlling suppliers. David[16] has identified the following conditions that might cause an

Figure 2.3 Growth strategies



organisation to adopt a backward integration strategy, all of which have purchasing and supply applications:

- when an organisation's present suppliers are especially expensive, unreliable or incapable of meeting the firm's needs for parts, components, assemblies or raw materials
- when the number of suppliers is few and the number of competitors is many
- when an organisation competes in an industry that is growing rapidly (in a declining industry, vertical and horizontal strategies reduce an organisation's ability to diversify)
- when an organisation has both the capital and human resources needed to manage the new business of supplying its own raw materials
- when the advantages of stable prices are particularly important (this is a factor because an organisation can stabilise the cost of its raw materials and the associated price of its product via backward integration)
- when present suppliers have high profit margins, which suggest that the business of supplying products or services in the given industry is a worthwhile venture
- when an organisation needs to acquire a needed resource quickly.

A further important factor may be:

- to reduce dependence on suppliers of critical components.

Forward integration

Forward integration can:

- avoid dependence on distributors who have no particular allegiance to a particular brand or product and tend to 'push' items that yield the highest profits
- provide production with stable, continuous and predictable demand requirements
- provide cost savings by eliminating intermediaries or distributors.

Some disadvantages of vertical integration include:

- difficulties in balancing capacity at each stage of the supply chain as the efficient scale of operation of each link in the supply chain can vary, so when internal capacity is inadequate to supply the next stage it will be necessary to supply the deficiency by buying out and, conversely, excessive capacity gives rise to the need to dispose of the surplus
- high investment in technology and development may inhibit innovation and change due to the need to redesign, retool and retrain.

Backward or forward integration often call for highly diversified skills and abilities, such as manufacturing, transport and distribution, which require different business capabilities.

For the above reasons, many manufacturers – particularly in car and food manufacture – have abandoned vertical integration in favour of:

- outsourcing
- tiring
- long-term partnerships or joint-venture agreements with suppliers

- *Keiretsu* strategies (*Keiretsu* is the Japanese word for 'affiliated chain' and such chains are comprised of mutual alliances that extend across the entire supply chain of suppliers, manufacturers, assemblers, transporters and distributors)
- the creation of virtual companies that use suppliers on an 'as needed' basis.

Horizontal integration

Horizontal integration focuses on expanding operations by acquiring other enterprises operating in the same industry or merging with competitors. Examples of horizontal integration are mergers, acquisitions and takeovers aimed at:

- reducing competition
- increasing economics of scale
- transferring and integrating resources and competences.

2.6.2 Intensive strategies

These are termed 'intensive' because they are 'vigorous' efforts to improve an organisation's competitive position in relation to its competitors.

- *Product innovation and development* seeks to increase sales by improving present products or services or developing new ones. Procurement can contribute to this strategy in such ways as advising on specifications, value management and suggesting alternative materials, components and production methods.
- *Market penetration* seeks to enhance the market share for existing products or services by greater marketing efforts.
- *Market development* seeks to increase the demand for a product by discovering new uses for it or introducing it into new geographical areas.

2.6.3 Diversification strategies

These seek to reduce dependence on a single industry or product. Such strategies may be:

- *concentric* – that is, adding new, but related, products to the existing range
- *conglomerate* – that is, adding new, unrelated products or services
- *horizontal* – that is, adding additional products or services that are not directly relevant to the original purchase, such as a car distributor offering insurance.

The current trend is away from diversification and in favour of 'sticking to the knitting', or concentrating on the core business.

2.6.4 Stability, combination and retrenchment strategies

Stability focuses on maintaining the present course of action and avoiding, so far as possible, major changes. It is not necessarily a 'does nothing' approach but a considered decision that the present way of working is the most appropriate in a given situation.

Combination is the simultaneous adoption of several strategies according to the needs of a particular aspect of a business. Thus, in a divisionalised organisation, a strategic

decision may be to pursue a growth strategy in some divisions and one of stability in others.

Retrenchment, or defensive, strategies are clearly the opposite of those focusing on growth. Typical retrenchment strategies include:

- *harvesting* – maximising short-term profits and cash flow while maintaining investment in a product flow
- *turnaround* – attempting to restructure operations to restore earlier performance levels
- *divestiture* – selling off one or more units of an enterprise to raise cash or concentrate on core activities
- *liquidation* – the decision to cease business and dispose of all assets.

2.7 Business-level strategy

A strategic business unit (SBU) has been defined[17] as:

> An operating unit or planning focus that groups a distinct set of products or services that are sold to a uniform set of customers facing a well-defined set of competitors.

Generally business strategies are concerned with:

- coordinating and integrating unit strategies so that they are consonant with corporate strategies
- developing the distinctive competences and competitive advantages of each unit
- identifying product market niches and developing strategies for competing in each
- monitoring products and markets, so that strategies conform to the needs of product markets at their current state of development.

The selection of a business strategy involves answering the strategic question 'How are we going to compete in this particular business area?'

Two approaches to business-level strategy are the competitive strategy of Michael Porter[18] and the adaptive strategy of Miles and Snow.[19]

2.7.1 Porter's competitive strategy

Competitive strategies are based on some combination of quality, service, cost and time. Porter's typology identifies three strategies that can be used to give SBUs a competitive advantage.

- *Cost leadership* – operating efficiencies so that an organisation is the low-cost producer in its industry. This is effective when:
  - the market is comprised of many price-sensitive buyers
  - there are few ways to achieve product differentiation
  - buyers are indifferent regarding brands (Coke *v* Pepsi)

  Some potential threats to this strategy are that:
  - competitors may imitate this strategy, thus driving profits down
  - competitors may discover technological breakthroughs

– buyer preferences may be influenced by differentiating factors other than price (see also section 3.9.1).

- *Differentiation* – attempting to develop products that are regarded industry-wide as unique (see also section 3.9.2).
- *Focus* – concentration on a specific market segment and within that segment attempts to achieve either a cost advantage or differentiation. Because of their narrow market focus, firms adopting a focus strategy have lower volumes and therefore less bargaining power with their suppliers.

2.7.2 Miles and Snow's adaptive strategy

Adaptive strategies are based on the premise that an organisation should formulate strategies that will allow each of its SBUs to adapt to its unique environmental challenges. Four major strategies are identified:

- *defender* – this emphasises output of reliable products for steady customers and is appropriate for very stable environments
- *prospector* – this emphasises a continuous search for new market opportunities and innovation and is appropriate for dynamic environments with untapped customers
- *analyser* – this emphasises stability while responding selectively to opportunities for innovation and is appropriate for moderately stable environments
- *reactor* – this is really no strategy as reactors respond to competitive pressures by crisis management.

2.7.3 Functional strategies

These are concerned with the formulation of strategies relating to the main areas or activities that constitute a business – procurement, finance, research and development, marketing, production/manufacturing, human resources and logistics/distribution.

Functional strategies are expected to derive from and be consistent with corporate and business strategies and are primarily concerned with:

- ensuring that the skills and competencies of functional specialists are utilised effectively
- integrating activities within the functional/operating area, such as procurement and marketing
- providing information and expertise that can be utilised in the formulation of corporate and business strategies.

The selection of functional strategies involves answering the strategic question 'How can we best apply functional expertise to serve the business needs of the SBU or organisation?'

Strategic procurement and procurement strategy

Strategic procurement is the linking of procurement to corporate or business strategies.[20] Some comparisons between procurement at the corporate and functional levels are shown in Table 2.3.

Table 2.3 Procurement strategy at corporate and functional levels

Corporate/business level	*Functional/operational level*
Formulated at higher levels in the hierarchy	Taken at lower levels in the hierarchy
Emphasise procurement effectiveness based on widespread environmental scanning. Some of this information will be communicated upwards from functional level	Emphasise procurement efficiency based on information from a more limited environmental scanning. Some information obtained from suppliers etc. may be communicated upwards
Corporate strategy must be communicated downwards	Integrated with corporate strategies so far as these are communicated and understood
Focused on issues impacting future long-term procurement requirements and problems	Focused on issues impacting current tactical procurement requirements and problems

Some procurement decisions, such as those relating to the acquisition of capital equipment, outsourcing and entering into long-term partnership alliances, are generally made at the corporate/business level, often on the basis of information or recommendations from procurement at functional or operational levels. As stated in Chapter 1 the extent to which procurement is involved in the formation of organisational strategies is largely dependent on the extent to which procurement is perceived by top management as contributing to competitive advantage. The procurement executive who reports directly to the chief executive is clearly in a stronger position to influence organisational strategy than one lower in the hierarchy who reports to a materials or logistics manager. Irrespective of their level of reporting, procurement staff should contribute to corporate strategy by the provision of supply market intelligence on the basis of which decisions can be made and to competitive advantage by improving the effectiveness of the function.

Kraljic[21] states that a company's need for a supply strategy depends on:

- the strategic importance of procurement in terms of the value added by the product line and the percentage of materials in total costs
- the complexity of the supply market, gauged by supply scarcity, pace of technology and/or materials substitution, entry barriers, logistics cost or complexity and monopoly or oligopoly condition.

Kraljic claims that:

> By assessing the company's situation in terms of these two variables, top management and senior purchasing executives can determine the type of supply strategy the company needs both to exploit its purchasing power vis-à-vis important suppliers and reduce its risk to an acceptable minimum.

2.7.4 Procurement strategy

Procurement strategy relates to the specific actions that procurement may take to achieve the objectives of the business. Some examples are shown in Table 2.4.

Table 2.4 Procurement strategy examples

Situation	*Solution*
A manufacturing company keeps failing to win work in the Far East because they cannot guarantee 'local content' by purchasing goods in the local Far East market	Revision of procurement strategy to include sourcing study in the Far East with the deliberate aim of purchasing at least 30 per cent of goods in Far East market
An international airline with a 'Buy British' strategy is not providing internationally competitive sources of supply, thereby reducing financial operating margins	Revision of procurement strategy to actively research international supply markets and locate new sources that offer competitive prices and world-class supply
Corporate procurement failing to meet the specific needs of Strategic Business Units where each SBU Managing Director is accountable for R.O.C.E.	Revision of procurement strategy and organisation to create SBU procurement whose sole focus will be the SBU profitability
There are insufficient funds to refresh IT platform and lack of IT strategic and operational skills.	Adopt an outsourcing strategy through which a credible third party will refresh the IT platform and IT support services, having accepted stringent contractual obligations for a long-term contract
An international financial institution has Corporate Procurement but use of the Corporate Agreements is not mandatory. Each operating company makes its own arrangements on key 'commodity' purchases, including travel	Corporate procurement briefs all locations of the benefits of Corporate Agreements and makes their use mandatory
An Atomic Electricity Generating organisation tenders, every year, the supply of scaffolding and specialist engineering support services	Agree that a long-term strategy through the tendering and award of a 5- to 7-year contract in return for static pricing and contract performance

R.O.C.E. – Return on Capital Employed

2.7.5 Global procurement strategy

This is discussed in Chapter 14.

2.8 Strategic management

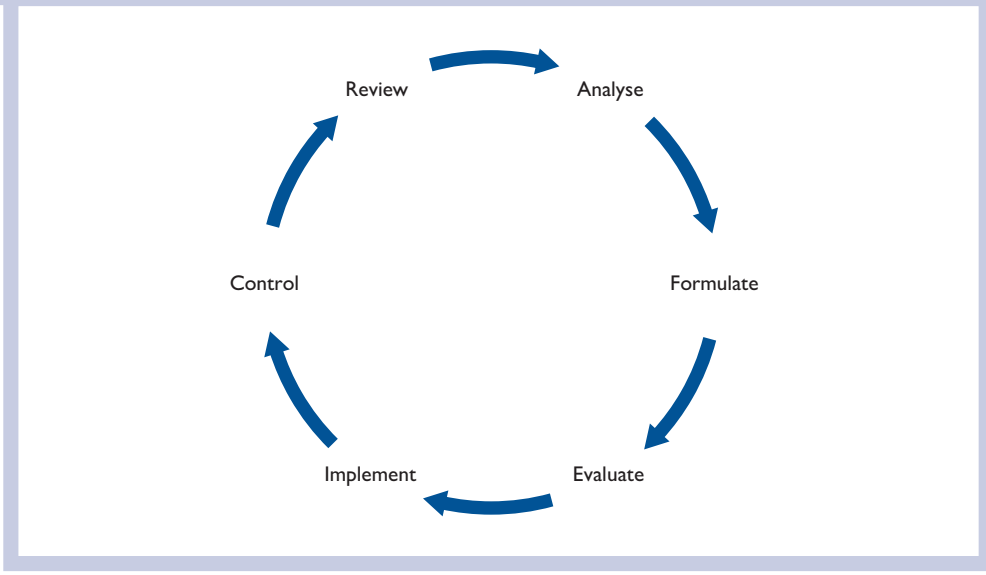
Strategic management, as shown in Figure 2.4, refers to the processes of strategic analysis, formulation, evaluation, implementation, control and review.

2.9 Strategic analysis

A useful definition is:[22]

> Developing a theoretically informed understanding of the environment in which the organisation is operating together with an understanding of the organisation's interaction with its environment in order to improve organisational efficiency and effectiveness by increasing the organisation's capacity to deploy and redeploy its resources intelligently.

Figure 2.4 The cycle of strategic management



The tools of strategic analysis include environmental scanning, Porter analysis, scenario analysis, organisational appraisal, critical success analysis and gap and SWOT analysis.

2.9.1 Environmental scanning

Some writers regard 'the environment' as relating to all factors relevant to strategic management that are outside the boundaries of a particular organisation. Others think of the environment as encompassing both external and internal environments.

Environmental scanning has been described as 'a kind of radar to scan the world systematically and signal the new, or unexpected, the major and minor'.[23] Choo[24] states that organisations monitor their environments to:

> understand the external forces of change so that they may develop effective responses which secure or improve their position in the future. They scan to avoid surprises, identify threats and opportunities, gain competitive advantage and improve short-term and long-term planning.

2.9.2 Scanning methods

Scanning can be:

- *passive* – for example, reading a quality newspaper or professional journal
- *active* – such as desk or field research in which attention is focused on information relating to a specific industry or task
- *electronic* – this uses a field intelligence agent (FIA), which is comprised of a database, knowledge base, reasoning engine and data-mining unit. FIAs provide environmental

information from multiple sources, comment on environmental trends and changes, and enable users to ascertain whether or not current assumptions are valid or new patterns have emerged.

2.10 Important environmental factors

Important external environmental factors relating to the strategy of an organisation are sector, industry and macro-environmental.

2.10.1 Sector

Sector relates to whether the enterprise is located in the private, public or voluntary sectors of the economy.

The *private sector* includes single traders, partnerships and companies owned by private investors as opposed to the government. There is a wide variety of such undertakings that can be loosely classified according to their primary function into:

- *primary*, or extractive, organisations, such as agriculture, mining, fishing
- *secondary*, or manufacturing and assembly, organisations, such as food or car manufacturers
- *tertiary*, or distributive, organisations, concerned with the physical distribution of goods from producers to consumers, such as transport, wholesalers, retailers or providers of services, such as schools, hospitals.

The *public sector* in the United Kingdom comprises national government, local government, government-owned and controlled agencies and corporations and monetary institutions, such as the armed forces and the National Health Service.

The *voluntary sector* describes bodies that are independent of government and business and are non-profit making, such as charities and churches.

Because of the wide variety of enterprises, some writers prefer to use the term 'organisational' in preference to 'corporate' strategy. Sector factors influence strategic management both at the organisational and functional levels.

At both levels, strategy is influenced by the underlying philosophy of the sector. Thus, what is known as the public–private paradox emphasises that, while business and government have much in common, ultimately they are different. Public-sector and private-sector procurement members of staff, for example, do many of the same things and are both increasingly focused on competitiveness. There are, however, substantial differences that, as shown in Table 2.5, help to determine their respective procurement strategies.

2.10.2 Industry

An industry can be defined as a group of companies within a sector offering products or services that are close substitutes for each other.

Rivalry among competitors is central to the forces contributing to industrial competitiveness. It is important to understand, therefore, the environmental factors that contribute to the attractiveness and competitiveness of an enterprise within the industry.

The five forces model devised by Michael Porter is by far the most widely used model to evaluate industry attractiveness.

Table 2.5 Comparison of some public-sector and private-sector factors relating to procurement strategies

Factor	*Public sector*	*Private sector*
Aims	To provide the end users, members of the general public, with what they need when they need it and at the best value for money	To provide the enterprise with supplies that will enable it to achieve competitive advantage via positioning, cost and differentiation
Profit	Value for money spent irrespective of profit	Value for money spent commensurate with and as a contribution to profitability
Accountability	Procurement officers in central and local government are accountable and subject to audits for the spending of public money	Private procurement is accountable to the shareholders or owners of the undertaking for the spending of private money
Transparency	In the context of public procurement, transparency refers to the ability of all interested parties to know and understand how public procurement is managed	In the context of private procurement, the requirement for transparency is confined to those directly concerned, such as customers, suppliers and similar stakeholders
Procedures	In the interests of transparency, public procedures are characterised by: ■ well-defined regulations and procedures open to public scrutiny, such as standing orders, EU directives ■ clear standardised tender documents and information ■ equal opportunity for all in the bidding process	Fewer standardised procedures and greater flexibility on the part of procurement staff to make unilateral strategic decisions than in the public sector

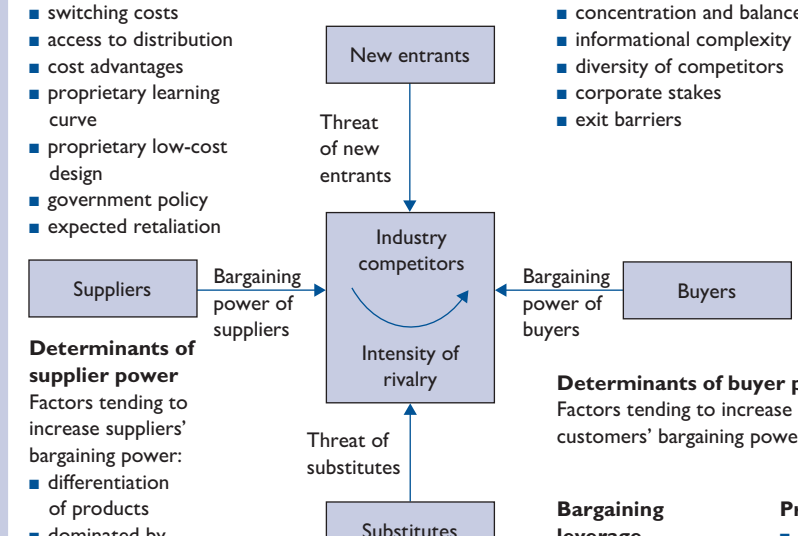
Porter's five forces model

Reference has already been made to Porter's competitive strategy (section 2.7.1). Porter's five forces model is shown in Figure 2.5.

Figure 2.5 illustrates Porter's main principles.

- In any industry, five competitive forces dictate rivalry between competitors and the generic industry structure. These forces are the main players (competitors, buyers, suppliers, substitutes and new entrants), their interrelationships (the five forces) and the factors behind those forces that help to account for industry attractiveness.
- In aggregate, the five forces determine industry profitability because they directly influence the prices an enterprise can charge, its cost structure and investment requirements.
- No enterprise can successfully perform at above average level by endeavouring to be all things to all people. Management must therefore select a strategy that will give the business a competitive advantage. As stated earlier, Porter argues that there are only three generic strategies that can be used, singly or in combination, to create a defensible position or outperform competitors: cost leadership, differentiation and focus on a particular market niche.

Figure 2.5 Porter's analysis of industrial structure in his five forces model



Entry barriers
Factors tending to raise barriers to market entry by new entrants:
- economies of scale
- proprietary product differences (differentiation)
- brand identity
- capital requirements
- switching costs
- access to distribution
- cost advantages
- proprietary learning curve
- proprietary low-cost design
- government policy
- expected retaliation

Rivalry determination
Factors tending to promote active warfare or peaceful cooperation:
- industry growth
- fixed (or storage) costs value added
- intermittent overcapacity
- product difference
- brand identity
- switching costs
- concentration and balance
- informational complexity
- diversity of competitors
- corporate stakes
- exit barriers

Determinants of supplier power
Factors tending to increase suppliers' bargaining power:
- differentiation of products
- dominated by a few suppliers
- suppliers are more concentrated than buyers
- no substitutes
- supplier has more important customers
- supplier input is critical
- importance of volume to the supplier
- cost relative to total purchases in the industry
- threat of forward integration by enterprises in the industry

Determinants of substitution threat
Factors tending to increase rivalry among existing competitors:
- numerous rivals
- equally balanced
- slow growth
- high fixed costs
- low switching costs
- high stakes
- high exit barriers

Determinants of buyer power
Factors tending to increase customers' bargaining power:

Bargaining leverage
- buyer concentration
- buyer volume
- standardised, undifferentiated products
- low profit margins
- threat of backward integration
- buyer has all relevant information regarding prices and supplier availability

Price sensitivity
- price relative to total purchases
- purchase is not very important to the buyer
- product differences
- brand identity
- impact of quality on performance
- buyer products
- decision makers' incentives

A critique of Porter's five forces model

Porter's model has been criticised on several grounds, including the following.

- *Changed economic conditions* – Porter's theories relate to the economic situation of the 1980s, characterised by strong competition, inter-enterprise rivalry and relatively stable structures. They are less relevant in today's dynamic environment in which the Internet and e-business applications have the power to transform entire industries.
- *Identification of new forces* – Downes[25] has identified digitalisation, globalisation and deregulation as three new forces that influence strategy.
  - *Digitalisation* – putting data into digital form for use in a digital computer – has provided all players in any given market with access to more information, thus enabling even external players to change the basis of competition.
  - *Globalisation* enables businesses to buy, sell and compare prices globally. Competitive advantage can be derived from cooperation, ability to develop strategic alliances and manage extensive global networks for the mutual advantage of buyers and sellers.
  - *Deregulation* – that is, a much reduced involvement of central government in the control of such industries as airlines, banking and public utilities.
- Downes states that the foremost differences between what he terms the 'Porter world' and 'the world of new forces' is information technology (IT). The old economy used IT as a tool for implementing change. Today, technology has become the most important driver of change.
- The three forces of digitalisation, globalisation and deregulation have effectively removed the barriers to industrial entry and enabled new competitors and new ways of competing to develop at an accelerated speed.
- *Relationships* – Porter's wording 'bargaining power of suppliers and buyers' suggests adversarial relationships. Current thinking regards suppliers as partners, the relationships with them needing to be nurtured and strengthened so that they become resources based on lasting friendly relationships derived from performance and integrity. Outsourcing relationships may enhance both the efficiency and effectiveness of purchasing.

Nevertheless, Porter's work should still be closely studied by purchasing professionals as it provides perspectives on how suppliers may regard their customers and, conversely, how customers may regard their suppliers.

2.10.3 Macro-environmental factors

These are the changes in the political, economic, social, technological, environmental and legal environments that directly or indirectly affect the organisation, both sector and industry-wise, as well as nationally and globally. These can be recalled by the mnemonic PESTEL:

- **P**olitical – the role of government, that is, regulator or participator, political ideology
- **E**conomic – gross domestic product (GDP), labour rates, monetary and fiscal policies
- **S**ocial – social trends, socio-economic groupings, value systems, ethics
- **T**echnological – changes, rates of technological change, costs and savings, patents
- **E**nvironmental – 'Green' considerations, disposal of products, atmospheric factors
- **L**egal – laws relating to competition, employment, the environment, consumer protection.

2.11 Internal scrutiny

This, in effect, is the internal scanning of resources, culture, value chains, structure and critical success factors.

2.11.1 Resources

Resources commonly identified are:

- *Money* enables an organisation to have the maximum choice between alternatives. An important aspect of money is liquidity or ready availability. Too much money tied up in plant or stocks may limit the ability of an enterprise to take advantage of opportunities.
- *Physical facilities* include plant and machinery. Important strategic factors are location, life, flexibility or alternative uses and the dangers of obsolescence. Such factors influence decisions regarding whether to buy or hire facilities or outsource some operations.
- *Human resources* include the specialised competences of the workforce and how easily specific attributes can be acquired or replaced. A further factor is the extent to which human resources can be replaced by technology. Non-availability of resources may limit the achievement of corporate goals and lead to the search for alternative means of acquiring them, such as via partnership agreements or outsourcing. Other resources, including patents and reputation, may provide an organisation with a competitive advantage over rivals in the same industry.
- *IT resources* facilitate rapid communication between the organisation and its external contacts, including suppliers and customers, in addition to being a source of intelligence.

2.11.2 Culture

Culture is 'the way things are done round here'. Procurement is a vital part of an organisation's culture. The manner in which procurement carries out its professional role will impact on the organisation's reputation. Examples of world-class procurement actions that enhance an organisation's reputation include:

– conducting tender processes in a transparent manner

– providing opportunities for small companies to win contracts

– conducting negotiations in a professional manner

– not engaging in criminal or dubious personal/business practices

– adopting the highest ethical standards

– paying supplier's invoices on time

– not manipulating contracts to gain unfair price advantage.

2.11.3 Value chains and structure

These are dealt with in Chapters 3 and 4, respectively.

2.11.4 Critical success factors (CSFs)

A CSF has been defined as:[26]

> An element of organisational activity which is central to its future success. Critical success factors may change over time and may include such items as product quality, employee attitudes, manufacturing flexibility and brand awareness.

In the design of new products, the early involvement of suppliers may be a critical success factor.

CSFs are linked to key tasks and priorities. *Key tasks* are what must be done to ensure that each critical success factor is achieved. *Priorities* indicate the order in which key tasks are performed.

Some critical success factors relating to procurement strategies include:

- total quality management
- tailored supply chains for specific categories
- just-in-time deliveries with strategic emergency inventory availability
- total cycle time reduction
- world-class supplier relationships
- complete visibility of the cost drivers on strategic purchases
- e-procurement platforms
- KPI's in place for the procurement department
- training and development of procurement staff and stakeholders
- environmental, product safety and ethical standards.

Procurement must have the objective of performing at the highest level to deliver a competitive edge to their organisation.

2.12 Strategy formulation

As we have seen, strategies can be formulated by a process of rational planning or may emerge incrementally. These two approaches are sometimes presented as conflicting, based on the concept that strategic planning is inimical to creative thinking. Instead, however, the two approaches should be seen as complementary. A great enterprise such as the Second World War Normandy landings in 1944 could not have been accomplished without creative thinking involving vision, creativity and incremental learning based on constantly changing intelligence. Such thinking, however, had to become relevant to operations by means of strategic thinking. As Lawrence[27] observes:

> The essential point . . . is that strategic thinking and strategic planning are both necessary and none is adequate without the other, in an effective strategy making regime. The real challenge is how to transform today's planning process in a way that incorporates, rather than undermines strategic thinking.

Strategy formulation at corporate, business and functional levels relates to the:

- formulation of a vision statement
- preparation of a mission statement

- derivation of objectives
- application of SWOT analysis.

2.12.1 Vision statements

Vision, from a strategic aspect, has been defined as:[28]

> A mental representation of strategy created or at least expressed in the head of the leader. That vision serves both as an inspiration and a sense of what needs to be done.

Such a vision is often the starting point for strategy formulation. The vision must, however, be communicated to others in a mission statement.

A vision statement articulates a realistic, credible and positive projection of the future state of an organisation or functions or operations within that operation.

A typical vision statement for the procurement activity might be:

To develop, as part of an integrated supply chain, world-class procurement strategies, policies, procedures and personnel to ensure that, by means of effective sourcing, competitive advantage is achieved by, for example, lowered supplies costs, commensurate with quality, shortened supply cycles and good supplier relationships.

Dr Charles Handy, an acknowledged management guru, associated effective leader behaviour with an ability to develop a vision. He set out five conditions, which in his view need to be met if visionary leadership is to be effective. These are:

1. The vision has to be different. It has to be a new story, almost a dream.
2. The vision has to make sense, be challenging but capable of being achieved.
3. It must be understandable and stick in people's minds.
4. The leader must exemplify the vision by his or her behaviour and display commitment.
5. To be successful, the vision has to be a shared one.

The Avon vision statement reads:

> To be the company that best understands and satisfies the product, service and self-fulfilment needs of women – globally.

2.12.2 Objectives

Objectives are explicit statements of the results the organisation wishes to achieve. Corporate and business objectives are medium-term to long-term, strategic and general, and usually cover growth, profitability, technology, products and markets. Functional or operational objectives are short-term, tactical and specific. Thus, 'elements of strategy at a higher management level become objectives at a lower one'.[29]

As we saw earlier, the classic definition of the overall procurement task is:

> To obtain materials of the right *quality* in the right *quantity* from the right *source* delivering to the right *place* at the right *time* at the right *price*.

This definition is somewhat simplistic for the following reasons:

- the term 'right' is situational – each company will define 'right' differently
- what is 'right' will change as the overall procurement context and environment change

- the above rights must be consistent with corporate goals and objectives from which functional/operating goals and objectives are derived
- in practice, some rights are irreconcilable – for example, it may be possible to obtain the right quality, but not the right price as 'the best suppliers are often the busiest but also the most expensive'.

Procurement objectives have therefore to be balanced according to overall corporate strategy and requirements at a given time.

An alternative definition of the key purpose for the purchasing and supply chain, derived for the UK Purchasing and Supply Lead Body for National Vocational Qualifications by the University of Ulster, is:

> To provide the interface between customer and supplier in order to plan, obtain, store and distribute as necessary, supplies of materials, goods and services [m, g, s] to enable the organisation to satisfy its external and internal customers.

As shown in Table 2.6, procurement objectives derive from corporate objectives.

Short-term objectives are those set for a short period – one year, say – so that actual achievement can be measured against the original objectives, distinguishing between factors relating to attainment or non-attainment for which the procurement activity and its staff can be held accountable. The technique of management by objectives is discussed in section 17.7.

Table 2.6 Procurement and corporate objectives

Business objectives	*Procurement and supply objectives*
A statement of the position the organisation is aiming for in its markets, including market share	The objective of providing the quantity and quality of supplies required by the market share and market positioning objectives
A key objective of, say, moving out of speciality markets and entering volume markets	A key objective of developing new, larger suppliers and materials flow systems more geared to larger numbers of fewer parts while keeping the total inventory volume low
A key objective to build new businesses that will generate positive cash flow as well as reasonable profits	Contribute to cash flow improvement by means of lower average inventory and by negotiating smaller delivery lots and/or longer payment terms
A plan to develop some specific new products or services	A plan to develop appropriate suppliers
An overall production/capacity plan, including an overall policy on make or buy	A plan to develop systems that integrate capacity planning and/or procurement planning, together with the policy on make or buy and partnering relationships
A plan to introduce a cost reduction programme	A plan to introduce supplies standardisation, supplier reduction programmes and e-procurement
A financial plan, setting out in broad terms how the proposed capital expenditure is to be financed, together with an outline timescale and an order in which the objectives need to be achieved	A financial plan, setting out broadly the profit contribution expected from procurement and supply, together with the time in which it should be achieved and the priorities of the objectives

2.12.3 SWOT analysis

Environmental scanning and internal scrutiny described earlier in this chapter provide the intelligence for a SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) analysis. Figure 2.6 indicates that some form of SWOT analysis or matrix is an essential preliminary step in the formulation of strategies designed to convert the inspirations expressed in vision and mission statements into realities and ensure that the objectives are achieved.

In Figure 2.6:

- S → O *strategies* are those that seek to utilise organisational strengths to exploit external opportunities
- *W* → O *strategies* are those that seek to rectify organisational weaknesses so that external opportunities can be exploited
- S → *T strategies* are those that utilise organisational strengths to reduce vulnerability to external threats
- *W* → *T strategies* establish defensive plans to prevent organisational weaknesses from being highly vulnerable to external threats.

SWOT analysis can be undertaken at all three organisational levels – corporate, business and functional. An example of a SWOT analysis leading to some possible *W* → *T* strategies is where the organisation is under some threat as the manufacture of a major product requires the purchase of a highly sensitive raw material for which there is a high demand and few suppliers. In such a case, the SWOT/TOWS matrix may be used, as shown in Figure 2.7.

SWOT analysis has been criticised on the grounds that, in practice, such exercises are often poorly structured, hastily conducted and result in vague and inconsistent lists of subjective factors reflecting the interests and prejudices of the proposers. Such criticisms can be countered by:

- *making the analysis a group process* in which the free flow of ideas is encouraged
- *the use of qualifiers* requires the movers of statements for inclusion in the analysis to give reasons, so, instead of just saying 'too much reliance on one supplier', the

Figure 2.6 SWOT matrix

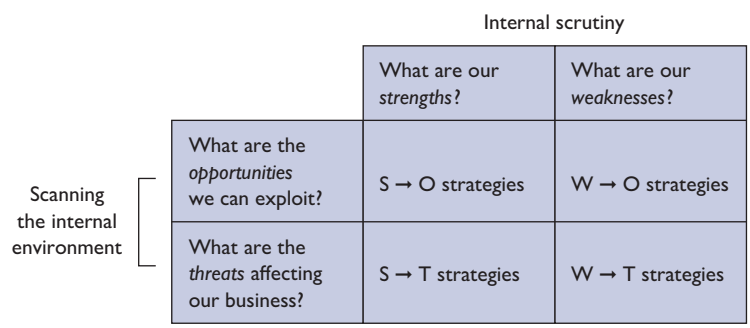


Figure 2.7 SWOT analysis applied to a supplies situation

STRENGTHS	WEAKNESSES
■ Purchasing power ■ Regular demand ■ Purchasing probity and goodwill	■ Highly sensitive imported material
THREATS	**OPPORTUNITIES**
■ Competition for the material from competitors ■ Few suppliers ■ Exchange rates	■ Alternative materials ■ Possibility of vertical integration with a supplier ■ Outsourcing ■ Partnerships ■ Virtual company formation

proposer would be required to add 'because the supplier takes our business for granted and we are possibly paying more than necessary'.

2.13 The evaluation of alternative strategies

In a given situation, there are normally several alternative strategies that are available. The aim is to evaluate several strategic options – including a 'do nothing' or 'do the minimum' option, which, where appropriate, may be included, even if it is unacceptable in operational terms.

Rumelt[30] identifies four principles that can be applied to strategic evaluation:

- *consistency* – the strategy must not present mutually inconsistent policies
- *consonance* – the strategy must represent an adaptive response to the external environment and the critical changes occurring within it
- *advantage* – the strategy must provide for the creation and/or maintenance of a competitive advantage in the selected area of authority
- *feasibility* – the strategy must neither overtax available resources nor create insoluble problems.

An alternative set of criteria is that a given strategy should, first, meet the requirements of a given situation, second, provide sustainable competitive advantage and, third, improve company performance.

2.13.1 Methods of strategy evaluation

There are several possible approaches to choosing a strategy that meets the above criteria. Porter's positional approach to strategy formation is simply the selection of one of three generic positions based on an analysis of the organisation's position in the environment.

Other important approaches include lifecycle analysis, scenario planning, return analysis, profitability analysis, risk analysis, resource deployment analysis, non-financial factor appraisal and portfolio planning and analysis.

2.13.2 Lifecycle analysis

This is based on the concept that all products in their original, unmodified form have a finite lifespan, as shown in Figure 2.8.

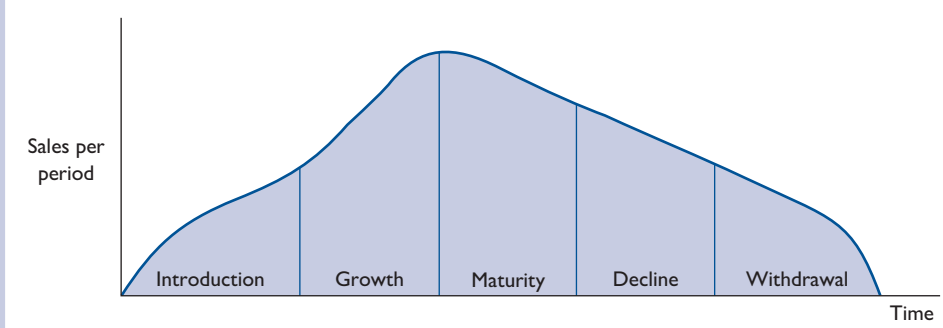
The product lifecycle or Gopertz curve plots the actual or potential sales of a new product over time and shows the stages of development – growth, maturity, decline and eventual withdrawal. Important aspects of product lifecycles are:

- *their length* – from development to withdrawal, which may be short with products subject to rapid technological advances
- *their shape* – not all products have the same shape to their curve; so-called high learning, low learning, fashion and fad products have different curves reflecting different marketing strategies
- *the product* – this can vary depending on whether the product lifecycle applies to a *class* (i.e. the entire product category or industry), a *form* (i.e. variations within the class) or a *brand*.

From the strategic aspect, the lifecycle approach has become increasingly important for the following reasons:

- *environmental factors* – such as the relative environmental performance of a product, as in the case of purchasing packaging, paper and the subsequent management of waste
- *durability factors* – such as competition between substitute commodity products – aluminium and steel in the car industry, for example
- *obsolescence* – with regard to capital equipment, which may be a factor in deciding to adopt an outsourcing strategy
- *changing demand* – this concept of the product lifecycle helps marketing managers to recognise both that products may need to be continually changed to prevent

Figure 2.8 Product lifecycle



sales decline, and that there is a need to formulate marketing strategies to stimulate demand; this strategy may impact procurement strategies, such as how far in advance to place orders for materials or components that are likely to change.

2.13.3 Scenario planning

Scenario planning consists of developing a conceptual forecast of the future based on given assumptions. Thus, by starting with different assumptions, different future scenarios can be presented. The assumptions can be based on the examination of trends relating to economic, political and social factors that may affect corporate objectives and supply and demand forecasts. Planning therefore involves deciding which scenario is most likely to occur and devising appropriate strategies for it. An example is examining how the prices of sensitive commodities, such as gold, change in the scenarios of glut and shortage.

2.13.4 Return analysis

Return analysis – the returns likely to accrue from the adoption of a particular strategy – may be done by such means as cost–benefit analysis or profitability analysis.

Cost–benefit analysis may be defined as:

> A comparison between the costs of the resources used, plus any other costs imposed by an activity (such as pollution, environmental damage) and the value of the financial and non-financial benefits derived.

Cost–benefit analysis often involves a consideration of trade-offs. Thus, when considering which of several alternative materials or components to use, a number of cost–benefit trade-offs need to be considered. Generally, increased quality means increased prices and, ultimately, increased costs. The decision on which to specify must therefore attempt to balance the interrelationships of cost, quality and projected selling prices with company objectives relating to sales quantities and profitability.

2.13.5 Setting a profit goal

The Queensland Government in Australia set out, clearly, what needs to be considered when setting a profit goal. They are:

1. Fixed overhead costs. These will stay the same regardless of the production output; examples are rent, utilities, insurance and licensing fees.
2. Variable costs. These include labour and the cost of raw materials.
3. Owners' annual income and provision for shareholders
4. Return on borrowed capital
5. Return for risk
6. Return for future growth.

Profit drivers are factors that have a significant impact on the bottom line. Examples of financial profit drivers are:

- price
- fixed costs

- variable costs
- sales volume
- cost of debt
- inventory.

Examples of non-financial profit drivers are:

- productivity
- client satisfaction
- quality of the product or service
- training
- employee satisfaction
- business culture and values
- product and process innovation
- market share
- employee safety.

2.13.6 Risk analysis

Some degree of corporate risk will always exist. Typically, the words 'catastrophic' and 'material' are used to highlight the issue. However, risk is a more complex business issue. Consideration of the following three comments provides a sharp focus.

> While risk-taking is a fundamental driving force in business and entrepreneurship, the cost of risk management failures is still often underestimated, both internally and externally, including the cost in terms of management time needed to rectify the situation. Corporate governance should therefore ensure that risks are understood, managed, and, when appropriate, communicated.[31]

> There is scope to make risk governance standards more operational, without narrowing their flexibility to apply them to different companies and situations.[32]

> Perhaps one of the greatest shocks from the financial crisis has been the widespread failure of risk management. In many cases risk was not managed on an enterprise basis and not adjusted to corporate strategy.[33]

These comments are from the OECD sixth peer review based on the OECD Principles of Corporate Governance. The peer-review process is designed to facilitate effective implementation of the OECD Principles and to assist market participants, regulators and policy makers.

At a simplistic level, from a strategic perspective, a risk is something that may have an impact on the achievement of objectives. A comprehensive insight into corporate risks can be gained by accessing the United States Securities and Exchange Commission FORM 10-K required pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

In respect of the fiscal year ended December 31, 2013, the Coca-Cola Company reported the following risk factors:

- obesity concerns may reduce demand for some of our products
- water scarcity and poor quality could negatively impact the Coca-Cola system's production costs and capacity

- if we do not anticipate and address evolving consumer preference, our business could suffer
- increased competition and capabilities in the marketplace could hurt our business
- product safety and quality concerns, including concerns related to perceived artificiality of ingredients, could negatively affect our business
- increased demand for food products and decreased agricultural productivity may negatively affect our business
- changes in the retail landscape or the loss of key retail or foodservice customers could adversely affect our financial performance
- if we are unable to expand our operations in emerging and developing markets, our growth rate could be negatively affected
- fluctuations in foreign currency rates could affect our financial results
- if interest rates increase, our net income could be negatively affected
- we rely on our bottling partners for a significant portion of our business. If we are unable to maintain good relationships with our bottling partners, our business could suffer
- if our bottling partners' financial conditions deteriorates, our business and financial results could be affected
- increases in income tax rates, changes in income tax laws or unfavourable resolution of tax matters could have a material adverse impact on our financial results
- increased or new indirect taxes in the United States or in one or more of our other major markets could negatively affect our business
- increase in the cost, disruption of supply or shortage of energy or fuels could affect our profitability
- increase in the cost, disruption of supply or shortage of ingredients, other raw materials or packaging materials could harm our business.

There are 20 more risks in the FORM 10-K. It is strongly suggested by the author that readers study these in order to gain a comprehensive insight into corporate risk exposure.

2.13.7 Resource deployment analysis

Resource deployment analysis is the assessment of the likely effect on key resources of adopting a particular strategy. Thus, a decision whether or not to adopt an outsourcing strategy with regard to a support service will be preceded by an analysis of the effects on tangible and intangible resources, including finance, human resources, competitive advantage and growth.

2.13.8 Non-financial factor appraisal

When making strategic decisions, it is important to consider such non-financial aspects as:

- enhancement (or otherwise) of the organisational image
- effects on suppliers, customers, competitors and the general public
- environmental and ethical factors
- the likelihood of change, development, obsolescence

- staff and union reaction to the strategy
- ethical implications of the proposed strategy.

2.13.9 Portfolio planning and analysis

Portfolio planning and analysis aim to assist with strategic decisions as to where to invest scarce organisational resources among a number of competing business opportunities. This approach is analogous to an investment manager deciding which shares to buy with the aim of creating a portfolio designed to meet a given investment strategy, such as achieving growth or providing income.

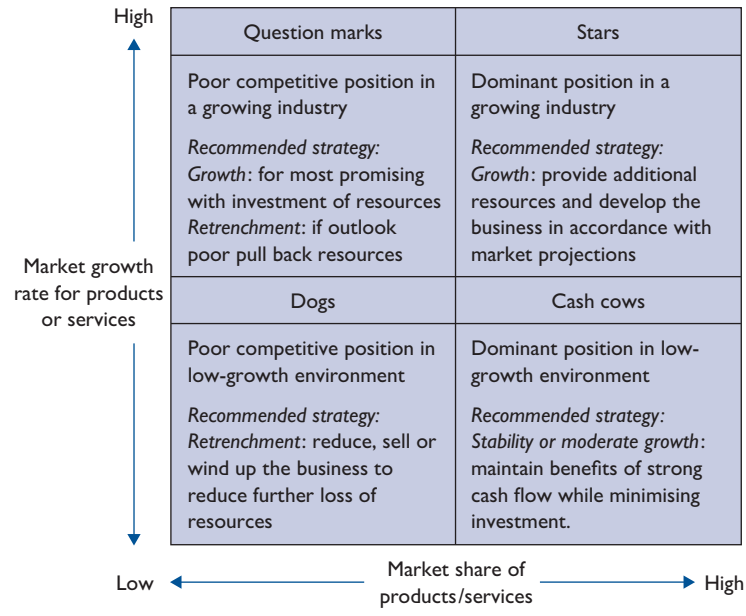
2.13.10 The BCG portfolio

One of the most popular portfolio approaches is the Boston Consulting Group (BCG) matrix. This approach to strategy formulation, analyses business opportunities according to market growth rate and market share. As shown in Figure 2.9, based on these criteria, businesses can be categorised as:

- *stars* – businesses with high market share and high growth
- *cash cows* – businesses with high market share and low growth
- *question marks* – businesses with low market share and high growth
- *dogs* – businesses with low market share and low growth.

The BCG matrix can be used to decide what strategy(ies) to adopt at all three strategic organisational levels: corporate, business and functional/operational.

Figure 2.9 Corporate strategies within the BCG matrix



2.13.11 Procurement portfolio management

In 1983 Kraljic[34] introduced the first portfolio approach for use in procurement and supply management, although a similar 'matrix' was described by Fisher[35] in 1970.

Kraljic's starting premise is that:

> Threats of resource depletion and raw materials scarcity, political turbulence and government intervention in supply markets, intensified competition and accelerating technological changes have ended the days of no surprises. As dozens of companies have learned, supply and demand patterns can be upset virtually overnight.

The Kraljic portfolio aims to guide managers so that they can recognise the weakness of their organisation and formulate strategies for guarding against supplies disruption.

Kraljic states that the *profit impact* of a given supply item can be defined in terms of:

- volume purchased
- percentage of total cost
- impact on product quality or business growth.

Supply risk for that item is assessed in terms of:

- availability
- number of suppliers
- competitive demand
- make-or-buy opportunities
- storage risks
- substitution opportunities.

These profits and risk factors enable all purchased items to be assigned to one of the four quadrants shown in Figure 2.10.

Nellore and Söderquist[36] state that all portfolio approaches to procurement involve three common steps:

1. analysis of the products and their classification
2. analysis of the supplier relationships required to deliver the products
3. action plans to match product requirements to supplier relationships.

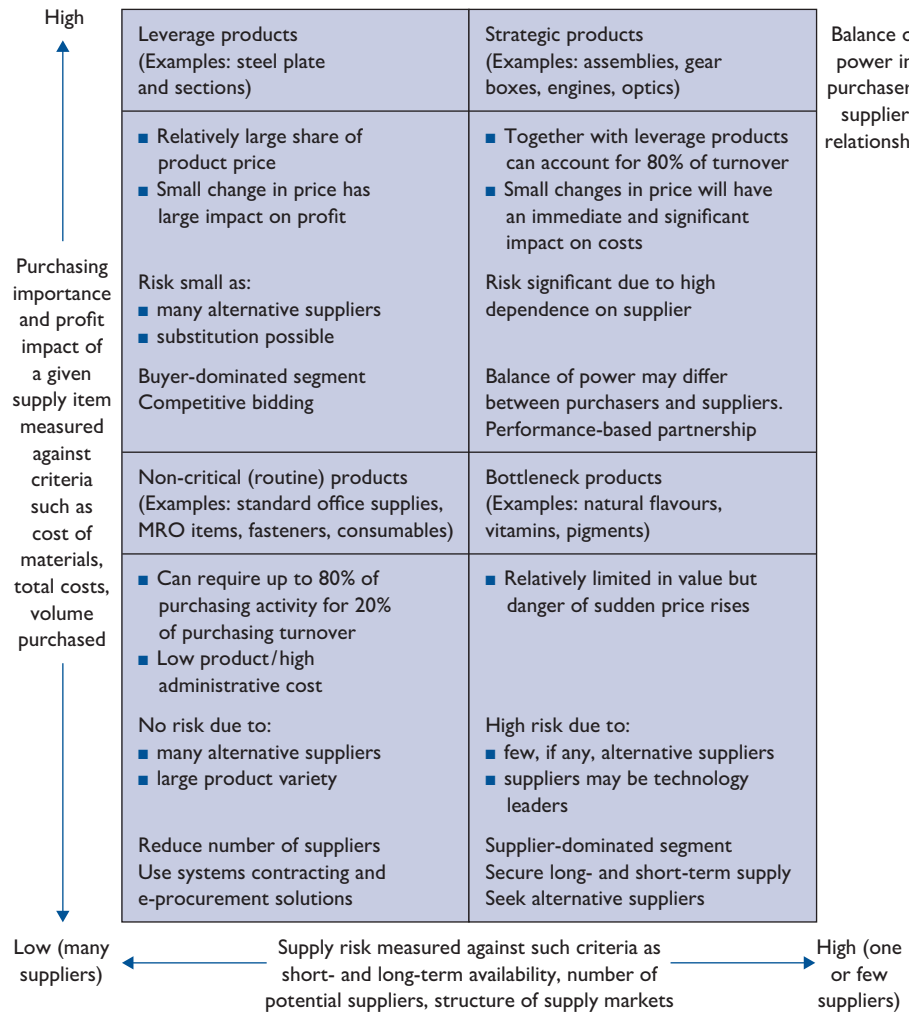
Thus, the steps for the use of the matrix in Figure 2.10 are:

- list all purchases in descending value order
- analyse the risk and market complexity of each purchase
- position each item on the matrix accordingly
- periodically, decide whether or not to move a particular purchase to an alternative quadrant.

The aims and possible tasks associated with each quadrant are shown in Table 2.7.

Gelderman and van Weele[37] point out that 'in general little is known about *the actual use* of purchasing portfolio models, or how purchasing professionals position commodities and suppliers into the portfolio and develop strategies from its use'. To gain insights into such issues, we interviewed a limited number of executives and purchasing

Figure 2.10 The Krajic portfolio matrix (adapted)



professionals employed by a large Dutch chemical company. The interviewees were selected for their experience in the use of portfolio models in actual purchasing situations. Their findings in relation to the company DSM may be summarised as follows.

Basic

- Generally, matrix movements follow a clockwise pattern from bottleneck to non-critical; non-critical to leverage; leverage to strategic.
- DSM works on the principle that the non-critical and bottleneck quadrants should be as empty as possible.

Table 2.7 Aims, tasks and information associated with each procurement focus

Procurement focus	*Aims*	*Main tasks*	*Required information*
Leverage aims (high profit impact, low supply risk)	■ Obtain best short-term deal ■ Maximise cost savings	■ Ensure suppliers are aware that they are in a competitive situation ■ Group similar items together to increase value and quality for quantity discounts ■ Utilise blanket orders but keep contract terms relatively short (1–2 years) ■ Search for alternative products/ suppliers ■ Negotiate value-added arrangements – VMI, JIT, storage ■ Consider moving into strategic quadrant	■ Good market data ■ Short-term to medium-term demand planning ■ Accurate vendor data ■ Price/transport rate forecasts
Strategic items (high profit impact, high supply risk)	■ Maximise cost reductions ■ Minimise risk ■ Create competitive advantage ■ Create mutual commitment to long-term relationships	■ Prepare accurate forecasts of future requirements ■ Carefully analyse supply risk ■ Seek long-term supplier/partnering agreements (3–5 years) with built-in arrangements for continuous improvement and performance measurement ■ Consider joint ventures with selected suppliers and customers to gain competitive advantage ■ Take prompt action to rectify slipping performance ■ Possibly move purchasing back into leverage quadrant until confidence restored	■ Highly detailed market data ■ Long-term supply and demand trend information ■ Good competitive intelligence ■ Industry cost curves
Non-critical (routine) items (low profit impact, low supply risk)	■ Reduce administrative procedures and costs ■ Eliminate complexity ■ Improve operational efficiency	■ Simplify requisitioning, buying and payment ■ Standardise where possible ■ Consolidate and buy from consortia ■ Encourage direct ordering by users/internal customers against call-off contracts ■ Use e-procurement ■ Consider clustering into leverage quadrant	■ Good market overview ■ Short-term demand forecast ■ Economic order quantity ■ Inventory levels
Bottleneck items (low profit items, high supply risk)	■ Reduce costs ■ Secure short-term and long-term supply	■ Forecast future requirements as accurately as possible ■ Consolidate purchases to secure leverage ■ Determine importance attached to purchases by supplier ■ See if specification measures – buffer stocks, consigned stocks, transportation ■ Search for alternative products/supplies ■ Contract to reduce risk	■ Medium-term demand/supply forecasts ■ Very good market data ■ Inventory costs ■ Maintenance plans

Bottleneck items

For processed materials, a key question is whether standardisation is possible, permitting movement to the leverage quadrant.

Where standardisation is not possible, approaches reported are:

- capacity deals, concentrating purchases with one supplier
- obtaining a better bottleneck position by reducing supply risk on the one hand and obtaining a better negotiating position on the other
- 'staying in the corner and making the best of it' by keeping stocks, hedging, broadening the specification, searching for alternative suppliers and so on.

Many non-critical (MRO) and equipment items are 'bottleneck' due to over specification. Less complicated and more generic specifications allow 'pooling' of purchases across units/groups and consequent movement from the bottleneck quadrant to the non-critical one and/or non-critical to the leverage quadrant.

Non-critical items

At DSM, the main products are office supplies and services. As stated above, the main considerations influencing movement to the leverage quadrant are standardisation and pooling. Where pooling is not an option, purchase cards are useful for individual non-strategic commodities.

Leverage items

DSM distinguishes between 'strategic partnerships' and 'partnerships of convenience'.

Only a limited number of supplies qualify for movement from the leverage to the strategic quadrant, which is feasible when:

- the supplier has proper capabilities for co-design
- the purchaser (DSM) is prepared to spend time on supplier development
- the purchaser has sufficient levels of trust in the supplier at all organisational levels.

When a supplier does not qualify as a strategic supplier, the focus is on efficiency and cost reduction rather than design optimisation.

Partnerships can be either technology (joint venture, co-development, concurrent engineering) or logistics-driven (JIT). The latter are regarded as 'partnerships of convenience' or tactical solutions to tactical problems and reside in the leverage quadrant.

Strategic items

Successful strategic partnerships are rare, and DSM policy is to reduce or restrict dependence on the supplier involved. Partnerships, over time, may become unsatisfactory or the supplier does not wish to be involved in joint development.

With underachieving partners, DSM may adopt such approaches as supplier development, making the product less complicated and developing new suppliers.

Conclusions

While recognising the limitation of their investigation, Geldermann and van Weele concluded that:

- the portfolio approach is helpful in positioning commodities/supplies in different matrix quadrants

- the pre-eminent value of the approach is in helping procurement practitioners to move commodities/suppliers around specific quadrants to reduce dependence on specific suppliers
- the Kraljic portfolio is 'an effective tool for discussing visualising and illustrating the possibilities of differentiated procurement strategies . . . it is a powerful tool for coordinating procurement strategies among various, fairly autonomous business units'.

In addition, the Kraljic categories provide a useful way of classifying purchases by total spend under each heading.

There are various modifications or variants to the Kraljic matrix, of which possibly the best-known one is that of Bensaou.[38] One objection to procurement portfolio models is that they do not take account of the supplier's perspective. Using the complexity of the supply market (ask yourself, 'In practice are there many or few suppliers?') and the complexity of the buyer markets ('Many or few buyers?'), Kamann[39] has developed the alternative matrix shown in Figure 2.11.

Figure 2.11 identifies four classifications of products:

- *generic items* – standardised commodities
- *tailorised items* – items produced using flexible technology – mass customisation
- *proprietary products* – brand names, such as Microsoft
- *custom design* – the real one-to-one relationships.

By combining the Kamann and Kraljic matrices we obtain a cube, as shown in Figure 2.12. This cube reflects both the complexity of the supplier's market (from the procurement perspective) and the buyer's market (from the supplier's perspective).

Kamann observes, inter alia, the following.

- Parts of the strategic and bottleneck items belong to the proprietary column (one monopolistic or very few oligopolistic suppliers and many buyers) – The chances of getting adapted product specifications for such items are therefore small. This is especially true for smaller buyers, who may deal with agents rather than directly with producers.

Figure 2.11 The buyer's market from the supplier's perspective

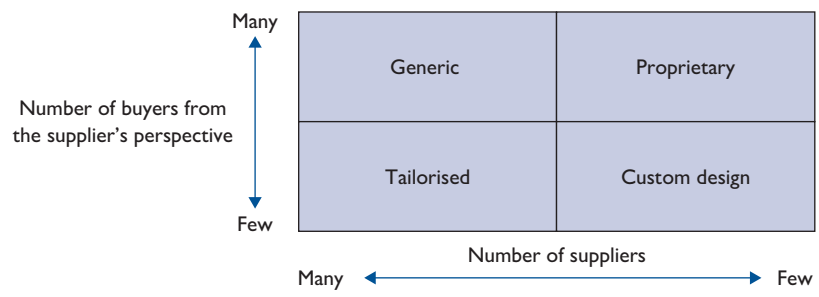
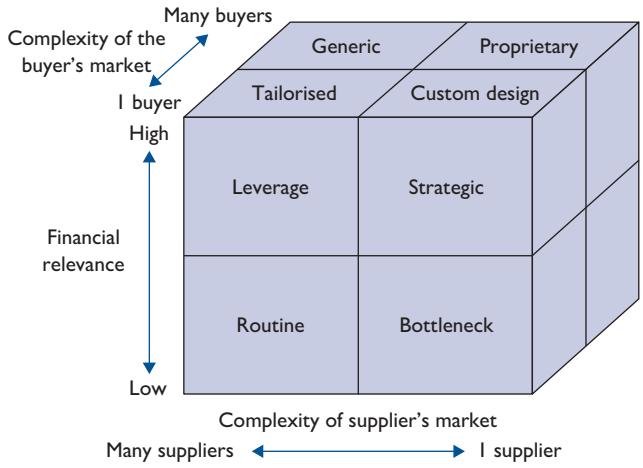


Figure 2.12 The Kamann cube



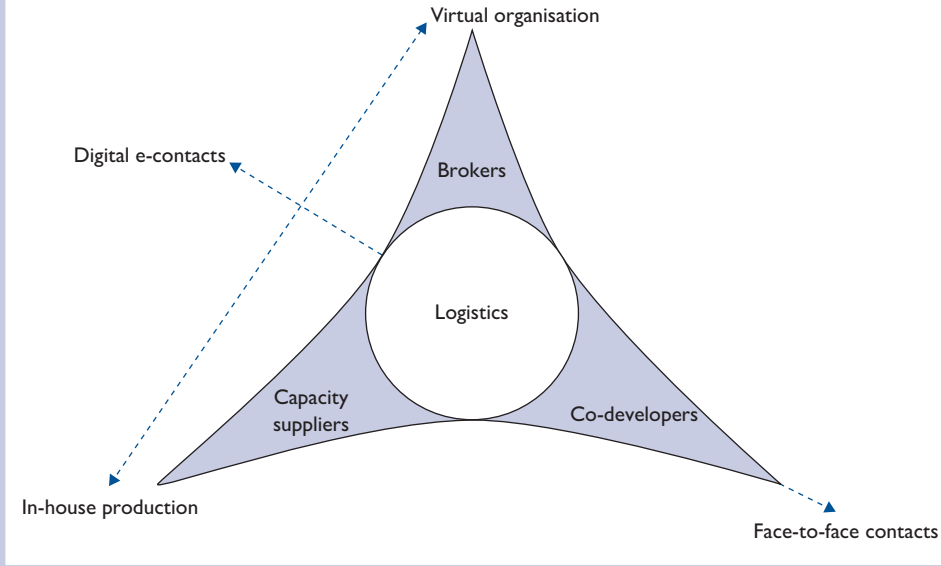
- *Many companies differentiate between various types of leverage items in their supplier strategy* – A food multinational, for example, differentiates between simple products (such as potatoes) and more complicated products (such as a complete meal). For complicated products, joint value analysis involving customers and suppliers, is used to standardise products across markets and producers.
- *Purchasing procedures* – generic, tailored and proprietary items can be well integrated. Custom design requires many face-to-face contacts. Suppliers can be categorised as:
  - *brokers* – potentially virtual organisations that just redistribute orders, organise and collect leveraged buying power, combined with spot buying on the Internet
  - *capacity suppliers* – actually produce goods and services
  - *co-developers* – concerned with product development and design requiring much face-to-face contact and long-term relationships. Logistics is 'the glue that blends the business processes of brokers, capacity suppliers and co-developers'. These relationships are depicted in Figure 2.13.

2.14 Strategy implementation

Strategy implementation is concerned with converting a strategic plan into action, and doing what needs to be done to achieve the targeted strategic goals and objectives. The principal differences between strategy formulation and strategy implementation are shown in Table 2.8.

Strategy implementation should be seen as a learning process from which all organisational levels can benefit.

Figure 2.13 Co-developer relationships



2.14.1 The main stages of strategy implementation

1. Communicate strategic plans to all who have not been involved in their formulation. Good communication helps to avoid negative reactions, particularly where strategies involve significant change.
2. Obtain commitment from those concerned. This involves disclosure and discussion in consultative processes, such as meetings and team briefings.
3. Framing policies and procedures.
4. Setting operational targets and objectives and ensuring that these are related to corporate objectives.

Table 2.8 Contrasts between strategy formulation and implementation

Strategy formulation	*Strategy implementation*
The positioning of forces before the action	Management of forces during the action
Focuses on effectiveness	Focuses on efficiency
Is primarily an intellectual process	Is primarily an operational process
Requires good initiative and analytical skills	Requires special motivation and leadership skills
Requires coordination of a few individuals	Requires coordination of many people

5 Assigning responsibilities and commensurate authority to individuals and teams for the achievement of objectives.
6 Changing organisational structures, where necessary.
7 Allocation of resources and agreeing budgets.
8 Providing employees with required training.
9 Constantly monitoring the success or otherwise of strategies and making required revisions.

Resource allocation and policies are important aspects of the above activities. Organisational structures are considered in Chapter 4 and procedures in Chapter 6.

2.14.2 Resource allocation

In most organisations the financial, physical, human and technological resources allocated to a function/activity will be reduced to quantitative terms and expressed in budgets or financial statements of the resources needed to achieve specific objectives or implement a formulated strategy.

2.14.3 Policies

Policies are instruments for strategy implementation. A policy is:

> a body of principles, expressed or implied, laid down to direct an enterprise towards its objectives and guide executives in decision making.

Policies are mandatory and must be adhered to by all people and activities throughout the organisation.

It is useful to consider the advantages of policy generally and policies for procurement specifically.

The advantages of policies

At corporate, functional and operational levels, policies have the following advantages:

- corporate policies provide guidelines to executives when formulating functional and operating strategies
- policies provide authority based on principle and/or precedent for a given course of action
- they provide a basis for management control, allow coordination across organisational units and reduce the time managers spend making decisions
- they provide management by exception, providing guidelines for routine actions, so a new decision is required only in exceptional circumstances
- they lead to uniformity of procedures and consistency in thought and action.

Procurement policies

Typical examples include the following:

- Ethical procurement policy (Vodafone)

  It is the policy of the Board of Vodafone Group Plc. that local operating companies should only deal with suppliers of goods or services that comply with Vodafone's ethical standards.

These ethical standards will form the Code of Ethical Purchasing ('CEP'). It is each supplier's responsibility to establish procedures to comply with this code. Breaching the CEP will result in an immediate termination of the relationship or in a detailed corrective action plan to be agreed with the supplier.

- Purchasing policy (Carnegie Mellon University)

  The goal of purchasing policies and procedures is to provide reasonably priced, high-quality goods and services to end users, while preserving organisational, financial and civic accountability.

- Environmental purchasing policy (Yorkshire Wolds and Coast Primary Care Trust)

  In pursuit of the organisation's objectives relating to sustainability, we recognise the critical need to act as a role model, by carrying out purchasing activities in an environmentally responsible manner. We will therefore:

  - comply with all relevant environmental legislation;
  - encourage and persuade suppliers to investigate and introduce environmentally friendly processes and products;
  - educate our suppliers concerning the organisation's sustainable development strategy;
  - ensure that, where appropriate, environmental criteria are used in the award of contracts;
  - specify, wherever possible and reasonably practicable within the financial constraints operating within a cash limited public service, the use of environmentally friendly materials and products;
  - ensure that suppliers' environmental credentials are considered in the supplier appraisal process;
  - ensure that consideration is given to inclusion, within all specifications, of a facility for potential suppliers to submit prices for environmentally alternatives; and
  - ensure that appropriate consideration is given to the costs and benefits of environmentally friendly alternatives.

Policy statements can be written in relation to virtually every aspect of procurement activity. Other important areas for which policy statements may be prepared include:

- procurement authority – who may purchase and limitations on authority
- use of purchasing cards
- procurement of capital equipment
- environmental policies
- disposal of waste and surplus
- buying from SMEs and local purchasing
- e-procurement
- ethical policies.

In general, the procurement policies of individual organisations should conform to three basic principles:

- procurement policies should aim to select and procure, in an economically rational manner, the best possible goods and services available
- suppliers worldwide should be eligible to participate in procurement transactions on open, fair and transparent principles and easy-to-understand, simple procedures

- procurement transactions have an important contribution to make to society worldwide – for example, corporate procurement practices should consider the effective preservation of natural resources and protection of the environment.

Procurement policies are usually specified in a procurement manual that is regularly revised. The policies may be varied to meet an exceptional situation, such as a breakdown in supplies, but this should only be done on the authority of the executive who has ultimate responsibility for procurement.

2.14.4 An example of a strategy implementation plan

An example of a public-sector organisation plan is shown in Figure 2.14.[40] The 11 headings of the plan can easily be adapted to the requirements of a private-sector enterprise.

2.15 Post-implementation evaluation, control and review

This is concerned with verifying the degree to which implemented strategies are fulfilling the mission and objectives of the organisation. Evaluation differs from control. Post-implementation evaluation can apply the principles listed in section 2.12. Spekman[41] states that the objective of evaluation is to enable procurement managers to understand both the process and result of strategic planning and offers the following list of evaluation criteria:

- *Internal consistency*
  - Are the procurement strategies mutually achievable?
  - Do they address corporate/division objectives?
  - Do they reinforce each other? Is there synergy?
  - Do the strategies focus on crucial procurement issues?
- *Environmental fit*
  - Do the procurement strategies exploit environmental opportunities?
  - Do they deal with external threats?
- *Resource fit*
  - Can the strategies be carried out in the light of resource constraints?
  - Is the timing consistent with the department's and/or business's ability to adapt to the change?
- *Communication and implementation*
  - Are the strategies understood by key implementers?
  - Is there organisational commitment?
  - Is there sufficient managerial capability to support effective procurement planning?

The control process involves four stages, as shown in Figure 2.15. Setting standards is not easy, owing to the multitude of possibilities.

Normally, specific performance standards can be grouped under four headings:

Figure 2.14 An example of a strategy implementation plan

Aims

To support the achievement of the council's key objectives and allow concentration of more resources, both financial and staff time, on delivering core tasks. This will be done by securing best value for money, reducing or managing risk and modernising related business processes by adopting best practice procurement techniques for all bought-in external goods and services.

Objectives

1 Take a *strategic overview* of corporate procurement.
- Undertake portfolio analysis to identify key spend areas and supplies.
- Identify scope for aggregation of demand into large/corporate contracts.
- Identify scope for collaborative arrangements.
- Identify the procurement community within BFBC.
- Create procurement performance measures against agreed baseline.
- Prepare an annual report to the executive board.

2 Establish procurement as specific element in *corporate and departmental planning process.*
- Incorporate council's procurement strategy and this implementation plan into the council's annual policy and performance plan.
- Establish procurement strategy/plan for each individual department as part of annual service plans.
- Review plans annually in normal planning process.

3 Adopt a commercial approach, in line with *best value principles*, to all procurement decisions.
- Evaluate all bids on quality as well as whole life costs whenever appropriate.
- Review procurement processes and contract regulations (and keep them under review).
- Prepare process guide in the form of a procurement manual and best practice toolkit with standard documentation and procedures to help department staff.
- Ensure, in addition, that departments have access to professional advice/involvement wherever needed.

4 Development scope for *e-procurement.*
- Forge links with neighbouring authorities to identify scope for collaborative procurement and establishment of local e-marketplace.
- Ensure new contracts incorporate requirements for e-trading wherever possible.
- Identify scope for e-tendering and e-auctions.

5 Commit to principles of *sustainability and ethical procurement* where these can be achieved within the terms of best value principles.
- Develop appropriate best practice guidance with staff.

6 Simplify *business processes.*
- Establish framework agreements for high-volume/low-value goods and services.
- Prepare process guide in the form of a procurement manual and best practice toolkit with standard documentation and procedures to help departmental staff.
- Ensure effective interfaces with other council systems and processes.

7 Improve *communications* with markets.
- Publish annual procurement plan/programme of forthcoming contracts.
- Identify markets that do not deliver optimum performance and seek to develop/manage them to better effect.
- Identify opportunities for greater partnerships working/collaboration with suppliers/markets.
- Initiate development programme with major suppliers and partners.

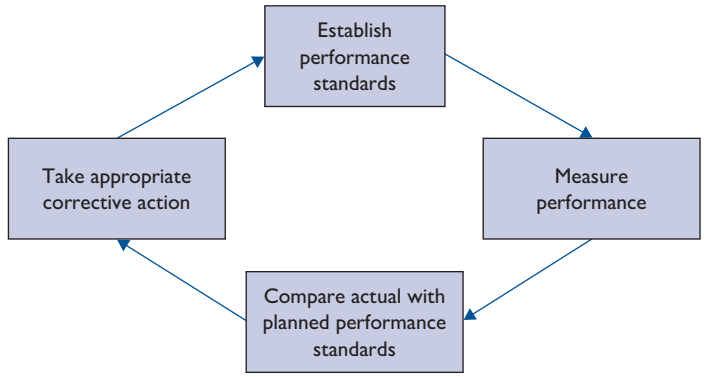
8 Ensure availability of appropriate *training and guidance* for all staff involved in procurement (including schools).
- Undertake procurement skills gap analysis.
- Develop training programme, buying in expertise as required.
- Prepare procurement guidance reference manual covering principles and processes and summarised mini guide.
- Prepare detailed best practice toolkit with standardised documentation.

9 The *organisation of procurement* will remain unchanged but:
- Improve communications with staff and schools.
- Develop feedback system for identifying lessons learnt from individual procurement exercises and sharing best practice.
- Ensure clarity in all guidance issued (use plain English).

10 Ensure all suppliers are treated fairly and openly in the awarding of council contracts.
- Prepare ethical code as part of procurement manual and integrate with council's code of conduct.

11 Commit to *continuous improvement* of all procurement practices and procedures.
- Regularly review contracts regulations, procurement manual and toolkit.
- Initiate benchmarking review of procurement and refresh biannually.
- Establish and monitor key performance indicators for procurement.

Figure 2.15 Steps in the control process



- service to internal and external customers
- contributors to the competitive advantage of other elements in the supply chain
- staff effectiveness and efficiency
- financial measures – that is, cost reductions, conformity to budgets.

Performance measurement, as applied to the procurement function, is considered in Chapter 17.

Johnson and Scholes[42] state that, in reviewing strategic options, it is important to distinguish between three interrelated aspects of any strategy. The typical procurement strategies/tactics or contributions for each of the three aspects of strategic development are shown in Table 2.9.

2.16 Strategic procurement and supply chain process models

2.16.1 What are models?

Models are representations of real objects or situations. A model aeroplane, for example, is a representation of the real thing. Physical replicas are referred to as *iconic models*. Alternatively, we can have models that are physical in form but do not have the same appearance as the things that they purport to represent. These are known as *analogue models*. A thermometer, which represents temperature, is an analogue model. Today, computers are used to simulate situations and provide answers to 'What if . . .?' questions. In general, models can be classified as:

- *mathematical* – these represent a problem by a system of symbols and mathematical relationships or expression (the formulae used in Chapter 9 are of this type)
- *non-mathematical* – these can take the form of charts, diagrams and similar visual representations that communicate information.

Table 2.9 Typical aspects of procurement strategies, tactics or contributions to corporate development strategies

Aspects of strategic development	*Typical purchasing strategies/tactics contributions*
Generic strategy (the basis on which the organisation will compete or sustain excellence)	
Cost leadership	Lower purchase costs achieved by consolidation of purchases, single sourcing, global procurement. Reduction in costs of purchasing system and administration. Value for money spent. Logistical contributions to competitive advantage. Buying sub-assemblies in lieu of components, etc.
Differentiation	Involvement of suppliers in product design and development, value analysis, total quality management, alternative materials. Stimulation of technological developments in one supplier market, etc.
Focus	Location of specialist suppliers, make-or-buy decision for specialist components, subcontracting, outsourcing, etc.
Alternative strategy directions in which the organisation may choose to develop	
Do nothing	
Withdrawal	Running down/disposal of inventory. Negotiating contract cancellations, etc.
Consolidation	Moving to standard/generic materials/components to increase potential use. Negotiation of limited-period contracts, etc.
Market penetration	Provision of information regarding competitors, price volatility, unused capacity in the supplier market. Negotiation of contracts with options for increased supply or stocking of inventory at suppliers, etc.
Product development	Liaison with design and production. Partnership sourcing; supplier appraisal. Negotiation regarding ownership of jigs and tools for bought-out items. Timing of supply deliveries. MRP II. Value engineering, etc.
Market development	Liaison with marketing. Partnership sourcing, specifying packaging and shipping instructions. Identification of vital points in the supply/value chain
Diversification	Supply considerations, such as effect on set-up costs and productions runs. Purchasing quantity considerations. Promotion of interchangeability of materials and components, etc.
Alternative methods by which any direction of development may be advanced	
Internal development	Organisational aspects of purchasing. Recruitment or development of purchasing staff. Integration of purchasing into materials management or logistics
Acquisition	Corporate-level issues relating to: ■ backward integration – activities concerned with securing inputs, such as raw materials by acquisition of supplies ■ forward integration – activities concerned with securing outputs, such as acquisition of distribution channels, transport undertakings, etc. ■ horizontal integration – activities complementary to those currently undertaken, such as consortia, franchising, licensing or agency and outsourcing agreements

2.16.2 The CIPS Procurement and Supply Management model

Much of what has been discussed in this chapter is admirably summarised in the CIPS Procurement and Supply Management model.[43] This is a generic representation of an organisation and shows where procurement and supply management fit into it at both strategic and operational levels. The model shows where the organisation's procurement and supply management strategy fits in, too, what it covers and how it can be implemented. The model shows the high-level stages of procurement and supply management activity and the key steps at each stage. The model can also be used by procurement and supply management practitioners to explain to colleagues where their role fits into their organisation and what it covers.

The overall CIPS model is shown in Figure 2.16.

The model shows how organisational vision, mission, values and corporate strategy are derived from environmental factors, such as the government, customers, competitors, stakeholders and other external influences, and an evaluation of organisational competences.

The model also shows how purchasing strategies interface with and are related to other organisational functions/activities such as R&D, finance, marketing and technical ICT strategies.

The aspects of procurement indicated under the headings of strategic sourcing analysis, proactive demand management and acquisition pre-contract and post contract are dealt with in appropriate chapters of this book.

2.16.3 Other procurement models

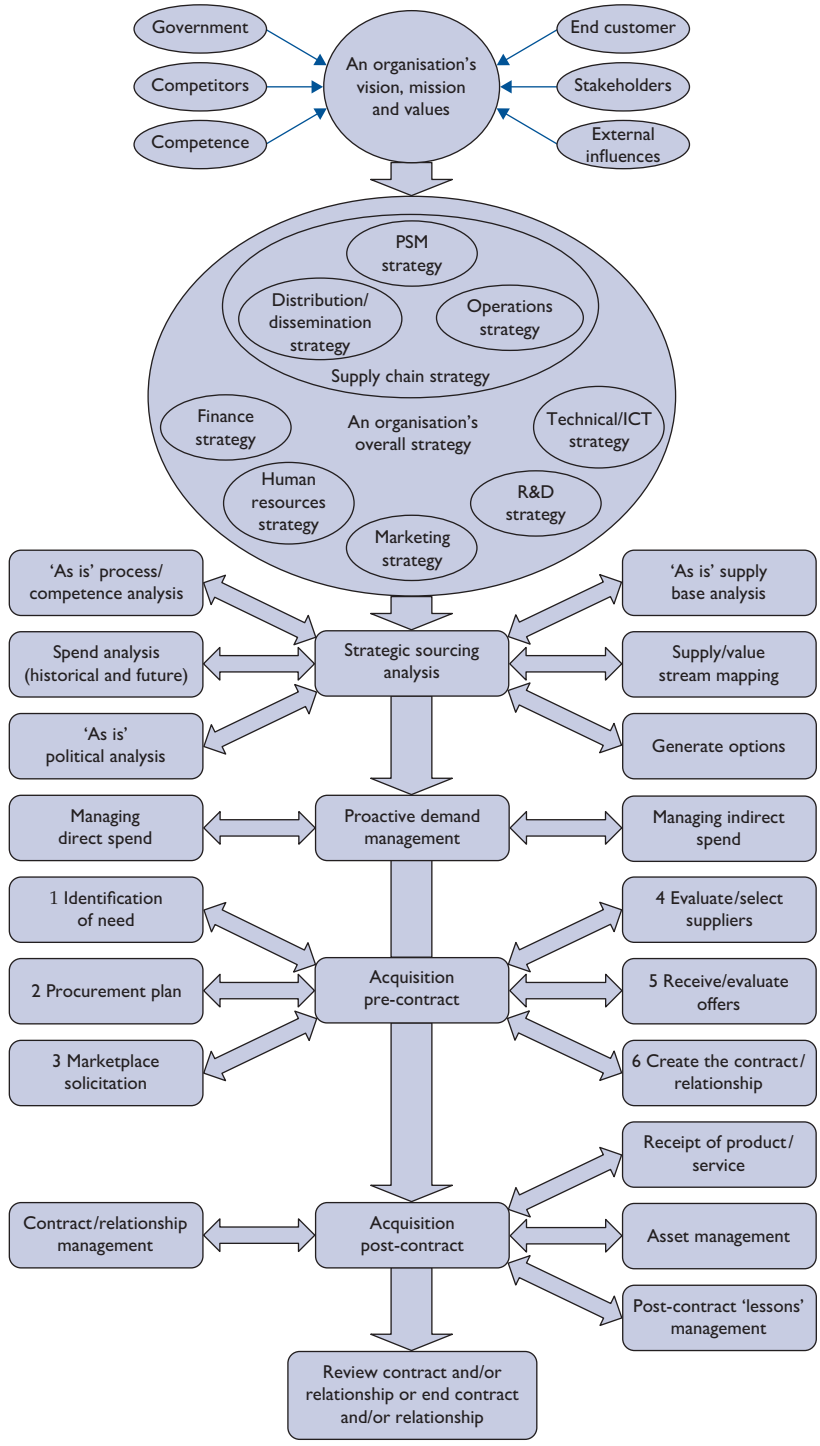
Other procurement models include the Ministry of Defence's acquisition management system (AMS), the supply chain operations reference (SCOR) and the European Federation of Quality Management (EFQM) model. All these can be accessed on the Internet.

2.16.4 Supply chain strategic leadership

This facet of strategic leadership is highlighted by CIPS.[44] It explores that one of the key functions of leaders in procurement and supply is to lead (as well as manage) the supply chain.

- Motivating and inspiring supply chain partners to offer above-compliance levels of service, innovation, support and value addition.
- Utilising motivational and relationship-maintaining influencing approaches (e.g. contract incentives, gain sharing, role modelling, supplier development) to change perceptions, attitudes and behaviours, where required, to correct problems or shortfalls in performance or conduct.
- Mobilising and developing resources and capabilities within the supply chain (e.g. through supplier forums, best practice sharing, motivation and quality circles, benchmarking, supplier development, and knowledge management) in support of development and improvement: continuous value addition, reduction in waste and costs, process or performance improvement and/or supply innovation.
- Introducing changes (to contracts, relationships, processes and systems) in a constructive, supportive relationship-maintaining and, where possible collaborative manner: maximising the acceptability and quality of change plans.

Figure 2.16 The CIPS procurement and supply management model



- Facilitating collaboration and alliance-building between stakeholders in the supply network, in support of improvement and development: emphasising shared goals and mutual benefit; resolving potentially divergent or conflicting interests; encouraging best practice and ideas sharing; and so on.
- Leading by example in desired standards of conduct and performance (such as ethical trading or corporate social responsibility policy).
- Utilising influence (including market power, incentives and rewards) to encourage the raising of standards in the supply chain (especially in regard to minimum acceptable labour and environmental standards in globalised supply chains).

Discussion questions

2.1 Define 'strategy' and link the definition to the procurement strategy within your organisation.

2.2 How do you think that a procurement strategy can be directly linked to the organisation's strategy and long-term business plan?

2.3 If you were faced with the proposition that a procurement strategy is irrelevant because market forces will always dictate where the balance of power is at any time, how would you explain that while market forces are at work a procurement strategy is essential?

2.4 How do you think a long-term procurement strategy can accommodate short-term supply market opportunities that arise?

2.5 What impact does Government legislation have on procurement strategies?

2.6 Thinking about the organisation in which you are employed or have knowledge of, list up to three examples under each of the following headings:
– key strengths
– key weaknesses
– key opportunities
– key threats.

2.7 List some of the issues in strategic management for (i) small firms and (ii) multinational corporations.

2.8 Choo points out that organisations engage in environmental scanning to understand the forces of change. What should procurement departments undertake to ensure they monitor in supply markets to understand the forces of change?

2.9 Macro-environmental factors impact on procurement strategies. Using the PESTEL approach, what steps should a procurement operation take to ensure it monitors the legal impact on its strategies?

2.10 Procurement strategies require attention to supply chain risks. Can you name six risks that only a supplier can manage, and six risks that must be managed jointly by the supplier and buyer?

2.11 In Kraljic's purchasing portfolio, under which headings 'leverage', 'routine' and 'bottleneck' would you place the following items?

(a) chemical supplies for glass manufacture
(b) steel
(c) cleaning materials
(d) security services
(e) bottling equipment for a brewery.

2.12 Your Sales Director has said that your products are now uncompetitive in world markets, and a cost reduction of 20 per cent is required on purchased goods and services. The existing purchasing strategy is such that only European suppliers are used. How would you approach the existing strategy and formulate an alternative?

References

[1] Wheelan, T. L. and Hunger, J. D., 'Strategic Audit of a Corporation', 1982 and 2005, Wheelan & Hunger Associates

[2] Liedtka, J. M., 'Strategic thinking; can it be taught?', *Long Range Planning*, Vol. 31 (1), 1998, pp. 120–129

[3] Lawrence, E., 'Strategic thinking', paper prepared for the Research Directorate Public Service Commission of Canada, 27 April, 1999

[4] Ohmae, K., *The Mind of the Strategist*. McGraw-Hill, 1982

[5] Mintzberg, H., 'Five Ps for strategy' in Mintzberg, H., Lampel, J., Quinn, J. G. and Ghoshal, S. *The Strategy Process*, Prentice Hall, 2003, pp. 3–10

[6] As 5 above, p. 9

[7] Johnson, G. and Scholes, K., *Exploring Corporate Strategy*, 6th edn, Prentice Hall, 2002, pp. 4–10

[8] Mintzberg, H., Ahlstrand, B. and Lampel, J., *Strategy Safari*, Prentice Hall, 1998, pp. 1–21

[9] As 3 above

[10] Fahey, L. and Prusak, L., 'The eleven deadliest sins of knowledge management', *California Management Review*, Vol. 40, spring, 1998

[11] Lindblom, C., *The Intelligence of Democracy: Decision Making Through Mutual Adjustment*, Free Press, 1965

[12] Waterman, R. H., *The Renewal Factor*, Bantam Books, 1987

[13] Mintzberg, H., 'Crafting Strategy' in Mintzberg *et al.*, as 5 above, p. 147

[14] Grove, A. S., *Only the Paranoid Service: How to Exploit the Crisis Points That Challenge Every Company and Career*, Doubleday, 1996

[15] *The Daily Telegraph* Tuesday, November 18, 2014

[16] David, F. R., *Concepts of Strategic Management*, Macmillan, 1991, p. 4

[17] Hax, A. C. and Majluf, N. S., *The Strategy Concept and Process*, Prentice Hall, 1999, p. 416

[18] Porter, M., *Competitive Strategy: Techniques for Analysing, Industries and Competitors*, Macmillan, 1980

[19] Miles, R. E. and Snow, C. C., *Organisational Strategy, Structure and Process*, McGraw-Hill, 1978

[20] Carr, A. S. and Smeltzer, L. R., 'An empirically based definition of strategic purchasing', *European Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, Vol. 3, 1997, pp. 199–207

[21] Kraljic, P., 'Purchasing must become supply management', *Harvard Business Review*, Sept/Oct, 1983, p. 110

[22] Worral, L., 'Strategic analysis: a scientific art', Occasional paper No. OP001/98, University of Wolverhampton, 27 May, 1998

[23] Brown, A. and Weiner, E., *Supermanaging: How to Harness Change for Personal and Organisational Success*, Mentor Books, 1985, p. ix

[24] Choo, C. W., 'Environmental scanning as information seeking and organisational learning', *Information Research*, Vol. 7, No. 1, October, 2001

[25] Downes, L., 'Beyond Porter' in *Context Magazine*, available at: www.contextmag.com/archives/1997/technosynthesis.asp

[26] ICMA, *Management Accounting 2000: Official Terminology*: www.icmacentre.ac.uk

[27] As 3 above

[28] As 5 above, p. 124

[29] As 20 above

[30] Rumelt, R. P., 'Evaluating business strategy', Ucla.Edu. November 28th 1993

[31] Risk Management and Corporate Governance OECD 2014

[32] Op. cit

[33] Op. cit

[34] As 21 above, pp. 109–117

[35] Fisher, L., *Industrial Marketing: An Analytical Approach to Planning and Execution*, Brandon Systems Press, 1970

[36] Nellore, R. and Söderquist, K., 'Portfolio approaches to procurement', *Long Range Planning*, Vol. 33, 2000, pp. 245–267

[37] Gelderman, C. J. and van Weele, A. J., 'Strategic direction through purchasing portfolio management: a case study', *International Journal of Supply Chain Management*, Vol. 38, spring, 2002, pp. 30–38

[38] Bensaou, M., 'Portfolio of buyer–supplier relationships', *Sloan Management Review*, summer, 1999, pp. 35–44

[39] Kamann, D. and Jan, F., 'Extra dimensions to portfolio analysis', paper presented at the IPSERA meeting London, Ontario, Canada, 1999

[40] This figure is reproduced by kind permission of Rob Atkins and the Bracknell Forest (UK) Borough Council

[41] Spekman, R. E., 'A strategic approach to procurement planning', *Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, spring, 1989, pp. 3–9

[42] Johnson, G. and Scholes, K., *Exploring Corporate Strategy Text and Cases*, 3rd edn, Prentice Hall, 1993, pp. 203–243

[43] CIPS, procurement and supply management model. Full details of this model are shown on the CIPS website: www.cips.org

[44] Corporate and Business Strategy. The Official CIPS Course Book, Chartered Institute of Purchasing & Supply.

Chapter 3

Logistics and supply chains

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- the origin and scope of logistics and impact on a business
- materials logistics and distribution management
- reverse logistics
- supply chains and supply chain management (SCM)
- supply chain vulnerability
- value chains
- value chain analysis
- supply chain optimisation
- supply chains and their relationship to modern procurement.

Key ideas

- Military and non-military logistics to support operations at optimum cost.
- The scope of materials and physical distribution management (MM and PDM).
- Total systems management, trade-offs, cooperative planning and manufacturing techniques as important logistics concepts.
- Reverse logistics to deliver value from waste and recycling.
- Networks, linkages, processes, value and the ultimate 'customer' as key supply chain characteristics.
- Infrastructure, technology, strategic alliances, software and human resource management (HRM) as key supply chain enablers.
- External and internal supply chain risks.
- Porter's value chain model.
- Hines's value chain model.
- Cost and differentiation as a means to competitive advantage.
- Objectives and factors in supply chain optimisation.
- The influence of the supply chain concept on traditional procurement practices and the need for partnering behaviour.

Introduction

Procurement is increasingly considered within the wider context of supply chains. Logistics, however, is a much older term. It is therefore appropriate that the present chapter should begin with a consideration of logistics.

We next define the terms 'supply chain' and 'supply chain management' (SCM) and identify some types of supply chains, the processes that comprise supply chain management and the enablers via which SCM is implemented. An aspect of SCM that has only recently received serious attention is supply chain vulnerability. Corporate risk management is a developing strategic consideration, requiring informed inputs by procurement.

The chapter ends with a consideration of supply chain optimisation, the impact of SCM on traditional procurement and some contributions of procurement to supply chain management.

3.1 What is logistics?

3.1.1 Military logistics

The supply chain approach developed from logistics. Logistics, initially a military term dating back to the Napoleonic Wars, refers to the technique of moving and quartering armies – that is, quartermasters' work. The scope of logistics in a military sense is reflected in the definition adopted by NATO:[1]

> The science of planning and carrying out the movement and maintenance of forces. In its most comprehensive sense the aspects of military operations which deal with:
>
> (a) design and development, acquisition, storage, transport, distribution, maintenance, evacuation and disposition of materiel (materiel: equipment in its widest sense including vehicles, weapons, ammunition, fuel, etc.);
>
> (b) transport of personnel;
>
> (c) acquisition of construction, maintenance, operation and disposition of facilities;
>
> (d) acquisition or furnishing of services; and
>
> (e) medical and health service support.

NATO also distinguishes between two important aspects of logistics: acquisition logistics and operational logistics (Figure 3.1).

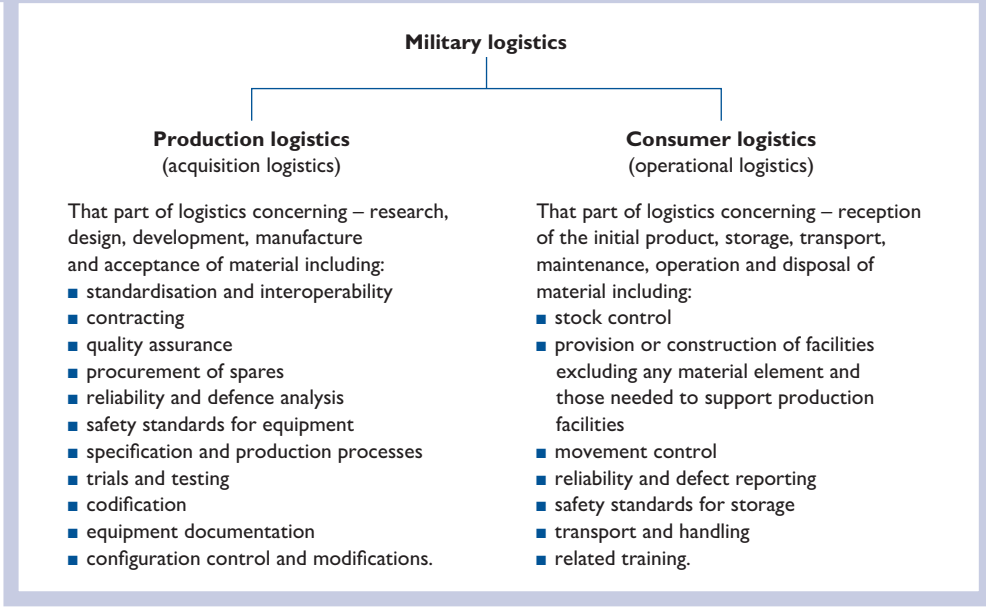
3.1.2 Non-military applications of logistics

Non-military applications of logistics, although generally less complicated, still cover the same ground, as indicated by the following definitions:

> Logistics is the total management of the key operational functions in the supply chain – procurement, production and distribution. Procurement includes purchasing and product development. The production function includes manufacturing and assembling, while the distribution function involves warehousing, inventory, transport and delivery.[2]

> Logistics is the process of managing both the movement and storage of goods and materials from the source to the point of ultimate consumption and the associated information flow.[3]

Figure 3.1 The scope of military logistics



Source: NATO, *Logistics Handbook*, 1997, paragraph 104

Logistics is that part of the supply chain process that plans, implements and controls the efficient, effective flow and storage of goods, services and related information from the point of origin to the point of consumption in order to meet the customers' requirements.[4]

3.2 Materials, logistics and distribution management

As shown in Figure 3.2, logistics is comprised of both materials management and physical distribution management.

3.2.1 Materials management

Materials management (MM) is concerned with the flow of materials to and from production or manufacturing and has been defined as:[5]

> The planning, organisation and control of all aspects of inventory embracing procurement, warehousing, work-in-progress and distribution of finished goods.

Some aspects of MM that may be included under the heading 'Materials flow' are listed in Table 3.1.

The factors influencing the activities assigned to MM include the following:

- procurement is frequently the 'key' activity
- production planning and control may be assigned to MM or the manufacturing function where this is separate – the former tends to apply when production is materials orientated, such as in an assembly factory; the latter when production is machine/process orientated.

Figure 3.2 Scope of logistics management

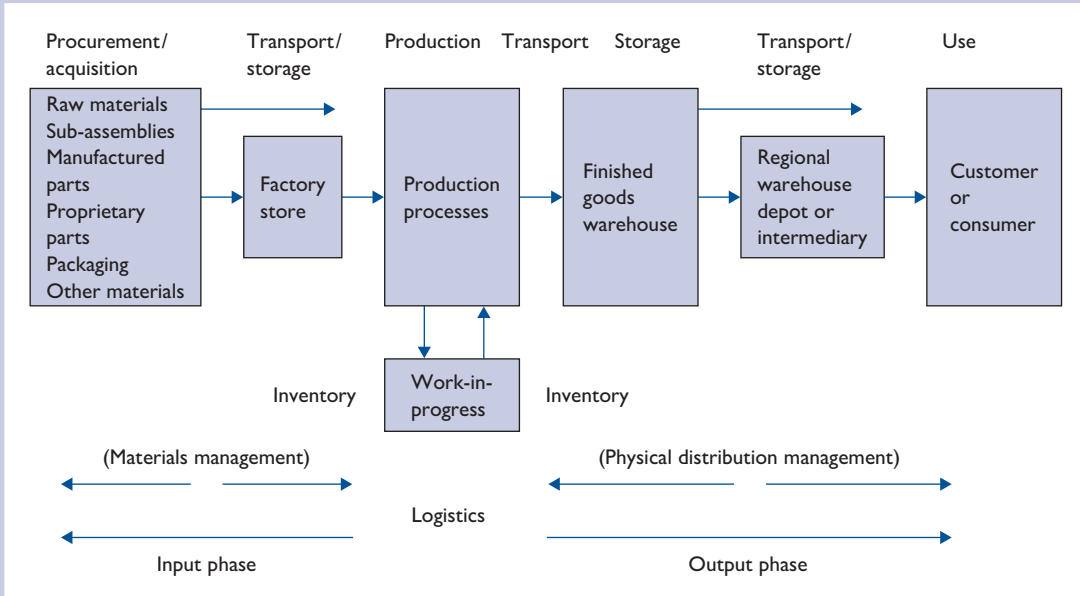


Table 3.1 Materials flow activities

Materials flow	*Typical activities*
Planning	Preparation of materials budgets, product research and development, value engineering and analysis, standardisation of specifications
Procurement	Determining order quantities, processing works and stores requisitions, issuing enquiries, evaluating quotations, supplier appraisal, negotiation, placing contracts, progressing deliveries, certifying payments, vendor rating, supplier and contract management
Storage	Stores location, layout and equipment, mechanical handling, stores classification, coding and cataloguing, receipt of purchased items, inspection, storage or return, stock and store safety and security, stock integrity and rotation, stores environment management, issuing to production, providing cost data, stock records and verification, recycling or disposal of obsolete, surplus or scrap material
Production control	Forward ordering arrangements for materials, preparing production schedules and sequences, issuing orders to production, emergency action to meet material shortages, make-or-buy decisions, quality and reliability feedback and adjustment of supplies flow to production line or sales trend

3.2.2 Physical distribution management

Physical distribution management (PDM) is often considered to be concerned with the flow of goods from the receipt of an order until the goods are delivered to the customer. An alternative view, adopted in this text, is that, whereas MM is concerned

with the *input* phase of moving bought-out items, such as raw materials and components from suppliers to production, PDM relates to the *output* phase of moving finished goods from production departments to finished goods stores and then through appropriate channels of distribution to the ultimate consumer.

The main activities associated with PDM are inventory control, warehousing and storage, materials handling, protective packaging, containerisation and transportation. Developments such as just-in-time (JIT), where both producers and distributors carry a few hours' stock and rely on their suppliers to meet their production or sales requirements, have greatly enhanced the importance of PDM.

The perspective of the logistician is that 'what flows can be made to flow faster'. From this standpoint, the logistician studies the costs incurred by the enterprise, beginning with the initial input factor, time spent on the production process and terminating when the customer pays for the product or service received. The longer the time spent at each stage of the process, the higher the costs incurred. A reduction in the time taken at any stage will provide an opportunity for cost reduction, which can, in turn, lead to a reduction in price. Alternatively, where products are built to order, a shorter lead time can also allow a provider to raise prices for time-sensitive customers.

3.2.3 Some important logistics concepts

Total systems management

Total systems management emphasises a total, rather than a limited departmental viewpoint. Total systems management has been facilitated by the availability of IT. Functions or groups of processes or activities with a total system may be regarded as subsystems.

Trade-offs

A trade-off is where an increased cost in one area is more than offset by a cost reduction in another, so that the whole system benefits. This may give rise to interdepartmental conflicts owing to different objectives. Also known as sub-optimisation as the organisation's optimal outcome can be achieved by departments sacrificing or reducing some of their individual goals. Thus, procurement may advocate bulk purchases of materials to secure larger supplier discounts. This policy might be opposed by finance because of money tied up in working capital and in inventory because of the increased cost of warehousing. Conflicts should be settled on the basis of which policy yields the greatest trade-off. Similarly, procurement may have to consider whether or not the security of supply consequent on having a number of suppliers is offset by the economies resulting from single-source buying. Thus, the effects of trade-offs may be assessed according to their impact on total systems costs and sales revenue. Higher inventory costs, for example, may result from increased stocks, yet quicker delivery may increase total sales revenue. Obtaining information for computerised exchange requires the breaking down of functional barriers that protect departmental 'territory' and discourage information sharing.

Cooperative planning

This can work forwards to customers and backwards to suppliers. The change from product-orientated to customer-orientated supply chains and, thus, faster supply resources can provide customers with alternatives such as make to stock, make to

order and finish to order. Conversely, from the inward supply side, effective, cooperative planning may relate to zero defects, on-time delivery, shared products and information exchanges relating to such matters as shared specifications, design support, multiyear commitments and technology exchange. Overall, both suppliers and customers can benefit from reduced costs of inventory, capacity, order handling and administration. Cooperative planning utilises, as appropriate, manufacturing and scheduling techniques, including the following:

- Manufacturing techniques
  - computer-aided design (CAD)
  - computer integrated manufacture (CIM)
  - flexible manufacturing systems (FMS)
  - materials requirement planning (MRP)
  - manufacturing resources planning (MRP II)
  - optimised production technology (OPT)
  - strategic lead time management (STM).
- Scheduling techniques
  - just-in-time (JIT)
  - materials requirement planning (MRP)
  - manufacturing resources planning (MRP II)
  - enterprise resource planning (ERP).

This can be explained by the cost–value curve shown in Figure 3.3.

1 The lowest cost value is at the procurement stage when supplies are purchased.
2 During transportation of supplies, value remains low because little capital is invested until raw materials and components enter production – the only costs incurred relate to acquisition and holding.
3 The curve becomes steeper as raw materials and components are gradually incorporated into the final product. This is because of accumulated manufacturing costs and increasing interest costs that reflect the value of capital invested.

Figure 3.3 The added value aspect of logistics

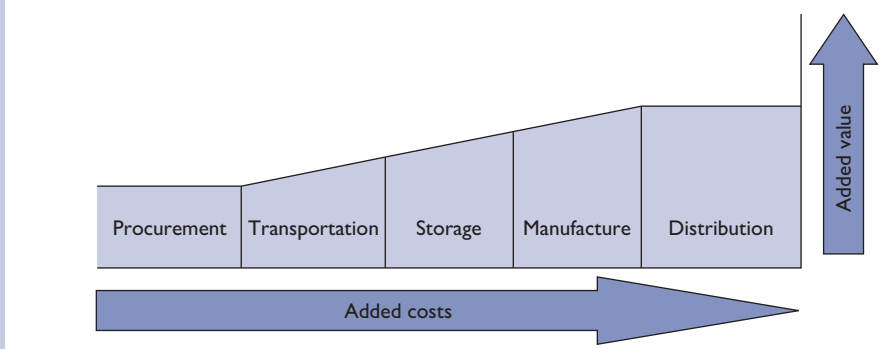
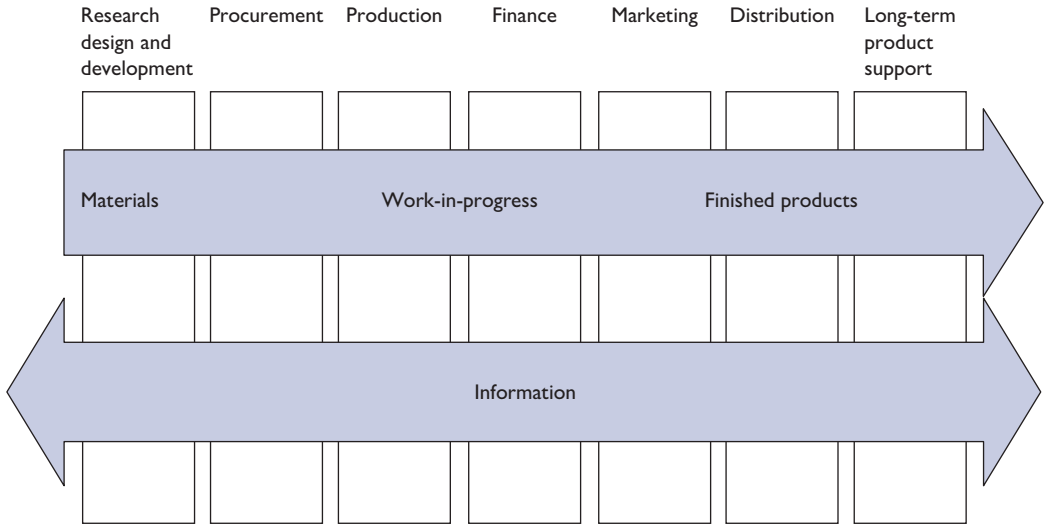


Figure 3.4 Materials, products and information flows across an organisation



4 The curve becomes flatter (but not flat) at the end of the production process because no more manufacturing costs apply. The value added in distribution must exceed its cost at the macro level otherwise the manufacturer would supply an ex-works product. However, on an item basis they may choose to add a figure for distribution that is less than its unit cost. This increased value may be seen in the form of greater total sales. At this stage the invested capital is at its highest value and the cost of stocking finished goods instead of selling them involves higher opportunity costs than holding the initial supplies. This shows why the logistician is, if anything, more concerned with PDM than MM as the potential for cost reduction is the highest at this point of the total supply chain. Cost reduction by speeding flows of materials, work-in-progress and finished products is not the only concern of the logistician. Logistics management involves two flows. The first, as stated above, is the flow of materials and work-in-progress across the organisation to the ultimate customer. The second, as shown in Figure 3.4, is a reverse flow of information, in the form of orders or other indicators on which future demand forecasts can be based. Such forecasts, as Gattorna stated, can in turn 'trigger replenishment orders which produce inventories at distribution centres. These orders influence production schedules which, in turn, help to determine the timing and quantities with which raw materials are procured'.

Logistics management may be regarded as a subsystem of the larger enterprise or a system of which procurement, manufacturing, storage and transportation are subsystems. In essence, logistics is a way of thinking about planning and synchronising related activities. Figure 3.4 also shows how logistics management crosses conventional functions.

3.3 Reverse logistics

Reverse logistics may be defined as:[6]

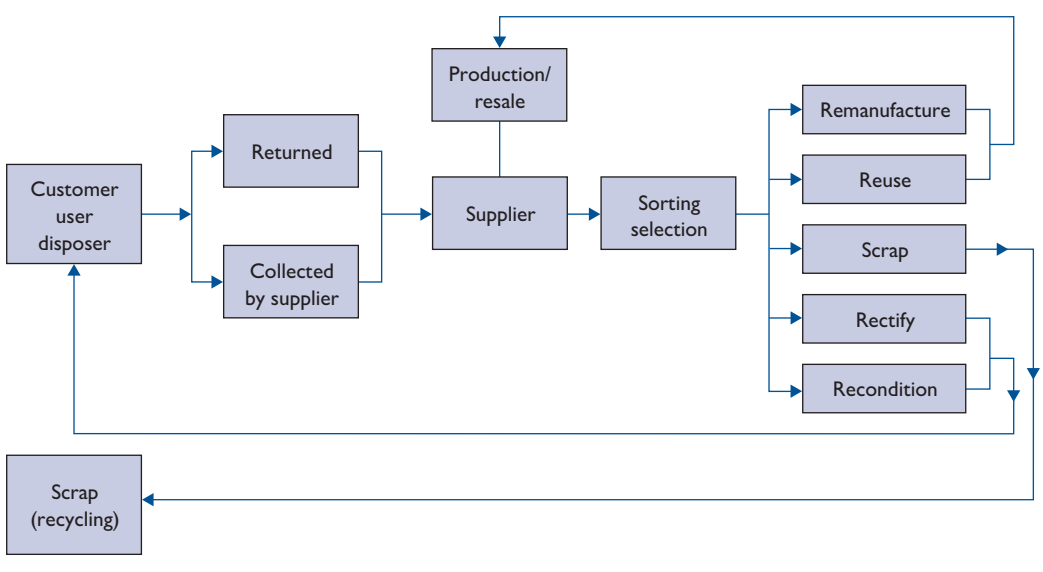
> The process of planning, implementing and controlling the efficient, cost-effective flow of raw materials, in process inventory, finished goods and related information from the point of consumption to the point of origin for the purpose of recapturing value or proper disposal.

Previously, the two principal drivers of interest in reverse logistics have been the increased importance attached to environmental aspects of waste management and disposal (including perceived reputational benefits) and recognition of the potential return that can be obtained from the reuse of products or parts or the recycling of materials. However, with the legislative pressures such as the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE) Directive together with EU council directive on landfill of waste[7] (EU Council Directive 99/31/EC) and amendments to the Packaging Directives are mandating certain actions and raising costs. As a consequence reverse logistics is becoming an industry in its own right.

Figure 3.5 shows that the main reverse logistics activities include collection of returnable items, their inspection and separation and the application of a range of disposition options, including repair, reconditioning, upgrading, remanufacture, de-manufacture (parts reclamation) and recycling. Disposition logic also includes channel or routing logic – that is, the returned items and components can be sent back to the customer, routed to a warehouse or production or sold in secondary markets.

Increasingly, a business focus is on designing out waste, via lean processes and six sigma methodologies and designing in recyclable technologies while an advanced reverse logistic infrastructure is also being developed. The emergence of Smart Materials, that aid disassembly when returned to manufacturers or salvagers will have a positive effect on the cost management of recycling.

Figure 3.5 Reverse logistics network



In line with the principle of the polluter pays, the automotive world is working towards total recyclability. The Think City, is an all-electric vehicle, 95 per cent of which is recyclable. Mercedes have already produced a 100 per cent recyclable concept vehicle. Software providers are also encompassing reverse logistics management modules within their solutions.

3.4 Supply chains

3.4.1 Definitions

There are many definitions of the term 'supply chain', of which the following is typical:[8]

> A supply chain is that network of organisations that are involved, through upstream and downstream linkages, in the different processes and activities that produce value in the form of products and services in the hands of the ultimate customer or consumer.

The above definition emphasises the following key characteristics of supply chains:

- *Supply chains are 'networks'* – traditionally, supply chains were loosely linked associations of discrete businesses. The network concept implies some coordination of 'cow to customer' processes and relationships. An alternative definition is that a supply chain is:

  > A network of connected and interdependent organisations mutually and cooperatively working together to control, manage and improve the flow of materials and information from suppliers to end users.[9]

  Networks are further considered in section 4.3.

- *Supply chain linkages are upstream and downstream* – *upstream* means 'against the current' and relates to the relationships between an enterprise and its suppliers and suppliers' suppliers. *Downstream* is 'with the current' and relates to the relationship between an enterprise and its customers. There can also be *upstream–downstream*, as is the case with organisations that have returnable containers, pallets, drums and so on or trade-in products.
- *Linkages* – the coordination of supply chain processes and relationships. A supply chain is only as strong as its weakest link.
- *Processes* – in the context of a business, a process is defined by Cooper *et al.*[10] as:

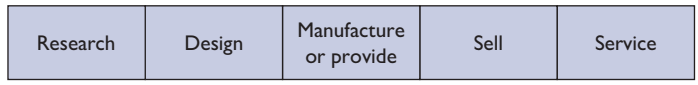
  > A specific ordering of work activities across a time and place with a beginning and an end and clearly identified inputs and outputs, a structure of action.

From a procurement standpoint, the processes that comprise the supply chain are shown in Figure 3.6. From a supplier's standpoint the processes are shown in Figure 3.7.

Figure 3.6 Supplier chain processes from a procurement perspective



Figure 3.7 Supply chain processes from a supplier's perspective



- *Value* is defined by Porter[11] as 'what buyers are willing to pay'. Superior value stems from offering lower prices for equivalent benefits or providing unique benefits that more than offset a higher price.
- *The ultimate customer* – a customer is simply the recipient of the goods or services that result from all the processes and activities of the supply chain. A function or subsystem can be the customer of the preceding or succeeding link in a supply chain.

Customers may be either internal or external. The definition refers to the 'ultimate customer or consumer' so that the supply chain may extend beyond the customer from whom the direct order for goods or services emanates.

3.4.2 Types of supply chains

Supply chains can be classified in numerous ways. An organisation such as a food retailer will have many types of supply chains reflecting differences in products, services, production and distribution methods, customer–supplier relationships and information flows. Supply chains may be roughly classified according to four customer–supplier characteristics and also in relation to virtuality, scope, service, complexity, products, purpose and value.

Customer–supplier characteristics

These may give rise to:

- *concentrated chains* found in businesses such as the automotive industry that have:
  - few customers but many suppliers
  - customers with demanding requirements
  - EDI systems or a requirement for JIT deliveries.
- batch manufacture chains that have:
  - many customers and many suppliers
  - complicated relationship webs – an undertaking with which an enterprise is in contact may, at different times, be a customer, supplier, competitor or ally.
- retail and distribution chains that have:
  - many customers but relatively few suppliers
  - customised methods, such as vendor-managed inventory (VMI) of facilitating dealings with suppliers.
- *service chains* that implement the mission statements of organisations such as hospitals libraries and banks concerned with the delivery of services, books, information and financial services or restaurants and cinemas delivering food and entertainment, for example – essentially service chains are not different from manufacturing chains as every service involves people, something physical (an asset or part of something performed), an action and a time element.

Other characteristics

- *Virtuality* – virtual is the opposite of real. Thus, a 'virtual' enterprise is the counterpart of a real, tangible business. As Christopher[12] states, 'a virtual supply chain is, in effect, a series of relationships between partners that is based upon the value-added exchanges of information'. In a virtual supply chain, information replaces the need for inventories. A mail-order business may have no inventory and simply call for supplies from the manufacturer when orders are received from customers.
- *Scope* – supply chains may be local, regional and international in scope. Some suppliers of gas, such as BP, for example, have the ability to put together delivery chains to bring gas supplies from Trinidad to Spain, from Siberia to China and from North Africa to Southern Europe.
- *Complexity* – Mentzer *et al.*[13] identify three degrees of supply chain complexity: 'direct', 'extended' and 'ultimate'. A *direct* supply chain, as shown in Figure 3.8, comprises a company or supplier and a customer involved in the upstream and/or downstream flow of products, services, finances and information.

Figure 3.8 Direct supply chain



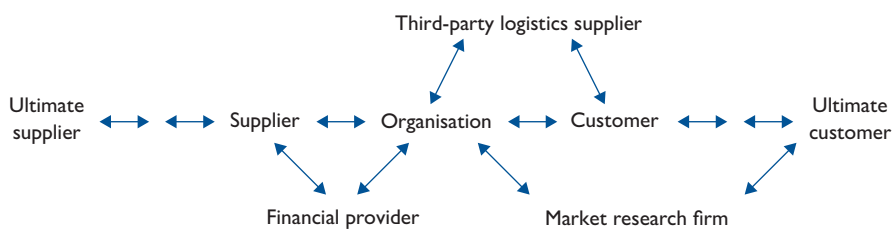
An *extended* supply chain, as shown in Figure 3.9, includes suppliers of the immediate supplier and customers of the immediate customer.

Figure 3.9 Extended supply chain



An *ultimate* supply chain, as shown in Figure 3.10, includes all the organisations involved in all the upstream and downstream flows of products, services, finances and information from the ultimate supplier to the ultimate customer.

Figure 3.10 Ultimate supply chain



- *Purpose* – a distinction can be made between *efficient* and *responsive* supply chains. *Efficient* supply chains are primarily concerned with reducing the cost of operations, as in lean supply chains. These work best when forecast accuracy is high and product variety low. *Responsive* supply chains are primarily concerned with minimising the delivery cycle time, as in agile supply chains. These work best when forecast accuracy is low and product variety high.
- *Products* – supply chains vary widely according to the end product. Examples are build-to-forecast and build-to-order supply chains and ones for innovative and functional products (see section 4.3.2).
- *Value chains* – these are dealt with later in the present chapter.

3.5 Supply chain management (SCM)

There is no universally agreed definition of SCM but one is given in section 3.7. Mentzer *et al.*[14] state that the many published definitions can be classified into three categories – a management philosophy, implementation of a management philosophy and a set of management processes.

SCM as a management philosophy

Mentzer *et al.* suggest that, as a management philosophy, SCM has the following three characteristics:

- a systems approach to viewing the supply chain as a whole and managing the total flow of goods inventory from the supplier to the ultimate consumers
- a strategic orientation towards cooperative efforts to synchronise and converge intra-firm and interfirm operational and strategic capabilities into a unified whole
- a customer focus to create unique and individualised sources of customer value, leading to customer satisfaction.

SCM as a set of activities to implement a management philosophy

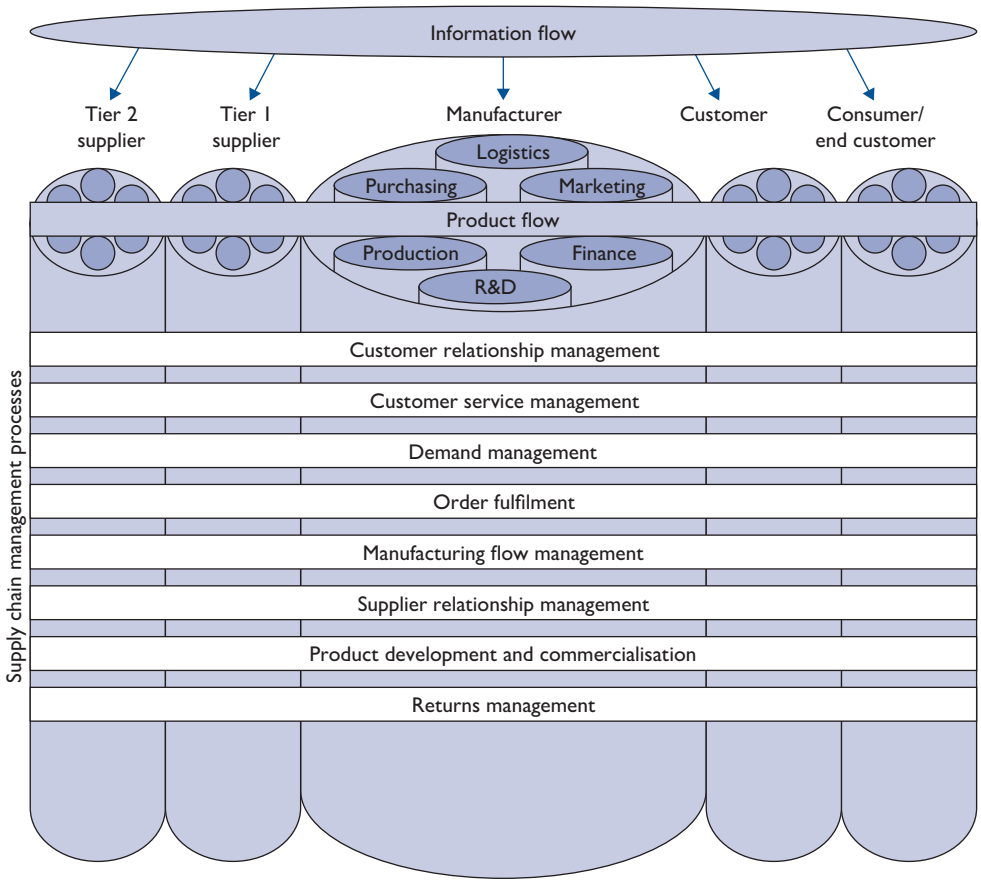
The seven activities listed below as essential to the implementation of a management philosophy are:

- integrated behaviour
- mutually shared information
- mutually shared risks and rewards
- cooperation
- the same goal and same focus on serving customers
- integration of processes
- partners to build and maintain long-term relationships.

These activities are implied in the following list of SCM objectives:

- the integration of both internal and external competencies
- the building of alliances, relationships and trust throughout the supply system
- the reduction of costs and improvement of profit margins

Figure 3.11 Supply chain management: integrating and managing business processes across the supply chain



- the maximisation of return on assets (net income after expenses/interests)
- the facilitation of innovation and the synchronisation of supply chain processes
- the optimisation of the delivery of products, services, information and finance both upstream and downstream and across internal and external boundaries.

SCM as a set of management processes

As shown by Figure 3.11, Lambert *et al.*[15] list eight SCM processes originally postulated by the International Centre for Competitive Excellence.

Each of these eight processes is briefly described below

- *Customer relationship management (CRM)* is concerned with learning about customers' needs and behaviour and the integration of sales, marketing and service strategies. CRM software, as Kalakota[16] states, 'helps organisations to manage their customer relationships better by tracking down customer interactions of all types'.

- *Customer service management (CSM)* is concerned with providing internal and external customers with high-quality goods and services, at the lowest cost, with the shortest waiting times and maximum responsiveness and flexibility to their needs. This is clearly aligned with efficient customer response (ECR).
- *Demand management* is concerned with balancing the requirements of internal and external customers with supply chain capabilities. It includes forecasting demand, synchronising supply and demand, increasing flexibility, reducing the variability of demand by means of standardisation and the control of inventory, for example. This is closely aligned with materials requirements planning (MRP) and JIT.
- *Order fulfilment* is concerned with the fulfilment of customers' orders efficiently, effectively and at the minimum total cost.
- *Manufacturing flow management* is concerned with all the processes and activities required to transform inputs and a variety of resources into finished goods and services. Order fulfilment is therefore closely aligned with operations management (OM) and such approaches as manufacturing resources planning (MRP II), manufacturing execution systems (MES) and quick response manufacturing (QRM). These approaches are described in most texts on OM.
- *Supplier relationship management (SRM)* is concerned with how an enterprise interacts with its suppliers and, therefore, is the mirror image of CRM. Relationships may be either short-term or long-term and vary in intensity from 'arm's length' to high involvement. SRM is becoming increasingly critical as organisations concentrate on core competencies and rely on suppliers to maintain critical advantage or a superior position over competitors.
- *Product development and commercialisation* is concerned with all the processes and activities involved in the development and marketing of new or existing products. In general, product development involves four main phases. First, idea generation, second, concept development, third, product and process design and, fourth, production and delivery. Marketing can contribute to product development (PD) in such ways as trial tests in limited markets or with customer panels to ascertain likely customer reactions to specific product features. SCM is involved because PD extends across internal and external boundaries. Internally, PD involves teamwork between marketing, design, procurement, production, quality engineering and transportation. Externally, the uncertainties of supply and demand, shorter lifecycles, faster rates of technological change and the increased use of manufacturing, distribution and logistics partners has resulted in increasingly complicated supply chain networks. Some advanced companies have begun to transfer design responsibility upstream to the supplier base. Thus, Exostar, founded by BAE Systems, Lockhead Martin, Raytheon and Boeing, is designed to improve collaboration across the aerospace industry. Exostar, covering more than 37,000 suppliers worldwide, offers services that will allow trading partners and suppliers to collaborate on design, products and programmes that aim to provide customers with better products in a shorter timeframe.
- *Returns management* is concerned with the activities indicated in section 3.3 relating to reverse logistics. Alternative terms such as 'green logistics', 'end of chain management' and 'post-consumer logistics' emphasise the importance of environmental factors, both in product design and SCM. Returns management has extended the supply chain to beyond the end consumer. It also extends relationships beyond

customers and suppliers to include cooperation with agencies such as local authority and private waste collection, recycling and disposal.

3.5.1 SCM enablers

Research by Marien[17] identified four key enablers, all of which must be fully leveraged if SCM is to be successful. Marien also observed that these four enablers become barriers to effective SCM if they are not in place. Each of the four enablers also has its own set of attributes. The four enablers and their relative rankings by Marien's respondents are:

- organisational infrastructure 3.44 (4 = highest importance)
- technology 2.14
- strategic alliances 2.07
- human resource management 2.05

Organisational infrastructure

How business units and functional areas are organised, how change management programmes are led and coordinated with the existing organisational structure – these constitute organisational infrastructure. Important attributes of organisational infrastructure include:

- having a coherent business strategy that aligns business units towards the same goal
- having a formal process – flow methodologies to enable SCM improvements
- having the right process metrics to guide the performance of operating units towards the strategic organisational SCM objectives.

It is of interest that respondents ranked organisational infrastructure considerably ahead of technology.

Technology

The word 'technology' (not just IT but also the 'physical' materials management technologies for material design operations and materials handling) here also is a factor in the selection of business allies and how intercompany relationships are built and managed. Important attributes of technology include:

- having operations, marketing and logistics data coordinated within the company
- having data readily available to managers and the coordination of operations, marketing and logistics data between supply chain members.

Strategic alliances

This factor covers how external companies (customers, suppliers and logistics-service providers) are selected as business allies and how intercompany relationships are built and managed. Important attributes of strategic alliances include:

- having expectations clearly stated, understood and agreed to upfront
- collaboration on supply chain design and product and service strategies
- having top management of partnering companies interface on a regular basis
- having compatible IT systems.

Human resource management

This area involves managing how job descriptions are designed, positions filled, people are recognised and compensated and career paths directed. Important aspects of human resource management include:

- sourcing, hiring and selecting skilled people at all management levels
- finding change agents to manage SCM implementation
- having compensation and incentive programmes in place for SCM performance
- finding internal process facilitators knowledgeable about SCM.

3.5.2 Software as an SCM enabler

Four essential supply chain requirements are connectivity, integration, visibility and responsiveness.

Connectivity is the ability to exchange information with external supply chain partners in a timely, responsible and usable format that facilitates inter-organisational collaboration.

Integration is the process of combining or coordinating separate functions, processors or producers and enabling them to interact in a seamless manner.

Visibility is the ability to access or view pertinent data or information as it relates to logistics and the supply chain.

Responsiveness is the ability to react quickly to customers' needs or specifications by delivering a product of the right quality, at the right time, in the right place, at the lowest possible cost. System availability is 24/7.

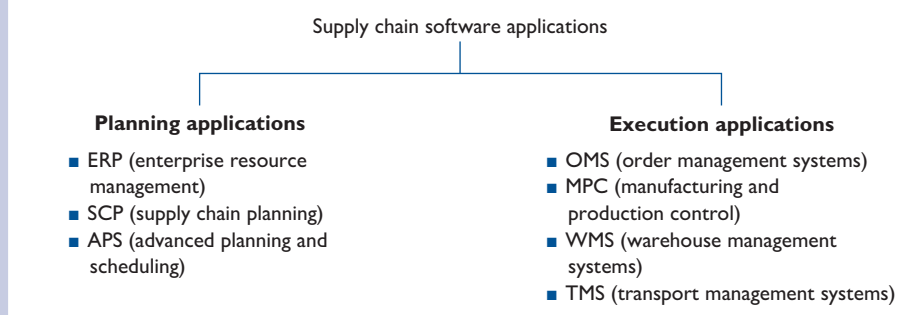
Initially, software providers specialised in either management planning or execution applications, as shown in Figure 3.12.

The current emphasis is on the creation of software that integrates each of the software types shown in Figure 3.12 and deals with the supply chain as a continuous process rather than as individual stages. Thus, enterprise resource management (ERP) may be defined as:

> A software solution that addresses the enterprise's needs, taking the process view of an organisation to meet the organisational goals by tightly integrating all functions of an enterprise.

The core ERP subsystems are sales and marketing master scheduling, materials requirements planning (MRP), capacity requirements planning (CRP), bills of materials, procurement, shopfloor control, accounts payable and receivable and logistics.

Figure 3.12 Supply chain software applications



Leading ERP vendors have either purchased or partnered with advanced planning and scheduling (APS) vendors and has developed Internet versions of their supply chain offerings. Internet supply chains cause the walls between internal and external supply chains to break down. Enterprise application integration (EAI) enables providers to convert their entire suites of enterprise applications into e-business applications and provide a framework that ties businesses electronically to their customers, suppliers, electronic trading communities and business partners. Such suites offer several advantages, including that:

- an integrated suite presents a single view to the user from screen to screen and information is stored in a single database and the rekeying of information from one system into another is eliminated
- a single database provides a tighter integration of business processes
- maintenance is cheaper and upgrades easier when there is only one system to upgrade and one supplier to deal with
- for the above reasons, connectivity, integration, visibility and responsiveness are essential attributes of supply chain software.

3.6 Supply chain vulnerability

Supply chains are vulnerable due to both external and internal risks.

External risks are those attributed to environmental, economic, political and social causes, such as storms, earthquakes, terrorism, strikes, wars, embargoes and computer viruses.

Internal risks are those attributable to interactions between organisations in the supply chain. A Cranfield University report[18] identifies five categories of supply chain risk:

- *Lack of ownership* due to the blurring of boundaries between buying and supplying organisations arising from factors such as outsourcing and the creation of complicated networks of business relationships with confused lines of responsibilities.
- *Chaos risks* due to mistrust and distorted information throughout the supply chain. An example is the so-called 'bullwhip' effect, in which fluctuations in orders increase as they move upstream from retailers to manufacturers to suppliers.
- *Decision risks* due to chaos that makes it impossible to make the right decision for every player in the supply chain.
- *JIT relationship risks* due to the fact that an enterprise has little capacity or stock in reserve to cater for disruptions in the supply chain due to late deliveries, such as transport breakdowns.
- *Inertia risks* due to a general lack of responsiveness by customers or suppliers to changing environmental conditions and market signals with consequential inability to react to competition moves or market opportunities.

To the above may be added:

- *supplier base reduction*, especially single sourcing in which an enterprise is dependent on one supplier
- *globalisation* in which advantages of sourcing abroad may be offset by extended lead times, transport difficulties and political events
- *acquisitions, mergers and similar alliances* that may reduce supply chain availability.

The Cranfield report observes that 'supply chain risk management starts with the identification and assessment of likely risks and their possible impact on operations'. To assess risk exposure, the company must identify not only direct risks to its operations, such as the loss of critical raw materials or process capability, but also the potential causes of those risks at every significant link along the supply chain.

The report also lists ten ways in which to manage supply chain risk. The first three of these measures run counter to current supply chain trends:

- *diversification* – multiple sourcing
- *stockpiling* – use of inventory as a buffer against all eventualities
- *redundancy* – maintaining excess production, storage, handling and transport capacity
- *insurance* – against losses caused by supply chain disruption
- *supplier selection* – more careful assessment of supplier capability and risks of dealing with particular suppliers
- *supplier development* – working closely with suppliers, sharing information and collaboration initiatives
- *contractual obligation* – imposing legal obligations with stiff penalties for non-delivery
- *collaborative initiatives* – spreading risk among grouped companies on an ad hoc basis or as part of a trade association
- *rationalisation of the product range* – companies, particularly distributors, may wish to exclude products with supply problems from their product ranges
- *localised sourcing* – reduction of risks arising from congested transport networks or intermodal transport transfer by shortening transport distances.

3.7 SCM and logistics

Some writers regard SCM and logistics as practically synonymous. Others, however, distinguish between them. Cooper[19] regards logistics as concerned with material and material flows and SCM as the integration of all business processes across the supply chain.

The relationship between SCM and logistics is summarised by the UK Institute of Logistics and Transport:[20]

> The management of logistics makes possible the optimised flow and positioning of goods, materials, information and all resources of an enterprise.
>
> The supply chain is the flow of materials through procurement, manufacture, distribution, sales and disposal, together with the associated transport and storage.

The application of logistics is essential to the efficient management of the supply chain.

3.8 Value chains

Supply chains and value chains are synonymous. A value chain is:

> a linear map of the way in which value is added by means of a process from raw materials to finished delivered product (including service after delivery).

Important value chain models have been developed by Porter and Hines.

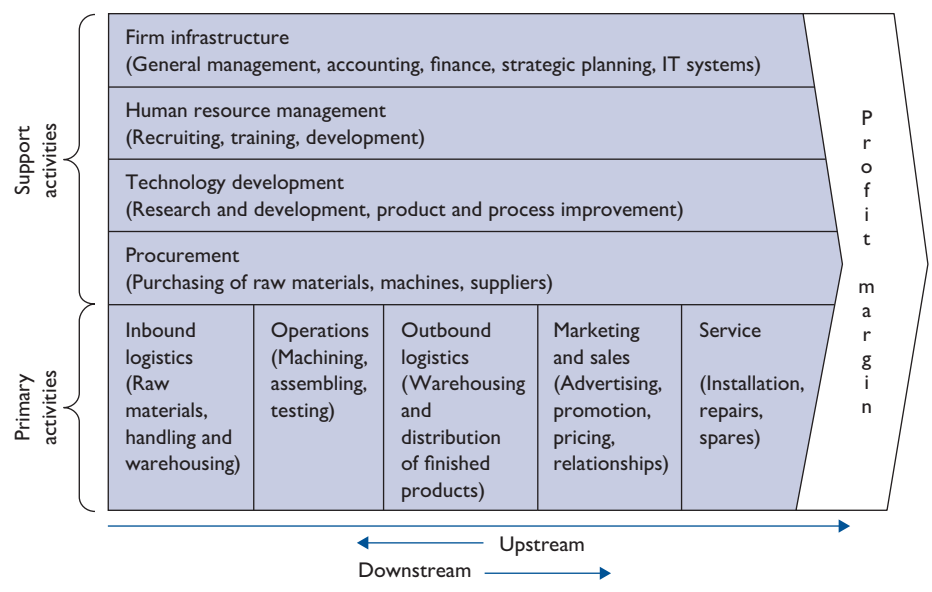
3.8.1 Porter's value chain model

Porter states that the activities of a business can be classified into five primary and four support activities, each of which will potentially contribute to competitive advantage. The activities, shown in Figure 3.13, comprise the value chain.

The five *primary* activities are as follows.

- *Inbound logistics* – all activities linked to receiving, handling and storing inputs into the production system, including warehousing, transport and stock control.
- *Operations* – all activities involved in the transformation of inputs to outputs as the final product(s). In a manufacturing enterprise, these would include production, assembly, quality control and packaging. In a service industry, these include all activities involved in providing the service, such as advice, correspondence and preparation of documents by a legal firm.
- *Outbound logistics* – activities involved in moving the output from operations to the end user, including finished goods warehousing, order processing, order picking and packing, shipping, transport, maintenance of a dealer or distribution network.
- *Marketing and sales* – activities involved in informing potential customers about the product, persuading them to buy and enabling them to do so, including advertising, promotion, market research and dealer/distributor support.
- *Service* – activities involved in the provision of services to buyers offered as part of the purchase agreement, including installation, spare parts delivery, maintenance and repair, technical assistance, buyers' enquiries and complaints.

Figure 3.13 Porter's supply chain



The four *support* activities for the above primary activities are the following:

- *Firm infrastructure* or general administration – including activities, costs and assets relating to general management safety and security, management information systems and the formation of strategic alliances.
- *Human resource management* – all the activities involved in recruiting, hiring, training, developing and compensating the people in an organisation.
- *Technology development* – activities relating to product design and improvement of production processes and resource utilisation, including research and development, process design improvement, computer software, computer-aided design and engineering and development of computerised support systems.
- *Procurement* – all activities involved in acquiring resource inputs to the primary activities, including the purchase of fuel, energy, raw materials, components, subassemblies, merchandise and consumable items from external vendors.

The word 'margin' on the right side of the Figure 3.13 indicates that the enterprise obtains a profit margin that is more than the cost of each of the individual activities or subsystems that comprise the value chain. Viewed differently, the end customer is readier to pay more for a product or service than the total cost of all the value chain activities or subsystems.

Linkages are the means by which the interdependent parts of the value chain – both internal and external – are joined together. Such linkages take place when one element affects the costs or effectiveness of another element in the value chain. Thus, intranets and the Internet are useful linkages as they may reduce the cost of supply chain administration. Linkages require coordination. Ensuring that products are delivered on time, for example, requires the coordination of operations (production), outbound logistics and service activities. Linkages are considered further in section 4.3, on networks.

3.8.2 Hines's value chain model

Writing in 1993, Peter Hines[21] acknowledged that Porter made two valuable contributions to our understanding of value chain systems.

First, Porter places a major emphasis on the materials management value-adding mechanism, raising the subject to a strategic level in the minds of senior executives. Second, he places the customer in an important position in the supply chain.

3.8.3 A critique of Porter

Hines also identified three major problems with Porter's model:

1. Neither Porter, nor the firms discussed, concede that consumer satisfaction – not company profit – should be their primary objective. The focus of Porter's model is on the profit margin of each enterprise, not the consumer's satisfaction.
2. Although Porter acknowledges the importance of integration, his model shows a rather divided network, both within the company and between the different organisations in the supply chain.
3. Hines believes that the wrong functions are highlighted as being important in Porter's primary and support activities.

Hines suggests that the above three criticisms result from the fact that Porter's model is based solely on American cases 'without reference to more innovative Japanese enterprises'. Porter's conclusions may therefore 'prove inappropriate for companies facing the challenges of the twenty-first century with the prospect of an array of more developed competitors. Indeed in some cases close adherence to Porter's methodology may prevent firms from further continual development'.

3.8.4 Alternative models

To correct the above problems, Hines offers two models:

- a *micro* integrated materials value pipeline
- a *macro* ten forces partnership model.

The micro integrated materials value pipeline is shown in Figure 3.14.

The main contrasts between the Porter and Hines models are summarised in Table 3.2. The following are the important features of Hines's model.

- The value chain points in the opposite direction to that in Porter's model, emphasising differences in both objectives and processes.
- Demand is determined by collective customer-defined price levels.
- Primary functions in each of the separate firms in the value chain must be integrated and 'traditional arm's length external barriers and internal divisions broken down'. The emphasis is on collaboration rather than competition.
- Key primary functions and secondary activities differ, as shown in Table 3.2. The significance of each of the secondary activities identified by Hines is, briefly, as follows:
  - Activity-based costing (ABC) enables the exact cost of products and the benefits of activities such as *kaizen* and value analysis to be ascertained. By allocating costs

Figure 3.14 Hines's micro integrated materials value pipeline

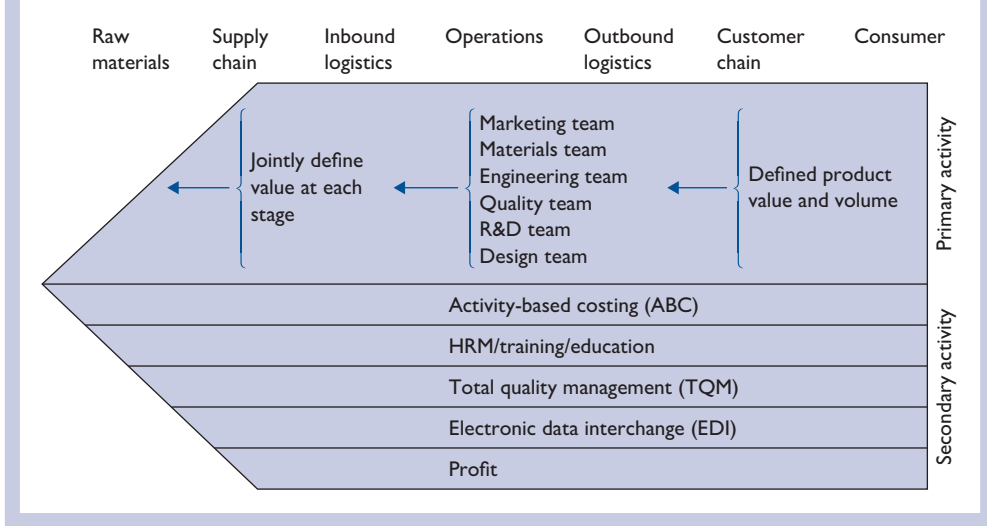


Table 3.2 Porter's and Hines's models contrasted

	Porter	*Hines*
Principal objective	Profitability	Consumer satisfaction
Processes	Push system	Pull system
Structure and direction	Series of chains linking firms pointing from raw materials source to customer	One large flow pointing from consumer to raw material source
Primary activities	Inbound logistics, operations, outbound logistics, marketing and sales service	Teams concerned with marketing, materials, engineering, quality, R&D and design
Secondary (support) activities	Firm infrastructure, HRM, technology development, procurement	Activity-based costing (ABC), HRM/ training/education, TQM, EDI, profit

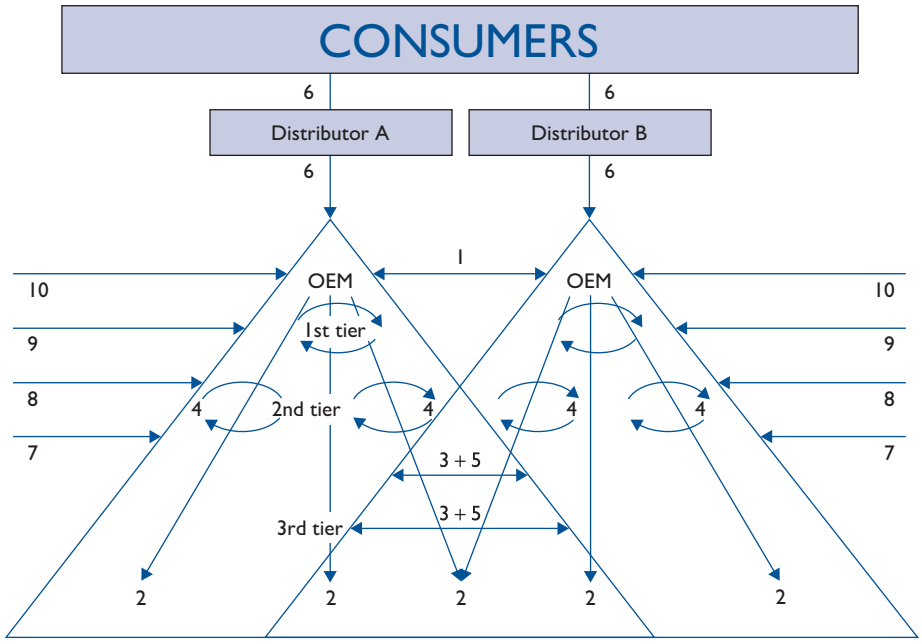
to activities rather than functions, we can identify the true costs involved in delivering the product. A simpler method of value chain analysis is to call the price charged to the customer at the end of the supply chain 100 per cent and, by working backwards, ascertain the cost of each supply activity. It enables the most serious non-value-adding problems to be identified first and addressed promptly.

- Human resources management (HRM) – especially employee training and education – facilitates effectiveness, efficiency and proactive thinking.
- Total quality management (TQM) provides a culture for all network members.
- Electronic data interchange (EDI) together with intranets, extranets and so on, all facilitate quick response to customers' requirements and draw network members closer together.
- Profit should be roughly equalised between network members and result from reducing total production and consumption costs to below what consumers are willing to pay for products meeting their specifications.

The macro ten forces partnership model shown in Figure 3.15 widens the analysis from that of a company with a single source to the whole range of supply pipelines and identifies the forces that encourage rapid and sustained development. The whole network includes several tiers or layers of supplying companies.

Hines states that the ten forces identified in Figure 3.15 describe a variety of forces that encourage rapid and sustained continual development. It should be noted that the model as shown by Hines in Figure 3.15 relates to assembly-type production. Thus, the first of the ten forces is the creative tension developed between competing final assemblers or original equipment manufacturers (OEMs). This creative tension results from both cooperation and competition between them. The cooperation derives from OEMs developing common suppliers. The competition is rivalry in attempting to meet consumers' requirements. Cooperation is fostered by supplier associations, referred to in section 8.8.

Figure 3.15 Hines's macro ten force partnership model



1 Creative tension between cooperation and competition, perhaps between different industrial sectors
2 Supply chain development and OEM (original equipment manufacturer) development by equitable profit feedback benefits
3 Cross-network benefit spread effect
4 *Kyoryoku Kai* internal subcontractor development
5 Inter-supplier rivalry to find a favoured network position
6 The consumers' changing needs and tastes
7 New entrants
8 Substitutes
9 Stable long-term cheap finance
10 Government agencies creating a developmental environment

3.9 Value chain analysis

Value chain analysis is concerned with a detailed examination of each subsystem in a supply chain and every activity within these subsystems with a view to delivering maximum value at the least possible total cost, thereby enhancing value and synergy throughout the entire chain.

Porter[22] states that there are two ways in which an enterprise can obtain a sustained competitive advantage: first, cost and, second, differentiation.

3.9.1 Cost

Cost analysis with regard to value chains is performed by assigning costs to the value chain activities. The approach of activity-based costing (ABC) is, as stated above, of particular relevance in this context.

Porter identifies ten major cost drivers that determine the value or cost of activities:

- *Economies or diseconomies of scale* – fixed costs spread over a large volume of production are more cost-effective than producing small quantities of an item. Diseconomies of scale in procurement can occur if large requirements meet an inelastic supply, forcing up input prices.
- *Learning and spillovers* – learning can reduce costs and can spill over from one industry to another via suppliers, ex-employees and reports of representatives.
- *Capacity utilisation* – changes in the level of capacity utilisation will involve costs of expanding or contracting.
- *Linkages between activities* – the cost or value of an activity is frequently affected by how other activities are performed. Linkages with suppliers centre on the suppliers' product design characteristics, such as service and quality. The way in which a supplier performs activities within the value chain can raise or lower the purchaser's costs.
- *Interrelationships* – sharing a value activity with another business unit can reduce costs. Certain raw materials can be procured more cheaply by combining units' requirements.
- *Degree of vertical integration* – every value activity employs or can employ purchased inputs and thus poses integration choices. The cost of an outbound logistics activity may vary depending on whether or not the enterprise owns its own vehicles.
- *Timing of market entry* – an enterprise may gain an advantage from being the first to take a particular action.
- *Firm's policy of cost or differentiation* – the cost of a value activity is always affected by policy choices a firm makes independently of other cost drivers. Policy choices reflect a firm's strategy and often deliberate trade-offs between cost and differentiation.
- *Geographic location* – location relative to suppliers is an important factor in inbound logistical cost.
- *Institutional factors* – government regulations, taxation, unionisation, tariffs and levies constitute major cost drivers.

An enterprise that controls the above drivers better than its rivals will secure a competitive advantage over them.

A cost advantage can also be gained by reconfiguring the value chain so that it is significantly different from those of competitors. Such reconfigured chains can derive from differing production processes, automation, direct instead of indirect sales, new raw materials or distribution channels and shifting the location of facilities relative to suppliers and customers.

3.9.2 Differentiation

Porter[23] states that a firm differentiates itself from its competitors when it provides something unique that is valuable to buyers beyond simply offering a new price. A differentiation advantage can be obtained either by enhancing the sources of uniqueness or reconfiguring the value chain.

The drivers of uniqueness are often similar to the cost drivers listed above and include:

- *policy choices* – about what activities to perform and how to perform them, such as what product features to include, services to provide, technology to employ or quality of outputs

- *linkages between activities* – such as delivery time, which is often influenced not only by outbound logistics but also by the speed of order processing
- *timing* – being the first to adopt a product image may pre-empt others doing so
- *location* – convenience of use for customers and other such factors
- *interrelationships* – sharing technologies or sales effort, for example
- *learning and spillovers* – learning how to perform an activity better; Porter observes that only proprietary learning leads to sustainable differentiation
- *integration* – providing a service in-house instead of leaving it to suppliers may mean that the organisation is the only one to offer the service or provide the service in a unique way
- *scale* – large-scale operations can allow an activity to be performed in a unique way not possible at a smaller volume
- *institutional factors* – good union relationships may avoid losses in production time due to strikes and so on.

Reconfiguring a value chain to create uniqueness can involve devising a new distribution chain or selling approach, forward integration to eliminate channels of distribution, backward integration to enhance quality and the adoption of new production technologies.

3.9.3 The main steps in value chain analysis

Porter[24] provides lists of the main steps in strategic cost analysis and differentiation analysis.

For *strategic cost analysis* these steps are:

1. identify the appropriate value chain and assign costs and assets to it
2. diagnose the cost drivers of each value activity and how they interact
3. identify competitors' value chains and determine the relative costs to competitors and the sources of cost difference
4. develop a strategy to lower your relative cost position by controlling cost drivers or reconfiguring the value chain and/or downstream value
5. ensure that cost reduction efforts do not erode differentiation or make a conscious choice to do so
6. test the cost reduction strategy for sustainability.

Poirier[25] reports the following range of expenditures as percentages of the sales dollar for a large sample of USA manufacturing organisations:

■ procurement	55–65 per cent
■ transport	3.5–7 per cent
■ labour	2.5–6 per cent
■ inventory	3–9 per cent
■ system and administration	1.5–3 per cent
■ facilities	0.7–2 per cent

Poirier observes that, although costs could be reduced in almost every category, most paled in comparison to procurement. Dramatic results were recorded as organisations focused some of their best talent on this, the most costly segment.

3.10 Supply chain optimisation

Supply chain optimisation is different from SCM. The latter concentrates on controlling the various elements in the supply chain. Optimisation is about removing the non-value-added steps that have infiltrated or been designed into the link of processes that constitutes a particular supply chain. Optimisation is concerned with the removal of supply chain inefficiencies and has been defined as:

> the management of complicated supply chains in their entirety with the objectives of synchronising all value-adding production and distribution activities and the elimination of such activities that do not add value.

3.10.1 The objectives of supply chain optimisation

The above definition emphasises the importance of:

- synchronising all value-adding production and distributing activities
- eliminating activities that do not add value.

Other objectives include the following:

- *Providing the highest possible levels of customer service* – research shows a strong relationship between customer satisfaction and customer loyalty. Customer service levels should aim to create delighted customers by exceeding customers' expectations. Such expectations include responsiveness and value.
- *Achieving cost-effectiveness* – cost-effectiveness is also referred to as value for money and may be expressed as a ratio:

$$\frac{\text{Value of benefit received}}{\text{Cost of the benefit}}$$

- *Achieving maximum productivity from resources expended or assets employed* – productivity is also a ratio, relating outputs to one or more inputs. An increase in output per unit of input is an increase in productivity. Thus, the total productivity of a supply chain is:

$$\frac{\text{Total Output}}{\text{Total Input}}$$

The challenge is to increase the value of output relative to the cost of input. Productivity also increases when the same output is achieved with less input.

- Optimising enterprise profits – Cudahy[26] points out that

> the logic and aim of enterprise profit optimisation (EPO) is the simultaneous optimisation of the supply and demand sides of a business both within an enterprise and throughout its trading network. Thus by simultaneously improving operational efficiency and achieving profitable growth, EPO can enhance revenue and thereby complement cost reduction and asset productivity as a means of enhancing profitability.

Cudahy states that the introduction of a pricing and revenue optimisation (PRO) system involves the following four basic steps:

– *Step 1: Segmenting the market* – identifying from historical transaction data the selection of groups of people who will be most receptive to a product. Frequent

segmentation methods include demographic variables, such as age, sex, race, income and occupation, and psychographic variables, such as lifestyle, activities, interests and opinions.

- *Step 2: Calculating customer demand* – use of pricing software to predict how a customer or micro segment will respond to products and prices based on current market and other conditions.
- *Step 3: Optimising prices* – this is concerned with deciding what prices to offer to a particular customer to maximise a particular profit objective, market share or other strategic goals. Based on an analysis of cost, demand, market position, price elasticity and competitive pressures, it recommends optimum – not lowest – prices to achieve these goals.
- *Step 4: Recalibrating prices* – this is the fine-tuning of prices to customer buying behaviour.

Cudahy observes that pricing and revenue optimisation are not about competing on price but extracting the maximum value from a company's products and capacity.

- *Achieving maximum time compression* – time compression is an important aspect in achieving customer satisfaction, cost-effectiveness and productivity. Wilding[27] rightly observes that while cost and transfer price comparisons are open to a variety of interpretations, time is a common measure across all supply chain partners. Speeding up the flow of materials downstream and the flow of information upstream increases productivity, provides competitive advantage by virtue of rapidly responding to customers' requirements and eliminates non-value-adding process time. Beesley[28] claims that at least 95 per cent of process time is accounted for by non-value-adding activities. Time compression has applications for all aspects of the supply chain but is of particular importance as, unlike material, time wasted cannot be replaced. In general, non-value-adding activities relating to time can be categorised as:
  - queueing time – materials waiting to be processed
  - rework time – rectifying errors
  - time wasted due to managerial decisions (or indecisions)
  - cost of inventory in the supply chain.

Regarding inventory, Beesley claims 'as a general rule the volume of inventory held in a supply chain is proportional to the length of time expressed as the total time to customer'. If the supply chain is compressed work-in-progress, cycle and buffer stocks are reduced, with consequent lower overhead, capital and operating costs.

3.10.2 Factors in supply chain optimisation

The important factors in supply chain optimisation are described below.

Reduction of uncertainty

Davis[29] refers to 'three distinct sources of uncertainty that plague supply chains':

- *suppliers* – failure to fulfil delivery promises
- *manufacturing* – machine breakdowns, computer foul-ups that route materials to the wrong place and so on

- *customers* – uncertainty regarding order quantities and the 'bullwhip' effect or increase in demand variability further up the supply chain, e-orders from distributors fluctuating more than retail rates, which are fairly uniform.

All of the above increase inventory. Inventory exists as a simple insurance against uncertainty of supply. Reduction of uncertainty – by means of reliable, accurate and valid forecasts, the study of demand trends and use of statistical methods – can optimise the supply chain by avoiding holding excess stock and, conversely, delay in responding to customers' demands due to stockouts.

Collaboration

Optimisation is normally most likely to be achieved by collaboration between cross-functional teams within the organisation and customers and suppliers external to it. Such collaboration may optimise product and process design and customers' and suppliers' satisfaction.

Benchmarking

Before we can optimise, we must know what performance is possible. Benchmarking has been defined by Naylor[30] as:

> the practice of recognising and examining the best industrial and commercial practices in industry or in the world and using this knowledge as the basis for improvement in all aspects of business.

Benchmarking is more than imitation. As Naylor states, 'it is through analysis of success and a spreading of learning throughout the organisation'.

Key performance indicators (KPIs)

KPIs express abstract supply chain objectives in financial or physical units for the purpose of comparison. Data relating to various functions, processes or activities is assembled, quantified and transformed into physical or financial information that can be used to compare results – often against benchmarks – and then measure relative performance. Thus, the performance of both suppliers and customer with regard to delivery of orders on time can be expressed as a percentage of the orders placed. KPIs, considered in detail in section 10.10.2, can provide not only objectives to achieve but also the motivation to achieve or better the required performance.

Leadership

The impetus for supply chain optimisation and world-class SCM must either derive from or have the support of top management. This requires two-way communication between top management and the senior managers responsible either for the integrated supply chain or functions and processes within it. Important leadership characteristics are the ability to articulate the vision of an optimised supply chain to other team members, set and motivate the team to achieve goals, innovate and introduce change, nurture the competences of team members, foster a culture of continuous learning and improvement and display high levels of personal integrity.

Actions to improve supply chain performance

Davis[31] suggests a number of actions that can be used to improve supply chain performance and reduce vulnerability to demand uncertainty in both products and processes.

For products, these actions include the use of standard components and sub-assemblies, lower tolerances, fewer product offerings and the production of a generic product.

For processes, typical actions may be to reward suppliers' performance, subcontract, inbound freight handling, remove bottlenecks, introduce self-managed work teams and devise improved forecasting techniques.

The strategic, tactical and operational-level decision-making processes should all be influenced by the search for supply chain optimisation. Strategies also lead to structures, as described in Chapter 4.

3.11 Supply chains and procurement

Most of this book is concerned with procurement as a major supply chain subsystem. Procurement has been ably described as the glue that holds the expanded supply chain together.

The supply chain concept has profoundly influenced traditional procurement philosophies, practices and procedures in such ways as the following.

- Procurement is increasingly ceasing to be a discrete function and becoming a group of activities within an integrated supply chain.
- Research by the USA *Purchasing* magazine showed that, in 2002:[32]
  - one in four procurement professional respondents identified SCM as their principal job responsibility
  - virtually all the other respondents viewed SCM as an important component of their job
  - SCM is generally regarded as expanding purchasing's role.
- The head of procurement may report to a materials, logistics or supply chain manager rather than to someone at a higher level. Figures 3.16 and 3.17 are based on a 1997 survey by the Bourton Group.[33] Figure 3.16 shows that responsibility for

Figure 3.16 The people who run the supply chain in a sample of 344 companies

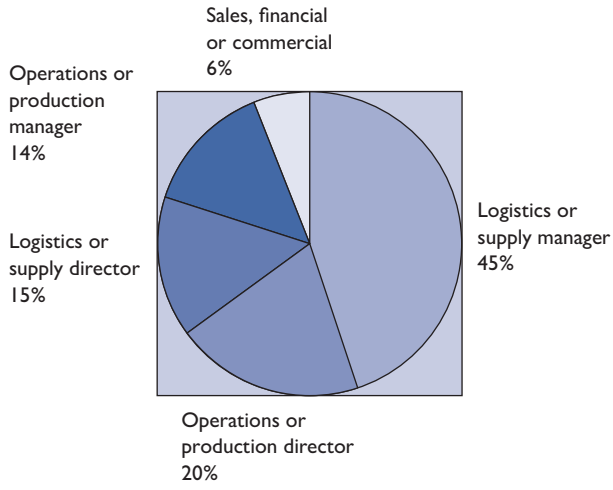
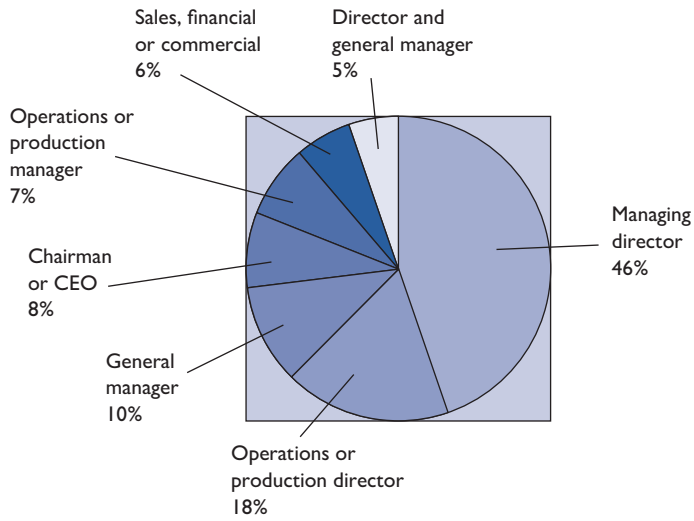


Figure 3.17 The reporting levels of people with supply chain responsibility in a sample of 344 companies



supply chain issues is headed by a dedicated director in about 15 per cent of responding companies and by a specific manager in another 45 per cent. In a further 20 per cent, responsibility lies with an operations or production director. Figure 3.17 indicates that the person running the supply chain reports to the managing director and chief executive officer in just under half of the responding companies. In the other half, ultimate responsibility is mainly with directors and general managers or with operations or production mangers or directors. Reporting responsibility for the supply chain appears to be below director level in about 16 per cent of cases.

- The number of procurement staff is likely to be reduced, owing to some former procurement activities being made redundant by IT or taken over by other teams, such as supplier selection or inventory control.
- Conversely there is a growing recognition that procurement is more than a transactional activity in the supply chain. As world-class operations require world-class suppliers, the emphasis of procurement will be less on price and more on supplier relationships and alliances and on contributing to the achievement of enterprise objectives along the entire supply chain.
- Procurement staff will have to acquire competence in other supply chain activities and general management skills, along with the capacity to think strategically rather than functionally and operationally. This gives further force to the observation of Lamming, that strategic procurement requires a broad rather than a narrow knowledge.

Supply chains are essentially a series of suppliers and customers. Every customer in turn becomes a supplier to the next downstream activity or function until the finished product reaches the customer. As an upstream supplier-facing member, procurement can undertake a number of strategic roles. Gadde-Lars and Hakansson[34] distinguish between rationalisation and development roles.

3.11.1 Rationalisation roles

These roles are 'all the numerous day-to-day activities performed to decrease costs successively' and are of three types.

- Discovering what needs to be purchased and where:
  - determining specifications for purchased goods and services in association with design, production, transportation and other supply chain functions
  - providing critical information to strategic managers on materials, prices, availability and supplier issues
  - selecting and rationalising the number of first-tier suppliers
  - advising on make-or-buy decisions, outsourcing, leasing and similar strategies
  - ensuring that suppliers meet performance expectations with regard to price, quality and delivery
  - evaluating the benefits and dangers of global sourcing
  - forging relationships and long-term partnerships with key suppliers
  - endeavouring to obtain maximum possible value from all suppliers by implementing value management, analysis and engineering.
- Rationalisation of logistics:
  - locating suppliers so that the least possible interruption is likely to occur to JIT and similar delivery arrangements
  - negotiating the best possible contracts and arrangements for transportation and distribution
  - undertaking responsibility for reverse logistics and the disposal of scrap and surplus by environmentally acceptable means
  - providing suppliers with accurate forecasts of requirements and facilitating such approaches as JIT and MRP.
- Rationalisation of procurement routines, procedures and policies:
  - involvement in the selection of appropriate supply chain packages and the reduction of procurement costs via e-procurement
  - involvement in the design of all procurement and supply chain structures
  - ensuring that staff receive appropriate training in general management, SCM and special aspects of procurement
  - monitoring the ethical aspects of procurement
  - measuring all aspects of supply chain and procurement performance.

3.11.2 Development roles

These involve coordinating the internal R&D activities of the purchaser with those of suppliers. Research by McGinnis and Vallopra[35] has shown that early supplier involvement in new product development contributes to competitive advantage in the areas of new products, time-to-market, achieving high quality, cost advantages, sales and profits. Supplier involvement is more likely in the design of manufactured than non-manufactured products, though it can apply to both. In general, enterprises that

focus on upstream product specification and design activities where they can best use their resources will want to outsource downstream activities where they are not cost-effective or less competent than specialised suppliers, such as component manufacture, so that suppliers will have a greater roles to play in these areas. Important procurement roles in supplier involvement in product development include participation in cross-functional product development teams, the identification of suppliers capable of contributing and supplier development and monitoring.

Discussion questions

3.1 Why is logistics so important to a high street retailer?

3.2 Define logistics in a non-military environment and comment on how logistics impacts upon:
(a) a retail organisation selling clothing
(b) a cruise line operator
(c) a construction company with projects in Europe and the Middle East.

3.3 A trade-off is where an increased cost in one area is more than offset by a cost reduction in another, so that the whole system benefits. Within the concept of logistics, where may the conflicts occur when the procurement department wants to purchase in bulk to obtain aggregated discounts and rebates? Consider in your answer the role of procurement, finance, warehousing and transport.

3.4 The environmental aspects of waste management and disposal have a very high profile in many countries. If you consider the next decade, what initiatives can be taken by procurement to stimulate more reverse logistics activities?

3.5 Map out a supply chain for a construction project, assuming the project is to take place on a brownfield site.

3.6 A manufacturing company has a strategic raw material supplied from the only source in the world. That source is located in a country that is subjected to the harshest environment for four months of each year. This is ice and snow that makes internal transport impossible during that time. How would you identify the risks created by this phenomena and what other related risks arise?

3.7 What, if any, are the differences between a supply chain and a 'pipeline'? If there are differences, are there problems that could occur with pipelines and not supply chains and vice versa?

3.8 From your experience, provide examples to support the following statement by Peter Drucker: 'The economy is changing structure. From being organised around a flow of things and the flow of money, it is becoming organised around the flow of information'.

3.9 Taking an example of a key purchase in your organisation, draw a process map of the supply chain, estimating what each process adds in cost and time.

3.10 The major retailers purchase vegetables from many parts of the world. This gives the consumer the maximum choice throughout the year. If you were asked to write a critical report on the effects of this strategy on the environment and cost, what would your main points be?

3.11 If you were asked to take a procurement initiative to incentivise suppliers to reduce your inventory, shorten supply cycles and reduce purchase costs, what factors would you include for:

(a) those things that could be improved within your organisation?

(b) those things that could be improved by the suppliers?

3.12 The biggest problem in managing a supply chain is the purchaser's inability to accurately forecast demand. This builds inefficiency into the whole system. Discuss.

References

[1] NATO, *Logistics Handbook*, 1997, paras 103–104

[2] EU Council Directive 99/31/EC

[3] Knight Wendling, 'Logistics Report', 1988 (published for private consultation)

[4] Crompton, H. K. and Jessop, D. A., *Dictionary of Purchasing and Supply*, Liverpool Business Publishing, 2001, p. 88

[5] Council of Logistics Management Professionals USA, 12 February, 1998

[6] Institute of Logistics and Transport, *Glossary of Inventory and Materials Management Definitions*, 1998, p. 10

[7] Rogers, D. S. and Tibben-Lembke, R., *Going Backwards: Reverse Logistics Trends and Practices*, Reverse Logistics Executive Council, Pittsburgh, USA

[8] As 7 above

[9] Aitken, J., quoted in Christopher, M., *Logistics and Supply Chain Management*, 2nd edn, 1998, Pearson Education, p. 19

[10] Cooper, M. C., Lambert, D. M. and Pugh, J. D., 'Supply Chain Management – more than a new name for logistics', *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 8, No. 1, 1997, pp. 1–4

[11] Porter, M. E., *Competitive Advantage*, Free Press, 1985, p. 3

[12] Christopher, M., as 9 above, p. 266

[13] Mentzer, J. T., De-Witt, W., Keebler, J. S., Soonhong, M., Nix, N. W., Smith, C. D. and Zacharia, Z. G., 'Defining supply chain management', *Journal of Business Logistics*, Vol. 22, No. 2, 2001

[14] As 13 above

[15] Adapted from Lambert, D. M., Cooper, M. C. and Pagh, J. D., 'Supply chain management: implementation, issues and research opportunities', *The International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 9, No. 2, 1998, p. 2

[16] Kalakota, R. and Robinson, M., *E-business 2.0 Roadmap for Success*, 2nd edn, Addison-Wesley, 2001, p. 172

[17] Marien, E. J., 'The four supply chain enablers', *Supply Chain Management Review*, Vol. 4, No. 1, March/April 2000

[18] Cranfield University School of Management, 'Supply chain vulnerability', Final Report, 2002, pp. 35–37

[19] As 10 above

[20] Institute of Logistics and Transport Publicity Leaflet, *What Is Logistics and What Does a Career in Logistics Involve?* Undated

[21] Hines, P., 'Integrated materials management: the value chain redefined', *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 4, No. 1, 1993, pp. 13–22

[22] As 11 above, pp. 62–118

[23] As 11 above, pp. 119–163

[24] As 11 above, pp. 118 and 162–163

[25] Poirier, C. C., *Advanced Supply Chain Management*, Berrett-Koehler Publishers, 1999, p. 15

[26] Cudahy, G., 'The impact of pricing on supply chains' in Gattorna, J. L. (ed.) *Gower Handbook of Supply Chain Management*, 5th edn, 2003, Gower, pp. 62–75

[27] Wilding, R., 'Supply chain optimisation: using the three "Ts" to enhance value and reduce costs', *IFAMM Global Briefing*, 2004, pp. 18–19

[28] Beesley, A. T., 'Time compression: new source of competitiveness in the supply chain', *Logistics Focus*, June, 1995, pp. 24–25

[29] Davis, T., 'Effective supply chain management', *Sloan Management Review*, summer, 1993, pp. 35–45

[30] Naylor, J., *Introduction to Operations Management*, 2nd edn, Prentice Hall, 2002, p. 535

[31] As 29 above

[32] 'Supply chain management – what is it?', *Purchasing*, 4 September, 2003, pp. 45–49

[33] Bourton Group, 'Half delivered: a survey of strategies and tactics in managing the supply chain in manufacturing businesses', 1997, pp. 26–27

[34] Gadde-Lars, Erik, and Hakansson, H., *Supply Network Strategies*, John Wiley, 2001, pp. 8–10

[35] McGinnis, M. A. and Vallopra, R. H., 'Purchasing and supplier involvement' in *New Product Development and Production/Operations Process Development and Improvement Center for Advanced Purchasing Studies*, University of Alabama, 1998

Chapter 4

Organisational and supply chain structures

Learning outcomes

With reference, where applicable, to supply and value chains, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- specialisation, coordination and control as aspects of organisational structure
- some determinants of organisational structure
- the impacts of organisational structures on procurement and supply chain
- factors in network configuration
- advantages and disadvantages of dynamic networks
- why and how traditional bureaucratic structures have been replaced with new approaches, including networks, lean and agile organisations
- lean structures and their development
- supply chain mapping
- why organisational structures need to be adapted.

Key ideas

- Specialisation and outsourcing, coordination as integration and the essentials of 'control'.
- Age, technical systems, power and the environment as determinants of structure.
- The reasons for and characteristics of new type structures.
- Network structures: basic concepts, classifications, configurations and optimisation.
- Tiering: levels, reasons for tiering, responsibilities of first-tier suppliers and the consequences of tiering.
- Lean organisations and lean thinking, production, structures and the advantages and disadvantages of lean production.
- Agile organisations: the drivers, characteristics and enablers of agile manufacturing and the concepts of postponement and agility.
- Supply chain mapping: forms, purposes, methodology of supply chain mapping and value stream mapping tools.

Introduction

This chapter falls into two broad sections. The first provides a general introduction to organisational structures. The second is concerned with 'new type' structures, such as networks, lean and agile organisations and the implications for supply chains. Procurement organisations are also dealt with.

4.1 Organisational structures

Mintzberg[1] has defined organisational structure as:

> The sum total of the ways in which the enterprise divides its labour into distinct tasks and achieves coordination among them.

Organisational structures do not exist as permanent business entities. Procurement exists in a context of continuous business change. This should be the driver for procurement strategies.

Kotter[2] remarks, the case for structural changes is that: 'An organisation with more delegation, which means a flat hierarchy, is a far superior position to manoeuvre than one with a big, change-resistant lump in the middle'.

A simple structure is an organisational form in which the owner-manager makes all major decisions directly and monitors all activities, while staff serves as an extension of the manager's supervisory authority.

A functional structure consists of a CEO and limited corporate staff, with functional line managers in dominant organisational areas such as production, marketing, procurement and R&D.

A multidivisional structure is composed of operating divisions where each division represents a separate business or profit centre and the top corporate officer delegates responsibilities for day-to-day operations and business-unit strategy to division managers.

4.1.1 Specialisation

Traditionally, specialisation was the division of organisational activities into functions, occupations, jobs and tasks. By means of vertical integration, enterprises also aimed at self-sufficiency – both in the supply of materials and the in-house manufacture of products.

Stemming from the work of Prahalad and Hamel,[3] however, the present emphasis of specialisation relates to *core competences*, or competitive advantage, that satisfy three criteria:

- potential access to a wide variety of markets
- significant contribution to the perceived benefit of the end product(s)
- ideally, a core competence should be difficult for a competitor to imitate.

Core competences arise from the integration of specialist technologies and the coordination of diverse production skills. They result in core products. Examples of enterprises and their core products are:

- Rolls-Royce aircraft engines
- Samsung shipbuilding
- De Beers diamonds.

Such core products can be stand alone or used to generate a variety of end products.

Concentration on core competences has led to the outsourcing of non-core activities. Six consequences of outsourcing include the:

- transfer of non-core manufacturing activities to specialist contract manufacturers that, by leveraging their fixed costs over multiple customers, can produce more for less
- transfer of non-core service activities, such as catering or training, to specialist providers
- removal from corporate balance sheets of manufacturing assets, such as tools and equipment
- reduced payroll by eliminating non-core employees
- ability to combine the power of several highly specialised contributions into a single, flexible, value-adding entity
- opportunity for procurement to create better leverage of procured parts, products and services.

4.1.2 Coordination

Traditionally, coordination is an aspect of organisational theory related to ensuring that people and resources grouped into discrete functions worked together to accomplish organisational goals. The hierarchy of authority was itself a powerful coordinating influence.

Today, coordination is synonymous with *integration*. Essentially, integration is conflict resolution. On the assumption that separate organisational elements and interests will inevitably conflict over scarce resources, objectives, status and similar factors, there must be integrating mechanisms to ensure unity of effort. Where such integration is not achieved, the result will be waste, conflict and low productivity, or *sub-optimisation*. Integration can be both intra-organisational and inter-organisational.

Intra-organisational integration

Figure 4.1 indicates a continuum of intra-organisational mechanisms to enhance communication and integration between the parts of an organisation, or, in the present context, supply chain elements. A matrix organisational structure is shown in Figure 4.2.

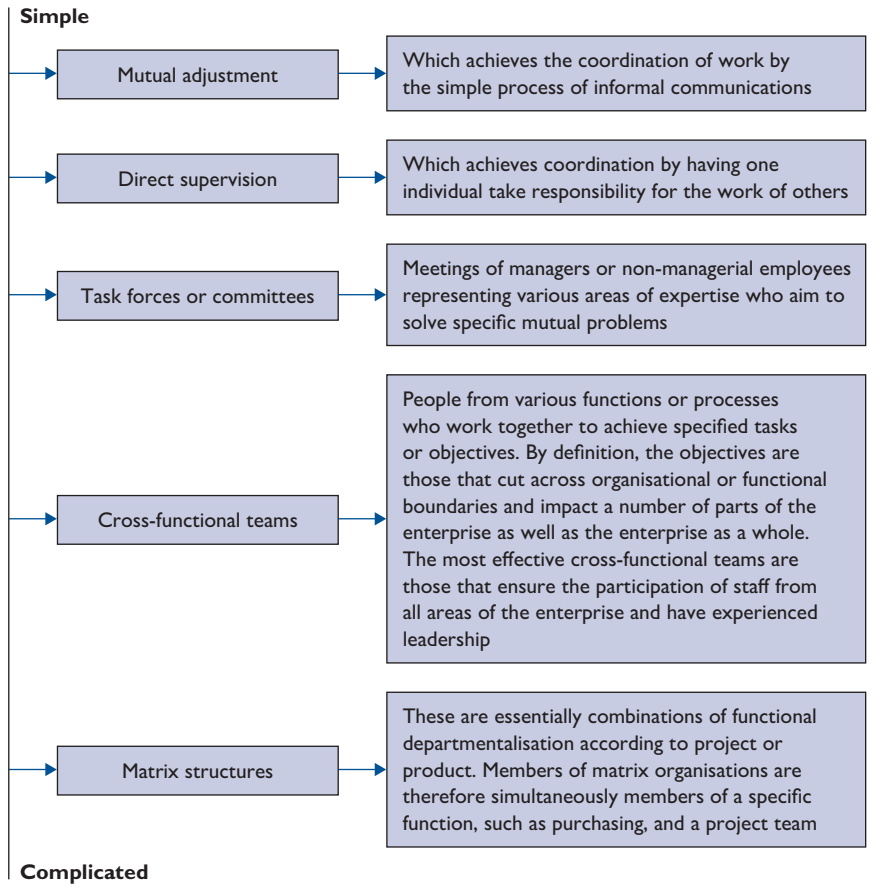
Grinnell and Apple[4] state that matrix structures should be considered only for the following situations:

- when complicated, low-volume production runs are the principal outputs of an organisation, such as aerospace construction products
- when a complex product design calls for both innovation and timely completion.

Matrix structures are generally applicable when the following factors obtain:

- high uncertainty
- complicated technology
- medium/long project duration
- medium/long internal dependence
- high levels of differentiation.

Figure 4.1 A continuum of intra-organisational mechanisms

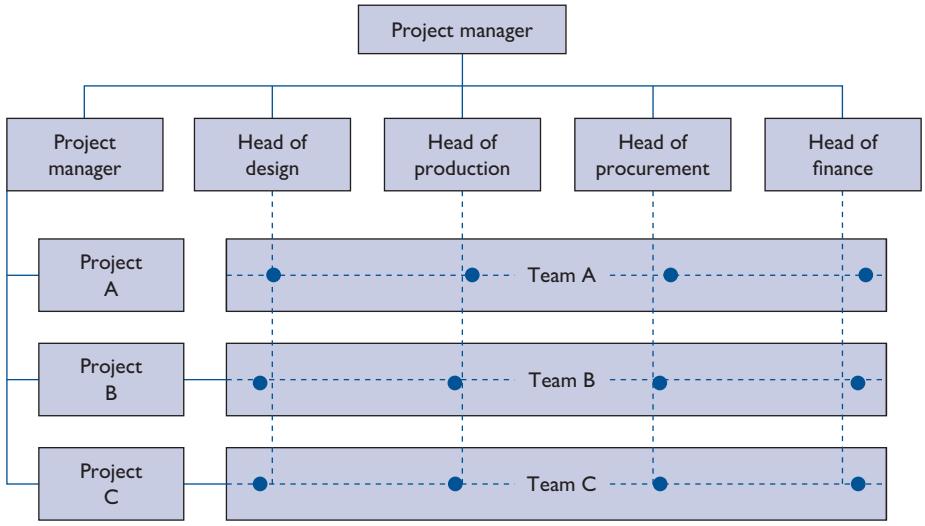


Most of the disadvantages of matrix structures derive from the dual or multiple relationships that may lead to conflicts between resources and business managers and confusion about where authority lies. More positively, the horizontal communication linkages of matrix organisations encourage integration and teamwork.

Integration also involves *formalisation*, or the extent to which work behaviour is constrained by rules, regulations, policies and procedures. Formalisation is greatest when the individual discretion given to employees is low. The extent to which an organisation is formalised indicates how top decision makers view their subordinates. Douglas McGregor[5] proposed two contrasting sets of managerial assumptions about the work attitudes and behaviour of their subordinates, which he termed Theory X and Theory Y.

Theory X assumes that the average worker is lazy, dislikes work, will do as little as possible, lacks ambition and seeks to avoid responsibility. Managers therefore maximise their control over worker behaviour.

Figure 4.2 A matrix organisational structure



Advantages

- Establishes one person as the focal point for all matters relating to the project
- Makes it possible to respond to needs of several projects simultaneously
- Makes maximum use of a limited pool of functional specialists
- Ensures that functional expertise is equally available to all projects
- Provides excellent training for project managers running a diversified organisation

Disadvantages

- Unity of command is lost (team members report to more than one head)
- Authority and responsibilities of managers may overlap causing conflicts and gaps in effort across units and in respect of priorities
- Places a premium on teamwork
- Slows down decision making
- It is difficult to explain to team members

Theory Y assumes that the work setting determines whether workers consider work to be a source of satisfaction or a chore. Where work is a source of satisfaction, close control of worker behaviour is unnecessary as employees will exercise self-control and be committed to organisational goals.

Inter-organisational structures

No business is an island. Every organisation has relationships as customers, suppliers or as collaborators in innovation with many other organisations. Mechanisms must therefore be developed to resolve possible inter-organisational conflicts arising from factors such as loss of control and influence, increased uncertainty, consensus problems and standardisation issues.

By far the most important influence in both intra- and inter-organisational integration is Information Technology (IT). Prior to IT, it was important that organisational structures should, for reasons of coordination or integration, be in physical proximity.

With IT, grouping tasks, functions or people in close physical proximity is unnecessary. With e-mail, video conferencing and to a lesser degree fax machines, it is possible to establish and integrate links within and across all organisational boundaries. Software applications such as MRP, MRPII, ERP, ECR and VMI are all approaches to the integration of resources and relationships.

4.1.3 Control

Control is a third aspect of organisational structure. A control system requires two essential elements:

- a power base
- a control mechanism, which may be of one of the following generic types.
  - *Centralisation* – decision making is either carried out by a centralised authority or requires the approval of the centralised authority before it is implemented.
  - *Formalisation* – as stated under the heading 'Intra-organisational integration' in section 4.1.2, this relates to regulations, policies, rules and procedures that provide guidelines, objectives or goals.
  - *Output control* – determining objectives or goals that provide the criteria for decision making.
  - *Cultural control* – the shared values and norms that guide decision making. It is often suggested that where culture is strong, strong structures are unnecessary. Cultural control is often exercised via informal structures. Informal organisation covers not only the friendships and animosities of people who work together but also their shared traditions and values that guide their behaviour sometimes to achieve and sometimes to block organisational goals. In practice, the relationship of the informal to the formal organisation determines how effectively the latter will function. No manager can succeed without understanding the informal structures that operate within a particular work setting.

4.1.4 The determinants of structure

What is known as the contingent approach emphasises that there is no one ideal structure. Mintzberg[6] has identified four contingency or 'situational' factors, which are age and size, technical systems, power and the environment.

Age and size

Mintzberg states that the older and larger an organisation, the more standardised will be its behaviour, policies and procedures. Because of these factors, changes are more difficult to implement in older, larger organisations.

Technical systems

Mintzberg suggests that the more a technical system controls the workforce, the more standardised will be the operating system and bureaucratic the organisational structure. Conversely, information and computer technologies may transform a bureaucratic to a flexible structure and lead to changes in the nature of managerial work, job design and working practices.

Power

Power may be defined as the capacity of an individual or group to influence decisions or effect organisational outcomes. Five sources of power are identified by French and Raven[7] under the classifications shown in Figure 4.3.

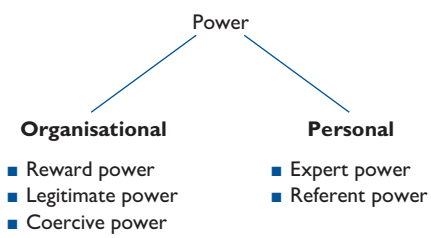
- *Reward power* is based on individual or group perceptions that another individual or group has the ability to provide varying amounts and types of rewards.
- *Legitimate power* is based on the values held by an individual or the formation of particular values as a result of socialisation. It exists when an individual or group accepts that it is legitimate for another individual or group to influence their actions.
- *Coercive power* is based on individual or group perceptions that another individual or group has the ability to administer penalties.
- *Expert power* is based on individual or group perceptions that another person or group has greater knowledge or expertise than them and is thus worth following.
- *Referent power* is based on the desire of an individual or group to identify with or be like another person or group.

There are significant differences between organisational and personal power. Organisational power is conferred and dependent on the position of the individual or group in the organisational hierarchy. Personal power is inherent and dependent on the personal characteristics of the holder. Personal power is therefore less removable from the holder than organisational power.

Often the importance of procurement in an organisation derives from the reputation of the head of procurement or team leader for competence and the attractiveness of his or her personality to others. Political power, for example, has been described as a combination of respect and liking.

Other research[8] has shown that, in relation to departments or operations, those who are most powerful in an organisation control important resources, have to cope effectively with uncertainty and have scarce expertise. This research implies that the most powerful departments or operations are those concerned with uncertainty, such as marketing in highly competitive industries and procurement where materials form a high proportion of the total product or service cost, particularly where the prices of the materials are unstable and where there are extreme vagaries in supply. The factors

Figure 4.3 The sources of power



determining buyer and supplier power in the marketplace as identified by Porter are set out in Figure 2.6 in Chapter 2.

The environment

The importance of environmental scanning to the formulation of strategies was discussed in Chapter 2. Environments are both general and specific. Both these aspects must be considered in relation to organisational structures and decision making.

The general environment comprises political, economic, social, technological, environmental and legal conditions (PESTEL) within which all organisations operate at a given time. The specific environment consists of the people, groups and organisations with whom a particular enterprise must interact. These include clients, customers, regulators, resource suppliers, trade unions and numerous others.

Both general and specific environments have specific significance for organisations that operate internationally.

Mintzberg[9] states that environments can range from:

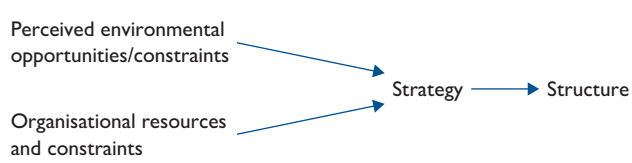
- *stable to dynamic* – in stable environments, more mechanistic structures will apply; the more dynamic the environment, the more organic will be the structure
- *simple to complicated* – the more complicated the environment, the more decentralised the organisational structure, and vice versa
- *integrated to diverse* – the more diversified the organisation's markets, the greater the propensity for it to split into market-based units (these give favourable economies of scale)
- *munificent (liberal and friendly) to hostile* – an extremely hostile environment will drive an organisation to centralise its structure, at least temporarily.

Strategy and structure

Mintzberg's analysis emphasises that different environments lead to different strategies. Different strategies require different structures. Thus, as Chandler[10] concluded after a study of almost 100 large American companies, changes in corporate strategy precede and lead to changes in organisational structure – that is, structure follows strategy. This environment–strategy–structure link is shown in Figure 4.4.

Later writers,[11] however, suggest that Chandler's strategy–structure relationship is too simplistic, that structure may constrain strategy and, once an organisation has been locked into a particular environment–strategy–structure relationship, it may have difficulty pursuing activities outside its normal scope of operations. Often an organisation cannot change strategy until it implements changes in structure.

Figure 4.4 The environment–strategy–structure link



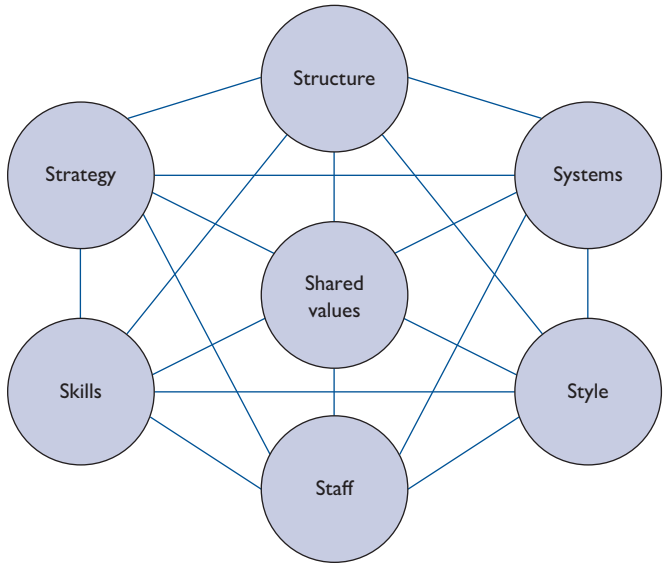
4.1.5 McKinsey's 7S model

McKinsey, as quoted by Waterman,[12] also regarded Chandler's strategy–structure model as inadequate and identified seven interrelated factors that organisations wishing to become more customer-orientated need to address. These factors are shown in Figure 4.5.

Figure 4.5 shows that shared values are at the core of the organisation. While formal structure is important, the critical issue is not how activities are divided up but, rather, the ability to focus on those dimensions that are important to organisational development. From a procurement standpoint, these seven dimensions are the following.

- *Shared values* – the importance of procurement sharing in the corporate culture or 'ways in which things are done around here'. The recognition by the organisation and procurement that procurement is a contributor to the achievement of organisational objectives. Relating all procurement activities to the ethical and environmental policies of the organisation is vital.
- *Structure* – the breaking down of functional barriers based on specialisation and the integration of procurement into logistics and supply chain processes in a seamless manner.
- *Skills* – the development of staff knowledge and competences relative to procurement and the sharing of such knowledge and competence with both internal and external suppliers.
- *Strategy* – in what ways can procurement contribute to the achievement of marketing, alliance, growth, diversification, outsourcing and similar strategies?
- *Style* – the building of supplier goodwill and cooperation by creating good supplier relationships based on trust, courtesy, information sharing and adherence to ethical principles.

Figure 4.5 McKinsey's 7S model



- *Staff* – securing the right mix of procurement and support staff to ensure that procurement contributes to competitive advantages, training and rewarding staff.
- *Systems* – the development of procedures, information flows and the facilitation of e-procurement.

4.2 New type organisations

Traditional bureaucratic structures characterised by vertical 'silos', departmentalisation of functions, rigid hierarchies and 'red tape' are becoming dysfunctional because they are widely regarded as too rigid, slow and insufficiently innovative to meet the requirements of flexible, fast-moving and rapidly changing enterprises and their customers.

Quinn[13] lists five factors that have influenced the reform of traditional hierarchical organisations.

1. The pursuit of 'right-sizing' and 'horizontal' organisations, resulting in the reduction of management layers and flat structures.
2. Concurrent actions, including the re-engineering of business processes, followed by organisational redesign and the greater use of multifunctional teams.
3. The need for precision, speed and flexibility in the execution of programmes and strategies.
4. The development of powerful information systems and automated knowledge capture, with the resultant empowerment of employees in the management of business processes.
5. The focus on customer satisfaction and retention by means of enhanced organisational responsiveness.

In procurement, a further factor is the transition from being a purely transactional activity to a key contributor to organisational competitiveness and performance in which the emphasis is on sourcing rather than buying. While many organisations still organise procurement along traditional hierarchical lines, the above factors are increasingly leading to the adoption of procurement and supply chain networks and the adoption of lean and agile philosophies.

Hastings[14] has identified seven characteristics of new type organisations, all of which have implications for procurement and supply chain management.

1. *Radical decentralisation* – this, combined with a belief that 'small is beautiful', splits the organisation into many small, autonomous units, the smallest of which is the individual who, when 'empowered', is given considerable autonomy with consequent responsibility and accountability.
2. *Intense interdependence* – this emphasises interdependence and multidisciplinary approaches and is implemented by assembling teams and coalitions to pursue common objectives. Both individuals and the organisation itself realise that in order to compete they have to cooperate.
3. *Demanding expectations* – organisations and the individuals in them have a clear sense of the goals that they are expected to achieve. Individuals are demanding of others and expect their cooperation as a right.
4. *Transparent performance standards* – demanding performance standards and performance measures are set and communicated in a transparent fashion so that all are

aware of how they are doing in relation to others. The emphasis is on improvement, not winners and losers.

5 *Distributed leadership* – leadership is not confined to senior management but is distributed among people in the company generally, who are required to display maturity and responsibility.

6 *Boundary busting* – to achieve adaptability and flexibility, physical, personal, hierarchical, functional, cultural, psychological and practical barriers to cooperation and communication are identified and systematically eliminated.

7 *Networking and reciprocity* – direct relationships and communication between individuals – irrespective of their roles, status, functions, culture or location – are encouraged and facilitated by the abandonment of conventional rigid organisation structures so that a pervasive culture of reciprocity and exchange mediates all relationships.

The movement from traditional bureaucratic/mechanistic to modern adaptive/organic structures is described in Table 4.5.

Examples of new type organic structures – emphasising empowerment, functional redundancy and the facilitation of communication between employee 'teams' and external 'parties' – are networks, which are lean and agile.

4.3 Networks

4.3.1 Network structures

A network structure is a series of strategic alliances that an organisation forms with suppliers, manufacturers and distributors to produce and market a product. Such structures enable an enterprise to bring resources together on a long-term basis, reduce costs and enhance quality without the high expenditure involved in investing in specialised resources, including research and design, and dedicated technology or the employment of an army of managers and operatives. It follows that:

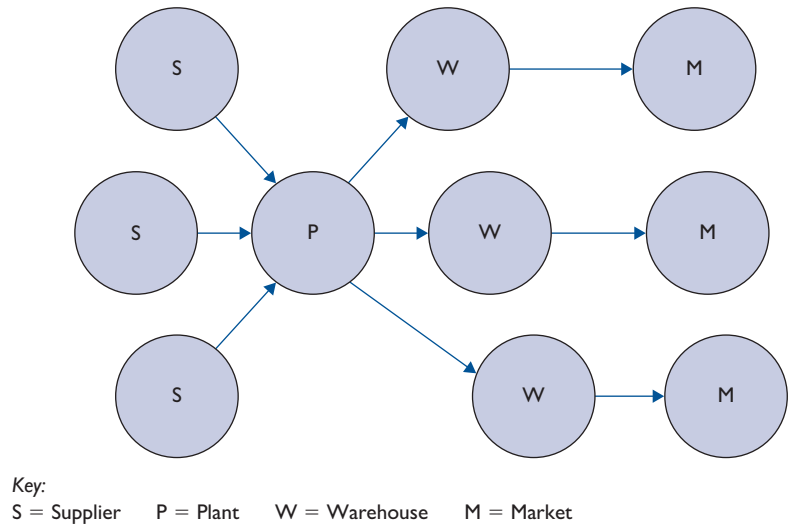
- a network, as Ford *et al.*[15] point out, is 'not a world of individual and isolated transactions. It is the result of complex interactions within and between companies in relationships over time', so, as Ford *et al.*[16] state elsewhere, 'the time dimension of a relationship requires managers to shift their emphasis away from each discrete purchase or sale towards tracking how things unfold in the relationship over time and changing these when appropriate'
- network structures allow organisations to bring resources (especially expertise), together on a long-term basis to reduce costs, which is why enterprises in Europe and the USA are increasingly turning to global networking as a means of gaining access to low-cost overseas inputs
- networks relate to all aspects of the supply chain, including marketing and distribution, but this book is primarily concerned with networking with suppliers.

4.3.2 Network basics

The typical supply chain network is shown in Figure 4.6.

The nodes represent the business or 'actors', such as suppliers, producers, customers and service providers. The links between the nodes represent relationships. Relationships

Figure 4.6 Typical supply chain network



between actors are like bridges as they give one actor access to the resources and competences of another. Harland[17] points out that some researchers use the term 'network' to describe a network of actors, while others use it to discuss a network of processes or activities. The study of networks can therefore be related to networks of actors (organisations or individuals), activities (or processes) and resources. When discussing networks, it is essential to specify whether or not networks of actors or networks of activities are being considered. The network model shown in Figure 4.7[18] shows the connections between actors, resources and activities and how, via their relationships, it is possible for actors to mobilise resources.

Further aspects of network structure are considered in section 4.4.

4.3.3 Network classifications

Typical of numerous classifications of networks are those of Snow *et al.*[19] Lamming *et al.*[20] Harland *et al.*[21] and Craven *et al.*[22]

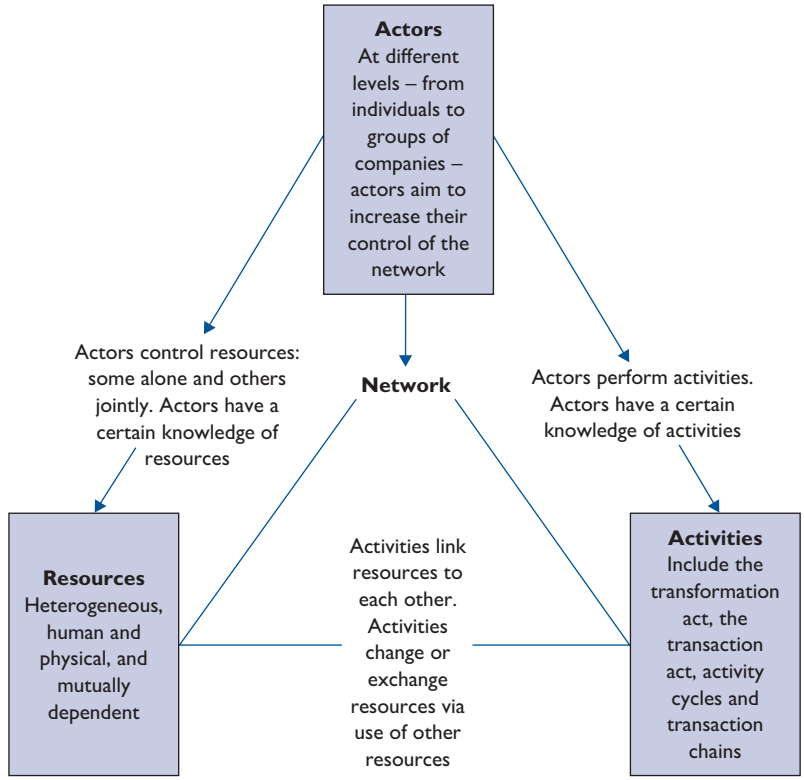
Snow *et al.*[23] distinguish between internal, stable and dynamic structures – shown in Figure 4.8.

Internal network firms own most or all of the assets associated with the business and endeavour to capture entrepreneurial and market benefits without engaging in much outsourcing.

In *stable networks*, assets are owned by several firms but dedicated to a particular business. As shown, the suppliers nestle round a large core enterprise, either providing supplies or distributing its products.

With *dynamic networks*, there is extensive outsourcing. The lead firm identifies and assembles assets owned wholly or largely by other enterprises on whose core skills it relies. Examples of such core skills cited by Snow *et al.* are manufacturing, such as Motorola, research and development, such as Reebok, or design and assembly, such as Dell Computing. In dynamic organisations, key managers create and assemble

Figure 4.7 Network model



Source: Hakansson, H., *Industrial Technological Development*, Croom Helm, 1987

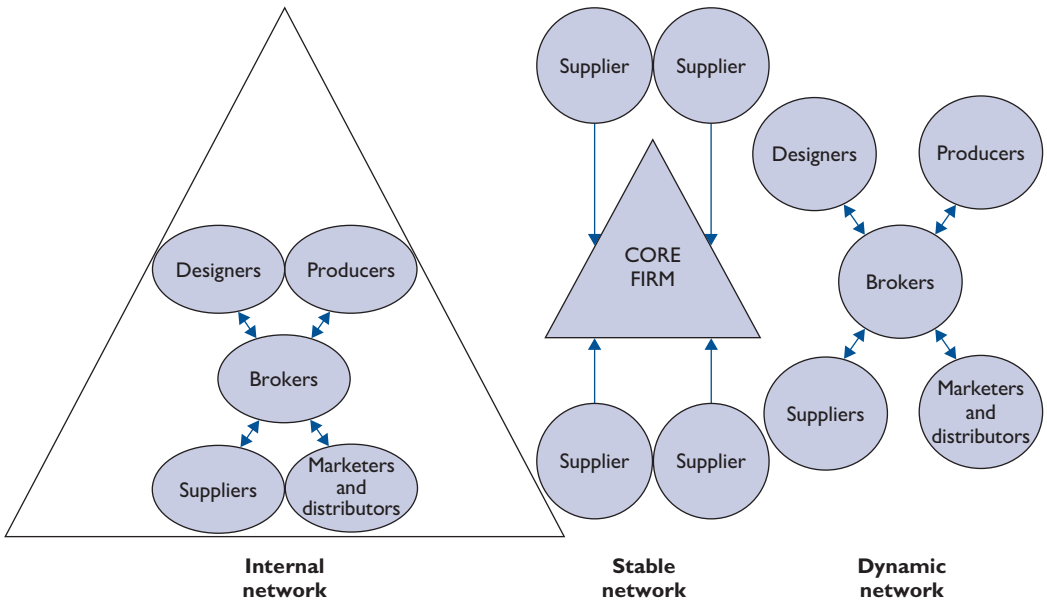
resources controlled by outside resources and can therefore be thought of as brokers. Some enterprises rely purely on brokering and are therefore virtual organisations. In virtual organisations an enterprise designs and markets a product but outsources manufacturing to specialist providers and possibly distributors. Some advantages and disadvantages of dynamic networks are shown in Table 4.1.

Lamming *et al.*,[24] building on earlier work by Fisher,[25] suggest two distinctive types of supply networks relating, respectively, to products that are 'innovative-unique' (such as drugs, communications technology and electronics) and 'functional' (such as canned soft drinks, brake cylinders and car window wipers). In each case, a distinction is made, as shown in Table 4.2, between products of higher or lower complexity, competitive priorities and sharing of resources and information.

Harland *et al.*[26] provides a taxonomy of supplier networks based on two dimensions, which are, first, whether the supply network operates under dynamic or stabilised (routinised) conditions and, second, whether the influence of the focal firm over other supply chain actors, such as customers and suppliers, is high or low.

The contributions of the above dimensions provide four types of supply networks, as shown in Table 4.3. The taxonomy outlined in the table aims to provide insight into ways of networking for managers to employ in dealing with different types of networks.

Figure 4.8 Common network types



Craven *et al.*[27] proposed two dimensions for the classification of network organisations: the volatility of environmental changes and the type of relationship between network members, whether it is collaborative or transactional.

Highly volatile situations require that enterprises should have:

- flexible internal structures capable of rapid adjustment to new environmental conditions
- flexible external relationships that allow for alteration or termination in a relatively short time period.

Table 4.1 Some advantages and disadvantages of dynamic networks

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
Networks allow organisations to specialise in what they do best and, thus, develop distinctive competences	Network structures have less control over operations. Even slight misunderstandings can result in product misspecifications
Networks can display the technical specialisation of functional structures, the market responsiveness of divisions and the balanced orientation of matrix structures	Network organisations are vulnerable to competition from their manufacturing contractors
Synergy – that is, the whole is greater than the sum of its parts – results from the cooperation of the network partners	If a network partner fails or goes out of business, the entire network can break down. It is difficult to guard innovations developed, designed and manufactured by network partners Dynamic organisations lose their organic advantage when they become legalistic, secretive and too binding on the other partners

Table 4.2 Characteristics of supply networks for products (Lamming *et al.,* 2000)

	Products	
Characteristics	*Innovative and unique*	*Functional*
Higher complexity	*Competitive priority*: speed, flexibility, quality, supremacy *Sharing of resources and information*: large amounts of non-strategic information enabled by IT – problematic when involving sensitive information and knowledge	*Competitive priority*: cost reduction, quality, sustainability, service *Sharing of resources and information*: large amounts of non-strategic information enabled by IT – generally unproblematic, but may include cost breakdowns and strategic knowledge
Low complexity	*Competitive priority*: speed and flexibility, innovation, quality, supremacy *Sharing of resources and information*: problematic, exchange of sensitive information and knowledge – IT less critical	*Competitive priority*: cost (by high-volume production), service *Sharing of resources and information*: generally unproblematic – may include cost and strategic knowledge – IT less critical

Network relationships may range from highly collaborative to largely transactional links. *Transactional linkages* imply discrete exchanges of values where a major issue is price, typified in the economics model of buyer–seller relationships. Transactional links are most likely to occur between parties that do not require collaboration.

Collaborative links may:

- involve various forms of inter-organisational cooperation and partnering, including the development of formal alliances and joint ventures
- considerate interactions between organisations to achieve common objectives
- continuing relationships between the parties that, when they are long-term ones, are likely to involve strategic alliances as a networking method.

Based on the two dimensions of volatility and relationships, Craven classifies networks as hollow, flexible, value-added and virtual, as shown in Figure 4.9.

As shown by Figure 4.9, virtual and value-added networks are appropriate to conditions of low environmental volatility. When environmental volatility is high, flexible and hollow networks are applicable. Conversely, value-added and hollow networks are appropriate to transactional relationships. When relationships are collaborative, virtual and flexible networks are applicable. The conditions under which a core organisation is most likely to employ each of the four networks are set out in Table 4.4.

4.3.4 Network configuration and optimisation

Configuration

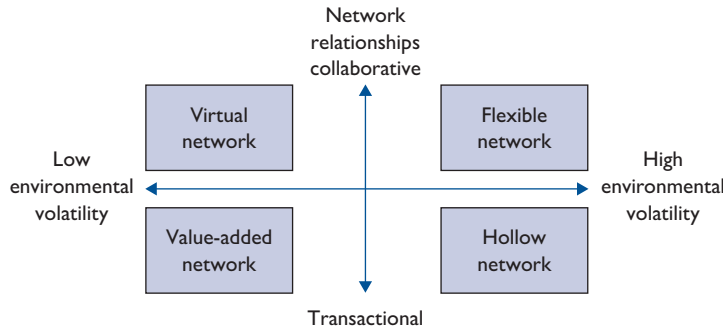
Deciding the configuration of the network – the number, location, capacity and technology of suppliers, manufacturing plants, warehouses and distribution channels – is important for the following reasons:

- the strategic configuration of the supply chain influences tactical decisions relating to the aggregate quantities and material flows relating to the procurement, processing and distribution of products

Table 4.3 A taxonomy of supply networks (Harland *et al.*, 2001)

Network designation	*Dynamic/stability factors*	*Factors in focal firm influence*	*Applicable networking activities*
Type 1 dynamic/low degree of focal firm influence	Internal process characteristics: ■ high process variety, including large numbers of network configurations, low volumes or both ■ sometimes high levels of promotional activity External market conditions: ■ uncertain demand ■ many competitors ■ high frequency of new product launches	Low influence due to: ■ direct network value added by focal firm producing low volumes relative to other network players ■ focal firm has low profile in the network relating to its lack of drive to innovate	■ Human resources integration and knowledge capture within the network ■ Encouraging other network players to invest in innovation by motivating (incentives) and risk and benefit sharing ■ Demand management problems – buffer stocks ■ Coping with the network
Type 2 dynamic/ high degree of focal firm influence	As above	High influence due to: ■ direct value added by focal firm producing large volumes relative to other network players ■ reputation for innovative capability ■ focal firm provides access to rest of the network, either as a bottleneck or a conduit, which will influence the network	■ Human resources integration and knowledge capture to advance innovation ■ Motivation and risk and benefit sharing less critical to focal firm but still important for successful partnerships ■ Focal firm in a position to choose partners ■ Focal firm's decisions have implications for other actors ■ Demand management problems – buffer stocks managing the network
Type 3 routinised low degree of focal firm influence	Internal process characteristics: ■ low variety ■ high volumes ■ promotional/activities not frequent enough to make network dynamic External market conditions: ■ stable demand ■ few competitors ■ difficulty of switching ■ low frequency of product launches	Low influence due to Type 1 factors	■ Process rather than product innovation critical to improving operational processes. Enhance quality and minimise costs ■ Critical activities are: – equipment resource integration and information processing – motivation and risk and benefit sharing ■ Stock minimisation ■ Coping with network
Type 4 routinised high degree of focal firm influence	As Type 3	High influence due to Type 2 factors Focal firm often in a position to gain control of the network	■ Focal firm in a position to choose with whom to work and make decisions on behalf of the supply network ■ Equipment resource integration and information processing ■ Stock minimisation ■ Managing network

Figure 4.9 Classification of network organisations



- the supply chain configuration involves the commitment of substantial capital resources, such as plant and machinery, for long time periods
- factors such as changes in consumer demand and technology and global sourcing lead to changes in network configurations. There is, however, evidence that, configurations, once determined, are difficult to change.

Table 4.4 Characteristics of alternative network forms (Craven *et al.*, 1996)

Characteristics	*Flexible network*	*Hollow network*	*Virtual network*	*Value-added network*
Environmental fluctuations	Short-term	Short-term	Long-term	Long-term
Network coordinator/ member relationships	Collaborative but flexible	Transactional	Collaborative (vertical and horizontal)	Transactional
End-user relationships	Transactional	Collaborative	Collaborative/ transactional	Transactional
Market structure	Diverse end-users' needs/wants	Highly segmented end-user focus	Complicated, segmented and dynamic	Diffused preferences difficult to segment
Technological complexity	Production/ distribution processes are complicated	Technology is centred on network's members	High level of technology involving an array of capabilities	Product innovation
Core competency of coordinating organisation	Market knowledge and process design leveraging with specialists	Marketing function/focus	Product innovation and production skills	Product design, production and marketing coordination
Network members' core competency	Specialists	Network members' capabilities matched to end-users' needs	Market access and specialised technological capabilities	Specialists in narrowly defined functions with major cost advantages

Arbulu and Tommelein[28] studied supply chain practices for pipe supports used in the construction of power plants. A pipe support is an assembly of components including springs, bearings and pipe shoes (pieces of pipe that transfer gravity loads to a structure underneath the pipe). Although relatively inexpensive, problems relating to the design and supply of pipe supports can compromise the success of the overall power plant project.

Arbulu and Tommelein identify the following five supply chain configurations for the supply of pipe supports:

- *Configuration 1*: Engineering firm designs the pipe supports. Supplier details, fabricates and supplies the supports. Contractor installs. (This is the common practice.)
- *Configuration 2*: Engineering firm routes pipes and performs pipe stress analysis. Supplier designs, details, fabricates and supplies the supports. Contractor installs.
- *Configuration 3*: Supplier fully designs pipe supports. Contractor installs.
- *Configuration 4*: Contractor takes responsibility for pipe support design and fabrication, though, usually, subcontracts the work and then installs.
- *Configuration 5*: Fabricator takes responsibility for pipe support design and fabrication. Contractor installs.

Optimisation

The optimisation of supply chain networks is concerned with decisions relating to what constitutes the ideal number of operating facilities and their locations, as well as the amount of supplies to purchase, the quantity of outputs to manufacturing and the flow of such outputs through the network to minimise total costs.

Network optimisation models (NOM) aim to facilitate optimal materials sourcing, processing, activity and material and product flows throughout the supply chain, taking into account forecasts of future demand. They are a measure of the performance of all the key supply chain operating characteristics and provide indications of risks and returns under a variety of operating environments. A large number of commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) supply chain optimisation software packages are available that focus on both strategic and tactical issues.

Within the FMCG (fast-moving consumer goods) sector, companies such as Walmart, Tesco and Procter & Gamble utilise Collaborative Planning, Forecasting and Replenishment (CPFR)[29], which is a set of business processes that entities in a supply chain can use for collaboration on a number of retailer/manufacturer functions towards overall efficiency in the supply chain.

4.4 Factors in configurations

Network configurations are contingent and will vary widely among organisations. Lambert *et al*.[30] state that an explicit knowledge and understanding of how the network structure is configured is a key element of supply chain management and identify three primary elements: identification of the supply chain members, structural dimensions and the horizontal position of the focal enterprise.

- *Identification of the supply chain members* – that is, all the organisations with which the focal company interacts directly or indirectly via its suppliers or customers from the point of origin to the point of consumption. These may be divided into primary and

supporting network members. The former are those who actually perform operational or managerial activities in the processes leading to the production of a final product. The latter are organisations that provide resources, knowledge, utilities or assets for the primary members of the network, such as those that lease machinery to a contractor or banks that lend money to a retailer.

- *The structural dimensions of the network* – these dimensions are the horizontal and vertical structures and the horizontal position of the focal company within the parameters of the supply chain. The *horizontal structure* is the number of tiers across the supply chain. Supply chains may be short with few tiers or long with many tiers. The *vertical structure* is the number of suppliers or customers represented within each tier. Thus, an enterprise can have a narrow or wide vertical structure with few or many suppliers or customers respectively.
- *Horizontal positioning* – this refers to the positioning of the focal organisation in the supply chain. An enterprise may be located at or near the initial source of the supply, at or near to the ultimate customer or at some intermediate supply chain position.

4.4.1 Tiering

Tiering levels

Lamming[31] points out that the terms 'first' and 'second' tiers are 'used to indicate the degree of influence the supplier exerts in the supply chain, rather than some fixed position in the hierarchy', and offers the following definitions:

> First-tier suppliers are those that integrate for direct supply to the assembler or who have a significant technical influence on the assembly while supplying indirectly.
>
> Second-tier suppliers are those that supply components to first-tier firms for integration into systems or provide some support service, such as metal finishing, etc.

Tiering may extend further. Exceptionally, an enterprise may have six or more tiers.

Reasons for tiering

Lamming shows that tiers may form for three reasons:

1. Because the assembler may require first-tier suppliers to integrate diverse technologies not possessed by one organisation.
2. Components required for systems will be very specialised and, thus, made by a small number of (large) firms, in large quantities (such as electronic parts), so it is sensible for first-tier suppliers to buy these from specialist makers.
3. The third level of subcontracted work covers simple, low-value-added items required by first-tier and second-tier suppliers, such as presswork, fasteners.

Responsibilities for tiering

First-tier suppliers are direct suppliers, usually making high-cost, complicated assemblies. They are empowered to relay the assembler's standards to second-tier or indirect suppliers and are responsible for large numbers of second-tier suppliers.

The responsibilities of first-tier suppliers as identified by Lamming include:

- research and development, especially relating to technologies that are being applied to the assembler's product for the first time

- management of second-tier and lower-tier suppliers, including integration previously undertaken by the assembly
- true JIT supply
- customer-dedicated staff who work in association with the design and production departments of the assembler
- warranties and customer claims.

Some consequences of tiering

The key word at all levels of tiering levels is *collaboration* as much of the competitive advantage required for lean production (described below) derives from the ability to deal with sub-contractors as collaborators or partners.

Where tiering is carried out for either the first or second reasons stated above, the relationship between the two suppliers becomes more akin to a strategic joint venture than a procurement link. The product technology resides in both firms, so the first-tier supplier would find it just as difficult to replace the specialist second-tier supplier as vice versa. In this situation, the suppliers may even set up special companies to conduct business as joint ventures.

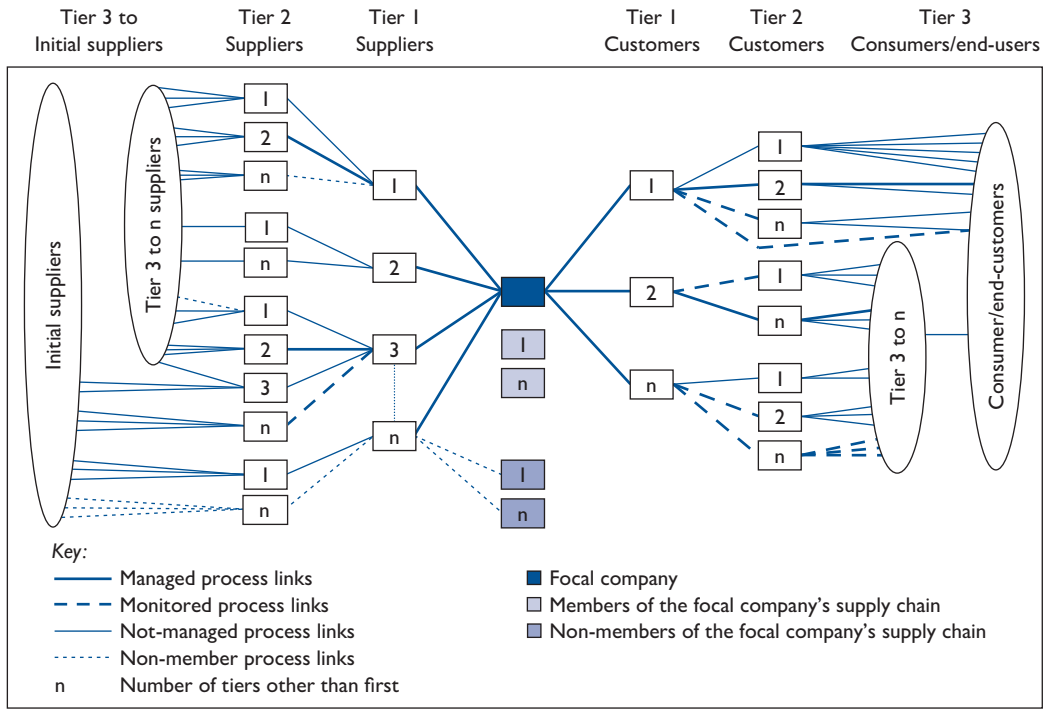
Tiering and linking

Tiering is closely related to linking.

Lambert *et al.*[32] identified four 'fundamentally different' process links that can be identified between supply chain members. These links provide indications of how closely focal firm executives integrate and manage links further away from the first tier.

- *Managed process links* – the focal company integrates and manages process links with first-tier customers and suppliers, although it may be actively involved in the management of other process links beyond the first tier. These are critical processes in the supply chain shown in Figure 4.10 (the managed process links are shown by the thickest solid lines).
- *Monitored process links* – the focal company monitors or audits as frequently as necessary how the process links are integrated and managed between other member companies. These will be less critical but still important processes (in Figure 4.10 the monitored process links are indicated by the thick dashed lines).
- *Not-managed process links* – the focal company fully trusts other supply chain members to manage the process links appropriately or, because of limited resources, leaves it to them. These will be links that the focal company is not actively involved in or critical enough to use resources for monitoring. Thus, a manufacturer may have one or more suppliers of wooden pallets. Normally, the focal company will not choose to integrate and manage the links beyond the pallet manufacturer all the way back to the growing of the trees (in Figure 4.10 the not-managed process tasks are shown by the thin solid lines).
- *Non-member process links* – non-member process tasks are links between members of the focal company's supply chain and non-members of the supply chain. Such non-members links are not considered to be links of the company's supply chain structure, but they can, and often will, affect the performance of the focal company and its supply chain – a supplier to the focal company may also be a supplier to a competitor, for example. Such a supply chain structure may have implications for the

Figure 4.10 Types of intercompany business process links



supplier's allocation of manpower to the focal company's development process, availability of supplies in times of shortage or confidentiality of information (in Figure 4.10 non-member process links are shown by the thin dashed lines).

4.5 Lean organisations

4.5.1 Lean thinking

The core concept of lean thinking is the Japanese term *muda*, exemplified by the practices of Japanese motor manufacturers described by Womack *et al.*[33] in their book *Machines That Changed the World*. *Muda* means 'waste' or any human activity that absorbs resources but creates no value. Examples of *muda* are spoiled production, unnecessary processing steps, the purposeless movement or movements of employees and goods, time wasted in waiting for materials, uneconomic or unnecessary inventories and goods and services that fail to meet customers' requirements. Lean thinking is mean because it does more with less.

A report by research teams from the Universities of Bath and Warwick[34] on the 'people' implications of lean organisations identified three phases of lean development and their associated production and human resources approaches. These are shown in Table 4.5.

Table 4.5 The three phases of lean development

Phase	*Concerned with*	*Approaches*
1 Leanness as transition	Efforts made by the organisation to become lean	Delayering – flattening the organisation Downsizing – a reduction in the workforce Outsourcing – focusing on core activities and subcontracting non-core activities to outside providers
2 Leanness as an outcome	Assumed structural flexibility following a period of delayering, downsizing and outsourcing	Business process re-engineering (BPR) The fundamental rethinking and radical redesign of business processes to achieve dramatic improvements in critical contemporary measures of performance, such as cost, quality, service, speed Lean production characterised by: ■ elimination of waste in terms of both material and human resources ■ low inventories ■ zero defects – prevention rather than rectification of faults ■ integrated production chains ■ team working ■ involvement of all employees and suppliers in a continuous process to improve products and job design
3 Leanness as a process	Focuses attention on the attributes of those organisations that can respond to environmentally produced change	Total quality management (TQM). Management philosophy and company practices that aim to harness the human and material resources of the organisation in the most effective way to achieve the objectives of the organisation just-in-time (JIT). An inventory control philosophy whose goal is to maintain just enough material in just the right place at just the right time to make just the right amount of product

4.5.2 Lean production

Some aspects of lean production, such as the attempt to eliminate waste, the purchase of whole assemblies and tiering, have been referred to above. Other aspects of lean production, as identified by Womack *et al.*, include the following.

- Target costing – for example, a car assembler establishes a target price for the vehicle, then the assembler and suppliers work backwards to ascertain how the car can be made for the price, while allowing a reasonable profit for both the assembler and suppliers. This differs from the traditional approach in which:

  $$\text{Sales price} = \text{Cost} + \text{Profit}$$

  The lean production approach is:

  $$\text{Profit} = \text{Sales price} - \text{Cost}$$

- The use of value engineering, value analysis and learning curves to reduce initial and subsequent cost of suppliers.
- The use of cross-functional teams of highly skilled workers and highly flexible automated machines.
- A just-in-time (JIT) pull system in which nothing is moved or produced until the previous process is completed.

- Zero defective parts. When a supplier fails to meet quality or reliability requirements, a cooperative effort is made to ascertain the cause. In the interim, part of the business is transferred to another supplier.
- Cooperation between the assembler and first-tier suppliers affected by supplier associations. They meet to share new findings on better ways to make parts. Some companies also have associations with their second-tier suppliers.
- After negotiations, the assembler and supplier agree on a cost-reduction curve over the four-year life of the product. Any supplier-derived cost savings beyond those agreed go to the supplier.
- Relationships between the assembler and suppliers are based on a 'basic contract' that expresses a long-term commitment to working together for mutual benefit. The contract also lays down rules relating to prices, quality assurance, ordering, delivery, proprietary rights and materials supply.

4.5.3 Lean production structures

Lean production, as Toni and Tonchia[35] point out, leads to a management by process organisation designed to link all the activities in order to achieve the unified objective of customer satisfaction in all its aspects.

The primary justification of management by process is to overcome functional rigidity (functional silos) where single functions of units often have different and contradictory performance objectives (such as manufacturing versus delivery punctuality).

In a manufacturing organisation, three processes can be considered fundamental:

- product development
- manufacturing or assembly (materials processing)
- logistics (material handling).

Features of process-orientated organisations are:

- they are end product-orientated and determined by the aggregation of competences and activities
- responsibility is linked to roles rather than levels
- they become horizontal, as with materials management and supply chains
- their aim is the integration of subtasks, with functional responsibilities coordinated by the process logic.

4.5.4 Advantages and disadvantages of lean production

Advantages include greater flexibility, reduced waste, quicker response to customers' demands, shorter throughput time, lower supervision costs, lower stock levels and improved quality as feedback is quicker.

Trade union objections to lean production include:

- increases in workers' responsibilities can lead to pressure and anxiety not present in traditional systems
- expansion of job requirements without comparable increases in pay
- the company is the main beneficiary of employee-generated improvements.

The two principal limitations of lean production, however, are its inability to deal with turbulence and change and that the pursuit of perfection may eliminate the scope for flexibility. Lean production depends on a stable business environment as then it can maximise its efficiencies of scale.

4.6 Agile organisations and production

Agile production is the latest stage of a development away from the mass production of the 1970s, through the decentralised production of the 1980s and on to the supply chain management and lean production of the 1990s.

4.6.1 Drivers of agility

The main drivers of agility include rapidly changing and unpredictable markets, the rapid rates of technological innovation, customers' requirements for customisation and choice, competitive priorities of responsiveness, shorter lifecycles, concern for the environment and international competitiveness. Goldman *et al.*[36] state that the four underlying components of agility are:

- delivering value to the customer
- being ready for change
- valuing human knowledge
- forming virtual partnerships.

4.6.2 Agile characteristics

Based on Goldman, Aitken *et al.*[37] have identified the core characteristics of agile manufacture shown in Table 4.6.

4.6.3 Postponement

Postponement and decoupling are important concepts of agility. By making customised product changes as close as possible to the time of purchase by the end-customer it is possible to provide a wide variety of customised products without incurring high inventory, processing and transportation costs. Suppose the manufacture and assembly of a product requires 40 steps. By proceeding as far as step 30 and then putting the partly completed product into inventory, the final 10 steps have been postponed.

The above is an example of *manufacturing postponement*, the object of which is to maintain flexibility by keeping products in a neutral or uncommitted state for as long as possible. Examples of manufacturing postponement are found in vehicle manufacturers when colours and non-standard components or additions are deferred until the receipt of specific instructions from the customer. In house building, the basic shell may be constructed, but kitchen and bathroom fitting and decorating will not proceed until the requirements of the individual customer have been ascertained.

There is also *geographic*, or *logistics*, *postponement*, which is the exact opposite. The basic notion of geographic postponement according to Bowersox *et al.*[38] is 'to build and

Table 4.6 Comparison of lean and agile production systems

Factor	*Lean production*	*Agile production*
Primary purposes	Meeting predictable demand efficiently at the lowest possible cost Elimination of waste from the supply chain	Rapid response to unpredictable demand to minimise stockouts, forced markdowns and obsolete inventory
Manufacturing focus	Maintenance of a high average utilisation unit	Deployment of excess buffer capability
Inventory strategy	High stock turnover and minimum inventory	Deployment of significant buffer stocks of parts to respond to demand
Lead time focus	Shortened lead time, providing it does not increase cost	Investing aggressively in resources that will reduce lead times
Approach to supplier selection	Selecting for cost and quality	Selecting primarily for speed, flexibility and quality
Supply linkages	Emphasis on long-term supply chain partnerships that are consolidated over time	Emphasis on virtual supply chains where partnerships are reconfigured according to new market opportunities
Performance measurement	Emphasis on world-class measures based on such criteria as quality and productivity	Emphasis on customer-facing metrics, such as orders met on time, in full
Work organisation	Emphasis on work standardisation – doing it the same way every time	Emphasis on self-management and ability to respond immediately to new opportunities from all involved in work processes
Work planning and control	Emphasis on the protection of operation's core by a fixed period in the planning cycle to help balance resources, synchronise material movements and reduce waste	Emphasis on the need for immediate interpretation of customer demand and instantaneous response

stock a full line inventory at one or two strategic locations'. Forward deployment of inventory is postponed until customers' orders are received. An example is the keeping of critical spares at a service centre to ensure their rapid availability to customers. Once an order for spares is received, it is transmitted electronically to the central service centre, from where the required items are rapidly transported to the customer and replacements manufactured. The outcome is highly reliable customer service with low inventory.

Van Hoek[39] has identified the following advantages of postponement:

- inventory can be held at a generic level so that there will be fewer stock variants and, therefore, less total inventory
- because inventory is generic, its flexibility is greater – that is, the same components or modules can be embodied on a variety of end products
- forecasting is easier at the generic level than for finished products
- the ability to customise products locally means that a higher level of variety may be offered at a lower cost.

4.6.4 Decoupling

The decoupling point is defined by Christopher[40] as 'the point to which real demand penetrates upstream in a supply chain'. Decoupling is closely associated with postponement and the type of customer demand. Figure 4.11[41] shows how the positioning of the decoupling point changes with different supply chain structures.

The organisations downstream from the decoupling point are organised for agility and the ability to cope with variability in demand volume and high levels of product variety. Upstream organisations work to a stable demand with relatively low variety and can therefore focus on lean, low-cost manufacture.

Christopher and Towill[42] point out that, in real-world supply chains, there are actually two decoupling points. The first relates to 'material' and is where strategic inventory is held in as generic a form as possible. Inventory should therefore lie as far downstream in the supply chain and as near to the final marketplace as possible. The second is the 'information' decoupling point. Ideally this should lie as far as possible upstream as, in effect, it is the furthest point to which information on real final demand penetrates. Reference to the concept of 'leagility' is made in section 4.6.6.

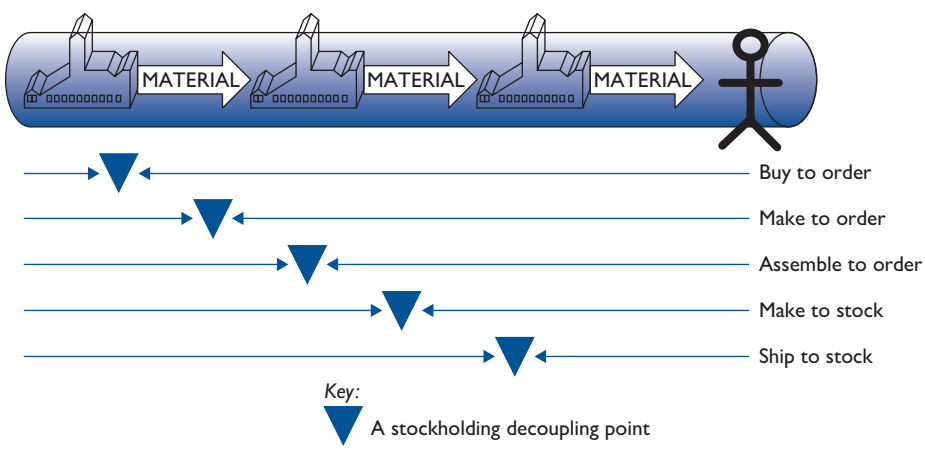
4.6.5 Enablers of agile manufacturing

Gunasekaran[43] identified seven enablers of agile manufacturing:

1 *Virtual enterprise* – each functional aspect of the manufacturing design, production and marketing of a product may be performed by many different organisations using an Internet-assisted manufacturing system.

2 *Physically distributed teams and manufacturing* – 'the physically distributed enterprise is a temporary alliance of partner enterprises located all over the world, each contributing their core competences to take advantage of a specific business opportunity or fend off a market threat'.

Figure 4.11 Family of supply chain structures



Source: Hoekstra, S. and Romme, J., *Integral Logistics Structures: Developing Customer-orientated Goods Flow*, McGraw-Hill, 1992

3 *Rapid partnership formation tools/metrics* – achievable by means of such tools as IT, including the Internet, EDI, quality function development (QFD) techniques and financial and non-financial metrics.

4 *Concurrent engineering* – provides a quick response to the need for shorter product development cycles and appropriate tools for this include functional analysis, computer-aided manufacturing (CAM), solid modelling, value engineering, failure mode and effect analysis (FMEA) and robust engineering.

5 *Integrated product/production/business information systems* – the diverse systems of participating organisations must be integrated, either by redesign or the adoption of strategies aimed at the sharing of information by means of advanced technologies, such as the Internet and EDI.

6 *Rapid prototyping tools* – 'prototyping refers to the design and generation of an early version of a product. Advanced computer technologies such as computer-aided design (CAD), computer-aided estimates (CAE) and computer engineering (CE) help to improve responsiveness to customer requirements by reducing product development times and non-value added activities at the design stage'.

7 *E-commerce* – this can improve responsiveness to customers' demands by directly collecting their requirements via an online communication system, such as the Internet, and reducing cycle and order fulfilment times.

4.6.6 Lean and agile production

Lean and agile production are sometimes regarded as synonymous, but there are significant differences. Aitken *et al.*[44] note that 'Webster's Dictionary makes the distinction clearly when it defines lean as "containing little fat" whereas agile is defined as "nimble"'. Some comparisons between lean and agile production systems are shown in Table 4.6.

Naylor *et al.*[45] distinguish between the two terms as follows:

> Leanness means developing a value stream to eliminate all waste, including time, and to enable a level schedule.
>
> Agility means using market knowledge and a virtual corporation to exploit profitable opportunities in a volatile marketplace.

An alternative comparison of lean and agile supply is shown in Table 4.7.[46]

In general, lean production is best in situations where volumes are high, variety low and demand predictable. Conversely, agile production is suited to volatile demand and where products are customised. Thus, as Mason-Jones *et al.*[47] observe, 'fashion products, such as trendy clothing, have a short lifecycle and high demand uncertainty and therefore expose the supply chain to both stockouts and obsolescence risks. Commodities, for example, tinned soups, have relatively long lifecycles and low demand uncertainty due to the fact that they tend to be well-established products with a predictable consumption pattern'.

Leanness and agility are complementary rather than competing terms and leanness should often be regarded as an enabler of agility. As indicated in section 4.6.4, the strategic use of a decoupling point may combine leanness and agility and thereby exploit

Table 4.7 Comparison of lean and agile supply: the distinguishing attributes

Distinguishing attributes	*Lean supply*	*Agile supply*
Typical products	Commodities	Fashion goods
Marketplace demand	Predictable	Volatile
Product variety	Low	High
Product lifecycle	Long	Short
Customer drivers	Cost	Availability
Profit margin	Low	High
Dominant costs	Physical costs	Marketability costs
Stockout penalties	Long-term, contractual	Immediate and volatile
Procurement policy	Buy goods	Assign capacity
Information enrichment	Highly desirable	Obligatory
Forecasting mechanism	Algorithm	Consultative

the benefits of both approaches. Naylor *et al.*[48] have termed this combined approach 'leagility', which they define as:

> The combination of the lean and agile paradigms within a total supply chain strategy by positioning the decoupling point so as to best suit the need for responding to a volatile demand yet providing level scheduling upstream from the marketplace.

4.7 Supply and value chain mapping

A map is a visual representation of some actuality. Maps also enable us to comprehend and communicate information. Maps assist comprehension as a picture is 'worth a thousand words'. Maps also communicate specific and general information. Architects' plans and road maps communicate specific and general information respectively. A supply network diagram is a form of supply chain mapping.

4.7.1 Forms of mapping

As supply and value chain mapping is undertaken for a specific purpose – normally for supply chain redesign or modification or the elimination or reduction of waste – the number of options for mapping to meet the needs of users is large. Gardner and Cooper[49] distinguish between strategic supply chain mapping and process mapping regarding three characteristics: orientation, level of detail and purpose. These distinctions are set out in Table 4.8.

Table 4.8 Distinguishing strategic supply chain and process mapping

Characteristics	*Supply chain mapping*	*Process mapping*
Orientation	*External*: focuses on how goods, information and money flow upstream and downstream and through a firm	*Internal* (typically): focuses on a single operation or system with an enterprise
Level of detail	*Low to moderate*: emphasises high-level measures, such as volume, cost or lead time. Gives an overall perspective on how processes work together between enterprises. May exclude non-critical entities	*High*: breaks down a process into activities and steps. Every step includes information to characterise the system being mapped
Purpose	*Strategic*: mapping aims to create a supply chain conforming to a strategy or ensure that the current chain fulfils that strategy adequately	*Tactical*: process map originates from the recognition of a problem area and the need to improve operating efficiency. Goal is to make changes in current operations. Efforts normally limited to one process or function at a time

4.7.2 The purpose of supply chain mapping

Gardner and Cooper[50] state that a well-executed strategic supply chain map can:

> . . . enhance the strategic planning process, case distribution of key information, facilitate supply chain redesign or modification, clarify channel dynamics, provide a common perspective, enhance communications, enable monitoring of supply chain strategy and provide a basis for supply chain analysis . . . Thus a map can be quite helpful in understanding a firm's supply chain, for evaluating the current supply chain and for contemplating realignment of a supply chain.

4.7.3 The supply chain mapping an example

A supply chain map is a time-based representation of the processes and activities that are involved as the materials or products move through the chain.

4.7.4 The methodology of mapping

A supply chain map[51] (see Figure 4.12 for an example) may be linked to or built directly from a database or built by hand. Gardner and Cooper state that 'the complexity of mapping is influenced by three supply chain map attributes: geometry, perspective and implementation issues'.

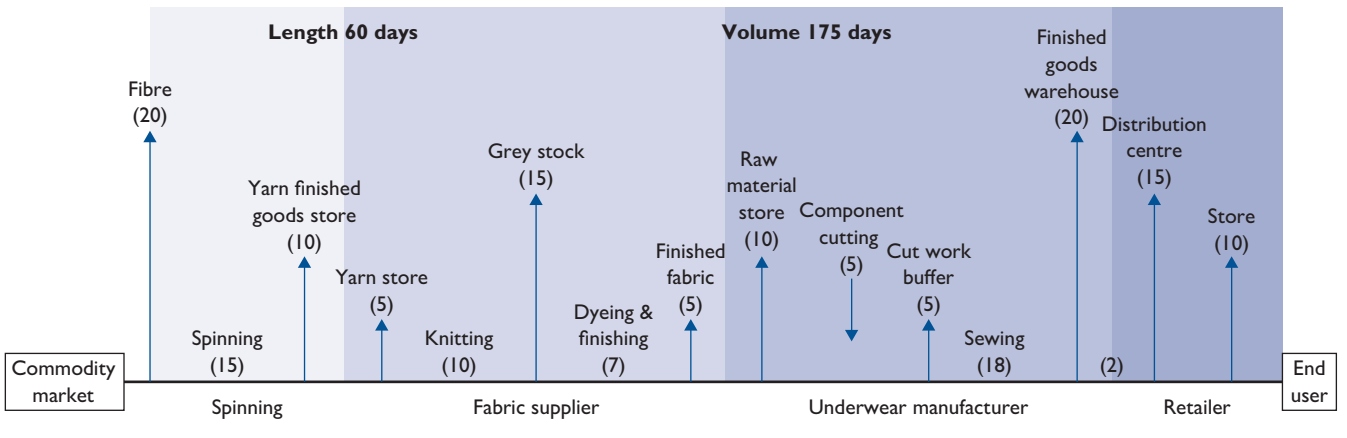
Geometry is concerned with such aspects as:

- the number of sequential business units performing transactions leading to the final consumer
- direction – whether it is supplier-orientated or customer-orientated or both
- length – the number of tiers up and down
- aggregation (width) – the degree of specificity within a tier, which may be high (one box per tier), medium (types of firms at each level identified) or low (some firms are named at each level)
- spatial – is the map geographically representative?

Perspective is concerned with issues relating to:

- the focal point – whether the maps takes a firm-centred or industry-centred view

Figure 4.12 Supply chain mapping – an example



Source: Scott, C. and Westbrook, R., `New strategic tools for supply chain management', *International Journal of Physical Distribution & Logistics Management*, Vol. 21, No 1, 1991

- scope – whether the breadth of product coverage included in the map is SBU-wide or by product category, product or component
- whether or not the map includes key processes beyond logistics
- whether or not the map includes a complete set of key business processes
- whether or not the map includes reverse logistics and other feedback loops.

Implementation issues:

- whether the density of information integrated into the visual map is high or low
- whether or not the map is linked to an existing corporate or supply chain database
- how the completed map shall be made available – paper, electronically or on the Web?

4.7.5 Value stream mapping tools

Hines and Rich[52] distinguish between traditional supply or value chains and value streams. The former include the complete activities of all the companies involved, while the latter refers only to the specific parts of the firms that actually add value to the product or service under consideration.

Hines and Rich identify seven mapping tools designed to reduce or eliminate seven forms of waste in a manufacturing organisation – overproduction, waiting, transportation, inappropriate processing, unnecessary inventory, unnecessary motion and defects. These take three forms, which are product (not identified by inspection and passed on to customers), service (not directly relating to products but to service, such as late delivery or incorrect documentation) and internal scrap (defects identified during inspection). The seven mapping tools are described in Table 4.9.

It is impractical in this book to give a detailed explanation of the implementation of the above tools[53] so we will confine ourselves to the following observations.

The process activity mapping tool provides an example of a typical mapping exercise directed at eliminating or reducing waste.

The first step is the preparation of a *process map* – a detailed flow chart that indicates every activity involved in making or doing something. It is critical to include all activities – not only those that are obvious.

Once the process map has been developed, a value chart can be constructed that attaches a cost or value to every activity. This cost is obtained after considering factors such as the machine or area used for the activity, distance moved, time taken and number of people employed.

Activities fall into four categories:

1. production or service time (value-added activity)
2. inspection time – performing quality control (non-value-added activity)
3. transfer time – movement of products or components (non-value-added activity)
4. idle time – storage time or time wasting during the production process (non-value-added activity).

The lead time for the process is therefore:

$$\text{Production time} + \text{Non-Value} - \text{added tim}$$

While in theory inspection and transfer time are regarded as non-value-added activities, they cannot, in practice, be completely eliminated.

Table 4.9 Hines and Rich's seven value stream mapping tools

Mapping tools	*Purpose and application*
Process activity mapping	Reducing waste by eliminating unnecessary activities, simplifying other activities or changing process sequences
Supply chain response matrix	Reducing lead times and inventory amounts
Production variety funnel	Targeting inventory reduction and changes in the processing of products in companies with varying activity patterns
Quality filter mapping	Identifying, for the purpose of improvement, the location of product and service defects, internal scrap, and other problems, inefficiencies and wasted effort
Demand amplification mapping	Identifying demand changes along the supply chain within varying time buckets to manage or reduce fluctuations in regular, exceptional and promotional demand
Decision point analysis	Particularly applicable for regular, unvarying production of multiple identical items, as in a chemical plant. Involves identifying the point at which products stop being made in accordance with actual demand and start to be made against forecasts alone. Identifying this point indicates whether processes are aligned with push or pull philosophies
Physical structure	Overviewing a particular supply chain from an industry perspective. This information may result in a redesign along the lines indicated for process activity mapping

The final stage involves using the process map and value chart to identify where savings can be made or value added.

4.8 Types of change

Daft[54] has identified five basic types of change that affect organisations and apply to procurement and other functions:

- *technology* – such as IT and e-procurement
- *product or service* – procurement, for example, was traditionally mainly a transactional process, concerned with obtaining items for production or other internal use, but is increasingly involved with strategic issues
- *administrative* – the movement from discrete procurement 'departments' to cross-functional procedures, such as the scanning, screening and selection of suppliers by cross-functional teams, for example
- *people* – such as the need for trained procurement professionals
- *business relationships* – which arise from acquisitions, mergers, joint ventures and partnership alliances.

4.8.1 Forces for change

Forces for change may be both external and internal.

External forces are those outside the organisation that create pressure to devise and implement new strategies to meet the challenges of competition or technology.

Internal forces are those within the organisation that may be the result of changing environmental conditions, such as declining competitive advantage, rising production costs or outdated facilities. Such factors may create internal pressure for new corporate strategies.

4.8.2 Perspectives on organisational change

Changes due to the above causes can be considered from three perspectives – structural, cultural and individual.

Structural change

If structure follows strategy, then changes in strategy arising from any of the above five drivers will be followed by structural changes. This can be exemplified by technological drivers, such as IT, and administrative or business drivers resulting in the decision to outsource.

IT, with its capability to communicate and share information, has caused traditional hierarchies to be replaced with horizontal structures. The need to physically locate people and units together to ensure coordination and supervision or to choose between centralised or decentralised structures is also increasingly invalidated by IT, with a consequent focus on projects and processes rather than standard procedures and tasks. IT can be substituted for layers of management and a number of managerial tasks. Lucas and Baroudi[55] give examples of how IT can create virtual organisations that do not exist in physical form. Mail-order companies, for example, employ individuals working from home using a special phone connected to a 0800 number to take orders from customers who have their catalogues. Manufacturers can use parts suppliers to substitute for their inventory. The supplier, linked electronically with the manufacturer, can use overnight delivery to ensure that the parts are delivered just-in-time for production. The manufacturer, thus, has a virtual parts inventory that is owned by the supplier until it arrives for production.

Cultural change

Organisational culture is a 'pattern of belief and expectations shared by organisational members'[56] or 'the way things are done around here'.[57]

Culture is an important aspect of change as culture might either block or facilitate it and also because changes in organisational strategies usually require changes in organisational structure. Thus, a change from transactional to partnership procurement will require a cultural reorientation on the part of the staff involved so that its suppliers are no longer regarded as adversaries to be kept at arm's length, but, instead, as allies. Developments such as total quality management (TQM) require the acceptance by all employees of a culture of continuous improvement in which people at all organisational levels accept responsibility for identifying quality problems early on. TQM also requires a culture of 'learning together', with guidance and support for the learning process being provided by management. With TQM it is also a management responsibility to develop a culture in which every employee is encouraged and empowered to take ownership of outputs, customer problems and improvement actions. Such changes in cultural outlook will usually require a significant investment in education and training

and the use of an internal or external change agent responsible for ensuring that the planned change is properly implemented.

Individual change

People usually respond to change with hostility and apprehension due to numerous factors, including insecurity, lack of information regarding proposed changes, the break-up of work groups, perceived threats to expertise, status or earnings, inconvenience of new working conditions and changes in management and supervisory personnel.

Preparing for change

An evaluation by management of structural, cultural and individual issues is the essential first step in the implementation of change at both organisational and functional levels.

4.8.3 The implementation of change

Kurt Lewin[58], a behavioural scientist, argues that the process of implementing change involves three basic steps:

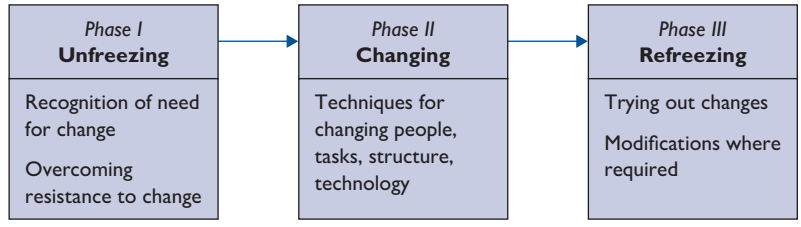
1 *unfreezing* – enabling people or organisations to be willing to change
2 *changing* – selection of techniques to implement change
3 *refreezing* – reinforcing and supporting the change so that it becomes a relatively permanent part of organisational processes.

Lewin's view of the change process is shown in Figure 4.13.

Numerous writers have produced step-by-step guides for the implementation of change and the following extension of Lewin's approach by Kotter and Schlesinger[59] is typical. This model suggests an eight-step process for the successful implementation of change – the first four steps being directed at the defrosting of a hardened status quo (or culture), steps five and seven introduce new practices and the last step corresponds to Lewin's 'refreezing', which helps to make them stick. The eight steps are:

1 *establishing a sense of urgency* – recognising the need for the enterprise or a function within the enterprise to change if it is to achieve and retain competitive advantage or cope with crises and opportunities
2 *creating the guiding coalition* – creating and empowering a group to lead change and encouraging the group to work as a team

Figure 4.13 Lewin's view of the change process



3 *developing a vision and a strategy* – 'vision' in this context means having a clear sense of what the future requires and the strategies required to turn the vision into reality

4 *communicating the change vision* – using every available communication media to create an awareness of the visions and strategies to employees and others affected and secure their cooperation and involvement

5 *empowering broad-based action* – removing obstacles, changing structures or systems and encouraging new approaches

6 *generating short-term wins* – strategies usually involve some shorter-term goals as the achievement of these goals provides encouragement to sustain people in their efforts to attain longer-term objectives

7 *consolidating gains and producing more change* – reinvigorating the process with new projects, themes and change agents

8 *anchoring new approaches in the culture* – stabilising change at the new level and reinforcing it by means of such supporting mechanisms as policies, structure or norms.

Collins[60] criticises what he terms 'n-step' models of change implementation on three grounds:

- they assume that organisations act in a rational predictable way, while the reality is that they consist of a diverse range of people with diverse ideas and opinions about the right course of action
- n-step models assume that change management can be reduced to a number of discrete, sequential steps and that change has an identifiable beginning and end, while the reality is that it is uncertain, unpredictable and contingent and 'we cannot expect the processes and final outcomes of change to map out clearly before us'
- n-step models fail to recognise that the creative and critical skills required by managers to successfully engender change cannot be captured in 'a few rules or simple recipes for success'.

Collins, therefore, concludes that, rather than offer simplistic n-step accounts, writers should recognise that their models need to incorporate some of the complexities of real life. N-step models are dishonest and paint an inaccurate and oversimplified picture of the change process.

Probably the best approach is to recognise the importance in all change situations of communicating the need for change, consultation with all affected by the change and commitment to the successful implementation of change by all involved. In any event, learning organisations do not suddenly adopt strategic change but, rather, are perpetually seeking it.

4.9 Centralised procurement

The term 'centralised procurement', usually implies that all key strategies, policies and decisions are taken at a company headquarters level, although it sometimes means at a regional or divisional level. It is an emotive issue with many 'outlying' operating companies resenting decisions forced upon them.

In July 2001 the Department of Health published a report by OXERA, 'A Fundamental Review of the Generic Drugs Market'. The report observed at [8] that in the

primary-care sector, the NHS does not procure centrally, but rather 'fragments' its buying power by using a large number of pharmacists as its contractors. These pharmacists negotiate with their suppliers individually, and, together, do not have the same buyer power as the NHS would have if it were to negotiate as a whole. At [8.2] the report considers that rather than instituting a major change to centralised procurement, the NHS could focus this option (of centralised procurement of drugs in shortage) on the main weaknesses in the current system – price volatility and uncoordinated supply in the face of shortage.

The report goes on to consider the advantages of centralised procurement through tendering of generic drugs as outlined below:

- There would still be an incentive to negotiate low prices from suppliers for Category D, since it is the department itself that does the procurement. Under the current system, this incentive is lost. Category D (of the drug tariff) is an element of the reimbursement system designed to secure that patients are supplied even when drugs are in shortage by protecting pharmacies in the short term from price increases.
- The centralised agency would have greater buyer power and different incentives than the individual pharmacists over the suppliers that have Category D products in stock, which should result in lower prices than at present. Despite this, if only one supplier has supplies of an essential drug, then it would still be able to charge high prices.
- Suppliers would have fewer incentives to hoard Category D products, since they would only be able to sell them to the procurement agency. For the reasons mentioned above, they would not be able to extract the same high prices from the agency as they can now from the individual pharmacists. In addition, by selling to the agency, they would 'expose' themselves to the government (i.e. they would not be able engage in speculative trading without being noticed by the department, as occurs under the current system).
- The procurement agency would be better placed to ration products that are in serious shortage; for example, by supplying only a limited amount of the drug to each region (and providing information to the public on where they can obtain the product). At present, the distribution of Category D drugs over regions may be random since it depends on which pharmacists are quickest to find the drug.

4.9.1 Economies of scale

Centralised procurement enables an organisation to leverage its purchasing power to the best effect as:

- forecasts can be prepared of the total quantities of items likely to be required by the whole organisation for a specified period
- such consolidation of quantities can form the basis for negotiating quantity discounts, rebates or learning curve reductions
- suppliers dealing with a centralised procurement department have an incentive to compete for 'preferred supplier status' or the whole or a substantial proportion of the undertaking's requirements
- suppliers may be able to reduce prices by spreading overheads over longer production runs

- the supplier base may be reduced by the award of 'preferred supplier status' to one or two providers
- centralisation permits the employment of procurement professionals in a way that is not possible with diversified procurement and who can become expert in the procurement of special classes of materials or products following market trends and the development of reliable and economic supply sources or of import and export procedures where there is substantial global sourcing.

4.9.2 Coordination of activity

- Centralised procurement tends to have a greater strategic focus than divisionalised procurement due to proximity to major organisational decision makers.
- Uniform policies can be adopted, such as single sourcing.
- Competitive or 'maverick' buying between functions is eliminated.

4.10 Decentralised procurement

A SIGMA[61] report set out the key arguments in support of decentralised procurement as:

- reduced incentives for corruption via large-scale protectionism or favouritism
- a closer matching of goods and services delivered to the detailed requirements of end users
- reduced scope for mistakes affecting large volume purchases that result in unnecessary over-spending
- less bureaucracy because of shorter time frames and fewer forms for both purchasers and suppliers
- greater possibilities for SMEs to compete successfully for contracts
- opportunities for local purchasers to obtain lower prices for locally manufactured goods
- more scope for employees to take individual responsibility and develop a 'service' mentality.

Some of the advantages and disadvantages of decentralised procurement are shown in Table 4.10.

4.11 Cross-functional procurement

4.11.1 Definition

The Institute of Supply Management (USA)[62] states that cross-functional teams are:

> groups of individuals from various organisational functions who are brought together to achieve clear, worthwhile, and compelling goals that could not be reached without a team. Teaming leverages organisational resources while utilising the expertise of team members. Purchasers typically participate in teams dealing with sourcing, commodities, quality, and new product/service development.

Table 4.10 Advantages and disadvantages of decentralised procurement

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
Closer to users and better understanding of local needs	Reduced leverage that exists with consolidation of purchases
Response time to divisional or plant needs may be rapid and of higher quality	Focus on local rather than corporate and operational rather than strategic considerations
Possibly closer relationships with suppliers	Procurement will tend to report to a lower organisational level
Local suppliers and consequent lower transportation costs	Limited expertise in requirements and few opportunities for cross-functional collaboration
Where plants are profit centres the view is expressed that if procurement costs are a high percentage of total costs then each profit centre should make its own decisions regarding procurement and suppliers	Possibly lack of standardisation Restricted career opportunities for local procurement staff Cost of procurement relatively high
Geographical, cultural, political, environmental, social, language and currency appropriateness	

4.11.2 Reasons for the formation of cross-functional teams

The involvement of procurement in multi-skilled teams drawn from several functions is attributable to at least six factors:

- the involvement of procurement in strategic procurement decisions
- the concept of the 'supply chain', which emphasises the need to deal with work flow in an integrated way by means of materials management and logistics approaches
- teams may make better use of the vastly increased information availability and ability to communicate effectively provided by IT and ICT
- the development of such approaches as ERP, MRP and JIT, together with single and partnership sourcing and outsourcing
- the recognition that, because of such developments as global procurement, more complicated price and cost analyses, the need to integrate procurement processes with those of manufacturing and the enhanced importance of quality, procurement often needs expert advice and support in decision making
- the recognition, based on research findings, that 'teams out-perform individuals acting alone or in large organisation groupings, especially when performance requires multi-skills judgments and experience'.[63]

4.11.3 The purpose and structure of cross-functional teams

Cross-functional teams may be formed for a wide variety of purposes covering the whole supply chain spectrum. Aspects of procurement for which cross-functional teams have special relevance include sourcing, global sourcing, outsourcing, new

product development, value management and analysis, quality management, capital equipment buying and staff development and training.

Cross-functional teams may be either short-term or long-term in duration. Short-term cross-functional teams are essentially task forces formed for a particular purpose and are disbanded when that purpose has been accomplished. Long-term teams are permanent or semi-permanent. With a project such as nuclear submarine design, development, build and commission, for example, the total cycle to decommissioning could exceed 20 years.

Long-term cross-functional teams will serve full time in a project team as members of a self-contained unit headed by a project manager.

4.11.4 The advantages of cross-functional teams

Parker[64] has listed six important competitive advantages that accrue to organisations that successfully implement cross-functional teams:

1. *speed* – reduction in the time it takes to get things done, especially the product development process
2. *complexity* – improvement in the organisation's ability to solve complicated problems
3. *customer focus* – focusing the organisation's resources on satisfying the customers' needs
4. *creativity* – by bringing together people with a variety of experiences and backgrounds, cross-functional teams increase the creative capacity of the organisation
5. *organisational learning* – members of cross-functional teams are more easily able to develop new technical/job skills, learn more about other disciplines and how to work with people who have different team player styles and cultural backgrounds
6. *a single point of contact* – the promotion of more effective cross-functional teamwork by identifying one place to go for information and decisions about a project or customer.

Another advantage is an increased understanding between functions of each other's problems. Production and quality assurance may develop an enhanced appreciation of the difficulties of dealing with suppliers and procurement may develop an awareness of the problems faced by production and design.

Procurement staff can make high-quality contributions to cross-functional teams by effectively dealing with such things as supply chain risk, preparing and negotiating tailor made contracts, exposing product and services cost drivers, applying high-level negotiation skills and conducting financial due diligence.

4.11.5 Some problems of cross-functional teams

A number of problems have been reported in relation to cross-functional teams. Sobek *et al*.[65] point out that:

> cross-functional coordination has improved, but at the cost of depth of knowledge within functions, because people are spending less time within their own functions. Organisational learning across products has also dropped as people rapidly rotate through positions. Standardisation across products has suffered because product teams have become autonomous. In organisations that combine functional and project-based structures, engineers are often torn

between the orders of their functional bosses on the one hand and the demands of project leaders on the other.

Other problems of cross-functional teams include:

- the need for a substantial investment in the training and retraining of team leaders in interpersonal skills and of team members in adopting a cross-functional, rather than a silo, orientation
- cross-functional teams require members to attend numerous meetings
- because of their expertise, some members are required to participate in several teams concurrently with a resultant competition for priorities.

Finally, it should not be forgotten that the basic reason for cross-functional teams is to break down functional silos. This does not mean the abdication of functional responsibilities. Those responsible for product design must retain that responsibility even when working in a product team. While cross-functional sourcing may share responsibility for decision making, purchasing is not absolved from the duty of ensuring that the team has full information on potential suppliers and products and services that provide maximum value for money spent.

Discussion questions

4.1 Why, in your opinion, are many local authorities and central government outsourcing services that have traditionally been seen as strategic; for example, revenues and benefits? Do you believe that it is inevitable that procurement will be a function that is, increasingly, outsourced?

4.2 Control is one facet of organisational structure. There are a number of generic types, including cultural control. Informal structures operate in all organisations. Can you identify the informal structures within your organisation and identify the key players?

4.3 Contrast the strengths and weaknesses in a large multinational organisation of 'centralised procurement' and 'devolved procurement'. Assume that in the latter situation there is complete autonomy for each operating division to determine its procurement strategy, even if the same goods and services are purchased in a number of locations.

4.4 What are the hallmarks of effective communication between procurement and all parts of the organisation, including stakeholders?

4.5 Why is it important for a procurement or supply chain professional to know whether they are employed by organisations concerned with innovative-unique or functional-type products?

4.6 The three key characteristics of networks have been identified as:

(a) transactional – what is exchanged between network members

(b) the nature of links – the strengths and qualitative nature of the network relationships, such as the degree to which members honour their network obligations or agree about the appropriate behaviour in their relationships

(c) cultural characteristics – how members are linked and the roles played by individuals within the network.

With reference to suppliers with whom you network, identify examples to illustrate each of the above characteristics.

4.7 What is a lean supply chain and who is accountable for putting it in place?

4.8 Taking Lamming's definition of a first-tier supplier, what responsibilities do they have to fully support the buying organisation at all stages of product design through to ultimate disposal?

4.9 If you were conducting a supplier selection on an 'agile' producer, what are the key questions you would ask to satisfy yourself that they are an agile producer?

4.10 What, according to Gunasekaran, are the seven enablers of agile manufacturing?

4.11 What is the purpose of a supply chain map?

4.12 If you were to evaluate the structure of a supplier's procurement operation what would you want to check to convince yourself that they satisfy a rating of 'excellent'?

References

[1] Mintzberg, H., *The Structure of Organisations*, Prentice Hall, 1979, p. 2

[2] Kotter, J. P., 'Leading Change', Harvard Business School Press, Boston, MA, USA, p. 169

[3] The main ideas about core competences were developed by Prahalad, C. K. and Hamel, G. in a series of articles in the *Harvard Business Review*, Vol. 88, 1990, and in their book *The Core Competence of the Corporation*, Harvard Business Press, 1990

[4] Grinnell, S. and Apple, H. P., 'When two bosses are better than one', *Machine Design*, 9 January, 1975, p. 86

[5] McGregor, D. M., *The Human Side of Enterprise*, McGraw-Hill, 1960

[6] As 1 above, Ch. 15

[7] French, P., Jr. and Raven, B., 'The basis of social power' in Cartwright, D. (ed.), *Studies in Social Power*, Michigan Institute for Social Research, 1959

[8] Hickson, D. J., Hinings, C. R., Lee, C. A., Schneck, R. E., and Pennings, J. M., 'A strategic contingencies theory of intraorganisational power', *Administrative Science Quarterly*, No. 16, 1971, pp. 216–219

[9] As 1 above

[10] Jr. Chandler, A. D., *Strategy and Structure: Chapters in the History of the Industrial Enterprise*, MIT Press, 1962

[11] For a discussion of this point, see Banter, D. K. and Gogne, T. E., *Designing Effective Organisations*, Sage, 1995, Ch. 16

[12] Waterman, R., 'The seven elements of strategic fit', *Journal of Business Strategy*, No. 3, 1982, pp. 68–72

[13] Quinn, J. B., *Intelligent Enterprise*, Free Press, 1992

[14] Hastings, C., *The New Organisation*, McGraw-Hill, 1993, pp. 7–8

[15] Ford, D., Gadde, L-E., Hakansson, H. and Snehota, I., *Managing Business Relationships*, 2nd edn, John Wiley, 2003, p. 18

[16] As 15 above, p. 38

[17] Harland, C. M., 'Supply chain management: relationships, chains and networks', *British Journal of Management*, Vol. 7, March, 1996, Special Issue, pp. 63–80

[18] This diagram is attributed to Hakansson, H., *Industrial Technological Development: A Network Approach*, 1987, Croom Helm

[19] Snow, C. C., Miles, R. E. and Coleman, H. J., 'Managing 21st century network organisations', *Organisational Dynamics*, 20:3, winter, 1992, pp. 5, 20

[20] Lamming, R., Johnsen, T., Zheng, J. and Harland, C., 'An initial classification of supply networks', *International Journal of Operations and Production Management*, Vol. 20, No. 6, 2000

[21] Harland, C., Lamming, R. C., Zheng, J. and Johnsen, T. E., 'A taxonomy of supply networks', *Journal of Supply Management*, Vol. 37, No. 4, Fall, 2001, pp. 21–27

[22] Craven, D. W., Piercy, N. F. and Shipp, S. H., 'New organisational forms for competing in highly dynamic environments', *British Journal of Management*, Vol. 7, 1996, pp. 203–218

[23] As 19 above

[24] As 20 above

[25] Fisher, M. L., 'What is the right supply chain for your product?', *Harvard Business Review*, March/April, 1997, pp. 105–116

[26] As 21 above

[27] As 22 above

[28] Arbulu, R. J. and Tommelein, I. D., 'Alternative supply chain configurations for engineered or catalogued made-to-order components: case study on pipe supports used in power plants', *Proceedings IGLC*, 10 August, 2002, Granada, Brazil

[29] CPFR is a registered trademark of the Voluntary Interindustry Commerce Solutions Association

[30] Lambert, D. H., Cooper, M. C. and Pagh, J. D., 'Supply chain management implementation issues and research opportunities', *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 9, No. 2, 1998, pp. 1–9

[31] Lamming, R., *Beyond Partnerships: Strategies for Innovation and Supply*, Prentice Hall, 1998, p. 17, and 1993 edn, pp. 186–190

[32] As 30 above

[33] Womack, J. P., Jones, D. T. and Roos, D., *The Machine That Changed the World*, Maxwell Macmillan, 1990

[34] See 'People management: applications of leaner ways of working', Chartered Institute of Personnel and Development, Working Party Paper No. 13. The author is indebted to the CIPD for permission to use this table

[35] Toni, A. D. and Tonchia, S., 'Lean organisation, management by process and performance measurement', *International Journal of Operations and Production Management*, Vol. 16, No. 2, 1996, pp. 221–236

[36] Goldman, S. L., Nagel, R. N. and Preiss, K., *Agile Competitors and Virtual Organisations: Strategies for Enriching the Customer*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1995

[37] Aitken, J., Christopher, M. and Towill, D., 'Understanding, implementing and exploiting applications', *Supply Chain Management*, Vol. 5, No. 1, 2002, pp. 206–213

[38] Bowersox, D. J., Closs, D. J. and Cooper, M. B., *Supply Chain Logistics Management*, International edition, 2002, McGraw-Hill, pp. 16–19

[39] Van Hoek, R., 'Reconfiguring the supply chain to implement postponed manufacturing', *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 9, No. 1, 1998, pp. 1223–1247

[40] Christopher, M., 'Managing the global supply chain in an uncertain world', India Infoline Business School at: www.indiainfoline.com, pp. 1–5

[41] Hoekstra, S. and Romme, J., *Integral Logistics Structures: Developing Customer-orientated Goods Flow*, McGraw-Hill, 1992, quoted in Naim, M., Naylor, J. and Barlow, J., 'Developing lean and agile supply chains in the UK housebuilding industry', Proceedings IGLC-7, 26–28 July 1999, University of California, pp. 159–168

[42] Christopher, M. and Towill, D. R., 'Supply chain migration from lean and functional to agile and customised', *Supply Chain Management*, Vol. 5, No. 4, 2000, pp. 206–213

[43] Gunasekaran, A., 'Agile manufacturing: enablers and implementation framework', *International Journal of Production Research*, Vol. 36, No. 5, 2000, pp. 1223–1247

[44] As 37 above

[45] Naylor, J. B., Naim, M. M. and Berry, D., 'Leagility: interfacing the lean and agile manufacturing paradigm in the total supply chain', *International Journal of Production Economics*, Vol. 62, 1999, pp. 107–118

[46] Taken from Mason-Jones, R., Naylor, J. B. and Towill, D. R., 'Engineering the leagile supply chain', *International Journal of Agile Management Systems*, 2000

[47] Mason-Jones, R., Naylor, J. B. and Towill, D. R., 'Lean, agile or leagile? Matching your supply chain to the marketplace', *International Journal of Production Research*, Vol. 38, No. 17, 2000, pp. 4061–4070

[48] Naylor, J. B., Naim, M. M. and Berry, D., 'Leagility: integrating the lean and agile manufacturing paradigm in the total supply chain', *International Journal of Production Economics*, Vol. 62, 1999, pp. 107–118

[49] Gardner, J. T. and Cooper, M. C., 'Strategic supply chain mapping approaches', *Journal of Business Logistics*, Vol. 24, No. 2, 2003, pp. 37–64

[50] As 49 above

[51] Scott, C. and Westbrook, R., 'New strategic tools for supply chain management', *International Journal of Physical Distribution & Logistics Management*, Vol. 21, No 1, 1991

[52] Hines, P. and Rich, N., 'The seven value stream mapping tools', *International Journal of Operations and Production Management*, Vol. 17, No. 1, 1997, pp. 37–64

[53] Interested readers are referred to Hines, P., Lamming, R., Jones, D., Cousins, P. and Rich, N., *Value Stream Mapping*, Part One, Pearson, 2000, pp. 13–92

[54] Daft, R. L., *Organisation Theory and Design*, West Publishing, 1983, quoted in Thomason, J. L., *Strategic Management*, Chapman & Hall, 1990, p. 590

[55] Lucas, H. C. and Baroudi, J., 'The role of information technology in organisation design', *Journal of Management Information Systems*, Vol. 10, No. 4, Spring, 1994, pp. 9–23

[56] Hellriegel, D., Slocum, J. W. and Woodman, R. W., *Organisational Behaviour*, West Publishing, 1986, p. 340

[57] Handy, C., *Understanding Organisations*, 4th edn, Penguin, 1993

[58] Lewin, K., *Field Theory in Social Science*, Harper & Row, 1951

[59] Kotter, J. P. and Schlesinger, L. A., 'Choosing strategies for change', *Harvard Business Review*, March–April, 1979, pp. 107–109

[60] Collins, D., *Organisational Change*, Routledge, 1998. The authors are indebted to Harty, C., 'Do n-step guides for change work?' CIPS Knowledge in Action series, for the information contained in this section

[61] CCNM/SIGMA/PUMA, '*Centralised and Decentralised Public Procurement*', 2000, 108, p. 5

[62] Institute of Supply Management (USA), *Glossary of Key Supply Management Terms*, see ISM website: www.ism.ws

[63] Torrington, D. and Hall, L., *Personnel Management*, Prentice Hall, 1991, p. 208

[64] Parker, G. M., 'How to succeed as a cross-functional team', Proceedings of 79th Annual International Purchasing Conference of the National Association of Purchasing Managers, 1 May, 1994

[65] Sobek, I. I., Durward, K., Liker, J. K. and Ward, A. C., 'Another look at how Toyota integrates product development', *Harvard Business Review*, Vol. 76.4, July/August, 1998, p. 36

Chapter 5

Procurement policies, procedures and support tools

Learning outcomes

With reference to procurement and supply management, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- effective procurement policies
- procurement procedures and their inefficiencies
- the need to transform procurement procedures to encourage radical thinking and more efficient working
- e-commerce, e-business, e-SCM and e-procurement
- e-procurement tools and the opportunity for enhancing systems and procedures
- the positive contribution of procurement and supplier manuals to efficiency
- the use of purchasing cards.

Key ideas

- The need for business related procurement policies and procedures.
- E-commerce, e-business, e-SCM and e-procurement.
- Electronic data interchange (EDI).
- E-hubs, exchanges and marketplaces.
- E-catalogues and reverse auctions.
- E-payment.
- Procurement and supplier manuals – the business benefits.

Introduction

Procurement Policy

The term 'policy' includes 'all the directives, both explicit and implied, that designate the aims and ends of an organisation and the appropriate means used in their accomplishment. Policy refers to a set of purposes, principles and rules of action that guide an organisation'[1].

There are four major levels of organisation policy, namely:

Executive Policies	■ Sets out executive managements directives ■ Provides guidance for strategic direction of the organisation ■ Defines strategic intent of the organisation
Functional Policies	■ Provides guidance for functional; areas, e.g. procurement ■ Aligns functional policies with executive policies ■ Defines specific facets of functional policy.
Operating procedures	■ Describes range of functional duties ■ Describes mandatory steps to complete specific tasks, e.g. Contract Award ■ Provides supportive detail for each procedure
Rules and Regulations	■ Sets constraints on individual behaviour, e.g. hospitality ■ Establishes minima behaviour for audit purposes ■ Describes organisational rules that govern professional behaviour

5.1 Exemplar Procurement Policy – The Crossrail Project

The London Crossrail Project began at North Dock in Canary Wharf in May 2009. In 2014 it was the biggest railway construction project in Europe. It consists of 21 km of new twin bore tunnels under central London and ten new world-class stations constructed under the largest city in the European Union. There is a £14.8 billion funding envelope said to allow for contingency and expected inflation.

5.1.1 Crossrail Procurement Policy[2]

The Crossrail Procurement Policy is an 18-page document that comprehensively sets out the salient detail of a robust policy.

5.1.2 Purpose of the Policy

The purpose of this Policy is to ensure that all procurement activities carried out by, or on behalf of CRL (Crossrail Ltd):

- provide best affordable value in delivering the Crossrail project objectives;
- are conducted in a fair, objective and transparent manner;
- are compliant with the regulatory framework of all relevant legislation, the CRL governance and audit framework and delegated levels of authority;
- use best practice in the application of ethical standards;
- are aligned with the CRL vision and values;
- adhere wherever appropriate to Government procurement policies and TFL/GLA Responsible Procurement Policy.

5.1.3 Overarching Objectives

In line with TfL's policy, CRL's procurement activities will be guided by the following overarching objectives:

(a) **Deliver Best Affordable Value** – achieve best affordable value in delivering CRL's high-level objectives. Seek opportunities for efficiency and economies of scale across the Programme by working with TfL and industry partners. The achievement of best affordable value also requires that the procurement procedures and contractual arrangements support the delivery of related Government and TfL policies.

(b) **Establish Effective Governance and Control** – conduct procurement activities in a manner that satisfies the requirements of accountability and internal control, fulfils CRL's legal obligations, complies with financial constraints and effectively manages commercial risk.

(c) **Apply Standardised Approaches** – provide and enforce effective, efficient and consistent commercial arrangements for procuring works, products and services of a common nature.

(d) **Build and Maintain Effective Supplier Relationships** – recognise that in order to achieve best affordable value appropriate relationships must be developed and maintained with suppliers and their supply chains.

5.1.4 CRL Key Policy Principles

On the basis of the above key policy documents and supporting publications CRL has developed Key Policy Principles (KPPs) which will be applied to the delivery of the Crossrail procurement requirements. These are set out below in the following main areas:

- General Procurement;
- Supply Chain Management and Engagement;
- Supplier Selection Procedures;
- Contracting Arrangements;
- Risk Allocation;
- Fair Payment Procedures;
- Performance Management.

For illustrative purposes, set out below are extracts from the Procurement Policy document, the KPPs for General Procurement and Supply Chain Management and Engagement. The author strongly recommends readers to access the full document to facilitate learning.

General Procurement Key Policy Principles

KPP1 – CRL will adopt a risk-based approach to the development and evaluation of procurement strategies, detailed procurement plans and processes.

Risk-based procedures to evaluate the optimal approach to procurements will be developed based on best practice and guidance issued by HMT and OGC. These will be aimed at ensuring that delivery risks are identified, evaluated and allocated appropriately to achieve best affordable value in the management of the risks. The procedures will be designed to meet the requirements set out in OGC Gateway guidance notes so that the project passes through OGC and Major Project Review Group project reviews as efficiently as possible and with minimal impact on the programme.

KPP2 – CRL's procurement activities will be carried out on the basis of achieving best affordable value.

The achievement of best affordable value means delivering CRL's high-level objectives for the Crossrail Programme within the affordability criteria.

KPP3 – CRL will ensure that it has access to the necessary experienced and competent resources needed to deliver the project successfully.

CRL's approach to procurement and project delivery will be aimed at ensuring the availability of the skilled resources required for the delivery of the Crossrail Programme. Expert delivery partners and specialist advisers will be used as necessary to support CRL. Strong client capability will help establish CRL's reputation as a best practice client which will help to attract the best suppliers and ensure strong competition for its contracts. CRL will undertake reviews of resource pressures in the supply chain and develop plans to address potential shortages.

KPP4 – CRL will ensure that its procurement plans and procedures support delivery of CRL Health, Safety and Environment policies.

CRL's procurement plans and procedures will be aligned with the policies and requirements set out in the CRL publication 'Health, Safety and Environment Standard – Contractors and Industry Partners'.

KPP5 – CRL will implement best practice Responsible Procurement policies and processes based on TfL and GLA approach to responsible procurement.

CRL's procurement plans and procedures will be aligned with the policies and requirements set out in the CRL publication 'Crossrail's Approach to Delivering Responsible Procurement'. In developing its procurement plans CRL will seek to prioritise opportunities to support the Government priority policy areas of apprentices, skills and youth employment, small businesses and low carbon resource efficiency.

KPP6 – CRL will collaborate with Industry Partners and other clients where appropriate to deliver efficiencies and savings through collaborative purchasing initiatives.

In particular CRL will work closely with Network Rail, London Underground, TfL and utilities companies to ensure that procurement plans are coordinated and any opportunities are taken to deliver better value through collaborative working.

Supply Chain Management and Engagement Key Policy Principles

KPP7 – CRL will establish early and regular consultation arrangements with the market to develop well-informed and well-prepared suppliers to help achieve strong competition for its full range of contracts.

CRL will undertake early engagement and consultation with the market and suppliers to review options for procurement plans and programmes and to help ensure that suppliers are well prepared for opportunities as they come to the market.

KPP8 – CRL will incorporate Optimised Contractor Involvement principles into its contracting arrangements to involve contractors and suppliers as early as possible prior to construction or manufacture phases.

CRL will aim to achieve the early involvement of the supply chain in a flexible manner which is being referred to as Optimised Contractor Involvement (OCI). This will ensure the involvement of the supply chain in the finalisation of the designs and delivery plans in a way that is best suited to the scope of the works package.

The objective of this approach is to bring the skills and expertise of the supply chain into the development of the final engineering solution to produce better solutions and improved

value for money. The earlier involvement of the supply chain in the finalisation of the detailed design is aimed at delivering the following benefits:

- improved buildability of the works;
- identification of better solutions and cost savings through value engineering;
- elimination of unnecessary scope or unnecessarily elaborate specifications;
- improved understanding and management of health and safety issues;
- improved understanding and management of construction risks;
- more time for the planning of resource requirements;
- more time for the contractor to become familiar with the environmental and local community requirements;
- creation of integrated delivery teams who are incentivised to work together to resolve problems as quickly and efficiently as possible.

KPP9 – CRL will develop and maintain effective collaborative working relationships with the supply chain.

CRL will develop and implement appropriate arrangements with its suppliers to support the successful delivery of the project objectives and individual contracts. Partnering arrangements and integrated and co-located teams will be established where appropriate.

5.1.5 Contracting arrangements

There are relevant and informative KPPs for 'Contracting Arrangements' that can be cross referenced to Chapter 7 of this book. For example KPP 19 details:

KPP19 – CRL will seek parent company guarantees from the ultimate parent company of all main contractors, and where the contract is with a joint venture, CRL will normally require guarantees from the ultimate parent of each joint venture member.

A parent company guarantee provides protection for the employer through a guarantee that the contract will be properly performed by its subsidiary. If the contractor is in breach of contract then the guarantor must perform in his place or be liable for any resultant loss. The value of the guarantee is only as good as the strength of the parent company and generally therefore, CRL will seek guarantees from the ultimate parent to minimise the risk that voluntary corporate restructuring reduces the net asset value of the guarantor company.

5.2 Procurement procedures

A *procedure* is a system of sequential steps or techniques for getting a task or job done. Procedures are also the formal arrangements by means of which policies linking strategies are implemented. A cluster of reliable procedures, each comprised of a number of operations that, together, provide information enabling staff to execute and managers to control those operations, is called a system.

5.2.1 The sequence and impact of procurement procedures

It is essential that there are procurement procedures to set out how procurement departments make their contribution at key phases of the procurement cycle and explain how stakeholders and others interface with the procedures and decision making. There are, potentially, serious implications when procurement procedures are not complied with.

5.2.2 Salient content of procurement procedures

A procurement procedure will set out:

- how procurement will engage in each facet of the process, including identifying the business need and subsequent specification development
- the need to deal effectively with intellectual property rights
- the process for engaging with the supply market, including soft market testing
- how to avoid creating a monopoly supply scenario
- the need for usage forecasts to be as accurate as possible
- how potential suppliers will be pre-qualified; for example, through the use of pre-qualification questionnaires, interviews and other evidence of competencies.

5.2.3 Notification of authority to purchase

The procurement procedure will set out:

- who and how an appropriate requisition will be initiated or other means to authorise the purchase
- budget approval and appropriate finance code
- issue of bills of material when these are applicable
- the management of emergency needs to purchase and to permit a standard procedure to be bypassed according to defined rules.

5.2.4 Requests for quotations (RFQs) and invitations to tender (ITTs)

The procurement procedure will set out:

- how the value of the purchase will impact on the methodology to be adopted; for example, high-value contracts must have a minimum number of quotations/tenders
- the content required when RFQs or ITTs are submitted
- the methodology to be applied to the evaluation of RFQs or ITTs to avoid biased decisions being made
- how and in what circumstances negotiations will take place
- the timelines for decision making
- how authority to purchase shall be signed off at this stage
- how to evaluate risk appropriate to the purchase.

5.2.5 Creating a legally binding contract

The procurement procedure will set out:

- how purchase orders are to be raised and issued
- how one-off contracts are to be negotiated and issued
- the methodology for dealing with order acknowledgements, and the implications of accepting the supplier's sales acknowledgement
- what actions to take when a supplier fails to enter into a contract
- how to create and maintain a master contract file.

5.2.6 The contract management phase

The procurement procedure will set out:

- who is accountable for contract management
- the requirement for prompt supply of management information by the supplier
- the involvement of procurement when disputes arise
- acceptance procedures for goods and services
- payment processes
- contract close-out procedure
- feedback of supplier's performance into a vendor rating system.

In summary, procurement procedures are essential but the danger is that they can become mechanistic and stifle business initiatives. Reactive procurement is not the way forward.

5.3 Analysing a procurement process

A report on a procurement process[3] highlights flaws in a procurement process. It is important to note that it is a public sector procurement, hence a need to comply with Public Supply Contract Regulations. The following extracts show aspects of a process that are worthy of consideration in a wide range of circumstances:

- there would appear to be little documentation at the early stage of the procurement process regarding the proposed strategy
- at the time of the decision to proceed with the Minna-type procurement, a technical specification had not yet been worked up
- of the 12 completed PQQs received, only 8 were subject to a full assessment against the selection criteria
- it would appear that SFPA (Scottish Fisheries Protection Agency) was not justified in specifying preferred manufacturers or types and certainly not to the extent it did
- no formal tender evaluation appears to have taken place at that time
- justification is therefore required that the final bid stage in the Minna-type procurement process did not give rise to a distortion of competition as between the three tenderers; unfortunately, such justification would not appear to exist
- no minutes of the site visits are on file.

5.4 E-commerce, e-business, e-SCM and e-procurement

5.4.1 E-commerce

In March 2002 the United States General Accounting Office (GAO)[4] produced a report that sought to clarify e-commerce (in an international context) and e-business. The report observes that there has been:

> a general acceptance of transaction-based definitions many of which require an online commitment to sell a good or service for an activity to be categorised as electronic commerce. In

a transaction-based definition, electronic commerce is restricted to buying and selling, as distinct from conducting e-business – includes all aspects of online business activity – purchasing, selling, tracking inventory, managing production, handling logistics, and supply communications and support services.

5.4.2 E-business

Greenstein and Feinmann[5] offer the following perspective.

> The term electronic commerce is restricting, however, and does not fully encompass the true nature of the many types of information exchanges occurring via telecommunication devices. The term electronic business also includes the exchange of information not related to the actual buying and selling of goods. Increasingly businesses are using electronic mechanisms to distribute information and provide customer support. These activities are not 'commerce' activities; they are 'business' activities. Thus the term electronic business is broader and may eventually replace the term electronic commerce.

Zwass[6] defined e-commerce as,

> the sharing of business information, maintaining business relationships, and conducting business transactions by means of tele-communications networks… E-commerce includes the sell-buy relationships and transactions between companies, as well as the corporate processes that support the commerce within individual firms.

Hackbarth & Kettinger[7] set out the e-business development stages as shown in Table 5.1.

Table 5.1 E-business development stages

Stages / *Indicators*	*Experimentation*	*Integration*	*Transformation*
E-business Strategy	No e-business Strategy	E-business strategy supports the present strategy of the organisation	E-business strategy *is* the strategy of the organisation
Organisation Strategy	No connection *between* e-business strategy and organisation's strategy	E-business strategy *depends* on the strategy of the organisation	E-business strategy *coordinates* the strategy of the organisation
Goal	Oriented on sections	Inter-functional participation	Inter-organisational involvement
Results	Unclear	■ Decreasing cost ■ Supporting business ■ Identifying practices ■ Increasing income	■ New income flows ■ New business opportunities ■ Clear improvement of customers service ■ Consumers' satisfaction
Means	Technologic infrastructure and software applications	Business processes	Personnel, intellectual capital, relations, cooperation
Role of Information	Takes second place after technology	Support for the efficiency and effectiveness of processes	Information asymmetries are used to create business opportunities

In a Canada Transportation Act review there was a very useful analysis of the barriers to e-business adoption. This analysis can be summarised as follows:

- cost can prevent any firm from adopting Internet technology more extensively
- many marine and rail industry participants already have electronic data transfer and legacy information systems in place, reducing the commercial benefits of adopting more accessible Internet-based systems
- much of the uncertainty about potential benefits arises from inadequate customer readiness
- lack of action by all participants in the supply chain
- interoperability between logistics providers
- insufficient interoperability also arises from shipper demands for specific formats and methods of communication
- inadequate technical skills and training
- security and protecting commercially sensitive information is also a concern
- organisational culture and traditional practices in both carrier and partner firms are key factors to overcome.

5.4.3 E-SCM

E-supply chain management (e-SCM) is concerned with streamlining and optimising the whole supply chain by means of internal applications, with the aim of ensuring maximum sales growth at the lowest possible cost. This includes setting up an internal online procurement system, joining an industrywide electronic marketplace and implementing e-SCM across the entire value chain.

The concepts of supply chain management and supply chain optimisation were discussed in sections 3.5 and 3.10. Unsurprisingly, the Internet provides present and future benefits to both the management and optimisation of supply chains. Purchasers and suppliers can derive the following benefits from e-SCM.

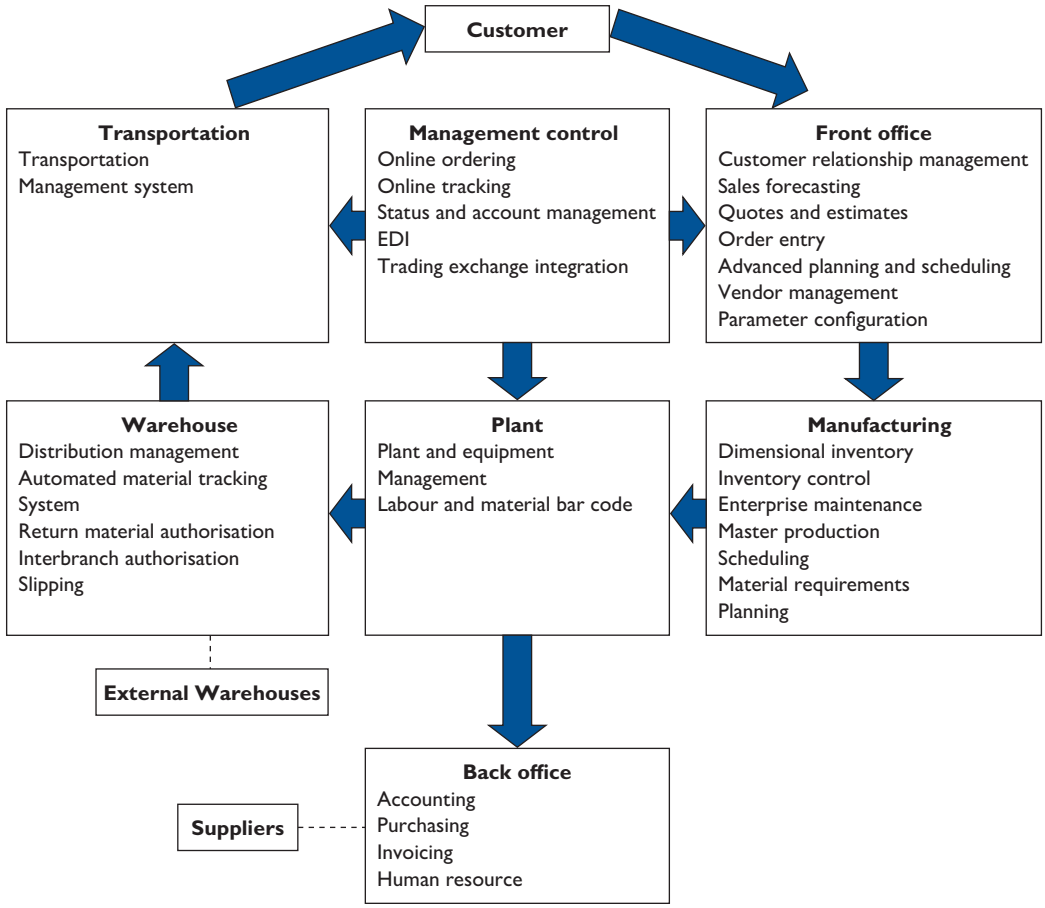
Procurement benefits include:

- the ability to purchase, both directly and indirectly, materials at a lower cost, primarily due to price transparency and competition, so, while large purchasers can exert powerful leverage to obtain more substantial price reductions and discounts, small purchasers using such systems can obtain more favourable prices as many suppliers are competing for the business of purchasers via the medium of e-marketplace and trading exchanges
- achievements of greater efficiency when purchasing goods and services and ultimately lowering the overall cost of transactions, as business-to-business marketplaces often offer smaller purchasers opportunities to discover lower prices for things that would be prohibitively expensive to discover by human effort alone
- purchasers being able to form strong ties with suppliers, in forecasting, scheduling and planning production data and sharing product data designs to develop supplier collaboration.

Supplier benefits

Supplier benefits tend to fall into two classes, depending on whether the e-SCM program emphasises collaboration or commercial opportunities. The latter includes the

Figure 5.1 An example of an end-to-end integrated model of e-SCM



enhancement of forecasting ability, resulting in the capacity to meet and exceed customers' demands, achieve the right combination of products and services at the right time and align their production schedules, manufacturing capacity and inventory to customers' buying patterns.

When the emphasis is on collaboration, suppliers can benefit from participating in large, active online marketplaces. If frequented by a critical mass of buyers, such market-places can provide a cost-effective way to reach new customers and increase sales.

'A Survey and Implementation of e-Commerce in Supply Chain Management' by Hui-Chun Lee (KSI-Chicago) resulted in the production of figure 5.1, which is an example of an integration model of e-SCM.

5.4.4 E-procurement

The CIPS definition of e-procurement is:

> E-procurement is using the Internet to operate the transactional aspects of requisitioning, authorising ordering, receiving and payment processes for the required services or products.

The CIPS statement also points out that e-procurement is typically the focus of local business administrators (one of the key goals of e-procurement is to devolve buying to local users) and covers the following areas of the buying process:

- requisition against agreed contract
- authorisation
- order
- receipt
- payment.

The key enabler of all the above is the ability of systems to communicate across organisational boundaries. While the technology for e-commerce provides the basic means, the main benefits derive from the resultant changes in business procedures, processes and perspectives. E-commerce is made possible by the open standard of extensible mark-up language (XML) – a structured computer programming language that allows for the easy identification of data types in multiple formats and can be understood across all standard Internet technologies. Adoption of XML will help organisations to integrate applications seamlessly and exchange information with trading partners.

5.5 The evolution of e-procurement models

Kalakota and Robinson[8] have identified seven basic types of e-procurement trading models. These, together with their key differences, are shown in Table 5.2.

5.6 Electronic data interchange (EDI)

5.6.1 Definition

Electronic data interchange (EDI) may be defined as follows:

> The technique based on agreed standards, which facilitates business transactions in standardised electronic form in an automated manner directly from a computer application in one organisation to an application in another.

A *transaction* in EDI-speak is a term used to describe the electronic transmission of a single document. Each transaction set is usually referred to by a name and number, which are defined by the ASC X12 or EDIFACT standards referred to below. Thus, a purchase order in X12 is number 850. Each line of a transaction is termed a *segment* and piece of information in the line an *element*. In a purchase order, for example, the segment is the name and address of the purchaser or supplier. The segment is broken down into such data elements as organisation name, address line 1, address line 2, address line 3, postcode and country.

Table 5.2 Comparison of various e-procurement models (Kalakota and Robinson)[9]

Trading model	*Characteristics*
EDI networks	■ Handful of trading partners and customers ■ Simple transactional capabilities ■ Batch processing ■ Reactive and costly value-added network (VAN) charges
Business-to-employees (B2E) requisition applications	■ Make buying fast and hassle-free for a company's employees ■ Automated approvals routing and standardisation of requisition procedures ■ Provide supplier management tools for the professional buyer
Corporate procurement portals	■ Provide improved control over the procurement process and let a company's business rules be implemented with more consistency ■ Custom, negotiated prices posted in a multi-supplier catalogue ■ Spending analysis and multi-supplier catalogue management
First-generation trading exchanges: community, catalogue and storefronts	■ Industry content, job postings and news ■ Storefronts: new sales channel for distributors and manufacturers ■ Product content and catalogue aggregation services
Second-generation trading exchanges: transaction-orientated trading exchanges	■ Automated requisition process and purchase order transactions ■ Supplier, price and product/service availability discovery ■ Catalogue and credit management
Third-generation trading exchanges: collaborative supply chains	■ Enable partners to closely synchronise operations and enable real-time fulfilment ■ Process transparency, resulting in restructuring of demand and the supply chain ■ Substitute information for inventory
Industry consortia: buyer and supplier led	■ The next step in the evolution of corporate procurement portals

5.6.2 Standards

Data elements and codes are described in a directory relating to the message standard used. By the use of trade, national and international standards, organisations can trade electronically. Early message standards were developed by communities of organisations relating to an industry, such as automotive, construction and electronic enterprises, which had an interest in trading together. Thus, automotive manufacturers, including Ford, General Motors, Saab, Renault, Fiat, Austin Rover and Citroën and suppliers Lucas, Perkins, Bosch, GKN, SKF and BCS, set up ODETTE (Organisation for Data Exchange by Tele-Transmission in Europe). ODETTE sets the standards for e-business, engineering data exchange and logistics management that link the 4000 plus businesses in the European motor industry and their global partners.

Although there are still many EDI standards, only two – namely ASC X12 and EDIFACT – are widely used and recognised. ASC X12 standards were created in 1979 by the Accredited Standards Committee of the American National Standards Institute. These standards define the data formats and encoding rules for business transactions, including order placement and transportation. EDIFACT (EDI for Administration, Commerce and Transport) was developed by the United Nations in 1985 for the purpose of providing EDI standards that would support world trade. This international standard has been ratified as ISO 9735. UN/EDIFACT directories are published twice yearly by the United Nations.

5.6.3 How EDI works

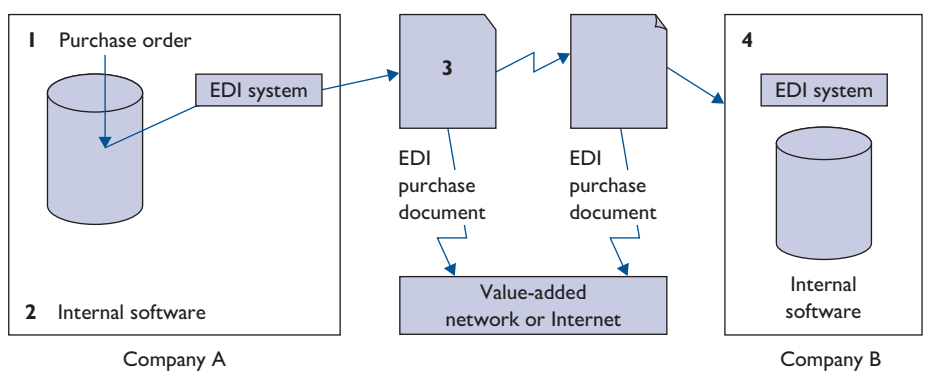
How EDI is implemented is shown by Figure 5.2. The sequence is as follows:

1. Company A creates a purchase order using its internal business software.
2. EDI software translates the order.
3. Company A sends the 850 purchase order to company B over a third-party value-added network (VAN) or encrypted in EDIFACT format over the Internet.
4. Company B receives the 850 purchase order document and will translate it from EDI to its proprietary format and, typically, company B will send an acknowledgement to company A.

5.6.4 The advantages of EDI

- Replacing the paper documents – purchase orders, acknowledgements, invoices and so on – used by buyers and sellers in commercial transactions with standard electronic messages conveyed between computers, often without the need for human intervention.

Figure 5.2 EDI implementation



EDI at the supermarket

One of the best examples of EDI is EPOS (electronic point-of-sale) at the supermarket. When a product is purchased, the checkout operator scans a barcode on its label, which automatically registers the price on the cash till.

That same signal also triggers a computer process that reorders the item from the manufacturer, sets off a production cycle, and arranges invoicing, payment and transportation of the new order. EDI effectively puts the product back on the shelf with no paperwork and a minimum of human involvement.

- Reduction in lead times as buyers and suppliers work together in a real-time environment. Armstrong and Jackson[10] provide a real-life example of pre-EDI and post-EDI lead times. The latter shows a reduction of eight days for acknowledging the order and five days to deliver it. The total time was therefore reduced from 19 to 11 days.
  - Day 1: Order prepared and authorised electronically, then posted to EDI service.
  - Day 2: Order taken from EDI service by recipient and put straight into order processing system. An acknowledgement is created automatically and sent to the EDI service.
  - Day 3: Manufacturing process begins (seven days). The acknowledgement is received by the originator and processed automatically.
  - Day 9: Manufacturing is completed.
  - Day 11: Delivery complete.
- Reduction in the cost of inventory and release of working capital.
- Promotion of such strategies as JIT as a consequence of the previous two points.
- Better customer service.
- Facilitation of global procurement using international standards, such as EDIFACT, which is compatible with most equipment in most countries. In 1970, SITPRO (Simplifying International Trade Procedures Board) was established in the UK and whose primary objectives are to reduce the costs of trading particularly to business, and to help the UK meet the challenges of globalisation. SITPRO works with the British Standards Institution (BSI) in connection with EDI standards.
- Facilitation of invoice payments by the computer-to-computer transfer of money, which eliminates the need for the preparation and posting of cheques.
- The integration of functions, particularly marketing, procurement, production and finance.
- EDI tends to promote long-term buyer–supplier relationships and increase mutual trust.

5.6.5 Some potential problems in implementing EDI

Killen and Kamauff[11] point out that before adopting EDI an organisation should:

- ensure that exchanging information electronically supports the overall organisational strategy

- consider the cost and ramifications of EDI's standard tools and techniques, including implementation, software maintenance, manpower and participant training and how to promote systems and applications integration
- consider the organisational and process changes involved.

In relation to the second point, Norman[12] states that the more the data is processed and reprocessed, the more room there is to save time and money. Potential EDI users should therefore calculate the cost per transaction. If it is cheaper to fax or manually perform the task, the buyer probably lacks the volume to invest in EDI. Monczka and Carter[13] propose the following indicators of a reasonable opportunity for the application of EDI in the procurement environment:

- a high volume of paperwork transaction documents
- numerous suppliers
- a long internal administration lead time associated with the procurement cycle
- a desire for personnel reductions, new hire avoidance or both
- a need to increase the professionalism of procurement personnel.

5.6.6 EDI limitations

Historically, the two principal limitations of EDI relate to cost and flexibility.

Cost

EDI was, and still is, an expensive option, given that, until recently, organisations sent all EDI transactions over a VAN (value-added network) that had set-up and running costs often on a per thousand characters transmitted basis. The scope of EDI was also intentionally limited to ensure controlled activity within a closed door environment. The high levels of overheads associated with EDI infrastructure were prohibitive for many small-sized to medium-sized enterprises.

Internet and extranet approaches can, however, enable a small business to link into secure EDI networks at minimal cost. The Internet pricing model of flat monthly rates has forced most of the VAN networks to lower their pricing structures. A new market shift is also underway in which organisations are moving from proprietary technology to extranet solutions. A comparison of EDI and extranet technologies is shown in Table 5.3.

Small businesses using the Internet can compete on a level playing field with large competitors, expand globally and improve their trading partner relationships.

Inflexibility

EDI is a cumbersome, static and inflexible method of transmitting data, most suited to straightforward business transactions, such as the placement of purchase orders for known requirements. It is not suitable for transactions requiring tight coupling and coordination, such as the consideration of several possible purchase alternatives or supply chain optimisation. Unlike human beings, computers are poor at interpreting unstructured data and cannot derive useful information from Web documents that are not predefined and permanent. The standard document language used to create web pages is hypertext mark-up language (HTML). While HTML is able to display data and focuses on how data look, it cannot describe data. While HTML can state what items a

Table 5.3 Comparison of EDI and extranets

Characteristics	*EDI*	*Extranets*
Infrastructure	Customised software	Packaged solutions that leverage and extend existing Internet technology and intranet investment
Transmission costs	Extensive VANS or leased lines, slow dial-up connections	Inexpensive and fast Internet connections
Access	Proprietary software	Web browsers support EDI protocols as well as many other open standards
Scale	Restricted to only the largest vendors who can support EDI infrastructure	Support real-time buying and selling, allowing for tighter and more proactive planning

supplier can offer, it cannot describe them. Traditional EDI approaches do not, therefore, provide the flexibility required in a dynamic Internet environment.

5.6.7 EDI and XML

XML (referred to in section 5.3.4) is an attempt to meet the problems of cost and inflexibility and the provision of a whole new way of communicating across the Internet and beyond.

The major difference between EDI and XML is that the former is designed to meet business needs and is a *process*. XML is a *language* and its success in any business will always depend on how it is being used by a given application.

As a language, XML provides a basic syntax that can be used to share information between many kinds of computer, different applications and different organisations.

XML can also describe – as distinct from display – data. It can, for example, enable a purchaser to understand in detail what a supplier has to offer. It also ensures that a purchase order accurately describes what the purchaser requires. It therefore provides a direct route between purchaser and supplier; irrespective of the size of either, that was unavailable with EDI.

XML/EDI is an attempt to provide a standard framework for the exchange of different types of data, such as a purchase order, invoice or healthcare claim, so that the information, whether in a transaction, exchanged in an application program interface (API) database portal catalogue or a work flow document or message, can be searched, decoded, processed and displayed consistently and correctly by first implementing EDI questionnaires and extending our vocabulary via online repositories to include our business language, rules and objectives. Thus, by combining XML and EDI, we create a new, powerful approach that is different from XML and EDI.

In addition to EDI and the Internet, there are other ways of transmitting data electronically between two or more organisations. For small businesses, encrypted e-mails are very cost-effective. Orders can be collected securely online and put into existing

in-house systems that automatically e-mail suppliers when stock values reach lower limits. Technology is also changing. Although until recently PCs were the Internet access device of choice, preferred substitutes, such as mobile phones and personal digital assistants (PDAs), are outselling PCs several times over.

The National Computing Centre[14] points out that 'the latest business buzz word is Business Process Integration' (BPI), which is all about the processes that cross the buying and selling organisations – that is, there is greater benefit from automating the interactions than in the transactional aspects of ordering and invoicing.

Business process integration is important because of:

- an increasing business imperative to increase process efficiency
- a focus on making core processes more flexible and efficient
- increasing traceability within a process
- an increasing requirement to understand how data is passed and by what applications
- improved recoverability
- reduced elapsed process delivery time.

5.7 E-hubs, exchanges, portals and marketplaces

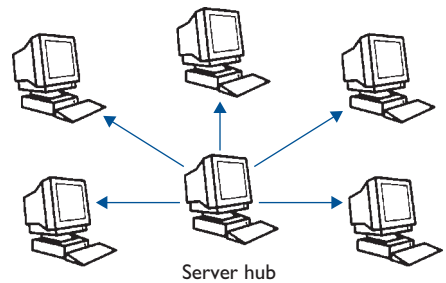
Some writers believe that a distinction can be made between these terms.

5.7.1 Hubs

In the context of internal technologies, a hub is a device that connects several networks together. As used in e-businesses, a hub generally means a central repository or private exchange, such as the star network shown in Figure 5.3.

In the network shown in Figure 5.3, the *server* is a control computer that holds databases and programs for many PC workstations or terminals, which are called *clients*. The clients of the information hub may be internal customers or external organisations, such as suppliers.

Figure 5.3 A star network



5.7.2 Exchange

An exchange is a business-to-business (B2B) website where purchasers and suppliers meet to transact business. A distinction may be made between private and public exchanges.

Private exchanges can be either one-to-one (1T1) or one-to-many connections (1TM). The former are direct connections, while the latter connect all the actors through the central Internet hub. Private exchanges are normally specified by a single operation and available by invitation only to the organisation's suppliers and trading partners. Such private exchanges are frequently used for collaborative business procedures, such as real-time supply chain management and logistics.

Public exchanges – often referred to as *portals* – extend outside the boundaries of the company and involve many-to-many (MTM) interactions. Public exchanges may be run either by a consortium of big players within a specific industry (consortium portals) or by an independent entity starting up its business as an intermediary (independent portals).

Independent portals, such as ChemConnect and Verticainet, have some advantages relative to consortia and private e-markets. They can act more rapidly as they do not need to mediate among multiple owners as consortium portals do. Because they have comparatively few proprietary interests, they are also seen to be neutral, unlike the consortia and private e-markets. With all public exchanges, organisations pay a fee to become a member and possibly an additional transaction fee.

Both private and public exchanges can be either buy-side or sell-side, although this distinction is more usual with private exchanges. A *buy-side exchange* is built to interact with suppliers. Conversely a *sell-side exchange* is built to interact with customers. These are shown in Figure 5.4.[15]

5.7.3 Marketplace

Like an exchange, a marketplace is a website that enables purchasers to select from many suppliers. With e-marketplaces, the buyer is in control as open marketplaces enable purchasers to evaluate all potential suppliers for a particular product or service and make informed decisions regarding what and where to buy.

Figure 5.4 Buy-side and sell-side exchanges

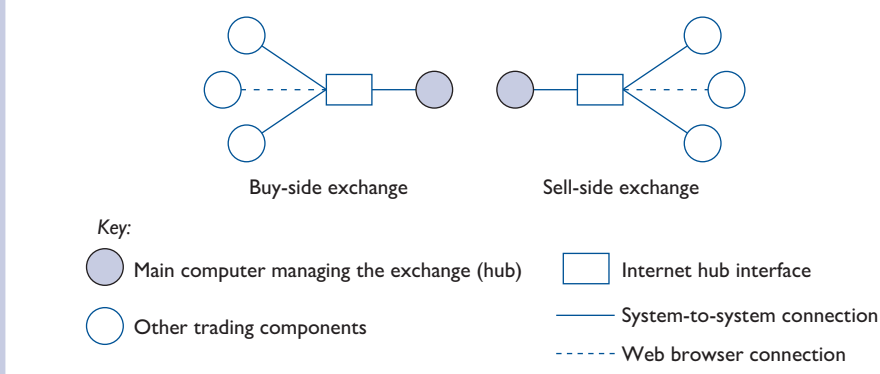
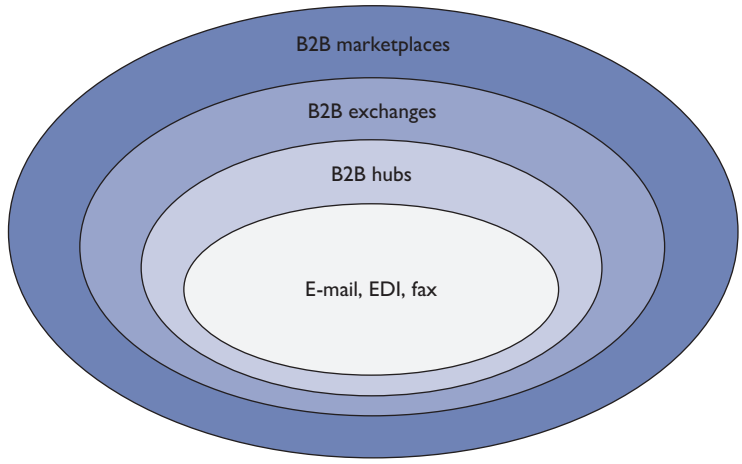


Figure 5.5 Hubs, exchanges and marketplaces in context



E-marketplaces are particularly applicable where:

- markets are large and the search costs to find suppliers are high because of the large number of potential suppliers
- product specifications and information are subject to rapid change
- buyers have difficulty in comparing similar products from different vendors because of an excess of features and characteristics that may not be clearly indicated
- internal costs of such processes as locating, appraising and evaluating the performance of suppliers are high.

In summary, it may be said that e-marketplaces offer greater functionality than exchanges, which, in turn, offer more functionality than hubs.

Figure 5.5 shows how hubs, exchanges and marketplaces interrelate in context with existing electronic communications, such as EDI, e-mail and fax.

5.8 E-catalogues

The Belgian Federal Public Service set up an e-Catalogue platform, implementing one of the modules of the large e-Procurement project. The Belgian e-Catalogue Platform is an autonomous, open, secure, inter-operable and re-configurable platform where public officers and companies can perform multiple tasks relating to their electronic purchase process. The electronic catalogues' format is based on the VBL 2.0 standard.

5.8.1 Definition

At their simplest, B2B marketplaces are just online catalogues. An e-catalogue may be defined as:

> A web page that provides information on products and services offered and sold by a vendor and supports online ordering and payment capabilities.

5.8.2 Advantages of e-catalogues

E-catalogues benefit both purchasers and suppliers in that they:

- facilitate real-time, two-way communication between buyers and sellers
- allow for the development of closer purchaser–supplier relationships due to improved vendor services and by informing purchasers about products of which they might otherwise be unaware
- enable suppliers to respond quickly to market conditions and requirements by adjusting prices and repackaging
- virtually eliminate the time lag between the generation of a requisition by a catalogue user and the issue of the purchase order as:
  - authorisation, where required, can be done online and notified and confirmed by e-mail
  - where users are authorised to generate their own purchases (subject to value and item constraints), the order can be automatically generated without the intervention of the procurement department
- maverick or 'off-contract' purchasing is reduced because it is simpler and quicker to purchase from contracted suppliers than to go outside the official system.

5.8.3 Types of e-catalogue

Sell-side catalogues

These provide potential purchasers with access to the online catalogues of a particular supplier who provides an online purchasing facility.

Sell-side catalogues provide many benefits to suppliers, including ease of keeping the contents up to date, savings on advertising costs and the costs of processing a sale. The benefits to potential purchasers include 24/7 access to information and ease of ordering.

Sell-side catalogues have, however, several disadvantages, including:

- purchasers having insufficient time to surf all the available supplier websites
- buyers perhaps becoming overly dependent on particular suppliers as training in the use of new software may be required if suppliers are changed
- where the price of a product differs from one purchaser to another, the use of personalised, restricted, prenegotiated catalogues or encrypted catalogues may be necessary.

Buy-side catalogues

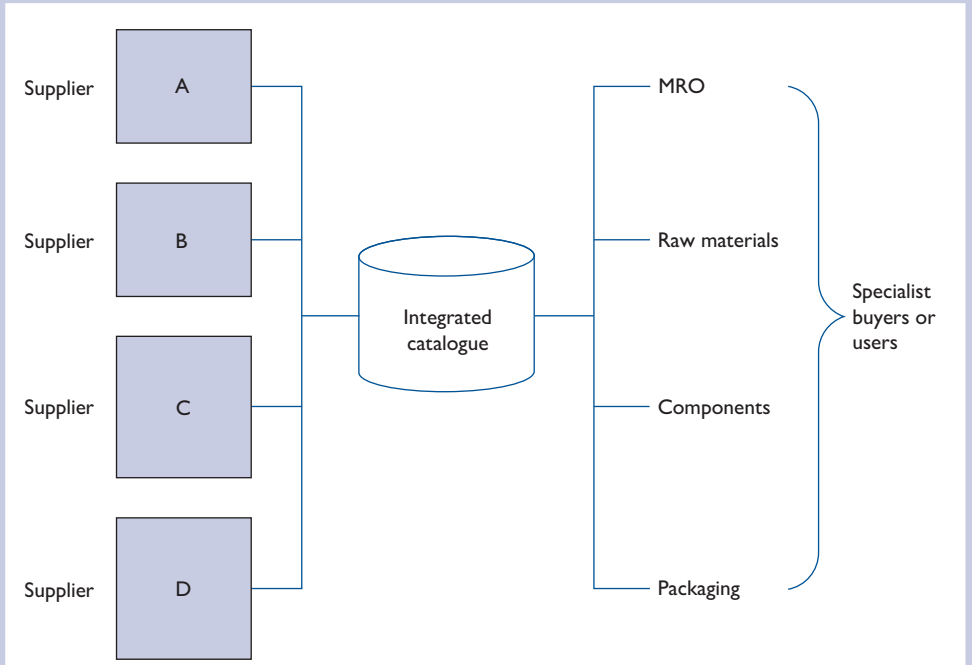
These are catalogues created by procurement organisations. Normally, such catalogues are confined to goods covered by prenegotiated prices, specifications and terms and run by a program that is integrated into the procurement organisation's intranet. An example of the operation of buy-side catalogues is shown in Figure 5.6.

The benefits to purchasers include:

- reduced communication costs
- increased security
- many catalogues can be accessed via the same intranet application.

The compilation and updating of buy-side catalogues does, however, require a large investment in clerical resources that will be uneconomical for all but the largest

Figure 5.6 Buy-side catalogue operation



organisations. Suppliers wishing to be included in the catalogue will also be required to provide their content in a standard format. For suppliers dealing with a large number of purchasers, the workload in terms of providing information in the form required by each online catalogue will be unsustainable.

Third-party catalogues

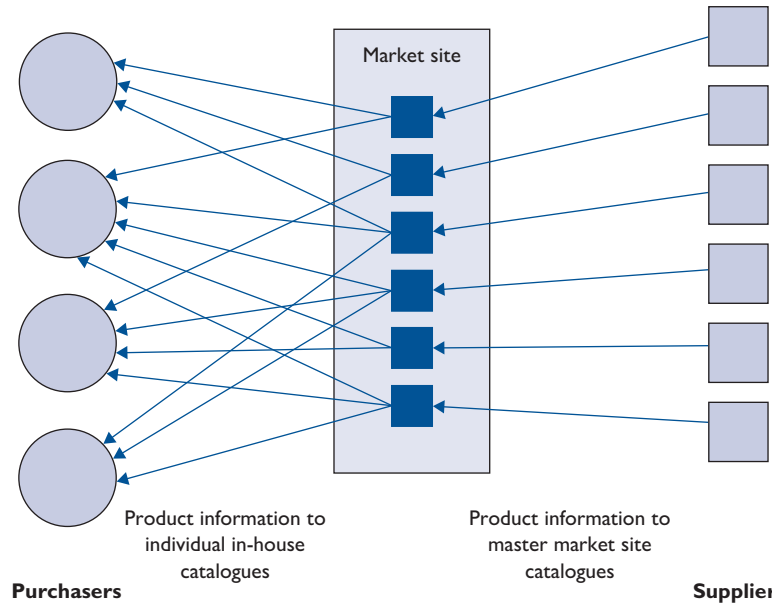
The disadvantages of sell-side and buy-side catalogues can be minimised by outsourcing the process to an electronic marketplace or buying consortium. This can be done by linking the in-house e-procurement catalogue to a master catalogue administered by the marketplace, as shown in Figure 5.7.[16]

- Standard information for inclusion in the 'market site' or 'master catalogue' is provided by the suppliers. This information is then made available to the in-house catalogues of individual procurement organisations.
- Product information from suppliers can either reside in the in-house catalogue or be hosted in the master catalogue.
- The responsibility of managing and updating product and other information rests with the suppliers.

Advantages of this system include that:

- suppliers have a good incentive to provide information in the specified standard format as the master catalogue will be available to a large number of procurement organisations

Figure 5.7 Third-party catalogues



- the in-house procurement catalogues draw product and other information from the master catalogue and purchasers or users can pass electronic orders to suppliers via the market site
- product information can be divided into two parts – public and encrypted and public information will include a basic product description and specification, often accompanied by an illustration or diagram, while encrypted information will provide details of prices, discounts and similar matters applicable to specific purchasers that cannot be accessed by unauthorised users.

5.9 E-auctions

One step up from e-catalogue is e-auctions. An e-auction may be defined as:[17]

> An electronic market, which can exist in both business-to-business and business-to-consumer contexts. Sellers offer goods or services to buyers through a website with a structured process for price setting and fulfilment.

Web auctions may follow English, Dutch, sealed-bid and reverse-bid processes.

- *English bid process* – in this process, bids are successively replaced by higher bids to obtain the highest price for a given item.
- *Dutch bid process* – the English process is unsuitable for selling thousands of items to a number of different buyers. This can, however, be easily and quickly done in a 'Dutch auction', developed in the seventeenth century in Amsterdam for the sale of flowers. In a Dutch auction, the auctioneer starts at a high price and then descends

by steps until a bid is received. The successful bidder then decides whether to buy the whole or a portion of the items on offer at that price. The auctioneer increases the offer price for any items remaining in the current lot and then again descends by steps and continues in this manner until either all the items comprising the lot are sold or a reserve price is reached.

- *Sealed-bid process* – this is broadly similar to tendering. A potential purchaser issues a request for bids to be submitted by a prescribed date and time according to a sealed format. At the specified date and time, the purchaser's representatives will evaluate and compare the bids according to a rating grid. The winning bid is the one that achieves the maximum score. Should several bids obtain the same score, the bid offering the best price is the winner.
- *Reverse-bid processes* – see section 5.10.

Intergraf[18] have observed that among the several e-commerce business forms, e-auctions are a very special one. Reverse auctions (in which supplier companies compete for a job providing increasingly lower prices) are particularly interesting, but can be dangerous for competing companies if transparency, clarity and honesty aren't assured.

The Code of Conduct published by Intergraf in 2005 includes:

> The **promoter** and the **participant buyer** are bounded to guarantee the honesty, transparency and equity of the conditions in which the e-auction is done, namely regarding the relations with the participant supplier and the following topics:
>
> - Supply to all the participant suppliers the same information, according to the same divulgation criteria
> - Supply to each participant supplier all the information necessary to present the bid, namely:
> - specify all the technical, packaging and service aspects relevant to each product or service of the buyer's proposal, as well as all the details that can contribute to define the price. The promoter/buyer must, as a consequence, provide each participant supplier a sample of the product or products taken to auction, at least 10 days before the auction takes place. If this sample is not available, an equivalent or similar product must be provided
> - specify whether mixed proposals – which have different products and/or services – are accepted
> - specify the duration of the electronic auction
> - specify the conditions of the contract, namely the ones regarding payment conditions, currency to be used in the business, delivery places, minimum and maximum amount per delivery place, deadline accorded after the issuing of the order, etc.
> - Supply all the participant suppliers with a complete list of participant suppliers in the e-auction, at least 24 hours before it starts
> - Clear identification of the participant suppliers' pre-selection and selection criteria and of the relative importance of each of these criteria; reasons for not being selected must be communicated to the non-selected.

5.10 Reverse auctions

5.10.1 What is a reverse auction?

In a reverse auction, buying organisations post the item(s) they wish to buy and price they are willing to pay while suppliers compete to offer the best price for the item(s) over a prescribed time period.

For example, a buying organisation is interested in purchasing 1000 castings to a published specification at the lowest possible price. It therefore creates a reverse auction, stating the dimensions, quality, performance and delivery requirements and, often, bid decrements. Suppliers enter the marketplace and bid on the auction. Winners are declared according to the agreed auction rules. Thus, e-auctions may be structured using the lowest price or most economically advantageous tender (MEAT) options.

At the conclusion of the auction, both purchaser and supplier are bound by the sale. If a reserve price is set but not met, the buying organisation decides the winning bid. Suppliers can bid more than once in the prescribed time. Apart from the names of the suppliers and reverse sealed bid auctions, all the bids are available for everyone to see. Most online auction sites use automatic bidding against agents or a 'proxy bidder' that automatically place bids on the suppliers' behalf.

Example 5.1

Reverse auction 1

Bids are solicited for 100 product Xs. The opening bid is £25 per product, with bid decrements of £5:

- supplier A bids £25 each for 100 items
- supplier B bids £20 each for 50 items
- supplier C bids £15 each for 50 items.

The result of the auction is that:

- supplier A is unsuccessful
- supplier B sells 50 items for £20
- supplier C sells 50 items for £15.

There are several variations on the bidding process. In what is known as the reverse English manual system, the buying organisation specifies the opening bid and the supplier bids higher. At the conclusion of the auction, the purchaser selects the winners manually. Each winning bidder sells at the bid price made. The criteria for the winning bid may not be disclosed.

Example 5.2

Reverse auction 2

Bids are solicited for 100 product Xs. The opening bid is £25:

- supplier A bids £18 per item for 100 items
- supplier B bids £20 per item for 100 items
- supplier C bids £20 per item for 100 items.

The result of the auction is that:

- supplier A is unsuccessful
- supplier C sells 100 items for £20, because of closer geographical proximity to the purchaser than supplier B.

5.10.2 When to use reverse auctions

Most reverse auctions are used for spot buying and eliminate the time-consuming offline process of selecting suppliers, requesting quotations and comparing quotes received. Marketplaces with many suppliers can offer purchasers a compiled list of suppliers. Procurement organisations conducting reverse auctions on their own sites must invite prospective suppliers in advance if they wish such suppliers to participate. Reverse auctions are particularly useful in the following circumstances:

- when there is uncertainty as to the size of the market and the willingness of sellers to supply a product
- when purchasing large quantities of an item for which clear specifications are possible
- when selling surplus assets
- for some services, such as car rentals, freight services, travel.

The consensus used to be that the lowest-price reverse auction process should be used only when there is little concern about production specifications or the selected suppliers. Reverse auctions were not considered appropriate for complicated products or projects requiring collaboration or considerable negotiation. *Buy IT*,[19] however, states that software providers are now expanding their offerings to ensure that online auction tools become an integral part of the broader procurement strategy process, including the creation and management of optimal long-term value partnerships. As the goods or services became more difficult to specify and the relationships between purchasers and suppliers became more integrated, online auctions became less about driving cost out of the supply chain and more of a tool for collaboration.

5.10.3 The reverse auction process

Figure 5.8 indicates the principal steps involved.

5.10.4 Reverse auction guidelines

A useful summary of online auction 'dos and don'ts', which, if followed, all help to ensure a successful auction, is shown in Figure 5.9.[20]

5.10.5 Advantages of reverse auctions

Reverse auctions provide benefits for both buyers and sellers. The benefits for buyers include:

- savings over and above those obtained from normal negotiations as a result of competition – on average, the auction process drives down supplier process by 11 per cent, with savings ranging from 4 to 40 per cent[21]
- reductions in acquisition lead times
- access to a wider range of suppliers
- a global supply base can be achieved relatively quickly
- sources of market information are enhanced
- more efficient administration of requests for quotations (RFQs) and proposals
- auctions conducted on the Internet generally provide total anonymity so time is not wasted on seeing suppliers' representatives.

Figure 5.8 The reverse auction process

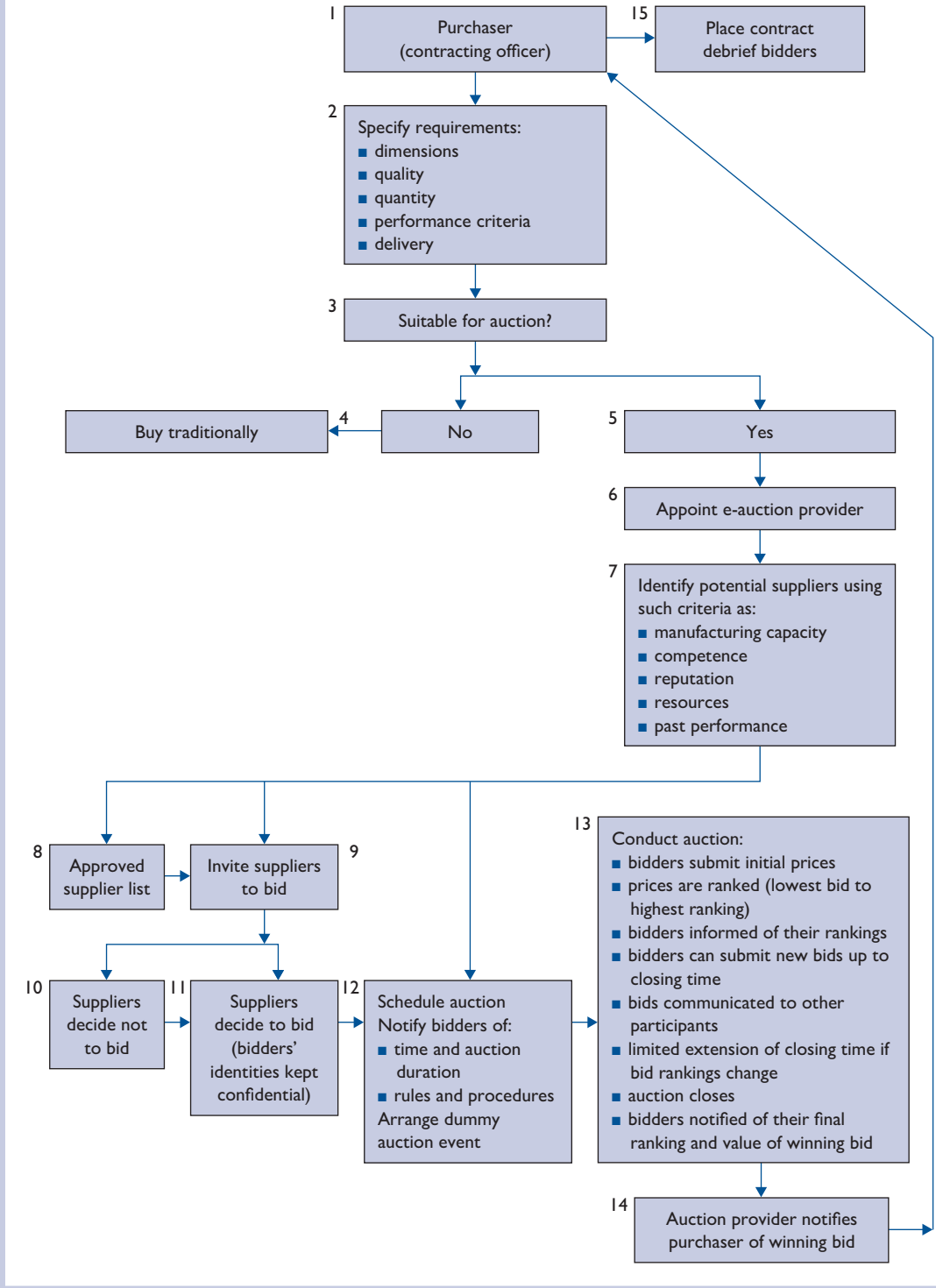
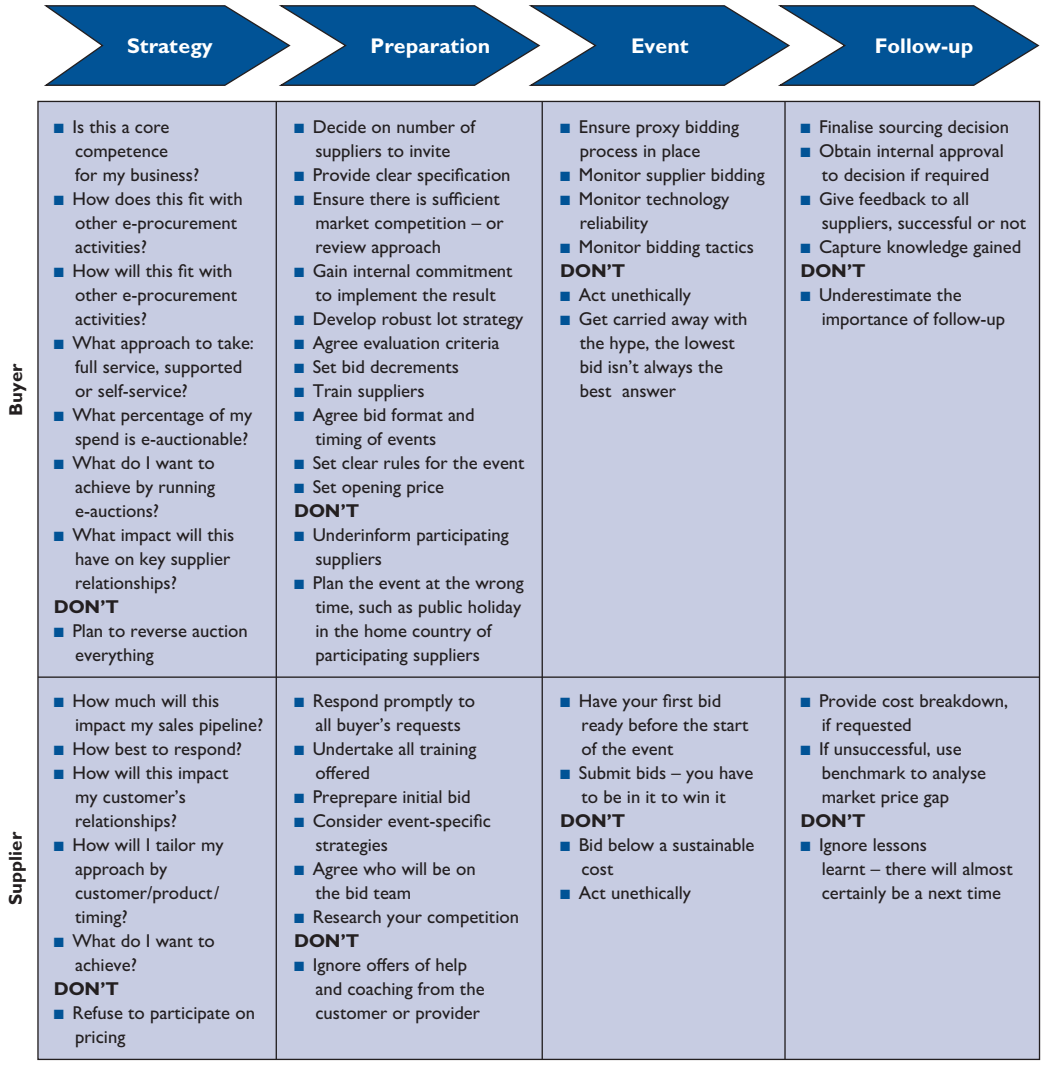


Figure 5.9 Online reverse auction



The benefits for suppliers include:

- an opportunity to enter previously closed markets, which is particularly important for smaller companies
- reduced negotiation timescales
- provision of a good source of market pricing information
- clear indications of what must be done to win the business.

5.10.6 Disadvantages of reverse auctions

Some objections to reverse auction include that they:

- are based on a win–lose approach – the seller is trying to get the most money while the buyer is after the best deal and the goal is to screw your opponent to win either a good deal or a profitable deal at the other person's expense, so the logical progression is always towards cheating and, therefore, such a system cannot be sustained without burdensome watchdogs and regulators
- can cause an adverse shift in buyer–seller relationships as the supplier may feel exploited and become less trustful of buyers
- can have long-term adverse effects on the economic performance of both suppliers and purchasers as:
  - some suppliers may not be able to sustain sharp price reductions in the long term
  - suppliers that cannot compete at the lower price levels may be removed, or ask to be removed, from the purchaser's approved supplier list so those purchasers eventually have reduced supplier bases
  - in order to ensure that the exact goods and services required are obtained, considerable time may be needed to complete detailed specification sheets.

5.11 E-payment

E-payment may be by a standalone method, as with a purchasing card, or incorporated into software, as with the UK Ministry of Defence's (MoD) purchase to payment (P2P) system. This last system enables:

- an electronic order for goods and services to be sent to a trading partner
- an electronic receipt to be held and linked to the order for goods and services
- an electronic invoice to be sent to the MoD
- the order, receipt and invoice to be matched online, generating an electronic message authorising the processing of payment that is sent to the trading partner.

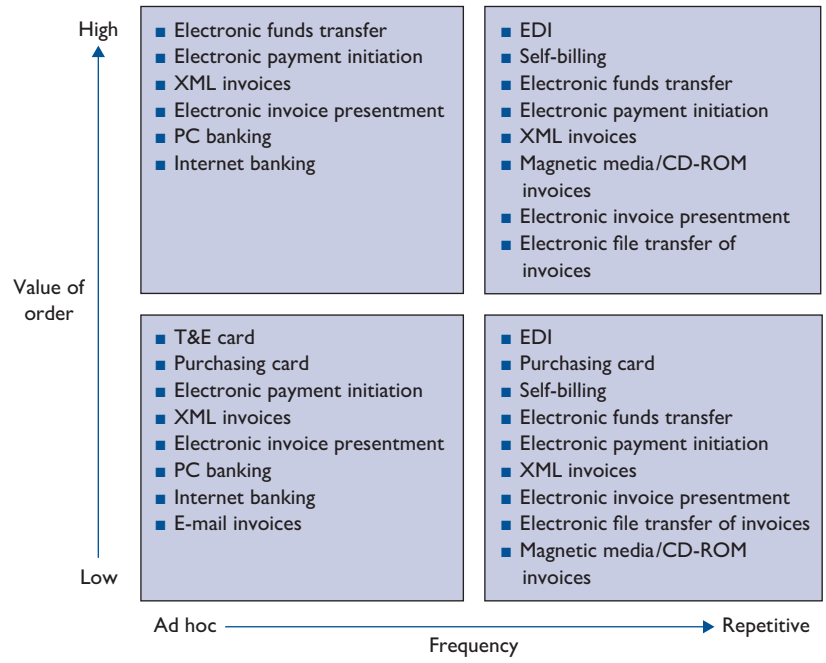
Figure 5.10 provides a useful map of e-payment and invoicing applications and the vendors that provide them, placing the different options according to whether the value of the purchase to which the payment relates is high or low and also the frequency of payments.

Security and auditing are important aspects of e-payments. Security risks include unauthorised access by hackers, illegal acquisition of PINs and data theft. Approaches to security concerns include:

- *encrypted technologies* – the art of encoding information in such a way that only the holder of a secret password can decode and read it
- *certification authorisations* – organisations that clarify and provide proof that a signature is valid.

In any e-payments system, it is vital that each invoice and payment is traceable throughout the system. The audit trail should track every line of data right back to the file where it originated.

Figure 5.10 Solutions landscape for electronic invoicing and payments[22]



Source: CIPS

5.12 Low-value purchases

There can be a disproportionate amount of time spent by procurement departments processing small-value purchases where the administrative expenditure cannot be counterbalanced by any savings. The potential scale of these small-value purchases can be illustrated by reference to the Acquisitions Branch of Public Works and Government Services Canada who in 2002 issued 33,000 contracts and 11,000 amendments worth more than $10 billion in goods, services and construction. Of those contracts 62 per cent were below $25,000.

Low-cost procedures for the efficient handling of low-value purchases include the following.

5.12.1 Delegated order placement to users

This is the placement of own orders by users within specified limits and with approved suppliers over the Internet.

5.12.2 Procurement cards

These are similar to credit cards and involve a provider such as an International Bank and usually an issuing bank. When used for low-value purchases, they enable any user,

such as a foreman on a building site, to make purchases and provide payments to suppliers. Richardson[23] has listed the following benefits of using procurement cards:

- compliance levels can improve where more orders are going through preferred suppliers, which can lead to better volume discounts
- average transaction and order processing costs can drop dramatically
- implementation costs are 10 to 100 times less than for an ERP or e-procurement system
- suppliers are paid faster, enabling them to invest in their business and improve their services to clients
- greater and improved documentation of data on accounts, suppliers and taxes
- less procurement employee time spent on order paperwork and chasing, allowing more time for strategic and tactical work.

Clearly the issue and use of procurement cards has to be carefully controlled. The cardholder should be held responsible for protecting the procurement card and for all purchases made using a particular procurement card number.

Neither the physical procurement card nor its account number should be shared with or transferred to any other person to use. A procurement card internal review should be held periodically to ensure compliance with controls, appropriateness of purchases, that cards are actually in the possession of the authorised holders and that there is general adherence to specific procurement procedures.

5.12.3 Other methods of dealing with low-value purchases

Other methods of dealing with low-value purchases are listed below.

- *Telephone orders* – requirements are telephoned to the supplier who is provided with an order number. The agreed price is recorded on the order form, but this is not sent to the supplier. The goods are invoiced by the supplier against the order form.
- *Petty cash purchases* – items are obtained directly from local suppliers on presentation of an authorised requisition form and paid for at once from petty cash. The main problem is that of controlling the numbers and sizes of such purchases. This can be done by providing potential users with a petty cash imprest, out of which such payments are made.
- *Standing orders* – all orders for a range of items, such as electrical fittings, fasteners, are placed with one supplier for a period of, say, 12 months. A special discount is often negotiated and quantities may or may not be specified. Required items are called off by users who transmit releases directly from the supplier via a fax, telephone or computer interface. The amount due is summarised by the supplier, either electronically or tabulated as a single invoice, and segregated by users' cost centres for easier coding by the accounts function.
- *Self-billing* – this uses EDI. When the former Rover Group, which traded electronically, received goods from a supplier, it checked that the goods were ordered and then simply paid. The supplier did not need to raise an invoice. Self-billing enables both customer and supplier to make saving.
- *Blank cheque orders* – a system devised in the USA. A cheque form with a specified liability is attached to the order form. On forwarding the goods, the supplier fills in the cheque, which he or she deposits in his or her own bank. The cheque can only be

deposited, not cashed, until authorised by the purchaser. The need for invoicing and forwarding of payment is thus avoided.

- *Stockless buying* – this is virtually the same as blanket ordering, but the supplier agrees to maintain stocks of specified items.

5.13 Procurement manuals

5.13.1 What is a procurement manual?

Essentially, a procurement manual is a medium for communicating information regarding procurement policies, procedures, instructions and regulations.

- *Policies* may be general or consequential. *General policies* state, in broad terms, the objectives and responsibilities of the procurement function. *Consequential policies* state, in expanded form, how general policies are applied in specific activities and situations, such as the selection of suppliers.
- *Procedures* prescribe the sequence of activities by which policies are implemented, such as the receipt of bought-out goods.
- *Instructions* give detailed knowledge or guidance to those responsible for carrying out the policies or procedures, such as suppliers with who call-off contracts have been negotiated.
- *Regulations* are detailed rules regarding the conduct of procurement and ancillary staff in the various situations arising in the course of their duties, such as concerning the receipt of gifts from suppliers.

When drafting a procurement manual, it is useful to keep these distinctions clearly in mind.

5.13.2 Advantages of procurement manuals

Advantages claimed for procurement manuals include the following:

- writing it down helps with precision and clarity
- the preparation of the manual provides an opportunity for consultation between procurement and other departments to look critically at existing policies and procedures and, where necessary, change them
- procedures are prescribed in terms of activities undertaken or controlled by procurement, thus promoting consistency and reducing the need for detailed supervision of routine tasks
- a manual is a useful aid in training and guiding staff
- a manual can help the annual audit
- a manual coordinates policies and procedures and helps to ensure uniformity and continuity of procurement principles and practice, as well as providing a point of reference against which such principles and practice can be evaluated
- a manual may help to enhance the status of procurement by showing that top management attaches importance to the procurement function
- computerisation, which needs detailed and well-documented systems, has given further impetus to the preparation of procurement manuals.

5.13.3 Disadvantages of procurement manuals

Some disadvantages of manuals are that they:

- are costly to prepare
- tend to foster red tape and bureaucracy and stifle initiative
- must be continually updated to show changes in procedures and policy.

5.13.4 Format

Although hard copy manuals are still produced, the most suitable format is that of an operational database used to process the information needed to perform operational tasks. This can be available internally via an intranet or externally on the Internet. As the manual is freely accessible, it encourages transparency and can easily be updated.

5.13.5 Contents

A procurement manual may consist of three main sections, dealing respectively with organisation, policy and procedures.

- Organisation
  - Charts showing the place of procurement within the undertaking and how it is organised, both centrally and locally.
  - Possibly job descriptions for all posts within the procurement function, including, where applicable, limitations of remits.
  - Teams relating to procurement and supply chain activities.
  - Administrative information for staff, such as absences, hours of work, travelling expenses and similar matters.
- Policy
  - Statements of policy, setting out the objectives, responsibilities and authority of the procurement function.
  - Statements, which can be expanded, of general principles relating to price, quality and delivery.
  - Terms and conditions of contract and use of Standard Forms of Contract.
  - Ethical relationships with suppliers, especially regarding gifts, and entertainment.
  - Environmental policies.
  - Supplier appraisal and selection.
  - Employee purchases.
  - Reports to management.
- Procedures
  - Descriptions, accompanied by flow charts, of procedures relating to requisitioning, ordering, expediting, receiving, inspecting, storing and payment of goods with special reference to procurement.

– Procedures relating to the rejection and return of goods.
– Procedures regarding the disposal of scrap and obsolete or surplus items.

5.14 Supplier manuals

Supplier manuals provide information for the providers of goods and services. Such manuals may relate to a specific aspect of supplier relationships, such as quality or delivery requirements and ethical or environmental issues, or be a comprehensive publication covering all aspects of supply.

5.14.1 The purpose of supplier manuals

Supplier manuals may achieve the following:

- Set out the parameters within which the purchaser is prepared to trade with the supplier. Most supplier manuals contain a statement that:

  > variation from the requirements/standards prescribed in this manual will only be permitted with the specific written agreement of the supply manager.

- Provide the legal basis for trading, such as: compliance with the requirements of this manual is a requirement of the conditions of purchase that form part of the XYZ trading terms and conditions, and that suppliers accept when agreeing to supply goods or services to XYZ. Failure to comply is a breach of contract.
- Provide essential information required by the supplier relating to the purchaser's requirements regarding such issues as packaging, transportation, deliveries, delivery locations, environmental and ethical polices and e-procurement.

5.14.2 The content of supplier manuals

Robert Bosch GmbH[24] has a 'Supplier Logistics Manual' that sets out the logistics requirements of the Bosch Group. In the preamble it states that

> competition in national and international markets has been significantly tougher in recent years. The increased individuality of our customers places high requirements on our business, and as a result also on the logistics functions, in terms of quality and flexibility. The quality of logistics is becoming more and more decisive to the competitiveness of our business, and is an increasingly important factor in our strategic success.

The content includes:

1. information logistics
2. packaging logistics
3. dispute logistics
4. logistics quality
5. outlook
6. abbreviations
7. attachments.

Discussion questions

5.1 Describe the four major levels of organisation policy.

5.2 Using the Crossrail Procurement Policy as your reference, find another published Procurement Policy and identify the purpose of this latter policy.

5.3 Identify four Key Policy Principles for General Procurement.

5.4 What is a Procurement Procedure and how does it help the procurement function to fulfil its corporate obligations?

5.5 **(a)** Prepare a flow chart of a traditional, paper-based purchasing system from the receipt of a requisition to the payment of the supplier.
(b) Estimate the time taken and the cost of each stage in the above process.
(c) Prepare a flow chart showing how the same activities would be done under e-procurement.
(d) Estimate the savings in time and cost using e-procurement.

5.6 Why, in many organisations, is e-procurement limited to MRO (maintenance, repair and operating) items?

5.7 E-procurement can rarely be a total success because it depersonalises the process. The absence of personal contact can lead to misunderstandings and weaken relationships. Would you agree with this? Why do you hold your views?

5.8 What are the classic problems of introducing EDI?

5.9 Why is Business Process Integration of strategic importance to an organisation?

5.10 Do you purchase using an e-catalogue? If you do, what are your views on:
(a) how it is kept up to date?
(b) how the range of products compares with what is available in the market?
(c) its advantages over a buyer conducting their own market search?

5.11 Reverse auctions are an increasing facet of procurement. At the end of the process prices are agreed without any face-to-face negotiation. Comment on this in regard to the following:
(a) It is impossible to understand the cost drivers.
(b) The purchase was made on price alone.
(c) The supplier with the lowest price must cut his quality to make a profit.

5.12 XML offers its users many advantages, including:
(a) simplicity
(b) extensibility
(c) interoperability
(d) openness.
Give one example of how XML provides each of the above advantages.

5.13 In what ways do you predict the use of e-procurement will next develop? When you respond please consider:
(a) the international dimension of procurement
(b) the fact that supply chains are becoming extended through many tiers
(c) the need for effective contract management
(d) the potential for fraud with electronic systems.

References

[1] Klein, W. H. and Murphy, D. C., Policies: Concept in Organisational Guidance. Boston: Little-Brown, 1973, p. 2

[2] Crossrail Procurement Policy Document Number CR/QMS/PROC/POL/1101

[3] Report on the Minna Type Vessel Procurement Process, dated 22 May, 2006, from the Scottish Fisheries Protection Agency (SFPA)

[4] International Electronic Commerce. Definitions and Policy Implications, GAO-02-404

[5] Greenstein, M. and Feinmann, T., *Electronic Commerce Security, Risk Management & Control*, Irwin/McGraw-Hill, Boston, 2000

[6] Zwass V. 'Electronic Commerce: Structures and Issues', *International Journal of Electronic Commerce* (1.11)

[7] Hackbarth, G. and Kettinger, W. J., 'Building an E-business strategy', *Information Systems Management*, Vol 17, p. 78

[8] Kalakota, R. and Robinson, M., *E-business 2.0*, 2nd edn, Addison Wesley, 2001, p. 310

[9] As 8 above

[10] Armstrong, V. and Jackson, D., 'Electronic data interchange: a guide to purchasing and supply', CIPS, 1991, pp. 15–16

[11] Killen, K. H. and Kamauff, J. W., *Managing Purchasing*, Irwin, 1995, p. 60

[12] Norman, G., 'Is it time for EDI?', Logistics Supplement, *Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, June, 1994, p. 20

[13] Monczka, R. M. and Carter, J. R., 'Implementation of electronic data interchange', *Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, Summer, 1998, pp. 2–9

[14] National Computing Centre, 'The impact of e-purchasing on supply chain management', *My IT Adviser*, 17 September, 2002

[15] Adapted from Ronchi, Stefano, *The Internet and the Customer Supplier Relationship*, Ashgate, 2003, p. 48

[16] We are indebted to the ACTIVE Secretariat, 20 Eastbourne Terrace, London W2 6LE, for permission to use this figure, taken from 'The e-Business Study', 2000, p. 20

[17] Epicor 2000, *The Strategy*, p. 91

[18] International confederation for printing and allied industries, 'E-Auctions – Code of Conduct', March 2005

[19] *Buy IT*, 'Online auctioning: e-procurement guidelines', issued by Buy IT Best Practice Network, October, 2001, pp. 13–14

[20] The authors are grateful to David Eaton and the *Buy IT* e-procurement Best Practice Network for permission to use this figure, taken from 'Buy IT Online Auctions', 2001, p. 5

[21] Lascelles, D., *Managing the Supply Chain*, Business Intelligence, 2001, p. 44

[22] We are grateful to CIPS for permission to reproduce this figure, taken from 'The CIPS e-procurement guidelines: e-invoicing and e-payment'

[23] Richardson, T., 'Guide to purchasing cards', Supplement, *Purchasing and Supply Management*, 2003, p. 7

[24] http://purchasing.bosch.com

This page intentionally left blank

Part 2

Supplier relationships, legal & contractual management, quality management, sourcing, supplier selection, price management and long-term cost in use

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 6

Supplier relationships and partnering

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- planning relationship procurement
- comparison of transactional and relationship procurement
- the strategic nature of buyer–seller relationships
- models of supplier relationships
- legal considerations
- skills and knowledge requirements
- the benefits of long-term relationships
- the termination of supplier relationships
- analysing relationship breakdowns.

Key ideas

- Effective planning to create positive relationships.
- Key considerations of transactional and relationship procurement.
- Relationship formation.
- Classification and analysis of supplier relationships.
- Contract governance principles and application.
- The business usefulness of supplier relationship models.
- Evaluating the mutuality of benefits from the relationship.
- Factors to consider when terminating relationships.

Introduction

This chapter is concerned with providing an understanding of procurement–supplier relationships from the perspectives of both theory and practice. A critical scrutiny of the history of such relationships will demonstrate the opportunities for buyer and seller when genuine long-term relationships can be established. For these relationships to be achieved it will require an investment of resources, changes in attitudes and the abandonment of adversarial business practice.

6.1 Relationship procurement and procurement relationships

A relationship is defined, inter alia, as a 'connection or association'.[1] Relationships apply when individuals, organisations and groups within and external to an enterprise interact. Apart from the field of industrial sociology, concerned with the study of group interaction within a workplace environment, the application of the study of business relationships began with the concept of relationship marketing.

Supplier Relationship Management (SRM)[2] is an approach between two parties to work towards the integration of their organisations, where that integration will bring greater value for money for the customer and enhanced margin for the supplier and will assist in meeting the strategic objectives of both. It is not an agreement to sole source, or outsource to a supplier, rather to integrate aspects of the two organisations for mutual benefit. These benefits must be real and tangible, not just relationship indicators.

The most successful relationships are those where customers and suppliers develop trust and an understanding of their respective requirements and interests, accompanied by a desire for both learning from and providing assistance to each other. Where such conditions exist, the ultimate outcome should be the creation of established and dependable procurement–supplier relationships. Such relationships are the basis of networks and provide competitive advantages for both parties.

6.2 The contrast between transactional and relationship procurement, taking account of contractual requirements

Table 6.1[3] has been adapted to include a consideration of contractual requirements to emphasise that, regardless of the relationship, the supplier is agreeing to meet certain contractual obligations.

6.3 Collaborative business relationships

The British Standards Institution[4] have published BS 11000–1:2010 'Collaborative business relationships – Part 1: A framework specification'.[5] BS 11000–2 Guide to implementing BS11000-1 has also been published. PAS 11000:2006 is superseded and has been withdrawn. The BSI has announced that a new international standard ISO 11000 is due for release in late 2016.

The aim of the British Standard is to provide a strategic framework to establish and improve collaborative relationships in organisations of all sizes. Collaboration is an admirable business objective but is proven to be difficult to attain, as evidenced by high-profile contractual disputes. BSI point out that 'Collaborative approaches have been shown to deliver a wide range of benefits, which enhance competitiveness and performance (for example, but not limited to, better cost management, improved time, improved resource and risk management and delivering incremental business value and innovation'.

BSI explain that collaborative relationships in the context of BS 11000 can be multi-dimensional, 'They can be individual one-to-one relationships but more frequently they are networked relationships which might involve multiple parties, including external collaborators/partners or alliance partners, suppliers, various internal divisions and often customers, working together. These are often described as business

Table 6.1 The main differences and contractual requirements of transactional and relationship procurement

Transactional	*Relationship*	*Contractual requirement*
Focus on discrete procurement actions and one-off contracts	Focus on supplier retention providing KPIs are satisfied	One-off as opposed to long-term contract with commitments to offtake
Short-term orientation	Long-term orientation	Supplier commitment to continuous improvement and investment in research
Arm's length	Closeness	Creation of joint partnering board, Open Book and sharing of long-term business plans
Sample buyer–seller relationship	Integrated relationship with involvement of stakeholders	Dedication to bringing about teamwork, effective contract review meetings and effective evaluation of issues
Emphasis on price, quality and delivery. No innovation	Sophisticated requirement for innovation, continuous improvement, opportunity for gainshare and visibility of research	Create requirement for demonstrable innovation with defined benefits for both parties
Moderate (or modest) supplier contact	High level of contact, including at senior level in both organisations. Consistent review of performance	Creation of operational and partnering boards, good frequency of review meetings
Little sharing of information; opaqueness	Significant sharing of information	Provision of management information, Open Book on costs and profit, transparency of business plans
Intellectual property not a key consideration	Intellectual property is a key consideration offering additional benefits through exploitation in market as a whole	IP ownership is joint when buyer sharing cost or acting as a BETA site. Licence agreed on agreed financial basis

networks, supply chains, clusters, ecosystems or extended enterprises. It might also be applicable to consortia and joint ventures, even where the individual organisations might not be implementing the standard overall'.

The British Standard specifies an eight-stage framework that reflects the overall life cycle of a collaborative relationship. The eight key stages are shown in Table 6.2.

Table 6.2 Eight key stages of the collaborative relationship framework

STAGE 1	**AWARENESS**	This addresses the overall strategic corporate policy and processes which lead towards incorporating collaborative working as a recognised approach where it can identify added value. Within what BSI refers to as Clause 3, there are subsets of Stage 1 including, for example, appointing a Senior Executive Responsible (SER).
STAGE 2	**KNOWLEDGE**	This focuses on the development of knowledge against a specifically identified opportunity to create a business case and benefits analysis. BSI explain that this should include issues which would influence the overall strategy relating to competencies, training and development, knowledge management, risk management, value analysis and initial exit strategy conditions.

Table 6.2 *Continued*

STAGE 3	**INTERNAL ASSESSMENT**	This is intended to ensure that organisations undertake a structured assessment of their capability and maturity to successfully engage in a collaborative initiative. Acknowledging internal strengths and weaknesses ensures that the collaboration is not established with a bias towards the performance of the external parties.
STAGE 4	**PARTNER SELECTION**	This addresses the need to undertake a structured approach to the identification, evaluation and selection of appropriate partners. It assesses not only the performance aspects of each collaborative partner but also the way in which the two organisations can work together with a more integrated approach for mutual benefit.
STAGE 5	**WORKING TOGETHER**	This focuses on ensuring that the partners establish the appropriate operational structure, governance, roles and responsibilities to effectively achieve desired business objectives. In this, the organisations establish and agree a formal foundation for working together, including contractual frameworks or agreement of roles and responsibilities.
STAGE 6	**VALUE CREATION**	This is specifically focused on the need to establish approaches that seek to build value out of the joint relationship.
STAGE 7	**STAYING TOGETHER**	This addresses the need to ensure effective measurement and monitoring of the relationship to maintain its optimum performance.
STAGE 8	**EXIT STRATEGY**	This addresses the need to develop and maintain an effective strategy for disengagement where appropriate.

The standard includes at Table C.1 the competencies and behaviours, reproduced below:

Context	**Core competency skills**	**Organisational enablers**
Business skills required in the management of collaborative programmes	*Key competencies specific to the role of developing and managing collaborative programmes*	*Key cultural aspects that enable collaborative working and underpin operational practices*
■ Leadership ■ Business planning ■ Communications skills ■ Team management ■ Negotiation skills ■ Conflict resolution ■ Commercial and financial management ■ Change management ■ Project and programme management ■ Contract management ■ Risk management	■ Leadership through influence ■ Coaching and mentoring ■ Stakeholder management ■ Cultural awareness ■ Creating strategic alignment ■ Value proposition development ■ Collaborative negotiation ■ Partner selection ■ Governance development ■ Measurement and matrix setting ■ Collaborative working ■ Joint business planning ■ Organisational alignment	■ Leadership commitment ■ Joint governance structures ■ Shared goals/objectives ■ Cultural alignment ■ Joint business planning ■ Defined and appropriate measurement ■ Strategic alignment ■ Collaborative ethos ■ Clearly defined roles and responsibilities ■ Supportive processes and infrastructure ■ Clearly defined issue resolution mechanisms ■ Risk and reward sharing ■ Clear autonomy and accountability

Context	Core competency skills	Organisational enablers
Business skills required in the management of collaborative programmes	*Key competencies specific to the role of developing and managing collaborative programmes*	*Key cultural aspects that enable collaborative working and underpin operational practices*
■ Knowledge management ■ Business process development	■ Relationship management ■ Transition management ■ Problem solving and decision making	■ Adequate resources ■ Effective stakeholder communications ■ Competency skills development ■ Delegation of authority ■ Aligned incentive programmes

Critical behaviours

- Information sharing, constructive questioning, open and honest feedback
- Listen effectively, respecting opinions of others
- Communicate effectively, consistently, openly, honestly and in a responsive manner
- Recognise the objectives of all parties and seek ways to help maximise their achievement
- Negotiate without taking advantage
- Appreciate and respect differences in cultures; be proactive to resolve potential difficulties and overcome barriers
- Learn from and share experience and setbacks
- Understand and support others in the achievement of their own goals
- Establish joint needs and outcomes and deliver against objectives; act in the best interests of the joint effort
- Balance risk and reward when considering innovative thinking and future possibilities
- Consider the possible future implications of current issues
- Address short-term imperatives without losing sight of long-term objectives; learn from experience and to embrace changes
- Constructive and flexible attitude to change; facilitate creativity in others by encouraging challenge and new ideas
- Accommodate needs of all stakeholders in order to deliver shared goals
- Demonstrate respect and consideration for all partners and consider the impact of actions upon others
- Aim to create mutual understanding but hold people to account for unacceptable behaviour

6.3.1 Summary of BS 11000

This British Standard represents a valiant attempt to capture the salient points of creating and maintaining collaborative business relationships. In the author's opinion it does not completely grasp the nettle of how to overcome traditional adversarial behaviour of buyer–seller relationship. Procurement lies at the heart of many processes to find suppliers who can become a partner. This is not a mechanistic approach. It requires the exercise of expert skills, particularly negotiation and problem solving. It requires a meeting of the minds at executive level who are prepared to share long-term sensitive business plans.

6.4 Relationship formation

Holmlund and Strandvik[6] classify interactions between two or more enterprises as taking place on five different aggregation levels – actions, episodes, sequences, relationships and partner base. These are hierarchical levels, ranging from a single exchange to the portfolio of relationships of one particular enterprise.

- *Actions* – 'individual initiatives by the focal enterprise', such as a telephone call or plant visit, which may relate to products, information, money or social contacts.
- *Episodes* – groups of interrelated actions, such as a negotiation encompassing a number of actions.
- *Sequences* – larger and more extensive entities of interactions. This level may be defined in terms of a contract, product, campaign or project. Holmlund and Strandvik[7] also point out that:

  > a sequence, in enterprises, can also be related to the presence of a significant human action in either of the organisations. A sequence may then end when a particular person is replaced by another in either firm. Even if the relationship continues, the quality of the relationship may change due to the influence of one single person . . . The completion of a sequence constitutes a vulnerable period of time during which the parties make important evaluations. The evaluation may cause a potential termination of the relationship, since a sequence represents a time-framed commitment, which is defined by the particular sequence.

- *Relationships* – comprise all the sequences, which, in turn, comprise all related episodes and actions in one particular relationship between two firms.
- *Partner base* – the relationship portfolio of a particular enterprise, that is, all the relationships that a particular enterprise has at a particular point of time.

The formation of long-term personal relationships usually develops by going through the same stages. Thus, a meeting (action level) may develop into a friendship (episode level), courtship (sequential level) and marriage (relationship level). Each level is normally of a longer and more permanent duration than the preceding one. The model of supplier integration shown in Table 6.3 follows this pattern.

Table 6.3 Stages of supplier integrations

One-night stand	*Regular date*	*Going steady*	*Living together*	*Marriage*
Competitive leverage Bids, tenders and tactical negotiation on an ongoing basis	Preferred suppliers Proven track record in quality, delivery and cost, hence smaller supplier base, less frequent bidding	Performance partnerships Benchmarking still applied to assess value but now joint definition of improvement plans and priorities, joint supplier and purchaser fusion teams with specific improvement objectives, some job rotation	Strategic alliances Single sourcing and joint investment strategies; interdependence becomes the driving force	Cobusiness integration Core competences totally aligned, such that rationalisation will release added value
Low ◄	———	———	———	► High
Degree of strategic alignment and integration of core competences				

Source: Johnson, S., Tinsley Bridge Ltd, 'Managing change through teamwork', ISCAN, Sheffield, 1997, pp. 7–17

Jarvelin,[8] however, argues that, for practical purposes, the quality of relationships can be studied at two levels: episodes and relationships.

6.5 Models of supplier relationships

There are several classifications, of which the following, by Cox and Bensaou, are typical.

6.5.1 The Cox model

Cox[9] presents a stepladder of external and internal relationships, as shown in Figure 6.1.

Cox gives two reasons for the omission from the ladder of 'partnership sourcing', referred to later in this book:

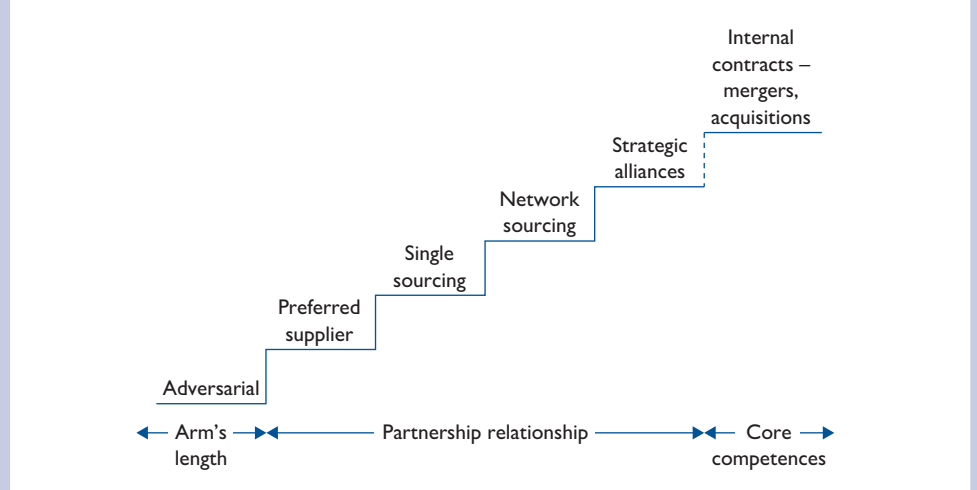
- the concept of 'partnership sourcing' is generic and refers to a complicated range of collaborative relationships, such as from preferred supplier to strategic alliance
- the term partnership sourcing is used to refer to all forms of non-adversarial collaborative relationships.

The Cox model draws heavily on concepts associated with transaction cost and resource-based theories of the firm.

Transaction cost theory (TCT)

Transaction cost theory (TCT), associated with Coase[10] and Williamson,[11] refers to the idea of the cost of providing for some good or service if it was purchased in the marketplace rather than from within the firm. Three key concepts are those of transaction costs, asset specificity and asymmetrical information distribution.

Figure 6.1 A stepladder of external and internal contractual relationships



Source: Adapted from Cox, 1996

Transaction costs comprise:

- search and bargain costs
- bargaining and decision costs
- policing and enforcement costs.

Asset specificity is the relative lack of transferability of assets intended for use in a given transaction to other uses. Williamson identifies six main types of asset specificity:

- site
- physical asset
- human asset
- brand names
- dedicated assets
- temporal.

Asymmetrical information distribution means that the parties to a transaction have uneven access to relevant information. One consequence is that, within contractual relationships, either party may engage in post-contractual opportunism if the chance of switching to more advantageous partnerships arises.

Resource-based theory (RBT)

Resource-based theory emphasises that each firm is characterised by its own unique collection of resources of core competences. Thus, Kay[12] argues that the source of competitive advantage is the creation and exploitation of distinctive capabilities that are difficult to build and maintain, codify and make into recipes, copy and emulate and can't simply be bought off the shelf. Kay identifies three basic types of distinctive capability.

1 *Corporate architecture* – the capacity of the organisation to:
   – create and store organisational knowledge and routines
   – promote more effective cooperation between network members
   – achieve a transparent and easy flow of information
   – adapt rapidly and flexibly.

2 *Innovation* – the capacity to lower costs, improve products or introduce new products ahead of competitors. The successful exploitation of new ideas incorporating new technologies, designs and best practice is difficult and uncertain. Often, innovation can only be achieved by cooperating and collaborating with partners.

3 *Reputation* – the capacity to instil confidence in an organisation's credibility, reliability, responsibility, trustworthiness and, possibly, accountability. Organisations can only achieve a positive reputation over time, but, once achieved, their ability to provide quality assurance may enable them to obtain a premium price for products.

From the insights provided by TCT and RBT, Cox derives the following propositions.

- *Arm's length relationships* are associated with low asset specificity and low supplier competences that can easily be bought off the shelf as there are many potential suppliers.

- *Internal contracts* – in-house provision – are associated with high asset specificity and core competences:

  > The more competences approximate to core competences of high asset specificity, then the greater the likelihood that external relationships may lead to merger or acquisition or, failing that, result in very close, single-sourced negotiated contracts in which both parties have some clear ownership rights in the goods and services produced.[13]

- *Partnership relationships* (as shown in Figure 6.1) apply to assets of medium specificity and ascend in steps according to the distance of the complementary competences provided by external suppliers from the core competences of a particular firm:

  > The nearer they [complementary competences] are to the core competences of the firm, the more the firm will have to consider vertical integration through merger and acquisition. The further away from the core competences of the firm the less there is a need for medium asset-specific skills to be vertically integrated.[14]

Cox's classification of contractual relationships

The five steps in the ladder of contractual relationships shown in Figure 6.1 each represent a higher level of asset specificity and strategic importance to the firm of the specific goods and services. Each step also represents relative degrees of power between the relationship's participants and in the relative ownership of the goods and services emanating from the relationships. Strategic supplier alliances are the final stage before a firm considers a complementary supplier to be so important that vertical integration through merger and acquisition is undertaken.

- *Adversarial leverage* – up to the mid-1980s, approaching the marketplace on an adversarial basis was the norm. Thus, Porter,[15] writing in 1980, advocates that purchasers should multi-source, negotiate short-term contracts, maintain secrecy regarding costs, sales and product design and make (or receive) no improvement suggestions to (or from) suppliers.
- *Preferred suppliers* – providers of complementary goods and services of medium asset specificity or strategic importance who have been placed by the purchaser on a restricted list of potential suppliers after a process of vendor rating and accreditation.
- *Single sourcing* – procurement from a single supplier of medium asset specificity complementary goods or services of relatively high strategic importance. As Cox observes, the aim of single sourcing is to reduce transaction costs and economise, but without the costs associated with vertical integration.
- *Network sourcing and partnerships* – networks have been considered earlier in section 4.3. According to Cox, network sourcing 'is the idea that it is possible to create a virtual company at all levels of the supply chain by engineering multiple tiered partnerships at each stage, but without moving to vertical integration'. With network sourcing:
  - the prime contracting firm acts as the driver for the reduction of transaction costs within the whole supply and value chain
  - cost reduction is achieved by a partnership between the prime contractor and a first-tier supplier who controls an important medium asset for the prime contractor and also forms similar partnerships with second-tier suppliers (see section 4.4.1)
  - each tiering level of the supply chain is effectively a joint venture in which firms at each stage will inform and educate their respective partners by sharing best practice and 'fit for purpose' techniques

– such network sourcing relationships will only be possible in mature industries 'where asset specificity has constantly been reduced and multiple and serial subcontracting thereby facilitated. In such supply chain relationships issues of ownership, control and power become increasingly difficult to allocate'.

- *Strategic supplier alliances* – classically referred to as joint ventures, these are defined by Cox as 'negotiated single-sourced relationships with the supplier of a complementary product or service'. Such relationships form a completely new and independent legal entity, distinct from the firms comprising the alliance. As both parties have some degree of proprietorship (not necessarily 50/50) in the outcome of the relationship, the basis of such relationships is power equivalence and a high degree of complementarity.

6.5.2 The Bensaou model

The Bensaou model is based on a study of eleven Japanese and three US automobile manufacturers. Bensaou[16] suggests a framework for managing a portfolio of investments for the purpose of enabling senior managers to answer two questions.

Q1 Which governance structure or relational design should a firm choose under different external contingencies?

This is a strategic decision because it affects how a firm defines its boundaries and core activities.

Q2 What is the appropriate way to manage each different type of relationship?

This is an organisational question.

Bensaou suggests four buyer relationship profiles:

- market exchange
- captive buyer
- captive supplier
- strategic partnerships.

For each profile, Bensaou identifies distinguishing product, market and supplier characteristics.

Finally, he suggests that the four profiles can be arranged in a matrix to indicate whether the buyer's and the supplier's tangible or intangible investments in the relationship are high or low. Tangible investments, in this context, are buildings, tooling and equipment. Intangible investments are people, time and effort spent in learning supplier–purchaser business practices and procedures and information sharing.

The Bensaou matrix, as adapted, is shown in Figure 6.2.

Bensaou also identified three management variables for each profile, which are:

- information-sharing practices
- characteristics of 'boundary-spanner' jobs
- the social climate within the relationship.

The management practices that high performers in each cell use to match the coordination, information and knowledge exchange requirements presented by the external context shown in Figures 6.2 and 6.3.

Figure 6.2 Supplier's specific investment

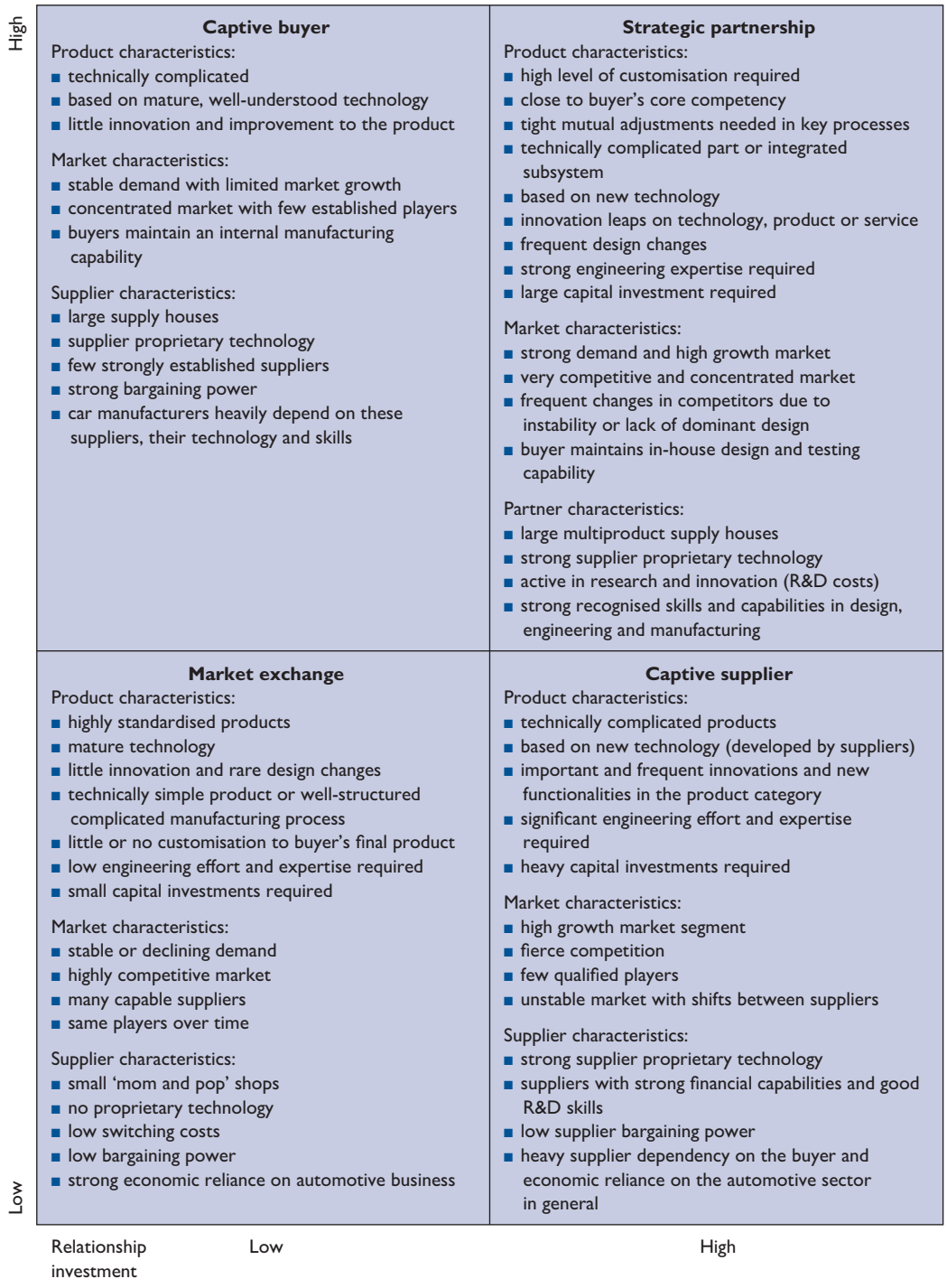


Figure 6.3 Management profile for each contextual profile

Captive buyer	Strategic partnerships
Information-sharing mechanisms: ■ 'broadband' and important exchange of detailed information on a continuous basis ■ frequent and regular mutual visits Boundary-spanner tasks' characteristics: ■ structured tasks, highly predictable ■ large amount of time spent by buyer's purchasing agents and engineers with supplier Climate and process characteristics: ■ tense climate, lack of mutual trust ■ no early supplier involvement in design ■ strong effort by buyer towards cooperation ■ supplier does not necessarily have a good reputation	Information-sharing mechanisms: ■ 'broadband' frequent and 'rich media' exchange ■ regular mutual visits and practice of guest engineers Boundary-spanner tasks' characteristics: ■ highly ill defined, ill structured ■ non-routine, frequent, unexpected events ■ large amount of time spent with supplier's staff, mostly on coordinating issues Climate and process characteristics: ■ high mutual trust and commitment to relationship ■ strong sense of buyer fairness ■ early supplier involvement in design ■ extensive joint action and cooperation ■ supplier has excellent reputation
Market exchange	**Captive supplier**
Exchange-sharing mechanisms: ■ 'narrowband' and limited information exchange, heavy at time of contract negotiation ■ operational coordination and monitoring along structured routines Boundary-spanner tasks' characteristics: ■ limited time spent directly with suppliers' staff ■ highly routine and structured tasks with little interdependence with supplier's staff Climate and process characteristics: ■ positive social climate ■ no systematic joint effort and cooperation ■ no early supplier involvement in design ■ supplier fairly treated by the buyer ■ supplier has a good reputation and track record	Information-sharing mechanisms: ■ little exchange of information ■ few mutual visits, mostly from supplier to buyer Boundary-spanner tasks' characteristics: ■ limited time allocated by buyer's staff to the supplier ■ mostly complicated, coordinating tasks Climate and process characteristics: ■ high mutual trust, but limited direct joint action and cooperation ■ greater burden put on the supplier

Bensaou concluded the following:

- Many large firms in manufacturing are moving away from traditional vertical integration and towards the external contracting of key activities.
- As interfirm relationships increase, firms cannot manage with one design for all relationships and so need to manage a portfolio of relationships.
- There are two kinds of successful relationship: high requirement–low capabilities and low requirements–high capabilities. There are also two paths to failure: under-designed and overdesigned relationships. *Overdesign* takes place when firms invest in building trust as a result of frequent visits and cross-company teams when the market and product context call for simple, impersonal control and information exchange. Such overdesign is both costly and risky, especially in terms of the intangible investments in people, information or knowledge.

- Building or redesigning relationships according to the Bensaou model therefore involves the following three analytical steps:

  1 the strategic selection of relational types to match the external conditions relating to the product, the technology and the market (see Figure 6.2)

  2 the identification of an appropriate management profile for each type of relational design

  3 matching the design of the relationship, which could be overdesigned or underdesigned, to the desired management profile.

6.6 Practical considerations of supplier relationship management

Day[17] argues that supplier relationship management is becoming a strategic battleground within organisations and procurement isn't the only function jostling for supremacy. He goes on to say that a number of areas can be improved through diligent supplier relationship management. They include:

- the ability to model costs more accurately
- utilisation of cross-organisation teams
- reduction in the impact of price fluctuations on cost structures
- early supplier involvement in product and service development
- transfer of knowledge through the supply chain
- planning and design synergy
- use of metrics to drive change for both organisations
- improved risk management and continuity of supply
- access to, and speed of, innovation.

Birmingham[18] advances the view that the ability to manage supplier relationships in a consistent, formalised programme is a growing practice among corporations of all sizes, across all industries. Figure 6.4 shows a model intended to assist companies in assessing their supplier relationship management efforts.

The Bayer Group have introduced SUPREME[19], an approach to supplier relationship management which has, as its goal, to concentrate procurement volume on the best suppliers through a global and standardised approach. Profitability and performance are primary objectives at Bayer. Material costs represent a substantial portion of the total cost of a Bayer product. Managing these costs is critical to Bayer's success.

> Working with our suppliers, we will identify optimisation potentials through a structured evaluation of quantitative and qualitative criteria, and together we will implement improvements.
>
> SUPREME comprises:
>
> - supplier selection
> - supplier evaluation
> - supplier optimisation.

Figure 6.4 Model for assessing supplier relationship management efforts

	Spend visibility	Supplier segmentation	Collaboration	Performance	Risk management
Leveraging SRM	Spend visibility drives category strategy and P2P efforts. Insight into total cost of ownership. Aligns with enterprise strategy	Drives behaviour of sourcing organisation	Continuous improvements efforts reaping benefits in areas outside of traditional sourcing arena. Advanced relationship	Recognition programme in place, 360 evaluations, continuous improvement	Monitor the supply chain risk status and contingency plans
Utilising SRM	Spend visibility contributes to the SRM strategy consistently and aligns with the strategic sourcing goals	Supports rationalisation and RF X efforts	Lifecycle management across contracts, relationship, technology and innovation	Publish scorecards and metrics. Conduct performance reviews with suppliers on a timely basis	Contingency plans in place. Detailed risk management plan with anticipated scenarios
Implemented SRM	Understand supply base with relation to spend and use this knowledge in segmentation process. Contributes to strategic sourcing plan	Supplier segmented and expectations communicated to the suppliers. Internal stakeholders aligned with segmentation	Business culture aligned, two-way interaction between stakeholders. Satisfaction surveys and 360s in place for data gathering	Distribute surveys, evaluate results, develop and implement remediation plans	Weigh factors applied to risks. Develop contingency plans
Need identified	Data gathering and spend analysis being completed, possible vendor master scrub if needed	Defined 'status' (e.g. preferred, key, strategic.) with explicit criteria for each tier. Potentially using a tiering tool	External stakeholders identified satisfaction surveys and 360s in development for data gathering	Develop key performance indicators, decide on frequency of evaluation. Obtain stakeholder buy in	Identify risks from financial, technology, security, exclusivity and contract perspective as applicable
Limited/ none	No visibility into supplier data, vendor master not cleansed; spend analysis not completed	No formal segmentation in place. Internally and externally supplier 'status' is unknown	Stakeholders/ executive sponsors not identified. Reactive participation and little strategic interaction with only internal stakeholders	Reactive approach to performance, little or no visibility into metrics. Tracked on an ad-hoc basis	No action plan in place for any risk management; not aware of all potential risks

Supplier selection – each supplier will go through a six-step process including:

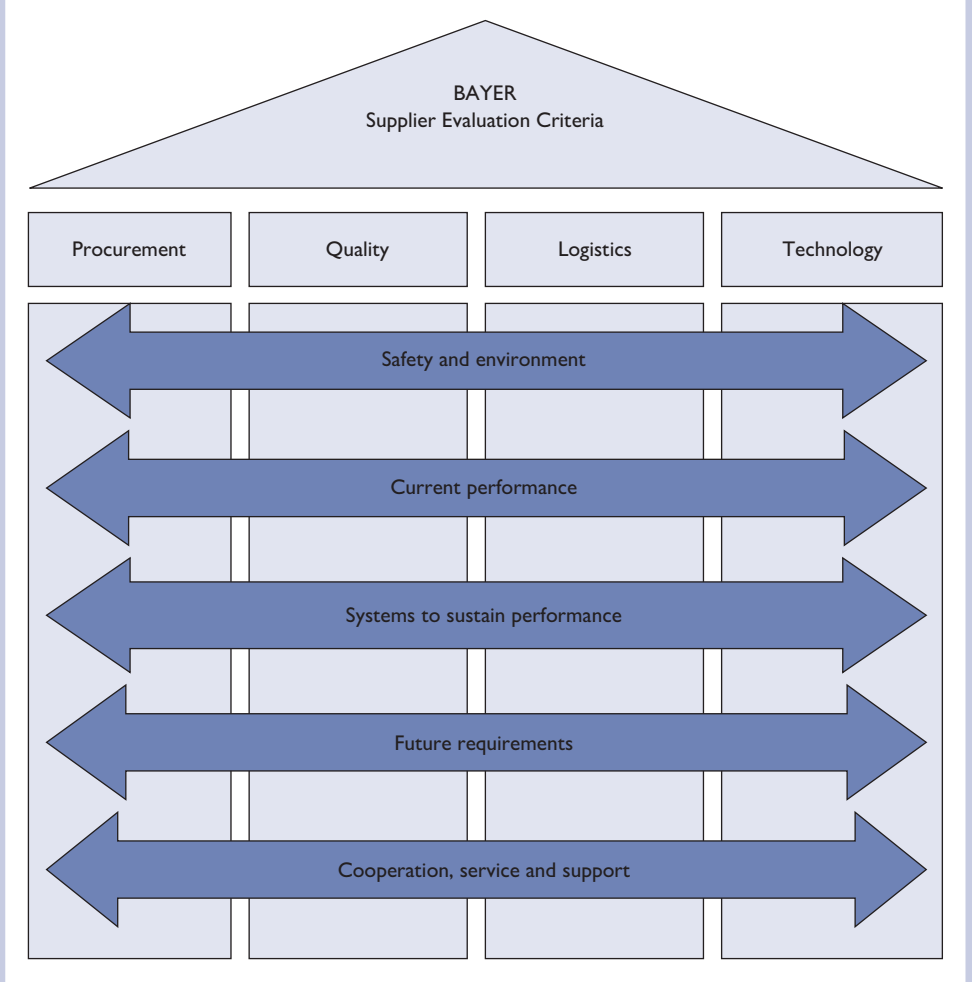
1 demand analysis
2 market analysis
3 supplier pre-selection
4 supplier qualification
5 request for quotation
6 negotiation.

Supplier evaluation is shown in Figure 6.5.

Supplier optimisation consists of five steps, namely:

1 Analysis of evaluation results – supplier ratings are analysed and recommendations for improvements are made.

Figure 6.5 Supplier evaluation – identify areas of improvement



2 Definition of the material group/supplier strategy market, demand, supplier information and future development is defined for each supplier.
3 Developments of improvement actions – detailed steps for overcoming deficits in performance are defined.
4 Communication and implementation – the supplier receives the evaluation results and if necessary, improvement actions are implemented.
5 Action controlling – all improvement actions are entered into a centralised database. Progress is followed and regular reports are sent to management.

6.7 The termination of relationships

No relationship can or should be expected to last forever as organisations operate in a dynamic environment. The ending of a relationship does not necessarily mean failure and there may be positive as well as negative outcomes for one or both of the parties involved.

6.7.1 Reasons for termination

Mitchell[20] describes how it is possible to detect that a relationship is changing:

> A primary tip-off that the nature of the relationship is changing can be seen in requests that are made by you or by the supplier. Are multiple requests necessary before action is taken? Are requests necessary for items or service that used to be offered without asking? Perhaps the request is granted, but the requester feels like he or she is cashing in on his or her last favour with each request. . . When you start to work out issues and compromises and you get the impression that your partner is nickel and dimeing you all the way you know that your alliance is coming to an end.

Mitchell also points out that, although partnering principles and objectives can be well outlined at an organisational level, success is often dependent on individuals:

> All individuals for both organisations must be committed and resistance can begin on either side of the fence. If the problems have roots in the purchasing and supply organisation, at least the purchasing supply manager will be able to take an active part in determining the cause and correcting it . . . If the problem seems to stem from the supplier organisation, the outcome is a bit more unpredictable.

In practice, most partnership break-ups derive from:

- inadequate understanding of what 'partnership' means
- rapidly changing circumstances that cause one or both parties to revise their priorities and concentrate on achieving their own organisational objectives at the expense of the partnership.

Such circumstances, as identified by Southey[21] in the UK and Campbell and Pollard[22] in the USA, include:

- *changes in business direction(s)* – an existing partnership may no longer have value if either the procurement or supplier organisation has shifted its strategic direction
- *product obsolescence* – the product or service provided by the supplier is becoming obsolete without any replacement options

- *the supplier is unable to meet service levels* – certain objectives basic to the partnership can no longer be met
- *short-term attitude* – either partner may consider that the long-term benefits of the partnership have not been realised sufficiently quickly or have been insufficient to warrant a continued commitment to a particular supplier/purchaser
- *economic factors* – a supplier has become 'at risk' financially, with the danger of potential liquidation
- *external economics* – a recession may force suppliers to cut back on product development, training and other resources, such as product engineers, and, consequently, they will be unable to meet the 'continuous improvement' objectives of the partnership
- *mergers and acquisitions* – such ventures can create new business models for either the purchaser or supplier
- *corporate divestiture* – may create a situation where, because parts of the business have been sold, the organisation can no longer provide a product or service
- *instability and inconsistency* – acquisitions or disposals of companies or rapid changes in key personnel or organisational philosophy often adversely affect years of previous relationship building based on trust and stability.

In the last analysis, however, successful partnerships can only be built if trust and cooperation exist between purchaser and supplier.

6.7.2 The process of termination

It is a truism that good contract management is not reactive but aims to anticipate and respond to future contingencies. Every well-written contract should anticipate the possibility of terminating the relationship.

Some writers, however, criticise the inadequacies of legal contracts for governing partnerships, especially in the face of uncertainty and dependence. Sitkin and Roth,[23] for example, describe legalistic remedies as weak, impersonal substitutes for trust. Contractual provisions may also lack flexibility, which might enable terminations to be made more amicably and easily than following the 'letter of the law'. Ouchi,[24] however, points out that formal control mechanisms are more effective in obtaining compliance with specifiable objectives than in obtaining commitment to a general value orientation.

Timing, relationship aspects, legal considerations and succession issues are important aspects of termination.

6.7.3 Timing

Mitchell[25] states that, whenever possible, the timing of the termination should be synchronised with the expiration of the agreement currently in force. Giving too much advance warning to a supplier can lead to deterioration in service. Conversely, termination may not come as a surprise to a supplier that has received regular negative feedback on performance. Decisions may also have to be made on whether the termination should be immediate or gradual. Such decisions may be governed by terms and conditions relating to termination in the current agreement.

6.7.4 Relationship aspects

Terminations may be amicable or hostile. Campbell and Pollard[26] refer to the three Ps that can aid in minimising possible hostility encountered in the termination process:

- positive attitude
- pleasant tone
- professional treatment

A positive attitude recognises that both organisations will survive apart and that recriminations will help neither. Further, both organisations may need each other in the future. A pleasant tone can be more effective than harsh words. Professional justification for the termination is essential. Termination is not a personal issue. The procurement executive's job is to obtain the best possible value in order that his or her organisation can remain ahead of the competition.

6.7.5 Legal considerations

Among such factors are:

- *the financial consequences of terminating the contract* – in some cases, it may be possible to negotiate a settlement, in others the contract will be specific regarding payments to be made in the event of fault or non-fault termination.
- *confidentiality agreements* – where such agreements are part of the contract terms, they must be honoured for the prescribed time.
- *intellectual property issues* – drawings, designs prepared during the contract term, computer software and so on.
- *capital property issues* – especially in relation to materials or capital equipment located at the supplier's site.
- *security issues* – it is necessary to change passwords or security codes shared with the other party to the agreement.
- *obtaining clear signed records of any settlement*
- *employee rights* – if they were transferred under the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) (TUPE) Regulations.

6.7.6 Succession issues

Before deciding to terminate, it will be necessary to ensure that steps have been taken to ensure a continuity of supplies. This will entail:

- discussion with internal customers regarding groups, systems and projects that will be affected by the change of supplier
- reflecting on the lessons learned from the terminated relationship
- conducting market analysis to determine other supplier options
- preparing specifications (possibly revised)
- selection of a new supplier – an important factor will be the potential supplier's reputation for trustworthiness
- negotiation of a relationship agreement.

Finally, as Campbell and Pollard[27] observe:

> As a result of thinking through the options and creating a professional plan for separation, supply managers can disprove the old maxim that 'marriages are made in heaven, but the divorce is the very devil'.

6.8 Relationship breakdown on an IT project

Relationship behaviour is sometimes exposed when a project goes wrong. These projects provide excellent studies for students and practitioners of procurement. The Queensland Health Payroll System project[28] is an example. Extracts from the Report are shown below and give a flavour of the issues. The Report is compelling reading.

The Honourable Richard Chesterman 40 RFD QC was appointed to make full and careful enquiry 'in an open and independent manner, into the implementation of the Queensland Health payroll system with respect to …..' The scope of the enquiry included:

a. the adequacy and integrity of the procurement, contract management, project management, governance and implementation process, and

c. the contractual arrangements between the State of Queensland and IBM Australia Ltd and why and to what extent the contract price for the Queensland Health payroll system increased over time.

Some of the salient points in the Report (the references are those in the Report) are:

2.12 IBM was the successful tenderer and on 5 December 2007 it and the State of Queensland executed a contract for the provision of shared services to nominated departments.

2.13 By October 2008 IBM had not achieved any of the contracted performance criteria; but it had been paid about $32M of the contract price of $98M; and it forecast that to complete what it had contracted to undertake would cost the State of Queensland $181M.

2.15 The replacement of the QH payroll system must take a place in the front rank of failures in public administration in this country. It may be the worst.

3.11 …many witnesses claimed to have no memory of important events which they observed or in which they took part. Many answers were evasive and some were dishonest… Even more remarkable was the fact that some witnesses involved in the delivery of the payroll system proclaimed it a success.

6.8.1 Procurement issues on an IT project

1.1 IBM complained that the three stages of the procurement process . . . were a 'working assumption . . . adapted, uncritically . . ., and wrongly'. IBM contends that the procurement process only commenced on 16 August 2007 . . . The events preceding 16 August 2007 were described as 'informal', 'casual', and 'loose'.

1.2 The reason for the submission is readily apparent. The Inquiry uncovered several instances of serious misconduct by IBM's employees during the RFP…

2.9 … The Inquiry into the tender process did reveal serious deficiencies in it and serious dereliction of duty by those charged with the responsibility of spending the State's money effectively.

2.24 … Mr. Uhlmann advised that the current rate of expenditure by CorpTech on the program was $15,400 per person per month and that there were at the time 481 persons involved in the project. Mr. Uhlmann thought that if the program ran over time by

12 months the extra cost would be $90M and if it ran over time by 18 months the additional cost would be $135M.

4.9 … More curious is the fact that there does not appear to have been any serious analysis of what was the best available 'vendor engagement and solution model'. The only model considered in the RFP was the Prime Contractor one.

4.11 There is evidence of haste and a lack of premeditation in the change to the new model… In a well ordered process the State's legal right to appoint a Prime Contractor would have been ascertained before it called for tenders for such a contract.

4.12 The RFP took the form on the one brief email from Mr. Burns to the vendors dated 25 July 2007.

4.15 Logica submitted a detailed response although only for the Finance requirements of the SS Initiative. Its estimates cost range for the work it undertook to perform was between $84.7M and $116.8M. IBM's response was briefer. It estimated its cost of providing the whole of the work required to deliver the Initiative at between $155M and £190M. SAP also responded but did not give a fixed price. It proposed a variety of pricing models for different components of the work. Its overall, indicative, estimate of cost was between $93M and $123M. Accenture, which put in a detailed response, gave an estimate price for the whole of the SS Initiative of $176M.

4.28 Mr. Atzeni, through these interactions with Mr. Cameron, offered considerable assistance in IBM growing its role in the SS Initiative. On at least one occasion, he gave Mr. Cameron information confidential to government. Mr. Cameron said that all of the documents provided by Mr. Atzeni were freely available to any person working on the whole-of-government program and were not required to be treated as confidential. If that were so one wonders why Mr. Cameron asked for them, or why Mr. Atzeni bothered to send them. Mr. Atzeni met with IBM staff very shortly after the RFP was issued to give it information relevant to its bid without which IBM would have been at a disadvantage.

4.33 Mr. Burns' discussions and meetings with IBM representatives in contemplation of the RFP tender process were inappropriate. Best practice in procurement requires that all competitors receive the same information. That approach aids transparency as well as promoting effective competition. Effective competition in turn ensures the best chance of obtaining value for money.

5.61 Mr. Lewis, who led the Governance Panel, was an even more unsatisfactory witness. He, too, denied any recollection of the 'rescoring' meeting, though he accepted that his Panel scores changed to prefer IBM. He was evasive with respect to the simplest proposition, such as whether his Panel even read the ITO responses prior to scoring them. He had no explanation for the increase in IBM's score. When confronted with the fact that his Panel had actually decreased Accenture's score, he was equally bereft of explanation. Mr. Lewis, I regret to find, was not candid about his Panel's rescoring and the reasons for it.

5.62 It is, I think, the fact that the pressure Mr. Burns put on the Panel leaders, though effective, was improper and affected the integrity of the procurement process. It is for that reason that Mr. Hood and Mr. Lewis were evasive. They are, I conclude, deeply embarrassed that they permitted themselves to be manipulated and to acquiesce in the distortion of the procurement. The embarrassment is no doubt increased by the magnitude of the subsequent failure of the project for which they recommended IBM.

5.123 (inserted comment) – The clearest point to emerge from this aspect of the evidence is that there were serious shortcomings in the State's scrutiny and assessment of price during its evaluation of the ITO responses.

6.8.2 Contract and Project Management issues on an IT project

1.8 The story of the Project's conception through to its implementation is one of bad decisions: a failure of State employees in particular properly and diligently to discharge their responsibilities; IBM as a commercially motivated vendor doing little to rectify or make up for the State's shortcomings; the State lacking in discipline in expending very large amounts of taxpayers' funds; and, in general, an almost total reluctance by both parties to face what had become obvious at a relatively early stage of the Project, that the system which the State had commissioned and which IBM was to deliver would be seriously deficient and not operate as any payroll system ought, namely to pay staff on time and to do so accurately.

2.29 Within about six months from its start, problems with the Project's scoping emerged. A dispute arose about how the system was to integrate with the existing (legacy) finance system within QH. IBM claimed it had been delayed in its work. The State decided that further workshops were needed (to be facilitated by IBM) to ascertain what ought to be done and paid IBM $1.88M as result of the delay which IBM claimed.

It is an extensive Report, probing many facets of relationships and IT project delivery, pricing, contract changes, User Acceptance Testing and other facets. It gives an insight into a project fraught with problems.

6.9 Further aspects of relationships

These include collaboration in innovation and design, the supply base, supplier appraisal, outsourcing, make-or-buy decisions, partnerships and supplier performance, and they are dealt with in appropriate sections elsewhere in this book.

Discussion questions

6.1 In what significant ways does a partnering relationship with a supplier differ from the adversarial relationship that sometimes prevails?

6.2 'The most successful relationships are those where customers and suppliers develop trust and an understanding of their requirements and interests, accompanied by a concern for both learning from and providing assistance to each other'.
(a) Define the words 'trust' and 'understanding'.
(b) Can there be trust without understanding?
(c) What are the characteristics of a 'learning organisation'?

6.3 What impact does assertive negotiation have on a long-term relationship?

6.4 To what extent do you consider 'adversarial leverage' to be still prevalent? Can you provide an example of adversarial leverage from your own experience?

6.5 What is the eight-stage framework set out in PAS 11000? How would you evaluate whether your own organisation is positioned to collaborate?

6.6 What detail can a supplier include in a tender document to persuade the buyer that future relationships will be positive?

6.7 In your opinion does competitive tendering help or hinder buyer–seller relationships? Why?

6.8 Is the 'traditional' type of contract suitable for a partnering relationship? What impact on relationships would the following have:
- **(a)** including 'damages' for non-performance in the contract?
- **(b)** including a clause for termination at the buyer's convenience?
- **(c)** including a clause requiring continuous improvement in manufacture/service delivery?

6.9 How would you 'sell' to senior management the concept of a single source of supply, for a long-term contract, for a strategically vital manufactured item to your company?

6.10 Do suppliers who own intellectual property rights tend to be more aggressive than suppliers who have no such rights?

6.11 Who should be accountable for supplier relationship management? Is it better handled by procurement or the department who are dependent on the supply of goods/services?

6.12 Giving due consideration to the Bayer model, how effective is your approach to supplier performance evaluation or 'vendor rating' as it is sometimes called?

References

[1] *The Concise Oxford Dictionary*, Oxford University Press

[2] Office of Government Commerce. Category Management Toolkit

[3] The authors gratefully acknowledges permission to quote from the CIPS booklet 'How to manage supplier relationships', written by Dr Kenneth Lysons

[4] BSI Group Headquarters, 389 Chiswick High Road, London W4 4AL

[5] BS 11000-1:2010, BSi, 2010, ISBN 978 0 580 69562 9

[6] Holmlund, M. and Strandvik, T., 'Perception configuration in business relationships', *Management Decision*, Vol. 37 (9), 1999, pp. 686–696

[7] As 6 above

[8] Jarvelin, A. M., 'Evaluation of relationship quality in business relationships', academic dissertation, University of Tampare, Finland, 2001, p. 38

[9] Cox, A., 'Regional competence and strategic procurement management', *European Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management*, Vol. 2, No. 1, 1996, pp. 57–70

[10] Coase, R. H., 'The nature of the firm', *Economica*, No. 4, 1937, pp. 386–405

[11] Williamson, O. E., 'Transaction cost economics: the governing of contractual relations', *Journal of Law and Economics*, Vol. 22, 1979, pp. 232–261

[12] Kay, J., *Foundations of Corporate Success: How Business Strategies Add Value*, Oxford University Press, 1995

[13] As 9 above, p. 64

[14] As 9 above, p. 63

[15] Porter, M., *Competitive Strategy*, Free Press, 1980, pp. 106–107

[16] Bensaou, M., 'Portfolio of buyer–supplier relationships', *Sloan Management Review*, Summer, 1999, pp. 35–44

[17] Day, A., 'A winning position: supplier relationship management is becoming a strategic battleground'. *CPO Agenda*,10 April 2007. Available from www.stateofflux.co.uk

[18] Birmingham, P. A., 'Supplier Relationship Management Maturity Model' – 93rd Annual International Supply Management Conference, May, 2008

[19] Bayer Group, Contact SUPREME office. BBS – Procurement and Logistics Global Community Support, e-mail: supreme@bayer-ag.de

[20] Mitchell, L. K., 'Breaking up is hard to do – how to end a supplier relationship', ISM resource article at: http://www.instituteforsupplymanagement.org

[21] Southey, P., 'Pitfalls to partnering in the UK', PSERG Second International Annual Conference 1993, in Burnett, K. (ed.) *Readings in Partnership Sourcing*, CIPS, 1995

[22] Campbell, P. and Pollard, W. M., 'Ending a supplier relationship', *Inside Supply Management*, September, 2002, pp. 33–38

[23] Sitkin, S. B. and Roth, N. L., 'Explaining the limited effectiveness of legalistic "remedies" for trust/distrust', *Organisation Science*, Vol. 4 (3), 1993, pp. 367–392

[24] Ouchi, W. G., 'A conceptual framework for the design of organisational control mechanisms', *Management Science*, Vol. 25 (9), 1979, pp. 833–848

[25] As 20 above

[26] As 22 above

[27] As 22 above

[28] Queensland Health Payroll System. Commission of Inquiry Report July 2013

Chapter 7

Legal and contractual management

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to stimulate the professional buyer, particularly those aspiring to senior positions in the procurement profession to understand:

- the importance of understanding the structure of contracts
- key 'Hot Topics' that continually present challenges to procurement specialists
- that the wording of contract clauses is significantly important
- how legal contracts are formed
- the range of Standard Forms of Contract that are available
- the key considerations regarding breach of contract
- the considerations for terminating contracts.

Key ideas

- Understanding contractual detail is necessary for procurement specialists.
- Accessing case law is informative and necessary to keep abreast of developments.
- Negotiating contractual detail is rewarding to the organisation.
- Badly worded contracts present unacceptable risks to the parties involved.
- The offer and acceptance actions must be understood and managed.
- Jurisdictional issues are relevant to risk management.
- Contract law is always evolving.

7.1 The procurement specialist and Contract Law

In the modern industrial world, the procurement specialist has a critical role in the formation and execution of contracts. Defining the contract detail, negotiating contracts, ensuring they are in place in a timely manner, and ensuring the supplier performs the contract in an acceptable manner, are very demanding tasks. Whilst it is relevant to obtain a theoretical knowledge of contract law when qualifying for the Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply, it is dangerous to believe that this will be enough. There is a constant flow of new legal principles and development through case law. The

problem is exacerbated when purchases are made offshore. This requires knowledge of jurisdiction issues.

The starting point for many buyers when forming contracts is their own Contract Terms and Conditions. Often these have been written in-house, by legal services. It is not uncommon for buyers not to have been briefed on either the detail of the Terms and Conditions or their legal implications. Some buyers acknowledge that the detail of contracts bores them and they lack the motivation to study law or to actively engage in its finer points. There are numerous risks when this attitude prevails. A key risk is a lack of professional credibility with the in-house legal services team and with suppliers who will rapidly identify those who are inept at negotiating contractual detail.

The majority of buyers want to engage in negotiations. This is admirable although contractual negotiations require high-level knowledge and skills. It is likely on high-risk purchases that the tender will include non-compliance statements on the buyers' proposed Contract Terms and Conditions. A resolution to these issues will require the involvement of legal specialists, on both sides, thereby creating complex relationship and communication considerations. The buyer should not be a passive participant in these negotiations.

The author has written this chapter with the aim of motivating readers to commit to acquiring appropriate knowledge and skills in the field of contract law. Ability in this field is an important differentiator between procurement specialists. It should be recognised that the content of the chapter is a 'taste' and that there are specialised books on all facets of contract law. These books range from introductory texts to highly specialised text books on a single facet of law; for example, intellectual property rights.

7.2 Offer and acceptance

It will be of constant concern to a buyer, whether a legally binding contract exists, particularly when there is an allegation of non-performance. An offer is a statement by one party (in this explanation, a supplier) of a willingness to enter into a contract on the terms that they have put forward. Legal textbooks, for understandable reasons, go into great detail about the complexity that surrounds an offer. Among the issues for a buyer are:

a) did the person/organisation making the offer have the legal capacity to do so?
b) are the terms of the offer quite clear? For example, are the terms and conditions of contract clearly set-out and communicated?

Contracts can be entered into in a variety of ways, in writing or orally; by letter, fax or e-mail; in writing resulting from simple or complex negotiations; by conduct of the parties; by an exchange of promises. A typical procurement procedure will require the buyer to issue a Purchase Order or to draw up a detailed contract and accompanying schedules to the contract. Lying within this requirement is a host of potential difficulties.

The Purchase Order and its detail must be robust. It must set out the Terms and Conditions of the deal, often printed on the reverse of the Purchase Order. If not, the supplier's attention should point out that the Terms and Conditions are available upon request. A difficulty with 'standard' Terms and Conditions is that they may fail to deal with all the specifics of the purchase. Some buying organisations attempt to deal with all types of purchases, with only one set of Terms and Conditions. In the opinion of

the author, this is a seriously flawed approach. The fact that a Purchase Order was sent to the supplier does not mean there is now a legally binding contract in existence. This will be explained later, in 'Acceptance'.

Lord Wilberforce[1] said, 'It is only the precise analysis of this complex of relations into the classical offer and acceptance, with identifiable consideration, that seems to present difficulty, but this same difficulty exists in many situations of daily life, e.g. sales at auction … manufacturer's guarantees …'

Invitations to Tender are a common practice in the public and private sector. The invitation to tender is used in many public sector procurement situations for a range of procurement categories, including construction, IT systems, services, consultancy, outsourcing and security. Whether the invitation to tender is an offer to purchase or an invitation to negotiate will depend on the facts and circumstances of the individual case.

The Blackpool and Fylde Aero Club Ltd[2] case provides an insight into legal issues associated with invitations to tender. The Council invited tenders, stating, 'The Council do not bind themselves to accept all or any part of any tender. No tender which is received after the last date and time specified shall be admitted for consideration'. The complexity of the case began when the Council refused to consider the tender from the Aero Club on the basis it had been received late. In fact it had not. The Aero Club brought an action for damages against the Council and it was held by the trial judge and by the Court of Appeal that the Council were contractually obliged to consider the Aero Club's tender. Counsel for the Aero Club submitted that an invitation to tender was no more than a proclamation of willingness to receive offers. The invitation to tender in its specific form was an invitation to treat, and no contract of any kind would come into existence unless or until, if ever, the Council chose to accept any tender or other offer.

There are many academic and informed commentaries on offer and acceptance including the Scottish Law Commission.[3] In 2009 a Draft Common Frame of Reference (DCFR) was published, offering positive thoughts in regard to the law reform process. The DCFR purports to be a modern or contemporary statement of the best rules of contract law for use in the European Union, and is based upon extensive comparative research and intensive collaboration by an international team of contract law experts. There was then a Report on Formation of Contract (RFC), which proposed two specific areas for reform: the 'postal acceptance rule' and the 'battle of the forms'.

The buyer must be clear whether an offer remains open to acceptance. In general, an offer can be withdrawn by the offeror at any time prior to acceptance. The offer can also lapse after a 'reasonable time' has passed, noting that the time will depend on the nature of the transaction or commodity. The offer can, of course, be rejected by the buyer.

There are some procurement scenarios in which the buyer does not want the offeror to withdraw their offer. This is the case in some public tender situations where there may only be a few bidders and the withdrawal of an offer may jeopardise the procurement by removing important competitive forces. The UK Department of Transport in an Invitation to Tender for the Thames Link, Southern and Great Northern Franchise, included at 4.6 'validity of Bids' the following statement,

> All bids including the terms, Bid price, and any subsequent changes agreed shall be held valid for a period of 275 calendar days from the date of Bid submission. Bidders are required to confirm this in their Form of Tender.

The effect of this is that the offer will lapse at midnight of the 275th calendar day, unless previously accepted. The period of 275 calendar days is a long period justified by the

complexity of the procurement and the decision-making process. It is more usual for a period of 60–120 calendar days to be used in invitation to tender documents.

A requirement for bid (or tender) bonds is issued by the buyer to provide an incentive for the bidder not to withdraw their tender prior to completion of the procurement exercise. Danske Bank explain,

> A bid bond (also called a tender bond) is issued to ensure that the exporter submits realistic bids under the tender process and to protect the reporter for any less that might occur if the exporter fails to sign the contract. A bid bond also assures the importer that the exporter will comply with the terms of the contract in the event that the tender is accepted. Bid bonds are usually issued for 2% to 5% of the tender amount.

The word exporter could read 'bidder' and importer could read 'buyer'
An on demand Bid Bond issued by Danske Bank reads:

Bid bond – on demand

Name and address of beneficiary
Guarantee no.
Amount
Date of Expiry

At the request of (name and address of applicant), we hereby guarantee you irrevocably for the above maximum amount to secure that they fulfil their obligations as tenderer in accordance with their bid covering (description of goods/project).

Your claim(s), if any, duly made and presented to us under the guarantee, will be honoured on your first demand also stating that (name of applicant) have not fulfilled their above tender obligations towards you.

Any demand for payment or request for extension under this guarantee must be made via authenticated SWIFT message through your bank confirming that the signatures on your signed written demand are legally binding upon your company.

Where we have received no such claim by (expiry date) at the latest, we stand released from our liability under this guarantee.

We will reduce the guarantee maximum by any such amount, as we have had to pay in order to meet your claim(s) duly made and presented under the guarantee.

When the guarantee expires, please return this document to us.

7.3 Acceptance

An acceptance is an unqualified expression of assent to the terms proposed by the offeror. There is no rule that acceptance must be made by words. It can be by conduct, noting that buyer's training will include indoctrination of the Carlill[4] case.

Procurement professionals should be on the alert to ensure that acceptance is on the terms stipulated in the Purchase Order. A purported acceptance that does not accept all

the terms and conditions proposed by the offeror (buyer) but which in fact introduces new terms is not an acceptance but a counter-offer. This is then treated as a new offer, which is capable of acceptance, rejection or potential further change.

The 'Battle of the Forms' remains a thorn in the side of those dealing with offer and acceptance. The Butler Machine Tool[5] case is often a starting point for consideration of the implications. The then Master of the Rolls, Lord Denning explained that Butler quoted a price for a machine tool of £75,535. On the back of the quotation there were terms and conditions, one of which was a price variation clause. When the machine tool was delivered Butlers claimed an additional sum of £2,892 due under the price variation clause. The buyer's (Ex-Cell-O) rejected the excess charge, relying on their own terms and conditions. Butler's quotation included a general condition: 'All orders are accepted only upon and subject to the terms set out in our quotation and the following conditions. These terms and conditions shall prevail over any terms and conditions in the Buyer's order'. That, however, was not the end of the matter. The buyers replied, placing a purchase order in these words: 'Please supply on terms and conditions as below and overleaf'. On the foot of the buyer's order there was a tear-off slip headed 'acknowledgement worded: Please sign and return to Ex-Cell-O. We accept your order on the terms and conditions stated thereon – and undertake to deliver by – Date – signed'. Butler replied including these words: 'We return herewith duly completed your acknowledgement of order form'. They enclosed the acknowledgement form duly filled in with the delivery date March/April 1970 and signed by the Butler Machine Tool Co.

Lord Denning stated:

> In many of these cases our traditional analysis of offer, counter-offer, rejection, acceptance and so forth is out of date. The better way is to look at all the documents passing between the parties – and glean from them – or from the conduct of the parties – whether they have reached agreement on all material points – even though there may be differences between the terms and conditions printed on the back of them.

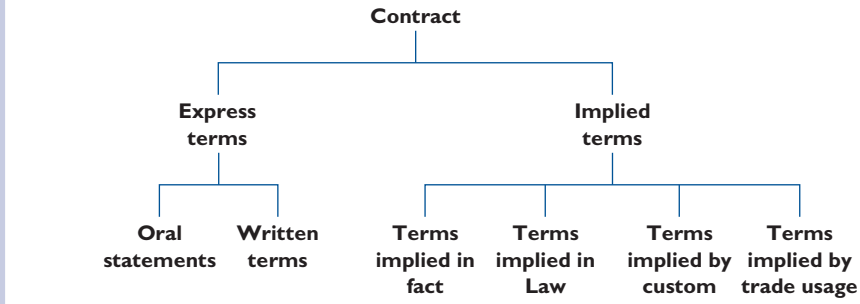
The Transformers & Rectifiers Ltd[6] case sheds further light on the courts' positioning on the battle of the forms. In this case Mr Justice Edwards-Stuart found that neither party's terms and conditions were incorporated into the two relevant purchase orders. The issue centred on two contracts for the purchase of nitrile gaskets. It was alleged that the gaskets supplied by Needs Ltd were unsuitable for their purpose and not in accordance with the contract. The judge analysed the course of dealing between the parties. There are lessons here for procurement specialists. The parties had stated over an extended period and orders were placed on almost a weekly basis. It was found that the buyer's method of placing orders did not always follow exactly the same pattern: sometimes orders were placed by fax, sometimes as a pdf attachment to an e-mail and, occasionally, by post. At paragraph seven of the judgement a basic issue is highlighted:

> The top copy of the claimant's purchase orders was printed on white paper. On the reverse, printed in small type and high coloured lettering, were the claimant's terms and conditions. I was shown an example of the top copy of a blank purchase order and it was not obvious on reading it that there was any printing on the reverse. Accordingly a person receiving the document would probably not know that there was any writing on its back unless he or she happened to turn it over or had been specifically referred to its existence.

At paragraph nine of the judgement it stated,

> However, when the claimant placed an order by either fax or e-mail it did not transmit a copy of the conditions on the reverse of the purchase order. All that was sent was the front page of

Figure 7.1 Illustration of contract terms



the purchase order so that the Defendant did not receive a copy of the terms and conditions on the back.

7.3.1 Terms of the Contract

Elliott and Quinn[7] illustrate contractual terms as shown in Figure 7.1:

The procurement specialist should always bear in mind:

- how statements made in negotiation become part of the contract
- statements may be held to be a representation that encouraged one party to make a contract but do not become part of a contract
- the more emphatically a statement is made, the more likely the courts will be to regard it as a term
- written terms can be incorporated into a contract in three ways: by signature, by reasonable notice and by a previous course of dealing
- terms implied in fact are terms not laid down in the contract, but which it is assumed both parties would have intended to include if they had thought about it
- terms implied in law are those that the law dictates must be present in certain types of contract – see Smith v Wilson (1832) where under local custom 1000 rabbits meant 1200 rabbits
- terms implied by trade usage can be seen by British Crane Hire Corp Ltd v Ipswich Plant Hire Ltd (1975).

7.4 Contracts for the Sale of Goods

The procurement professional should be aware of the Acts that may impinge on his or her duties. These are the Trade Descriptions Act 1968, the Unfair Contract Terms Act 1977, the Sale of Goods Act 1979, the Supply of Goods and Services Act 1982 and the Sale and Supply of Goods Act 1994. This section of the chapter is not intended to put any focus on consumer law.

Section 2(1) of the Sale of Goods Act 1979 defines a sale of goods contract as one 'by which the seller transfers or agrees to transfer the property in goods to the buyer

for a money consideration, called the price'. The 1979 Act does not cover services. Goods have been held to include packaging surrounding goods.

There is a set of implied terms in all contracts covered by the 1979 Act. These are:

- *Title*. It is implied that the seller has a right to sell the goods and is also able to pass good title to the buyer – Section 12(1).
- *Sale by description*. The Act states that 'where there is a contract for the sale of goods by description, there is an implied condition that the goods will correspond with the description' – Section 13(1).
- *Satisfactory quality*. The Act states that goods are of a satisfactory quality if they meet the standard that a reasonable person would regard as satisfactory, taking into account any description of the goods, the price (if relevant) and all other relevant circumstances – Section 14(2). Professional buyers should note that the term 'merchantable quality' was succeeded because it was considered too imprecise.
- *Fitness for purpose*. This is an important provision providing, in summary, that if a buyer tells the seller the goods are required for a particular purpose, and the seller sells them, the goods must be fit for that purpose 'whether or not that is a purpose for which such goods are commonly supplied' – Section 14(3).
- *Correspondence with sample*. There is an implied condition that the bulk of the goods will correspond with the sample, that the buyer will have a reasonable opportunity of comparing the bulk with the sample, and that the goods will be free from any defect, rendering them unsatisfactory, which would not be apparent on reasonable examination of the sample – Section 15.

7.5 Contract for the Supply of Services

There are implied terms under the Supply of Goods and Services Act 1982. These are:

- *Care and skill*. The position is 'that the supplier will carry out the service with reasonable care and skill' – Section 13.
- *Time*. The provision is that 'where the parties do not specify a time by which the job should be finished that the supplier will carry out the service within a reasonable time' – Section 14(1).
- *Price*. Where the parties have not fixed a price there is an implied term 'that the party contracting with the supplier will pay a reasonable price' – Section 15(1).
- *Property*. Where a service contract involves the transfer of property to the customer Sections 2–5 of the 1982 Act imply terms as to title, description, satisfactory quality, fitness for purpose and sample, essentially the same as Section 12–15 of the Sale of Goods Act 1979.

7.5.1 The Unfair Contract Terms Act 1977 (UCTA)

The UCTA is only concerned with exclusion clauses. An 'exclusion clause' is not defined in the Act, but Section 13 indicates that it can include any clause attempting to:

- restrict or exclude a liability
- make a liability, or the enforcement of a liability, subject to restrictive or onerous conditions

- restrict the rights and remedies of an aggrieved party
- restrict rules of evidence or procedure.

There are exceptions where the UCTA is not applicable, including employment contracts, contracts relating to interests in land, or contracts regarding intellectual property rights.

The UCTA is very relevant to the professional buyer's role. In the Lloyds Bank case[8] Lord Denning said,

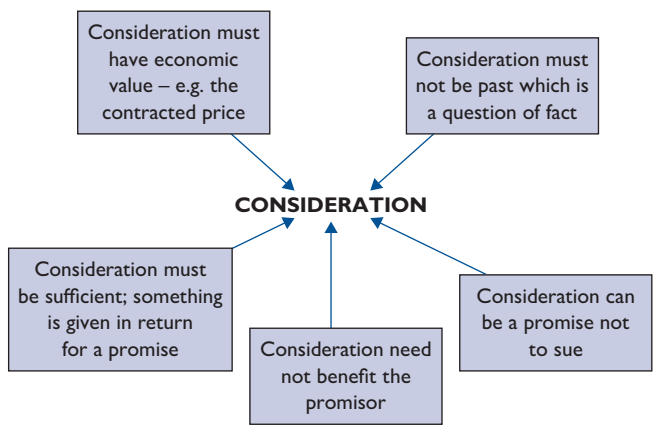
> English law gives relief to one who, without independent advice, enters into a contract upon terms which are very unfair or transfers property for a consideration which is grossly inadequate, when his bargaining power is grievously impaired by reason of his own needs or desires, or by his own ignorance or infirmity, coupled with undue influences or pressures brought to bear on him or for the benefit of the other.

The FG Wilson case[9] contains a salutary lesson for professional buyers. The issue was whether a clause contained in FG Wilson's standard terms and conditions satisfied the test of reasonableness under the UCTA. The relevant clause provided: 'Buyer shall not apply any set-off to the price of seller's products without prior written agreement by the Seller'. ('The no set-off clause'.) The judge held that the 'no set-off' clause was not particularly unusual or onerous. He also said that the relative size in corporate terms of FG Wilson and Holt was not a significant factor. He went on to say that Holt had been able by a process of commercial negotiation to secure price discounts and extended credit terms and successfully negotiated a resumption of supply on credit notwithstanding a significant overdue debt measured in millions of pounds. No attempt was made to negotiate or object to the no set-off clause.

7.6 Consideration

It is important that the procurement community understand that in English Law, an agreement is not usually binding unless it is supported by consideration (see Figure 7.2).

Figure 7.2 Consideration elements



The classic definition of consideration by Lush J[10] was: 'A valuable consideration, in the sense of the law, may consist either in some right, interest, profit, or benefit accruing to the one party, or some forbearance, detriment, loss, or responsibility, given, suffered, or undertaken by the other'.

In respect of buying of goods or services consideration is often expressed as the promise to pay when the goods or services have been satisfactorily provided. Treitel[11] expresses it as follows,

> In English law, a promise is not, as a general rule, binding as a contract unless it is either made in a deed or supported by some 'consideration'. The purpose of the requirement of consideration is to put some legal limits on the enforceability of agreements even where they are intended to be legally binding and are not vitiated by some factor such as mistake, misrepresentation, duress or illegality… the present position therefore is that English law limits the enforceability of agreements (not in deeds) by reference to a complex and multifarious body of rules known as 'the doctrine of consideration'.

7.6.1 Adequacy of consideration

This is of interest to a buyer because a promise has no contractual force unless 'some' value has been given for it. The courts do not ask if adequate value has been given or whether the agreement is harsh or in favour of only one of the parties. Treitel[12] observes that:

> This state of the law sometimes causes dissatisfaction, e.g. when it is alleged that 'excessive' profits have been made out of a government contract or that 'irrationally generous' payments have been made out of public funds or when, in times of scarcity, it is said that 'excessive' prices are charged for goods or services or accommodation.

Expressed in a different way, it can be said there is a commercial onus on the procurement profession to negotiate and agree appropriate prices.

7.7 Capacity to Contract

Minors, the mentally incapacitated and companies have limited contractual capacity. It is the latter upon which buyers need to focus. A company is a legal person who is separate and distinct from its shareholders. If a company acts beyond its objects in its memorandum of association it acts ultra vires, in other words it has acted beyond its capacity. The courts have offered some protection for innocent third parties, significantly through Section 39(1) of the Companies Act 2006. This states: 'The validity of an act done by a company shall not be called into question on the grounds of lack of capacity by reason of anything in the company's constitution'.

There are potential complexities within an organisation as to who is authorised to contract on behalf of the organisation, public or private. Safeguards are often attempted to be put in place, such as forbidding a buyer to place a contract with a value in excess of £x, unless it is authorised by a designated senior person. The difficulty with this approach is that suppliers are probably unaware of this administrative control. The courts will most certainly examine the history of procurement practices within the organisation and will take custom and practice into consideration. In the CRJ Services Ltd[13] case the two businesses had been doing business for a number of years. Lanstar carried on business of environmental waste management and recycling. The case

focused on contracts signed by Mr Vaughan who was not an employee of Lanstar and had described himself as a consultant and later as a manager. Mr Vaughan's engagement with Lanstar was terminated. Business events resulted in Lanstar terminating the hire of plant arranged by Mr Vaughan. Lanstar held that Mr Vaughan was 'at no material time given express authority to sign any long-term hire agreements on behalf of CSG, as the only individuals who have such authority were the Finance Director and the Managing Director'. The matter had been subjected to adjudication and the adjudicator found that CRJ Services Ltd were entitled to payment for off-hire fee, interest and late payment compensation totalling £165,505.52 together with the adjudicator's fees totalling £8,520 inclusive of VAT. This decision was upheld by Mr Justice Akenhead.

The judgement included: 'There is no evidence that generally or specifically Lanstar told, or made it clear to CRJ that Mr Vaughan's authority was limited to contracts for short hire periods of a few days, a week or a month'.

> On the evidence put before this Court, I do not consider, for the reasons given above, that there is any reasonable prospect of it being established that Mr Vaughan did not have appropriate authority to enter into the Hire Contract in question.

Within the judgement there is the inclusion of 'agency' because Mr Vaughan was acting as an agent of Lanstar. It was stated that so far as what was material to the case was three types of agency, namely express, implied or ostensible. Lanstar had paid all invoices raised by CRJ Services, hence it pointed strongly to Mr Vaughan having been given implied authority so far as the outside world was concerned or ostensible or apparent authority from the job and job description to which he was appointed.

Heald Solicitors[14] succinctly comment on the 'Battle of the Forms' by saying,

> Such disputes typically arise from the negotiation of the sale or supply of goods or services. The supplier insists that the contract should be on its standard terms. The purchaser is equally adamant that its standard terms should apply. In the end, the parties succumb to commercial pressures and the goods or services are supplied without the issue being resolved. The parties then fall out. The court has to decide whether there is a contract at all and, if there is, the terms on which the parties contracted.

Such a situation was the GHSP Inc. dispute.[15]

GHSP Inc. is a Michigan company and a designer and manufacturer of electromechanical controls systems for motor vehicles. AB Electronic Ltd is an English company manufacturing automotive and industrial position sensors. Mr Justice Burton said the issues in the case were:

> Did the parties conclude a contract in relation to the supply by the Defendant of Item No 7774106 B (the three track sensors) incorporating as terms either 1.1 the terms of the Claimant's Purchase Order (including the terms included in the Claimant's Supplier's Manual); or 1.2 the Defendant's Terms and Conditions of Sales; or 1.3 some other terms and if so which.

The judgement at paragraphs 10-13 set out the Law. It is an excellent summary for procurement specialists. In the case of RTS Flexible Systems Ltd[16] Lord Denning MR said,

> … in most cases when there is a 'battle of the forms', there is a contract as soon as the last of the forms is sent and received without objection being taken to it…. The difficulty is to decide which forms, or which part of which form is a term or condition of the contract. In some cases, the battle is won by the man who fires the last shot . . . There are yet other cases where the battle depends on the shots fired on both sides. There is a concluded contract but the forms vary. If … they are mutually contradictory . . . then the conflicting terms may have to be scrapped and replaced by a reasonable implication.

In the event, the Judge concluded that a contract had been made on the terms implied by the Sale of Goods Act 1979. The essence of the dispute was each party's position on liabilities. Unsurprisingly, the Defendant wanted a cap on liability, whereas the Claimant wanted unlimited liability. The Judge at paragraph 37 of the judgement put the matter into a practical reality:

> The reality seems to me clear. As must be the case very regularly in commercial discussions, both sides buttoned their lips, or fastened their seatbelts, and hoped that there would never be a problem, or that, if a problem arose, it would be a small enough one that, with goodwill, it could be settled 'on a case by case basis'.

7.8 Drafting the detail of contract clauses

There is no avoiding the issue that procurement specialists should have a significant role in drafting, negotiating and finalising the detail of contract clauses. It will, usually, require an active interface with in-house legal services. In the examples that follow, the intention of the author is to stimulate an interest in detail and to promote the idea that attention to contractual detail will have positive results for the buying organisation.

7.8.1 Situation 1

This relates to a contract at Fiddlers Ferry Power Station near Warrington.[17] Clause 9 of the contract provided that:

> The parties agree that liquidated or unliquidated damages shall not be applicable to the contract in the event of delays to completion of the works, irrespective of the causes of such delays, and accordingly the purchaser shall not hold the contractor liable for late completion and/or consequential costs arising therefrom.

What do you think this means? Dwell on the actual words for a few minutes. At first sight, you may be convinced that if the contractor is late with delivery, no damages can be claimed by the purchaser. The contract delivery was late and £3.75 million was owed in damages by the purchaser to their customer. It was found that in regard to the contractor, whilst the provision might apply to a claim based on a delay in overall completion, it did not apply to a claim based on a delay in achieving the individual tie-in (milestone) dates.

Adjudication took place and the Adjudicator's decision was that the contractor, Thermal Energy Construction Ltd, should be paid £904,567.60 plus VAT. The purchaser sought to overturn the Adjudicator's decision. His Honour Judge Stephen Davies found that the Adjudicator's decision could not be enforced. This decision left the matter to be resolved, either by mutual agreement or by a trial.

7.8.2 Situation 2

This situation relates to the proper construction of a contract for the design of the process engineering elements of a waste energy plant by Haase Environmental Consulting GmbH.[18] The judgement included a number of contract clauses from which this author is being selective for the purpose of illustrating how contract clauses interlock and why the wording is crucially important.

Clause 5.9.1 said:

> The Consultant accepts full responsibility for designing the Process Technology (including the selection of components for incorporation in the Process Technology) and the Consultant warrants to the Contractor that there has been exercised and will be exercised in the design of the Process Technology all the reasonable skill, care and diligence to be expected of properly qualified and competent design professional experienced in the design of works similar in size, scope nature and complexity to the Process Technology.

Clause 11 of the Appointment was entitled 'Principal Obligations' and at Clause 11.3 required the consultant to design, commission and test the Process Technology: 11.3.1 in accordance with the EPC Output Specifications and Schedule 16 and 11.3.2 in accordance with the EPC Delivery Plan.

It was held that Clause 5.9.1 applied and that the obligation was an appropriate starting point for consideration of other factors. The requirements of Clause 11 (11.3) began with the words: 'Subject to the terms of this Appointment…' hence the clauses both applied.

7.9 Misrepresentation

Elliott and Quinn[19] explain that a misrepresentation is an untrue statement of fact by one party, which has induced the other to enter into the contract. A misrepresentation renders the contract voidable and it may also give a right to damages depending on the type of misrepresentation that has occurred. For a misrepresentation to be actionable, it has to fulfil three requirements: there must be an untrue statement; it must be a statement of fact, not mere opinion; and it must have induced the innocent party to enter the contract.

Section 2(1) of the Misrepresentation Act 1967 provides as follows:

> Where a person has entered into a contact after a misrepresentation has been made to him by another party thereto and as a result thereof he has suffered loss, then, if the person, making the misrepresentation would be liable to damagers in respect thereof had the misrepresentation been made fraudulently, that person shall be so liable notwithstanding that the misrepresentation was not made fraudulently, unless he proves that he had reasonable grounds to believe and did believe up to the time the contract was made the facts represented were true.

Court judgements provide the procurement specialist with a wealth of informed comment, such as Kingspan Environmental & Ors v Borealis A/s & Anov.[20] Mr Justice Christopher Clarke commented:

> The effect of section 2(1) – see above – is to make a representor who cannot prove reasonable grounds for a false representation liable as if the statement had been fraudulent. In effect the Act imposes an absolute obligation not to state facts which are untrue and which the representor cannot prove he had reasonable grounds to believe. There is no need for the representee to establish that the representor acted negligently.
>
> A misrepresentation is a false statement of fact, as distinct from a statement of opinion – which is not to be regarded as a statement of fact merely because it turns out to be wrong. In certain circumstances a statement of opinion may be regarded as a statement of fact: chitty at 6-007.
>
> If a statement has more than one meaning, the question is whether or not it was understood by the representee in the meaning which the court ascribes to it – which is the meaning which

Table 7.1 Selected examples of the potential for misrepresentation by suppliers

Example	*Implications*
Specialist resources exist	If these resources do not exist the buyer must expect a delay arising from the suppliers' recruitment needs
Key personnel have appropriate academic qualifications	CVs have been falsified by claiming academic qualifications that were never awarded. One implication is that the individual neither has the knowledge or intellectual rigour of the specific subject matter
There is no conflict of interest	The legal profession endeavours to ensure they are not conflicted by acting for the two parties to a contract. There may not be the requisite rigour by other professions, such as management consultancy
The company has the relevant experience	Not uncommonly, at the PQQ phase, three references/examples are sought whereby the applicant demonstrates they have relevant experience. It is possible that false claims or exaggerations are made
The company can mobilise resources by a specified date	If mobilisation does not occur by a specified date, a project will suffer delay. On a construction project site facilities (including accommodation and IT), plant and equipment, storage facilities must be on time
The company has never had a contract terminated for non-performance	If they have had contracts terminated for non-performance and do not declare it there is a risk that they will not perform on their latest contract. The lack of this knowledge could persuade the buyer not to negotiate tougher remedies for non-performance.
The specification will outperform those of competitors	The suppliers' claims for their specification performance could damage the buying organisations' reputation by inadequate goods or services being supplied

would be attributed to it by a reasonable person in the position of the representee – and that having that understanding he relied on it.

We are, here, considering misrepresentation from the point of view of how a procurement specialist may encounter it at the Pre-Qualification and/or tender stages of a procurement (see Table 7.1 for selected examples). We should also recognise that misrepresentation may arise during negotiations. This reinforces the need for procurement to keep an immaculate audit trail of documentation and discussions.

7.10 The Right to terminate a contract

Treitel[21] explains as a matter of general law, the right to terminate for breach arises in three situations: renunciation (or repudiation), impossibility and substantial failure to perform. A party is guilty of renunciation where, by words or conduct, he evinces a 'clear' and 'absolute' refusal to perform. Impossibility refers to the 'situation' where one party has by his 'own act or default' disabled himself from performing. Both renunciation and impossibility may occur at or during the time

fixed for performance but, in such cases, the court will assess whether that which one party is refusing to do, or cannot now do, is sufficiently serious to justify termination, i.e. whether it amounts to a substantial failure to perform (or one of the exceptions thereto, e.g. breach of condition). In the case of termination for actual breach, the general requirement is that the party in default must have been guilty of a substantial failure to perform.

The action to terminate a contract should not be highly taken. There are lessons to be learnt in the Bluewater case.[22] The contractual provision for termination was contained in Clause 30 of the contract and provided as follows:

30.1 Bluewater shall have the right by giving notice to terminate all or any part of the WORK or the CONTRACT at such time or times as BLUEWATER may consider necessary for any or all of the following issues:

a) To suit the convenience of BLUEWATER

b) Subject only to clause 30.2 in the event of any default on the part of the CONTRACTOR; or

c) …

30.2 In the event of a default on the part of the CONTRACTOR and before the issue by BLUEWATER of an order of termination of all or any part of the WORK of the CONTRACT, BLUEWATER shall give notice of default to the CONTRACTOR giving the derails of such default. If the CONTRACTOR upon receipt of such notice does not immediately commence and thereafter continuously proceed with action satisfactory to BLUEWATER to remedy such default BLUEWATER may issue a notice of termination in accordance with the provisions of clause 30.1.

The Hon MR JUSTICE RAMSEY said that it can be seen that where Bluewater seeks to terminate all of the work of the Contract under Clause 30.1 (b) and 30.2 then there were a number of steps to be complied with:

1 Bluewater must give notice of default to Mercon giving 'details of such default' ('Notice of Default')

2 Upon receipt of the notice Mercon must 'immediately commence and thereafter continuously proceed with action … to remedy such default'

3 That action to remedy the default must be 'satisfactory to BLUEWATER'

4 If MERCON does not take such action, Bluewater 'may issue a notice of termination' under clause 30.1(b) for default on the part of Mercon ('Notice of Termination').

There was an issue between the parties as to the standard to be applied under clause 30.2 to determine whether or not action taken by Mercon is satisfactory. The phrase used is 'action satisfactory to BLUEWATER'. Bluewater submitted that this is a matter that depends on the subjective view taken by Bluewater as to whether that action is satisfactory and that there is no objective reasonableness that need be imported. It submits that it is not for the courts retrospectively to superimpose its own view on what Bluewater may or may not have found to its satisfaction. Mercon submitted that the action satisfactory to Bluewater had to be objectively reasonable so that it was not a question of the subjective satisfaction of Bluewater.

The judge found that Bluewater was entitled to and did terminate the Contract under Clause 30. The judgement is extensive including claims and counterclaims.

7.10.1 Contract termination for convenience

There is an increasing provision in some contracts for 'termination for convenience'. Basically, this means that the contractor has not done anything wrong and is therefore not in breach of contract. Nevertheless, the buying organisation finds it to its advantage to terminate the contract. The simplest set of circumstances is that another contractor offers a much better deal. In public sector procurement, Central Government may decide that the public sector will no longer provide a specific service, thereby leaving little option but to terminate the contract 'for convenience'.

There is no extensive case law on 'termination for convenience' although TSG Building Services PLC v South Anglia Housing Ltd [2013] EWHC 1151 (TCC) sheds an important light on the subject. TSG and South Anglia entered into a contract for the provision by TSG of a gas servicing and associated works programme relating to South Anglia's housing stock. At clause 13.1, it was agreed that the term of the contract was to be 'an initial period of four years extendable at the Client's sole option to a further period of one year'. At clause 13.3 it said:

> If stated in the Term Partnering Agreement that this clause 13.3 applies, the Client may terminate the appointment of all other Partnering Team members, and any other Partnering Team member stated in the Term Partnering Agreement may terminate its own appointment, if any time during the Term or as otherwise stated by the period(s) of notice to all other Partnering Team members stated in the Term Partnering Agreement.

In the case, Mr Justice Akenhead said that there was no real suggestion in the evidence that over the next 13 months TSG performed their work badly or incompetently. South Anglia terminated the contract and TSG claimed £900,682.94. They did so under four heads of claim; under recovery of overheads and profit, under recovery of contract set-up and termination costs.

Mr Justice Akenhead at para 51 of the judgement said,

> I do not consider that there was an implied term of good faith in the Contract. The parties had gone as far as they wanted in expressing terms in clause 1.1 about how they were to work together in a spirit of 'trust fairness and mutual cooperation' and to act reasonably … or restrict what the parties had expressly agreed in clause 13.3, which was in effect that either of them for no good or bad reason could terminate at any time before the term of four years was completed. That is the risk that each voluntarily undertook when it entered into the contract, even though, doubtless, initially each may have thought, hoped and assumed that the contract would run its full term.

It was found that TSG had no entitlement (whether as damages for breach of contract, or as a sum due under the contract) to receive monies and/or compensation in respect of overheads and profit that it would have recovered over the balance of the Term of the Contract following termination had the Contract not been terminated.

7.11 HOT TOPICS

7.11.1 HOT TOPIC – Breach of Contract

A definition of breach of contract is 'committed when a party without lawful excuse fails or refuses to perform what is due from him under the contract, or performs defectively or incapacitates himself from performing'. Breach of contract is of serious concern to the buyer who usually has no choice but to get involved in dealing with the consequences

of the breach. The actions may include consideration of rectification plans and actions, claiming damages, invoking 'step-in rights' or terminating the contract.

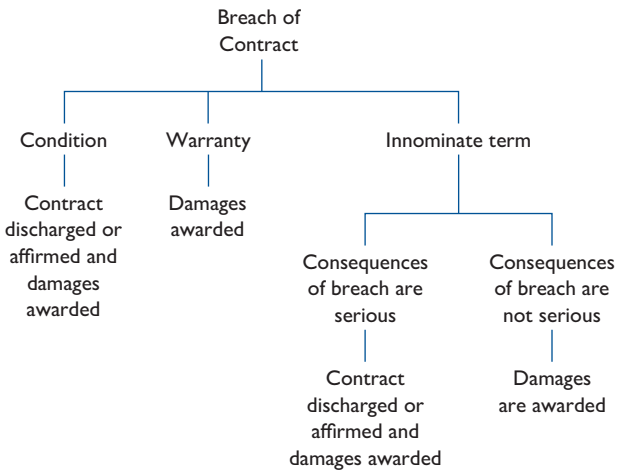
McKendrick[23] explains that in all cases the failure to provide the promised performance must be 'without lawful excuse'. Thus where the contract has been frustrated there is no liability for breach of contract because both parties have been provided with a 'lawful excuse' for their non-performance. Although the breach can take the form of words (such as an express refusal to perform the terms of the contract), it need not do so and can be evidenced by the conduct of one party in disabling himself from performing his obligations under the contract or by performing defectively.

MeKendrick[24] further explains that the question whether or not a particular contract has been breached depends upon the precise construction of the Terns of the Contract. It is for the party alleging the existence of the breach of contract to prove that a breach has occurred. A breach of contract does not automatically bring a contract to an end. Rather, a breach of contract gives various options to the party who is not in breach (the innocent party). Three principal consequences of a breach of contract can be identified. The first is that the innocent party is entitled to receive damages in respect of the loss that he has suffered as a result of the breach. The second is that the party in breach may be unable to sue to enforce the innocent party's obligations under the contract. The third consequence is that the breach may entitle the innocent party to terminate further performance of the contract.

Elliott and Quinn[25] say that 'a contract is said to be breached when one party performs defectively, differently from the agreement, or not at all (actual breach) or indicates in advance that they will not be performing as agreed (anticipatory breach)'. The terms of a contract can be divided into conditions, warranties and innominate terms. Breach of a condition allows the innocent party to terminate the contract; breaches of warranty do not justify termination, although they may give rise to an award of damages. Where the relevant term is classified by the courts as innominate, it will be one which can be breached in both serious and trivial ways, and whether the innocent party is entitled to terminate or not will depend on how serious the results of the breach are.

Elliott and Quinn[26] show the effect of breach in the following Figure 7.3.

Figure 7.3 The effect of Breach of Contract



7.11.2 HOT TOPIC – Retention of Title

In 1976 there was a watershed case, Aluminium Industrie Vaassen BV v Romalpa Aluminium Ltd [1976] 1 WLR 676. In essence, the decision of the Court of Appeal was such that the seller retained property in the goods until the purchaser paid for the goods. Not only that, the seller could trace the proceeds of sub-sales that had been entered into by the buyer, where the goods the subject matter of the sub-sales included goods supplied by the sellers to the buyers. The retention of title clause can be found in the judgement, noting it began with the ominous words, 'The ownership of the material to be delivered by A.I.V. will only be transferred to purchaser when he has met all that is owing to A.I.V., no matter on what grounds'.

McMeel and Ramel[27] provide a comprehensive analysis of retention of title issues/problems including:

a) issues as to incorporation of clauses
b) issues as to the construction of clauses and the related process of characterising such terms
c) issues as to which claims an administrator of company should allow, including claims to the goods supplied, including where the goods have been altered, mixed or manufactured into another form, and claims to proceeds of sub-sales
d) issues as to impact of such clauses on third parties, in particular sub-purchasers
e) practical issues, including officer-holder liability and procedural matters.

McMeel and Ramel[28] explain that the choice of retention clauses is between 'simple' clauses (title reserved until particular consignment of goods paid for), and the 'all moneys' type (where property to all goods supplied is retained until all debts owed to seller are discharged). Virtually all the modern cases deal with the latter type, which has generally been successful where claims to the (unaltered) goods themselves are advanced. There are three principal 'bolt-on' sub-clauses:

a) a tracing clause, which lays claim to resale proceeds
b) a 'mixing' or 'aggregation' clause, which lays claim to the mixed or manufactured product to which the goods supplied have been added
c) a 'following' or 'extended' clauses, which purports to extend the claim to the goods (or their product) in third-party (sub-buyer) hands. These 'bolt-on' clauses have achieved only limited success in English law.

7.11.3 HOT TOPIC – Contract Definitions

In a well-drafted contract there will be a list of definitions. These are of great relevance to a buyer, particularly when there are potential disputes over the meaning of words in the contract. Not unnaturally, very precise meanings have to be attached to a word. In many contracts there is a reference to 'day'. The convention is that a capitalised word, for example, 'Day', should have a definition. The author has encountered disputes over:

– What is the working day? Is it, for example, 8am–6pm?
– Does day, include Saturdays and Sundays?
– Does the working day include, or exclude, travelling time?

– What are the implications if the supplier's services are required outside the specified and agreed hours?
– What is the charge rate for overtime?
– How will the supplier account for hours worked?

One example of a definition is 'Change of Ownership' to deal with situations where a company who were awarded a contract, subsequently goes into the ownership of another party. A contract clause will spell out the consequences and the definition will set out what a 'Change of Ownership' means:

a) any sale, transfer or disposal of any legal, beneficial or equitable interest in any or all of the shares in the Service Provider and/or its holding company and/or the Guarantor (including the control over exercise of voting rights conferring on those shares, control over the right to appoint or remove directors or the rights to dividends)
b) any other arrangements that have or will result in the same effect as paragraph (a) above.

Another example of a definition is 'Direct Losses' to deal with situations where a contractor may require recompense under the contract. There will be a clause setting out the circumstances when Direct Losses can be claimed and the definition sets out what Direct Losses means:

> all damage, losses, indebtedness, claims, actions, cash, expenses (including the cost of legal or professional services), legal costs being an agent/client, client (paying basis), proceedings, demands and charges whether arising under statute, contract or at common law but to avoid doubt, excluding Indirect Losses.

7.11.4 HOT TOPIC – Letters of Intent

Buyers are sometimes pressurised to issue a letter of intent to a supplier. In some buying organisations, Legal Services have a policy preventing letters of intent being issued. The author agrees with this stance. The legal status of a letter of intent is uncertain. It depends on the wording whether a contract is created. In Cunningham v Collett and Farmer [2006] EWHC 1771 (TCC), Judge Coulson explained that a letter of intent 'properly so called', which

> 'expresses an intention on the part of party A to enter into a contract in the future with party B, but creates no liability in regard to that future contract. It is expressly designed to have no binding effect whatsoever'. The second type of letter of intent is a letter which gives rise to limited rights and liabilities.

He also said,

> It is usual for such documents to limit the employer's liability for the works to be carried out pursuant to the letter of intent. Commonly this is done, either by limiting the amount of money that the contractor can spend pursuant to the letter, or by reference to the particular elements of work that the contractor is permitted to carry out.

His Honour Judge Fay in Turriff Construction v Regalia Knitting Mills Ltd (1971) 222 EG 169 said, 'a letter of intent is no more than the expression in writing of a party's present intention to enter into a contract at a future date. Save in exceptional circumstances, it can have no binding effect'. The background was that Turriff submitted a tender to build a new factory at Corby for Regalia. Because Regalia had not acquired

the site they could not agree the full contract. Turriff was successful with its bid and then had to do some work, such as preparing plans for the build. Turriff used a letter of intent worded:

> As agreed at our meeting on 2 June 1969 it is the intention of Regalia to award a contract to Turriff to build a factory… Phase one to be on a fixed price basis as agreed and phases two, three and four to be calculated on the same basis as phase one and completed by 1972.
>
> The commencing date to be 1 August, and the terms of payment to be negotiated on a monthly form against bills of quantities supplied by Regalia's surveyor. All this to be subject to obtaining agreement on the land and leases with the Corby Development Corporation, full binding and bye-law consent, and the site investigation being undertaken by Drilling and Prospecting International Ltd. The whole to be subject to agreement on an acceptable contract.

But in December 1969 the project was abandoned. Turriff sued Regalia for payment in respect of the work done up to the point the project was terminated.

The judge decided the wording of the letter of intent above only excluded Regalia's potential liability under the future full building contract. But he decided, on the facts, the parties had, in addition to the letter of intent, also entered into an implied ancillary contract in relation to the preparatory work. Turriff, therefore, should be paid for that preparatory work under the ancillary contract.

7.11.5 HOT TOPIC – Limit of Liability Cap

This facet of business risk must be comprehensively dealt with in a contract, and it is therefore necessary that procurement specialists become very knowledgeable in this area. Suppliers will, for understandable reasons, seek to limit their liability under a contract and it is prudent for them to do so. Equally, it is prudent for the buyer to ensure his or her organisation is not exposed to unacceptable losses arising from a supplier failing to meet their contractual obligations. The liability cap establishes the maximum amount that can be claimed from a supplier in the event of a deficiency in their services. In the case of Trustees of Ampleforth Abbey Trust v Turner & Townsend Project Management Ltd [2012] EWHC 2137 (TCC), Turner & Townsend were appointed on their standard terms of engagement. These included a limit on liability clause:

> Liability for any negligent failure by us (TTPM) to carry out our duties under these Terms shall be limited to such liability as is covered by our Professional Indemnity Insurance Policy terms, and in no event shall our liability exceed the fees paid to us (£111,321 in this case) or £1m, whichever is the less.

It is pertinent to note that the Terms required TTPM to have a policy of professional indemnity insurance with a limit of indemnity of £10 million.

TTPM were project managers on three construction projects. The works were completed significantly later than envisaged. In this case the Trust claimed against TTPM damages for professional negligence, in the amount of £750,000. His Honour Judge Keyser QC held that TTPM was in breach of a duty to exercise reasonable care and skill in that they failed to exercise sufficient focus on the matters holding up execution of the contract or to exert sufficient pressure on Kier (the contractor) to finalise the contract. Judge Keyser held that TTPM was not entitled to rely on the limitation clause and assessed the quantum of damages as £226,667. It was found that:

> The central factor that leads me to that decision (that the limitation clause was not unreasonable) is that the contract imposed on TTPM an obligation to take out professional indemnity

> insurance to a level of £10 million. The cost of such insurance would, as a matter of commercial reality, be passed on to the Trust within the fees payable. Yet the limitation clause would result in a limit of liability equal to the fees paid to TTPM, which is £111,321 (together with whatever might be awarded on the counterclaim). In the absence of any explanation as to why in this case TTPM should have stipulated insurance cover of £10 million despite a limitation of liability to less than £200,000, I consider it unreasonable that the contract purported to limit liability in that manner.

7.11.6 HOT TOPIC – Force Majeure

Procurement specialists must exercise great care in determining the precise wording of a Force Majeure clause. This clause entitles a party to suspend or terminate the contract on the occurrence of an event which is beyond the control of the parties and which prevents, impedes, or delays the performance of the contract. The procurement specialist must ensure that:

1. there is a definition of force majeure events
2. the operative clause that sets out the effect on the parties' rights and obligations if the force majeure event occurs.

The detail is often a matter for negotiation because of the allocation of risk. Suppliers generally seek a non-exhaustive list of events or circumstances that would qualify as force majeure, including 'acts of God, earthquake, fire, flood or other natural disasters, acts of war, riot, insurrection, rebellion, sabotage, or acts of terrorism, shortage of materials and/or labour, IT systems failures, strikes, lockouts or any other cause beyond the seller's reasonable control'. All of these 'events' are worrying for the buyer who must probe the seller's business continuity plans should a situation(s) arise. For example, if there is a fire at the supplier's premises:

- How quickly will he or she be able to continue his or her business?
- How long is the buyer prepared to tolerate non-performance before the contract is terminated?
- How long after the force majeure situation is ended will the supplier be 100 per cent effective?

In the case of Tandrin Aviation Holdings Ltd v Aero Toy Store LLC & Anor [2010] EWHC 40 (Comm), there was an issue with the Force Majeure clause. The contract concerned the sale by Tandrin to ATS of a new Bombardier executive jet aircraft. The Force Majeure clause read:

> Neither party shall be liable to the other as a result of any failure of, or delay in the performance of, its obligations hereunder, for the period that such failure or delay is due to: Acts of God or the public enemy; war, insurrection or riots; fires; governmental actions; strikes or labour disputes; inability to obtain aircraft materials, accessories, equipment or parts from vendors; or any other cause beyond seller's reasonable control. Upon the occurrences of any such event, the time required for performance by such party of its obligations arising under this Agreement, shall be extended by a period equal to the duration of such event.

It is a complex case (as they often are) in that ATS refused to accept delivery of the aircraft because the alleged 'unanticipated, unforeseeable and cataclysmic downward spiral of the world's financial market' triggered the Force Majeure clause in the Agreement. Mr Justice Hamblen dissected the Force Majeure clause wording, including: 'whether a Force Majeure clause in a contract is triggered depends on the proper construction of

the wording of that clause', and 'the phrase "any other cause beyond the seller's reasonable control" should be read in the context of the entire clause'. Mr Justice Hamblen refused to allow ATS to claim force majeure because the wording referred only to the 'Seller's reasonable control' and did not include the Buyer's reasonable control.

7.11.7 HOT TOPIC – Key Personnel

Key personnel are a vital feature of many contracts. At the tender stage, suppliers are keen to emphasise that some key people are central to performance of the contract. On many projects, including outsourcing, there will be key personnel named in the tender. This warrants a clause in the contract. A real life example is the Bluewater case.[29] Clause 9 of Section 2 of the Contract related to Contractor Personnel. Clause 9.3 provided: 'The KEY PERSONNEL shall be provided by [MERCON] and shall not be replaced without the prior approval of BLUEWATER. Any replacement shall work with the person to be replaced for a reasonable handover period'.

Clause 3 of Section 9 of the contract provided as follows:

> KEY PERSONNEL [Mercon] shall provide the KEY PERSONNEL as listed in Attachment 9B and as indicated on the Organisation chart within Attachment 9C. KEY PERSONNEL shall be engaged in the WORK on a full-time basis, unless otherwise agreed with BLUEWATER. KEY PERSONNEL shall not be replaced without the prior approval of BLUEWATER. [MERCON] shall pay the liquidated damages specified in Attachment 9B for each replacement, unless otherwise agreed with BLUEWATER.

There were seven contractor's key personnel listed, including:

Name	*Position*	*Liquidated damage in case of replacement*
A.C. van den Brule	Project Manager	€ 50,000
Mr J Liet	Construction Manager	€ 49,000
J. Marijunnissen	Transport & Logistics Manager	€ 30,000

In English law liquidated damages must be a genuine pre-estimate of loss. Mercon accepted that it did not strictly operate the procedures for key personnel and did not seek Bluewater's prior approval for the replacement of some key personnel.

The judge found that Bluewater were entitled to liquidated damages in the sum of €150,000. The sums calculated for liquidated damages were not a penalty. The judge stated: 'I do not consider that in the context of this project the sums of €20,000 to €50,000 can be described as being inconsiderable in terms of being extravagant or exorbitant'.

7.11.8 HOT TOPIC – Liquidated Damages

It is probably inevitable that a buyer, at some stage in their career, will encounter a liquidated damages scenario. This is a remedy intended to compensate an aggrieved party to a contract where there has been a delay in meeting a contracted date(s) and where the cause can be laid at the door of the supplier. The contract must make provision for liquidated damages. In the case of Alfred McAlpine Capital Projects Ltd v Tilebox Ltd[30] the contract provided that McAlpine should pay liquidated and ascertained damages

'at the rate of £45,000 per week or part thereof'. The contract sum was £11,573,076. The building works were completed 2.5 years later than the due date. Tilebox claimed £5.4 million as liquidated and ascertained damages. Unsurprisingly, McAlpine claimed that the liquidated damages provision was a penalty clause and therefore invalid. Lord Dunedin in Dunlop Pneumatic Tyre Company v New Garage and Motor Company Ltd [1915] AC 79 said,

> Though the parties to a contract who use the word 'penalty' or 'liquidated damages' may prima facie be supposed to mean what they say, yet the expression used is not conclusive. The Court must find out whether the payment stipulated is in truth penalty or liquidated damages. This doctrine may be said to be found passim in nearly every case.

It was also said that, 'The exercise of a penalty is the payment of money stipulated as in terrorem of the offending party; the essence of liquidated damages is a genuine covenanted pre-estimate of damages'. Legal cases abound relative to liquidated damages. In Robophone Facilities Ltd v Blank [1966] 1 WLR 1428 the Court of Appeal upheld a liquidated damages clause. Diplock LJ said,

> I see no reason in public policy why the parties should not enter into so sensible an arrangement under which each know where they stand in the event of a breach by the defendant, and can avoid the heavy costs of paying the actual damages if liquidation ensues.

Returning to the McAlpine situation another telling point made by Mr Justice Jackson was,

> Because the rule about penalties is an anomaly within the law of contract, the courts are predisposed, where possible, to uphold contractual terms which fix the level of damages for breach. This predisposition is even stronger in the case of commercial contracts freely entered into between parties of comparable bargaining power.

7.12 Standard Forms of Contract

There are a plethora of Standard Forms of Contract available to the procurement community. The following are examples only and not intended to be a comprehensive listing. Great care must be taken when selecting a Standard Form of Contract, with advice from specialists in their field of expertise and legal specialists. An advantage of Standard Forms of Contract is that they are recognised by many suppliers as an excellent basis for a contracting relationship.

Joint Contracts Tribunal[31]

Design & Build Contract 2011

Intermediate Building Contract 2011

Intermediate Building Contract with contractor's design 2011

Minor Works Building Contract 2011

Minor Works Building Contract with contractor's design 2011

Standard Building Contract with Quantities 2011

Standard Building Contract with Approximate Quantities 2011

Standard Building Contract without Quantities 2011

Prime Cost Building Contract

Construction Management Contract

New Engineering Contract (NEC3)[32]

Engineering and Construction Contract (ECC)

Engineering and Construction Contract Option A: Priced contract with activity schedule

Engineering and Construction Contract Option B: Priced contract with bill of quantities

Engineering and Construction Contract Option C: Target contract with activity schedule

Engineering and Construction Contract Option D: Target contract with bill of quantities

Engineering and Construction Contract Option E: Cost reimbursable contract

Engineering and Construction Contract Option F: Management contract

Engineering and Construction Subcontract (ECS)

Engineering and Construction Short Contract (ECSC)

Engineering and Construction Short Subcontract (ECSS)

Professional Services Contract (PSC)

Professional Services Short Contract (PSSC)

Term Service Contract (TSC)

Term Service Short Contract (TSSC)

Supply Contract (SC)

Supply Short Contract (SSC)

Framework Contract (FC)

Adjudicator's Contract (AC)

It may be noted that the suite of Standard Government Conditions of Contract, GC Works are still available, but they are no longer being updated by the government who are moving to NEC3.

The Project Partnering Suite of Contract[33]

PPC 2000 (Amended 2008) – ACA Standard Form of Contract for Project Partnering

PPC International – ACA Standard Form of Contact for Project Partnering

SPC2000 (Amended 2008) – ACA Standard Form of Contract for Project Partnering

SPC2000 Short Form (Issued 2010) – AC Standard Form of Specialist Contract for Project Partnering

SPC International – ACA Standard Form of Contract for Project Partnering

TPC 2005 (Amended 2008) – ACA Standard Form of Contract for Term Partnering

STPC2005 (Issued 2010) – ACA Standard Form of Specialist Contract for Term Partnering

FIDIC – International Federation of Consulting Engineers[34]

Conditions of Contract for Works of Civil Engineering Construction. The Red Book

Conditions of Contract for Electrical and Mechanical Works, including Erection on Site. The Yellow Book

Conditions of Contract for Design-Build and Turnkey. The Orange Book.
There is also a 1999 suite of contracts available from FIDIC

RIBA – Royal Institute of British Architects[35]

RIBA Concise Agreement 2010 (2012 revision): Architect

RIBA Domestic Project Agreement 2010 (2012 revision): Architect

RIBA Standard Agreement 2010 (2012 revision): Architect

RIBA Standard Agreement 2010 (2012 revision): Consultant
RIBA Sub-consultant Agreement 2010 (2012 revision)

Discussion Questions

7.1 A procurement specialist cannot be effective unless they have an excellent knowledge of Contract Law. Do you agree?

7.2 What are the implied terms of the Sale of Goods Act 1979?

7.3 In what respects is the Unfair Contract Terms Act 1977 relevant to the work of a procurement specialist?

7.4 Define the word 'Consideration' in English Law. Why is it important in a practical business sense?

7.5 Discuss the concept of 'Capacity to Contract' using the CRJ Services Ltd case as your basis for discussion.

7.6 Why do you believe the 'Battle of the Forms' is a recurring problem in business?

7.7 What are the dangers presented by a potential supplier's misrepresentation? What due diligence can procurement conduct to lessen the opportunity for a contract to be placed when misrepresentation took place?

7.8 Explain the difference between 'Liquidated Damages' and 'Penalties'.

7.9 Why are Standard Forms of Contract helpful to a procurement specialist?

7.10 Does your organisation have 'Standard Terms and Conditions' for the procurement of Goods and Services? If so, have you been trained to understand their detail?

References

[1] New Zealand Shipping Co Ltd v AM Satterthwaite & Co Ltd (The Eurymedon)

[2] Blackpool and Fylde Aero Club Ltd v Blackpool Borough Council [1990] W&R 1195. Court of Appeal

[3] Scottish Law Commission: Review of Contract Law Discussion Paper on Formation of Contract, Discussion Paper No 154. March 2012

[4] Carlill v Carbolic Smoke Ball Co [1893] 1 QB 256

[5] Butler Machine Co Ltd v Ex-Cell-O Corporation (England) Ltd [1979]1 W.L.R. 401

[6] Transformers & Rectifiers Ltd v Needs Ltd [2015] EWHC 2689 (TCC)

[7] Elliott and Quinn, Contract Law, Pearson, p. 143

[8] Lloyds Bank Ltd v Bundy [1975] QB 326

[9] FG Wilson (Engineering) Ltd v John Holt & Company (Liverpool) Ltd [2012] EWHC 2477 (Comm)

[10] Currie v Misa [1875] LR10 Ex153,162

[11] Peel, E., *Treitel on The Law of Contract*, Sweet and Maxwell, 2015, p. 74

[12] Peel, E., *Treitel on the Law of Contract*, Sweet and Maxwell, 2015, p. 81

[13] CRJ Services Ltd v Lanstar Ltd (Ta CSG Lanstar) [2011] EWHC 972 (TCC)

[14] Heald Solicitors, Ashton House 471, Silbury Boulevard, Central Milton Keynes

[15] GHSP Inc v AB Electronic Ltd [2010] EWHC 1828 (Comm)

[16] RTS Flexible Systems Ltd v Molkerei Alois Müller GmbH [2010] 1 WLR 753

[17] Thermal Energy Construction Ltd v AE & E Lantjes UK Ltd [2009] EWHC 408 (TCC)

[18] MW High Tech Projects UK Ltd v Haase Environmental Consulting GmbH [2015]152 (TCC)

[19] Contract Law Elliott & Quinn, Pearson Education Ltd, 2013

[20] Kingspan Environmental & Ors v Borealis A/s & Anor [2012] EWHC 1147 (Comm)

[21] Peel, E., *Treitel on the Law of Contract*, Sweet and Maxwell, 2015

[22] Bluewater Energy Services BV v Mercon Steel Structures BV & Ors [2014] EWHC 2132

[23] McKendrick, E. *Contract Law*, Palgrave Macmillan, 2009, p. 310

[24] Op. cit

[25] Elliott, E. and Quinn, F. *Contract Law*, Pearson Education Ltd, p. 326

[26] Op. cit p. 334

[27] Professor McMeel, G. and Ramel, S., *Retention of Title – A thorn in the side?* Guildhall Chambers

[28] Op. cit

[29] Bluewater Energy Services BV v Mercan Steel Structures BV & Ors [2014] EWHC 2132

[30] Alfred McAlpine Capital Projects Ltd v Tilebox [2005] EWHC 281 (TCC)

[31] The Joint Contracts Tribunal, 28 Ely Place, London, EC1N 6TD

[32] NEC, One Great George Street, London, SW1P 3AA

[33] Association of Consultant Architects, 60 Gobutin Road, Bromley, BR2 9LR, Kent

[34] FIDIC, World Trade Center 11, Geneva Airport, Box 311, 29 route de Pres-Bass CH 1215, Geneva

[35] RIBA, 66 Portland Place, London, W1B 1AD

Chapter 8

Quality management, service and product innovation

Learning outcomes

With reference to procurement and supply management this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- concepts of quality and reliability and the role of procurement
- total quality management (TQM)
- specifications, their use and abuse
- principles of specification writing
- standardisation
- the ISO 10000 portfolio of quality management standards
- variety reduction
- quality assurance and controls
- tools for quality control and reliability
- the business-added value of quality management
- value management, engineering and analysis.

Key ideas

- Definitions and dimensions of world-class quality standards.
- Considerations of quality management when contracting.
- The principles of total quality management (TQM).
- Specifications from a procurement perspective.
- Variety reduction and ensuring sustainable savings.
- Specification options.
- Standardisation with special reference to BS EN ISO specifications.
- Standardisation from a procurement perspective.
- Inspection, statistical quality control, quality loss function, robust design, quality function deployment (QFD) and failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) as tools for quality control and reliability.
- Costs of quality conformance and non-conformance.

8.1 What is quality?

8.1.1 Definitions

There are numerous definitions of quality. ISO 8402 (replaced in December 2000 by ISO 9000 and updated in September 2005) defined the fundamental terms relating to quality concepts, states that quality is:

> The composite of all the characteristics, including performance, of an item, product or service, that bears on its ability to satisfy stated or implied needs. In a contractual environment, needs are specified, whereas, in other environments, implied needs should be identified and defined. In many instances, needs can change with time; this implies periodic revision of requirements for quality. Needs are usually translated into characteristics with specified criteria. Quality is sometimes referred to as 'fitness for use', 'customer satisfaction', or 'conformance to the requirements'.

In this definition there is the implication of an ability to identify what quality aspects can be measured or controlled or constitute an acceptable quality level (AQL). Needs which are defined relate to the value of the product or service to the customer, including economic value as well as safety, reliability, maintainability and other relevant features.

Crosby[1] defines quality as 'conformity to requirements not goodness'. He also stresses that the definition of quality can never make any sense unless it is based on what the customer wants, that is, a product is a quality product only when it conforms to the customer's requirements.

Juran[2] defines quality as 'fitness for use'. This definition implies quality of design, quality of conformance, availability and adequate field services. There is, however, no universal definition of quality. Garvin, for example, has identified five approaches to defining quality[3] and eight dimensions of quality.[4] The five approaches are as follows:

- The *transcendent approach* – quality is absolute and universally recognisable. The concept is loosely related to a comparison of product attributes and characteristics.
- The *product-based approach* – quality is a precise and measurable variable. In this approach, differences in quality reflect differences in the quantity of some product characteristics.
- The *use-based approach* – quality is defined in terms of fitness for use or how well the product fulfils its intended functions.
- The *manufacturing-based approach* – quality is 'conformance to specifications' – that is, targets and tolerances determined by product designers.
- The *value-based approach* – quality is defined in terms of costs and prices. Here, a quality product is one that provides performance at an acceptable price or conformance at an acceptable cost.

These alternative definitions of quality often overlap and may conflict. Perspectives of quality may also change as a product moves from the design to the marketing stage. For these reasons, it is essential to consider each of the above perspectives when framing an overall quality philosophy.

Garvin's eight dimensions of quality are:

1. *performance* – the product's operating characteristics
2. *reliability* – the probability of a product surviving for a specified period of time under stated conditions of use

3 *serviceability* – the speed, accessibility and ease of repairing the item or having it repaired
4 *conformance* – measures the projected use available from the product over its intended operating cycle before it deteriorates
5 *durability* – measures the projected use available from the product over its intended operating cycle before it deteriorates
6 *features* – 'the bells and whistles' or secondary characteristics that supplement the product's basic functioning
7 *aesthetics* – personal judgements about how a product looks, feels, sounds, tastes or smells
8 *perceived quality* – closely identified with the reputation of the producer and, like aesthetics, it is a personal evaluation.

While the relative importance attached to any of the above characteristics will depend on the particular item, the most important factors in commercial or industrial procurement decisions will probably be performance, reliability, conformance, availability and serviceability.

Hitt *et al.*[5] neatly summarise the quality dimensions of Goods and Services.

Product Quality Dimensions	*Service Quality Dimensions*
1 *Performance* – operating characteristics	1 *Timeliness* – performed in promised time period
2 *Features* – important special characteristics	2 *Courtesy* – performed cheerfully
3 *Flexibility* – meeting operating specifications over some time period	3 *Consistency*- all customers have similar experiences each time
4 *Durability* – amount of use before performance deteriorates	4 *Convenience* – accessible to customers
5 *Conformance* – match with pre-established standards	5 *Completeness* – fully serviced, as required
6 *Serviceability* – ease and speed of repair or normal service	6 *Accuracy* – performed correctly each time.
7 *Aesthetics* – how a product looks and feels	
8 *Perceived quality* – subjective assessment of characteristics (product image).	

8.1.2 Reliability

As shown above, reliability is an attribute of quality. It is, however, so important that the terms 'quality and reliability' are often used together. Reliability has been defined as:[6]

> A measure of the ability of a product to function successfully when required, for the period required, under specified conditions.

Reliability is usually expressed in terms of mathematical probability, ranging from 0 per cent (complete unreliability) to 100 per cent (or complete reliability).

Failure mode and effect analysis (FMEA), performed to evaluate the effect on the overall design of a failure in any one of the identifiable failure modes of the design components and to evaluate how critically the failure will affect the design of performance, is referred to in section 8.9.7.

8.2 Quality systems

8.2.1 What is a quality system?

A *quality system* is defined as:[7]

> The organisational structure, responsibilities, procedures, processes and resources for implementing quality management.

A quality system typically applies to, and interacts with, all activities pertinent to the quality of a product or service. As shown in Figure 8.1 it involves all phases, from the initial identification to final satisfaction of requirements and customer expectations.

All organisations have a quality management system. This may, however, be informal and insufficiently documented. The advantages of a properly documented system, such as that required by BS EN ISO 9001:2015, are that it:

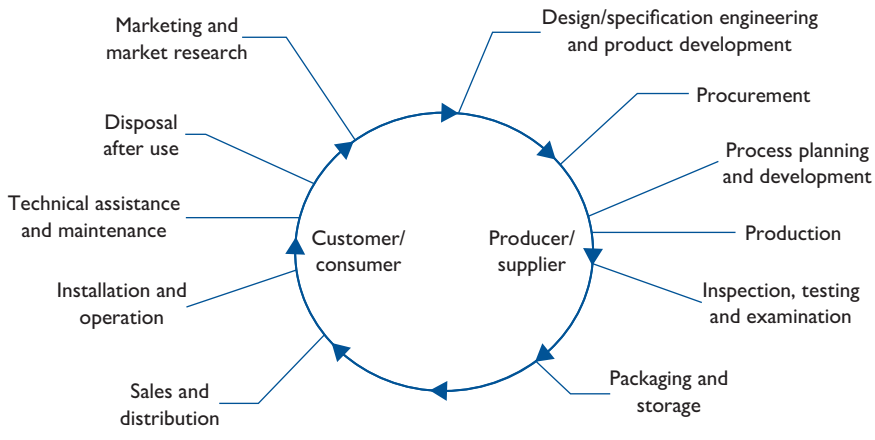
- ensures all aspects of quality are controlled
- ensures consistent, efficient work practices
- indicates best practice
- provides objective evidence for determining and correcting the causes of poor quality
- increases customer confidence
- gives competitive advantage
- focuses attention on the management of risks.

8.3 The importance of TQM

8.3.1 Definitions

Total quality management (TQM) has been defined as:[8]

Figure 8.1 The quality loop



Source: British Standards Institution, reproduced with permission

> A way of managing an organisation so that every job, every process, is carried out right, first time and every time.

This means that each stage of manufacture or service is 'total' – that is, 100 per cent correct before it proceeds. An alternative definition is:[9]

> An integrative management concept of continually improving the quality of delivered goods and services through the participation of all levels and functions of the organisation.

8.3.2 TQM principles

TQM is based on three important principles:

1 *A focus on product improvement from the customer's viewpoint* – the key ideas in this principle are product improvement and customer product improvement. Juran[10] emphasised the importance of achieving annual improvements in quality and reductions in quality-related costs. Any improvements that take an organisation to levels of quality performance that they have previously not achieved is termed a 'breakthrough'. Breakthroughs are focused on improving or eliminating chronic losses or, in Deming's[11] terminology, 'common causes of variation'. All breakthroughs follow a common sequence of discovery, organisation, diagnosis, corrective action and control. The term 'customer' in this context is associated with the concept of 'quality chains', which emphasises the linkages between suppliers and customers. Quality chains are both internal and external. Thus, internally, procurement is a customer of design and supplier production. Staff within a function or activity, are also suppliers and customers. Like all chains, the quality chain is no stronger than its weakest link. Without strong supplier–customer links, both internally and externally, TQM is doomed to failure. Quality chains are one way in which to outmode the functional conflict and power tactics referred to elsewhere in this book. The first step in implementing an internal quality chain approach is for each activity to determine answers to the following questions relating to customers and suppliers.[12]

- Customers
  - Who are my internal customers?
  - What are their true requirements?
  - How do, or can, I find out what their requirements are?
  - How can I measure my ability to meet their requirements?
  - Do I have the necessary capability to meet their requirements? (If not, then what must change to improve the capability?)
  - Do I continually meet their requirements? (If not, then what prevents this from happening when the capability exists?)
  - How do I monitor changes in their requirements?
- Suppliers
  - Who are my internal suppliers?
  - What are my true requirements?
  - How do I communicate my requirements?
  - Do my suppliers have the capability to measure and meet the requirements?
  - How do I inform them of changes in the requirements?

The second step, based on answers to questions such as the above, is to determine the level of service that a function such as procurement will provide. Cannon[13] has identified four factors affecting decisions about service types and levels:

- what the customer wants
- what the function can provide
- close collaboration to solve disagreements
- redefining both type and level of service at regular intervals.

It is also important to determine the technical expertise of procurement as 'it is this expertise which enables the function to add value to the procurement activity beyond that which the internal customer can perform without the function's assistance'. The questions posed earlier in this section can also be reframed by substituting the word 'external' for 'internal' so that external quality chains can be considered from both supplier and customer angles, too. In the capacity of customers, procurement organisations expect suppliers to compete in terms of quality, delivery and price. Zairi[14] states that the best approach to managing suppliers is based on JIT, which, from its inception, has the objective of obtaining and sustaining superior performance. The other important aspect of external customer supplier value chains refers to the management of customer processes as the purpose of TQM is customer enlightenment and long-term partnerships.

2 *A recognition that personnel at all levels share responsibility for product quality* – the Japanese concept of *kaizen*, or ongoing improvement, affects everyone in an organisation, at all levels. It is therefore based on team rather than individual performance. Thus, while top management provides leadership, continuous improvement is also understood and implemented at shop floor level. Some consequences of this principle include:

- provision of leadership from the top
- creation of a 'quality culture' dedicated to continuous improvement
- teamwork – that is, quality improvement teams and quality circles
- adequate resource allocation
- quality training of employees
- measurement and use of statistical concepts
- quality feedback
- employee recognition
- Zairi[15] states: once a culture of common beliefs, principles, objectives and concerns has been established, people will manage their own tasks and will take voluntary responsibility to improve processes they own.

3 *Recognition of the importance of implementing a system to provide information to managers about quality processes that enable them to plan, control and evaluate performance.*

8.3.3 Factors that have contributed to the development of TQM

- *Global competition* for sales, profits, jobs and funds in both the private and public sectors, leading to the concept of 'world-class manufacturing', with the emphasis on using manufacturing to gain a competitive edge by improving customer service.

- *JIT* and other similar strategies based on the philosophy of zero defects – that is, it is cheaper to design and build quality into a product than attempt to ensure quality by means of inspection alone.
- *Japanese quality procedures* such as *kaizen* (unending improvement) and *Poka-Yoke* (fool proofing), and a quality culture implemented in European manufacturing units, such as at Toyota and Nissan.
- *Quality philosophies* associated with internationally respected experts.

8.3.4 The development of TQM

TQM originated in Japan as a result of a group of American management consultants and statisticians helping to rebuild Japanese industry after the Second World War. TQM transformed cheap and unreliable products labelled 'Made in Japan' into goods with an international reputation for high quality, innovation and reliability. These consultants were principally W. Edwards Deming, Joseph Juran and A. V. Feigenbaum. The DTI publication, *The Quality Gurus*, identifies 'three clear groups of quality gurus' (a 'guru' is an influential teacher) covering the period since the Second World War. Brief details of these gurus are set out in Table 8.1.

Table 8.1 The quality gurus

Name	*Principal book*	*Important principles*
The early Americans		
W. Edwards Deming	*Quality, Productivity and Competitive Position*, MIT Press, 1982	Deming's 14 points. Points 3, 4 and 9 are especially relevant to procurement: 3: cease dependence on inspection to achieve quality, eliminate the need for inspection on a mass basis by building quality into the product in the first place 4: end the practice of awarding business on the basis of price tag and, instead, minimise the total cost by moving towards a single supplier for any one item for a long-term relationship of loyalty and trust 9: break down barriers between departments – people in research, design, sales and production must work as a team to foresee problems of production and use that may be encountered with the product or service
Joseph M. Juran	*Quality Control Handbook 1988*, McGraw-Hill, 1988	■ Quality is 'fitness for use', which can be broken down into quality of design, quality of conformance, availability and field service ■ Companies must reduce the cost of quality ■ Quality should be aimed at controlling sporadic problems or avoidable costs and unavoidable costs. The latter requires the introduction of a new culture intended to change attributes and increase companywide knowledge
Armand V. Feigenbaum	*Total Quality Control*, McGraw-Hill, 1983	'The underlying principle of the total quality view . . . is that . . . control must start with identification of customer quality requirements and end only when the product has been placed in the hands of a customer who remains satisfied. Total quality control guides the coordinated actions of people, machines and information to achieve this goal. The first principle is to recognise that quality is everybody's job'

Table 8.1 *Continued*

Name	*Principal book*	*Important principles*
The Japanese		
Kaoru Ishikawa	*What Is Total Quality Control? The Japanese Way*, Prentice Hall, 1985	■ The first to introduce the concept of quality control circles ■ Originator of fishbone or Ishikawa diagrams, now used worldwide in continuous improvements to represent cause–effect analysis ■ Argues that 90–95 per cent of quality problems can be solved by simple statistical techniques
Genichi Taguchi	*Introduction to Quality Engineering*, Asian Productivity Association, 1986	■ Defines the quality of a product as the loss imparted by the product to society from the time the product is shipped. The loss may include customers' complaints, added warranty costs, damage to company reputation, loss of market lead, etc. ■ Uses statistical techniques additional to statistical process control (SPC) to enable engineers/designers to identify those variables that, if controlled, can affect product manufacture and performance
Shigeo Shingo	*Zero Quality Control: Source Inspection and the Poka-Yoke System*, Productivity Press, 1986	■ Development of just-in-time and, consequently, the Toyota production system ■ *Poka-Yoke*, or fool proofing, also known as the zero defects concept
The new Western wave		
Philip B. Crosby	*Quality Is Free*, McGraw-Hill, 1983	Five absolutes of quality management: **1** 'Quality conformity to requirements – not elegance' **2** 'There is no such thing as a quality problem although there may be an engineering machine problem' **3** 'It is always cheaper to do the job right first time' **4** 'The only performance indicator is the cost of quality' **5** 'The only performance standard is zero defects' The 14-step quality improvement programme traits
Tom Peters	*A Passion for Excellence*, Profile Books, 1964	Twelve traits of quality revolution based on a study of the quality improvement programmes of successful American companies
Claus Moller	*A Complaint Is a Gift* (with Janelle Barlow), Time Management International, 1996	Administrative rather than production processes offer more opportunity for productivity gain Personal development of the individual will lead to increased competence in the three vital areas of productivity, relationships and quality

8.3.5 The benefits of TQM

TQM is a *philosophy* about quality that involves everyone in the organisation. It follows that the success of TQM depends on a genuine commitment to quality by every organisational member. Some benefits claimed for TQM include:

- improved customer satisfaction
- enhanced quality of goods and services

- reduced waste and inventory with consequential reduced costs
- improved productivity
- reduced product development time
- increased flexibility in meeting market demands
- reduced work-in-progress
- improved customer service and delivery times
- better utilisation of human resources.

8.3.6 Criticisms of TQM

TQM is not without its critics. Some objections include:

- that overly zealous advocates of TQM may focus attention on quality even though other priorities may be important, such as changes in the market – exemplified by the manager who said:

  Before we invested in TQM, we churned out poorly made products that customers didn't want. We now churn out well-made products that customers don't want.
- that it creates a cumbersome bureaucracy of working parties, committees and documentation relating to quality
- that it delegates the determination of quality to quality experts because TQM is a complicated entity beyond the comprehension of the average employee
- that some workers and unions regard TQM as management-by-stress and a way of de-unionising workplaces.

8.4 Specifications

8.4.1 Specifications and procurement

It is very important that procurement staff are knowledgeable about specifications because:

- The supplier's ability to meet the specifications has a significant impact on the buying organisation's business performance and, in consequence, the procurement process must be designed to select competent suppliers.
- The linkage between the specification compliance and contractual terms and conditions is vital, particularly the supplier's liabilities if the specification is not met.
- The design of pre-qualification questionnaires must include probing questions about the supplier's methodology for satisfying the specification requirements.
- The buyer must ensure that the contract is very clear on the methodology of evaluating and measuring compliance with the specification.
- The buyer should promote active discussions with the supplier to obtain continuous improvement to reduce the service or product cost and to continually challenge the specification.

8.4.2 Definitions - specifications and standards

Specifications must be distinguished from standards and codes of practice. A *specification* has been defined as:

- A statement of the attributes of a product or service.[16]
- A statement of requirements.[17]
- A statement of needs to be satisfied by the procurement of external resources.[18]

A *standard* is a specification intended for recurrent use.

Standards differ from specifications in that, while every standard is a specification, not every specification is a standard. The guiding principle of standardisation, considered later in this chapter, is the elimination of unnecessary variety.

Codes of practice are less specific than formal standards and provide guidance on the best accepted practice in relation to engineering and construction and for operations such as installation, maintenance and service provision.

8.4.3 The purpose of specifications

Both specifications and standards aim to:

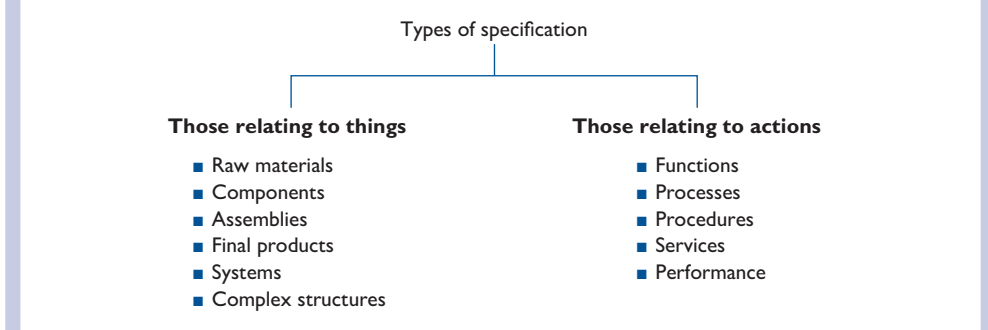
- *indicate fitness for purpose or use* – as indicated in Table 8.1, fitness for purpose or use was the definition of quality given by Joseph Juran, who also stated that quality is linked to product satisfaction and dissatisfaction, with satisfaction relating to superior performance or features and dissatisfaction to deficiencies or defects in a product or service
- *communicate* the requirements of a user or purchaser to the supplier
- *compare* what is actually supplied with the requirements in terms of purpose, quality and performance stated in the specification
- *provide evidence*, in the event of a dispute, of what the purchaser required and what the supplier agreed to provide.

8.4.4 Types of specification

As shown in Figure 8.2, specifications can broadly be divided into two types.

Several of the elements listed in Figure 8.2 may, of course, be combined in one specification. Thus, a specification for a component (a thing) may also state how it shall be

Figure 8.2 Types of specification



made (a process) and how it shall be tested (a procedure). The specification may also state what the component is intended to do (function) and what a product or service should achieve under given conditions (performance).

8.4.5 The ISO 10000 portfolio of quality management standards

The astute buyer will have a working knowledge of the ISO 10000 portfolio of quality management standards, namely:

ISO 10001	Customer satisfaction – Guidelines for codes of conduct
ISO 10002	Customer satisfaction – Guidelines for handling complaints
ISO 10003	Customer satisfaction – Guidelines for external dispute resolution
ISO 10004	Guidelines for monitoring and measuring customer satisfaction
ISO 10005	Guidelines for quality plans
ISO 10006	Guidelines for quality plans in projects
ISO 10007	Guidelines for configuration management
ISO 10008	Customer satisfaction – Guidelines for business-to-consumer electronic commerce
ISO 10012	Guidance for the measurement of measurement processes
ISO/TR 10013	Guidelines for quality management system documentation
ISO 10014	Guidelines for realising financial and economic benefits
ISO 10015	Guidelines for training
ISO 10017	Guidance on statistical techniques
ISO 10018	Guidelines on people involvement and competence
ISO 10019	Guidelines for the selection of quality management system consultants
ISO 19011	Guidelines for auditing management systems.

8.4.6 Request for quotation (RFQ) or request for proposal (RFP) or invitation to tender (ITT)

The terms RFQ, RFP and ITT are interchangeable and are formal processes by which a potential purchaser communicates requirements to potential suppliers. The documents will include the details of the specification (or requirement for which a specification will have to be developed) and other information to facilitate the preparation of quotations or proposals or for the potential suppliers to decide not to submit a quotation or proposal.

8.4.7 The contents of a specification

These will vary according to whether the specification is written from the standpoint of the user, designer, manufacturer or seller. The specification will also vary according to the material or item concerned. For a simple item, the specification may be a brief description, while in the case of a complicated assembly it will be a comprehensive document that perhaps runs to many pages. The following order of presentation for a specification relating to a product, process or service is adapted from BS 7373-3:2005:[19]

1. *identification* – title, designation, number, authority
2. *issue number* – publication history and state of issue, earlier related specifications
3. *contents list* – guide to layout
4. *foreword* – the reason for writing the specification
5. *introduction* – description of the content in general and technical aspects of objectives
6. *scope* – range of objectives/content
7. *definitions* – terms used with meanings special to the text
8. *requirements/guidance/methods/elements* – the main body of the specification
9. *index* – cross-references
10. *references* to national, European or international standards or other internal company specifications.

The requirements specified may relate to the following:

- conditions in which the item or material is to be installed, used, manufactured or stored
- characteristics, such as:
  - design, samples, drawings, models, preliminary tests or investigations
  - properties, such as strength, dimensions, weight, safety and so on, with tolerances where applicable
  - interchangeability – functional, dimensional
  - materials and their properties, including permissible variability and approved or excluded materials
  - requirements for a manufacturing process, such as heat treatment – this should be specified only when critical to design considerations
  - appearance, texture, finish, including colour, protection and so on
  - identification marks, operating symbols on controls, weight of items, safety indications and so on
  - method of marking.
- performance:
  - performance under specified conditions
  - test methods and equipment for assessing performance, where, how and by whom they are to be carried out and reference to correlation with behaviour in operation
  - criteria for passing tests, including accuracy and interpretations of results
  - acceptance conditions
  - certification and/or reporting – that is, reports, test schedules or certificates required.
- life
- reliability – under stipulated conditions and tests and control procedures required
- control of quality checking for compliance with specification:
  - method of checking compliance
  - production tests on raw materials, components, sub-assemblies and assemblies
  - assurance of compliance, such as by suppliers' certificates or independent manufacturer/supplier

– instructions regarding reject material or items
– instructions with regard to modification of process
– applicability of quality control to sub-contractors and others.

- packing and protection:
  – specifications of packaging, including any special conditions in transit
  – condition in which the item is to be supplied, such as protected, lubricant free and so on
  – period of storage
  – marking of packaging.
- information from the supplier to the user, such as instructions and advice on installation, operation and maintenance.

8.4.8 Some principles of specification writing

Purdy[20] has identified four principles that should be observed by all specification writers. These and other principles are as follows:

- *If something is not specified it is unlikely to be provided* – the corollary is that all requirements should be stated in the specification before awarding the contract. Suppliers will normally charge for requirements subsequently added as 'extras'.
- *Every requirement increases the price* – all specifications should therefore be subjected to rigorous value analysis (considered later in this chapter).
- *The shorter the specification, the less time it takes to prepare it* – the expenditure in staff time devoted to the preparation of a specification can be high. This can be significantly lower when the length of a specification and the time taken in its preparation is reduced.
- *The specification is equally binding on both the purchaser and the vendor* – omissions, incorrect information or imprecision in a specification can be cited by the vendor in any dispute with the purchaser. A rule of evidence is that words are construed against the party who wrote them. Where there is uncertainty about the meaning of a specification, the court will generally interpret it in the vendor's favour.
- *Specifications, should, so far as possible, be presented in performance terms rather than as a detailed design* – this is particularly applicable to items about which the purchaser has little expert knowledge. According to Section 14(3) of the Sale of Goods Act 1979 as amended by the Supply and Sale of Goods Act 1994, where the seller sells goods in the course of a business and the buyer expressly, or by implication, makes known to the seller any particular purpose for which the goods are being bought, there is an implied 'term' that the goods supplied under the contract are of satisfactory quality. For the purpose of the Supply and Sales of Goods Act 1994 (SSGA), goods are of satisfactory quality if 'they meet the standard that a reasonable person would regard as satisfactory, taking account of any description of the goods, the price (if relevant) and all other relevant circumstances'.
- *Specifications should, whenever possible be 'open', not closed* – closed specifications are referred to in section 8.5.3. Open specifications are written so that the stated requirements can be met by more than one supplier. By making the requirements sufficiently flexible to be met by several suppliers, competition is encouraged and prices reduced.

- Specifications must not conflict with national or international standards or health, safety or environmental laws and regulations – national and international specifications should be incorporated into individual specifications and identified by their numbers and titles.

8.5 Alternatives to individual specifications

8.5.1 Existing specifications

It should only be necessary to write a specification for non-standard requirements. For most standard industrial and consumer products it is usually sufficient to use:

- manufacturers' standards, as stated in catalogues or other promotional literature
- national or international standards.

All products or services will require materials, components or other elements for which existing standards will be available. An essential first step for designers or specification writers is to ascertain what relevant standards already exist. Searching for such standards is facilitated by consulting reference publications, especially the British Standards Catalogue (available in most large libraries), or databases. Especially useful are the services provided by Technical Indexes Ltd (www.iberkshire.co.uk), who offers comprehensive, reliable, full-text databases of manufacturers' technical catalogues, national and international standards and legislative material, delivered online via the Internet on an annual subscription basis. Technical Indexes' Ltd information services cover more than 90 per cent of the world's most commonly used standards, including:

- British Standards Online – a complete collection of over 35,000 British Standards
- Worldwide standards on the Internet
- UK and US Defence standards
- US Government Specifications Service.

8.5.2 Adapting existing specifications

This is often the most economical approach for construction projects or computer systems where architects or suppliers may be able to amend existing specifications to meet a new application.

8.5.3 Alternative methods of specifying

These include the use of brand or trade names and specifying by means of samples.

The use of a brand or trade names

England[21] lists the following circumstances in which descriptions by brand may be not only desirable but necessary, such as when:

- the manufacturing process is secret or covered by a patent
- the vendor's manufacturing process calls for a high degree of 'workmanship' or 'skill' that cannot be defined exactly in a specification

- only small quantities are bought so that the preparation of specifications by the buyer is impracticable
- testing by the buyer is impracticable
- the item is a component so effectively advertised as to create a preference or even a demand for its incorporation into the finished product on the part of the ultimate purchaser
- there is a strong preference for the branded item on the part of the design staff.

The main disadvantages of specifying branded items are as follows.

- The cost of a branded item may be higher than that of an unbranded substitute.
- The naming of a brand effectively results in what Fitchett and Haslam[22] refer to as a 'closed specification', which can take the form of naming a particular brand and the manufacturer or supplier not permitting the use of alternatives. Closed specifications are most applicable when the need for duplication of an existing product is important or it is desirable to maintain a low spares range. Such specifications inhibit competition but also cut out fringe suppliers that may be unable to meet the quality requirements.

Specification by sample

The sample can be provided either by the buyer or seller and is a useful method of specification in relation to products such as printing or materials such as cloth. When orders are placed and products specified by reference to a sample previously submitted by a supplier, it is important that the sample on which the contract is based should be:

- identified
- labelled
- the signed and labelled samples retained by both purchaser and supplier.

Under Section 5 of the Supply of Goods and Services Act 1982 (SGSA) and Section 15 of the Sale and Supply of Goods Act 1994 (SSGA) there is an implied 'term' (later defined as a 'condition') that where goods are sold by sample:

- the bulk must correspond to the sample in quality
- the buyer must have a reasonable opportunity to compare the bulk with the sample
- the goods must be free from any defect making 'their quality unsatisfactory' (not unmer-chantable), which a reasonable examination of the sample would not reveal.

Specification by a user or performance specification

Here, the purchaser informs the supplier of the use to which the purchased item is to be put. This method is particularly applicable to the purchase of items about which the buyer has little technical knowledge.

Under Section 14(3) of the SSGA and Sections 4 and 5 of the SGSA as amended by the SSGA, where the seller sells goods in the course of a business and the buyer, expressly or by implication, makes known to the seller any particular purpose for

which the goods are being bought, there is an implied 'term' that the goods supplied under the contract are of satisfactory quality. For the purpose of the SSGA, goods are satisfactory if 'they meet the standard that a reasonable person would regard as satisfactory, taking account of any description of the goods, the price (if relevant) and all the other relevant circumstances'. Under Section 2B of the SSGA, the quality of the goods includes their state and condition and the following (among others) are, in appropriate cases, aspects of their quality:

- fitness for all purposes for which goods of the kind in question are commonly supplied
- appearance and finish
- freedom from minor defects
- safety
- durability.

Under Section 2C of the SSGA, the 'term' does not extend to any matter making the quality of goods unsatisfactory:

- that is specifically drawn to the buyer's attention before the contract is made
- where the buyer examines the goods before the contract is made as that examination ought to reveal such matters
- in the case of a contract of sale by sample, matters that would have been apparent on reasonable examination of the sample.

Section 4 of the SSGA provides that, when the seller can prove that the deviation from the specification is only slight, it would be unreasonable for the buyer to reject the goods. The buyer may not treat the breach of contract as a condition entitling him to reject the goods, but only as a warranty giving a right to damages arising from the breach.

Section 4 also makes a distinction between commercial buyers and consumers. If the buyer is a consumer, the right to reject the goods on the grounds that the quality of the goods is unsatisfactory is not affected.

Section 3(2) states that the section applies unless a contrary intention appears in, or is to be implied from, the contract.

As Woodroffe[23] observes, this time buyers must look to their own terms and conditions, for a well-drafted clause will enable a buyer to terminate a contract for any breach of Sections 13–15 (SSGA) whether slight or not.

8.5.4 Public sector buyers – technical specifications

The Public Contracts Regulations 2015 at Regulation 42 sets out the implications for contracting authorities when dealing with technical specifications.

Paragraph (4) of Regulation 42 explains the characteristics required of a material, product or supply, which may include –

a) levels of environmental and climate performance, design for all requirements (including accessibility for disabled persons) and conformity assessment, performance, safety or dimensions, including the procedures concerning quality assurance, terminology, symbols, testing and test methods, packaging, marketing and labelling, user

instructions and production processes and methods at any stage of the life cycle of the works:

b) rules relating to design and costing, the test, inspection and acceptance conditions for works and methods or techniques of construction and all other technical conditions which the contracting authority is in a position to prescribe, under general or specific regulations, in relation to the finished works and to the materials or parts which they involve.

Paragraph (10) stresses 'technical specifications shall afford equal access of economic operators to the procurement procedure and shall not have the effect of creating unjustified obstacles to the opening up of public procurement to competition'.

8.6 Standardisation

Standards are documents that stipulate or recommend minimum levels of performance and quality of goods and services and optional conditions for operations in a given environment. Standards may be distinguished according to their subject matter, purpose and range of applications.

8.6.1 Subject matter

This may relate to an area of economic activity, such as engineering, and items used in that field, such as fasteners. Each item may be further subdivided into suitable subjects for standards. Thus, 'fasteners' may lead to standards for screw threads, bolts and nuts, washers and so on.

8.6.2 Purpose

Standards may relate to one or more aspects of product quality. These include:

- *dimensions* thus encouraging interchangeability and variety reduction – for example, BS EN ISO 6433:1995 is a British Standard that lays down technical drawing principles and conventions widely accepted in the UK and will be easily understood worldwide.
- *performance requirements* for a given purpose, such as PD 5500:2009, which covers the specification for unfired fusion welded pressure vessels necessary for a design to meet statutory requirements and those of manufacturers and users of safe performance.
- *environmental requirements* relating to such matters as pollution, waste disposal on land, noise and environmental nuisance – for example, environmental performance objectives and targets are covered by BS EN ISO 14001:2004.

In addition to the above, standards may also cover codes of practice, methods of testing and glossaries. Codes of practice, as stated earlier, give guidance on the best accepted practices in relation to engineering and construction techniques and for operations such as installation, maintenance and provision of services. Methods of testing are required for measuring the values of product characteristics and behaviour standards. Glossaries help to ensure unambiguous technical communication by providing standard definitions of the terms, conventions, units and symbols used in science and industry.

8.6.3 Range of application

This relates to the domain in which a particular standard is applicable. There are several kinds of standards and it is also the case that different standards and specifications can often be used in conjunction.

- *Individual standards* – these are laid down by the individual user.
- *Company standards* – these are prepared and agreed by various functions to guide design, procurement, manufacturing and marketing operations. Ashton[24] has drawn attention to the importance of keeping registers or databases of bought-out parts and company standards that can be referred to by codes listed in a codes register as a means of variety reduction and obviating variations in tolerances, finishes, performance and quality.
- *Association or trade standards* – these are prepared by a group of related interests in a given industry, trade or profession, such as the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders.
- *National standards* – British Standard specifications of particular importance are BS 4778-3.1:1991 Quality vocabulary, BS 6143-1:1992 Guide to the economics of quality, BS 7850-1:1992 Total quality management and BS EN ISO 9000:2005 Quality management systems.
- *International standards* – the two principal organisations producing worldwide standards are the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) and the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The former, established in 1906, concentrates on standards relating to the electrical and electronic fields. The latter, founded in 1947, is concerned with non-electrical standards. Both organisations are located in Geneva. In Western Europe, progress is being made in the development of standards that will be acceptable as both European and international standards. This work is being done via the European Committee for Standardisation (CEN), formed by Western European standards organisations. The demarcation of European standardisation mirrors the international arrangement, with CEN covering non-electrical aspects and the European Committee for Electrotechnical Standardisation (CENELEC) and the European Telecommunications Standards Institute (ETSI) being responsible for the others.

8.6.4 BS EN ISO 9000

Although TQM preceded the ISO 9000 series as a method by which organisations could increase their reputation for quality and profitability, compliance with ISO standards and ISO certification is widely regarded as providing the framework and essential first step to TQM.

The CEN (European Committee for Standardisation) and CENELEC (European Committee for Electrotechnical Standardisation) were created in the late 1960s – the former to 'promote technical harmonisation in Europe in conjunction with worldwide bodies and its partners in Europe'.

The ISO (International Organisation for Standardisation) was founded in 1946 as the existence of non-harmonised standards for similar technologies can constitute technical barriers to international trade. BS EN ISO 9000:2005, as the worldwide derivative of BSI's BS 5750 Quality Management System, launched in 1979, appeared in 1987. ISO standards, now adopted by over 140 countries, are revised every five years.

The current BS EN ISO 9000:2005 series, published in September 2005, provides the principles that are put into practice by the BSI system for the Registration of Firms' Assessed Capability. To be registered, an organisation is required to have a documented quality system that complies with the appropriate parts of BS EN ISO 9000 and a quality assessment schedule (QAS) that defines in precise terms the scope and special requirements relating to a specific group of products, processes or service. QASs are developed by the BSI in cooperation with a particular industry after consultation with procurement and associated interests.

When an undertaking seeking registration has satisfactory documentation procedures, the BSI arranges for an assessment visit by a team of at least two experienced assessors, one of whom is normally from the BSI inspectorate. Afterwards, a report confirming any discrepancies raised and the outcome of the assessment is sent to the undertaking seeking registration. The initial assessment is followed by regular unannounced audit visits at the discretion of the BSI to ensure standards are maintained.

As shown by Figure 8.3, the main documents relating to the system are a vocabulary and separate standards.

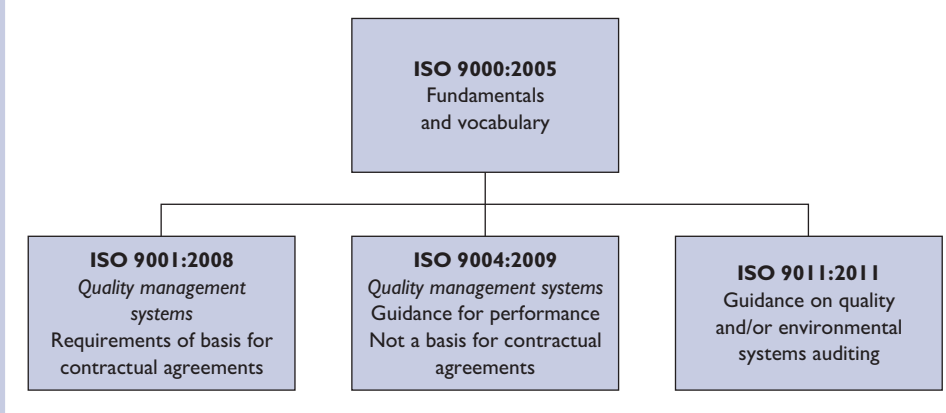
Although the revised 9001:2015 and 9004:2009 are standalone standards, they constitute a 'consistent pair' aimed at facilitating a more user-friendly introduction of quality management systems into an organisation.

8.6.5 Procurement and BS EN ISO 9000:2005

BS EN ISO 9000:2005 (Quality management systems – Fundamentals and vocabulary) defines the standards for any requirements of a quality system under four main headings:

- management responsibility
- resource management
- product realisation
- measurement, analysis and improvement.

Figure 8.3 The main documents relating to ISO 9000:2005 standards



Procurement is referred to under 'resource management' in clause 7.4. In this context, the word 'organisation' refers to the undertaking that is seeking conformity with the standard that is 'us'. The term 'supplier' refers to 'our' suppliers. An 'interested party' is a person or group having an interest in the performance or success of an organisation.

Clause 7.4 contains provisions relating to the purchasing process (7.4.1), purchasing information (7.4.2) and verification of purchased produce (7.4.3). These sections should, however, be read in conjunction with BS EN ISO 9004:2009, which specifies the activities that should be included in a quality system for purchasing. Subsection 7.4.2, for example, provides examples of ways in which an organisation can ensure that suppliers have the potential capability to provide required products 'effectively, efficiently and within schedule', such as:

- evaluation of relevant supplier experience
- performance of suppliers against competitors
- review of purchase product quality, price, delivery performance and response to problems
- audits of supplier management systems.

Cognisance should also be taken of the ISO 14000 series.

8.6.6 ISO 9001:2015

The 2015 revision to ISO 9001 has implications for procurement. When the 9th edition of Procurement & Supply Chain Management was being written there was the Draft International Standard ISO/DIS 9001: 2014 (E) available from the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO). The final, official version is reported to be published by the end of 2015.

ISO published a paper[25] advising that one of the key changes in the 2015 revision is to establish a systematic approach to risk. Now risk is considered and included throughout the standard.

In the draft standard (Introduction D.S.) it states, 'For some organisations, the consequences of delivering nonconforming products and services can result in minor inconvenience to the customer; for others, the consequences can be far-reaching and fatal'.

Procurement continues to place importance on their suppliers having ISO 9001 certification. It is usually a pre-qualification requirement. In future, the 2015 standard will require the whole supply chain to comply with this standard. At 8.4.1, it requires that

> the organisation shall establish and apply criteria for the evaluation, selection, monitoring of performance and re-evaluation of external providers based on their ability to provide processes or products and services in accordance with specified requirements. The organisation shall retain appropriate documented information of the results of the evaluations, monitoring of the performance and re-evaluation of the external providers.

At 8.4.3 of the 2015 standard there are more implications for procurement because their organisation shall communicate to external providers applicable requirements for the following:

- the products and services to be provided on the processes to be performed on behalf of the organisation
- approval or release of products and services, methods, processes or equipment;

- competence of personnel, including necessary qualification;
- that interactions with the organisation's quality management system;
- the control and monitoring of the external provider's performance to be applied by the organisation;
- verification activities that the organisation, or its customer, intends to perform at the external provider's premises.

8.6.7 Procurement and standardisation

Procurement staff should be aware of the major trade, national and international standards applicable to their industry and the items bought. They should also appreciate the advantages that standardisation offers to the buying organisation:

- clear specifications and the removal of any uncertainty as to what is required on the part of both buyer and supplier
- standardisation helps to achieve reliability and reduce costs
- saving of time and money by eliminating the need to prepare company specifications and reducing the need for explanatory letters, telephone calls and so on
- the saving of design time may also reduce the time for production of the finished product
- accurate comparison of quotations as all prospective suppliers are quoting for the same thing
- less dependence on specialist suppliers and greater scope for negotiation
- reduction in error and conflict, thus increasing supplier goodwill
- facilitation of international sourcing by reference to ISO standards
- saving in inventory and cost as a result of variety reduction (see Chapter 10) – by coordinating the efforts of procurement, design and production, a company reduced 30 different paints to 15, 120 different cutting fluids to 10, 50 different tools steel to 6, and 12 different aluminium casting alloys to 3. Standardisation and coding of items also discovered 36 different terms in use for a simple washer
- reduced investment in spares for capital equipment
- reduced cost of material handling when standardisation is used
- elimination of the need to purchase costly brand names
- irregular purchases of non-standard equipment supplies are revealed.

8.6.8 Independent quality assurance and certification

Independent quality assurance and certification is of great benefit to the user, purchaser and manufacturer. The BSI, via its Kitemark, Safety Mark, Registered Firms and Registered Stockist Schemes, put into practice the principles of BS EN ISO 9000, setting out procedures by which a product's safety and a suppliers' quality management systems can be independently assessed.

About 30 third-party certification bodies are members of the Association of British Certification Bodies (ABCB). Some are set up by trade associations, such as the Manchester Chamber of Commerce Testing House for the Cotton Trade, Bradford

Chamber of Commerce for the Wool Trade, the Shirley Institute, Manchester, and the London Textile Trading House. Certification bodies assessed by the National Accreditation Council for Certification Bodies (NACCB) are entitled to use the NACCB National Quality 'Tick'.

8.7 Variety reduction

Variety reduction can make substantial savings in inventory by standardising and rationalising the range of materials, parts and consumables kept in stock. Variety reduction can be proactive or reactive.

Proactive variety reduction can be achieved by using, so far as possible, standardised components and sub-assemblies to make end products that are dissimilar in appearance and performance so that a variety of final products use only a few basic components. Proactive approaches to variety reduction can also apply when considering capital purchases. By ensuring compatibility with existing machinery, the range of spares carried to insure against breakdowns can be substantially reduced.

Reactive variety reduction can be undertaken periodically by a special project team comprised of all interested parties who examine a range of stock items to determine:

- the intended use for each item of stock
- how many stock items serve the same purpose
- the extent to which items having the same purpose can be given a standard description
- what range of sizes is essential
- how frequently each item in the range is used
- which items can be eliminated
- to what extent sizes, dimensions, quality and other characteristics of an item can be standardised
- which items of stock are now obsolete and unlikely to be required in the future.

The advantages of variety reduction include:

- reduction of holding costs for stock
- release of money tied up in stock
- easier specifications when ordering
- narrower range of inventory
- a reduced supplier base.

8.8 Quality assurance and quality control

8.8.1 Quality assurance

Quality assurance is defined as all those planned and systematic activities implemented within the quality systems and demonstrated as needed to provide adequate confidence that an entity will fulfil requirements for quality.[26]

Quality assurance is concerned with defect prevention. Therefore, it can involve a number of approaches, including:

- quality systems, including BS EN ISO 9000
- new design control, aimed at getting it right first time
- design of manufacturing processes aimed at eliminating defects at source
- incoming materials control – most organisations now require that their suppliers provide proof, such as BS EN ISO 9000 certification, that their processes are under statistical control
- supplier appraisal, to ensure that only suppliers able to meet quality requirements are approved – this is especially important with JIT procurement.

8.8.2 Quality control

Quality control (QC) is defined as:[27]

> The operational techniques and activities that are used to fulfil requirements for quality. Quality control is concerned with defect detection and correction and relates to such activities as determining where, how and at what intervals inspection should take place, the collection and analysis of data relating to defects and determining what corrective action should be taken.

As defects are detected after they have been made, Schonberger[28] has referred to QC as 'the death certificate' approach.

8.9 Tests for quality control and reliability

It is impracticable in this book to attempt even an outline of quality assurance, control and liability techniques. So, in this section, brief mention is made of inspection, statistical quality control and six sigma, quality loss function, robust design, quality function deployment (QFD) and failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA).

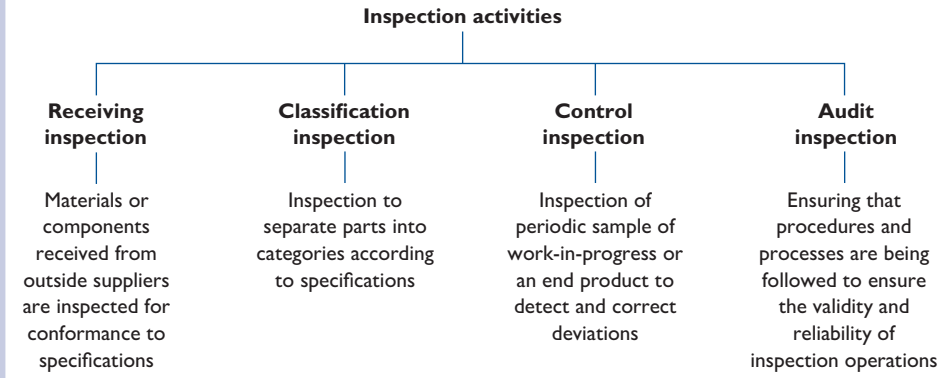
8.9.1 Inspection

Although inspection is a non-value-adding activity, some form of inspection, either at source or on delivery, is often unavoidable. The four main inspection activities are shown in Figure 8.4.

Important aspects of inspection are as follows:

- *How much to inspect and how often* – only rarely is a 100 per cent inspection required, and the greater the frequency of inspections, the greater the cost. In general, operations with a high human input necessitate more inspection than mechanical operations, which tend to be more reliable. The usual basis of inspection is an agreed sample, such as 5 per cent. The size of the sample will be determined by which statistical quality control method is to be used. Often the checking of dimensions or measurements can be done automatically by the use of go/no-go gauges.
- *Where to inspect* – most operations have numerous possible inspection points. Generally, inspection should take place:
  - when material is received from suppliers, although the tendency is for responsibility for quality to be placed with the supplier
  - before dispatch, as repairing or replacing products after delivery is more costly than at the factory and there is also damage to customer goodwill

Figure 8.4 The four main inspection activities



– before a costly operation

– before parts are joined irreversibly to other parts

– before a covering process, as painting or plating can often mask defects.

8.9.2 Statistical quality control

The basis of statistical quality control is sampling. A sample is a subset of a population or an entire set of objects or observations that have something in common. If a factory produces 1,000 items of component X in one day, the population or 'universe' of component X for that day is 1,000.

There are three main reasons for using sampling rather than 100 per cent inspection:

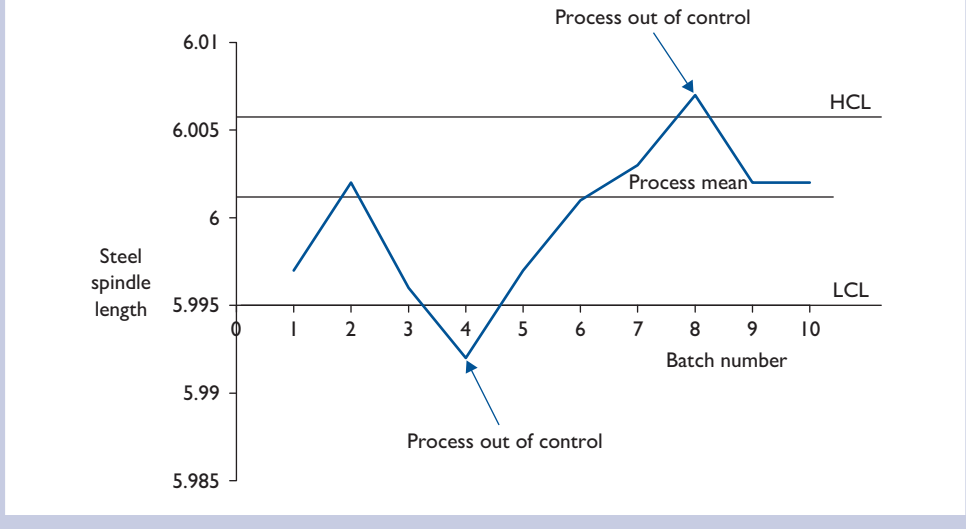
- sampling saves time
- sampling saves money
- sampling provides a basis for control.

From the quality standpoint, sampling can take one of two forms:

- *Acceptance sampling* tests the quality of a batch of products by taking a sample from each batch and testing to see whether the whole batch should be accepted or rejected. Acceptance sampling can be applied when bought-out items are received from suppliers or as a final inspection of goods produced before they are dispatched to customers.
- *Process control* is a more proactive approach, aimed at ensuring that parts and components meet specifications during the production process, not after a batch has already been manufactured.

The concepts of the arithmetic mean and standard deviation (referred to in the next section) provide the basis for the book *Economic Control of Quality of Manufactured Products*, published in 1931 by Dr Walter Shewhart of the Bell Telephone Company. This book is the foundation of modern statistical process control (SPC) and provides the basis for the philosophy of total quality management by means of sampling.

Figure 8.5 Statistical process control chart



Shewhart also developed the statistical process control chart to provide a visual indication of quality variations.

If, for example, the ideal length of a steel spindle is 6 cm and there is a tolerance of 0.005 cm, then components of 5.995 cm or 6.005 cm will be acceptable.

As sample batches of the spindle are taken, the average value of each batch is calculated and logged on the chart, as shown in Figure 8.5.

So long as the results are within the upper and lower limits, there is no need for action. However, if a value falls outside these limits – as with samples 4 and 8 – the reason(s) must be investigated and rectified. It is possible, for example, that the machine settings for these batches needed resetting or adjusting.

8.9.3 Six Sigma

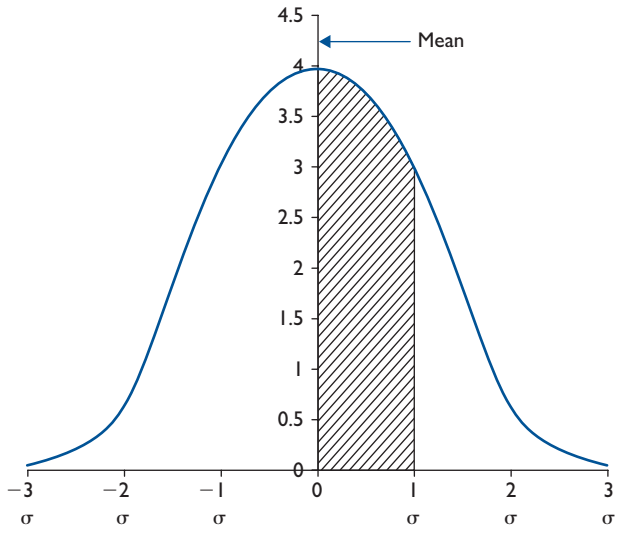
The concept of the arithmetic mean, standard deviation and normal curve are the basis of Six Sigma. The business management strategy Six Sigma was originated at Motorola in the early 1980s and is an approach for improving customer satisfaction, by reducing and eliminating product defects. It aims to achieve virtually defect-free processes and products.

A normal distribution curve is shown in Figure 8.6.

The arithmetic mean (x) is obtained by dividing the sum of two or more quantities by the number of items. For example, the arithmetic mean of 5, 10 and 12 is 27/3 = 9.

The standard deviation measures the extent to which sample scores are spread around the mean or average. For example, suppose that the scores from a series of inspections are normally distributed with a mean of 80 and a standard deviation of 8. Then the scores that are within one standard deviation of the mean are between 80 + 8 = 72 and 80 − 8 = 88. One standard deviation from the mean in either direction accounts for somewhere around 68 per cent of all items in the distribution. Two standard deviations from the mean accounts for roughly 95 per cent and three standard deviations for

Figure 8.6 A normal distribution curve



99 per cent of the distribution spread. The term 'Sigma' is a Greek alphabet letter 'σ', used to describe variability. In Six Sigma the common measurement is defects per million operations (DPMO). Six Sigma – or six standard deviations from the mean – therefore indicates a target of 3.4 defects per million opportunities (or 99.99966 accuracy), which is as close as anyone is likely to get to perfection.

Achieving a Six Sigma level of quality output means reducing process variation by means of a technique called define, measure, analyse, improve and control (DMAIC), which uses a variety of statistical tools, including process maps, Pareto charts, control charts, cause and effect diagrams and process capability ratio, most of which are beyond the scope of this book. Suffice to say that, as a result of the application of DMAIC, organisations identify and eliminate special cause variations from their processes until Six Sigma quality output is achieved.

8.9.4 Quality loss function (QLF)

This, together with the concept of robust design referred to in section 8.9.5, developed from work undertaken by Dr Genichi Taguchi while working for the Japanese telecommunications company NTT in the 1950s and 1960s.

Taguchi's approach is based on the economic implications of poor quality. He defines quality as, the quality of a product is the minimum loss imparted by the product to society from the time the product is shipped.[29]

The loss to society includes costs arising from the failure of the product to:

- meet customers' expectations
- achieve desired performance characteristics
- meet safety and environmental standards.

QLF is based on the principle that 'quality should be measured by the deviation from a specific target value rather than by conformance to preset tolerance limits'. Thus, the greater the deviation from a given target, the greater will be customers' dissatisfaction and the larger the loss concept.

The QLF approach is shown in Figure 8.7. The aim is to keep the product as near to the target as possible.

This loss function can be approximately calculated by using the formula:

$$L(x) = R(x + T)^2$$

Where:

L = the loss in monetary terms

x = any value of the quality characteristics

T = the target value

R = some constant

Example 8.1

Example of use of the loss function

Assume a quality characteristic has a specification of 0.500 ± 0.020. Further, assume that, on the basis of company records, it has been found that if the quality characteristic exceeds the target of 0.020 on either side, there is a probability that the product will fail during the warranty period and the cost of rectifying it will be £100.

Then:

$$£100 = R(0.020)^2$$

$$R = \frac{100}{(0.020)^2} = \frac{100}{0.0004} = 250{,}000$$

Therefore, the loss function is:

$$L(x) = £250{,}000(x - T)^2$$

Thus, if the deviation is only 0.005, the estimated loss will be:

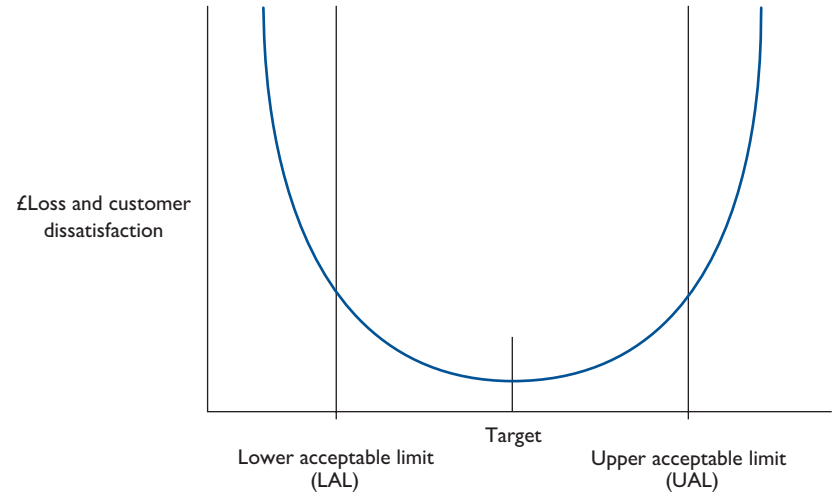
$$L(0.005) = £250{,}000(0.005)^2 = £6.25$$

For a batch of 50 products, the cost would be $50 \times 6.25 = £312.50$

The loss function approach has been criticised on the grounds that the practicalities of determining the constant R with any degree of accuracy are formidable.

The Taguchi loss function can be applied to any non-conformance cost, such as complaint handling, inspection and testing, rework of defective parts, scrap and warranty repairs. All such costs arise from not doing the work right first time. By improving quality, such costs can be reduced. Thus, the cost of quality is a misnomer as quality can actually produce a profit.

Figure 8.7 Taguchi's loss function



8.9.5 Robust design

Some products are designed for use only within a narrow application range. Others will perform well in a much wider range of conditions. The latter have robust design. Think of a pair of bedroom slippers. These are clearly unsuitable for walking in mud or snow. Conversely, a pair of Wellington boots is exactly what is required. The Wellington boots are more robust than the slippers.

A product or service may be defined as 'robust' when it is insensitive to the effects of source of variability, even though the sources themselves have not been eliminated. The more designers can build robustness into a product, the better it should last, resulting in a higher level of customer satisfaction.

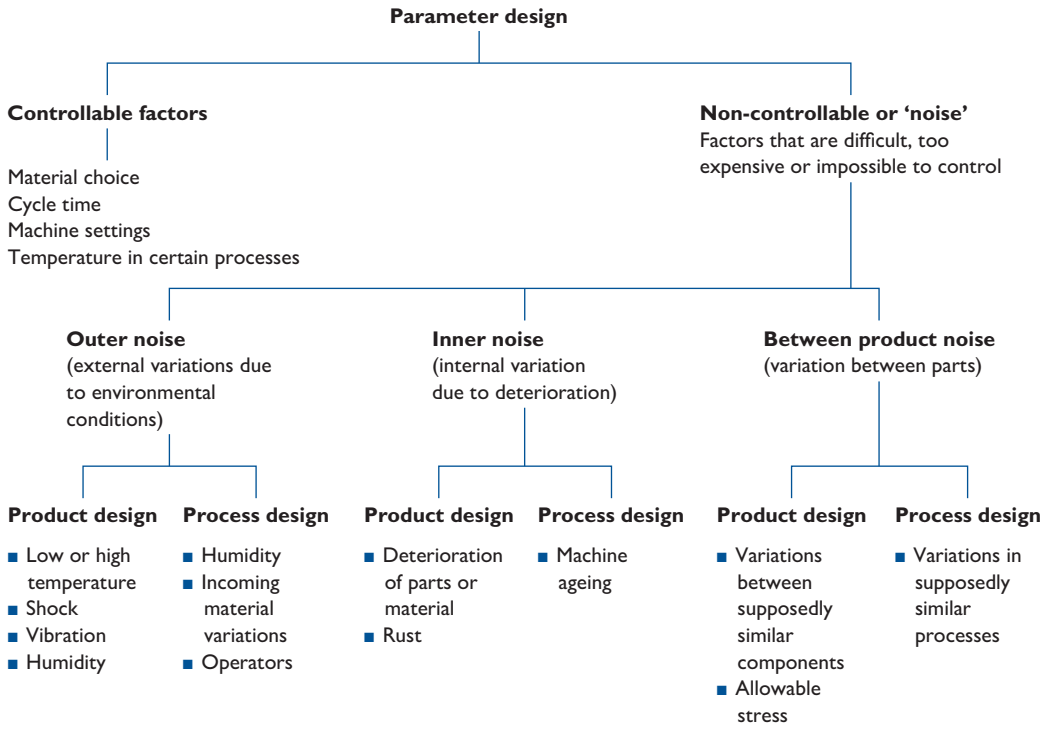
Similarly, environmental factors can have a negative effect on production processes. Furnaces used in the production of food, ceramics and steel products may not heat uniformly. One approach to the problem might be to develop a superior oven. Another is to design a system that moves the product during operation to achieve uniform heating.

Taguchi's approach involves determining the target specifications of limits for the product or design process and reducing variability due to manufacturing and environmental factors. As shown in Figure 8.8, Taguchi distinguishes between controllable and non-controllable factors, or 'noise'.

'Noise' factors are primarily responsible for causing the performance of a product to deviate from its target value. Hence, by means of analytical methods or carefully planned experiments, parameter design seeks to identify settings of the control factors that make the product more robust – that is, less sensitive to variations in the noise factors. Taguchi states that many designers consider only system and tolerance factors. He maintains, however, that without parameter design it is almost impossible to produce a high-quality product.

Taguchi's concepts of QLF and design have been criticised mainly on the grounds that the constant R in the QLF equation is difficult to determine with any degree of

Figure 8.8 Taguchi's concept of controllable and non-controllable factors



accuracy and that the large number of possible parameters in robust design make it impossible to investigate all such combinations. Nevertheless, his methods are used by many world-class organisations.

8.9.6 Quality function deployment (QFD)

QFD is a translation of the Japanese *Kanji* characters *Hin Shitsu Ki Ten Kai*, which can be broadly translated as meaning, 'how we do understand the quality that our customers expect and make it happen in a dynamic way?'

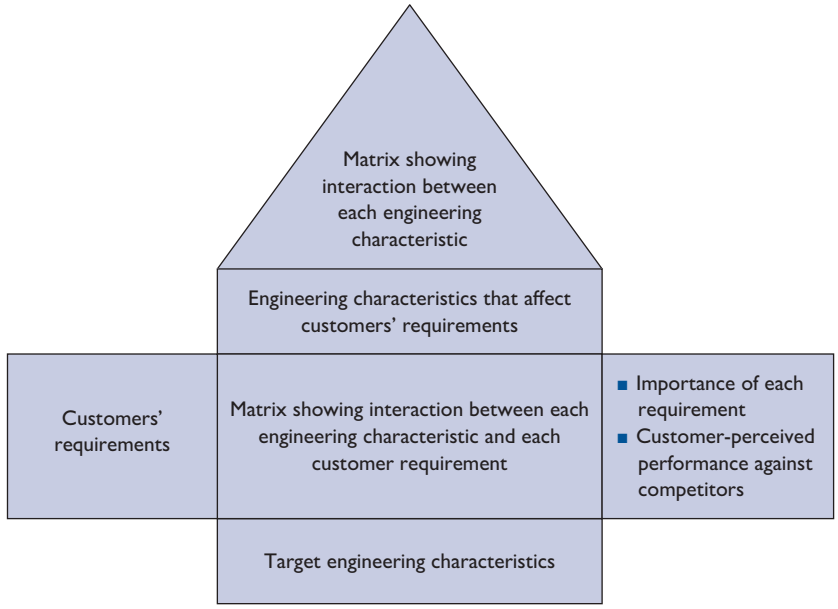
QFD has been defined as a structured approach to defining customers' needs or requirements and translating them into specific plans to meet those needs.

The term used to describe stated or unstated customer requirements is the 'voice of the customer'.

Information on customers' requirements is obtained in a multiplicity of ways, including market research, direct discussion, focus groups, customer specifications, observation, warranty data and field reports.

QFD ensures that customers' requirements are met by means of a tool called the 'house of quality' – an outline of which is shown in Figure 8.9. Using this tool, producers are able to reconcile customers' needs with design and manufacturing constraints.

Figure 8.9 House of quality



The house of quality or product planning is, however, only the first of a four-stage process – the other three sequential phases being product design, product planning and process control. These four phases are shown in Figure 8.10.

The QFD process involves the following steps:

1 Details of customers' requirements, or 'attributes', are obtained from sources such as those referred to earlier and listed under 'Customers' requirements' in the house of quality.

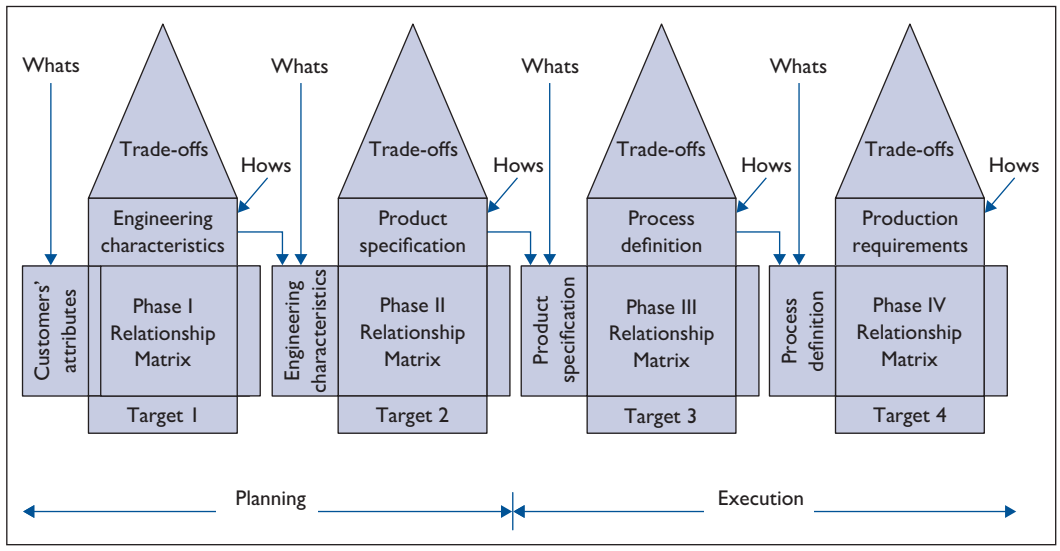
2 The relative importance assigned to each attribute is expressed on a scale of 1–5 or in percentage terms and entered under 'Importance of each requirement' in the house of quality.

3 For products that are intended to beat the competition, it is essential to know how they compare with those of competitors. A comparison of the rankings of each attribute will be made under 'Customer-perceived performance against competitors'.

4 Customers' attributes are translated into key engineering characteristics. Thus, for a car, the customers' attribute of 'fast start' would be translated into a 'specified' acceleration from 0 to 60 mph and entered into 'Engineering characteristics that affect customers' requirements'.

5 The strength of the relationship between customers' requirements and the technical requirements can be explored and expressed as 'very strong', 'strong' or 'weak' and entered into the 'Matrix showing interaction between each engineering characteristic and each customer requirement'. Blank rows or columns indicate no relationship or technical requirements as no customer requirement exists. It is also now possible to

Figure 8.10 The four phases in QFD



compare the performance of the product against customers' requirements and those of competitors and to set targets for improved design or performance. These are entered under 'Target engineering characteristics'.

6 The 'roof' of the house matrix encourages creativity by considering potential trade-offs between engineering and customer characteristics, such as performance and cost. This may lead to some changes in the target outcomes. While some organisations go no further than the first house of quality concerned with customers' requirements, others continue the process through the further stages of product specification, process definition and production requirements shown in Figure 8.10.

- The *production specification house* is concerned with the detailed characteristics of subsystems and components and the determination of target values for such aspects as fit, function and appearance.
- The *process definition house* is where components characteristics are related to key process operations. This stage represents the transition from planning to execution. If a product component parameter is critical and is created or affected during the process, it becomes a control point. This tells us what to monitor and inspect and becomes the basis for a quality control plan for the achievement of customer satisfaction.
- The *production requirements house* relates the control points to specific requirements for quality control and includes the specification of control methods and what sample sizes are required to achieve the appropriate quality level.

Thus, as shown in Figure 8.10, the target technical levels of 'hows?' of one stage are used to generate the 'whats?' of the succeeding stage.

The main benefits of QFD are that:

- the design of products and services is focused on customers' requirements and driven by objective customers' needs rather than by technology
- it benchmarks the performance of an organisation's products against those of competitors
- it reduces the overall length of the design code
- it substantially reduces the number of post-release design changes by ensuring that focused effort is put into the planning stage or stages
- it promotes teamwork and breaks down barriers between the marketing, design and production functions.

8.9.7 Failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)

What is FMEA?

FMEA, which originated in the USA aerospace industry, is an important reliability engineering technique that has the following main objectives:

- to identify all the ways in which failure can occur
- to estimate the effect and seriousness of the failure
- to recommend corrective design actions.

> FMEA has been defined as a systematic approach that applies a tabular method to aid the thought process used by engineers to identify potential failure modes and their effects.[30]

As a tool embedded within six sigma methodology, FMEA can help identify and eliminate concerns early in the development of a product or process. It is a systematic way to prospectively identify possible ways in which failure can occur.

Types of FMEA

It can take three forms:[31]

1. *Systems FMEA* is used to analyse systems and subsystems in the early concept and design stages. System function is the design or purpose(s) of the system and is derived from customers' wants. It can also include safety requirements, government regulations and constraints.
2. *Design FMEA* is used to analyse products before they are released to production.
3. *Process FMEA* is used to analyse products before they are released to the customer.

The preparation of an FMEA

The Ford Motor Company, which was the first of the UK motor manufacturers to request suppliers to use FMEA in its advance quality planning, recommends a team approach led by the responsible system, product or manufacturing/assembly engineer, who is expected to involve representatives from all affected activities. Team members may be drawn from design, manufacturing, assembly, quality, reliability, service, procurement, testing, supplier and other subject experts as appropriate. The team leader is also responsible for keeping the FMEA updated.

For proprietary designs, the preparation and updating of FMEAs is the responsibility of the suppliers.

With a design FMEA, for example, the team is initially concerned with identifying how a part may fail to meet its intended function and the seriousness of the effect of a potential failure, which is rated on a ten-point scale, as shown in Table 8.2.

Starting with the failure modes with the highest severity ratings, the design FMEA team then ascertains the possible causes of failure, based on two assumptions:

- that the part is manufactured/assembled within engineering specifications
- that the part design may include a deficiency that may cause an unacceptable variation in the manufacturing or assembling process.

The team then proceeds to ascertain:

- the probability of failures that could occur over the life of the part – see Table 8.3
- design evaluation techniques that can be used to detect the identified failure causes – see Table 8.4
- what design actions are recommended to reduce the severity, occurrence and detection ratings.

Table 8.2 Severity rating table for design FMEA

Effect	*Rating*	*Criteria*
No effect	1	No effect
Very slight effect	2	Very slight effect on vehicle's performance. Customer not annoyed. Non-vital fault noticed sometimes
Slight effect	3	Slight effect on vehicle's performance. Customer slightly annoyed. Non-vital fault noticed most of the time
Minor effect	4	Minor effect on vehicle's performance. Fault does not require repair. Customer will notice minor effect on vehicle's or system's performance. Non-vital fault always noted
Moderate effect	5	Moderate effect on vehicle's performance. Customer experiences some dissatisfaction. Fault on non-vital part requires repair
Significant effect	6	Vehicle's performance degraded, but operable and safe. Customer experiences discomfort. Non-vital part inoperable
Major effect	7	Vehicle's performance severely affected, but drivable and safe. Customer dissatisfied. Subsystems inoperable
Extreme effect	8	Vehicle inoperable but safe. Customer very dissatisfied. System inoperable
Serious effect	9	Potentially hazardous effect. Able to stop vehicle without mishap – gradual failure. Compliance with government regulation in jeopardy
Hazardous effect	10	Hazardous effect. Safety related – sudden failure. Non-compliance with government regulation

Note: Severity rating corresponds to the seriousness of the effect(s) of a potential failure mode. Severity applies only to the effect of a failure mode.

Table 8.3 Probability of failure rating table

Probability of failure	*Failure probability*	*Ranking*
Very high: failure is almost inevitable	>1 in 2	10
	1 in 3	9
High: repeated failures	1 in 8	8
	1 in 20	7
Moderate: occasional failures	1 in 80	6
	1 in 400	5
	1 in 2000	4
Low: relatively few failures	1 in 15,000	3
	1 in 150,000	2
Remote: failure is unlikely	<1 in 1,500,000	1

Table 8.4 Design evaluation – detecting causes of failure

Detection	*Likelihood of detection by design control*	*Ranking*
Absolute uncertainty	*Design control cannot detect potential cause/mechanical and subsequent failure mode*	
Very remote	*Very remote* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Remote	*Remote* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Very low	*Very low* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Low	*Low* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Moderate	*Moderate* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Moderately high	*Moderately high* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
High	*High* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Very high	*Very high* chance the design control will detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	
Almost certain	Design control *will* detect potential cause/mechanism and subsequent failure mode	

The completed design FMEA for a lighting switch subsystem is shown in Table 8.2. The technique is further described in BS EN ISO 9000.

Advantages of the FMEA approach

These include:

- improved quality, reliability and safety of products and processes
- increased customer satisfaction
- early identification, rectification and elimination of potential causes of failure
- ranking of product or process deficiencies
- documentation and tracking of actions to reduce failure risk
- minimisation of late product or process changes and associated cost
- it is a catalyst for teamwork and the cross-functional exchange of ideas and knowledge.

Some disadvantages of the FMEA approach

The disadvantages include:

- the required detail makes the process time consuming
- the process relies on recruiting the appropriate participants
- FMEA assumes the causes of problems are all single event in nature
- requires open and trusting behaviour, not defensiveness of vested interests
- requires follow-up sessions otherwise the process will not be effective
- it is difficult to examine human error and this facet is sometimes not scrutinised.

8.10 The cost of quality

8.10.1 Definitions

The cost of quality may be defined as the costs of conformance plus the costs of non-conformance or the cost of doing things wrong.

The cost of conformance (COC) is defined by BS 6143 – 1:1992 as:

> The cost of operating the process as specified in a 100 per cent effective manner. This does not imply that it is efficient or even a necessary process but rather that the process when operated with the specified procedures cannot be achieved at a lower cost.

The cost of non-conformance (CONC) is defined as:

> The cost of inefficiency with the specified process, i.e. over resourcing or excess cost of people, materials and equipment arising from unsatisfactory inputs, errors made, rejected outputs and various other sources of waste. These are regarded as non-essential process costs.

BS 6143 – 1:1992 points out that quality costs alone do not provide sufficient information for management to put them into perspective with other operating costs or to identify critical areas in need of attention.

To establish the significance of quality costs, it is necessary to use ratios showing the relationships between total quality costs and the costs of prevention, appraisal and failure. Typical ratios include:

Table 8.5 The costs of quality

Cost of conformance	
Prevention costs	*Appraisal costs*
Costs of any action taken to investigate, prevent or reduce defects and failures, including: ■ quality engineering (or quality management, department or planning) ■ quality control/engineering, including design/specification review and reliability engineering ■ process control/engineering ■ design and development of quality measurement and control equipment ■ quality planning by other functions ■ calibration and maintenance of production equipment used to evaluate quality ■ maintenance and calibration of test and inspection equipment ■ supplier assurance, including supplier surveys, audits and ratings, identifying new sources of supply, design evaluation and testing of alternative products, purchase order review before placement ■ quality training ■ administration, audit and improvement	Cost of assessing the quality achieved: ■ laboratory acceptance testing ■ inspection tests, including goods inward ■ product quality audits ■ set-up for inspection and test ■ inspection and test material ■ product quality audit ■ review of test and inspection data ■ field (on-site) performance testing ■ internal testing and release ■ evaluation of field stock and spare parts ■ data processing inspection and test reports
Costs of non-conformance	
Internal failure	*External failure*
Costs arising within the manufacturing organisation before transfer of ownerships to the customer: ■ scrap ■ rework and repair ■ troubleshooting or defect/failure analysis ■ reinspect, retest ■ scrap and rework, fault of vendor, downtime ■ modification permits and concessions ■ downgrading – losses for quality reasons resulting from a lower selling price	After transfer of ownership to the customer: ■ complaints ■ product or customer service, product liability ■ products rejected and returned, recall reject ■ returned materials for repair ■ warranty costs and costs associated with replacement

Prevention costs**:** Total quality cost
and
Cost of supplier appraisal**:** Prevention costs

The main costs of quality are set out in Table 8.5.

8.11 Value management, engineering and analysis

The terms ‘value management’ (VM), ‘value engineering’ (VE) and ‘value analysis’ (VA) are often regarded as synonymous. Each term may, however, be distinguished from the others.

8.11.1 Value management (VM)

VM is defined by BS EN 12973:2000 as a style of management, particularly dedicated to mobilise people, develop skills and promote synergies and innovation with the aim of maximising the overall performance of an organisation.

As indicated by this definition, VM is a style of management aimed at instilling a culture of best value throughout an organisation. 'Best value' implies that a product or service will meet customers' needs and expectations at a competitive price. VM applies at both the corporate and operational levels of an organisation. At the corporate level it emphasises the importance of a value-orientated culture aimed at achieving value for customers and stakeholders. At the operational level it seeks to implement a value culture by the use of appropriate methods and tools.

The Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE), formed in 1959, became the prototype for similar institutions in other countries. In the UK, the Institute of Value Management was formed in 1966, while, in 1991, the European Committee for Standardisation (CEN) sponsored the Federation of National Associations to produce BS EN 12973: Value Management, published in 2000.

8.11.2 Value engineering (VE)

Value engineering is an organised effort directed at analysing the functions of systems, equipment, facilities, services and supplies for the purpose of achieving the essential functions at the lowest lifecycle cost consistent with required performance, reliability, quality and safety.

Value engineering emphasises the importance of applying this discipline as early as possible in the design process. VE follows a structured thought process to evaluate options, namely the:

- gathering of relevant information
- consideration of what is being achieved now, if it is an existing product or service
- measurement of all facets of performance; for example, mean time between failures (MTBF)
- consideration of how alternative designs and performance will be measured
- analysis of functions
- consideration of what must be done as opposed to 'nice to haves'
- consideration of the actual cost
- generation of ideas through structured open challenge
- consideration of alternatives
- evaluation and ranking of ideas for further action
- ideas which appear to offer the greatest potential
- development and expansion of these ideas
- consideration of the impacts and cost
- consideration of the performance
- presentation of ideas and agreement of action plan.

The US Department of Defense (DoD) has applied VE to many purchases, including:

- equipment and logistics support
- parts obsolescence
- software architecture development
- publications, manuals, procedures and reports
- tooling
- training
- construction.

There is an increasing use of value engineering change proposals (VECPs), which are used to incentivise the contractor to propose contract modifications, which reduce cost without reducing product or process performance. Brian Farrington Ltd[32] has used VECPs in outsourcing contracts for the provision of back-office services, property and construction. These contracts include a 'Gainshare' provision whereby the contractor retains an agreed percentage of the savings achieved.

8.11.3 Value analysis

Value analysis (VA) was developed by the General Electric Company in the USA at the end of the Second World War. One of the pioneers of this approach to cost reduction was Lawrence D. Miles, whose book *Techniques of Value Analysis and Engineering* (McGraw-Hill, 1972) is still the classic on the subject.

The term 'value engineering' (VE) was adopted by the US Navy Bureau of Ships for a programme of cost reduction at the design stage, the aim of which was to achieve economies without affecting the needed performance, reliability, quality and maintainability. Miles has described value analysis as:

> A philosophy implemented by the use of a specific set of techniques, a body of knowledge, and a group of learned skills. It is an organised, creative approach that has for its purpose the efficient identification of unnecessary cost, i.e. cost that provides neither quality nor use, nor life, nor appearance, nor customer features.

VA results in the orderly utilisation of alternative materials, newer processes and the abilities of specialist suppliers. It focuses engineering, manufacturing and procurement attention on one objective: equivalent performance at lower cost. Having this focus, it provides step-by-step procedures for accomplishing its objective efficiently and with assurance. An organised and creative approach, it uses a functional and economic design process that aims to increase the value of a VA subject.[33]

The key words for an understanding of VA are 'function' and 'value'. The function of anything is that which it is designed to do, and should normally be capable of being expressed in two words – a verb and noun. Thus, the function of a pen is to 'make marks'. 'Value' is variously defined. The most important distinction is between use value – that is, that which enables an item to fulfil its stated function – and esteem value – factors that increase the desirability of an item. The function of a gold-plated pencil and a ballpoint pen, costing £70.00 and 50p, respectively, is, in both cases, to 'make marks'. The difference of £69.50 between the price of the former over the latter represents esteem value.

8.11.4 Implementing VA

The necessary implementation of VA depends on choosing the right people and the right projects.

The right people

VA may be carried out by the following:

- a team of representatives from such departments as cost accounting, design, marketing, manufacturing, procurement, quality control research and work study
- a specialist VA engineer, where the company's turnover warrants such an appointment, who will often have the responsibility of coordinating a VA team, so such a person should have:
  - experience of design and manufacturing related to the product(s)
  - understanding of a wide range of materials, their potentials and limitations
  - a clear concept of the meaning and importance of 'value'
  - creative imagination and a flair for innovation
  - knowledge of specialist manufacturers and the assistance that they can provide
  - a capacity to work with others and a knowledge of how to motivate, control and coordinate.

Just-in-time approaches emphasises the importance of consultation with suppliers and their co-option to VA teams.

The right project

In selecting possible projects, the VA team or engineer should consider the following:

- what project shows the greatest potential for savings – the greater the total cost, the larger the potential savings, so, for example, consider two hypothetical projects, A and B:

	A	*B*
Present cost each	10p	100p
Possible savings (10%)	1p	10p
Annual usage	100,000	1000
Projected annual savings	£1000	£100

Component A offers the greatest potential return for the application of VA.

- what products have a high total cost in relation to the functions performed – that is, whether or not it is possible to substitute a cheaper alternative.
- what suggestions for projects emanate from design, production staff and suppliers.
- are there any drawings or designs that have been unchanged in the last five years?
- manufacturing equipment installed more than, say, five years ago that may now be obsolete.
- any inspection and test requirements that have not been changed in the last five years

- single-source orders where the original order was placed more than, say, two years ago that may offer possibilities for savings.

Here are some typical areas warranting VA investigation:

- Product performance – what does it do?
- Product reliability – reducing or eliminating product failure or breakdown.
- Product maintenance – reducing costs of routine maintenance, such as cleaning, lubrication and so on and emergency repairs and replacement.
- Product adaptability – adding an extra function or expanding the original use.
- Product packaging – improving the saleability of or protection given to the product.
- Product safety – eliminating possible hazards, such as sharp edges, inflammability.
- Product styling – specifying lighter, stronger or more flexible materials or simplifying instructions.
- Product distribution – making it easier to distribute by, for example, reducing its weight or finding better transportation options.
- Product security – making the product less liable to theft or vandalism by using better locks, imprinting the customer's name on easily moveable equipment and so on.

8.11.5 Value analysis procedure

The job plan for a VA project involves the following six stages:

1 *Project selection* – see the list above.

2 *Information stage*

- Obtain all essential information relating to the item under consideration – cost of materials and components, machining and assembly times, methods and costs, quality requirements, inspection procedures and so on.
- Define the functions of the product, especially in relation to the cost of providing them.

3 *Speculation or creative stage* – have a brainstorming session in which as many alternative ideas as possible are put forward for achieving the desired function, reducing costs or improving the product. Some questions that may promote suggestions at this stage include the following.

- What *additional* or *alternative* uses can we suggest for the item?
- How can the item be *adapted* – what other ideas does the item suggest?
- Can the item be *modified*, especially with regard to changes in form, shape, material, colour, motion, sound or odour?
- Can the item be *augmented* – made stronger, taller, longer, thicker or otherwise developed to provide an extra value and so on?
- Can the item be *reduced* – made stronger, smaller, more condensed, lighter or unnecessary features omitted?
- Can the item be *substituted* – would other materials, components, ingredients, processes, manufacturing methods, packaging and so on improve it?
- Can we *rearrange* the item – change its layout or design, alter the sequence of operations, interchange components?

- Can the item or aspects of the item be *reversed* – reversing its roles or functions or positions, turning it upside-down or front to back?
- What aspects of the product can be *combined* – its functions, purposes, units, other parts and so on?

4 *Investigation stage* – select the best ideas produced at the speculation stage and evaluate their feasibility. When VA is organised on a team basis, each specialist will approach the project from his or her own standpoint and report back.

5 *Proposal stage* – recommendations will be presented to that level of management able to authorise the suggested changes. The proposals will state:

- what changes or modifications are being suggested
- statements relating to the cost of making the suggested changes, the projected savings, the period(s) over which the savings are likely to accrue.

6 *Implementation stage* – when approved by the responsible executive, the agreed recommendations will be progressed through the normal production, procurement or other procedures.

8.11.6 VA checklists

The following checklist, which every material, component or operation must pass, was prepared by the General Electric Company:

- Does its use contribute value?
- Is its cost proportionate to its usefulness?
- Does it need all its features?
- Is there anything better for the intended use?
- Can a usable part be made by a lower-cost method?
- Can a standard product be found that will be usable?
- Is it made on the proper tooling, considering the quantities used?
- Are the specified tolerances and finishes really necessary?
- Do materials, reasonable labour, overheads and profit total its cost?
- Can another dependable supplier provide it for less?
- Is anyone buying it for less?

As stated earlier, whenever appropriate, suppliers should be invited to participate in a VA exercise. Miller[34] has prepared the checklist given in Figure 8.11. It can accompany requests for quotations or be used in supplier discussions relating to the design of a new product.

8.11.7 VA and functional analysis (FA)

As stated in section 8.11.3, the function of anything is 'that which it is designed to do'. Value can be defined as:

$$\frac{\text{Performance capability}}{\text{Cost}} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\text{Function}}{\text{Cost}}$$

Figure 8.11 Miller's checklist

Question	Brief description of suggestion	Estimated savings of suggestion
1 What standard item do you have that can be satisfactorily substituted for this part? 2 What design changes do you suggest that will lower the cost of this item? 3 What part of this item can be more economically produced (considering tooling and so on) by casting, forging, extruding, machining or any other process? 4 What material can you suggest as a substitute? 5 What changes in tolerances would result in lower manufacturing costs? 6 What finish requirements can be eliminated or relaxed? 7 What test or qualification requirements appear unnecessary? 8 What suggestions do you have to save weight, simplify the part or reduce its cost? 9 What specifications, tests or quality requirements are too stringent?		
Will you attend a meeting to discuss your ideas if requested? Do you have a formal value analysis programme? If not, would you like help in setting one up? Company: Address: Signature: Title: Date:		

Functional analysis (FA) involves identifying the primary and secondary functions of an item and decomposing them into the sub-functions at an ever increasing level of detail. The application of FA particularly at the information and creative stages can indicate ways of reducing cost either by eliminating or modifying output functions. Conversely, a designer may seek to enhance value by adding new functions to an output. The latter can only be achieved when the target profit exceeds the cost of providing the additional functions. An extension of function analysis is cost function analysis, which identifies the cost of alternative ways of providing a given function.

8.11.8 Cost function analysis

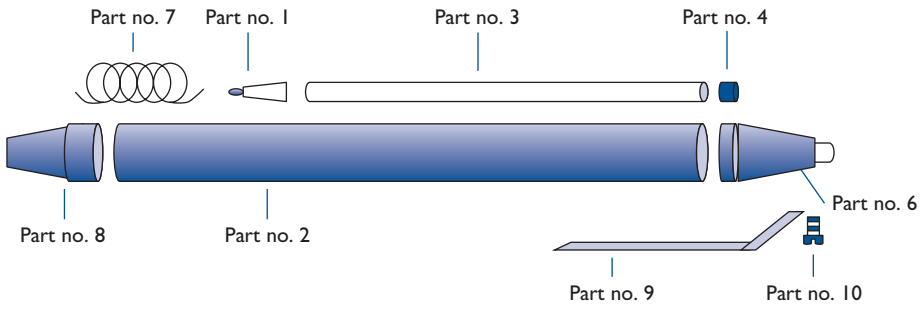
This involves the following steps, which shall be illustrated by reference to a ballpoint pen, the existing components of which are shown in Figure 8.12.

Step 1: Identify the primary and secondary functions of the item

Primary functions are those that the output must achieve. Thus the primary function of a ballpoint pen is 'to make a mark'.

Secondary functions are support functions. These may be a necessary part of the function but do not themselves perform the primary function. Thus, to 'make a mark', secondary functions such as 'put colour' and 'hold pen' are required.

Figure 8.12 Using the components of a ballpoint pen as an example of cost function analysis



As stated earlier, the function should be capable of being expressed by two words – a verb and a noun – and, wherever possible, should have measureable parameters, such as 'prevent rust', 'reduce noise'.

Step 2: Arrange the functions in a tree model

Define the primary functions first and decompose them to lower-level functions. Thus, for the ballpoint pen, the resultant tree might be like that shown in Figure 8.13.

Step 3: Undertake a cost function analysis

A cost function analysis involves breaking down each function into components or general areas and allocating a target or estimated cost to each. A component or area may contribute more than one function. It is important to know how much each component or area contributes to each function. Thus, the initial design for the ballpoint pen could include details of the parts and costs set out in a matrix, as shown in Table 8.6.

From such a matrix, it is possible to account for the total cost of each part by adding them together horizontally and the cost of each function by totalling them vertically. The total cost of each function is usually expressed as a percentage of the total cost of the activity. It is at this stage that the VA team will use its judgement to decide whether

Figure 8.13 Tree model of pen's function

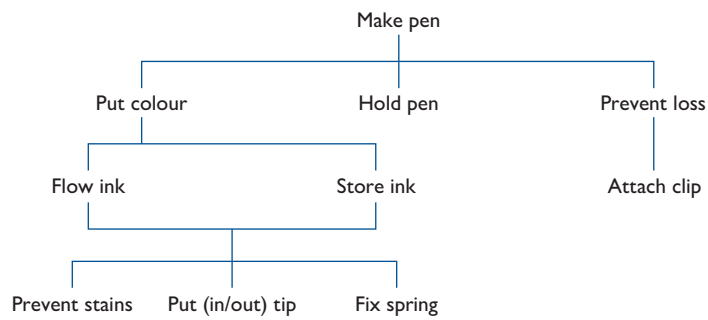


Table 8.6 A cost function analysis of the parts of a ballpoint pen

Part numbers	*Names of parts*	*Functions*		*Cost (£)*
		Transitive verb	Noun	
1	Tip	Flow	Ink	0.50
2	Barrel	Hold	Pen	0.70
3	Cartridge	Store	Ink	0.23
4	Top	Store	Ink	0.15
5	Ink	Put	Colour	0.10
6	Cap	Pull in/out	Tip	0.01
7	Spring	Pull in/out	Tip	0.09
8	Stopper	Fix	Spring	0.10
9	Clip	Prevent	Loss	0.10
10	Screw	Attach	Clip	0.02
				2.00

the cost of each function is high, reasonable or low – that is, whether or not it represents good value.

It should be noted that, of itself, cost function analysis does not provide savings or solutions. The purpose of such analysis is to:

- provide the VA team with an in-depth understanding of the VA project by identifying the purpose of each element of cost.
- indicate what functions provide poor value or where, because of the high cost of a function relative to the total cost of the activity, there is a potential for reducing cost or increasing value.

Assume that, as a result of the cost function analysis, the ballpoint pen is redesigned, using the components shown in Figure 8.14. Also, assume that, by negotiating with suppliers and dealing with new suppliers, the price for Part no. 1 has been reduced, but the cost of Part no. 2 has slightly increased as it now incorporates former Part no. 6.

The new cost function matrix is as shown in Table 8.7.

- The above approach is particularly useful when the aim is to produce an item to a target cost. The aim in the above example might have been to produce a ballpoint

Figure 8.14 The components of the ballpoint pen after redesigning

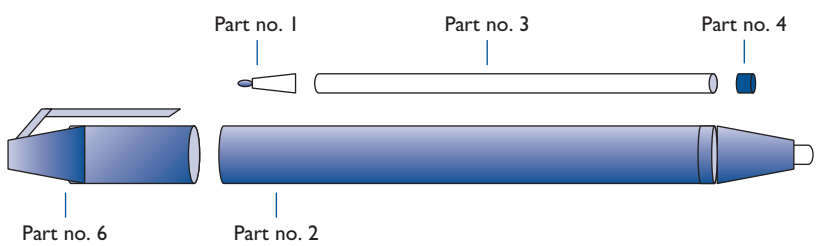


Table 8.7 Revised cost function analysis of the parts of the redesigned ballpoint pen

Part numbers	*Names of parts*	*Functions*		*Cost (£)*
		Transitive verb	Noun	
1	Tip	Flow	Ink	0.40
2	Barrel	Hold	Pen	0.80
3	Cartridge	Store	Ink	0.23
4	Top	Store	Ink	0.15
5	Ink	Put	Colour	0.10
6	Cap	Pull in/out	Tip	0.01
				1.69

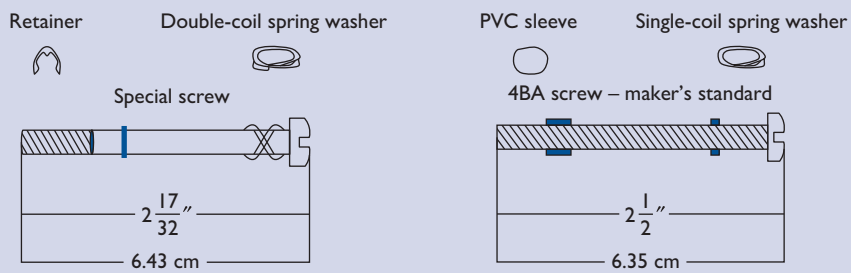
pen at a target cost of below £1.75 (the component prices given in the example are for example only and bear no relation to reality).

- In general, the more components required to make an item, the greater the complexity. The greater the complexity, the greater the cost. Product(s) should therefore be designed with as few components as possible.
- Wherever possible, standard components should be used. Non-standard components increase costs and reduce flexibility. Standard components can be obtained from many suppliers, with short lead times at low cost and in smaller quantities.

8.11.9 Two simple examples of VA

Example 8.2

Example of VA

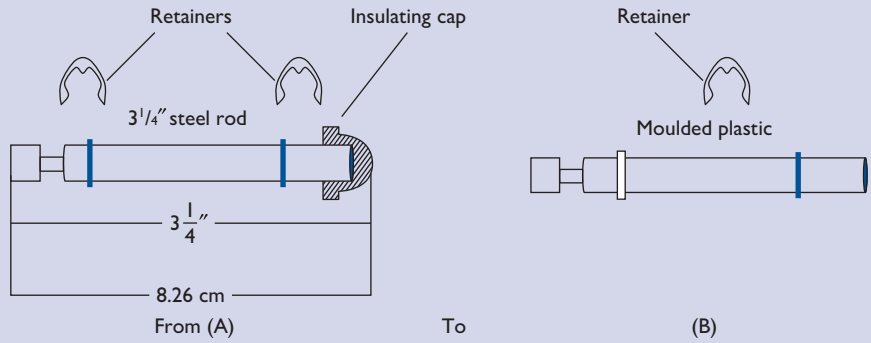


The function of the connecting screw shown in A is to secure parts and carry electrical current, the retainer holding the two items loosely together as a subassembly when the screw is released from a third point.

In B, a maker's standard screw is now in use, the retainer being replaced by a small PVC sleeve. A single-coil spring washer takes the place of the double-coil one. Total saving = 76 per cent.

Example 8.3

Another example of VA



A push rod moving a contact operates against springs under digital pressure. It had been a machined steel rod with two retainers (for the springs) and an insulating cap because, on occasions, direct digital contact would be made (A).

It was decided to mould the rod in plastic, complete with a flange to replace one retainer. The insulating cap is no longer necessary because the rod itself is now an insulator. The cost of the new mould was recovered in less than four months and a total saving made of 60 per cent.

8.11.10 Value and procurement

Two quotations from Miles,[35] himself a procurement agent, indicate the close relationship between VE, VA, VM and procurement:

> Close and extensive relationships must exist between procurement and value analysis.
>
> Effective value analysis greatly improves the grade and degree of procurement work and efficient execution of certain procurement activities greatly improve the degree and amount of value analysis accomplishments.

VA and VE can enhance procurement performance by creating a value culture that permeates every aspect of procurement activity. Procurement, as a boundary-spanning activity, has the opportunity to increase value as a result of its internal interactions and external involvements. As members of a VA team, representatives of procurement can, inter alia, make the following contributions:

- Provide essential information on such matters as:
  - the capabilities of existing or potential suppliers
  - availability of substitutes for existing outputs
  - quality issues
  - prices and costs of suggested alternatives
  - delivery times
  - legal, economic, ethical and environmental issues
  - make-or-buy decisions.

- Provide a procurement perspective to contrast with the perspectives of design and production representatives on the value project team.
- Establish buyer–supplier relationships. Procurement can work closely with suppliers to reduce costs, improve quality and shorten lead times. It can also be a link between the value team and suppliers so that the latter can also be a source of innovation and creativity. Hartley[36] suggests that collaborative arrangements between purchasers and suppliers, such as partnerships, co-development, co-ownership and supplier associations can provide such benefits as:
  - access to the supplier's knowledge
  - greater understanding by the supplier of the customer's needs
  - greater trust
  - suppliers learning about VA
  - increased supplier motivation.

By active and aggressive participation in VA, procurement professionals will not only enhance their individual reputations but also the status of procurement throughout their organisation and, often, with suppliers.

Discussion questions

8.1 Can you identify the role of procurement in managing quality throughout the complete cycle of events from specification through to end-of-life of a product?

8.2 What is the difference between an output specification and a prescriptive specification? Which one would you believe a supplier would prefer and why?

8.3 Take two similar products, such as two washing machines or two vacuum cleaners and compare them to Garvin's eight dimensions of quality. On the basis of your comparison, recommend which of the two you consider gives the best value for money.

8.4 An important aspect of *kaizen* is the creation of a quality culture. One definition of 'culture' is:

> 'The system of shared values, beliefs and habits within an organisation, that interacts with the formal structure to produce behavioural norms'.

(a) How would you go about creating a quality culture?
(b) How might a quality culture sometimes clash with marketing and production cultures?

8.5 With what 'quality guru' do you associate the following?
(a) quality loss function
(b) *poka-yoke*
(c) 'It is always cheaper to do the job right first time'.
(d) 'Quality is fitness for purpose'.
(e) robust design.

8.6 Are there different quality considerations when you purchase a service as opposed to a manufactured good?

8.7 What are Purdy's four principles that should be observed by all specification writers?

8.8 BS 7373: 3:2005 suggests ten headings for a specification. How many can you recall?

8.9 Standards have roughly five areas of application. What are they?

8.10 If you are purchasing an off-the-shelf software product, how do you know what quality standard has been applied in its production?

8.11 When buyers negotiate a price they are certain to reduce the quality! Do you agree?

8.12 An international airline may purchase meals from suppliers in many different countries. The suppliers will purchase the ingredients from many suppliers. How is it possible to manage quality in such a complex business situation?

8.13 A manufacturer of high-performance, high-quality automotives has recently had new vehicles catching fire when being driven. The manufacturer has decided to recall all 250 cars that have been sold. What are the implications if:
(a) the fault is due to a manufacturing problem in their own factory?
(b) the fault is due to a part supplied by a strategic supplier?

8.14 How would you define FMEA? What are the main objectives of FMEA?

8.15 What is a definition of value management? What contribution does procurement make to the overall performance of an organisation?

8.16 The US DoD has applied value engineering to a wide range of purchases. How would you approach applying value engineering to the following procurement categories:
(a) learning and development?
(b) construction work?
(c) facilities management?
(d) hire of vehicles?

8.17 If a company providing your organisation with a range of back-office services did not have ISO 9001:2008 registration, what arguments would you use to persuade them to obtain the registration?

8.18 Quality of services and products is an essential contractual requirement. What do your terms and conditions of contract say about quality?

8.19 If you were asked to lead a quality inspection of a strategic supplier how would you approach each of the following:
(a) those who should be part of the inspection team?
(b) the role of procurement?
(c) the evidence that you would require to prove compliance with all the specification requirements?
(d) the benefits of 'spot' inspections?

8.20 What exactly does the term 'cost of quality' mean? Can you give ten examples of the cost of quality?

References

[1] Crosby, P. B., *Quality Is Free*, Mentor Books, 1980, p. 15

[2] Juran, J. M., *Quality Control Handbook*, 3rd edn, McGraw-Hill, 1974, section 2, p. 27

[3] Garvin, D. A., 'What does product quality really mean?', *Sloan Management Review*, Fall, 1984, pp. 25–38

[4] Garvin, D. A., 'Competing in eight dimensions of quality', *Harvard Business Review*, November/December, No. 6, 1987, p. 101

[5] Hitt, R., Ireland, D. and Hoskisson, R., *Strategic Management: Competitiveness and Globalization*, South-Western College Publishing

[6] Logothetis, N., *Managing Total Quality*, Prentice Hall, 1991, pp. 216–217

[7] As 3 above

[8] DTI, *Total Quality Management and Effective Leadership*, 1991, p. 8

[9] Evans, J. R., *Applied Production and Operations Management*, 4th edn, 1993, p. 837

[10] See Table 8.1

[11] See Table 8.1

[12] As 3 above, p. 10

[13] Cannon, S., 'Supplying the service to the internal customer', *Purchasing and Supply Management*, April, 1995, pp. 32–35

[14] Zairi, M., *Total Quality Management for Engineers*, Woodhead Publishing, 1991, p. 193

[15] As 14 above, p. 216

[16] BSI, *British Standards Specification* (BS) 7373

[17] Purdy, D. C., *A Guide to Writing Successful Engineering Specifications*, McGraw-Hill, 1991

[18] The Office of Government Commerce, 'Specification writing', *CUP Guidance Note 30*, CUP, 1991

[19] Product Specifications. Guide to Identifying Criteria for Specifying a Service Offering, British Standards Institute, 21 December, 2005, ISBN 0580474372

[20] As 17 above

[21] England, W. B., *Modern Procurement Management: Principles and Cases*, 5th edn, Richard D. Irwin, 1970, p. 306

[22] Fitchett, P. and Haslam, J. M., *Writing Engineering Specifications*, E. and F. N. Spon, 1988, p. 31

[23] Woodroffe, G., 'So, farewell then, market overt', *Purchasing and Supply Management*, February, 1995, pp. 16–17

[24] Ashton, T. C., 'National and International Standards', in Lock, D. (ed.) *Gower Handbook of Quality Management*, 2nd edn, 1994, pp. 144–145

[25] Risk in ISO 9001:2015 ISO/TC 176/SC2. Document N1222, July 2014, International Organisation for Standardisation

[26] BS EN ISO 8402 1995, section 3.5, pp. 25–26

[27] BS EN ISO 8402 1995, section 3.4, p. 25

[28] Schonberger, R. J., *Building a Chain of Customers*, Free Press, 1992

[29] Taguchi, G., *Introduction to Quality Engineering*, Asian Productivity Organisation, 1986, p. 1

[30] Ford Motor Co. Ltd, *Failure Mode and Effects Analysis Handbook*, 1992, p. 22

[31] As 29 above, pp. 24–25

[32] See website http://www.brianfarrington.co.uk/

[33] BSI 'PD6663:2000 Guidelines to BS EN 12973 Value Management', BSI, 2000, p. 26

[34] Miller, J., 'The evolution of value analysis', NAPM, *Insights*, 1 December, 1993, pp. 13–14. Original source of this checklist was George Fridholm Associates

[35] Miles, L. D., *Techniques of Value Analysis and Value Engineering*, 3rd edn, McGraw-Hill, 1989, p. 243

[36] Hartley, J. L., 'Collaborative value analysis: experiences from the automotive industry', *Journal of Supply Chain Management*, Vol 36, 2000, pp. 27–36

Chapter 9

Matching supply with demand

Learning outcomes

With reference to procurement and supply management, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- inventory and inventory management
- the impact of inventory on working capital
- the tools of inventory management
- dependent and independent demand
- 'push', 'pull' and hybrid demand systems
- inventory control
- engagement of the supplier in inventory decisions
- supply chain considerations.

Key ideas

- Inventory classifications.
- ABC analysis.
- Barcoding and RFID technology.
- Acquisition, holding and stockout costs.
- Safety stocks.
- Approaches to forecasting.
- Economic order quantities (EOQs) and periodic systems.
- Just-in-time (JIT) systems and their objectives.
- JIT II.
- MRP, MRP II, ERP, DRP and VMI systems.

9.1 Inventory, logistics and supply chain management

The Institute of Logistics and Transport[1] defines inventory as:
A term used to describe:

- all the goods and materials held by an organisation for sale or use
- a list of items held in stock.

An alternative definition is:[2]

> Materials in a supply chain or in a segment of a supply chain, expressed in quantities, locations and/or values (synonym stock).

As shown in Figure 3.2, inventory and its management are related both to materials management (MM) and physical distribution management (PDM). MM and PDM together constitute logistics management, or the process of managing both the movement and storage of goods and materials from their source to the point of ultimate consumption. As logistics is an aspect of the wider subject of supply chain management (SCM), it follows that inventory is a key business consideration in the attempt to achieve supply chain optimisation. As indicated in section 3.5, control of inventory is also an important element in demand management, which constitutes one of the eight supply chain processes identified by the International Centre for Competitive Excellence. In this chapter, inventory and demand management are considered primarily from the standpoints of materials management and production.

9.2 Reasons for keeping inventory

Notwithstanding such developments as just-in-time (JIT), discussed later in this chapter, computer-based production methods and the aims of lean production, there are a number of reasons why most organisations keep inventory. These include wanting to:

- reduce the risk of supplier failure or uncertainty – safety and buffer stocks are held to provide some protection against such contingencies as strikes, transport breakdowns due to floods or other adverse weather conditions, crop failures, wars and similar factors
- protect against lead time uncertainties, such as where supplier's replenishment and lead times are not known with certainty – in such cases an investment in safety stocks is necessary if customer service is to be maintained at acceptable levels
- meet unexpected demands, or, demands for customisation of products as with agile production
- smooth seasonal or cyclical demand
- take advantage of lots or purchase quantities in excess of what is required for immediate consumption to take advantage of price and quantity discounts
- hedge against anticipated shortage and price increases, especially in times of high inflation or as a deliberate policy of speculation
- ensure rapid replenishment of items in constant demand, such as maintenance supplies and office stationery.

9.3 Inventory classifications

The term 'supplies' has been defined as:[3]

> All the materials, goods and services used in the enterprise regardless of whether they are purchased outside, transferred from another branch of the company or manufactured in-house.

The classification of supplies for inventory purposes will vary according to the particular organisation/business. In a manufacturing enterprise, for example, inventory might be classified as:

- raw materials – steel, timber, chemicals and so on in an unprocessed state awaiting conversion into a product
- components and sub-assemblies – ball bearings, gearboxes, and so on that are to be incorporated into an end product
- consumables – all supplies in an undertaking classified as indirect and that do not form part of a saleable product and that may be sub classified into production (such as detergents), maintenance (such as lubricating oil), office (such as stationery), welfare (such as first-aid supplies) and so on – all of which are often referred to as maintenance, repair and operating (MRO) items
- finished goods – products manufactured for resale that are ready for dispatch.

Following supply chain usage, inventory may also be classified into:

- primary inventory – raw materials, components and sub-assemblies, work-in-progress (WIP) and finished goods
- support inventories – MRO consumables of various categories.

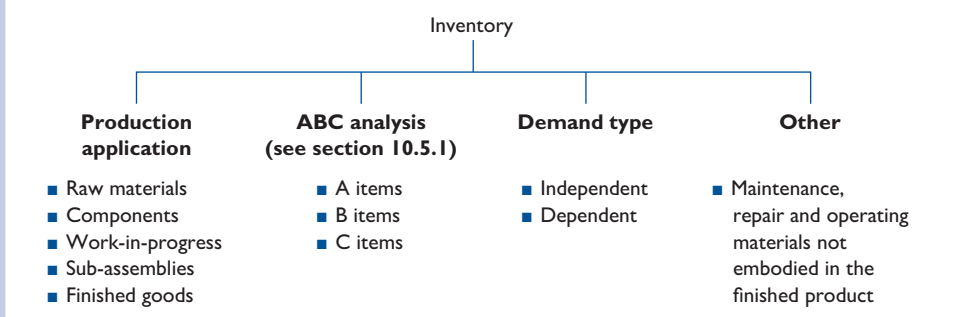
A third classification is shown in Figure 9.1.

9.4 Scope and aims of inventory management

9.4.1 The scope of inventory management

Inventory management covers a wide variety of activities. These activities will vary from organisation to organisation. The scope of inventory management will also

Figure 9.1 Inventory classifications



be influenced according to whether it is primarily concerned with MM or PDM or centralised or decentralised. There is clearly a significant difference in the complexity of managing inventory based at a single location and that where inventory is located at possibly hundreds of distribution centres. Globalisation is another factor that increases the complexity of inventory management. Irrespective of such considerations, however, inventory management is likely to be comprised of such activities as:

- demand management – ensuring that required operational and maintenance supplies are available in the right quantities and at the right time
- forecasting future demand requirements
- managing items with difficult supply and demand patterns related to seasonal demand, changes in end use applications or meeting demands for the customisation of products
- reviewing safety stock levels and controlling minimum and maximum amounts of inventory in terms of both quantity and value
- implementing lean inventory policies, such as JIT contracts to minimise investment in inventory
- liaising with procurement to ensure that supplies are replenished in accordance with corporate and procurement policies
- developing cost-effective systems and procedures relating to the ordering, procurement and budgeting of supplies
- controlling the receipt, inspection (where necessary), recording, location and issue of supplies to users
- ensuring the safety and security of supplies and the avoidance of loss as a result of deterioration, theft, waste and obsolescence
- coordination of inventory to ensure that supplies can be rapidly located
- variety reduction and standardisation of inventory
- preparation and interpretation of reports on stock levels, stock usage and surplus stock
- liaison with auditors regarding all aspects of inventory
- appropriate disposal of scrap, surplus and obsolete items.

9.4.2 The aims of inventory management

The four main aims of inventory management are to:

- provide both internal and external customers with the required service levels in terms of quantity and order rate fill
- ascertain present and future requirements for all types of inventory to avoid overstocking while avoiding 'bottlenecks' in production

- keep costs to a minimum by variety reduction, economical lot sizes and analysis of costs incurred in obtaining and carrying inventories
- provide upstream and downstream inventory visibility in the supply chain.

9.5 Some tools of inventory management

ABC analysis, barcoding, radio frequency identification (RFID) and inventory software are four important tools of inventory management.

9.5.1 ABC analysis

A household will buy many different items in the course of a year. The weekly shopping will include a number of basic food items, such as bread, milk, vegetables and so on. These basic food items may account for the bulk of the annual expenditure in shops. Because these items are so important in the household budget, it is worth taking care to choose a shop that gives good value. Information about the prices charged elsewhere can be obtained from advertisements and visits to other retail outlets. In ABC analysis these items are known as Class A items. They merit close day-to-day control because of their budgetary importance.

Other items, such as replacement rubber washers for water taps, may be needed occasionally. A packet of washers costs between 30 and 50 pence. Spending hours comparing the prices of these at different suppliers does not make economic sense. The possible saving is, at most, a few pence and a year or more may elapse before another packet is needed. Items like these that account for only a small proportion of spending, are known as Class C items.

Class B is the set of items that is intermediate between Class A and Class C. They should be regularly reviewed but are not as closely controlled as Class A items.

The Italian statistician Vilfredo Pareto (1848–1923) discovered a common statistical effect. About 20 per cent of the population own 80 per cent of the nation's wealth. About 20 per cent of employees cause 80 per cent of problems. About 20 per cent of items account for 80 per cent of a firm's expenditure. The two terms 'Pareto analysis' and 'ABC analysis' are used interchangeably.

Table 9.1 summarises the main points of ABC analysis. In the table, the term 'usage' means the value in money terms of the stock items consumed.

The following example illustrates how items may be divided into classes A, B or C.

Table 9.1 ABC analysis

	Percentage of items	*Percentage value of annual usage*	
Class A items	About 20%	About 80%	Close day-to-day control
Class B items	About 30%	About 15%	Regular review
Class C items	About 50%	About 5%	Infrequent review

Example 9.1

ABC analysis

A procurement department surveyed the ten most commonly used components last year.

Item number	101	102	103	104	105	106	107	108	109	110
Unit cost (pence)	5	11	15	8	7	16	20	4	9	12
Annual demand	48,000	2,000	300	800	4,800	1,200	18,000	300	5,000	500

Step 1

Calculate the annual usage in £s and the usage of each item as a percentage of the total cost.

Item number	*Unit cost (pence)*	*Annual demand*	*Usage (£)* $\frac{\text{Demand} \times \text{Cost}}{100}$	*Usage as % of total* $\frac{\text{Usage} \times 100}{\text{Total}}$
101	5	48,000	2400	32.5%
102	11	2,000	220	3.0%
103	15	300	45	0.6%
104	8	800	64	0.9%
105	7	4,800	336	4.5%
106	16	1,200	192	2.6%
107	20	18,000	3600	48.8%
108	4	300	12	0.2%
109	9	5,000	450	6.1%
110	12	500	60	0.8%
Total usage			7379	

Step 2

Sort the items by usage as a percentage of the total. Calculate the cumulative percentage and classify the items (see Table 9.2).

Table 9.2 Calculations for step 2

Item number	*Cumulative % of items (*)*	*Unit cost (pence)*	*Annual demand*	*Usage (£)*	*% of total*	*Cumulative % of total*	*Classification*
107	10	20	18,000	3600	48.8	48.8	A
101	20	5	48,000	2400	32.5	81.3	A
109	30	9	5,000	450	6.1	87.4	B
105	40	7	4,800	336	4.5	91.9	B
102	50	11	2,000	220	3.0	94.9	B
106	60	16	1,200	192	2.6	97.5	B
104	70	8	800	64	0.9	98.4	C
110	80	12	500	60	0.8	99.2	C
103	90	15	300	45	0.6	99.8	C
108	100	4	300	12	0.2	100.0	C

*Column 2 – There are 10 items, so each item accounts for 10/100 = 10% of usage

Step 3

Report your findings (see Table 9.3).

Table 9.3 Results of calculations for step 3

Items	*Item number*	*Percentage of items*	*Percentage usage*	*Action*
A	107, 101	20	81.3	Close control
B	109, 105, 102, 106	40	16.2	Regular review
C	104, 110, 103, 108	40	2.5	Infrequent review

Step 4

Illustrate your report with a diagram if required. The diagram is a percentage ogive and is called a Pareto diagram. This is done by plotting the cumulative percentage usage against the cumulative percentage of items. The data needed has been extracted to create Table 9.4.

Table 9.4 Data for Pareto diagram for step 4

Item number	107	101	109	105	102	106	104	110	103	108
Cumulative % items	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Cumulative % usage	48.8	81.3	87.4	91.9	94.9	97.5	98.4	99.2	99.8	100
Classification	A	A	B	B	B	B	C	C	C	C

In practice, there may be hundreds of items in inventory and use. Computer software can easily determine the percentage of annual usage for each item and sort the items into A, B or C categories.

9.5.2 Barcoding

Invented in the 1950s, barcodes accelerate the flow of products and information throughout business. The most familiar example of the use of barcodes is electronic point of sale (EPOS), which is when retail sales are recorded by scanning product barcodes at checkout tills. An EPOS system verifies checks and charges transactions, provides instant sales reports, monitors and changes prices and sends intra-store and inter-store messages and data.

Some production applications for barcoding include:

- counting raw materials and finished goods inventories
- automatic sorting of cartons and bins on conveyor belts and palletisers
- lot tracking
- production reporting
- automatic warehouse applications, including receiving, put away, picking and shipping
- identification of production bottlenecks
- package tracking
- access control
- tool cribs and spare parts issue.

Barcoding provides the following benefits:

- *Faster data entry* – barcode scanners can record data five to seven times as fast as a skilled typist.
- *Greater accuracy* – keyboard data entry creates an average of one error in 300 keystrokes, but barcode entry has an error rate of about 1 in 3 million.
- *Reduced labour costs* – as a result of time saved and increased productivity.
- *Elimination of costly overstocking or understocking* and the increased efficiency of JIT inventory systems.
- *Better decision making* – barcode systems can easily capture information that would be difficult to collect in other ways, which helps managers to make fully informed decisions.
- Faster access to information.
- The ability to automate warehousing.
- Greater responsiveness to customers and suppliers.

9.5.3 Radio frequency identification (RFID)

An RFID tag contains a silicon chip that carries an identification number and an antenna able to transmit the number to a reading device. This means improved inventory management and replenishment practices, which, in turn, results in a reduction of interrupted production or lost sales due to items being out of stock.

The reduction in the cost of silicon chips to a point where they can be used to track high-volume, low-cost stores and individual items rather than an aggregate SKU (stock keeping unit) is revolutionary in its implications for inventory control and intelligence.

The following advantages and limitations of RFID technology are listed by GS1 UK.[4]

Advantages

- *Line of sight* – tags can be read without being visible to the scanner. They can be read as long as they pass through the field emitted by the reader. This reduces manual handling and, therefore, cost.
- *Range* – tags can be read over a very long range – many hundreds of metres in the case of specialised tags. RFID devices used in mass logistics applications need a range of at least 1 metre and up to 4 or 5 metres.
- *Bulk read* – many tags can be read in a short space of time – a typical read rate is hundreds of tags per second.
- *Selectivity* – data can be inserted into the tags so that they are only read if the value requested from the reader is the same as the value embedded within the tag. This allows the reader to read only pallets or only outer cases.
- *Durability* – barcodes can be ripped, soiled and performance is impaired if they become wet. These are not issues that affect RFID tags.
- *Read/write* – data incorporated within the tags can be updated to accommodate simple changes in status – such as 'paid for' or 'not paid for' retail electronic article surveillance tags – or more complicated information, such as a car's warranty and service history.

Limitations

- *Cost* – RFID tags will always be more expensive than barcodes. The cost is offset by the extra business benefits that RFID technology can provide. It is envisaged that the cost of tags will drop dramatically as production volumes are increased.
- *Moisture* – depending on the frequency used, radio waves may be absorbed by moisture in the product or the environment.
- *Metal* – radio waves are distorted by metal. This means that tags might be unable to be read if there is metal within packaging or the environment (warehouse automation).
- *Electrical interference* – electronic noise, such as fluorescent lights or electric motors, may produce interference with radio frequency communications.
- *Accuracy* – it can be difficult to identify and read specific tags separately from all the others that are within the range of the reader. For example, when attempting to read a tag identifying a pallet, the reader may also read the tags on all the cases on the pallet as well.
- *Overcompensation* – additional data stored within the tag will provide functionality. However, this will increase both the cost of the tag and the time required to read it.
- *Security* – the ability to write information into tags is one of the main benefits of RFID technology. The mechanism required, however, needs to be secure to ensure that rogue parties are unable to write false information into the tag.

9.5.4 Software

Numerous software programs are available, providing complete inventory and stock management systems. Such software can provide such facilities as maintaining supplier and customer databases, create picking lists and receipts, provide instantaneous stock balances and automatic reordering, barcode reading, support grouping of inventory items, remove barriers between suppliers and customers, enhance profitability and implement such approaches as JIT, MRO, ERP, DRP and VMI, described later in this chapter.

9.6 The economics of inventory

The economics of inventory management and stock control are determined by an analysis of the costs incurred in obtaining and carrying inventories under the following headings.

9.6.1 Acquisition costs

Many of the costs incurred in placing an order are incurred irrespective of the order size, so, for example, the cost of an order will be the same irrespective of whether 1 or 1000 tonnes are ordered. Ordering costs include:

- preliminary costs – preparing the requisition, vendor selection, administering the procurement process
- placement costs – order preparation, stationery, postage
- post-placement costs – progressing, receipt of goods, materials, handling, inspection, certification and payment of invoices.

In practice, it is difficult to obtain more than an approximate idea of ordering costs as these vary according to:

- the complexity of the order and the seniority of staff involved
- whether order preparation is manual or computerised
- whether or not repeat orders cost less than initial orders.

Sometimes the total cost of a procurement department or function over a given period is divided by the number of purchase orders placed in that time. This gives a completely false figure as the average cost per order reduces as the number of orders placed increases, which may be indicative of inefficiency rather than the converse.

9.6.2 Holding costs

There are two types of holding costs:

- cost proportional to the value of the inventory such as:
  - financial costs, such as interest on capital tied up in inventory, which may be bank rate or, more realistically, the target return on capital required by the enterprise
  - cost of insurance
  - losses in value due to deterioration, obsolescence and pilfering.
- cost proportional to the physical characteristics of inventory such as:
  - storage costs – storage space, stores' space charges, light, heat and power
  - labour costs, relating to handling and inspection
  - clerical costs, relating to stores' records and documentation.

9.6.3 Cost of stockouts

The costs of stockouts – the costs of being out of inventory – include:

- loss of production output
- costs of idle time and of fixed overheads spread over a reduced level of output
- costs of any action taken to deal with the stockout, such as buying from another stockist at an enhanced price, switching production, obtaining substitute materials
- loss of customer goodwill due to the inability to supply or late delivery.

Often the costs of stockouts are hidden in overhead costs. Where the costs of individual stockouts are computed, these should be expressed in annual figures to ensure compatibility with acquisition and holding costs. Costs of stockouts are difficult to estimate or incorporate into inventory models.

9.7 Inventory performance measures

A number of key performance indicators (KPIs) have been devised to measure the extent to which an undertaking has the right quantity of inventory in the right place at the right time. Some of the most useful performance indicators are the following.

- *Lead times* – the length of time taken to obtain or supply a requirement from the time a need is ascertained to the time the need is satisfied.
- *Service levels* – the actual service level attained in a given period, which can be ascertained from the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Number of times the item is provided on demand}}{\text{Number of times the item has been demanded}}$$

  Service levels are closely related to safety stocks, as shown later.
- *Rate of stock turn* – this indicates the number of times that a stock item has been sold and replaced in a given period and is calculated by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Sales or issues}}{\text{Average inventory (at selling price)}}$$

  What is considered a good stock turn varies by product and industry. Turnover of supermarket breakfast foods is 20–25 times that of pet foods. For car showrooms, a stock turn of six means that, on average, the stock of a particular car changes every two months.
- *Stockouts in a given period* – this can be expressed as a percentage of the total stock population during a given period.
- *Stock cover* – this is the opposite of stock turn and indicates the number of days the current stock of a stock keeping unit (SKU) will last if sales or usage continues at the anticipated rate. As an historic figure, it can be calculated by dividing the rate of stock turn into the yearly number of working days or 365 to give the average days' cover. For a simple SKU it can be calculated as:

$$\text{Days' stock coverage} = \frac{\text{Current quantity in stock}}{\text{Anticipated future daily rate of usage or sales}}$$

The ratio can be used to evaluate the effect of longer lead times or the danger of imminent stockouts.

9.8 Safety stocks and service levels

Safety stock is needed to cover shortages due to the agreed lead time being exceeded or the actual demand being greater than that anticipated.

Figure 9.2 shows that the service levels and safety stock are related. Thus, by increasing the investment on inventory, service levels can be increased.

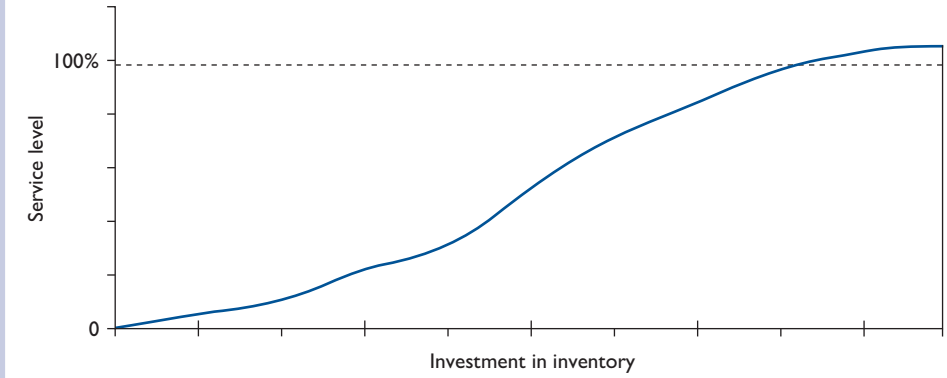
For single items, an extra investment in inventory (higher levels of safety stock) will always increase customer service levels. Conversely, higher service levels imply larger quantities of safety stocks and an increased investment in inventory.

It is not possible to achieve 100 per cent service levels for the total inventory. High levels of safety stocks for all items would be uneconomical and the costs would be prohibitive.

JIT implies a low level of or zero inventory. This is achieved by removing uncertainty regarding supply. Safety stock is a cost-adding factor and so should, as far as possible, be eliminated.

If the uncertainty regarding supply cannot be eliminated, safety stocks are required.

Figure 9.2 Service level to inventory trade-off curve



In practice, the items that have high stockout costs can be identified by ABC analysis and, for such items, an acceptable risk of stockout should be determined.

Statistical theory provides methods for ensuring that the chances of a stockout do not exceed an acceptable risk level.

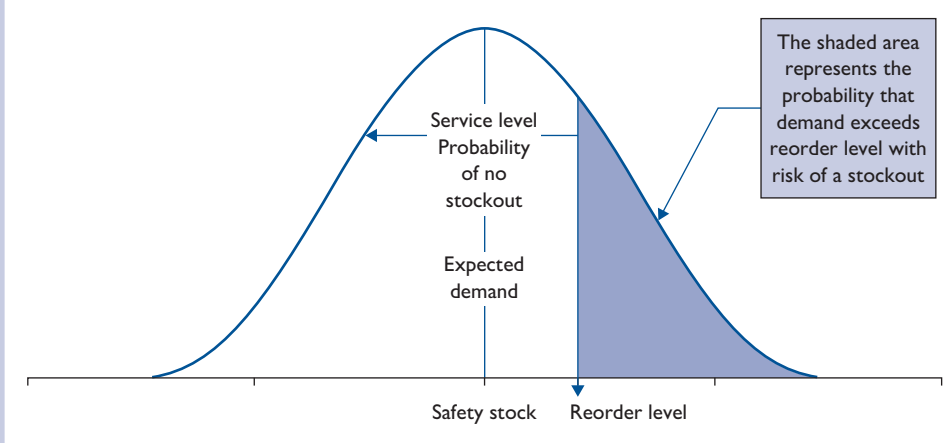
The probability that demand exceeds a particular distribution during a given lead time can be found from the normal distribution (see Figure 9.3).

Tables of this distribution, such as Table 9.5, are found in statistics textbooks.

- For each SKU, find the data on which the order was placed and the date of delivery. From stores' records, calculate the demand between these dates.
- Find the mean or arithmetic average demand during the lead time:

$$\text{Mean(x)} = \frac{\text{Sum of the demands}}{\text{Number of lead times}} = \frac{\Sigma x}{n}$$

Figure 9.3 The normal distribution curve



- Calculate the standard deviation (s or σ) of demand from the formulae:

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma(x - \bar{x})^2}{n-1}} \text{ or } \sqrt{\frac{\Sigma x^2 - \frac{(\Sigma x)^2}{n}}{n-1}}$$

Table 9.5 Probabilities table

Reorder levels in standard deviations above the mean	*Service level %*	*Probability of a stockout %*
1.00	84.13	15.87
1.05	85.31	14.69
1.10	86.43	13.57
1.15	87.49	12.51
1.20	88.49	11.51
1.25	89.44	10.56
1.30	90.32	9.68
1.35	91.15	8.85
1.40	91.92	8.08
1.45	92.65	7.35
1.50	93.32	6.68
1.55	93.94	6.06
1.60	94.52	5.48
1.65	95.05	4.95
1.70	95.54	4.46
1.75	95.99	4.01
1.80	96.41	3.59
1.85	96.78	3.22
1.90	97.13	2.87
1.95	97.44	2.56
2.00	97.72	2.28
2.05	97.98	2.02
2.10	98.21	1.79
2.15	98.42	1.58
2.20	98.61	1.39
2.25	98.78	1.22
2.30	98.93	1.07
2.35	99.06	0.94
2.40	99.18	0.82
2.45	99.29	0.71
2.50	99.38	0.62
2.55	99.46	0.54
2.60	99.53	0.47
2.65	99.60	0.40
2.70	99.65	0.35
2.75	99.70	0.30
2.80	99.74	0.26
2.85	99.78	0.22
2.90	99.81	0.19
2.95	99.84	0.16
3.00	99.87	0.13

or by using the statistical functions on your calculator or spreadsheet. In simple terms, calculating the standard deviation involves the following steps:

1 Determine the mean (average (x)) of the set of numbers:

$$1, 2, 3, 4, 5 = \frac{15}{5} = x = 3$$

2 Determine the difference between each number and the mean:

$$(1) = -2,\ (2) = -1,\ (3) = 0,\ (4) = +1,\ (5) = +2$$

3 Square each difference:

$$+4 \quad +1 \quad 0 \quad +1 \quad +4 \quad = \quad 10$$

4 Calculate the square root of $10/(n-1) = \sqrt{(10/4)} = \sqrt{2.5}$

$$\text{Standard deviation } (\sigma) = 1.58$$

The reorder level required and stockout probability can then be found from Table 9.5.

Example 9.2

Calculating the required reorder level

The average (mean) demand is 10. A 99 per cent service level is required – that is, the probability of stockout is 1 per cent or less. Assume an average reorder level of 140.

Table 9.5 shows that, for a service level of 99.1 per cent, the reorder level should be 2.35 standard deviations above the mean.

Thus, the reorder level is $140 + (2.35 \times 10) = 163.5$ or 164.

9.9 The right quantity

In manufacturing or assembly-type organisations, the most important factors that determine the right quantity are as follows:

- The demand for the final product into which the bought-out materials and components are incorporated.
- The inventory policy of the undertaking.
- Whether job, batch, assembly or process production methods are applicable.
- Whether demand for the item is independent or dependent (see section 9.10).
- The service level – that is, the incidence of availability required. The service level required for an item may be set at 100 per cent for items where a stockout would result in great expense due to production delays or, as with some hospital supplies, where lack of supplies may endanger life. For less crucial supplies, the service level might be fixed at a lower level, such as 95 per cent. The actual service level attained in a given period can be computed by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Number of times the item is provided on demand in period}}{\text{Number of times an item has been demanded in period}}$$

- Market conditions, such as financial, political and other considerations that determine whether or not requirements shall be purchased on a 'hand-to-mouth' or 'forward' basis.
- Factors determining economic order quantities (see section 9.13.2). In individual undertakings, the quantity of an item to be purchased over a period may be ordered or notified to purchasing in several ways, as shown in Table 9.6.

9.10 The nature of demand

When forecasting the future requirements for supplies, we have to distinguish between independent demand and dependent demand.

The main points of difference are set out in Table 9.7.

As shown in Figure 9.4, the distinction between dependent and independent demand is fundamental to inventory management.

9.11 Forecasting demand

9.11.1 What is forecasting?

Forecasting, which may be defined as the prediction of future outcomes, is the basis of all planning and decision making. We listen to the weather forecasts, for example,

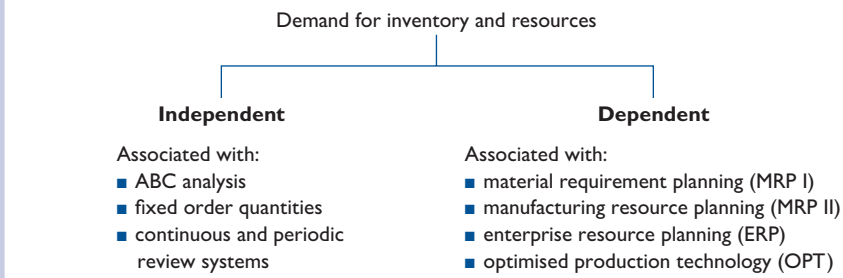
Table 9.6 Procurement and quantities

Type of purchase	*Indicators of quantities*
Materials or components required for a specific order or application, such as steel sections not normally stocked	■ Material specifications or bill of material for the job or contract
Standard items kept in stock for regular production, whether job, batch or continuous flow	■ Materials budgets derived from production budgets based on sales/output target for a specified period ■ One-off material specifications or bills of materials showing quantities of each item needed to make one unit of finished product. These are then multiplied by the number of products to be manufactured ■ Material requisitions raised by storekeeping or stock control ■ Computerised reports provided at specified intervals – daily, weekly – relating to part usage, stocks on hand, on order and committed. With some programs, reordering can be carried out automatically
Consumable materials used in production, plant, maintenance or office administration, such as oil, paint, stationery and packing materials	■ Requisitions from stores or stock control or computerised inventory reports as above. These may be ordered directly by users against previously negotiated contracts or procurement consortia arrangements
Spares – these may be kept to maintain production machinery or bought-out components for resale to customers who have bought the product in which the component is incorporated	■ Requisitions from sales department ■ Computerised inventory reports as above

Table 9.7 The main differences between independent and dependent demand

Independent demand	*Dependent demand*
Independent demand items are finished goods or other end items	Dependent demand items are typically sub-assemblies or components used during the production of a finished or end product
Demand for independent items cannot be precisely forecast	Demand is derived from the number of units to be produced – for example, demand for 1000 cars will give rise to a derived demand for 5000 car wheels

Figure 9.4 Demand situation



before planning a picnic. Similarly, the decision to enlarge a factory will be based on a forecast of increased demand for the product manufactured.

Forecasts, however, are rarely spot on, simply because they are always based on assumptions that may be wrong or affected by unforeseen events, such as war, economic and social factors and even the weather. All forecasts, therefore, are subject to uncertainty. This uncertainty will be enhanced as the time horizon of the forecast increases.

9.11.2 Forecasting issues

Forecasting involves asking six basic questions.

1 *What is the purpose of the forecast?* The answer to this question determines the accuracy required and expenditure on the resources necessary to obtain the required information.

2 *What is the time horizon?* All forecasts must have a time limit. Forecasts may be classified as being for the long, medium or short term.

   – Long-term forecasts – with time horizons exceeding two years – usually apply to strategic planning and carry the greatest uncertainty.

   – Medium-term forecasts – with time horizons of between three months and two years – apply to both strategic and tactical planning and carry less uncertainty than long-term forecasts.

– Short-term forecasts – with time horizons of less than three months – apply to tactical planning and are likely to achieve a high level of accuracy.

The above times are, however, arbitrary and depend on circumstances. Thus, long, medium and short term may equally be one year, between three months and one year and three months respectively.

3 *What forecasting technique(s) is/are most appropriate?* See Figure 9.5.

4 *On what data must the forecast be based and how shall it be analysed?* This depends on the purpose of the forecast, the accuracy required and the resources available for forecasting.

5 *In what form shall the completed forecast be presented?* This will normally be in some form of report stating the purpose of the forecast, what assumptions have been made, the forecasting techniques used and the forecasts or conclusions reached.

6 *How accurate is the forecast?* All forecasts should be monitored to ascertain the degree of accuracy achieved. Where actual events are substantially different from those predicted, the forecast, assumptions, techniques and validity of the data must be examined and, where necessary, the original forecast revised.

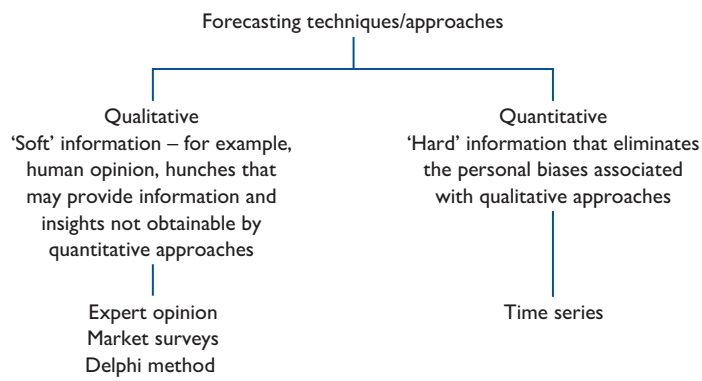
9.11.3 Forecasting techniques

As shown in Figure 9.5, forecasting techniques or approaches fall into two broad categories.

9.11.4 Qualitative approaches

- *Expert systems* – gathering judgments or opinions from people with special knowledge or experience. Such people may be executives, external consultants or sales or production personnel who have first-hand experience of what customers require or operating problems encountered. The value of their opinions, however, depends on the knowledge and experience of those giving them. Experts are sometimes wrong.

Figure 9.5 Forecasting techniques



- *Test marketing* – this is frequently used as a forecasting technique in connection with new products to ascertain the percentage of customers likely to adopt the product. It may also be used to work out why sales are declining or what aspects of competing products appeal to buyers. It can also be used to see how a product will sell under actual conditions and the success of advertising and sales promotion campaigns. It has been estimated that only about a third of products tested in this way are finally put into production. An extension of test marketing is the market survey, which uses published data and survey techniques to find out what the total market is for all products serving a similar purpose, such as family cars, and the percentage of the market likely to be achieved by an individual manufacturer.
- *Delphi method* – named after the ancient Greek religious site where the gods were believed to communicate answers to humans' questions about the future, this technique involves the following four steps.

  1 Estimates or forecasts are solicited from knowledgeable people within a company or industry about the matter under consideration. The names of the people approached are not known to each other.

  2 Statistical averages of the forecasts are computed. If there is a high level of agreement about the forecasts, the procedure ends there.

  3 If, as often happens, there is considerable divergence between the forecasts, the group averages are presented to the individuals who made the original forecasts, asking them why their forecasts differ from the average or group consensus and asking for new estimates.

  4 Steps 2 and 3 are repeated until agreement is reached.

  The Delphi method is particularly useful where there is a lack of historical information on which to base a more objective forecast and predict changes in technology.

9.11.5 Quantitative approaches

A *time series* is a set of observations measured at successive times over successive periods. Time series forecasting methods make the assumption that past patterns in data can be used to forecast future data points. Time series demand consists of the following five components:

1 *average* – the mean of the observations over time

2 *trend* – a gradual increase or decrease in the average over time – a trend pattern exists when there is a long-term pattern of growth (upwards trend) or decline (downwards trend) in sales

3 *seasonal influence* – a predictable short-term cycling behaviour due to the time of day, week, month or season, so, for example, sales of swimming costumes are greater in the summer than the winter

4 *cyclical movement* – unpredictable long-term cyclical behaviour due to business or product/service lifecycles. Sales of dishwashers, refrigerators and similar household appliances reflect a fairly constant cyclical pattern

5 *random error* – the remaining variation that cannot be explained by the other four components, such as when sales fluctuate in an erratic manner and reflect inconsistency.

The most frequently used methods of calculating time series are moving averages and exponentially weighted averages.

9.11.6 Moving averages

A *moving average* is an artificially constructed time series in which each annual (or monthly, daily and so on) figure is replaced by the average or mean of itself and values corresponding to a number of preceding and succeeding periods.

Example 9.3

Moving averages

The usage of a stock item for six successive periods was 90, 84, 100, 108, 116 and 127. If a five-period moving average is required, the first term will be:

$$\frac{90 + 84 + 100 + 108 + 116}{5} = 99.6$$

The average for the second term is:

$$\frac{84 + 100 + 108 + 116 + 127}{5} = 107$$

At each step, one term of the original series is dropped and another introduced. The averages, as calculated for each period, will then be plotted on a graph. There is no precise rule about the number of periods to use when calculating a moving average. The most suitable, obtained by trial and error, is that which best smooths out fluctuations. A useful guide is to assess the number of periods between consecutive peaks and troughs and use this.

9.11.7 Exponentially weighted average method (EWAM)

The moving average method has been largely discarded for inventory applications as it has a number of disadvantages:

- it requires a large number of separate calculations
- a true forecast cannot be made until the required number of time periods have elapsed
- all data are equally weighted, but, in practice, the older the demand data, the less relevant it becomes in forecasting future requirements
- the sensitivity of a moving average is inversely proportional to the number of data values included in the average.

These difficulties are overcome by using a series of weights with decreasing values that converge at infinity to produce a total sum of one. Such a series, known as an *exponential series*, takes the form:

$$a + a(1 - a) + a(1 - a)2 + a(1 - a)3 \ldots = 1$$

where a is a constant between 0 and 1.

In practice, the values of 0.1 and 0.2 are most frequently used. Where a small value such as 0.1 is chosen as the constant, the response, based on the average of a considerable number of past periods, will be slow and gradual. A high value – $a = 0.5$ – will result in 'nervous' estimates responding quickly to actual changes. With exponential smoothing, all that is necessary is to adjust the previous forecast by a fraction of the difference between the old forecast and the actual demand for the previous period; that is, the new average forecast is:

$$a \text{ (actual demand)} + (1-a) \text{ (previous average forecast)}$$

Example 9.4

Exponentially weighted average

The actual demand for a stock item during the month of January was 300 against a forecast of 280. Assuming a weighting of 0.2, what will be the average demand forecast for February?

Solution

$$0.2(300) + (1 - 0.2)(280) = 60 + 224$$

Forecast for February = 284. By subtracting the average computed for the previous month from that calculated for the current month, we obtain the trend of demand.

9.11.8 The bullwhip effect

All forecasting depends on the reliability of the information on which the forecast is based. The so-called 'bullwhip effect' is the uncertainty caused by information flowing upstream and downstream in the supply chain. In particular, forecasts of demand become less reliable as they move up the supply chain from users or retailers to wholesalers, to manufacturers, to suppliers. Conversely, the forecast demand variability, though present, lessens as the point of forecast moves downstream.

The most common drivers of demand distortion are:

- unforecasted sales promotions, which have a ripple effect throughout the supply chain
- sales incentive plans when extended to, say, three months often result in sales distortion
- lack of customer confidence in the ability of suppliers to deliver orders on time, leading to over ordering
- cancellation of orders, often resulting from previous over ordering
- freight incentives, such as transportation discounts for volume orders, that may cause customers to accumulate orders and then order in bulk.

The results of the bullwhip effect are:

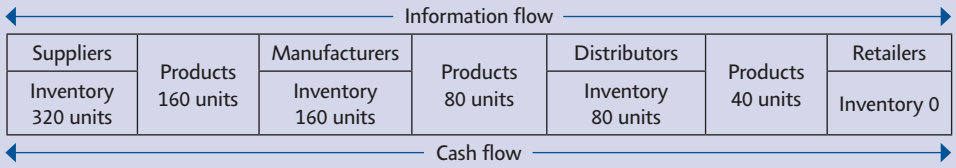
- excessive inventory quantities
- poor customer service

- cash flow problems
- stockouts
- high material costs, overtime expenses and transport costs.

Example 9.5

Impact of supply disruption due to the bullwhip effect

Customer demand forecast is 40 units.



The distributor anticipates a shortage and decides to keep a buffer stock of twice the demand forecast.

To accommodate anticipated demand fluctuations, manufacturers also increase their inventories by twice that required.

The suppliers, at the head of the supply chain, receive the harshest impact of the bullwhip effect. The result is a general lack of coordination throughout the supply chain.

In a worst-case scenario, working capital reduces, costs increase, customer service is unsatisfactory, lead times lengthen, production needs to be rescheduled and sales are lost.

The fundamental approach to resolving the bullwhip problem is to ensure transparency and information sharing throughout the supply chain. Many of the problems can be avoided by relying less on forecasting and more on direct demand data. Supply chain systems that provide open communication and reliable demand data avoid situations in which small demand fluctuations become high variability swings at the production stage.

9.12 'Push' and 'pull' inventories

'Push' and 'pull' inventories derive from push and pull strategies.

A *push strategy* is when products are manufactured in anticipation of demand and production is based on long-term forecasts and, therefore, uncertain. Push-based supply chains are associated with high inventory levels and high manufacturing and transportation costs, due to the need to respond quickly to demand changes.

A *pull strategy* is when products are manufactured to specific orders rather than forecasts. Thus, demand is certain and inventory is low or non-existent. Because information about customer demand is quickly transmitted to the various supply chain participants, the bullwhip effect is avoided.

Figure 9.6 The push–pull concept

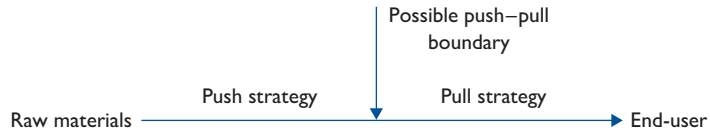
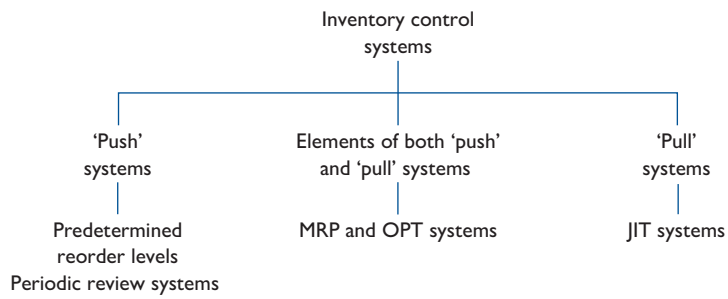


Figure 9.7 Inventory control system associated with different push and pull strategies



Push–pull strategies are those in which some (usually the first stages) of the supply chain are operated on a push basis and the remaining stages on a pull basis. The interface between the push-based and pull-based stages is known as the push–pull boundary and occurs at a place somewhere along the supply chain timeline. Postponement, which was mentioned earlier in section 4.6.3, aims to cater for customisation requirements by keeping products in a neutral or uncommitted state for as long as possible and this is a good example of a push–pull strategy. The concept of push–pull is shown in Figure 9.6.

The inventory control systems associated with each of the three above strategies are shown in Figure 9.7.

9.13 Independent demand

The nature of independent demand was discussed in section 9.10. Independent demand is related to 'push' systems as (see Figures 9.4 and 9.7) both are concerned with fixed order quantities and periodic review systems.

9.13.1 Fixed order quantities

With fixed order quantities, inventory is replenished with a predetermined quantity of stock every time the inventory falls to a specific order level. The reorder level is the quantity to be used during the lead replenishment time plus a reserve. This level can be calculated by using the formula:

$$\text{Maximum usage} \times \text{Maximum lead time}$$

Thus, if the lead time is 25 to 30 days and the maximum usage in the lead time is 200 units, then the reorder level will be:

$$200 \times 30 = 6000 \text{ units}$$

Reorder levels may be indicated by:

- simple manual methods, such as the two-bin system, which is that the stock of a particular item is kept in two bins and when the first bin is empty, a supply is reordered
- computerised systems, which trigger replacements when inventory has fallen to the specified reorder point – such systems usually use barcoding to record withdrawals from stock.

The fixed quantity is, however, usually based on an economic order quantity (EOQ).

9.13.2 Economic order quantity (EOQ)

The economic order quantity (EOQ) is the optimal ordering quantity for an item of stock that minimises cost.

To calculate the EOQ, a mathematical model of reality must be constructed. All mathematical models make assumptions that simplify reality. The model is only valid when the assumptions are true or nearly true, so, when an assumption is modified or deleted, a new model must be constructed.

The basic (or simple) EOQ model makes the following assumptions:

- demand is uniform – that is, certain, constant and continuous over time
- the lead time is constant and certain
- there is no limit on order size, due either to stores capacity or other constraints
- the cost of placing an order is independent of the size of the order – the delivery charge is also independent of the quantity ordered
- the cost of holding a unit of stock does not depend on the quantity in stock
- all prices are constant and certain – there are no bulk purchase discounts
- exactly the same quantity is ordered each time that a purchase is made.

The two basic types of inventory costs are:

1. acquisition (see section 9.6.1)
2. holding (see section 9.6.2).

There are several ways in which to calculate EOQs, but the basic formula is:

$$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{\frac{2DS}{CI}}$$

where:

EOQ = economic order quantity

C = cost of the item

I = annual carrying cost interest rate

D = annual anticipated demand

S = order cost per order

Example 9.6

Worked example of the basic EOQ formula

Assume the following figures:

- annual demand = 1500 units
- unit cost per item = £10
- cost per order = £50
- carrying cost interest rate = 20 per cent.

Then:

$$\text{EOQ} = \sqrt{\frac{2 \times 1500 \times £50}{10 \times 0.20}} = \sqrt{\frac{150{,}000}{2}} = \sqrt{75{,}000} = 274$$

In practice, the EOQ would be increased to 300 items ordered five times yearly.

It should be recognised, however, that the EOQ may be misleading for the following reasons:

- annual demand is a forecast, so it is unlikely to be an exact figure
- order costs are assumed to be constant, but these may change due to use or the introduction of e-procurement
- the interest rate is assumed to be constant, but, in practice, interest rates frequently change
- cost per item is likely to change in the course of a year, so we have to decide whether to use average cost, replacement cost, actual cost or anticipated future cost in the equation.

Many of the criticisms of EOQs derive from inaccurate data inputs, such as exaggerated carrying and order costs. Many ERP packages also have built-in programs that calculate EOQs automatically. Often, these built-in programs need modification to deal with changes in usages and products.

Sometimes EOQs are regarded as being in conflict with JIT approaches, but EOQs can be used to determine what items fit into the JIT model and what level of JIT is economically advantageous to the particular organisation.

While EOQs are not applicable to every inventory situation, they should be considered for repetitive procurement situations and MRO items.

9.13.3 Periodic review system

As the name implies, in this system an item's inventory position is reviewed periodically rather than at a fixed order point. The periods or intervals at which stock levels are reviewed will depend on the importance of the stock item and the costs of holding that item. A variable quantity will be ordered at each review to bring the stock level back to maximum – hence, the system is sometimes called the 'topping-up' system.

Maximum stock can be determined by adding one review period to the lead time, multiplying the sum by the average rate of usage and adding any safety stock. This can be expressed as:

$$M = W(T + L) + S$$

where:
M = predetermined stock level
W = average rate of stock usage
T = review period
L = lead time
S = safety stock

Safety stock may be calculated in a similar manner to that indicated for the fixed order point system.

Example 9.7

Periodic review system

Assume that:

- average rate of usage is 120 items per day
- review period is 4 weeks – say, 20 days
- lead time is 25 to 30 days
- safety stock is 900 items

$$M = 120\,(20 + 30) + 900 = 6900 \text{ items}$$

If, at the first review period, the stock was 4000 items, an order would be placed for 2900 items – that is, 6900 maximum stock minus actual stock at the review date.

9.13.4 Advantages and disadvantages of fixed order point and periodic review systems

Fixed order point

Advantages:

- on average, levels of stock are lower than with the periodic review system
- EOQs are applicable
- enhanced responsiveness to demand fluctuations
- replenishment orders are automatically generated at the appropriate time by comparing actual stock levels with reorder levels
- appropriate for widely differing inventory categories.

Disadvantages:

- the reordering system may become overloaded if many items of inventory reach their reorder levels simultaneously
- random reordering pattern, due to items coming up for replenishment at different times.

Periodic review

Advantages:

- greater chance of elimination of obsolete items due to periodic review of stock
- the procurement load may be spread more evenly, with possible economies in placing of orders
- large quantity discounts may be negotiated when a range of stock items is ordered from the same supplier at the same time
- production economies, due to more efficient production planning and lower set-up costs, may result from orders always being in the same sequence.

Disadvantages:

- on average, larger stocks are required than with fixed order point systems as reorder quantities must provide for the period between reviews as well as between lead times
- reorder quantities are not based on EOQs
- if the usage rate changes shortly after a review period, a stockout may occur before the next review date
- difficulties in determining appropriate review period, unless demands are reasonably consistent.

9.13.5 Choice of systems

- A fixed order point system is more appropriate if a stock item is used regularly and does not conform to the conditions for periodic review systems.
- A periodic review system is most likely to be appropriate if orders are placed with and delivered from suppliers at regular intervals, such as daily, monthly, or a number of different items are ordered from and delivered by the same supplier at the same time.

9.14 Dependent demand

Dependent demand is associated with pull systems and push–pull systems, discussed in section 9.12, and relates to just-in-time (JIT), materials and requirements planning (MRP), distribution requirements planning (DRP), enterprise resource planning (ERP) and vendor-managed inventory (VMI).

9.15 Just-in-time (JIT)

9.15.1 What is JIT?

The following comprehensive definition of JIT is provided by the American Production and Inventory Control Society:[5]

> A philosophy of manufacturing based on planned elimination of all waste and continuous improvement of productivity. It encompasses the successful execution of all manufacturing activities required to produce a final product from design engineering to delivery and

> including all stages of conversion from raw material onward. The primary elements include having only the required inventory when needed; to improve quality to zero defects; to reduce lead time by reducing set-up times, queue lengths and lot sizes; to incrementally revise the operations themselves; and to accomplish these things at minimum cost.

In short, JIT production is:

> Making what the customer needs, when it is needed and in the quantity needed using the minimum resources of people, materials and machinery.

From the above definitions, it can be seen that JIT is more than delivering an item where and when required and at the right time. JIT is both a production scheduling and inventory control technique and an aspect of total quality management (TQM). As a production control technique, it is concerned with adding value and eliminating waste by ensuring that any resources needed for a production operation – whether raw material, finished product or anything in between – are produced and available precisely when needed. This emphasis on waste elimination means that JIT is an essential element in lean production, discussed in section 4.5.2. As a philosophy that aims at zero defects or never allowing defective units from the preceding process to flow into and disrupt a subsequent process, it is an aspect of TQM.

A useful distinction may be made between its two forms:

- *BIG-JIT* or lean production focusing on all sources of waste, as outlined in the first of the above definitions
- *Little-JIT* focusing more narrowly on scheduling goods, inventories and providing resources where needed.

It is with 'little-JIT' that the present section is primarily concerned.

9.15.2 The background of JIT

JIT is generally agreed to have been developed by Taiichi Ohno, a vice-president of the Japanese Toyota motor company in the 1960s. It should be noted, however, that Henry Ford practised mass production with a JIT approach in 1921. By 1924, the production cycle of the Model T – from processing the core material to the final product – was only four days.

9.15.3 The objectives of JIT

These have been concisely summarised as:

- *zero defects* – all products will more than meet the quality expectations of the customer
- *zero set-up time* – no set-up time results in shorter production time, shorter production cycles and smaller inventories
- *zero inventories* – inventories, including work-in-progress, finished goods and sub-assemblies, will be reduced to zero – this is the opposite of the traditional manufacturing philosophy of maintaining buffer stocks as a precaution against unreliable suppliers or fluctuating demand
- *zero handling* – the elimination, so far as possible, of all non-value-adding activities
- *zero lead time* – in some markets, this is impossible, but the aim is to increase flexibility by using small batches of components or assemblies

- *lot size of one* – this makes it possible to adapt quickly when demand is changing so if, for example, the lot size is 200 and demand is changing, either the supplier or customer ends up with a quantity of inventory that will either never or only very slowly reduce.

The requirements for successful JIT:

- uniform master production schedules
- 'pull' production systems
- good customer-supplier relationships
- short distance between customer and supplier
- reliable delivery
- consistent quality with zero defects
- standardisation of components and methods
- material flow system.

9.15.4 JIT and kanban systems

The *kanban* system is an essential aspect of JIT. In Japanese, the word *kanban* means 'ticket' or 'signal' and in JIT refers to an information system in which instructions relating to the type and quantity of items to be withdrawn from the preceding manufacturing process are conveyed by a card that is attached to a storage and transport container. The card identifies the part number and contained capacity. The two principal types of *kanban* are:

- *production kanban, or P kanban* signals the need to produce more parts
- *conveyance kanban, or C kanban* signals the need to deliver more parts to the next work centre.

The operation of a two-card *kanban* system within a work cell is shown in Figure 9.8. The rules for operating a two-card *kanban* system are therefore:

- each container must have a *kanban* card
- parts are only 'pulled' – that is, the user centre must go for them
- no parts can be obtained without a conveyance *kanban*
- all containers hold standard quantities and only standard quantities can be used
- no extra production is permitted – production can only start with a production *kanban*.

It follows that the amount of work-in-progress inventory is equal to the number of *kanban* cards issued multiplied by the capacity of the container used. The *initial* number of *kanban* cards required is calculated by the formula:

$$\text{Number of K cards} = \frac{D(T_w + T_p)(1 + a)}{C}$$

Where:

D = average daily production rate, as indicated by the master production schedule

T_w = waiting time of *kanban* cards in decimal fractions of a day

T_p = the processing time per part in fractions of a day
C = the capacity of a standard container
a = a policy variable determined by the efficiency of the work centre using the part

Thus, if:

$$D = 100 \text{ parts/day},\ T_w = 0.25,\ T_p = 0.15,\ C = 10 \text{ and } a = 1$$

then the number of *kanban* cards will be:

$$\frac{100\,(0.25 + 0.15)(1 + 1)}{10} = 8$$

The dual card system described above is reportedly used by Toyota for car production. A more common approach is a one-card system, which signals requirements from the preceding work centre, as shown in Figure 9.9.

In Figure 9.9, a signal is sent back from the consuming work centre to the supplying work centre (or supplier). This is a signal:

- to send some more (a transfer batch), via a buffer stock
- to produce some more (a process batch), at the supplying work centre.

9.15.5 Benefits of JIT

The potential benefits of JIT to an organisation and its procurement function in particular, have been summarised by Schonberger and Ansari[6] as follows:

Figure 9.8 A two-card *kanban* system – the flow within a cell

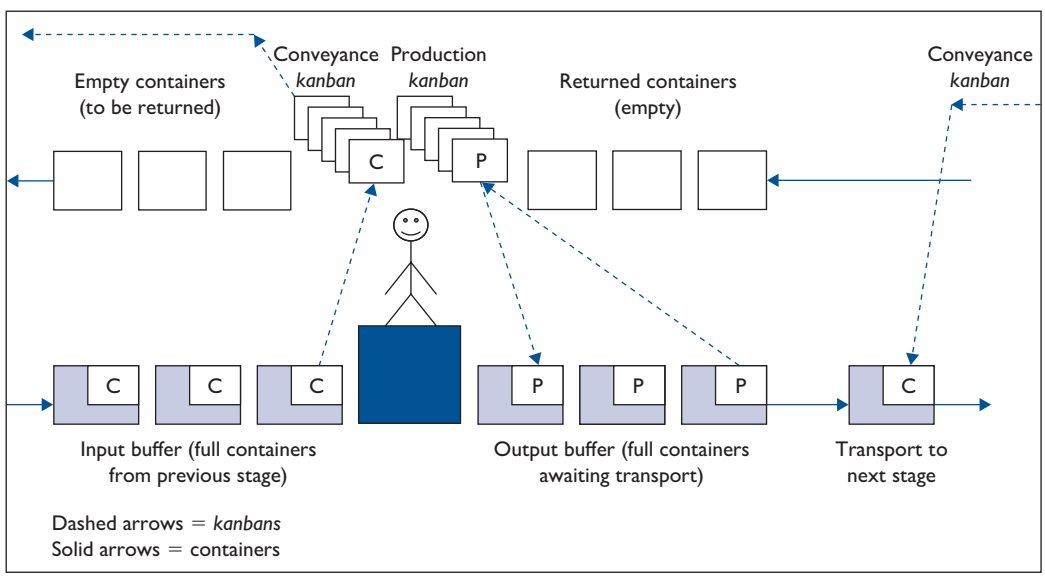
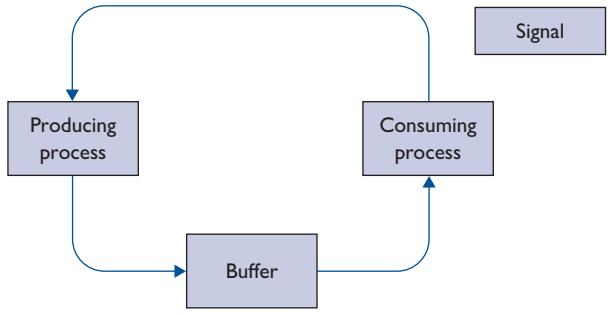


Figure 9.9 One-card system signalling requirements from previous work centre



- *part costs* – low scrap costs, low inventory carrying costs
- *quality* – fast detection and correction of unsatisfactory quality and, ultimately, higher quality of purchased parts
- *design* – fast response to engineering change requirements
- *administrative efficiency* – fewer suppliers, minimal expediting and order release work, simplified communications and receiving activities
- *productivity* – reduced rework, reduced inspection, reduced parts-related delays
- *capital requirements* – reduced inventories of purchased parts, raw materials, work-in-progress and finished goods.

9.15.6 Possible disadvantages of JIT

Some organisations have experienced problems with JIT for the following reasons:

- faulty forecasting of demand and inability of suppliers to move quickly to changes in demand
- JIT requires the provision of the necessary systems and methods of communication between purchasers and suppliers, ranging from vehicle telephones to EDI, so problems will arise if there is inadequate communication both internally – from production to procurement – and externally – from procurement to suppliers – and vice versa
- organisations with, ideally, no safety stocks are highly vulnerable to supply failures
- purely stockless buying is a fallacy – lack of low-cost C class items can halt a production line as easily as a failure in the delivery of high-priced A class items
- the advantages of buying in bulk at lower prices may outweigh the savings negotiated for JIT contracts as suppliers may increase their prices to cover costs of delivery, paperwork and storage required for JIT
- JIT is not generally suitable for bought-out items that have short lifecycles and are subject to rapid design changes
- JIT is more suitable for flow than batch production and may require a change from batch to flow methods, with consequent changes in the systems required to support the new methods

- even for manufacturers that mass-produce items, a substantial percentage of components are made by number, if not value, in batches, as well as a small number of high-value components, on dedicated flow lines
- apart from suppliers, JIT requires the total involvement of people from all disciplines and the breaking down of traditional barriers between functions within an organisation, which may involve a substantial investment in organisational development training
- Rhys *et al.*[7] have drawn attention to Japanese transport factors arising from some suppliers relocating at greater distances from purchasers (although these are normally still nearer to users than in Europe), road congestion and lighter vehicles – that is, for every one vehicle required in Europe, two or three are required in Japan, so JIT in Japan is now 'neither lean nor green'.

Further, Hayes and Pisano[8] suggest that the problems of implementing JIT derive from the fact that:

> most companies focus on the *mechanics* of JIT and TQM rather than on their *substance*, the skills and capabilities that enable a factory to excel and make it possible for improvement programmes to achieve their desired results. The consequence of this outlook is that managers have tended to view such programmes as solutions to specific problems rather than as stepping stones in an intended direction.

Hayes and Pisano also warn that, if an organisation lacks the skills, such as low set-up times and defect rates, that make JIT work, the adoption of the approach is likely to be costly. Adopting the system, will, however, provide strong incentives to develop such skills and induce an ethic of continuous improvement. Over time, a true JIT system may emerge.

9.15.7 JIT and procurement

Apart from the general commitment to JIT mentioned above, two things essential to the successful implementation of JIT are that:

- all parts must arrive where they are needed, when they are needed and in the exact quantity needed
- all parts arriving must be usable.

Where these requirements are not achieved, JIT may easily become 'just-too-late'.

In achieving these requirements, purchasing has the responsibilities summarised below.

- *Liaison with the design function* – the emphasis should be on *performance* rather than *design* specifications. Looser specifications enable suppliers to be more cost-effective by being more innovative with regard to the quality and function aspects of supplies. In JIT purchasing, value analysis is an integral part of the system and should include suppliers.
- *Liaison with suppliers* to ensure that they understand thoroughly the importance of consistently maintaining lead times and a high level of quality.
- *Investigation of the potential of suppliers* within reasonable proximity of the purchaser to increase certainty of delivery and reduction of lead time.

- *Establishing strong, long-term relationships with suppliers* in a mutual effort to reduce costs and share savings. This will be achieved by the purchaser's efforts to meet the supplier's expectations regarding:
  - continuity of custom
  - a fair price and profit margin
  - agreed adjustments to price when necessary
  - accurate forecasts of demand
  - firm and reasonably stable specifications
  - minimising order changes
  - smoothly timed order releases
  - involvement in design specifications
  - prompt payment.
- *Establishment of an effective supplier certification programme* which ensures that quality specifications are met before components leave the supplier so that receiving inspections are eliminated.
- *Evaluation of supplier performance* and the solving of difficulties as an exercise in cooperation.

9.15.8 JIT II

This is a registered trademark of the Bose Corporation and is a customer–supplier partnerships concept practised by a number of companies and their suppliers. In a JIT II relationship, a supplier's representative – referred to as an 'in-plant representative' – functions as a member of the customer's procurement department while being paid by the supplier. The representative issues purchase orders to his/her own company on behalf of the customer. The representative is also involved in such activities as design, production planning and value analysis.

It is claimed that this arrangement provides benefits to both the customer and the supplier.

From the customer's perspective, benefits include that because:

- the supplier's representatives are full-time employees of their customer's; they have ready access to information that can be used to reduce lead times and inventories, and lead time reductions due to JIT II partnerships are generally greater than those achieved with conventional JIT
- communications are improved because the representatives have a real-time awareness of the supplier's needs
- transportation costs are lower as a result of organisations partnering transportation companies to deliver incoming items
- the supplier is involved in concurrent design and value analysis so that it works with the customer from the inception of the design
- material costs are reduced by large orders with consequent discounts and lower transportation costs
- administrative costs are lower as there is a reduction in paperwork and the customer's procurement staff are released for other duties.

From the supplier's perspective, benefits include that:

- once a JIT II partnership has been agreed, an 'evergreen' contract is awarded, which has no end date and no requoting or tendering is required, and the resultant security enables the supplier to direct financial resources to managing the customer's account rather than seeking or renegotiating business.

JIT II is clearly not without risks and not always appropriate. There are various factors to be considered:

- the volume of business must be sufficient to assign a representative exclusively to one customer and, unless this is achieved, the JIT II approach may not be effective, so it is only an option for a customer to be able to place a very substantial volume of business with one supplier
- a supplier may be reluctant to share costs or processes with a customer and, conversely, a customer may be reluctant to divulge information about new designs or processes to a supplier
- a customer may be reluctant to award a long-term contract because of the fear that the supplier's performance might deteriorate.

Pragman[9] states that the JIT II concept has expanded from merely purchasing materials to include logistics, engineering and services. It does, however, demand a strategic alliance between partners based on trust.

9.16 Materials and requirements planning (MRP)

MRP, developed in the 1960s, is a technique that assists in the detailed planning of production and has the following characteristics:

- it is geared specifically to assembly operations
- it is a dependent demand technique
- it is a computer-based information system.

The aim is to make available either purchased or company manufacturing assemblies just before they are required by the next stage of production or for delivery. MRP enables items/batches to be tracked throughout the entire manufacturing process and assists procurement and control departments to move the right supplies at the right time to manufacturing or distribution points.

9.16.1 MRP and JIT

MRP has many similarities to JIT. Some comparisons are shown in Table 9.8.

JIT and MRP should not, however, be thought of as opposing systems. In many organisations, the two systems are successfully combined. For example, it is important that a strong MRP II (see section 9.17) planning environment will facilitate JIT execution. Ideally the two systems are not alternative but complementary.

Table 9.8 Comparison of MRP and JIT

Operating system characteristics	*MRP*	*JIT*
System	'Push' system	'Pull' system
Focus	Bottlenecks	'Quality'
Rates of output	Variable production plan	Level schedule
Work authorisation	Master production schedule	*Kanban*
Inventory status	Inventory no problem, but the less the better	Reducing inventory to zero
Administrative personnel	Increased	Fewer
Forms of control	Management reports	Shop floor, visual
Capacity adjustment	Capital requirements planning (deferred)	Visual, immediate (demand surge)
Scheduling	MRP says 'which job next'	*Kanban* says 'make it now'

9.16.2 MRP terminology

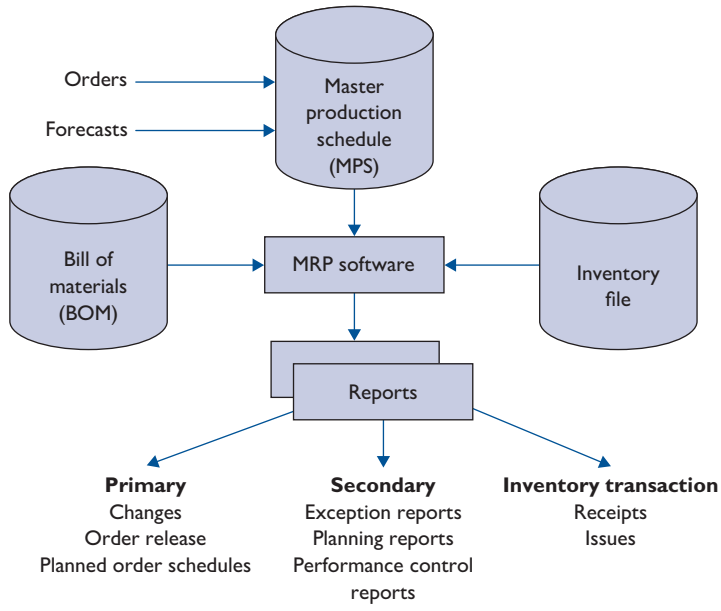
MRP has its own terminology, as follows:

- a *bill of materials*, or BOM, contains information on all the materials, components and sub-assemblies required to produce each end item
- an *end item*, or master scheduled item, is the final product sold to the customer and the inventory for end items, from the accounting standpoint, will either be work-in-progress or finished goods
- a *parent* is an item manufactured from one or more component items
- a *component* is one item that goes through one or more operations to be transformed into a parent
- an *intermediate item* is one that has at least one parent and one component – classified as work-in-progress
- a *sub-assembly*, as it is 'put together', rather than other means of transformation, is a special case of intermediate item
- a *purchased item* is one that has no components because it comes from a supplier but has one or more parents, so, for accounting purposes, inventory or purchased items, is regarded as raw materials
- *part commodity* is the extent to which a component (part) has one or more parents – a concept related to standardisation – so a standard ball bearing may have numerous parents
- *usage quantity*, which is the number of units of a component required to make one unit of its parent
- a *bucket* is a time period to which MRP relates, for example, one week.

9.16.3 The essential elements of an MRP system

These are shown in Figure 9.10.

Figure 9.10 Essential elements of an MRP system



9.16.4 MRP inputs and outputs

The process starts at the top level with a master production schedule (MPS). The information in the MPS comes from a number of sources, including orders actually received and forecasts of demand, usually produced using the forecasting techniques described earlier. Two key MPS activities are the determination of planning horizons for the end product and the size of time buckets.

- *The master production schedule(s) (MPS)* uses the inputs from marketing and sales to forecast demand for quantities of the final product over a planned time horizon subdivided into periods known as time buckets (see Figure 9.11). These buckets are not necessarily of equal duration. Without the MPS(s), MRP cannot generate requirements for any item.

Figure 9.11 Master production schedule

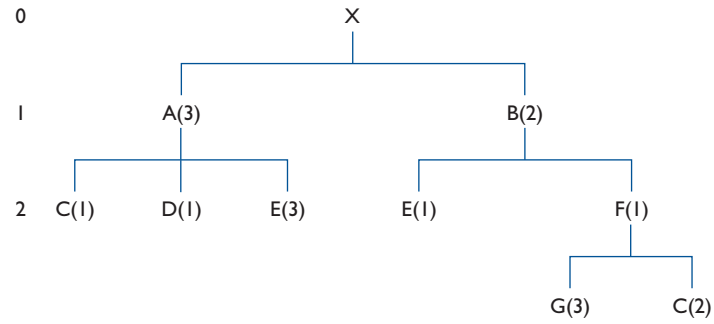
Week	1	2	3	4	5	6	Time horizon
Product X	30		14		10	8	Time buckets
Product Y		38	13	30	13	13	

- *The bill of materials file (BOM)* also known as the product structure, this lists all the items that comprise each assembly and sub-assembly that make up the final product or end item. Each BOM is given a level code according to the following logic:
  - Level 0: the final product or end item not used as a component of any other product
  - Level 1: direct component of a level 0 item
  - Level 2: direct component of a level 1 item
  - Level *n*: direct component of a level $(n - 1)$ item.

  Assume the demand for product X is 30 units. Each unit of X requires three units of A and two of B. Each A requires one C, one D and three Es. Each B requires one E and one F. Each F requires three Gs and two Cs. Thus, the demand for A, B, C, D, E, F and G is completely dependent on the demand for X. From the above information, we can construct a BOM or product structure for the related inventory requirements, as in Figure 9.12.
- *The inventory file* is the record of individual items of inventory and their status. The file is kept current by the online posting of inventory events, such as the receipt and issue of items of inventory or their return to store.
- *The MRP package* uses the information provided by the MPS, BOM and inventory files to:
  - explode or cascade the end product into its various assemblies, sub-assemblies or components at various levels, so the number of units of each item needed to produce 30 units of product X would be:

Part A = 3 × no. of Xs	3 × 30	= 90
Part B = 2 × no. of Xs	2 × 30	= 60
Part C = 1 × no. of As + 2 × no. of Fs	(1 × 90) + (2 × 60)	= 210
Part D = 1 × no. of As	1 × 90	= 90
Part E = 3 × no. of As + 1 × no. of Bs	(3 × 90) + (1 × 60)	= 330
Part F = 1 × no. of Bs	1 × 60	= 60
Part G = 3 × no. of Fs	3 × 60	= 180

Figure 9.12 Product structure for X



So, to produce 30 units of X, we shall need 90 units of A, 60 units of B, 210 units of C, 90 units of D, 330 units of E, 60 units of F and 180 units of G

– offset for lead time – lead times for each item must be fed into the system, then, subtracting them from the date of the net requirement so as to position the planned order release date in advance of the timing of the net requirement it covers is called *offsetting the lead time*

– net out on-hand and on-order balances using the equation:

$$\text{Net requirements} = \underbrace{\text{Gross requirements}}_{\text{Total requirements}} - \underbrace{\text{Inventory on hand} + \text{Units on order}}_{\text{Available inventory}}$$

In an MRP system, net requirement quantities are always related to some date or period – that is, they are time phased (as shown by Figure 9.11). The primary outputs of the MRP system are:

- order release instructions for the placement of planned – that is, future – production or purchasing orders
- rescheduling instructions notifying the need to advance or postpone open orders to adjust inventory coverage to net requirements
- expediting instructions that relate to overdue orders
- cancellation or suspension instructions relating to open orders.

MRP systems also have the capacity to produce much secondary data, such as reports relating to exceptions or deviations from normal planning and performance.

9.16.5 Applications of MRP

While having elements in common to all inventory situations, MRP is most applicable where:

- the demand for items is dependent
- the demand is discontinuous – 'lumpy' and non-uniform
- in job, batch and assembly or flow production, or where all three manufacturing methods are used.

9.17 Manufacturing resource planning (MRP II)

9.17.1 Definition

MRP II may be defined as:

> The extension of computerised MRP to link together such functions as production planning and control, engineering, procurement, marketing, financial/cost accounting and human resource management into an integrated decision support system.

In MRP II, the production process is still driven by a master production schedule, but additional inputs are received from production control, procurement and engineering. The computerised system also collects data to support financial or cost accounting, marketing and human resource management.

9.17.2 The advantages of MRP II

An overview of MRP II is provided by Figure 9.13.

- It coordinates the efforts of production, engineering, procurement, marketing and human resources to achieving a common strategy or business plan.
- Managers are able to analyse the 'What if . . . ?' implications of their decisions, such as what if the sales forecasts of marketing cannot be met by the available production capacity? What would be the financial implications of outsourcing?
- Better utilisation of marketing, finance and human resources in addition to physical plant and equipment.
- Changes can be easily factored into the system as they arise, such as rush orders.
- Cost of resources used or considered for use can be converted into money values, thus facilitating budgeting and budgetary control.
- Coordination of production with procurement, marketing and human resources in such ways as timing of supplies deliveries, using sales forecasts to determine master budgets and planning recruitment or run-down of personnel.

9.18 Enterprise resource planning (ERP)

9.18.1 What is ERP?

ERP is the latest and possibly the most significant development of MRP and MRP II. While MRP allowed manufacturers to track supplies, work-in-progress and the output of finished goods to meet sales orders, ERP is applicable to all organisations and allows managers from all functions or departments to have a consolidated view of what is or is not taking place throughout the enterprise. Most ERP systems are designed around a number of modules, each of which can be standalone or combined with others.

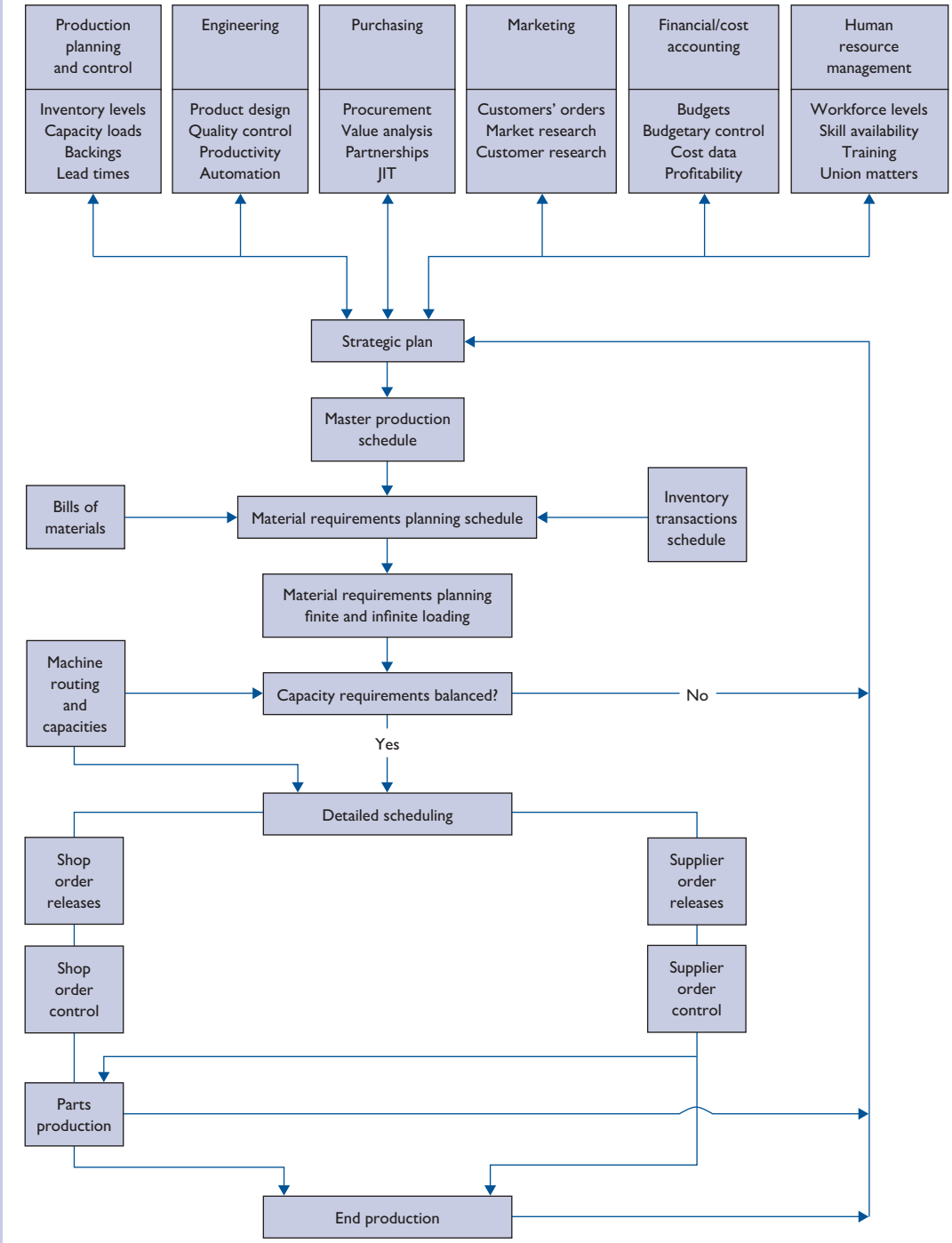
- *Finance* – this module tracks financial information, such as accounts receivable and payable, payroll and other financial and management accounting information throughout the enterprise.
- *Logistics* – this module is often broken down further into submodules covering inventory and warehouse management and transportation.
- *Manufacturing* – this module tracks the flow of orders or products, including MRP and the progress and coordination of manufacturing.
- *Supplier management* – this module tracks the procurement process, from requisitioning to the payment of suppliers, and monitors delivery of supplies and supplier performance.
- *Human resources* – this module covers many human resource management activities, including planning, training and job allocation.

ERP can be defined as:

> A business management system that, supported by multimodule application software, integrates all the departments or functions of an enterprise.

Initially, ERP systems were enterprise-centric. The development of the Internet and e-business has, however, made the sharing of accurate real-time information across the

Figure 9.13 An overview of an MRP II system



whole supply chain essential to business success. Gartner – the consultancy that coined the term ERP – now uses ERP II to refer to systems that facilitate collaborative commerce, or c-commerce, in which a key requirement is the sharing of information outside the enterprise. Some differences between ERP and ERP II are shown in Table 9.9.

9.18.2 The advantages of ERP

These can be summarised as:

- *faster inventory turnover* – manufacturers and distributors may increase inventory turns tenfold and reduce inventory costs by 10 to 40 per cent
- *improved customer service* – in many cases, an ERP system can increase fill rates to 80 or 90 per cent by providing the right product in the right place at the right time, thus increasing customer satisfaction
- *better inventory accuracy, fewer audits* – an ERP system can increase inventory accuracy to more than 90 per cent while reducing the need for physical inventory audits
- *reduced set-up times* – ERP can reduce set-up time by 25 to 80 per cent by grouping similar production jobs together, ensuring coordination of people, tools and machinery, together with the efficient use of equipment and minimising downtime by virtue of efficient maintenance
- *higher-quality work* – ERP software, with a strong manufacturing component, pro-actively pinpoints quality issues, providing the information required to increase production efficiency and reduce or eliminate rework
- *timely revenue collection and improved cash flow* – ERP gives manufacturers the power to proactively examine accounts receivable before problems occur instead of just reacting, which improves cash flow.

Table 9.9 Differences between ERP and ERP II

Factor	*ERP*	*ERP II*
Role	Concerned with optimising within an enterprise	Concerned with optimising across the whole supply chain by collaborating with business partners
Domain	Focused on manufacturing and distribution	Crosses all sectors and segments of business, including service industries, government and asset-based industries, such as mining
Function	General applications	Designed to meet the needs of specific industries, thereby providing steep functionality for users
Process	Internally focused	Externally focused, especially on connecting trading partners, irrespective of location
Architecture	Monolithic and closed	Web-based and open to integrating and interoperating with other systems. Built around modules or components that allow users to choose the functionality they require
Data	Information on ERP systems is generated and consumed within the enterprise	Information available across the whole supply chain to authorised participants

9.18.3 The disadvantages of ERP

- *ERP implementation is difficult* – this is because implementation involves a fundamental change from a functional to a process approach to business
- *ERP systems are expensive* – this is especially so when the customisation of standard modules to accommodate different business processes is involved – it has been estimated that some 50 per cent of ERP implementations fail to deliver the anticipated benefits and the cost is often prohibitive for small enterprises
- cost of training employees to use ERP systems can be high
- *there may be a number of unintended consequences* such as employee stress and a resistance to change and sharing information that was closely guarded by departments or functions
- *ERP systems tend to focus on operational decisions* and have relatively weak analytical capabilities (this topic is briefly dealt with below).

9.19 Supply chain management systems

While ERP systems can provide a great deal of planning capability, the various material, capacity and demand constraints are all considered separately in relative isolation from each other. Further, ERP systems have many tasks to fulfil. Analytical supply chain management systems, however, can consider all relevant factors simultaneously and perform real-time adjustments in the relevant constraints. Thus, while getting decisions or information from an overloaded ERP system can take hours, a separate SCM system may provide the required answers in minutes. SCM systems such as Technologies and Manugistics usually span all the supply chain stages and have the analytical capabilities to produce planning solutions and strategic-level conditions. Analytical systems do, however, rely on legacy systems or ERP systems to provide the information on which the analysis is based. Because of this, there is currently a rapid convergence of ERP and SCM software.

9.20 Distribution requirements planning (DRP)

9.20.1 What is DRP?

Distribution requirements planning (DRP) is an inventory control and scheduling technique that applies MRP principles to distribution inventories. It may also be regarded as a method of handling stock replenishment in a multi-echelon environment. An 'echelon' is defined by *Chamber's Dictionary* as 'A stepwise arrangement of troops, ships, planes, etc'. Applied to distribution, the term 'multi-echelon' means that, instead of independent control of the same item at different distribution points using EOQ formulae, the dependent demand at a higher echelon (such as a central warehouse) is derived from the requirements of lower echelons (such as regional warehouses). DRP is useful for both manufacturing organisations, such as car manufacturers that sell their cars via several distribution points, such as regional and local distributors, and purely merchandising organisations, such as supermarkets (see Figure 9.14).

All levels in a DRP multi-echelon structure are dependent, except for the level that serves the customer, which are the retailers in Figure 9.14.

Figure 9.14 A supermarket multi-echelon distribution system

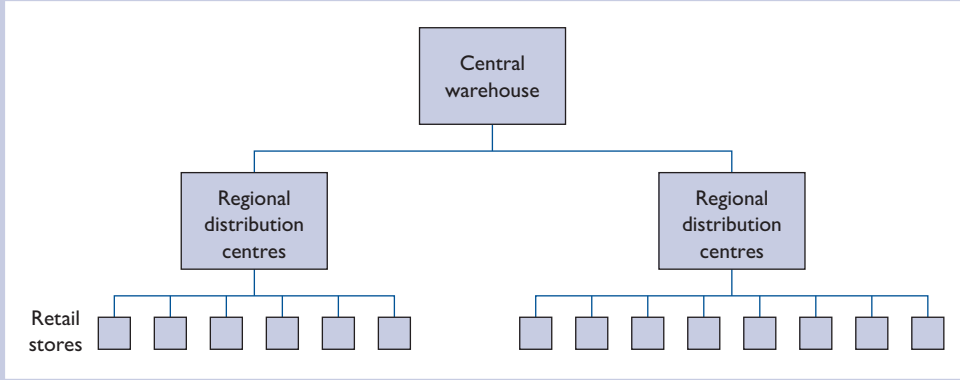


Table 9.10 Comparison of MRP and DRP

MRP	*DRP*
■ The bill of materials applies time-phased logic to components and sub-assemblies to products in the MOM (management of materials) network ■ An 'explosion' process from a master production schedule to the detailed scheduling of component replenishments ■ Goods in course of manufacture	■ The bill of distribution (the network) uses time-phased order point logic to determine network replenishment requirements ■ An 'implosion' process from the lowest levels of the network to the central distribution centre ■ Finished goods

9.20.2 DRP and MRP

DRP has been described as the mirror image of MRP. Some of the contrasts between the two approaches are set out in Table 9.10.

MRP and DRP approaches have, however, many common aspects:

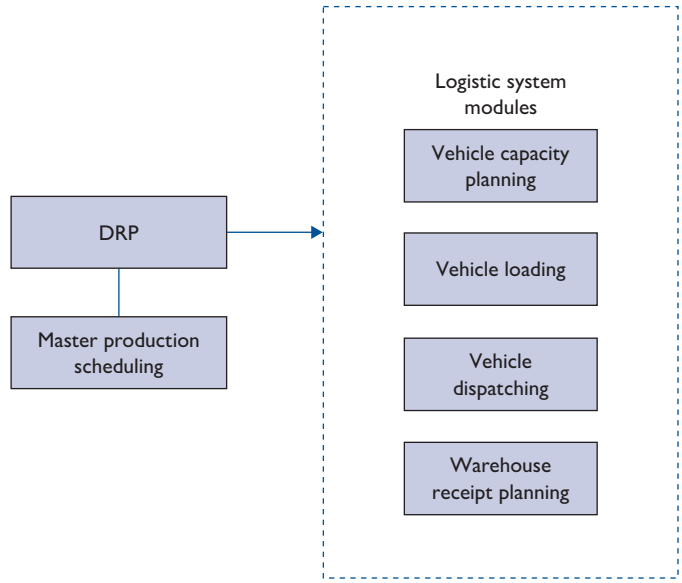
- as planning systems, neither uses a fixed or periodic review approach
- both are computerised systems
- just as MRP has been expanded into MRP II, so DRP has been expanded into DRP II
- DRP utilises record formats and processing logic consistent with MRP.

The last point is the most important of all as it provides the basis for integrating the database throughout the whole supply chain, from procurement through to distribution. Thus, both MRP and DRP contribute to a logistics system, as shown in Figure 9.15.

Thus as Vollman *et al.*[10] observe:

> Distribution requirements planning serves a central role in coordinating the flow of goods inside the factory with the system modules that place the goods in the hands of the customers. It provides the basis for integrating the manufacturing planning and control (MRP) system from the firm to the field.

Figure 9.15 Distribution requirements planning and logistics



Source: Adapted from Vollman, T. E., Berry, W. L. and Whybark, C. D., *Manufacturing Control Systems*, 2nd edition, Irwin, 1988, p. 788.

9.21 Vendor-managed inventory (VMI)

Vendor-managed inventory (VMI) is a JIT technique in which inventory replacement decisions are centralised with upstream manufacturers or distributors. Acronyms for VMI include:

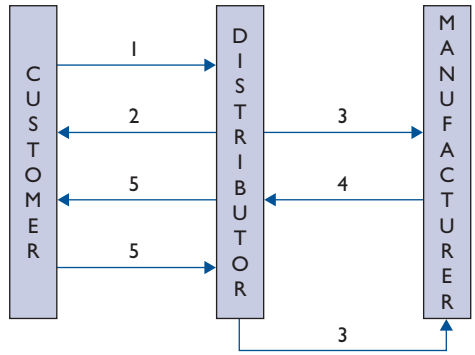
- continuous replenishment programs (CRP)
- supplier-assisted inventory management (SAIM)
- supplier-assisted inventory replenishment (SAIR)
- efficient consumer response (ECR).

VMI may also be considered to be an extension of distribution requirements planning (DRP).

9.21.1 The aim of VMI

This is to enable manufacturers or distributors to eliminate the need for customers to reorder, reduce or exclude inventory and obviate stockouts. With VMI, customers no longer 'pull' inventory from suppliers. Rather, inventory is automatically 'pushed' to customers as suppliers check customers' inventories and respond to previously agreed stock levels. VMI is particularly applicable to retail distribution. VMI can also relieve the customer of much of the expense of ordering and stocking low-value MRO items.

Figure 9.16 A simple VMI model



9.21.2 Implementing VMI

A simple model of VMI is shown in Figure 9.16.

This model is based on the assumption that the customer has entered into a collaborative or partnership agreement with a distributor, under which the latter agrees to stock a specified range of items and to satisfy specified service levels. In return, the customer undertakes to buy the specified items solely from the distributor and no longer keeps the items in stock. There must, therefore, be a high level of trust between the customer and the distributor.

The various steps in Figure 9.16 may be explained as follows:

Step 1 The customer sends information on items sold to the distributor. This information may be collected by barcoding and scanning technology and transmitted to the distributor by EDI or the Internet.

Step 2 The distributor processes the information and forwards an acknowledgement to the customer, giving details of the quantities and descriptions of the products to be delivered, delivery date and destination, and releases the goods.

Step 3 The distributor collects details of all the customer's orders, which are consolidated and sent daily to the manufacturers via EDI or the Internet.

Step 4 The manufacturer replenishes the distributor's stock.

Step 5 The distributor invoices the customer, who remits payment. Very large customers may transmit their requirements directly to the manufacturer, from whom they receive direct deliveries.

Normally, VMI implementation involves four stages:

1 *Preparation* – in addition to initial negotiations between a customer and the supplier and setting up project teams with clearly defined roles and responsibilities, this stage involves collaborative planning, forecasting and replenishment (CPFR), the aim of which is to minimise inventories and focus on value-added process activities. By focusing on the flow of supply to consumers without the complication of inventory, the project's participants can often discover previously undetected hidden bottlenecks in the flow that can be eliminated.

2 *Pre-implementation* – this is an extension of CPFR involving the determination of forecast quantities, safety stocks, lead time, service levels and key performance indicators and ownership issues.

3 *Implementation*

4 *Refinement* – improvements that may be made in the light of experience, including the resolution of technical difficulties encountered subsequent to implementation.

9.21.3 Advantages of VMI

VMI is advantageous to both suppliers and customers. For suppliers, the advantages include:

- *demand smoothing* – VMI information improves forecasts of customers' requirements, thereby enabling manufacturers to plan production to meet customer demand
- *long-term customer relationships* due to the high cost to the customer of switching to an alternative supplier
- *enhanced operational flexibility* enabling production times and quantities to be adjusted to suit the supplier.

For customers, the advantages include:

- *reduced administrative costs* due to the elimination of the need to monitor inventory levels, paper to computer entries and reduced reordering costs
- *enhanced working capital* due to reduced inventory levels and obsolescence and enhanced stock turn with improved cash flow
- *reduced lead times* with enhanced sales and a reduction of list sales due to stockouts.

9.21.4 Disadvantages of VMI

These also apply to both suppliers and customers. Disadvantages for suppliers include:

- *transfers of customer costs to the supplier* – these include those relating to administration and the cost of carrying increased inventory to meet customer demand
- *reduced working capital* due to the enhanced inventory and administration costs stated above.

Disadvantages for customers include:

- *increased risk* resulting from dependence on the manufacturer or distributor
- *disclosure of potentially sensitive information to the supplier* – the possession of such information will put the supplier in a strong position when a contract is renegotiated
- customers may be better positioned than suppliers to make replenishment decisions – Chopra and Meindl[11] point out that:

> One drawback to VMI arises because retailers often sell products from competing manufacturers that are substitutes in the customer's mind. For example, a customer may substitute detergent manufactured by Proctor & Gamble with detergent manufactured by Lever Brothers. If the retailer has a VMI agreement with both manufacturers, each will ignore the impact of substitution when making its inventory decisions. As a result, inventories at the retailer will be higher than optimal.

9.22 Procurement and inventory

Inventories are essential for business, financial and reputational reasons. The development of systems such as MRP, MRP II, ERP and VMI has meant that procurement as a supply chain activity has possibly less involvement, especially with dependent demand items. In many organisations, an inventory management function will be responsible for many of the activities outlined in this chapter. It is important, however, that procurement professionals should have a sound grasp of inventory management, for at least the following four reasons.

1 Inventory in many undertakings – for example, the construction industry – is an important asset. In some small companies, inventory may be the most important asset.

2 Inefficient inventory management will increase costs and reduce profitability. Too much working capital tied up in inventory can cause problems of cash flow, result in expensive borrowing and prevent desirable expenditure in other directions. There are also the ever-present risks of theft, deterioration and obsolescence. Conversely, holding inventory can, in a time of rising prices, be a source of windfall profits.

3 Holding inventory can enhance flexibility and provide competitive advantage, due to the ability to respond rapidly to customers' requirements, as with agile production. What inventory policy to pursue is therefore an important strategic business decision.

4 Efficient and effective inventory management can only be achieved with the cooperation of efficient and effective suppliers. The selection of such suppliers and negotiation of all aspects of contracts relating to inventory are activities in which procurement professionals should expect to play a leading role. The importance of sourcing is discussed in the next chapter.

Discussion questions

9.1 Can you explain the role of procurement in managing inventory in a business? Having explained the role, can you differentiate between this role in:

1 a fashion retailer?

2 engineering inventory in an international airline?

3 an automotive manufacturer?

9.2 Calculate the rate of stock turn using the following information:

Turnover at *selling* price	= £125,000
Mark-up	= 25%
Opening stock at *selling* price	= £160,000
Closing stock at *selling* price	= £70,000

9.3 Calculate the rate of stock turn using the following information:

Turnover at *cost* price	= £100,000
Opening stock at *cost* price	= £48,000
Closing stock at *cost* price	= £56,000

9.4 Do you agree with the concept of a supplier having consignment stock at the buyer's premises and the buyer only paying when the stock is used? Why?

9.5 The Bluebird Transport company manufactures a range of travel homes. The Production Director has suggested that any inventory valued at less than £5 an item should be made available as open access on the shop floor. No requisitions will be required. What are the procurement implications?

9.6 What information does an operations manager require to make effective use of dependent demand inventory models?

9.7 The Horsk Shipping Company has reviewed the inventory held at their strategic warehouses in Cape Town, Southampton and New York. They have found that the cost of carrying slow moving stock, e.g., engines, parts, steel-plate and furnishings, is 30 per cent of the value. What percentage would you predict might be allocated to each of the following constituents?

(a) cost of money, that is, interest on capital tied up in stock
(b) rates/rental charges
(c) warehouse expenses
(d) physical handling
(e) clerical and stores control
(f) obsolescence
(g) deterioration and pilferage.

9.8 Procurement should not be accountable for the amount of inventory held in business. They do not forecast, determine order quantities or the time for delivery. Do you agree? Why?

9.9 The major disadvantages of bar-coding are uniformity and cost. Discuss this statement.

9.10 As RFID systems make use of the electromagnetic system, they are relatively easy to jam using energy at the right frequency. What might the implication be for:

(a) customers at a supermarket checkout?
(b) hospitals or military applications of RFID?

9.11 If a company categorises its inventory into three classes according to their usage value, calculate the usage values of the following items and classify them along Pareto lines into A, B and C items.

Item no.	*Annual quantity used*	*Unit value*
1	75	£80.00
2	150,000	£0.90
3	500	£3.00
4	18,000	£0.20
5	3,000	£0.30
6	20,000	£0.10
7	10,000	£0.04

9.12 What term would you use to describe the effect of information delays up and down the supply chain? What might be the consequence for inventory and profitability of such information delays?

9.13 There are six basic questions associated with forecasting, what are they?

9.14 What are the advantages of Enterprise Resource Planning (ERP)?

9.15 What arguments would you advance to persuade a supplier to hold their stock in your stores and to only charge after the stock has been used?

9.16 If it were to be suggested that your organisation should outsource the stores function what advantages and disadvantages could you identify?

References

[1] Institute of Logistics and Transport, *Glossary of Inventory and Materials Management Definitions*, 1998

[2] Institute of Logistics and Transport, *How to Manage Inventory Effectively*, Added Value Publication Ltd, 2003, p. 94

[3] Compton, H. K. and Jessop, D., *Dictionary of Purchasing and Supply Management*, Pitman, 1989, p. 135

[4] See GS1 UK's website at: www.e-centre.org.uk

[5] The Association for Operations Management (APICS), Chicago, Illinois. Founded in 1957 as the American Production and Inventory Control Society

[6] Schonberger, R. J. and Ansari, A., 'Just-in-time purchasing can improve quality', *Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Spring, 1984

[7] Rhys, D. G., McNash, K. and Nieuwenhuis, P., 'Japan hits the limits of Just-in-Time EIU', *Japanese Motor Business*, December, 1992, pp. 81–89

[8] Hayes, R. H. and Pisano, G. P., 'Beyond world-class: the new manufacturing strategy', *Harvard Business Review*, January–February, 1994, p. 75

[9] Pragman, C. H., 'JIT II: a purchasing concept for reducing lead times in time-based competition', *Business Horizons*, July–August, 1996, pp. 54–58

[10] Vollman, T. E., Berry, W. L. and Whybark, C. D., *Manufacturing Control Systems*, 2nd edn, Irwin, 1988, p. 788

[11] Chopra, S. and Meindl, P., *Supply Chain Management*, Prentice Hall, 2001, p. 247

Chapter 10

Sourcing, supplier selection and performance management

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- tactical and strategic sourcing
- the sourcing process
- the location, appraisal and assessment of suppliers
- supplier performance and evaluation
- policy issues in sourcing
- sourcing decision making
- factors in deciding where to buy
- outsourcing
- partnering
- sustainability.

Key ideas

- Sourcing information.
- Analysis of market conditions.
- The main aspects of supplier appraisal.
- The purpose, scope and methods of evaluating supplier performance.
- The supplier base.
- Make-or-buy decisions.
- Outsourcing.
- Subcontracting.
- Partnering.
- Reciprocity.
- Intra-company trading, local suppliers and small or large suppliers.
- Procurement consortia.
- Factors in deciding where to buy.
- Buying centres, teams and networks.
- Straight rebuy, modified rebuy and new buy procurement situations.

10.1 What is sourcing?

The USA, General Services Administration (GSA), defines strategic sourcing as 'a structured process which optimises the government's supply base while reducing Total Cost of Ownership (TCO) and improving mission delivery'. Strategic Sourcing solutions are based on a robust analysis of spending patterns, the clear definition of business needs and requirements, and the alignment of government needs with supply market capabilities and commercial best practices'.

10.1.1 Tactical sourcing

Tactical and operational sourcing is concerned with low-level procurement decisions that may relate to low-risk, non-critical items and services. Tactical sourcing is also concerned with short-term adaptive decisions as to how and from where specific requirements are to be met. For example, there may be a strategic sourcing strategy to obtain contract staff from one source who have a five-year call-off contract. In a short-term emergency, caused by flooding or other force majeure situations, it could be necessary to use other suppliers to obtain the immediate skills that are required.

10.1.2 Strategic sourcing

A sourcing strategy is a process, not an isolated decision.[1] It continuously

- balances internal and external activities, services and know-how
- aligns business strategy, business processes and 'product' requirements
- balances the results that must be achieved and the future options available.

The OGC[2] explains that the strategic sourcing process is an iterative cycle, in which a number of distinct stages of maturity can be identified. The level of maturity ranges from development of short-term tactical plans to long-term sourcing strategies. Figure 10.1 shows the stages in the maturity profile.

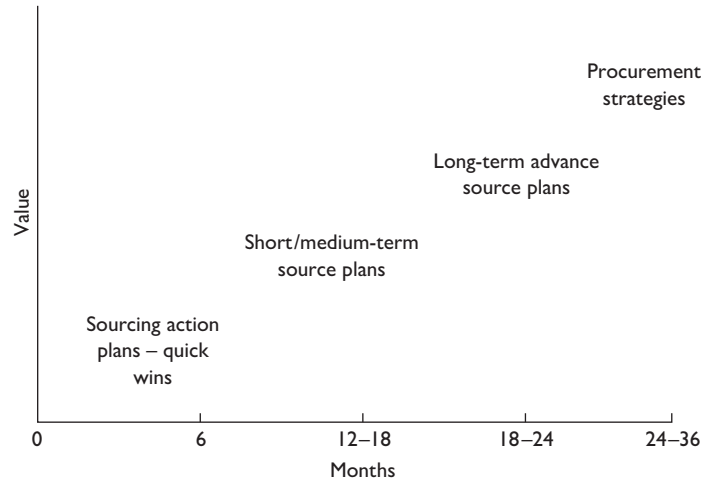
Strategic sourcing is concerned with top-level, longer-term decisions relating to high-profit, high supply risk strategic items and low-profit, high supply risk bottleneck products and services. It is also concerned with the formulation of long-term procurement policies, the supplier base, partnership sourcing, reciprocal and intra-company trading, globalisation and countertrade, and the procurement of capital equipment and ethical issues.

The status and importance procurement has required a transition from thinking of procurement as a purely tactical activity to seeing it as a strategic activity. In transactional sourcing, procurement is viewed as a function concerned with the placement of orders. In strategic sourcing, procurement is viewed as a knowledge-based activity concerned with the total cost of ownership rather than the price paid per item with optional mix of relationships to provide competitive advantage.

10.2 The strategic sourcing process

Strategic sourcing is a complicated process involving a number of interrelated tasks. The process cannot be managed solely by procurement. Depending on the organisation,

Figure 10.1 Stages in the sourcing strategy maturity cycle



it may, for example, involve, design, finance, manufacturing/service delivery, quality management, environmental and health and safety.

The author has designed a seven phase strategic sourcing process.

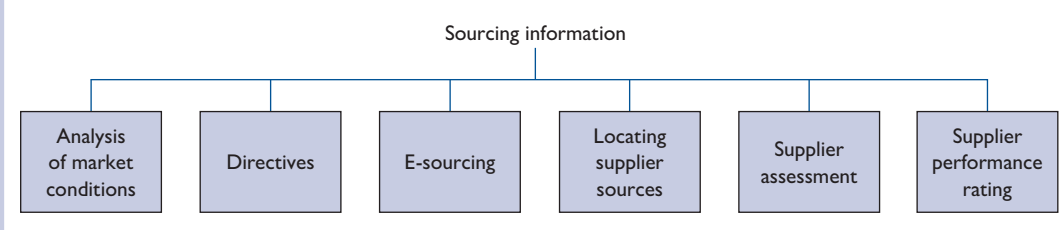
PHASES	*KEY ELEMENTS*
Phase 1. Review of current status and business planning	■ Critical appraisal of current status ■ Long-term expenditure profile ■ Vendor risk profiling ■ Stakeholder engagement ■ Contracting strategy ■ Drivers for sourcing strategy
Phase 2. Facets of strategic sourcing process plan	■ Accountabilities for delivery of plans ■ Timescales ■ Engagement with supply chain ■ Identify supply market differentiators ■ Determine communication protocol
Phase 3. Research, data acquisition and business analysis	■ Structure of the supply market ■ On-shore and off-shore capacity ■ Stability of the supply market ■ Competitive forces in play ■ Major procurement players

PHASES	*KEY ELEMENTS*
Phase 4. Conclusions reached from Phase 3	■ Hypothetical sourcing strategy ■ Business risk profiling ■ Impact on cost and profit ■ Contracting model ■ Engagement to implement strategy ■ Negotiation strategy
Phase 5. Supplier selection, mobilisation and relationship management	■ Pre-qualification modelling ■ Conduct due diligence ■ Contract & risk management ■ Key personnel reliance ■ Finalise strategy ■ Business sign-off
Phase 6. Implementation	■ Commit specialist resources ■ Ensure category management planning ■ Institute quality management ■ Review key performance indicators ■ Reevaluate operational risks ■ Inform senior management
Phase 7. Report and measure performance and deliver continuous improvement	■ Exert robust contract management ■ Monitor contract deliverables compliance ■ Agree corrective actions for non-performance ■ Test quality of relationship management ■ Monitor new technologies ■ Monitor continuous improvements

10.3 Sourcing information

Sourcing information can be divided into the areas as shown in Figure 10.2.

Figure 10.2 Areas of sourcing information



10.4 Analysis of market conditions

10.4.1 What is a market?

The term 'market' can mean:

- a place where goods and services are bought and sold – for example, the European Union is a market created by agreement between the participating countries to reduce barriers to the internal movement of labour and capital
- large groups of buyers and sellers of wide classes of goods, such as the consumer goods market, the equipment market and so on
- demand and supply of a single class of community, such as the steel market, the cotton market
- the general economic conditions relating to the supply of goods and services applying at a particular time – of special importance to procurement is the distinction between a buyer's and a seller's market.

10.4.2 Why is the analysis of market conditions important to sourcing?

Strategic procurement involves using business intelligence to analyse the supply chain environment and make appropriate decisions and recommendations. Only on the basis of intelligence can strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats that impact supplies be evaluated. Business intelligence also provides information on how the organisation – and procurement as an activity within the business – is performing relative to competitors. Analysis of market conditions as an aspect of business intelligence is useful for the following reasons:

- it helps in forecasting the long-term demand for the product, of which bought-out materials, components and assemblies are part, so it also has an interest in market research
- it assists in forecasting the price trends of bought-out items and how material costs are likely to affect production costs and selling prices, so, for example, the need for cheaper prices may influence sourcing decisions
- it indicates what alternative goods and supply sources are available – it might be more economical to source items from abroad
- it gives guidance on the security of supply sources, which is particularly important with sensitive commodities sourced offshore
- information relating to pay trends, commodity prices, political factors and the like can assist in deciding whether to adopt a strategy of forward buying and stockpiling or hand-to-mouth buying and minimum stocks.

10.4.3 What sources of information relating to market conditions are available?

Information relating to market conditions may be obtained from the following sources:

- *primary data* – field research that can use one or more approaches, such as observation, analysis of internal records, such as sales trends and order book levels, visits to suppliers, questionnaires

- *secondary data* – statistics and reports issued by external information, many of which are on databases
- *international sources* – a survey of information sources is provided by globalEDGE™ created by the Center for International Business Education and Research for Michigan State University, which is a knowledge portal that connects business professionals worldwide to a wealth of information, insights and learning resources on global business activities, while a further useful site is Business Information on the Internet, provided by the Federation of International Trade Associations based in Reston, Virginia and New York.
- *UK government sources* – full details of publications can be obtained from The Stationery Office. The most important sources include:
  - *Abstracts of Statistics*, published annually and monthly
  - Economic Trends
  - Census of Production
  - Department of Employment Gazette
  - Department for Business, Enterprise & Regulations Reform reports/publications
  - Bank of England Reports
- *US government sources*
  - STAT-USA – The Department of Commerce's site for economic and business data: retail sales, wholesale trade, business conditions, CPI, gross domestic product, etc. Includes the full and up-to-date National Trade Data Bank (NTDB). The office ceased operations on 30 September 2010, but they have created a STAT-USA/Internet Transition web page with links to the data sources.
  - The NTDB – provides access to Country Commercial Guides, Market Research reports, Best Market reports. The NTDB also provides US import and export statistics, as well as over 75 other reports and programmes. This service was provided by STAT-USA, please see comments above.
  - Foreign trade statistics – Census Bureau.
  - Business Gateway at FirstGov – easy access to government services for US businesses. Includes e-services, buying and selling to the government, statistics, laws and regulations, international trade services, publications.
  - Export.gov – online trade resources with links to many federally produced market research products.
  - Small Business Administration – links to a multitude of federal, state and local government websites useful to the small businessperson – start-up help, financing, business opportunities and more.
  - US Business Advisor – over 100,000 businesses trade and labour web pages from government sites.
  - EDGAR – filings for all US public companies are available from US Securities and Exchange Commission. Included are annual (10K), quarterly (10Q) reports, annual reports to shareholders and other material for a comprehensive overview of the financial condition of companies.
- *non-government sources* – these include:
  - Economist Intelligence Unit
  - Chambers of Commerce

  - professional associations – of particular importance to procurement staff is *Supply Management*, the journal of the Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS), and both the CIPS and the USA Institute of Supply Management have online databases.

- *the press in the UK* – such as *The Economist*, *Financial Times* and the 'quality' daily and Sunday newspapers
- *economic forecasts* – such as the Confederation of British Industries' (CBI) 'Economic Situation Report' and Oxford Economic Forecasting's range of publications, including *UK Economic Prospects*, *World Economic Prospects*, *UK Industrial Prospects* and *European Economic Prospects*.

10.5 Directives

A 'directive' is a general instruction. Typical directives relating to sourcing include those issued by the EU, central and local government offices and companies.

10.5.1 EU directives

Background

Most organisations that receive public funding are likely to be affected by European procurement legislation. Such organisations include central government departments, local authorities, NHS Trusts and universities. The legislation covers most contracts for supplies, that is, goods, work and services. European directives take precedence over national law, irrespective of when the domestic law was enacted. The political aim is to create a single market for public procurement so that European companies may, in principle, have access to contracts without any kind of discrimination.

Breach of the EU public procurement rules may have significant legal consequences. Under the Remedies Directive, for example, the High Courts of England and Wales, Northern Ireland and the Court of Session in Scotland have the power to review the award of a contract and apply a number of remedies, including:

- declaring the contract void
- varying the contract
- awarding damages to the injured party.

Details of current EU directives are available from regional EU information offices on the Internet. Directive 2014/24/EU has been implemented into UK law via the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 which largely came into force on 26 February 2015. The new regulations have introduced several changes, including:

- a new procedure 'innovative partnerships'
- accelerated forms of the open procedure and competitive procedure with negotiation
- the grounds for use of the competitive dialogue or competitive procedure with negotiation have been aligned
- higher financial threshold and special 'light touch' regime for health sector
- introduction of the European Single Procurement Document

- lowest price can no longer be a headline award criterion
- the distinction between 'Part A' and 'Part B' services disappears.

10.5.2 Central and local government procurement directives and guidance

There are widespread criticisms of central and local government procurement practices including:

- The procurement process is unduly bureaucratic and time consuming for bidders
- Contract awards are biased to large organisations
- Small Medium Enterprises (SMEs) are unlikely to win contracts
- The Pre-Qualification process is harsh and repetitive across public sector organisations
- Procurement processes are manipulated at tender evaluation phase
- Incumbent service provides are likely to be favoured
- Contract awards are made without a transparent process being followed
- Contracts are extended without proper contract provision
- Timescales for tender responses are inadequate
- Contract safeguards required are unreasonable.

There is empathy to some criticisms as evidenced by the Lord Young report.[3] There is an attempt to make access to public sector contracts easier for SMEs; however, the 2015 regulations do not mandate breaking procurement into Lots. The European Single Procurement Document will not be mandatory in the UK until October 2018. However, a major benefit for SMEs is the fact that Contracting Authorities are only allowed to ask for suppliers who have a turnover that is twice the value of the contract they are applying for.

10.5.3 Company directives

Company directives may be issued by the top management of an organisation, instructing that, for reasons of strategy or in pursuance of agreements, particular supplies must be obtained from a specific source. An example would be directives relating to intra-company or reciprocal trading.

10.6 E-sourcing

E-procurement, along with e-marketplaces, e-catalogues and e-auctions, was discussed in Chapter 5. E-sourcing is defined by the CIPS[4] as:

> using the Internet to make decisions and form strategies regarding how and where services or products are obtained.

Although both e-procurement and e-sourcing are integral to the procurement cycle, the two terms are usually distinguished. E-procurement is usually concerned with non-core goods and services. These can, however, cover far more than routine MRO items or office supplies. As Waller[5] has stated:

> For telecommunications companies, network switches are indirect goods. For oil refineries, large condensers, costing millions of dollars are indirect goods. For companies that operate petrol stations, forecourts signs and fascia's are indirect goods.

E-sourcing allows research, design and procurement personnel to find parts, components and sub-assemblies for prototypes and subsequent production models. As ePedas[6] has explained:

> The difference between e-sourcing and e-procurement is that, in e-sourcing, decisions are made on the basis of functionality and characteristics, not purely on the basis of product and price.

10.7 Locating suppliers

Suppliers can be located by checking a wide range of sources. This process has been made faster and easier by the World Wide Web. There are many sources for locating suppliers, including:

- a comprehensible searchable list of more than 1.7 million UK businesses, broken down into over 2500 distinct classifications, at the Yell.com site from *Yellow Pages*: www.yell.com
- some of the searchable databases intended to promote exports, such as the UK Trade and Investments database of suppliers: www.uktradeinvest.gov.uk
- major overseas reference resources, such as the Thomas Global Register Europe at: www.thomasglobal.com, which gives access to a searchable directory of over 210,000 industrial manufacturers, and a related website at: www.thomasnet.com, which covers 650,000 US and Canadian suppliers

Specialised sites include:

- the Applegate Directory at: www.applegate.co.uk, which covers suppliers in the electronics, engineering and plastics sectors
- the Used Equipment Network at: www.usedequipment.com, which offers second-hand plant and machinery – from aircraft to X-ray machines – covering more than 75,000 items from more than 10,000 dealers.

In addition to the above it can be quick and helpful to contact:

- Foreign Embassies and High Commissions
- Trade Associations
- other procurement specialists by networking.

Databases can provide up-to-date information and may be space-saving substitutes for large hardcopy reference collections. Access to such databases may be free and unrestricted or subscriber only.

Other useful ways in which to locate suppliers include:

- *salespeople* – the usefulness of salespeople is dependent on their knowledge of the product they are seeking to promote – they are often able to provide useful service information regarding suppliers, such as details of items other than those manufactured by their own undertaking

- *exhibitions and trade shows* – these provide an opportunity to compare competing products, meet representatives of suppliers and attend presentations by exhibitors, and exhibition catalogues and other literature usually provide details of the main suppliers in a particular field, so should be retained for reference purposes
- *trade journals* – these provide buyers not only with information regarding new products, substitute materials and so on, but also trade gossip, which keeps buyers informed about changes in the policies of suppliers and their personnel.

10.8 Supplier assessment

10.8.1 When to assess suppliers

Supplier assessment will arise when a prospective supplier applies to be placed on the buyer's approved list, responds to the buyer's request to pre-qualify for a forthcoming tender process or where the buyer decides to conduct soft market testing and due diligence. The purpose of all these is to assure the buying organisation that the prospective supplier can, reliably, meet the quality, operational, technical, financial and commercial requirements.

Supplier assessment can be a time-consuming and costly activity, for the following reasons:

- designing an effective questionnaire
- designing the evaluation scoring and weightings model
- creating and briefing an evaluation team that represents a cross-section of interests
- analysing and reporting on the documents submitted
- making reference site visits
- taking up references
- undertaking due diligence to ascertain, for example, if the supplier is litigious by nature.

The situations when assessment is essential include:

- one-off purchases where the buyer has no established strategic source of supply
- where potential suppliers do not hold BS EN ISO 9000:2015
- purchase of outsourced services such as IT and Asset Management
- purchase of construction, capital equipment and ICT systems
- considering the use of SMEs and Third Sector organisations
- when making procurement consortia agreements
- when re-tendering Framework Agreements
- when engaged in global sourcing
- when 'local content' purchases are required as part of, for example, an off-shore defence or infrastructure contract
- major sub-contractors will be used by the prime contractor
- when long-term product support is required
- when a current strategic supplier is encountering adverse trading conditions.

10.8.2 What should be assessed?

Supplier appraisal is situational. What to appraise is related to the requirements of the particular purchaser. All appraisals should, however, evaluate potential suppliers from, at least ten perspectives:

- finance
- insurance
- productive capacity and facilities/service support capability
- quality
- health and safety
- environmental management
- existing contracts held and performance
- organisational structure and key personnel – resources
- sub-contracting – proposed actions
- procurement capability and supply chain management.

This information is gathered, typically, by issuing a Pre-Qualification Questionnaire that is tailored to the specific requirements.

10.8.3 Finance

A robust financial appraisal should reduce, but will not eliminate, the risk of awarding a contract to a supplier whose financial viability is in doubt. It does, however, provide information enabling considered decisions to be made. It may, for example, lead to a decision to require an 'on-demand' performance bond. There are some checks that must be considered:

- the last three years' turnover, split between UK and off-shore business
- the profitability and the relationship between gross and net profit over the last three years
- any losses in any period being examined and reasons for such losses, for example, write-offs against unsatisfactory contract performance
- the value of capital assets and return on capital assets
- the scale of borrowings and the ratio of debts to assets
- the possibility of takeover or merger affecting ability to supply
- the scale of pension fund deficits.

Such enquiries are advisable for small-sized and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) in relation to one-off or annual contracts in excess of, say, £15,000 bearing in mind that their finances may not be entirely robust. Ideally, procurement specialists will have the ability, with colleagues in finance, to undertake robust financial appraisals and to resolve any queries that arise.

In the USA, 'FORM 10K' is an annual report submitted by US companies to the Securities and Exchange Commission, pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. There is also the 'FORM 10Q', a quarterly report. The information contained in these documents exceeds, greatly, that typically found in UK companies' annual reports. There is vital company and market intelligence of value to procurement decisions. Examples of information contained are details of companies'

major markets, products, business risks, outstanding legal writs and their nature, divisional financial results, investments and competition. These reports can be obtained free of charge from the companies themselves and many are available on the Internet.

Credit reports may also be obtained from bankers or credit references and credit reports provided by such agencies as Dun and Bradstreet. Important information provided by Dun and Bradstreet's supplier evaluation reports include:

- *sales* – gives a picture of the firm's financial size in terms of sales/revenue volume
- *financial profile* – evaluates how the enterprise is doing financially compared with its industry and, to understand the profitability and solvency of a supplier, five key financial ratios are calculated that provide industry benchmarks against a peer group of suppliers
- *supplier risk score* – an evaluation of the risk involved in dealing with a supplier that presents an at-a-glance 1–9 rating based on financial and public records and operational information, with 1 being the lowest and 9 the highest risk (this predictive score helps procurement to understand the general financial status of a supplier and benchmark it against others).

In addition, it is recommended that basic checks should be made on a UK company's title and its registered number at Companies House to see whether the company is dormant or trading and whether it is owned by another company or supported by a venture capital organisation.

Balance sheet and profit and loss ratio analysis (see Table 10.1) should also be used. Investopedia[7] succinctly provide warning signs of a company in trouble. These are:

- dwindling cash or mounting losses
- interest payments in question
- switching auditors or going concern basis
- dividend cut
- top management defections
- big insider or institutional sales
- selling flagship products, equipment or property
- big perk cuts.

In the case of substantial contracts, the procurement organisation should question whether or not the supplier is likely to become overly dependent on them.

10.8.4 Insurance

Typically, a buyer will establish:

1. the types of insurance the prospective supplier holds and
2. the cover value of each insurance (establishing if the cover value is 'per claim' or 'in the aggregate').

The types of insurance that the buying organisation may require include:

- Public liability insurance covers any award of damages given to a member of the public because of an injury or damage to their property.

Table 10.1 Important balance sheet and income ratios when appraising potential suppliers

Ratio source	*Name of ratio*	*Calculation of ratio*	*Purpose of ratio*
Balance sheet ratios measure the liquidity and solvency (ability to pay bills) and gearing (the extent to which the business is dependent on creditors' funding)	Liquidity ratios – current ratio	$\frac{\text{Total current assets}}{\text{Total current liabilities}}$	Can the business pay its current debts with a margin of safety for possible losses in current assets? A generally acceptable ratio is 2:1. The minimum acceptable ratio is 1:1
	Quick ratio (the 'acid' test)	$\frac{\text{Quick assets}}{\text{Current liabilities – Bank overdraft}}$	Answers question 'if all sales revenue should disappear, could the enterprise meet its current obligations with the readily convertible quick funds on hand?' Ratio of 1:1 is minimum acceptable
	Working capital	Total current assets – Total current liabilities	More of a measure of cashflow than a ratio. The result must be a positive number
	Gearing ratio	$\frac{\text{Fixed interest capital}}{\text{Fixed interest – Equity capital}}$	Too high a gearing ratio is potentially unstable as it indicates undue dependence on external sources for long-term financing
Income statement Profit and loss account These ratios measure profitability	Gross profit margin ratio	$\frac{\text{Gross profit}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Gross profit = Net sales – Cost of goods sold. Measures the percentage of sales value left after deducting cost of manufacturing to pay the overhead costs of the enterprise. Can be compared to ratios of other businesses
	Net profit margin ratio	$\frac{\text{Net profit before tax}}{\text{Net sales}}$	Indicates percentage of sales revenue left after subtracting cost of goods sold and all expenses except tax

- Employer's liability insurance enables businesses to meet the costs of damages and legal fees for employees who are injured or made ill at work through the fault of the employer.
- Product liability insurance covers the fact that products must be fit for purpose. The supplier is legally responsible for any damage or injury that a product he supplies may cause.
- Professional indemnity insurance protects a business against claims for loss or damage by a client or a third party if the company/consultant have made mistakes or are found to have been negligent in some or all of the services that have been provided.
- Directors' and officers' liability insurance, to cover the cost of compensation claims made against directors and officers for alleged wrongful acts, including breach of duty, neglect and wrongful trading.

10.8.5 Productive capacity and facilities/services support capability

'Capacity' has been defined as:[8]

> The limiting capability of a productive unit to produce items within a stated time period normally expressed in terms of output units per unit of time.

Capacity is an elusive concept because it must be related to the extent that a facility is used – that is, it may be the policy to utilise production capacity five days weekly, one

shift daily or produce a maximum of 2000 units monthly. Plant capacity can normally be increased by working overtime or adding new facilities. Contracts for services will, in large measure, require the capacity of people providing the services. This capacity must be sufficient to cope with maximum demand for the services, some of which may be required outside normal working hours.

In appraising supplier capacity, attention should be given to the following considerations:

- the maximum productive capacity in a specified working period
- the extent to which capacity is currently over-committed or under-committed – for example, a full order book may raise doubts about the supplier's capacity to take on further work
- how existing capacity might be expanded to meet future increased demand
- the percentage of available capacity utilised by existing major customers
- what percentage of capacity would be utilised if the potential supplier were awarded the business of the purchaser
- what systems are used for capacity planning?

An appraisal of production facilities depends on the purpose of it. Appraisal of machinery, for example, depends on what is to be produced. In general, attention should be given to answering the following kinds of questions.

- Has the supplier the full range of machinery needed to make the required product?
- How would any shortage of machinery be overcome?
- Are machines modern and well maintained? (Machine breakdowns will affect delivery.)
- Is the plant layout satisfactory?
- Is there evidence of good housekeeping?
- Has the supplier adopted such approaches as computer-aided design (CAD), computer-aided manufacture (CAM) or flexible manufacturing systems (FMS)?

10.8.6 Quality

For suppliers not included on the BSI's Register of Firms of Assessed Quality, appraisal may require satisfactory answers to such questions as the following:

- Has the supplier met the criteria for other BSI schemes, such as the Kitemark, Safety Mark and scheme for registered stockists?
- Has the supplier met the quality approval criteria of other organisations, such as the Ford Quality Awards, the Ministry of Defence, British Gas or others?
- To what extent does the supplier know about and implement the concept of total quality management?
- What procedures are in place for the inspection and testing of purchased materials?
- What relevant test and inspection process does the supplier use?
- What statistical controls are applied regarding quality?
- Does quality control cover an evaluation of quality?
- Can the supplier guarantee that the purchaser can safely eliminate the need for all incoming inspection? (This is especially important for JIT deliveries).

10.8.7 Health and Safety

It is necessary to establish:

- the supplier's Health and Safety policy
- the supplier's Health and Safety auditing arrangements
- details of Health and Safety Executive or Local Authority investigations/prosecutions
- first aid and welfare provision
- name and title of director responsible for Health and Safety
- how the company communicates its Health and Safety policy and procedures to employees.

10.8.8 Environmental management

ISO 14001 provides guidelines on environmental policies and, where applicable, suppliers should be required to have an environmental policy and procedures for the implementation of such a policy. A large number of EU directives have also been issued relating to air, water, chemicals, packaging and waste.

Apart from those questions with reference to ISO 14001 and EU directives, other suitable questions to ask include the following:

- Has responsibility for environmental management been allocated to a particular person?
- Are materials obtained from sustainable sources – such as timber – where in the UK there are labelling schemes such as those run by the Forest Stewardship Council.
- What is the lifecycle cost of the suppliers' product?
- What facilities does the supplier have for waste minimisation, disposal and recycling?
- What energy savings, if any, do the supplier's products provide?
- What arrangements are in place for the control of dangerous substances and nuisance?

10.8.9 Existing contracts and the supplier's performance against key performance indicators

A key feature of the buyer's due diligence is to understand the supplier's existing contract commitments and performance against the contractual obligations. It is unlikely that suppliers will divulge sensitive information but that should not discourage the buyer seeking to:

- identify the supplier's key customers
- establish contractual dispute information that is in the public domain
- the extent of the supplier's bid pipeline
- establish the extent of claims settled in respect of contractual non-performance
- identify data sources that hold historical press releases
- the key performance indicators specifically relevant to the buyer's contract.

10.8.10 Organisational structure and key personnel

It is advisable to establish:

- the organisational structure of the company providing the goods or services
- the wider corporate structure and reporting accountabilities
- where procurement/supply chain fits into the structure
- the key personnel that will be accountable for delivering the contract
- if the supplier is a multinational, who does the CEO (UK) report to?

10.8.11 Sub-contracting – proposed actions

The nature and extent of the supplier's sub-contracting can have a great impact on contract performance; hence it is advisable to ascertain:

- Will sub-contracting take place?
- What is the extent and nature of sub-contracting – value and specific goods/services?
- How are sub-contractors appointed?
- What specific contract terms and conditions are used?
- Will the buying organisation's contract key clauses be flowed down to sub-contractors, e.g. right of audit?

10.8.12 Procurement supply chain management capabilities

It is very surprising that these facets are rarely the subject of PQQs; they should be! As a minimum, the following questions should be answered:

- Is there a well-established procurement function?
- Who is the head of the function and who do they report to?
- How is the function organised, e.g. category management?
- How will they manage costs throughout the supply cycle?
- Who is accountable for supply chain performance?
- What are the perceived procurement risks?
- How will these risks be mitigated?

10.8.13 Obtaining information for supplier appraisal

This may be done by means of a suitable questionnaire, supplemented where appropriate by soft market testing and visits to the potential suppliers.

10.8.14 Appraisal questionnaires

The topics in sections 10.8.3 to 10.8.13 above can easily be adapted to include in a questionnaire. Some general principles relating to questionnaires should be remembered:

- Keep the appraisal questionnaire as short as is reasonably possible.
- Ask only what is necessary and obtain only information that will be used.

- Divide the various sections of the questionnaire into 'fields', each relating to a particular area of investigation, as in sections 10.8.3 to 10.8.13 above.
- Consider whether or not it is likely that the respondent will know the answers to the questions and the difficulties they are likely to have providing the information.
- Consider whether or not respondents will understand the wording of questions – are you using technical or cultural-specific words or abbreviations, for example.
- Ask only one question at a time.
- Start with factual and then go on to opinion-based questions.
- Ensure that the questionnaire is signed, dated and the title of the respondent is indicated.

10.8.15 Supplier visits

Supplier visits should always be undertaken by a cross-functional team that includes a senior member of procurement and specialists on quality and production engineering (or such disciplines as are relevant). Each member of the team is able to evaluate the supplier from a specialist viewpoint so this ensures shared responsibility for the decision to approve or reject a supplier. The purposes of a supplier visit include:

- confirmation of information accuracy provided by the supplier in response to the questionnaire
- an in-depth discussion of the products and services offered by a potential supplier and ways in which the supplier can contribute to the requirements of the buying organisation
- sight of manufacturing/service provision facilities and related quality management and IT Systems.

Prior to the visit, a checklist of matters to be reviewed should be prepared. This ensures that no important questions are overlooked, provides a permanent record of the visit and reasons for the decisions reached. On supplier visits, important sources of information are observation and informal conversations. Particular attention should be given to the following areas.

- *Personal attitudes* – an observant visitor can sense the attitudes of the supplier's employees towards their work. This provides an indication of the likely quality of their output and service dependability. The state of morale will be evident from:
  - an atmosphere of harmony or dissatisfaction among the production workers
  - the degree of interest in customer service on the part of supervisory staff
  - the degree of energy displayed and the interest in getting things done
  - the use of manpower – whether economical, with everyone usually busy, or extravagant and costly, with excess people doing little or nothing.
- *Adequacy and care of production equipment* – close observation of the equipment in a manufacturing location will indicate whether it is:
  - modern or antiquated
  - accurately maintained or obviously in a state of disrepair
  - well cared for by operators or dirty and neglected
  - of proper size or type to produce the buyer's requirements
  - of sufficient capacity to produce the quantities desired.

The presence or absence of ingenious self-developed mechanical devices for performing unusual operations will be indicative of the plant's manufacturing and engineering expertise.

- *Technological know-how of supervisory personnel* – conversations with foremen, shop superintendents and others will indicate their technical knowledge and ability to control and improve the operations of processes under their supervision.
- *Means of controlling quality* – observation of the inspection methods will indicate their adequacy to ensure the specified quality of the product. Attention should be given to:
  - whether or not the materials are chemically analysed and physically checked
  - frequency of inspection during the production cycle
  - employment of such techniques as statistical quality control
  - availability of statistical quality control.
- *Housekeeping* – a plant that is orderly and clean in its general appearance indicates careful planning and control by management. Such a plant inspires confidence that its products will be made with the same care and pride as to their quality. The dangers of breakdown, fire or other disasters will also be minimised, with a consequent increased assurance of continuity of supply.
- *Competence of technical staff* – conversations with design, research or laboratory staff indicate their knowledge of the latest materials, tools and processes relating to their products and anticipated developments in their industry.
- *Competence of management* – all the above areas are, in essence, a reflection of management and highlight the business qualities. Particularly in the case of a new supplier, an accurate appraisal of executive personnel is of paramount importance.

10.9 Supplier approval

Supplier approval is the recognition, following a process of appraisal, that a particular supplier can meet the standards and requirements of the specific procurement. The approval may be for a one-off transaction or enable the supplier to become an approved supplier.

There are three important aspects of approved supplier lists:

1. the current emphasis is on having a small supplier base and so additions to an approved list must be carefully controlled
2. the supplier's application to be placed on an approved list should be considered fairly and, as far as possible with the minimum of bureaucracy
3. directives such as those of the EU have reservations about whether or not approved lists invalidate the EU principles of transparency, equality of treatment, proportionality and mutual recognition. In this context, Framework Agreements represent an approved list.

Approval should be decided by a cross-functional team that may give various levels of approval, such as A for unconditional, B for conditional subject to the potential supplier meeting prescribed conditions or C for unsuitable for approval.

Approved suppliers may also be graded into such categories as:[9]

1 *partnership* – a one-to-one relationship with a supplier in which a corporate single-source agreement will be in place
2 *preferred* – there is an agreed number of suppliers for one product or service with a corporate agreement
3 *approved suppliers* – suppliers have been assessed as satisfactory suppliers for one or more products or services
4 *confirmed suppliers* – those that have been specifically requested by a user, such as design or production, and accepted by procurement – the acceptance process being:
   (a) no preferred, partnership or approved supplier is on the procurement database for an identical requirement
   (b) there will not be a continuing demand on the supplier
5 *one-off supplier* – suppliers in this category are accepted on the following conditions:
   (a) no preferred, partnership or approved supplier is on the procurement database for identical goods or services
   (b) procurement card payment is not appropriate or possible
   (c) supplier will be closed after the transaction is complete.

In general, approval in the first instance should be for one year. Suppliers that consistently meet or exceed the prescribed standards over a period of, say, three years may be upgraded from 'approved' to 'preferred'. Conversely, suppliers that fail to meet performance standards should be removed from the database of approved suppliers.

10.10 Evaluating supplier performance

10.10.1 Why evaluate supplier performance?

There are various reasons for the evaluation of procurement performance being important.

- Evaluation can significantly improve supplier performance. Emptoris[10] states that, properly done, supplier performance management can provide answers to questions such as the following:
  - Who are the highest-quality suppliers?
  - How can relationships with the best suppliers be enhanced?
  - How can supplier performance be incorporated into total cost analysis?
  - How can buyers ensure that suppliers live up to what was promised?
  - How can feedback be shared based on experience with a supplier?
  - How can underperforming suppliers' problems be tracked and fixed?
  - Evaluation assists decision making regarding when a supplier is retained or removed from an approved list.
- Evaluation assists in deciding with which suppliers a specific purchase order/contract should be placed.

- Evaluation provides suppliers with an incentive for continuous improvement and prevents performance 'slippage'.
- Evaluation can assist in decisions regarding how to distribute the spend for an item among several suppliers to better manage risk.

10.10.2 What to evaluate?

Traditionally, the key performance indicators (KPIs) for the evaluation of supplier performance have been price, quality and delivery. While these are still basic to supplier evaluation, such developments as JIT, lean manufacturing, integrated supply chains and e-procurement have made the fuller evaluation of supplier relationships an important consideration. Such relationships, as Kozak and Cohen[11] point out, include such qualitative factors as intercompany communication and high levels of trust, which are not easy to assess other than subjectively. Apart from subjectivity, qualitative evaluations are often subject to 'halo effects' – the tendency to bias scoring in favour of a particular supplier due to irrelevant considerations, such as the friendly approach of its sales representatives. There is, however, an element of subjectivity in all evaluation systems.

The number of KPIs that may be used is almost limitless. A USA survey by Simpson *et al.*[12] reported 142 evaluation items, which they arranged under 19 categories of criteria, the first 10 of which are shown in Table 10.2.

The researchers conclude that, on the basis of these criteria, suppliers should concentrate on quality issues first – especially the ability to meet customers' order requirements – followed by continuous improvement and innovation efforts. Importantly, while not completely ignoring pricing issues, suppliers may want to place less emphasis on price when attempting to secure and retain customers.

10.10.3 Quantitative approaches to supplier evaluation

The aim of quantitative ratings is to provide a sounder basis for evaluation than subjective ratings. There are a number of considerations, including:

Table 10.2 Supplier evaluation factors considered by relative frequency of mention and importance (Simpson *et al.*[13]) – first ten factors only

Evaluation criteria	*Number of items by category*	*Percentage mentioning*	*Relative importance rating*
Quality and process control	566	24.9	1
Continuous improvement	210	9.2	2
Facility environment	188	8.2	2
Customer relationship	187	8.2	2
Delivery	185	8.1	2
Inventory and warehousing	158	7.0	2
Ordering	132	5.8	2
Financial conditions	126	5.5	2
Certifications	81	3.6	3
Price	81	3.6	3

- determining what can be quantified – there are the obvious candidates, including, deliveries on time, quality defects (perhaps graded according to severity and impact on the buyer's business), response times for resolving queries, fault correction times (IT software support), resolution of disputes and timely delivery of IT consumables
- the cost and ability to collect the relevant data on which ratings are based, recognising that there are now software programmes to facilitate this – depending on the nature of the buyer's business the ratings can be provided at specified intervals
- ratings are no more accurate than the assumptions on which they are based
- a recognition that the supplier's performance can be adversely affected by the buyer's or third-party actions.

10.10.4 Service level agreements

A service level agreement is 'a formal, negotiated document that defines (or attempts to define) in quantitative (and perhaps qualitative) terms the service being offered to a Customer'.[14] Confusion must be avoided whether the quantitative definitions constitute thresholds for an acceptable service, targets to which the supplier should aspire or expectations that the supplier should strive to exceed. Typically, the service level agreement will cover service hours, service availability, customer support levels, throughputs and responsiveness, restrictions, functionality and the service levels to be provided in a contingency.

10.10.5 The seven Cs of effective supplier evaluation

Many of the aspects of supplier appraisal are neatly summarised by Carter[15] as the 'seven Cs of supplier evaluation':

1. *Competency* of the supplier to undertake the tasks required
2. *Capacity* of the supplier to meet the purchaser's total needs
3. *Commitment* of the supplier to the customer in terms of quality, cost driving and service
4. *Control systems* in relation to inventory, costs, budgets, people and information
5. *Cash resources and financial stability* ensuring that the selected supplier is financially sound and is able to continue in business into the foreseeable future
6. *Cost* commensurate with quality and service
7. *Consistency* the ability of the supplier to deliver consistently and, where possible, improve levels of quality and service.

10.10.6 Evaluation of supplier performance – a case study

Fredriksson and Gadde[16] have published a 'Competitive Paper' which reviews the literature on supplier evaluation, presents a case study illustrating the evaluation of the performance of a car manufacturer's suppliers and a discussion on the findings and implications of the case study.

Table 10.3 Volvo evaluation model

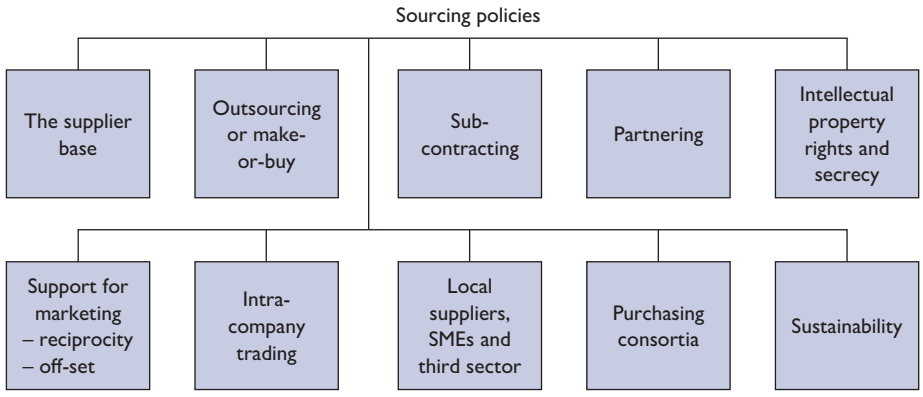
Dimensions, criteria and scopes	*Frequency (time horizon)*	*Method (quant = quantitative qual = qualitative)*	*People involved (department)*
Module quality performance			
■ Function, geometry, looks and noise module features at and after the line	1 time/minute	Formal, quant. and qual.	Assembly operators (Assembly) QA engineers (Assembly) SQA engineers (Logistics)
■ Quality processes and structures – inside module supplier – on its supply side – in interaction with Volvo	When quality defects occur 1–2 times/2 years (future oriented)	Semi-formal, quant. and qual. Formal	SQA engineer (Logistics) Assembly managers (Assembly) SQA engineer (Logistics) Procurement engineer (Procurement)
Delivery precision performance			
■ Module carrier on time at loading dock	1–2 times/hour	Formal, quant.	Delivery controller (Logistics)
■ Modules in right box in carrier at line	1 time/minute	Formal, quant.	Assembly operator (Assembly)
■ No. of restrictions in Volvo's plans	On occurrence	Formal, quant.	Delivery controller (Logistics)
■ Logistics processes and structure – inside module supplier – on its supply side – in interaction with Volvo	When delivery deviations occur 1–2 times/2 years (future oriented)	Semi-formal, quant. and qual. Formal, quant. and qual.	Delivery controller (Logistics) Delivery controller (Logistics) Logistics engineer (Procurement)
Cost performance			
■ Module price	>1 time/year (future oriented)	Formal, quant.	Purchaser (Procurement)
■ Processes and structures – inside module supplier and its suppliers – in interaction with Volvo – contribution to supplier park			Supplier park manager (Procurement)
■ Logistics costs – processes and structures in relation to the total logistics system	Varying, but about 1–2 times/year (future oriented)	Formal, quant. and qual.	Logistics engineer (Logistics)
Overall performance			
■ Quality ■ Delivery ■ Cost	■ Management ■ Supply management ■ Environment	>1 time/2–4 years (future oriented)	Semi-formal, quantitative

Table 10.3 shows the Volvo perspective when evaluating a module supplier and its performance. It shows the use of a number of different evaluation dimensions, criteria, scope, time horizons and methods. Consequently, people with different expertise in several departments are involved in the evaluation of the supplier's performance.

10.11 Policy issues in sourcing

There are numerous aspects of sourcing policy and strategy, but ten of the main ones considered in this chapter are shown in Figure 10.3.

Figure 10.3 Aspects of sourcing policy and strategy



10.12 The supplier base

10.12.1 What is the supplier base?

The supplier base relates to the number, range, location and characteristics of the vendors that supply the purchaser.

Supplier bases may be described as broad, lean, narrow, single-sourced, local, national, international, diversified or specialised. They can relate to a 'family' or related products and suppliers or the totality of vendors with whom a purchaser does business.

Factors influencing the supply base of an enterprise include:

- the range of purchases including goods and services
- the core competencies of the buying organisation
- investment requirements in product/service long-term capacity
- supply chain risks
- inventory investment
- ability to respond to emergencies and changing market conditions
- short-term procurement actions or long-term partnering
- miscellaneous factors such as the social responsibilities to local industry or support of SMEs and third sector.

10.12.2 Supplier base optimisation

Supplier base optimisation or rationalisation is concerned with determining a strategy that will identify the optimum number of suppliers required to fulfil the requirements to supply all procurement categories.

In many organisations there are too many suppliers who are awarded business in an ad hoc manner. The need for rationalisation includes:

- focusing purchases on a limited number of competent and cost effective suppliers
- requirement to control cost and procurement processes
- generate confidence for suppliers to make long-term investments
- encourage innovation and continuous improvement
- enhance the availability of meaningful management information
- optimise risks in the supply chain.

There are a number of approaches that can be adopted to achieve supplier base optimisation, including:

- electing for a single or dual source of supply
- an approved or preferred supplier list
- outsourcing a range of services thereby eliminating individual suppliers to the services
- redesign of products to reduce reliance on those owning previous IPRs
- aggregating purchases with other buyers to make quantity feasible to larger suppliers.

10.12.3 Possible risks of a reduced supplier base

These include:

- complacency resulting in repetitive actions cutting out innovation
- reduced competition in the supply market
- exit of marginal supplier reducing available capacity
- threats to supply arising from typical force majeure events
- lack of knowledge of supply market developments and market intelligence
- inflexibility in contractual obligations.

10.13 Outsourcing

10.13.1 What is outsourcing?

Venkatesan [17] observes that: 'Today manufacturing focus means learning how *not* to make things – how *not* to make the parts that divert a company from cultivating its skills, parts that its suppliers can make more efficiently'.

Outsourcing may be defined as:

> a management strategy by which major non-core functions are transferred to specialist, efficient, external providers.

10.13.2 What to outsource?

There is a thriving outsourcing market, both in manufacturing and the provision of services. The activities most easily outsourced are those that are:

- resource intensive – especially those with high labour or capital costs
- available from niche market suppliers with proven technology and skills
- relatively discrete with few interfaces and dependencies on complex supply chains

- subject to long-term, fluctuating work patterns
- requiring relatively little client-side management
- where very clear contractual accountabilities can be established.

10.14 Outsourcing manufacturing

10.14.1 Types of make-or-buy decisions

This is concerned with make-or-buy decisions. Probert[18] identifies three levels of make-or-buy decisions.

Strategic make-or-buy decisions

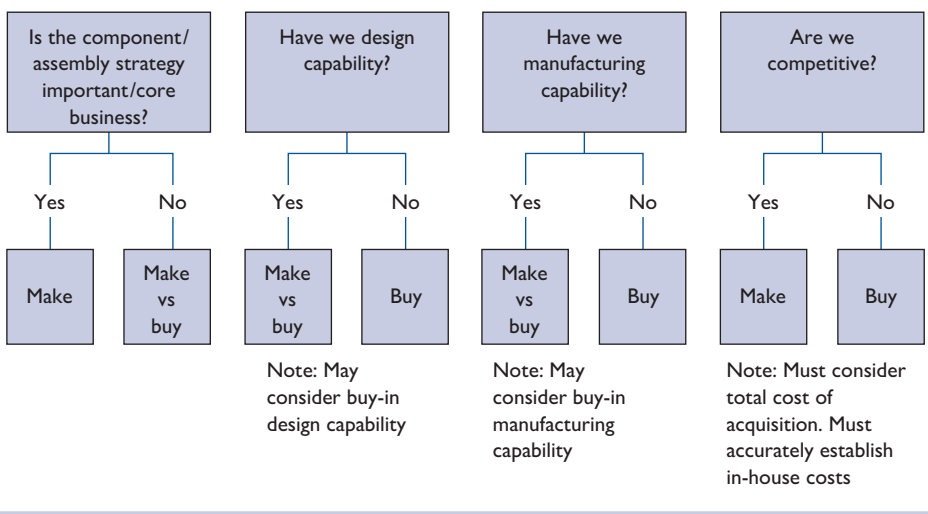
Strategic make-or-buy decisions (see Figure 10.4) determine the shape and capability of the organisation's manufacturing operation by influencing:

- what products to make
- what investment to make in machines and labour to make the products
- ability to develop new products and processes as the knowledge and skills gained by manufacturing in-house may be critical for future applications
- the selection of suppliers as they may need to be involved in design and production processes.

Conversely, inappropriate allocation of work to suppliers may damage an enterprise by developing a new competitor or damaging product quality or performance, profit potential, risk and flexibility.

Strategic decisions also provide the framework for shorter-term tactical and component decisions.

Figure 10.4 Decision processes for make or buy



Tactical make-or-buy decisions

These deal with the issue of a temporary imbalance of manufacturing capacity:

- changes in demand may make it impossible to make everything in-house, even though this is the preferred option
- conversely, a fall in demand may cause the enterprise to bring in-house work that was previously bought-out, if this can be done without damaging supplier relationships and without defaulting on a contract.

In such situations, managers require criteria for choosing between the available options. Such criteria may be quantitative, qualitative or both.

Component make-or-buy decisions

Component make-or-buy decisions are made, ideally, at the design stage and relate to whether a particular component of the product should be made in-house or bought-in.

10.14.2 Cost factors in make-or-buy decisions

Accurate make-or-buy decisions often require the application of marginal costing and break-even analysis.

Marginal costing

Marginal costing is defined as:[19]

> a (costing) principle whereby variable costs are charged to cost units and the fixed costs attributable to the relevant period are written off in full against the contribution for that period.

The term 'contribution' in the above definition is the difference between the selling (or purchase price) and the variable cost per unit.

The marginal cost approach is shown by Examples 10.1 and 10.2.

Example 10.1

Marginal costing

	£
Direct materials	60
Direct pay	30
Direct expenses	10
Prime cost	100
Works overhead (100 per cent on direct pay)	30
Works cost	130
Office overhead (20 per cent on works cost)	26
	156
Selling overheads £14 per item	14
Cost of sales	170
Net profit	30
Normal selling price	200

Assume that:

1 works overheads are 60 per cent fixed and 40 per cent variable

2 office overheads are constant

3 selling expenses are 50 per cent fixed and 50 per cent variable.

Then, the *marginal* cost will be:

	£	
Direct materials	60	
Direct pay	30	
Direct expenses	10	
	100	
Works overhead	12	(40 per cent of £30)
Selling overheads £14 per item	13	(50 per cent of £26)
	125	

Any price over £125 represents a *contribution* to fixed overheads. If fixed overheads totalled £75,000, a selling price of £200 would represent a contribution of £75 per item to fixed overheads and it would be necessary to sell 1000 items before the undertaking would *break even*. If, however, the selling price were reduced to £150, it would be necessary to sell 3000 units before reaching the *break-even point* as the contribution per item would be only £25.

In make-or-buy decisions, it is necessary to compare the supplier's price with the marginal cost of making, plus the loss of contributions of work displaced.

Example 10.2

Marginal costing

A company manufactures assembly JMA 423, the normal annual usage of which is 10,000 units. The current costs are:

	£
Materials	90
Labour	40
Variable overheads	10
Fixed overheads	20
	160

The component could be purchased for £156 but the capacity used for its production would then be idle. Only 30 per cent of the fixed costs is recoverable if the component is bought.

Assuming that there are no other relevant factors, should component JMA 423 be made or bought?

Solution

A superficial comparison suggests that the item should be bought rather than made. The correct comparison, however, is between the marginal cost of making and the buying price.

	Make	Buy	Difference
Variable costs (£90 + £40 + £10) = £140	£140	£156	£16
Variable costs × volume	£1,400,000	£1,560,000	£160,000
Fixed costs (30 per cent of £20 × 10,000 units)	£60,000	£60,000	£0
	£1,460,000	£1,620,000	£160,000

The above figures indicate that it is more profitable to make than buy. This is because the fixed costs of £60,000 would be likely to continue and, as the capacity would be unused, the fixed overheads would not be absorbed into production. Consequently, by buying instead of making, profits would be reduced by £160,000.

Opportunity cost

As shown by Example 10.3, this is the potential benefit that is forgone because one course of action has been chosen over another – that is, if the production facilities used in making had been applied to some alternative purpose.

Example 10.3

Opportunity cost

An undertaking manufactures 100,000 of item X at a total cost of £120,000 and a marginal cost of £100,000. Item X could be bought-out for £1.50 each. The decision whether to make it in-house or buy-out depends on the cost of forgoing the opportunity to make something else. If the production capacity could be used to make an item with a contribution of £0.75 each, then the position would be:

Making	Buying but production capacity not used	Buying less opportunity cost
£100,000	£150,000	£150,000
		–£ 75,000
		£ 75,000

In this case, it would be more profitable to buy the item.

Break-even

The break-even point is:

> the level of activity in units or value at which the total revenues equal the total costs. Estimated production quotas and actual usage may differ. See Example 10.4.

10.14.3 Other considerations in make-or-buy decisions

Apart from those mentioned above, a number of other quantitative and qualitative factors must be considered in deciding whether to make or buy.

Example 10.4

Break-even analysis

Using the data in Example 10.2, at what volume will the company be indifferent between buying and making component JMA 423?

Solution

This is found by the formula:

$$\frac{F}{(P - V)}$$

where:
F = fixed costs
P = purchase price
V = variable cost per unit
In this case:

$$\frac{£60{,}000}{(£156 - £140)} = \frac{£60{,}000}{£16} = 3750 \text{ units}$$

If only 3750 units are required, there will be no effect on profits from making or buying. If fewer than 3750 units are required, buying is the more profitable alternative. If more than 3750 units are required, making is the better alternative.

Quantitative factors in favour of *making* include:

- chance to use up idle capacity and resources
- potential lead time reduction
- possibility of scrap utilisation
- greater procurement power with larger orders of a particular material
- large overhead recovery base
- exchange rate risks
- cost of work is known in advance.

Quantitative factors in favour of *buying* include:

- quantities required are too small for economic production
- avoidance of costs of specialist machinery or labour
- reduction in inventory.

Qualitative factors in favour of *making* include:

- ability to manage resources
- commercial and contractual advantages
- worries are eliminated regarding such matters as the stability and continuing viability of suppliers or possible repercussions of changes in supplier ownership
- maintaining secrecy and protecting competitive edge

Qualitative factors in favour of *buying* include:

- spread of financial risk between purchaser and vendor
- ability to control quality when purchased from outside
- availability of supplier's specialist expertise, machinery and/or patents
- buying, in effect, augments the manufacturing capacity of the purchaser.

10.14.4 Making the make-or-buy decision

From the above, it is clear that, irrespective of whether it relates to the strategic, tactical or component levels, many quantitative and qualitative factors have to be considered when arriving at a make-or-buy decision. The approach shown in Figure 10.4 earlier is a simple procedure for answering the question 'Shall we make or buy?'

10.15 Outsourcing services

10.15.1 Categorisation of services

The range of services that can be outsourced is almost limitless and those listed below represent just a few of the possibilities:

- car park management
- cleaning
- building repairs and maintenance
- catering
- security
- transport management
- waste disposal
- reception
- library
- medical/welfare
- travel administration
- pest control
- training centre management
- computers and IT
- research and development
- estate management
- staff recruitment
- internal audit
- legal services
- payroll
- quality assurance and control

- records management
- asset repair
- telemarketing
- translation services
- customs brokerage
- vehicle maintenance
- procurement.

As service undertakings tend to be less capital-intensive than manufacturing companies, there is usually a large supplier base, especially for less specialised services, such as catering and building repairs. The drafting of service contracts and service-level agreements that may extend over several years does, however, tend to be complicated and involve considerable negotiation.

10.15.2 Outsourcing procurement

Organisations may consider outsourcing procurement in the following circumstances:

- Where procurement is a peripheral rather than a core activity. The characteristics of peripheral work, as identified by Atkinson and Meager,[20] are that it has:
  - low or generalised skill requirements
  - internally focused responsibilities
  - well-defined or limited tasks
  - jobs that are easily separated from other work
  - no supply restrictions.

  These are also the characteristics of low-level operational procurement. Beauchamp[21] also identified the following items as suitable for outsourcing consideration:
  - purchase orders, one-off and repeat needs
  - locally and nationally procured needs (international sourcing and procurement may be rather specialised for outsourcing)
  - low-value or low-value/large order acquisitions
  - brand name requirements
  - call-offs against internally approved agreements
  - set-up of commodity-based or service-based contracts
  - obtaining goods for batch or volume manufacturing
  - stocking and providing for private-sector or public-sector needs
  - computerised procurement or software-based manufacturing procurement
  - all administration and paperwork associated with procurement needs
  - supply of stores staff at varying levels of skill
  - multidimensional and multidepartmental sourcing.
- Where the supply base is small and based on proven cooperation and there are no supply restrictions, the following may be outsourced:

  - well-defined or limited tasks
  - jobs that are easily separated from other work
  - jobs that have no supply restrictions.

  The above characteristics also apply to low-level operational procurement.
- Where there is a small supplier base providing non-strategic, non-critical, low-cost/low-risk items. In such cases, procurement may be outsourced to:
  - specialist procurement and supplies organisations
  - buying consortia.

  Such organisations provide the advantage of:
  - bulk procurement, giving them a strong negotiating position over a wide range of products.

10.16 Drivers of outsourcing

Beulen *et al.*[22] suggest that there are five main drivers for outsourcing:

1 *Quality* – actual capacity is temporarily insufficient to comply with demand. The quality motive can be subdivided into three aspects: increased quality demands, shortage of qualified personnel, outsourcing as a transition period.
2 *Cost* – outsourcing is a possible solution to increasing costs and is compatible with a cost leadership strategy. By controlling and decreasing costs, a company can increase its competitive position.
3 *Finance* – a company has a limited investment budget. The funds must be used for investments in core business activities, which are long-term decisions.
4 *Core business* – a core business is a primary activity that enables an organisation to generate revenues. To concentrate on core business activities is a strategic decision. All subsequent activities are mainly supportive and should be outsourced.
5 *Cooperation* – cooperation between companies can lead to conflict. In order to avoid such conflict, those activities that are produced by both organisations should be subject to total outsourcing.

A further factor is that of human resource management. The internal culture and attitude of employees may result in strong trade union and internal opposition to the introduction of necessary changes in work processes and restructuring. Such changes may also require the acquisition of new employee skills. Outsourcing may avoid conflicts and provide expertise and experience within a matter of days to fill gaps for which recruitment and training would take some time.

Monczka[23] observes that, historically, outsourcing decisions have been limited to decisions about a particular outsource instead of the more holistic approach of asking 'Looking at the entire supply chain, who would be doing what?'

10.17 Types of outsourcing

In relation to IT, Lacity and Hirschheim[24] provide taxonomy of outsourcing options categorised as body shop, project management and total outsourcing.

- *Body shop outsourcing* is a situation where management uses outsourcing as a means of meeting short-term requirements, such as a shortage of in-house skills to meet a temporary demand.
- *Project management outsourcing* is employed for all or part of a particular project, such as developing a new IT project, training in new skills, management consultancy.
- *Total outsourcing* is where the outsourcing supplier is given full responsibility for a selected area, such as catering, security.

10.18 Benefits of outsourcing

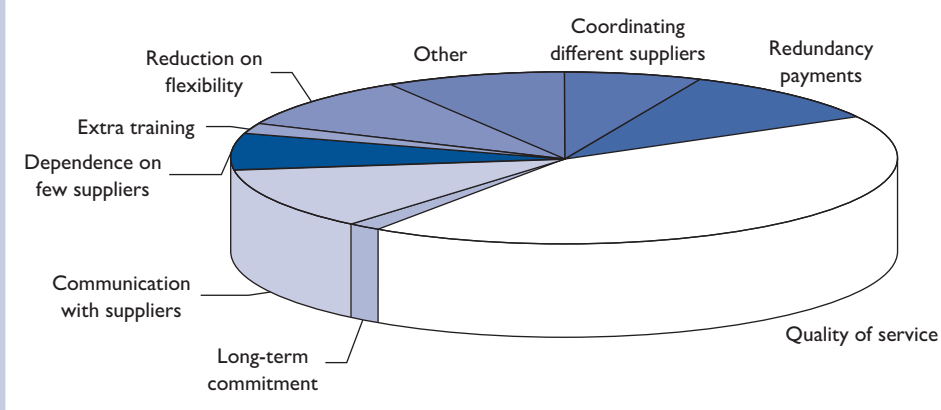
There is a range of benefits from outsourcing. These benefits depend on the nature of the outsourcing and may include:

- obtaining immediate investment which is recovered over the long term
- accessing an ICT infrastructure that is 'state-of-the-art'
- reduced costs in excess of 10 per cent on historical service costs
- reduced staffing levels achieved through efficiency and use of systems
- freeing senior management time to concentrate on core business
- higher levels of service performance generating greater customer satisfaction
- agreed supplier commitments to achieve higher performance levels
- accessing proven technical and commercial world-class practice.

10.19 Problems of outsourcing

Outsourcing is not, however, without its problems. It can be up to two years before an organisation begins to benefit from any savings and in some cases the whole process is cost neutral. Some problems associated with outsourcing are shown in Figure 10.5.

Figure 10.5 Problems with outsourcing



Source: Taken from Carrington, 1994

Perkins[25] reports that an informal survey of his clients showed that:

> By the end of the first year, more than 50 per cent of the companies that have outsourced major IT functions are unhappy with their outsources. . . By the end of the second year 70 per cent are unhappy.

Other surveys relating to aspects of outsourcing have shown that between 30 and 50 per cent of executives are disappointed with the results of outsourcing. Problems reported include:

- overdependence on suppliers
- cost escalation
- lack of supplier flexibility
- lack of management skills to control suppliers
- unrealistic expectations of outsourcing providers due to over-promising at the negotiations stage.

Reilly and Tamkin[26] mention that a principal objection to outsourcing is the possible loss of competitive advantage, particularly in the loss of skills and expertise of staff, insufficient internal investment and the passing of knowledge and expertise to the supplier, which may be able to seize the initiative.

Lacity and Hirscheim[27] also point out that outsourcing does not seem to work well in the following areas:

- where a specific or unique knowledge of the business is required
- where all services are customised
- where the employee culture is too fragmented or hostile for the organisation to come back together.

Problems reported in relation to outsourced suppliers include:

- high staff turnover
- poor project management skills
- lack of commitment to the client or industry
- shallow expertise
- insufficient documentation
- lack of control over larger suppliers
- poor staff training
- complacency over time
- divergent interests of the customer and provider
- cultural mismatches between customer and provider organisations.

10.20 Handling an outsourcing project

The practice will differ between the public and private sectors. In the former case there is the probability that the value of the project, typically a ten-year period, will exceed the threshold for advertising under EU Procurement Directives. Outsourcing and the creation of a Public–Private Partnership (PPP) can take, in the public sector, up to

18 months from start to finish. The cost of such an exercise must not be underestimated. Costs in excess of £500K are not unusual when outsourcing back-office services. Establishing a PPP will probably use the competitive dialogue process or in exceptional cases, the negotiated process.

The following steps will need to be considered, some taking place simultaneously.

1 Set up a project steering group to:
   - decide the scope of services to be outsourced
   - consider soft market testing
   - determine the strategic reasons for outsourcing
   - record the desired outcomes including cost reduction
   - evaluate potential risks
   - commence an effective staff consultation and communication protocol
   - determine what external support will be required, e.g. procurement and legal.
2 Issue a comprehensive pre-qualification questionnaire (PQQ) for completion by interested parties.
3 Commence preparation of:
   - service specifications
   - cost model and affordability envelope
   - invitation to tender documentation (may be referred to in the public sector as 'invitation to participate in a competitive dialogue')
   - the terms and conditions of contract and outline of schedules to the contract.
4 Evaluate responses to the PQQ:
   - using pre-determined evaluation criteria and weightings
   - having respondents make a presentation on key facets
   - creating a short-list of potential suppliers.
5 Continue with essential actions, including:
   - identifying contracts for novation
   - prepare licence to occupy building or lease agreement
   - risk register and mitigation strategies
   - maintain the project plan.
6 Issue invitation to tender.
7 Evaluate responses to the tender
   - use pre-determined evaluation criteria and weightings
   - seek clarification on all matters of uncertainty.
8 Short-list the preferred supplier and appoint reserve bidder in case the negotiations break down.
9 Engage in post-tender negotiations (or clarification and fine tuning using the competitive dialogue) and finalise contract terms and schedules. This may include:
   - finalising staff transfer arrangements including pensions
   - applying damages for contractual non-performance

- confirming investment
- finalising the mobilisation and transformation phases
- novation of contracts
- partnering and operational boards terms of reference
- provision of performance bond or parent company guarantee
- transfer of assets
- rights of termination.

10 Make recommendations to award contract or not to proceed if the deal is wrong.

11 Award contract.

12 Commence contract management activity.

13 Conduct lessons learned from the project.

10.21 Sub-contracting

10.21.1 What is sub-contracting?

Sub-contracting may be distinguished from outsourcing in that the latter involves the total restructuring of an enterprise around core competences and outside relationships. Whatever the degree of outsourcing, enterprises must retain certain core capabilities. Outsourcing is a strategic long-term decision. Sub-contracting is a tactical, short-term approach.

10.21.2 Reasons for sub-contracting

The buyer encounters problems that call for sub-contracting in two main areas:

- where the buyer's organisation is the employer or client entrusting work to a main contractor who, in turn, sub-contracts part of the work, which is the case with most construction contracts
- where the buyer's organisation is the main contractor and sub-contracts work for such reasons as:
  - overloading of machinery or labour
  - to ensure completion of work on time
  - lack of specialist machinery or specialist know-how
  - to avoid acquiring long-term capacity when future demand is uncertain
  - subcontracting is cheaper than manufacturing internally.

10.21.3 Organisation for sub-contracting

- When sub-contracting is a regular and significant part of the activity of an undertaking, it may be desirable to set up a special sub-contracting section within or external to the procurement department.
- Arrangements must be made for adequate liaison between all departments connected with sub-contracting – design, production control, construction and site staff, inspection, finance and so on.

- Friction over who should negotiate with the selected suppliers sometimes develops between procurement and design or technical departments. This can be avoided by a proper demarcation of authority and responsibility, procurement having a power of commercial veto, design and technical departments a technical veto.

10.21.4 Selection of sub-contractors

It may be necessary to check whether or not external approval of the selected sub-contractor is necessary, as in government contracts or where a specific sub-contractor has been specified by the client. Some construction contracts may provide that sub-contractors must not be selected on the basis of Dutch auctions.

10.21.5 Liaison with sub-contractors

Matters to be considered include the following:

- planning, to ensure that the sub-contractor can complete by the required date – techniques such as programme, evaluation and review techniques (PERT) are of assistance in this review
- ensuring that the sub-contractor is supplied with the most recent versions of all necessary documentation, including drawings, standards and planning instructions
- arranging with the sub-contractor for the supply, by the main contractor, of materials, tooling, specialist equipment and so on and the basis on which this shall be charged
- control of equipment and materials in the possession of sub-contractors
- arrangements for accountability at stocktaking of free issued materials in the possession of the sub-contractor
- arrangements for visits to the premises of the sub-contractor by progress and inspection staff employed by the main contractor
- arrangements for transportation, especially where items produced by the sub-contractor require special protection, such as components with a highly finished surface
- payment for any ancillary work to be performed by the sub-contractor, such as the painting on of part numbers.

10.21.6 Legal considerations

These will depend on the circumstances of the specific contract. All major contracts for sub-contracting should be vetted and approved by the legal department of the main contractor. Where the buyer's organisation is entrusting work to a main contractor, it is useful to remember the following generic principles.

Unless the contract has been placed on the basis – express or implied – that the work will be wholly performed by the main contractor, the client will have no authority to prevent the sub-contracting of part of the work (this will not apply to contracts for personal service). If, therefore, the client wishes to specify particular sub-contractors or to limit the right of the main contractor to sub-contract, these matters must be negotiated when the contract is agreed. With construction and defence contracts, tenderers are often required to state what parts of the work will be sub-contracted. In particular, it

is useful to include contract clauses stating that it is the duty of the main contractor to use best endeavours in the selection of sub-contractors and that responsibility for the performance of these sub-contractors shall exclusively lie with the main contractor.

10.22 Partnering

10.22.1 Partnering and outsourcing

Humbert and Passarelli[28] point out that, at its highest level, outsourcing can take the form of an alliance akin to a partnership (but not a strict legal partnership) or joint venture. Not all outsourcing agreements, however, are partnerships. Humbert and Passarelli state that 'the terms "partnering" or "strategic alliance" should not be used to describe an outsourcing agreement unless the contract is structured to reflect a true relationship of strategic alliance'. The characteristics of such an alliance include close working relationships built on trust, communication and mutual dependency 'where both parties have a vested interest in reducing costs and achieving a favourable business outcome'. Where these conditions obtain, the provider's 'reward' is based on results or attaining objectives rather than being compensated.

When comparing partnering and outsourcing, it is therefore important to distinguish between:

- *different levels of outsourcing* at the lower levels it will be purely transactional – only at the higher, strategic levels is outsourcing likely to merge into partnering
- *customer–supplier relationships and partnering* in the former, the emphasis is primarily on cost minimisation, while with the latter the emphasis is additionally on value enhancement and the achievement of joint venture objectives
- *the contractual differences between outsourcing and partnering* with the former, the contract relates to clearly specified inputs and these are cost-based over a defined period of time, for which the supplier receives an agreed reward, whereas, as the CIPS[29] points out, because partnerships are based on trust, in theory no form of contractual documentation should be necessary, but it is still desirable that the parties should agree to a set of general guidelines to regulate the partnership, such as the 12 key areas identified by Partnering Sourcing Ltd:[30]
  - general statement of principle
  - scope – what the partnership encompasses
  - costs
  - customer service levels
  - business forecasts
  - technological development strategies
  - continuous improvement policy
  - annual performance objectives
  - mutual assistance to resolve any problems that may arise
  - open book cost structures
  - minimising material costs
  - joint decisions on capital investment projects.

(two important omissions from the above list are those relating to intellectual property rights and ownership of patents).

10.22.2 What is partnering?

The need for a broad approach to the concept of partnering is also recognised by Partnership Sourcing Ltd which defines partnering as:

> A commitment to both customers and suppliers, regardless of size, to a long-term relationship based on clear, mutually agreed objectives to strive for world class capability.

There may, however, be degrees of partnership. Lambert *et al.*,[31] for example, distinguish between:

- *type I partnerships* involving organisations that recognise each other as partners and, on a limited basis, coordinate activities and planning – such partnerships generally have a short-term focus and involve only a few areas within each organisation
- *type II partnerships* involving organisations that have progressed beyond coordination to integration of activities – such partnerships have a longer-term view of the partnership and involve multiple areas within both firms
- *type III partnerships* involving organisations sharing a significant level of operational and strategic integration – in particular, each partner can make changes to the other's systems without getting approval and such partnerships are of long-term duration with no end in sight, each party viewing the other as an extension of its own firm.

As Knemeyer *et al.*[32] state:

> The three types of partnership reflect increased strength, long-term orientation and level of involvement between parties . . . No particular type of partnership is better or worse than any other. The key is to try to obtain the type of relationship that is most appropriate given the business situation.

Partnering, marks a shift from traditional pressures exerted by larger customers on small-sized and medium-sized suppliers in which the latter were regarded as subordinates. Partnering aims to transform short-term adversarial customer–supplier relationships focused on the use of procurement power to secure lower prices and improved delivery into long-term cooperation based on mutual trust in which quality, innovation and shared values complement price competitiveness.

Some comparisons between traditional and partnering relationships are shown in Table 10.4.

10.22.3 The drivers of partnership sourcing

Some of the main drivers for partnerships have been summarised by Southey[33] as:

- drive for lowest acquisition cost:
  - not only price, but all 'cost in use' elements, such as the benefits or exposure derived from actual product quality, delivery performance and the administration burden
- reduction in supplier base:
  - need to reduce the supplier base to a number that can be managed effectively

Table 10.4 Comparison of traditional and partnering supplier relationships

Traditional	*Partnership*
Emphasises competitiveness and self-interest on the part of both purchaser and supplier	Emphasises cooperation and a community of interest between purchaser and supplier
Emphasis on 'unit price' with lowest price usually the most important buyer consideration	Emphasis on total acquisition costs (TAC), including indirect and hidden costs, such as production hold-ups and loss of customer goodwill due to late delivery of materials and components. Lowest price is never the sole buyer consideration
Emphasis is on short-term business relationships	Emphasis on long-term business relationships with involvement of supplier at the earliest possible stage to discuss how the buyer's requirements can be met
Emphasis on quality checks, with inspection of incoming supplies	Emphasis on quality assurance based on total quality management and zero defects
Emphasis on multiple sourcing	Emphasis on single sourcing, although it is not, of necessity, confined to single sourcing. It will, however, reduce the supplier base
Emphasis on uncertainty regarding supplier performance and integrity	Emphasis on mutual trust between purchaser and supplier

- shortening of product lifecycles:
  - need for faster response times
  - need for suppliers to be right first time
  - need for supplier involvement from day 1.
- concentration on core business:
  - where most value can be added
  - where distinctive competences exist
  - avoiding unnecessary capital expenditure.
- competitive pressures towards 'lean' supply:
  - competition creating fewer, more technologically sophisticated suppliers that have to collaborate more closely with their customers
  - earlier involvement of predetermined suppliers for development of each individual component
  - pressure on inventory, forcing closer matching customer–supplier output levels and systems
  - need to optimise all linkages in the supply chain network (both internal and external).
- adoption of 'best practices', creating dependence:
  - reduced system slack from TQM, JIT and EDI, creating greater dependence on suppliers
  - more dependency requiring forging of stronger supplier relationships
  - more dependency requiring closer integration of people, plans and systems, both internally and externally.

Southey states that customers enter into partnership sourcing arrangements because of their business-driven need to maximise competitive advantage. They see the benefits of partnering as being that it provides:

- a win–win scenario
- supply chain security
- close working relationships (arms around *vs* arm's length)
- a route to joint technological development
- the ability to extend total continuous improvement (TCI) culture to critical suppliers
- improved profit contribution (or reduced profit exposure).

10.22.4 What types of relationships are suitable for partnering?

Partnership Sourcing Ltd[34] has identified seven types of relationships that may be suitable for partnership:

- *high spend* – 'the vital few'
- *high risk* – items and services that are vital irrespective of their monetary value
- *high hassle* – vital supplies that are technically complicated to arrange and take a lot of time, effort and resources to manage
- *new services* – new products or services that may involve possible partners
- *technically complicated* – involving technically advanced or innovative supplies where the cost of switching would be prohibitive
- *fast-changing* – areas where knowing future technology or trends or legislation is critical
- *restricted markets* – markets that have few reliable or competent suppliers where closer links with existing or new suppliers might improve supply security.

10.22.5 Advantages of partnering

These are set out in Table 10.5 and Example 10.5.

Example 10.5

Benefits of partnering

A survey conducted by Partnership Sourcing Ltd in 1995 reported the following benefits (percentages are of those undertakings responding to the survey):

reduced cost	75.5 per cent
reduced inventory	72.9 per cent
increased quality	70.3 per cent
enhanced security of supply	69.4 per cent
reduced product development times	58.4 per cent

Partnership Sourcing Ltd[35] mentions the following important issues:

- ascertain your most important supplies by spend and criticality or customers by turnover and profit
- whether the potential partner is much bigger or much smaller than the enterprise, initiating the partnership is relatively important – small undertakings are more responsive and flexible; larger ones may have better systems
- a potential partner may already have some experience of building partnership relationships and such a company is worth targeting
- that potential partners recognise that:
  - the business of the enterprise seeking to initiate the partnership is important to them
  - there is scope for improvement in the product or service received – in short, that partnering offers potential rewards.

10.22.6 Implementing partnership sourcing

1 *Identify purchased items potentially suitable for partnership sourcing* such as:
   - high-spend items and suppliers – Pareto analysis may show that a small number of suppliers account for a high proportion of total spend
   - critical items where the cost of supplier failure would be high
   - complicated items involving technical and innovative supplies where the cost of switching sources would be prohibitive
   - 'new buy' items where supplier involvement in design and production methods is desirable from the outset.

Table 10.5 Advantages of partnering

To the purchaser	*To the supplier*
Procurement advantage resulting from quality assurance, reduced supplier base, assured supplies due to long-term agreements, ability to plan long-term improvement, rather than negotiating for short-term advantage, delivery on time (JIT), improved quality	*Marketing advantage* resulting from stability due to long-term agreements, larger share of orders placed, ability to plan ahead and invest, ability to work with key customers on products and/or services, scope to increase sales without increasing procurement overheads
Lower costs resulting from cooperative cost-reduction programmes, such as EDI, supplier's participation in new designs, lower inventory due to better production availability, improved logistics, reduced handling, reduced number of outstanding orders	*Lower costs* resulting from cooperative cost-reduction programmes, participation in customer's design, lower inventory due to better customer planning, improved logistics, simplification or elimination of processes, payment on time
Strategic advantage resulting from access to supplier's technology, a supplier who invests, shared problem-solving and management	*Strategic advantage* resulting from access to customer's technology, a customer that recognises the need to invest, shared problem-solving and management

2 *Sell the philosophy of partnership sourcing* to:
   - top management – demonstrating how partnership sourcing can improve quality, service and total costs throughout the organisation
   - other functions likely to be involved, such as accounting (will need to make prompt payments), design (will need to involve suppliers from the outset), production (will need to schedule supply requirements and changes)
   - stress the advantages in section 10.22.5 above.

3 *Define standards that potential suppliers will be required to meet*; these will include:
   - a commitment to TQM
   - ISO 9000 certification or equivalent
   - existing implementation of or willingness to implement appropriate techniques, such as JIT, EDI and so on
   - in-house design capability
   - ability to supply locally or worldwide as required
   - consistent performance standards regarding quality and delivery
   - willingness to innovate
   - willingness to change, flexibility in management and workforce attitudes.

   Partnership Sourcing Ltd[36] state:

   > Remember that people are key. It is people who build trust and make relationships work. Are the people right? Is the chemistry right?
   > Partnership is two-way: if one of your customers was evaluating your business on the same criteria that you are using on suppliers, would you qualify? If not, perhaps you should think again about your minimum entry standards.

4 *Select one or a few suppliers as potential suppliers* do not attempt to launch too many partnerships at once as a by-product of partnering is that a customer will be giving more attention to fewer suppliers, focusing available time where it will most benefit some issues.

5 *Sell the idea of partnering to the selected suppliers* – stress the advantages in section 10.22.5 above.

6 *If a commitment to partnership sourcing is achieved, determine on the basis of joint consultation what both parties want from the partnership* and:
   - decide common objectives, such as:
     - reduction in total costs
     - adoption of TQM
     - zero defects
     - on-time payment
     - JIT or on-time deliveries
     - joint research and development
     - implementation of EDI
     - reduction or elimination of stocks.
   - agree performance criteria for measuring progress towards objectives, such as:

  - failure in production or with end-users
  - service response time
  - on-time deliveries
  - stock value
  - lead time and stability
  - service levels.
- agree administrative procedures:
  - set up a steering group to review progress and ensure development
  - set up problem-solving teams to tackle particular issues
  - arrange regular meetings at all levels with senior management steering the process.
- formalise the partnership, which should be on the basis of:
  - a simple agreement
  - a simplified legal contract.

7 *Review and audit the pilot project* by:
- reviewing against objectives
- quantifying the gains to the business as a whole
- reporting back to senior management on what has been achieved.

8 *Extend the existing partnership* by:
- extending existing agreements
- committing to longer agreements
- getting involved in joint strategic planning.

9 *Develop new partners for the future*.

10.22.7 Effective partnering

In the Crown publication, *Effective partnering*,[37] an overview for customers and suppliers, there is a useful checklist for an SRO to consider whether a partnering arrangement would be a good way of meeting the business need.

- What kind of relationship does the business need suggest? Would partnering be appropriate? If so, then why? Is our organisation ready to work with a provider on a partnering basis?
- Do we have the leadership, skills and capability to make it work? What is our track record in building partnering relationships (if any)?
- Could existing relationships, ours or those of other organisations, act as models or exemplars for what we are planning?
- Can we define success in building this relationship, and then set targets, milestones and measures that will enable us to assess how successful we have been in creating it?
- Assuming the relationship can be created successfully, will users and stakeholders 'sign up' to it and add momentum to its development?
- What kind of provider could manage the risks we envisage allocating them? Realistically, would a provider be willing to take them on and can we give them sufficient control so that they can manage them?

- How do we think the provider community would view a partnering approach to meet this requirement?

The advice continues that the unique features of partnering are integrated into the business case.

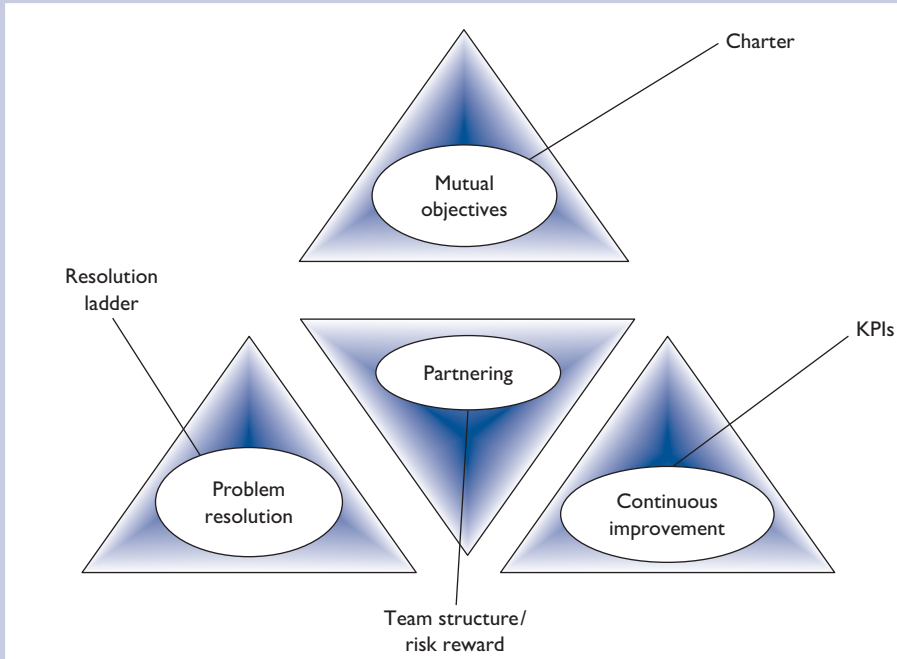
- Do we still think that partnering is the right way forward for this project? If so, does the business case for the project include the explicit requirement for a partnering arrangement, and justify the approach in terms of business need?
- Are partnering aspects genuinely integral to the business case, or do they appear to be 'bolted on'? Has successful partnering, or a good working relationship, been identified as a critical success factor? If not, why not?
- Does the business case take account of the additional investment (in relationship management, etc.) that a partnering arrangement will require, compared to traditional procurement?
- Does the business case take account of any changes in approach or behaviour that your organisation will need to make in order for partnering to work?
- What are the views of the likely providers on partnering and the key features they see as critical to success?
- Are outline plans in place for how risks should be allocated between the partners?
- Do risk plans take account of potential partners' likely attitudes to taking on risk? Is this based on actual discussion with the market, lessons from other projects, or assumption?
- Are management structures ready to open communication flows, both formal and informal, with the partner when the time comes?
- Does this project have the clear top-level commitment necessary to underpin a successful partnership-based approach?

The Centre for Construction Innovation[38] showed the essential features of partnering as illustrated in Figure 10.6.

10.22.8 Problems of partnership sourcing

- *Termination of relationships* – the aim should be to part amicably, preferably over a period of time according to an agreed separation plan.
- *Business shares* – the possibility of the customer being over dependent on the supplier. These issues need to be explored in joint consultation.
- *Confidentiality* – where prospective partners are also suppliers to competitors.
- *Complacency* – avoidance requires the regular review of competitiveness in regular meetings of a multifunctional buying team.
- *Attitudes* – traditionally adversarial buyers and salespeople will require retraining to adjust to the new philosophy and environment.
- *Contractual* – where, for reasons of falling sales, recession and so on, forecasts have to be modified.
- *Legislative* – the CIPS[39] points out that it is less easy to establish partnership relationships in the public sector due to government and EU procurement directive rules. In general, partnership relationships in the public sector should not exceed three to five

Figure 10.6 Essential features of partnering



years, after which retendering should be required, although some partnering deals are 10 to 15 years in duration with an option to extend for a further period of time.

Other problems are that the sharing of information may create a competitor or potential competition and difficulties associated with sharing future profits and the possible foreclosure of other alliance opportunities.

Ramsay[40] rightly observes that:

> As a sourcing strategy, partnerships may be generally applicable to only a small number of very large companies. For the rest, although it may be useful with a minority of purchases and a very small selection of suppliers, it is a high-risk strategy that one might argue ought to be approached with extreme caution. In Kraljic's terms [see section 2.13.11] the act of moving the sourcing of a bought-out item from competitive pressure to a single-sourced partnership increases both supply risk and profit impact. Thus partnerships tend to push all affected purchases towards the strategic quadrant. Strategic purchases offer large rewards if managed successfully, but demand the allocation of large amounts of management attention and threaten heavy penalties if sourcing arrangements fail.

10.22.9 Why partnerships fail

Research by Ellram[41] covering 80 'pairs' of US buying firms and their chosen suppliers used 19 factors identified by previous studies as contributing to partnership failure. These factors, in the order of their ranking of importance by buyers, were:

1 poor communication
2 lack of top management support

3 lack of trust
4 lack of total quality commitment by supplier
5 poor up-front planning
6 lack of distinctive supplier value-added benefit
7 lack of strategic direction to the relationship
8 lack of shared goals
9 ineffective mechanism for cost revision
10 lack of benefit/risk sharing
11 agreement not supportive of a partnering philosophy
12 lack of partner firm's top management support
13 changes in the market
14 too many suppliers for customers to deal with effectively
15 corporate culture differences
16 top management differences
17 lack of central coordination of procurement
18 low status of customer's procurement function
19 distance barriers.

As shown in Table 10.6, five of the top seven factors were common to both buying and supplying organisations.

There were also strong differences. Suppliers ranked central coordination of the buyer's procurement function as 12 compared with a ranking of 17 by buyers. Similarly, the low status of the customer's procurement function, lack of strategic direction and lack of shared goals were ranked significantly higher by suppliers than buyers.

The above findings broadly agree with earlier research, although Ellram's sample regarded corporate culture and top management differences as relatively unimportant.

10.22.10 Insourcing

In the first instance, outsourcing is an emotive subject. In the public sector there are, at times, hostile Trade Union and political objections. Given the extent of outsourcing over the years, it is no surprise to find strategic decisions being made to insource services. A healthy, reasoned analysis of outsourced/insourcing decisions is informative. The Reason Foundation[42] commented on a report[43] produced by the City of Austin, Texas. The comments included:

> Opponents of the privatisation of municipal services often try to frighten policy makers away from using competitive contracting by claiming that costs will rise because the private sector seeks a profit.
>
> The report found that transitioning to in-house provision of the services encompassed by the 37 analysed contracts would require an additional $169 million over a five year period and 687.5 full-time equivalent positions.
>
> And when you factor in the unsustainable costs of public employee benefits like defined-benefit pensions and retiree healthcare, there can be some major benefits to injecting some tension into the system via public/private competition.

Table 10.6 Top factors contributing to partnerships that have not worked out or have been resolved

Factor	*Buyer ranking*	*Supplier ranking*
Poor communication	1	1
Lack of top management support	2	10
Lack of trust	3	4
Lack of total quality commitment by supplier	4	18
Poor up-front planning	5	5
Lack of strategic direction for the relationship	7	3
Lack of shared goals	8	2

The detailed City of Austin report, subject 'Recommendations on Resolution No 20120405-054', can be accessed on the internet. There is the detail by Contract, grouped by Major Service Category. These findings and analysis are very informative for procurement specialists. One analysis Ref FR-2/FR-3 is in respect of vehicle car wash and interior cleaning services. Over a five-year period it was estimated that insourcing would cost an additional $13,332,850. The services included police vehicles, which must be completed within 90 minutes of the arrival of a police vehicle. The city start-up costs were estimated at $7,000,000.

10.23 Intellectual property rights and secrecy

10.23.1 Intellectual property rights

All sourcing policies must give due consideration to the range of intellectual property rights (IPRs) and their impact on procurement considerations. IPRs are a very specialised area of knowledge with potentially dire consequences if the buying organisation should infringe third-party IPRs. Table 10.7 captures the type of IPRs and the salient points of each.

10.23.2 Secrecy

There are national security considerations on many products and services. When this is the case, the control of 'secret' matter must be applied from the outset of procurement. There are potential criminal charges that may ensue if the secrecy requirements are breached.

10.23.3 Procurement accountabilities

Procurement must take the lead in managing all facets of IPRs and secrecy. This may involve:

Table 10.7 Intellectual property rights – salient points

Patents	■ Must be applied for and, if granted, may last for 20 years (subject to renewal every four years) ■ Gives the patentee the right to prevent anyone else from making, using, selling or importing any goods or processes, which include the patented invention ■ A patentee may grant licenses
Copyright	■ Relates to the protection of works and exists automatically when the work to which it relates is created ■ The author (except where they are an employee) has the right to prevent anyone else from copying the work (copying includes photocopying and other forms of reproduction) ■ Generally expires 70 years after the death of the author
Registered designs	■ Aims to protect the appearance of articles made to the design and where those designs have a novel aesthetic element ■ Registration must be applied for and it provides protection for up to 25 years (renewable every 5 years) ■ The holder has the right to prevent anyone else making, using, or selling any goods which include the registered design ■ May grant licenses; royalties are usually payable
Design rights	■ Similar to copyrights in that they arise automatically ■ They protect the design of an article provided that it is not a feature which enables the article to fit with or match with or form an integral part of another article ■ The design must be recorded in a design document and must be original ■ The protection lasts for 15 years from the end of the year in which the design was first recorded (with additional complications)
Trade marks	■ These are visual symbols, such as brand names or logos, used to distinguish the goods or services to which they relate from those of other businesses ■ Protection of a registered trademark is maintained providing that the mark is in use and the registration is renewed by payment of renewal fees in the case of some old marks, after seven years, and in the case of newly registered marks, every ten years

- getting confidentiality agreements signed
- determining, with legal support, which facet of IPRs/secrecy apply
- drawing up contractual clauses to deal with the issues
- negotiating license fees
- arranging for Escrow
- ensuring no 'reverse engineering' or 'copy action' occur.

10.24 Procurement support for in-house marketing

10.24.1 Reciprocity

What is reciprocity?

Reciprocity – often referred to as 'selling through the order book' – is a policy of giving preference to suppliers that are also customers of the buying organisation.

Reciprocity is influenced by two main factors:

- *the economic climate* – pressures for reciprocity increase in times of recession when sales may attempt to put pressure on their suppliers to buy their products

- *the type of product* – reciprocal dealing is greater when both supplier and buyer are producers of standard, highly competitive products – it does not arise where a purchaser has no alternative but to buy from a given supplier.

Reciprocity policies

The responsibility of procurement professionals is to make procurement decisions on such considerations as price, quality, delivery and service, so reciprocity may be expressly excluded by specific procurement policy statements, such as:

> In no circumstances will the XYZ Co. Ltd use a buying decision as a means of inappropriately enhancing a sales opportunity. Reciprocal trading practices are prohibited.

A more liberal approach is that reciprocity may offer advantages to both parties as:

- supplier and buyer may benefit from the exchange of orders
- supplier and buyer may obtain a greater understanding of mutual problems, thus increasing goodwill
- more direct communication between suppliers and buyers may eliminate or reduce the need for intermediaries and the cost of marketing or procurement operations.

10.24.2 Offset

There is a requirement in many contracts for the provision of offset. For example, a UK company seeking a transportation contract in the Far East will be required to purchase a fixed amount of the contract value for local suppliers. In the defence sector, more than 130 countries demand offsets in one form or the other. In India, defence purchases in terms of offset will mean maintenance, overhaul, up gradation, life extension, engineering, design, testing, defence-related software or quality assurance services.

In all the above respects, procurement can make a significant contribution to the marketing activities of an organisation.

10.25 Intra-company trading

Intra-company trading applies to large enterprises and conglomerates where the possibility arises of buying certain materials from a member of the group. This policy may be justified on the grounds that it ensures the utilisation and profitability of the supplying undertaking and the profitability of the group as whole. It may also be resorted to in times of recession to help supplying subsidiaries cover their fixed costs.

Policy statements should give general and specific guidance to the procurement function regarding the basis on which intra-company trading should be conducted. General guidance may be expressed in a policy statement such as the following:

> Company policy is to support internal suppliers to the fullest extent and to develop product and service quality to the same high standards as those available in the external market.

Specific guidance may direct buyers to:

- purchase specified items exclusively from group members regardless of price
- obtain quotations from group members that are evaluated against those from external suppliers with the order being placed with the most competitive source, whether internal or external.

Difficulties can arise where intra-company trading involves import or export considerations.

10.26 Local suppliers

What is 'local' must be determined bearing in mind such factors as ease of transport and communication. The advantages of using local rather than distant suppliers include the following:

- closer cooperation is facilitated between buyers and suppliers based on personal relationships
- social responsibility is shown by 'supporting local industries' and thus contributing to the prosperity of the area
- reduced transportation costs
- improved availability in emergency situations, such as the ease of road transport to collect urgently needed items, and the potential importance of localised confidence in the maintenance of lead times increases where a JIT system is adopted
- the development of subsidiary industries situated close to the main industry and catering for its needs is encouraged.

10.27 Procurement consortia

10.27.1 Definition and scope

Procurement consortia may be defined as:

> A collaborative arrangement under which two or more organisations combine their requirements for a specified range of goods and services to gain price, design, supply availability and assurance benefits resulting from greater volumes of purchases.

In public procurement, for example, several separate authorities may establish a central procurement organisation to provide three basic supply services to its constituent members, namely delivery from stores, direct procurement of non-stock items for users in constituent authorities and the negotiation of call-off or 'standing offer' contracts. Such an organisation is usually self-financed by virtue of the mark-up on the items supplied from store and volume rebates received from suppliers that have agreements with the consortium.

Procurement consortia exist in a wide range of industries and cover for-profit and non-profit organisations, including universities and libraries.

Welsh Procurement Consortium

This consortium has been in existence since 1974 and in 2008 its membership increased to include the sixteen Unitary Authorities in South, Mid and West Wales and from January 2014 the Consortium also includes the three Unitary Authorities in North East Wales. There is also an 'Associate' membership scheme. There are a wide range of contracts in place including, Public Analyst Services, Spot Hire of Specialist Vehicles, Hiring Canteen Equipment and Street Lighting Products.

10.27.2 Advantages of procurement consortia

- The use of a consortium allows the constituent members to benefit from the economics of larger-scale procurement than they could undertake individually.
- Members can utilise the relevant professional procurement skills of the consortium staff who can develop wide-ranging product expertise.
- Saving of time in searching for and ordering standard items.
- Bulk procurement enables the consortium to have strong buying leverage for a wide range of supplies.
- Costs are clearly identified.

10.27.3 Disadvantages of consortia

- A consortium cannot insist on the compliance of individual members, which may treat the consortium as only one of a number of suppliers. This may secure nominal price savings, but is unlikely to affect the administrative costs of appraising the consortium against alternative sources. It also weakens the strength of the consortium.
- When using a consortium, it may be more difficult to agree standard specifications than when dealing with one company.
- Significant areas of spend are not covered by what consortia can provide.
- Some forms of consortia may be prohibited under EU provisions. Thus, Article 85(1) of the EEC Treaty provides that:

  > . . . all agreements, decisions and concerted practices (hereafter referred to as agreements) which have as their object or effect the prevention, restriction or distortion of competition within the common market are prohibited as incompatible with the common market . . . this applies, however, only if such agreements affect trade between Member States.

- In general, however, the Commission 'welcomes cooperation among small-sized and medium-sized enterprises where such cooperation enables them to work more efficiently and increase their productivity and competitiveness in a larger market'.[44]

10.28 Sustainability

A definition was put forward in 1987 by the World Commission on Environment and Development. It stated that: 'Sustainable development meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their own needs'. BS8903:2010 'Principles and Framework for Procuring Sustainability requires initiatives from procurement to ensure their supply chain embraces all the sustainability requirements'.

The term 'sustainable procurement' encompasses all issues where procurement is seen as having a role in delivering economic, social and environmental policy objectives. Procurement should consider sustainability at all stages of the procurement cycle but the specifications are vital. An idea of the scope is illustrated by the following categories:

- personal computers (energy saving)
- laser printers (energy saving)
- copying paper (recycled content)

- wood products (either recycled or from legally harvested trees)
- cars (carbon emissions)
- lighting systems (energy savings)
- paints and varnishes (volatile organic compounds)
- soil products (organic ingredients)
- textiles (specific requirements for cotton fibres, wool fibres and synthetic polyamide and polyester)
- detergents (biodegradability)
- glazing (U-value)

10.29 Sourcing decisions

Sourcing decisions involve a consideration of:

- factors influencing organisational buying decisions
- buying centres or teams
- buying situations
- factors in deciding where to buy.

10.29.1 Factors in deciding where to buy

Webster and Wind[45] classify factors influencing industrial buying decisions into four main groups, as shown in Table 10.8.

10.29.2 Buying centres, teams and networks

A buying centre is essentially a cross-functional team, the characteristics of which were discussed in section 5.5. Essentially the buying centre is the buying decision-making unit of an organisation and is defined by Webster and Wind[46] as:

> all those individuals and groups who participate in the purchasing decision process and who share some common goals and the risks arising from the decision.

Normally a buying centre is a temporary, often informal, group that can change in composition according to the nature of the purchase decision.

Buying centres may also be more permanent groups responsible for the sourcing, selection, monitoring and evaluation of suppliers in relation to a specified range of items, such as food, drink, capital equipment and outsourced products and services. Such groups are often referred to as *procurement teams* and may also be responsible for framing procurement policies and procedures. All teams should have a designated chairperson and clearly defined terms of reference and authority.

The composition of the buying centre or team can be analysed as follows:

- By individual participants or job holders, such as the managing director, chief procurement officer, engineer or accountant.
- By organisational units, such as departments or even individual organisations, as when a group of hospitals decide to standardise equipment.

Table 10.8 Factors in industrial buying decisions

Environmental	*Organisational*	*Interpersonal*	*Individual*
These are normally outside the buyer's control and include: ■ level of demand ■ economic outlook ■ interest rates ■ technological change ■ political factors ■ government regulations ■ competitive development	Buying decisions are affected by the organisation's system of reward, authority, status and communication, including organisational: ■ objectives ■ policies ■ procedures ■ structures	Involving the interaction of several people of different status, authority, empathy and persuasiveness who comprise the buying centre	Buying decisions are related to how individual participants in the buying process form their preferences for products and suppliers, involving the person's age, professional identification, personality and attitude towards the risks involved in their buying behaviour

- The buying centre or team is comprised of all members of the organisation (varying from three to twelve) who play any of the following five roles in the procurement decision process:
  - *users* who will use the product or service and often initiate the purchase and specify what is bought
  - *influencers* such as technical staff who may directly or indirectly influence the buying decision in such ways as defining specifications or providing information on which alternatives may be evaluated
  - *buyers* who have formal authority to select suppliers and arrange terms of purchase – they may also help to determine specifications, but their main role is to select vendors and negotiate within purchase constraints
  - *deciders* who have either formal or informal authority to select the ultimate suppliers (in routine procurement of standard items, the deciders are often the buyers, but in more complicated procurement, the deciders are often other officers of the organisation)
  - *gatekeepers* who control the flow of information to others, such as buyers, and may prevent salespeople from seeing users or deciders.

10.29.3 The buying network

The buying centre concept, developed in 1972, has proved remarkably durable and provided the basis for later models of organisational buying behaviour.[47] The Webster and Wind model, however, makes no reference to such aspects as the linkages between procurement and corporate strategies and procurement decisions aimed at enhancing the competitive advantage of buying, such as the decision to source abroad.

Business practice has also changed since 1972 and process-driven management styles and philosophies such as partnering and the impact of IT have changed the way in which buyers and sellers interact.

Such considerations led Bristor and Ryan[48] to suggest that the concept of the buying centre as a group no longer captures the nature of buying behaviour and should be replaced by that of the buying network, which they define as:

> The set of individuals involved in a purchase process, over a specified time frame, and the set of one or more relations that link (or fail to link) each dyad [a dyad is a pair of units treated as one].

Networks have been discussed in section 4.3, but it is useful to mention here two dimensions of networks highlighted by Bristor and Ryan – structure and relationships. Structure relates to organisational aspects. Thus, the boundaries of a buying centre are those of the organisation. With buying networks, the issue arises as to whether or not it is appropriate to include buying network members from outside the organisation, such as customers or consultants. The nodes of buying centres can also represent roles rather than named individuals.

Relationship aspects of buying networks include communications and influence. IT not only makes information widely available to network members, but developments such as teleconferencing mean that they are no longer required to be in physical proximity.

10.30 Factors in deciding where to buy

Assuming that the decision is made that a product should be bought out rather than made in, many factors determine where the order is placed and by whom the decision is made. Such considerations include:

10.30.1 General considerations

- How shall the item be categorised – capital investment, manufacturing material or parts, operating, supply or MRO item?
- Where does the item fit into the procurement portfolio – leverage, strategic, non-critical or bottleneck (see section 2.13.11)?
- What are our current and projected levels of business for the item?
- Is the item a one-off or a continuing requirement?
- Is the item unique to us or in general use?
- Is the item a straight rebuy, modified rebuy or new task?
- If it is a straight or modified rebuy, from what source was it obtained?
- Is/was the present/previous supplier satisfactory from the standpoints of price, quality and delivery?
- With regard to the value of the order to be placed, is the cost of searching for an alternative supply source justified?
- Which internal customers may wish to be consulted on the sourcing of the item?
- Within what timescale is the item required?

10.30.2 Strategic considerations

- What supply source will offer the greatest competitive advantage from the standpoints of:
  - price
  - differentiation of product
  - security of supplies and reliability of delivery

  - quality
  - added value in terms of specialisation, production facilities, packaging, transportation, after-sales services and so on?
- Is the source one with whom we would like to:
  - single source
  - share a proportion of our requirements for the required item
  - build up a long-term partnership relationship
  - discuss the possibilities of supplier development
  - outsource
  - subcontract?
- Does the supply source offer any possibilities for:
  - joint product development
  - reciprocity or countertrade?
- What would be our relationship profile with that supply source – market exchange, captive buyer, captive supplier or strategic partnership (see Figure 6.3)?
- What relationships does the supplier have with our competitors?
- Is it desirable that at least part of our requirements should be sourced locally for political, social responsibility or logistical reasons?
- What risk factors attach to the purchase? Is the product high profit impact/high supply risk, low profit impact/high supply risk, high profit impact/low supply risk, low profit impact/low supply risk?

10.30.3 Product factors

- Can the product or components and assemblies be outsourced?
- What critical factors influence the choice of suppliers? Chisnall[49] reports a research finding that seven critical factors were found to influence buyers in the British valve and pump industry in the choice of their suppliers of raw materials: delivery reliability, technical advice; test facilities, replacement guarantee, prompt quotation, ease of contact and willingness to supply range. These attributes helped to reduce the risk element to purchase decisions.
- What special tooling is required? Is such tooling the property of the existing supplier or the vendor?
- To what extent are learning curves applicable to the product? Are these allowed for in the present and future prices?
- Is the product 'special' or 'standardised'?
- In what lot sizes is the product manufactured?
- What is the estimated product lifecycle cost?

10.30.4 Supplier factors

Such factors are those normally covered by supplier appraisal and vendor-rating exercises.

10.30.5 Personal factors

Personal factors relate to psychological and behavioural aspects of those involved in making organisational buying decisions. All procurement professionals should constantly keep in mind the exhortation of the Greek philosopher Diogenes: 'Know thyself'.

Knowledge of our strengths, weaknesses, prejudices, motivations and values will often prevent us from making procurement or other decisions on irrational grounds or as a member of a team being pressurised by 'group-think' influences. Among the many personal factors that may influence decisions relating to where to buy and who to buy from are:

- cultural factors – the way in which we have been taught to do business
- the information available to us
- professionalism, including ethical values and training
- experience of suppliers and their products
- ability to apply lateral thinking to procurement problems.

Procurement professionals should also develop the capacity to understand the preferences of users for a particular product and the motivations of suppliers.

Discussion questions

10.1 If you were involved in pre-qualifying a strategic supplier for the manufacture of high-quality components for use in an aircraft engine what would be the six most important questions you want answering about the supplier's procurement department?

10.2 You purchase tyres for a range of cars, vans and lorries. For many years these have been sole sourced with a tyre manufacturer. You have been asked to challenge the procurement strategy. What sources would you use to find other possible sources of supply who would be invited to tender?

10.3 Situation analysis is concerned with taking stock of where an organisation or activity within an organisation has been recently, where it is now and where it is likely to end up using present policies, plans and procedures. As the executive in charge of the procurement of management services, including temporary labour, facilities management, consultancy and security you are asked to effect economies without prejudicing the final service quality. How might an analysis of market conditions help you make constructive recommendations?

10.4 One of your major competitors has just appointed an Administrator. They have severe cash flow problems and many of their contracts have been running at a loss. Your Sales Director has told you that your company has been offered two of your competitor's contracts, providing your organisation accept the work at the current contract prices and terms that the failed company had. He has asked for your opinion on a possible course of action, prior to him talking to the two potential clients. The value of the work being offered is £10 million. This would represent 24 per cent of your current turnover. What would be your opinion and what would it be founded upon?

10.5 You are accountable for procuring all waste management services for a large Council. A trade fair is to be held shortly in Munich and you have asked to attend. Your request has been

refused by the Managing Director who says that he is cutting down on 'jollies'. What can you say to persuade him that there are significant benefits in attending?

10.6 The cost of monitoring and evaluating the performance of suppliers can be high.

- What arguments would you use to justify the expenditure on evaluating performance?
- What steps might you take to minimise such expenditure?
- What are the benefits to suppliers in you evaluating their performance?

10.7 Trade unions are opposed to outsourcing of public services and yet there are demonstrable service improvements and quantifiable savings. In your opinion, is outsourcing a sound business strategy?

10.8 What are the different insurances that a supplier must have if you are purchasing goods or services from them? What are the business consequences if they do not have the insurances?

10.9 Explain the typical quantitative and qualitative measures of a supplier's performance.

10.10 It is common sense that if you aggregate purchases and shrink the supply base you should make dramatic savings. If this is true, then there is an inevitability that large companies will get the lions' share of work and small companies will lose out. What is an effective procurement strategy to deal with aggregation?

10.11 You have appointed a new supplier for the provision of specialised marketing services. They have advised you that because of staffing difficulties they are sub-contracting your work to one of their 'partners'. How would you deal with this situation?

10.12 You urgently need a sub-contractor to machine your free issue material. This is high-value, special steel. Your production director has asked you four questions:

1. What will the contract say about scrap management?
2. How will the issue and transportation of the free issue take place?
3. How will the capacity you require be guaranteed?
4. What happens if you cannot guarantee actual requirements other than on 24-hour notice?

10.13 Partnering often has a requirement for 'open book'. You are negotiating with a supplier who accepts the principle of open book but wants to know what you will use the information for. He has given you an example. He has planned a profit of 12.5 per cent. What happens if the open book shows that through his efficiencies he makes 16.9 per cent? What would you tell him about the specific and the wider principle?

10.14 What advantages do procurement consortia offer?

10.15 You have had external consultants auditing your organisation's energy costs. They say that you could save 45 per cent by switching suppliers. This would mean a saving of £2.45 million in the next three years. The consultants then say that they will reveal the source of lower energy costs when you agree to give the consultants 50 per cent of the savings. What would be your response and why?

10.16 Within the public sector there is the 'competitive dialogue' procedure. Conduct some research and explain whether you think there are any principles that could be usefully applied in the private sector.

10.17 Your company requires the external provision of 7000 hours of specialised design services associated with a military contract that your company has. You have invited tenders. One of the potential suppliers has offered a co-located design team who would work alongside your designers. The supplier's designers would use your IT systems and conform to your

quality standards, working hours and practices. It is known by the procurement team that your designers are paid 16 per cent less than the co-located designers are paid. What are the arguments for and against the co-location?

10.18 What are the advantages of having category management specialists in a procurement department?

References

[1] Technology Partners International, Inc. at: www.technologypartners.ca

[2] Office of Government Commerce, 'Category Management Toolkit': contact website@cabinet-office.gsi.gov.uk for information

[3] Growing your Business. Lord Young. May 2013 VRN BIS/13/729

[4] CIPS Knowledge Works, *e-sourcing*: www.cips.org

[5] Waller, A., quoted by Lascelles, D., *Managing the E-supply Chain*, Business Intelligence, 2001, p. 19

[6] ePedas Sdn Bhd

[7] www.investopedia.com

[8] Buffa, E. S. and Kakesh, K. S., *Modern Production Operations Management*, 5th edn, John Wiley, 1987, p. 548

[9] These categories are used in the supplier management policy document of the University of Nottingham

[10] Emptoris Supplier Performance Module at: www.emptoris.com/supplier_performance_management_module.asp

[11] Kozak, R. A. and Cohen, D. H., 'Distributor–supplier partnering relationships: a case in trust', *Journal of Business Research*, Vol. 30, 1997, pp. 33–38

[12] Simpson, P. M., Siguaw, J. A. and White, S. C., 'Measuring the performance of suppliers: an analysis of evaluation processes', *Journal of Supply Chain Management*, February, 2002

[13] As 12 above

[14] ITIL www.knowledgetransfer.net/dictionary/ITIL/en/Service_Level_Agreement

[15] Carter, R., 'The seven Cs of effective supplier evaluation', *Purchasing and Supply Chain Management*, April, 1995, pp. 44–45

[16] Fredriksson, P. and Gadde, L-E., 'Evaluation of Supplier Performance – the case of Volvo Car Corporation and its module suppliers', Chalmers University of Technology Sweden, 2005

[17] Venkatesan, R., 'Strategic sourcing: to make or not to make', *Harvard Business Review*, November–December, 1992, pp. 98–107

[18] Probert, D. R., 'Make or buy: your route to improved manufacturing performance', DTI, 1995

[19] ICMA, 'Management accounting', Official Terminology, ICMA, 1996

[20] Atkinson, J. and Meager, N., 'New forms of work organisation', IMS Report 121, 1986

[21] Beauchamp, M., 'Outsourcing everything else? Why not purchasing?', *Purchasing and Supply Management*, July, 1994, pp. 16–19

[22] Beulen, E. J. J., Ribbers, P. M. A. and Roos, J., *Outsourcing van IT-clienstverlening:een-make or buy beslissing*, Kluwer, 1994. Quoted by Fill, C. and Visser, E., The Outsourcing Dilemma: a composite approach to the make or buy decision, *Management Decision 2000*, Vol. 38.1, MCB University Press, pp. 43–50

[23] Quoted in Duffy, R. J., 'The outsourcing decision', *Inside Supply Management*, April, 2000, p. 38

[24] Lacity, M. C. and Hirschheim, R., *Beyond the Information Systems Outsourcing Bandwagon: The Insourcing Response*, John Linley, 1995

[25] Perkins, B., *Computer World*, 22 November, 2003

[26] Reilly, P. and Tamkin, P., *Outsourcing: A Flexibility Option for the Future?*, Institute of Employment Studies, 1996, pp. 32–33

[27] As 24 above

[28] Humbert, X. P. and Passarelli, C. P. M., 'Outsourcing: avoiding the hazards and pitfalls', Paper presented at the NAPM International Conference, 4–7 May, 1997

[29] CIPS, 'Partnership Sourcing': www.cips.org

[30] Partnership Sourcing Ltd, *Making Partnerships Happen*: http://www.instituteforcollaborativeworking.com

[31] Lambert, D. M., Emmelhainz, M. A. and Gardner, J. T., 'Developing and implementing supply chain partnerships', *International Journal of Logistics Management*, Vol. 7, No. 2, 1996, pp. 1–17

[32] Knemeyer, A. M., Corsi, T. M. and Murphy, P. R., 'Logistics outsourcing relationships: customer perspectives', *Journal of Business Logistics*, Vol. 24, No. 1, 2003, pp. 77–101

[33] Southey, P., 'Pitfalls to partnering in the UK', PSERG Second International Conference, April, 2003, in Burnett, K. (ed.), 'Readings in partnership sourcing', CIPS (undated)

[34] PSL, *Creating Service Partnerships*, Partnership Sourcing Ltd, 1993, p. 7

[35] As 34 above

[36] As 34 above

[37] *Effective partnering*, Crown Copyright, 2003, an overview for customers and suppliers to check

[38] The Centre for Construction Innovation: an Enterprise Centre within the School of the Built Environment at the University of Salford

[39] As 30 above, pp. 5–6

[40] Ramsay, J., 'The case against purchasing partnerships', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol 32, Issue 3, Fall, 1996, pp. 13–24

[41] Ellram, L. M., 'Partnering pitfalls and success factors', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol 31, Issue 1, Spring, 1995, pp. 36–44

[42] The Reason Foundation, 5737 Mesmer Ave., Los Angeles, California

[43] City of Austin 'Report on Insourcing Select Service Contracts', October 1, 2012

[44] *E.C. Journal*, 84–28.8, 1968

[45] Webster, F. E. and Wind, Y. J., *Organisational Buying Behaviour*, Prentice Hall, 1972, pp. 33–37

[46] As 45 above

[47] A useful summary of research in the 25 years prior to 1996 is provided by Johnston, W. J. and Lewin, J. E., 'Organisational buying behaviour: towards an integrative framework', *Journal of Business Research*, Vol. 35, No. 1, 1996

[48] Bristor, J. H. and Ryan, M. J., 'The buying center is dead, long live the buying center', *Advances in Consumer Research*, Vol. 4, 1987, pp. 255–258

[49] Chisnall, P. M., *Strategic Industrial Marketing*, 2nd edn, Prentice Hall, 1989, pp. 82–83

Chapter 11

Purchase price management and long-term cost-in-use

Learning outcomes

With reference, where applicable, to procurement and supply chain management, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- procurement's management of purchase prices
- supplier pricing decisions
- the supplier's choice of pricing strategy
- price and cost analysis
- price variation formulae
- competition legislation
- collusive tendering.

Key ideas

- The business consequences of procurement's ability to control purchase prices.
- The nature of supplier's pricing decisions.
- Firm price agreements.
- Cost price agreements.
- Cost breakdowns.
- Price analysis for the purposes of comparison and negotiation.
- Price variation formulae management.
- Procedure for checking price adjustment constituent elements.
- Techniques for obtaining the best value for money spent.

11.1 What is price?

Price can be defined as:

> A component of an exchange or transaction that takes place between two parties and refers to what must be given up by the buyer in order to obtain something offered by the seller.

In effect, price has a different focus for the two parties. The buyer sees price as what is given up to obtain the benefits of goods or services. The seller sees price as generating income and, if correctly applied, in determining profit. While pricing is a key focus for companies examining profitability, pricing decisions are also vital for not-for-profit organisations, such as charities, educational institutions, third sector bodies and Local Authority Trading Companies.

11.2 Strategic pricing – an introduction

Inevitably, procurement will, in part, be judged on their ability to manage purchase prices using varied approaches including tendering and negotiation. However, the logical starting point must be the supplier's decisions. Nagle, Hogan and Zale[1] observe that 'the economic forces that determine profitably change whenever technology, regulation, market information, consumer preferences, or relative costs change'. They further state that 'few managers, even those in marketing, have received practical training in how to make strategic pricing decisions'. Ominously, they then say that, 'most companies still make pricing decisions in reaction to change rather than in anticipation of it'.

Assuming an organisation has a pricing strategy; it is worthwhile considering how the strategy will be implemented. There are, of course, different considerations depending on the organisation's products/services. If the organisation is selling the same products on a repetitive basis, that is quite different than one that designs and manufacturers capital equipment. Nagle, Hogan and Zale observe

> implementing pricing strategy is difficult because it requires input and coordination across so many different functional areas: marketing, sales, capacity management, and finance. Successful pricing strategy implementation is built on these pillars: an effective organisation, timely and accurate information, and appropriately motivated management.

There is a flaw in the above logic. Procurement for whatever reason does not warrant inclusion in the functional areas that provide inputs. Why? In the author's experience there are organisations where procurement is an inclusive member of the pricing decision forum. An example is the pharmaceutical manufacturing sector where procurement must plan the pricing of feedstock, manufacturing and packaging production lines, packaging, storage and distribution. These cost drivers, successfully managed, are central to profitability. This positive example contrasts sharply with a shipbuilding organisation, where the key input costs were determined by the estimating department. The author was retained to challenge input costs on such equipment as radar, navigation engines, and propulsion and safety hardware. No negotiations had taken place because the estimators held the view that when the supplier owned intellectual property rights, no negotiation was possible. The consequence, if this position had been maintained, could have been the loss of a prestige contract. However, if procurement is

to be a pillar of decision making, the function must have expert pricing knowledge and be skilled negotiators.

11.3 The buyer's role in managing purchase prices

The whole task of managing purchase prices is both an emotional matter and a professional challenge. Traditional procurement theory placed equal weighting on the need to obtain the right quality, right quantity, right delivery, right place and right price. It would, of course, be incorrect to assert that price should be the dominant factor in the sourcing decision. However, price can be seen as a function of the other 'right' characteristics. In other words, the seller will determine a price only when the other factors are known. In the final analysis, the procurement department is accountable for the organisation's expenditure. There cannot be a more responsible task.

The 1970s was a period when pricing decisions were extensively researched and, uniquely, at PhD level.[2] Some of the observations and insights remain challenging. Leighton[3] asserted that, 'Price may be looked at in another way, that is, as the outcome of a power or bargaining relationship.' England and Leenders[4] put forward the view that, 'The determination of price to be paid is one of the major decisions to be made by a purchasing agent. Indeed, the ability to get a good price is sometimes held to be the prime test of a good buyer.' Winkler[5] expressed a somewhat extreme view: 'Inertia is a great weakness of British Buying and some suppliers enjoy enormous profit margins because their customers do not want to take the risk of upsetting the settled routine of things, or to investigate alternate sources of supply.' Ammer[6] stressed a rounded view of the role of procurement,

> In most cases the supplier does not have the last word on prices. Able buyers can exert tremendous leverage if they really understand how prices are set and don't hesitate to use their skills. In doing so, they are doing a service not only to their own company but also to the supplier and to the economy as a whole.

The buyer's involvement in pricing decisions at the new buy, straight rebuy and modified rebuy phases of the procurement cycle is shown in Figures 11.1, 11.2 and 11.3.

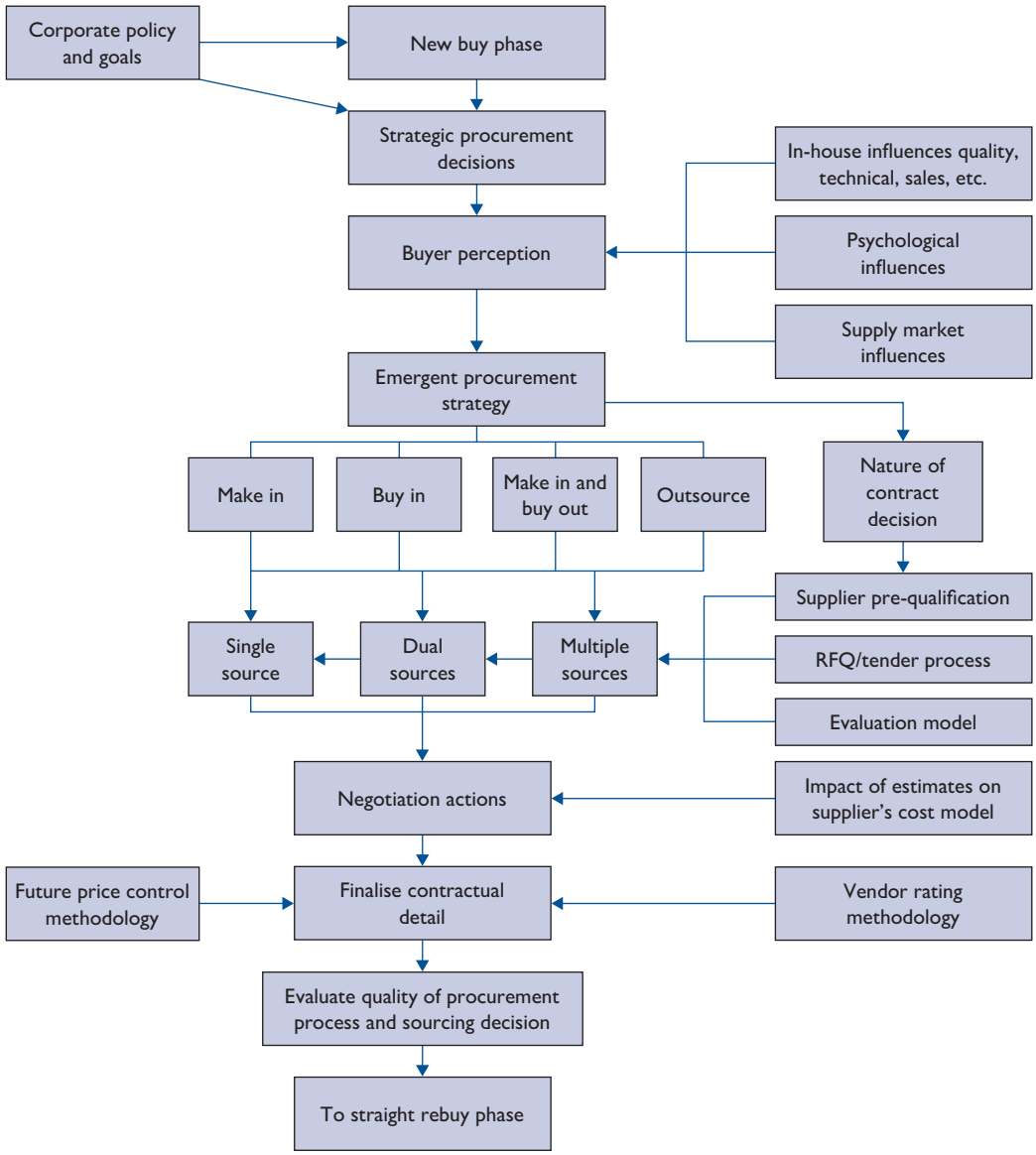
11.3.1 The buyer's actions pre-tender

As with everything, procurement actions are dependent upon what is being purchased and whether it has been purchased previously. The analysis that follows is generic in scope and some selectivity will be necessary when applying the logic to specific scenarios (see also Table 11.1).

Cost estimating

Cost estimating is widely used to determine potential selling prices, recognising that some buyers will have a propensity to negotiate and may have access to their in-house estimate to guide them. Tunç[7] points out that cost estimation is very critical and important in all types of manufacturing processes. Cost estimation is a critically important business function in all industries.

Figure 11.1 New buy phase – purchase price management factors



There are four kinds of cost estimation methodologies used throughout the forging industry:

- subjective estimation
- estimation by analogy (comparative estimation)
- parametric estimation (statistical estimation)
- bottom-up estimation (synthetic estimation).

Figure 11.2 Straight rebuy phase – purchase price management factors

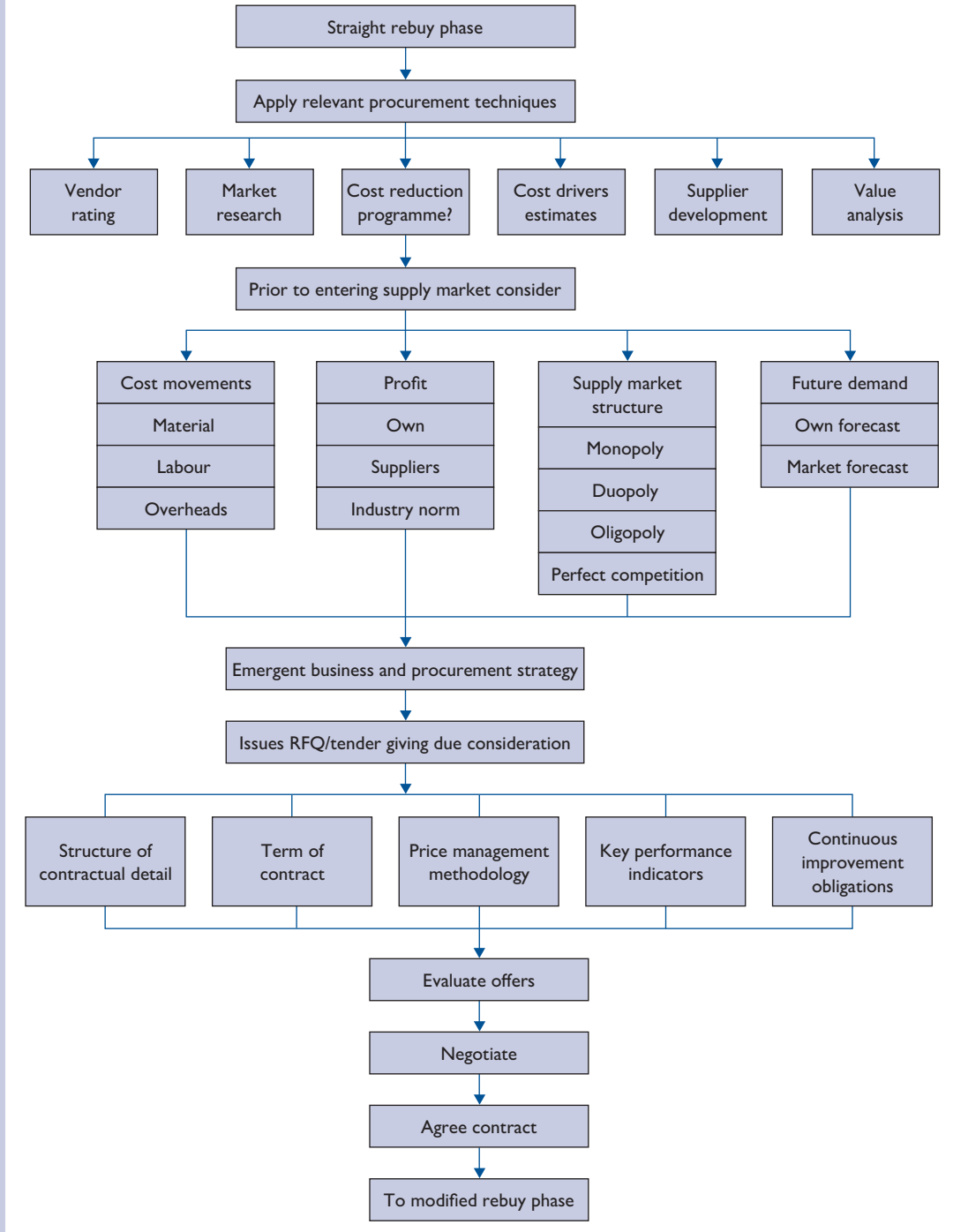
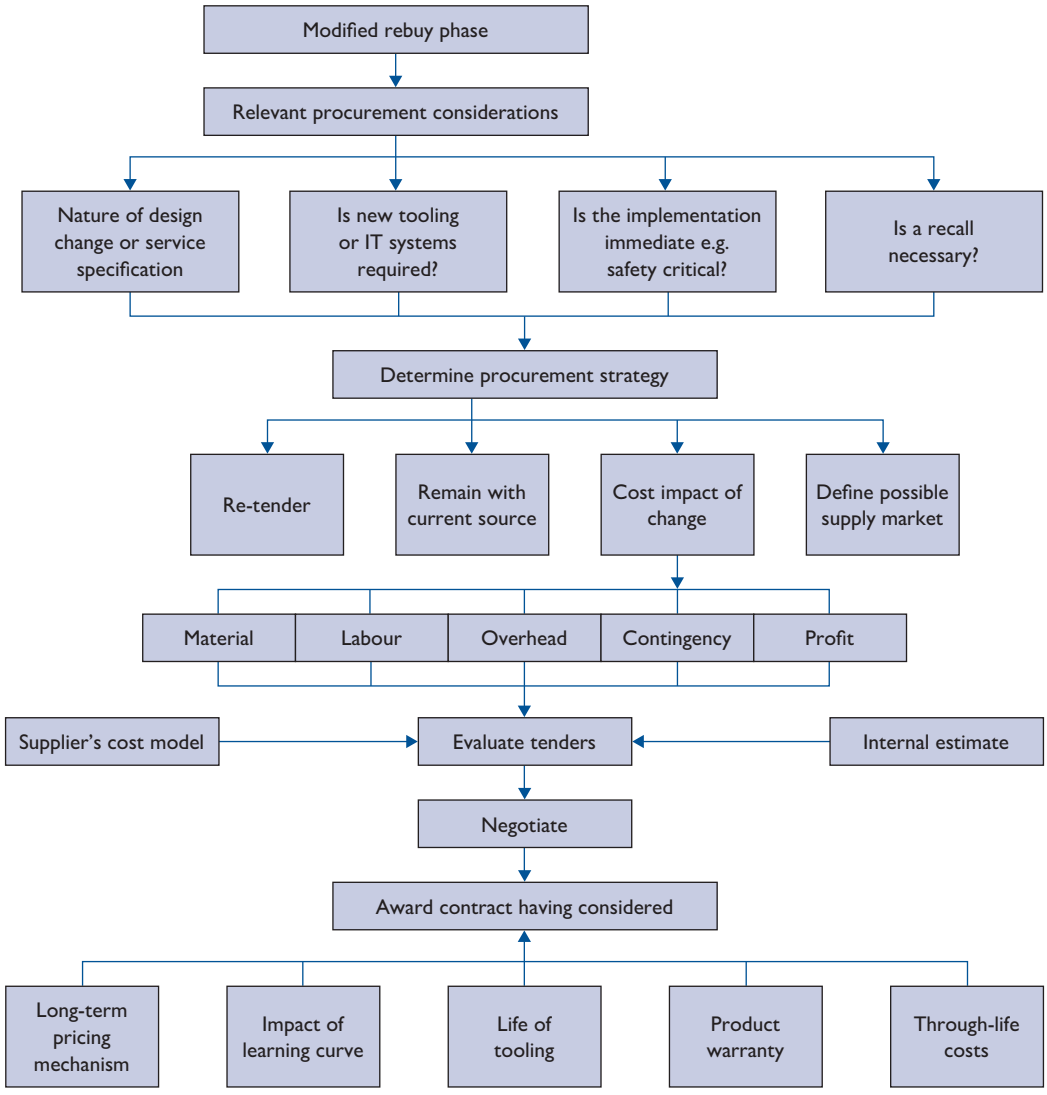


Figure 11.3 Modified rebuy phase – purchase price management factors



The items that make up a forging cost can be grouped as:

1 material cost
2 forging equipment cost
3 tooling cost
4 labour cost
5 overhead cost
6 billet heating cost
7 secondary operations cost (cleaning, heat treatment, inspection, etc.)

Table 11.1 Pre-tender considerations

Soft market testing	This consists of making contact with existing suppliers in the marketplace and inviting their comments on relevant technical and commercial matters, including price. It may be possible to obtain a 'rough order of magnitude' price to assist with budgetary planning
Estimating – conventional	There is within some engineering, automotive and aerospace organisations an ability to calculate 'should costs' to assist the budgetary process and to give the buyer target cost and negotiation leverage. Estimating is not a precise science, hence a need to be flexible when using estimates in price negotiations
Estimating – parametrics	This is an estimating technique that uses a statistical relationship between historical data and other variables (for example, square footage in construction, lines of code in software development) to calculate an estimate for activity parameters, such as scope, cost, budget and duration
Access to a benchmarking club	It is not uncommon for a number of local authorities to form a benchmarking club where they exchange price and service performance information
Contribute to a benchmarking service	There are many subscription-based price and performance services. For example, construction costs, telecommunications, pulp and paper, outsourced services and IT are readily available. It is vital, if using these services, to ensure that 'like-with-like' is being compared
Networking within the procurement profession	Members of the procurement profession are often reluctant to exchange price information. Ethical and confidentiality are influences but when organisations are non-competing there is less of an issue

8 quality control cost

9 packaging and transportation cost.

These are elaborated upon in Figure 11.4.

At the tender stage there are a number of pricing considerations as outlined in Table 11.2.

There is a great deal of skill involved in designing a cost model, where proposed costs are very specific to the goods or services to be supplied. It is possible to purchase cost estimating software such as DeccaPro.[8] Figure 11.5 is adapted from Deccan Systems schematic on using design and task variables to model costs.

When the priced tender has been received, the buyer has a key role in determining the credibility of the price. The key considerations are shown in Table 11.3.

Pricing considerations continue to be relevant after the contract has been awarded. The key considerations affecting most buyers are shown in Table 11.4.

11.3.2 Parametric Estimating

Procurement should be aware of any cost estimating techniques that will assist in the setting of in-house budgets and in the evaluation of tendered prices. Parametric

Figure 11.4 Forging work breakdown structure (WBS)

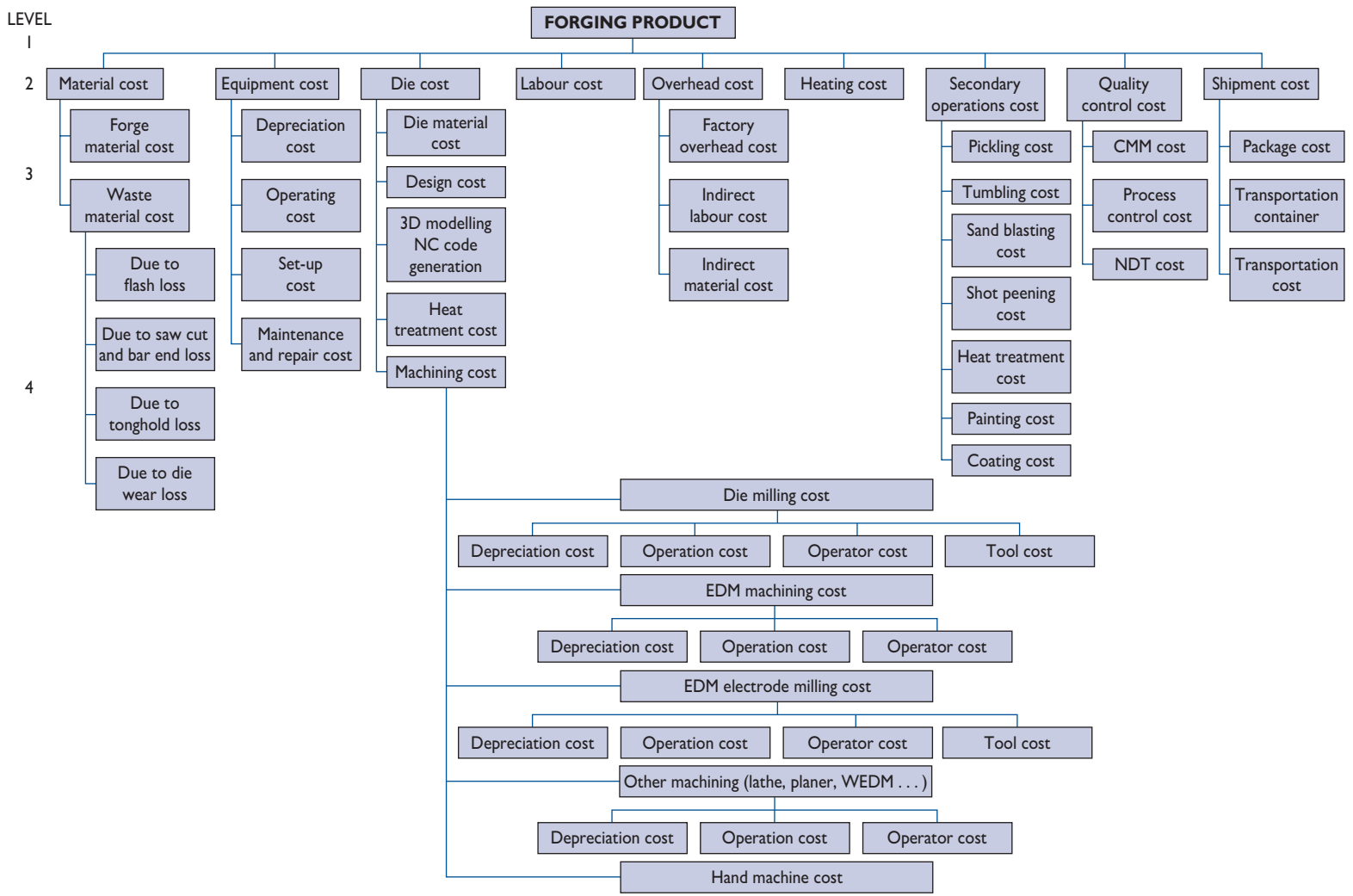


Table 11.2 Tender stage considerations

Lump sum prices	This is an unsophisticated approach to determining prices. The limit of information is a total lump sum price from each tenderer. If we assume that five tendered prices have been received: £111,865 £151,490 £154,076 £199,831 £245,641 there are many issues arising, including: 1 Why is there a 119 per cent difference between the lowest and highest prices? 2 Has the lowest priced bidder made a mistake or plans to cut the quality? 3 Is the lowest bidder desperate for work? 4 Is the highest bidder too busy and doesn't want the work?
Elemental cost breakdown	This is where the buyer asks each tenderer to breakdown the tendered price into its key elements, namely, labour, materials, overheads and profit. This methodology does give comparable data not available with a lump sum price
Detailed cost model	In this situation every facet of the tendered price is 'broken down' to give the buyer the classic 'open book' scenario. Refer to Figure 11.5 for an approach to obtaining detailed costs
Reverse auctions	At the tender stage the buyer has comparable price information and then subjects it to a reverse auction where one or more of the tendered prices will reduce, but not against cost disclosure

estimating is an ideal consideration for project and IT procurement. The International Society of Parametric Analysts[9] has published the Parametric Estimating Handbook, Fourth Edition – April 2008. The following content is informed by the handbook and is in summary form.

Parametric estimating can be defined as 'a technique that develops cost estimates based upon the examination and validation of the relationships which exist between a project's technical, programmatic and cost characteristics as well as the resources consumed during its development, manufacture, maintenance, and/or modification.'

It is asserted that cost estimating has a very ancient history. It is even Biblical; Luke 14:28.29 discusses the importance of '… [He should] sitteth down first, and counteth the cost, [to see] whether he have sufficient to finish it'.

Parametric tools and techniques have much more versatility than other estimating approaches. There are numerous reasons for this. Here are a few:

- Better estimates are provided, often in a matter of minutes
- There exists a high-quality link between the technical and cost proposals
- The data is well understood through the calibration and validation activities
- It is much easier to estimate conceptual designs
- Early costing cannot be done effectively any other way
- No bill of material (BOM) is required
- It is much easier to handle scope, technical and performance changes.

Figure 11.5 Designing a cost model

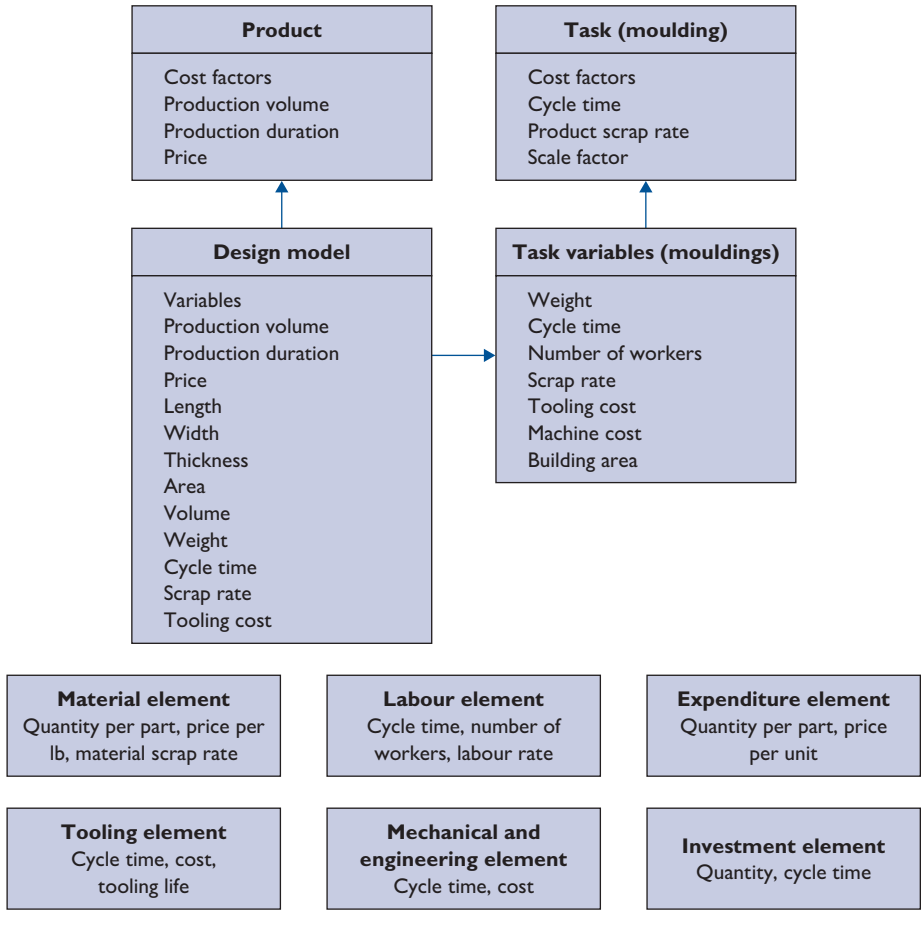


Table 11.3 Post-tender stage considerations

Interrogate costs	When a detailed cost breakdown has been obtained, the buyer should lead the activity to interrogate all costs and overhead recovery and declared profit. This activity will require the support of technical and finance colleagues. The comparison between different tenderers' cost opinions can be very revealing
Clarification	Where there are discrepancies between tendered prices and between the in-house estimated price, it is the buyer's task to seek clarification. This may reveal that the supplier cannot purchase materials competitively; labour costs are too high, long-term cost-in-use is too high and so on
Negotiation	The negotiation of price is a valid activity, providing the highest ethical standards apply. That means not conducting dutch auctions or revealing one tenderers' prices to another tenderer. Within the public sector, buyers must ensure they do not breach EU Regulations or Standing Orders

Table 11.4 Post-contract award stage considerations

Indexation	In many long-term contracts and projects the tendered price is subject to indexation, meaning the price could decrease and increase. Contracts may refer to VOP (variation of price), CPA (contract price adjustment) or PVF (price variation formula). They all mean the same. In each case there will be a formula included in the contract, either from a trade body or devised by the buying organisation.
Claims for extras	There are occasions in the life of a contract when the buying organisation will change some parameters, such as specification, delivery times and product support requirements. This will probably trigger a claim for extra payment. The detailed basis of the claim must be exposed and, when appropriate, negotiated to a level that is acceptable to the buying organisation
Contract change notices (CCNs)	There is a provision in some contracts for a contract change notice (CCN) to be issued when a formal change to a contract is proposed. There will be a defined process to consider price and other impacts of the change, such as extending delivery date(s)
Cost in the event of termination	There is a possibility that a contract will be terminated prior to its defined end date. Termination is a regular source of disputes, many of which finish up in the courts. The contract should include a right for the buyer to terminate in the event of default and, in some cases, for 'convenience'. It is almost inevitable that some 'costs' will have been incurred by the supplier for which recompense will be required. There is a legal onus on the supplier to mitigate their losses
Continuous improvement obligations	A requirement for continuous improvement is not an unreasonable demand, particularly on long-term contracts for the supply of goods or services. It recognises that the supplier, with the buyer's support, should be able to reduce costs. The classic approach of value analysis and process improvements can help to reduce prices. In some service contracts there is a requirement to reduce annual costs by, say, 3 per cent. If a higher figure is obtained there can be a profit sharing arrangement
Apply benchmarking clause	Some contracts have an annual benchmarking requirement where, for example, prices are checked against a basket of comparable products. If the basket shows lower costs the supplier has the option of matching them, or the buyer can purchase the items elsewhere. This approach can, for example, be applied to IT supplies
Active cost reduction programme	In well managed procurement departments there will be an active cost reduction programme and each buyer will be given a specific target. Achieving cost reduction will require varied initiatives. In a manufacturing environment, cost reduction is vital to maintaining market position and profitability. Engagement with the supply chain is essential if unnecessary cost is to be driven out
Resisting price increase requests	Price increases will erode competitiveness and profit in a manufacturing environment. In the public sector they will threaten the ability to provide the same level and quality of services. The skill of procurement to resist price increase requests is an acid test of competence. The skill of evaluating the reasoning behind the proposed price increase is a professional requisite

11.3.2.1 Project activities that cause material differences in cost

In Table 11.5 is an extract from the NASA Cost Estimating Handbook[10] showing the strengths, weaknesses and applications of Parametric Cost Estimating Methodology.

Some project activities have shown by experience to cause material differences in cost; they also frequently occur. This includes:

- *Timing*
  Timing of historical values versus future costs is of importance for at least one main reason: variations in the value of currencies, also called inflation or deflation.
- *Labour versus material*
  In common parlance the difference between labour and material is clear. But it is not always clear in the world of accounting, which is the source of data used to build cost estimating relationships (CERs).
- *Recurring versus non-recurring*
  Costs relating to initial development of a product are frequently referred to as non-recurring costs on the grounds that they will only occur once. Costs related to production of a product are referred to as recurring costs on the grounds that they will recur every time the product is built.
- *Production quantity and rate*
  While quantity is the main driver of total production cost, the well-known learning effect can also have a considerable impact.
- *Team skills*
  The modern trend is for competitive project organisations to engage in some form of continuous improvement, thereby becoming more cost effective in their work. Team self-improvement is the common purpose.
- *Team tools*
  'Tools' can include everything from buildings to production machines to computers and software. As tools improve, cost effectiveness increases.

Table 11.5 Strengths, weaknesses and applications of Parametric Cost Estimating Methodology

Strengths	*Weaknesses*	*Applications*
Once developed, CERs are an excellent tool to answer many 'what if' questions rapidly	Often difficult for others to understand the statistics associated with the CERs.	■ Design-to-cost trade studies ■ Cross-checking ■ Architectural studies ■ Long-range planning ■ Sensitivity analysis ■ Data-driven risk analysis ■ Software development
Statistically sound predictors that provide information about the estimator's confidence of their predictive ability.	Must fully describe and document the selection of raw data, adjustments to data, development of equations, statistical findings and conclusions for validation and acceptance.	
Eliminates reliance on opinion through the use of actual observations	Collecting appropriate data and generating statistically correct CERs is typically difficult, time consuming and expensive	
Defensibility rests on logical correlation, thorough and disciplined research, defensible data and scientific method	Loses predictive ability/credibility outside its relevant data range	

- *Volatility*
  The most effective project environment is one in which project requirements, labour force and infrastructure is stable.
- *Accounting changes*
  There are mandated changes from the Government, internal decisions to change cost accumulation procedures, adjustments to account for new ways of doing business, and mergers and acquisitions.
- *Special constraints*
  Various kinds of special constraints can seriously affect cost. Among them are: overly short or long project schedules, staff shortages, ill-advised attempts to reduce costs, high levels of project secrecy.

11.3.3 Procurement cost reduction

There is a continuing need for procurement to manage a cost reduction programme. There should be an agreed, and well-defined, programme for the procurement department and for each buyer. Table 11.6 sets out a range of possibilities for cost reduction attention.

Table 11.6 Possibilities for cost reduction attention

1 Challenge existing contracts for price competitiveness	■ Select long-term contracts ■ Benchmark in market ■ Establish the cost drivers
2 Challenge design/specification	■ Use concurrent engineering ■ Implement 'design for lean' ■ Use value analysis methodology
3 Negotiate reduction in overhead charges	■ Adopt electronic procurement systems ■ Reduce levels of inventory ■ Build to order
4 Adopt standardisation	■ Reduce varieties ■ Use one supplier's range ■ Design out duplicate ranges
5 Challenge supply chain costs	■ Incoterms ■ Packaging ■ Mode of transport
6 Consider outsourcing	■ Select non-core services ■ Market test ■ Set sights high
7 Better use of working capital	■ Payment terms ■ No advance payments ■ Reduce inventory
8 Eradicate uncompetitive suppliers	■ Issue RFQs ■ Negotiation with new suppliers ■ Terminate ineffective contracts

11.4 Supplier pricing decisions

The supplier's pricing decision will be made in a number of scenarios, including:

- selling a range of standard products through either published price lists or 'ad hoc' pricing decisions
- one-off project requirement that has no directly comparable precedence
- launching a new product or service
- selling a product or service to meet an 'emergency' situation, e.g. a technical solution to the failure of a safety critical piece of equipment
- a strategic decision to stop selling a range of products at the end of their design life.

There will be many general considerations to take into account, including:

- the ability to achieve an appropriate profit
- the nature of demand and supply, and current market forces
- existing capacity to provide the goods/services
- available inventory
- the buyer's location and status, e.g. are they a well-established customer or a 'one-off' buyer?
- required levels of investment, if any
- demands made on key personnel
- risk presented by the contractual terms and conditions
- any special environmental and health and safety requirements
- extent of sub-contracting and supply chain
- requirement for performance bonds/parent company guarantees
- product support requirements
- special insurances demanded
- intellectual property ownership
- urgency of requirement.

11.5 The supplier's choice of pricing strategy

A supplier has many options when deciding how to price goods or services. When the buyer receives a price from the supplier, it is difficult to know what approach has been taken, hence the need to probe tendered prices. Outlined below are some pricing strategies that may be used by a supplier.

11.5.1 Skimming pricing

This strategy involves charging a relatively high price for a period of time particularly where a new, innovative, or much improved product is launched on the market. The product may be protected by a patent as is often the case with pharmaceutical products. The protection will come to an end and competitors will then be attracted, hence

dramatic reductions in price occur. For prestige goods and services, price skimming can be successful because the buyer is more concerned with prestige than price. First class air travel and designer-label clothing are examples of skimming pricing.

11.5.2 Penetration pricing

In this instance, the price charged for products and services is set artificially low in order to:

a) gain entry into a customer who is held to be of long-term strategic importance and/or
b) gain market share.

It will be evident that such 'low' prices cannot be sustained in the longer term. When a buyer is faced with a tendered price that is, say, 40 per cent lower than the next ranked price there is the danger that the low price is linked to a perception of poor quality. So how does the supplier give such a low price? One way is to seek only to recover the net cost of materials and labour and to either not apply overhead recovery or apply marginal overheads and not generate any profit.

11.5.3 Full cost pricing

The supplier, in this case, includes every cost that is believed to be attracted to the purchase. All material costs will be recovered, plus an allowance for scrap. All labour costs will be recovered at rates charged for each grade of labour, including management time. All overheads deemed to apply will be applied to labour and materials in a manner determined by Finance and may include corporate overheads imposed on the specific business operation. It is probable that a contingency provision will be included, as may be 'agent's fees', 'negotiation allowance', finance/cash/low risk provision and so on. It is believed that about 80 per cent of all supplier pricing decisions are made on the basis of full costs.

11.5.4 Buyer related pricing

A deliberate strategy is for the supplier to offer a price that, in some way, directly relates to the 'buyer's' competence. The supplier will form a view on competence by the manner in which the purchase is approached. The disclosure of a budget is not a sign of competence. Neither are the following comments:

'Please do the best you can.'

'We are not asking anyone else to quote.'

'No doubt your prices have increased since we last purchased.'

'Can you supply us immediately and sort out the price later?'

11.5.5 Promotional pricing

This is common in the retail field with BOGOF (Buy One Get One Free), buy two and get 50 per cent discount on the second product, and seasonal offers. They are not uncommon in industry when suppliers seek to dispose of slow moving inventory, dispose of products at the end of their life and in situations where the manufacturer is promoting a specific product for a limited period.

11.5.6 Prestige pricing

This is not dissimilar to skimming pricing and is used by suppliers who can capture part of a market and who want a 'prestige' service. The international airlines with first class travel at fares that can be six times 'economy' travel is one example, as are Savile Row suits, top-range motor vehicles and top-end wines.

The skill for buyers is to understand the basis of prices offered. This requires diligence in probing and understanding costs and, on occasions, the application of high level negotiation skills.

11.5.7 Diversionary pricing

Some have argued that this is a practice used by deceptive service firms, suggesting that it is somehow illegal. The fact is that it is a legitimate business practice where a low price is stated for one or more services (emphasised in promotion) to give an illusion that all prices are low. An example is an ice cream manufacturer who offers freezers at a very low purchase price but only on condition their products can be stored in them.

11.5.8 Target pricing

This is where the buyer provides a target price to suppliers. The context in which this is done should be understood before a supplier responds. The target price could be the outcome of a genuine cost estimate when the buying organisation has very good knowledge of the product or service. In this situation the target price has some credibility. However, the unethical buyer may 'make up' a target price and pressurise suppliers to meet it, even if they cannot make a profit.

11.6 Price and cost analysis

Price analysis is designed to show that the proposed price is reasonable when compared with current or recent prices for the same or similar goods or services, adjusted where necessary to reflect changes in market conditions, economic conditions, quantities, or/and terms and conditions under contracts that resulted for adequate price competition achieved through an RFQ (request for quotation) or tendering process.

Cost analysis is the review and evaluation of the separate cost elements, overhead recovery and profit in the tendered price (including cost or pricing data or information other than cost or pricing data) and the application of professional judgment to determine how appropriate the proposed costs are to setting the purchase price, assuming reasonable economy and efficiency.

11.6.1 Considerations when requesting prices from suppliers

There are many considerations when requesting prices from suppliers, including:

- the value of the contract
- if detailed cost information is provided, who has the competence to evaluate it?
- do we have the ability to prepare the cost model template?

- what benchmarking information do we have?
- what layers of labour costs do we want, e.g. by labour grades and time?
- how do we want overheads (fixed, variable and corporate) to be shown?
- how will we evaluate profit returns, taking into account investment?
- how do we propose to evaluate costs associated with risk?
- recognition that a proposed price may not be related to cost
- dealing with discounts and/or rebates
- the use to which the data will be put, e.g. negotiation
- the need to respect the supplier's confidentiality.

11.6.2 Price analysis

When tendered prices are being compared there are various bases on which a comparison can be made. These include:

- a simple comparison of proposed prices once it is ascertained that 'all things are equal', including compliance with the specification and contract terms and conditions
- the use of parametric estimating methods where key metrics are available
- comparison with competitive published price lists
- the use of comparable market prices through third party consultants, e.g. energy pricing
- comparison with in-house generated 'should cost' estimates
- comparison with the output of value engineering/value analysis studies
- liaising with buyers in a wider procurement community, e.g. government buying operations in different departments.

11.6.3 Cost analysis

This is a far more demanding activity than price analysis because it requires the buying organisation to have the resources and expertise to analyse all costs, and to effectively challenge areas where it is believed the costs are inappropriate. The following facets of the price will need to be analysed, questioned and resolved:

- What constitutes material costs based ideally on a bill of materials and costed for base metals, materials, scrap allowance and bought-in sub-assemblies? Differences in these costs may be accounted for by good/bad procurement, efficiencies/inefficiencies in managing waste and so on.
- What constitutes labour costs, accounted for by the hourly cost of labour at various grades including operatives, supervision, management and any director involvement? There are significant differences between labour rates in, for example, UK, USA, India, Morocco, Vietnam and Israel.
- How are overheads being recovered? There are fixed and variable overheads to be considered and, depending on the suppliers' organisation structure, the possibility of corporate overheads used, for example, to recover corporate IT legal and financial services provision.

- It is probable that the supplier will apply a contingency factor, often a percentage of material, labour and overheads. The provision for contingency includes the potential of 'unexpected' factors arising such as labour disputes, unexpected surges in raw material prices, poor cost estimating and difficulties meeting the specification.
- The inclusion of costs to comply with the demands of the contract, such as:
  - provision for liquidated damages
  - provision of a performance bond or parent company guarantee
  - excessive inspection demands and testing procedures
  - attendance at contract review meetings.
- The declared profit that can be based on varied approaches, including:
  - the recovery of investment such as research and development
  - excessive profit return when skimming pricing used
  - demands made by 'corporate' to justify bidding for the contract
  - the need to generate financial reserves.

Tables 11.7 and 11.8 show examples of cost breakdowns, included to illustrate the depth of detail that can be pursued.

11.6.4 The buyer's control of purchase price

There should be a continuous review of the effectiveness of a buyer's control of purchase prices. This should include independent audits, taking into consideration, as a minimum:

- the award of contracts that are not subjected to tenders
- price increases allowed without scrutiny
- no scrutiny of cost drivers
- an absence of negotiation
- an absence of benchmarking data
- contract terms extended without tendering

Table 11.7 Extract from services cost model

Employee costs	*ICT costs*
Salaries	Hardware
Overtime	Software
Pensions	Depreciation
National Insurance	Support
Supplementary benefits	Internal recharging
Car allowance	Other (name)
Public transport	
Training	
Recruitment	
Temporary employees	
Other (name)	

Table 11.8 Capital cost breakdown – base case – 65,000 tpd mill

Area	*US$M*
Process Plant	
Excavation & Backfill	2.7
Primary Crushing	9.3
Coarse Ore Reclaim	10.6
Concentrate Electrical	12.4
Grinding	81.9
Flotation	24.9
Concentrate Pumping and Concentrate Pipeline	55.7
Concentrate Dewatering	17.7
Reagent Handling	1.3
Concentrate Loadout	3.7
Plantsite Utilities, Comms	2.4
PLC & Software	0.5
Total Process Plant Cost	**223.1**
Infrastructure	
Shop & Warehouse	2.2
Truck Shop	9.0
Administrative Building	3.8
Plant access Roads, Tunnels & Bridges	97.2
Power supply	42.3
Water Supply	6.8
Water Rock/Tailing Storage/Water Diversion	72.5
Water Management	46.1
Camp	12.6
Airstrip	3.0
Other Buildings	1.9
Plant Mobile Equipment	3.2
Total Infrastructure Cost	**300.6**
Mine	
Haul Roads (includes Plant Site Roads)	4.7
Prestripping	78.8
Mine Equipment	133.7
Mine Dewatering	7.5
Mine Electrical	2.9
Magazine	0.2
Fuel Storage, Disposing and Magazine	1.3
Total Mine Cost	**229.1**
Total Project Direct Cost	**752.8**
Indirect Costs	
EPCM	65.3
Construction Indirects	81.4
Commissioning, Start-up, & Vendor Reps	1.7
Spares	12.3
First Fill	4.0
Freight	17.6
Owners Costs	22.5
Total Project Indirect Costs	**204.8**
Contingency	**144.1**
Total Project Costs	**1101.7**

- contract 'extras' allowed without challenge
- poor contract change procedures
- no consideration of reverse auctions
- single tendering permitted
- no control over price variation formulae
- no control over purchase prices linked to currency movement.

11.6.5 Managing a key cost driver

In some sales prices there is a key cost driver; for example, a precious metal (Gold) used in electronics manufacture. International airliners have to deal with fluctuating aviation fuel prices on a continuing basis. JT Murphy[11] has written a very informative paper on fuel provisions for dredging projects. He explains that fuel can easily represent 30 per cent of dredging cost. He sheds light on the upfront owner costs, such as surveys, design, specifications, advertisement, coordination, evaluation, award and administration. A typical large dredge can easily accommodate 750,000 litres of marine diesel and use 20,000 litres per day. Typical contract documents require the potential dredging contractor to fill in the following (worked example):

where

$p = b + cq$

p = Total dredging cost per cubic metre (cubic yard)

b = Contractor provided dredging price per cubic metre (cubic yard)

c = Owner provided price of fuel per litre (gallon)

q = Contractor provided fuel requirement litres (gallons) per cubic metre (cubic yard)

$b = \$7.85$

$c = \$0.85$

$q = 2.50$

$p = \$7.85 + \$0.85/\text{litre} \times 2.50 \text{ litres/cubic metre}$

$p = \$9.98$ cubic metre

The management of the fuel pricing requires astute procurement strategic considerations, including definitive commitment, long-term supplier agreement, hedging or take the risks associated with supply market fluctuations.

11.7 Competition legislation

11.7.1 Introduction

On 18 March 2010, The National Audit Office published its report[12] 'Review of the UK's Competition Landscape'. At paragraph 2 it points out that the UK's competition regime is largely the result of the Competition Act 1998 and the Enterprise Act 2002.

There is other legislation which impacts on the UK regime, such as the Communications Act 2003 and the underpinning EU framework.

11.7.2 UK anti-competition agencies

Within the UK and Europe there are extensive measures in place, seeking to control anti-competition practices. On 15th March 2012 the UK Government's Department for Business, Innovation and Skills announced proposals for strengthening competition in the UK by merging the Office of Fair Trading and the Competition Commission to create a new single Competition and Markets Authority (CMA). The formation of CMA was enacted in Part 3 of the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013, which received royal assent on 25 April 2013.

In situations where competition could be unfair or consumer choice may be affected, the CMA is responsible for:

- investing mergers
- conducting market studies
- investigating possible breaches of prohibitions against anti-competitive agreements under the Competition Act 1998
- bringing criminal proceedings against individuals who commit cartels offences
- enforcing consumer protection legislation, particularly the Unfair Terms in Consumer Contract Directive and Regulations
- encouraging regulators to use their competition powers
- considering regulatory reference and appeals

The bodies are outlined below:

- *The Competition Appeal Tribunal (CAT)* is a specialist judicial body with cross-disciplinary expertise in Law, Economics, Business and Accountancy whose function is to hear and decide cases involving competition or economic regulatory issues. The CAT was created by Section 12 and Schedule 2 to the Enterprise Act 2002, which came into force on 1st April 2003. Judgments can be found on the CAT website www.catribunal.org.uk
- There are a number of industry authorities, namely:
  - Civil Aviation Authority for airports and air traffic services
  - Monitor for health services in England
  - Utility Regulator for gas, electricity, water and sewerage in Northern Ireland
  - Ofcom for television, radio, telephone, postal and internet services
  - Ofgem for gas, electricity in England, Wales and Scotland
  - Ofwat for water and sewage services in England and Wales
  - Office of Rail Regulation for railways in England, Wales and Scotland.
- For the European Commission there is the Directorate-General for Competition. The European Commission, together with the national competition authorities, directly enforces EU competition rules, Articles 101–109 of the Treaty on the

functioning of the EU (TFEU), to make EU markets work better, by ensuring that all companies compete equally and fairly on their merits. This benefits consumers, businesses and the European economy as a whole.

11.7.3 The Competition Act 1998 and The Enterprise Act 2002

The Competition Act 1998 prohibited both anti-competition agreements and the abuse of a dominant position.

An 'agreement' is an undertaking or contract between companies or associated companies, whether in writing or otherwise. Examples of such agreements include:

- agreeing to fix procurement or selling prices or other trading conditions
- agreeing to limit or control production, markets or technical developments of investment
- agreeing to share markets or supply sources
- agreeing to apply different trading conditions to equivalent transactions, thereby placing some parties at a competitive advantage.

An agreement is, however, considered to be unlikely to have an appreciable effect where the combined market share of the parties involved does not exceed 25 per cent. This said, agreements to fix prices, impose minimum resale prices or share markets may be regarded as having an appreciable effect even when the parties' combined market share is below 25 per cent.

Whether or not a company is in a 'dominant position' will be decided by the OFT according to the company's market share. In general, a company is unlikely to be regarded as dominant if it has a market share of less than 40 per cent, although a lower market share may be considered dominant if the market structure enables it to act independently of its competitors.

Ways in which a dominant company may abuse its position include:

- imposing unfair procurement or selling prices
- limiting production, markets or technical development to the prejudice of customers
- applying different trading conditions to equivalent transactions and thereby placing certain parties at a competitive advantage
- attaching unrelated supplementary conditions to a contract.

11.8 Collusive tendering

Collusive tendering is a pernicious and criminal practice. A definition is 'when companies making tenders secretly share information or make arrangements among themselves in order to control the result.' There is extensive reference material emanating from authorities, such as the Office of Fair Trading Decisions CA98/03/2013 'Collusive tendering in the Supply and Installation of certain access control and alarm systems to retirement properties.' (Case CE/9248-10) 6th December 2013. Selected findings are shown below:

> 1.6 …The infringements comprised of three separate bilateral collusive tendering arrangements between Cirrus and each of O'Rourke, Owens and Jackson with a total of 65 tenders… with an aggregate value of approximately £1.4 million, being the subject of collusion.

3.38 In order for a concerted practice to be regarded as having an anti-competitive object, it is sufficient that it has the potential to have a negative impact on competition.

4.6 An essential feature of any tender process (whether open of selective) is that the prospective suppliers should compete with each other and prepare and submit bids independently.

Procurement should have an active role in seeking to determine whether collusive tendering has or is likely to have occurred. In the above care the procurement authority was Peverel Management Services Ltd (PMSL) who sought at least, two bids. One was always from Cirrus Communication Services Ltd (CCSL) part of the PMSL corporate group and the other from a contractor nominated by CCSL (our emphasis).

At 5.31 a CCSL internal document exposed the collusive relationship 'Hello, I have updated the process but think it's best if we keep this one 'in house' as the bits in red are what we do behind the scenes and not an official part of the process (tee hee).'

11.9 Price variation formulae

Traditionally, whenever, price variation formulae have been discussed, reference has been made to the formula developed by the British Electrotechnical and Allied Manufacturers Association (BEAMA). Variations in the cost of materials and labour are calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$P_1 = P_0\left(0.05 + 0.475\left(\frac{M_1}{M_0}\right) + 0.475\left(\frac{L_1}{L_0}\right)\right)$$

Where:

P_1 = final contract price

P_0 = contract price at date of tender

M_1 = average of producer price index figures for materials and fuel purchased for basic electrical equipment as provided by the Office for National Statistics, commencing with the index last provided before the two-fifths point of the contract period and ending with the index last provided before the four-fifths point of the contract period

M_0 = producer price index figure of materials and fuel purchased for basic electrical equipment last provided by the Office for National Statistics before the date of tender

L_1 = average of the BEAMA labour cost index figures for electrical engineering published for the last two-thirds of the contract period

L_0 = BEAMA labour cost index figure for electrical engineering published for the month in which the tender date falls.

It is essential that a professional buyer has a good working knowledge of the way in which price variation formulae are constructed and applied. The complexity will depend on the nature of the actual purchase.

The Indian Electrical and Electronics Manufacturers Association (IEEMA) have devised a PVF for a copper wound transformer. This is reproduced below.

The price quoted/confirmed is based on the input cost of raw materials/components and labour cost as on the date of quotation and the same is deemed to be related to prices of raw materials and all India average consumer price index number for industrial workers as specified in the price variation clause given below. In case of any variation in

these prices and index numbers, the price payable shall be subject to adjustment, up or down in accordance with the following formula:

$$P = \left(13 + 23\frac{c}{c_0} + 27\frac{ES}{ES_0} + 9\frac{IS}{IS_0} + \frac{IM}{IM_0}\,11\,\frac{TB}{TB_0} + 12\right)$$

Where:

P = Price payable as adjusted in accordance with the above formula

P_0 = Price quoted/confirmed

C_0 = Average LME settlement price of copper wire bars
This price is as applicable for the month, *two* months prior to the date of tendering.

ES_0 = C&F price of Cold rolled grain oriented (CRGO) Electrical Steel Sheets
This price is as applicable on the first working day of the month *one* month prior to the date of tendering.

IS_0 = Wholesale price index number for iron and steel (base 1993–94 = 100)
This index number is as applicable for the week ending first Saturday of the month *three* months prior to the date of tendering

IM_0 = Price of insulation materials
This price is as applicable on the first working day of the month, *one* month prior to the date of tendering.

TB_0 = Price of transformer oil base stock
This price is as applicable on the first working day of the month, *two* months prior to the date of tendering.

W_0 = All India average consumer price index number for industrial workers, as published by the Labour Bureau, Ministry of Labour, Government of India (base 1982 = 100)

C = Average LME settlement price of copper wire bars
This price is as applicable for the month, *two* months prior to the date of delivery.

ES = C&F price of CRGO electrical steel sheet
This price is as applicable on the first working day for the month, *one* month prior to the date of delivery.

IS = Wholesale price index number for iron and steel (base 1993–94 = 100)
This index number is as applicable for the week ending first Saturday of the month, *three* months prior to the date of delivery.

IM = Price of insulating material
This price is as applicable on the first working day of the month, *one* month prior to the date of delivery.

TB = Price of transformer oil base stock
This price is as applicable on the first working day of the month, *two* months prior to the date of delivery.

W = All India average consumer price index number for industrial workers, as published by the Labour Bureau, Ministry of Labour, Government of India (base 1982 = 100)
This index number is as applicable on the first working day of the month, *three* months prior to the date of delivery.

Another price adjustment formula, this time one applied in the South African engineering sector is reproduced below.

In accordance with Clause 49(2), the value of each certificate issued in terms of Clause 52(1) shall be increased or decreased by the amount obtained by multiplying '*Ac*', defined in Clause 2 of this Schedule, by the Contract Price Adjustment Factor, rounded off to the fourth decimal place, determined according to the formula:

$$CPAF = (1 - X)\left[\frac{aLt}{L_0} + \frac{bPt}{P_0} + \frac{cMt}{M_0} + \frac{dFt}{P_0} - 1\right]$$

in which the symbols have the following meaning:

'X' is the proportion of '*Ac*' which is not subject to adjustment unless otherwise stated in the Appendix; this proportion shall be 0.15.

'*a*', '*b*', '*c*' and '*d*' are the co-efficients determined by the engineer and specified in the Appendix, and which are deemed, irrespective of the actual constituents of the work, to represent the proportionate value of labour, plant, materials (other than 'special materials' specified, in terms of Clause 49(3), in the Appendix) and fuel respectively. The arithmetical sum of '*a*', '*b*', '*c*' and '*d*' shall be unity.

'*L*' is the 'Labour Index' and shall be the actual wage rate index for all workers in the civil engineering industry of the Central Statistical Service.

'*P*' is the 'Plant Index' and shall be the 'Civil Engineering Plant Index' as published in the Statistical News Release (PO 142.2) of the Central Statistical Service.

'*M*' is the 'Materials Index' and shall be the 'Price Index of Civil Engineering Materials', as published in the Statistical News Release (PO 142.20) of the Central Statistical Service.

'*F*' is the 'Fuel Index' and shall be the weighted average of the fuel indices for 'Diesel, before deduction of refund' and 'Diesel, after deduction of refund', as published in the Statistical News Release (PO 142.20) of the Central Statistical Service for the 'Coast' or 'Witwatersrand'. The weighting ratio and the use of the 'Coast' and 'Witwatersrand' indices shall be as specified by the engineer in the Appendix unless otherwise specified by the engineer in the Appendix, the weighting ratio shall be 1 to 1.

The suffix '*o*' denotes the basic indices applicable to the base month, which shall be the month prior to the month in which the closing date for the tender falls.

The suffix '*t*' denotes the current indices applicable to the month in which the last day of the period falls to which the relevant payment certificate relates.

If any index relevant to any particular certificate is not known at the time when the certificate is prepared, the engineer shall estimate the value of such an index. Any correction which may be necessary when the correct indices become known shall be made by the engineer in subsequent payment certificates.

Discussion questions

11.1 How would you define price:
(a) from the buyer's viewpoint?
(b) from the supplier's viewpoint?

11.2 At the pre-tender phase of procurement, how may the following activities aid the control of purchase prices:

(a) engaging in soft market testing?
(b) using parametric estimating?
(c) networking within the procurement profession?
(d) contributing to a benchmarking service?

11.3 If a supplier provides a detailed cost breakdown, what roles can be played in evaluating it, by each of the following:

(a) the buyer?
(b) the accountant?
(c) the technical specialist in the goods/service?
(d) the estimator?

11.4 You have been asked to purchase a hot air balloon. Your sales director has obtained a single quotation from a well-known manufacturer. The price is quoted as £35,500 and the following information has been provided:

	£
Envelope	15000
Envelope scoop	1000
Padded covers × 4	500
Inflator fan	2500
Tether line	400
Shadow double burner	5500
Basket	4500
Fuel cylinders × 4	4500
Instruments	1000
Cushion floor	100
Other equipment	500
Artwork	AT COST

What specific actions would you consider taking in regard to:

(a) inviting other quotations?
(b) challenging the cost breakdown?
(c) asking where the overhead recovery and profit is hidden?
(d) taking a negotiating stance to get the price reduced?

11.5 If you received a price increase request from a strategic supplier of goods, for which there is competition, and the request was for an increase of 4.5 per cent due to 'abnormal trading conditions, raw material increases, energy prices and overheads', what would you put in writing to the supplier?

11.6 What are the six most significant considerations that a supplier will take into account when making a price decision?

11.7 What considerations will the buyer take into account when requesting a price quotation from suppliers?

11.8 You have been asked to draft a guidance procedure for inclusion in a Procurement Manual. The topic is 'Conducting cost analysis on tendered prices'. What headings would you include and what, specifically, would you say about profit?

11.9 What are the salient facets of the UK competition regime?

11.10 Describe how a price variation formula is typically constructed and explain why such formulae are used.

11.11 What types of pricing agreements would you recommend the procurement specialist to adopt for the following situations?

(a) The provision of specialist consultancy services for a period of six months to support the purchase of a new IT system.

(b) The manufacture of a new component for incorporation in a new product that will be launched in six months' time.

(c) The building of a new school where the contract requires the contractor to supply all the furnishings and equipment.

(d) The retention of a professional institute to provide three years training services where the content and quantity is currently unknown.

(e) A one-year contract for the supply of external catering services, including the provision of food.

11.12 'It is a myth to believe that any buyer controls prices. The initiative is always with the supplier.' Discuss.

References

[1] Nagle, T. T., Hogan, J. E. and Zale, J., *The Strategy and Tactics of Pricing: A Guide to Growing More Profitably*, Pearson Education Limited, 5th Edition, 2014, P1

[2] Farrington, B., 'Industrial Purchasing Price Management', PhD, University of Brunel (Henley College), 1978

[3] Leighton, D. S. R., *International Marketing*, McGraw Hill Co. Ltd

[4] England, W. B. and Leenders, M. R., *Purchasing and Materials Management*, RD Irwin

[5] Winkler, J., *Winkler on Marketing Planning*, Wiley & Sons, 1973

[6] Ammer, D. S., *Materials Management*, RD Irwin, 1968

[7] Tunç, M., 'Computerised cost estimation for forging industry', a thesis submitted to the Graduate School of Natural and Applied Sciences of the Middle East Technical University, September 2003

[8] Deccan Systems Inc., Ohio, USA: www.deccansystems.8k.com

[9] International Cost Estimating and Analysis Association, 8221 Old Courthouse Road, Suite 106, Vienna, VA 22182

[10] NASA Cost Estimating Handbook Version 4.0. February 2015. NASA CEHv4.0

[11] Fuel Provisions for Dredging Projects. Proceedings WEDA XXXII Technical Conference & TAMU 43 Dredging Seminar J.T. Murphy Project Manager. US Army Corps of Engineers

[12] National Audit Office, 'Review of the UK's Competition Landscape', published 18 March, 2010

Part 3

Project management and risk management, global sourcing, negotiation skills, contract management, category procurement, world-class procurement to enhance business performance

This page intentionally left blank

Chapter 12

Project procurement and risk management

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- procurement's contribution to project success
- the key phases of a project
- the special characteristics of a project
- project life cycle
- project initiation process
- project risk management
- project contracts, the variety available.

Key ideas

- Special demands of a project on procurement.
- Skills and knowledge requirements of procurement.
- Identifying and managing risks.
- Project initiation documents.
- Contracting options.
- PRINCE2®.
- Project risk registers.
- Tailored contracts for specific projects.
- Through life considerations.
- Price and risk impacts.

12.1 Introduction

The main purpose of this chapter is to understand what constitutes a project, how procurement fulfils its professional input to a project and undertakes the risk management process, with an emphasis on procurement and supply chain risks.

Meredith and Mantel[1] define a project as 'A specific, finite task to be accomplished' combined with seven factors common to projects: importance, performance, finite due date, interdependencies (between departments and competing projects), uniqueness, resources and conflict.

One-off projects are likely to be a rare occurrence in some organisations, whereas, in others, there will be many such projects. Each project offers procurement an opportunity to make a significant business contribution to the success of the project (see Table 12.1). This contribution may include a combination of knowledge and high level skills.[2]

The scope of one-off projects is infinitely variable as Table 12.2 indicates. The projects are highlighted to show the potential for the procurement profession to increase their influence and impact on project success.

12.2 The project lifecycle

All projects will follow a lifecycle (see Figure 12.1). The detail of the lifecycle will vary from project to project.

The procurement contribution will add value at each phase of the lifecycle. The illustrative lifecycle at Figure 12.2 has been adapted for the Metrolink[3] Project Management Manuel – Volume 1: PM Desk book.

12.2.1 What is a project?

Vaidyanathan[4] explains a project in the following way.

Table 12.1 The business contribution of procurement to project success

BUSINESS CONTRIBUTION OF PROCUREMENT TO PROJECT SUCCESS
■ Contribution to the project business case
■ Research into the supply chain
■ Input into the project cost drivers
■ Input into the project risk register
■ Managing timelines for the procurement process
■ Managing pre-qualification and tender processes
■ Contribution to pre-qualification and tender processes
■ Development of contract terms and conditions
■ Analysis of bidders' project cost models
■ Conducting supply chain due diligence
■ Negotiation of project costs; contract terms, through life costs, etc.
■ Agreeing supply chain mobilisation actions and costs
■ Liaison with in-house stakeholders
■ Putting in place effective monitoring of contractors and sub-contractors
■ Ensuring the necessary contractor insurances and performance bonds are in place

Table 12.2 The scope and nature of projects

THE SCOPE AND NATURE OF PROJECT
■ Refurbish 747 fleet of aircraft – international airline
■ Install new air conditioning plant at deep level – gold mine
■ Design new fighting vehicle – Ministry of Defence
■ Construct new airport terminal – international airport
■ Procure and install new IT systems – international financial institution
■ Procure new communication systems – Capital City underground railway
■ Procure, install and commission surveillance system – Public Authority
■ Procure new fleet of vehicles – National construction equipment hire company
■ Procure security for professional footballers – English Premier League Team
■ Construct new food manufacturing plant – international food manufacturer
■ Dispose of outdated manufacturing plant – international automotive manufacturer
■ Design and procure new printing plant – international publisher

A project is a unique activity. A project has a beginning and a definite end. A project expends resources. A project has constraints and requirements that may include scope, budget, schedule, resources, performance factors, and creation of value to stakeholders. A project has a goal and objectives. A project has to add value or beget some kind of benefit.

The Association for Project Management[5] defines projects as 'Projects are unique, transient endeavours undertaken to achieve a desired outcome'.

Figure 12.1 The project lifecycle

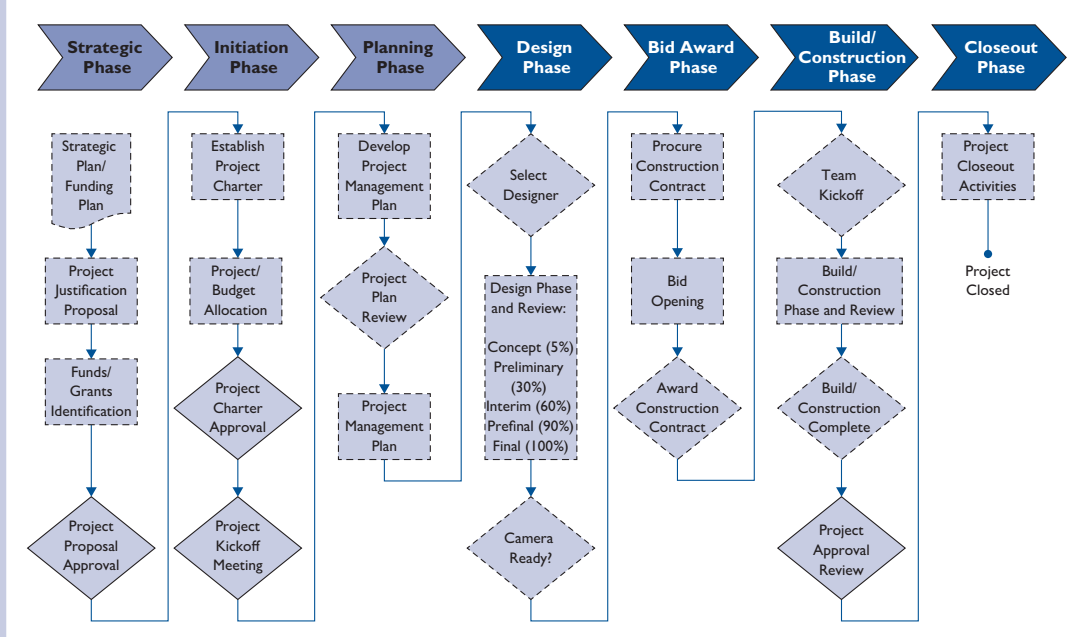


Figure 12.2 Example of illustrative lifecycle



PRINCE2® defines a project as 'A temporary organisation that is created for the purpose of delivering one or more business products according to an agreed Business Case'.

Projects include low value–low risk one-off projects, in which procurement has a role to play. These projects are important to the organisation that initiates the project. The author is of the view that informed learning is to be found in high value–high risk

projects, largely because they attract more publicity from a number of sources. These include public audit bodies, including the UK National Audit Office, the Australian National Audit Office and the United States Government Accountability Office. Some private sector project disputes receive publicity but these are not usually accompanied by reliable data. This can be found in legal court judgments, accessed through the British and Irish Legal Information Institute (BAILII). This gives access to judgments in many jurisdictions, including, USA, Canada, Germany, Italy, New Zealand, Asia and South Africa.

Projects fall into different categories as illustrated below. This is not a comprehensive listing. It is included to indicate the scope of projects.

- Information Systems - computer related hardware and software projects
- Healthcare - new hospitals and local health centres
- New product development - new automotive model projects
- Construction - highways, bridges, rail network improvements projects
- Defence - fighting vehicles, fighter aircraft projects
- Space exploration - launch vehicles, spacecraft projects
- Shipbuilding - new cruise liner projects.

Inevitably, there are project failures. The author's research has identified the presence of one or more of the following as major contributing factors to the failures.

- contractor incompetence
- procurement's failure to conduct due diligence on short listed tenderers
- lack of relevant experience in project teams
- lack of definition in scope of work
- no clarity in decision making
- absence of communication protocol
- badly drafted contracts
- negotiations dominated by contractor
- contract changes inadequately managed
- procurement having a passive role
- lack of visibility of total project costs
- key milestones neither identified nor managed
- internal politics divert attention from project deliverables
- project management deficiencies
- failure to promptly deal with project disputes
- lack of courage to recognise a failing project
- project risks not identified
- absence of project risk mitigation strategies
- fraudulent activity
- lack of flexibility when dealing with project challenges.

12.2.2 Project initiation document

The Project Initiation Document (PID) should set out as a minimum:

1. What the project is aiming to achieve
2. Why it is important to achieve it
3. Who will be involved in managing the process and what are their responsibilities
4. How and when will the project be undertaken.

The content of a PID will broadly follow that set out below:

I Introduction
- Introductory note
- Purpose of the PID document

II Project Approach
- Approach

III Project Definition
- Objectives
- Project scope
- Project deliverables

IV Project Organisation
- Overall project organisation
- Roles and responsibilities
- The Project Board
- The Project Manager
- Project support
- Project allowance
- The Project Team

V Project Controls

VI Standards

VII Quality Control
- Quality management

VIII Issues and Assumptions

IX Project Plans
- Project plan
- Project tolerances

Appendix 1 – Project Roles & Responsibilities
- Project Board
- Project Manager
- Project Assurance
- Team Manager/Team Leader
- Team Responsibilities

Appendix 2 – High Level Project Plan

Appendix 3 – Project Plan (GANTT Chart)

Appendix 4 – Project Costs

12.3 PID and the project procurement strategy

12.3.1 Procurement strategy

A project procurement strategy should be a significant feature of the PID. The South East Manchester Multi Modal Strategy[6] – A6 to Manchester Airport Relief Road, Procurement Strategy 1007/0217/007 – August 2012 contains an excellent insight into producing high quality procurement strategy content. The content is too extensive to reproduce here in full. However, the 'Strategic Review of Procurement Options' is informative and should stimulate readers to actively research the subject more widely, and applying the learning to their own projects.

12.3.2 Introduction

This section considers the procurement options, firstly at a strategic level and then later, at the more detailed level, including reviewing the forms of contract appropriate to any particular solution. The procurement strategy should consider delivery of the project throughout its life cycle, which in this case includes the following:

- Development of the scheme prior to award of main contract.
- Delivery of advanced works and mitigation measures.
- Delivery of the main works.
- Delivery of operations and life-cycle maintenance.

12.3.3 Strategic review of procurement options

Since funding is to be secured entirely through public funds there are a number of procurement options available. The following three potential procurement strategies for the detailed design and construction stage of the project have been considered.

- Traditional design, procurement, construction, separate maintenance
- Design and build procurement, construction, separate maintenance
- Early Contractor Involvement (ECI), procurement, construction, separate maintenance.

In addition to the above, a Private Finance Initiative (PFI) has been considered. A PFI Project Scope and Qualitative Value for Money Appraisal Report was prepared and submitted to Department for Transport in 2007/08. Subsequently, the DfT requested that a quantitative assessment be undertaken, which was submitted to DfT in June 2010.

Since then, PFI has been discounted as a potential option by the scheme promoters, based on further detailed appraisal of the alternative procurement routes and the fact that PFI is unlikely to offer value for money relative to the preferred option. As a result PFI will not be considered further in this document.[7]

12.3.4 Traditional design, procurement, construction

In general terms this strategy comprises the client completing a full detailed design followed by a tender process to appoint a Contractor, who is passed the design to construct. All risk resulting from the design is therefore carried by the Client.

In terms of programme, the detailed design would be completed following the end of the Public Inquiry, after which tenders could be prepared and a Contractor appointed.

Tenders could also be prepared in parallel with the planning process, which would keep the programme of construction as short as practicable. This would mean that it would be possible to go to tender within months of receiving planning powers and conditional approval of the business case.

Procurement could be started ahead of receiving the necessary powers and approvals. However, this would be a high risk strategy and is generally not supported by the Department for Transport and could be contrary to Local Authority Standing Orders.

One of the main benefits of the traditional approach to scheme delivery is that the promoter retains a high degree of control over specification and quality of finish. A traditional approach, however, generally leads to a lower level of risk transfer resulting in reduced cost certainty.

The Client retains the risk of quantity changes, as the tender is based upon an approximate set of quantities, which are remeasured. This could lead to an increase in project cost at outturn. Large changes in quantities could also justify changes in unit rates. The Client also carries the risk of unforeseen ground conditions and extreme weather conditions.

The scheme cost estimate, programme and buildability would be controlled by the promoters up to the point of contract award. Without the input of an experienced contractor at an early stage in the scheme's development, it is more likely that non-transferable risks will be carried over to the construction stage. Should these risks materialise during the construction stage, the promoter would be liable to the increased costs generated, hence the reduced cost certainty associated with this procurement route.

As this type of contract has usually been won on the basis of the lowest tender submitted, outturn costs can be much higher (20–30%) than the tender price, as the client carries most of the risk.

Advantages of traditional procurement

- Client is able to determine and control quality.
- Design is carried out by Client's Designer with background in the project.
- Tendering process is competitive.
- Client has flexibility to control scope changes.
- Tendering costs are lower than those for design and build.
- Tendered sums will be lower than those for design and build as scope is well defined and client carries most risks.
- Comparable in programme to design and build.

Disadvantages of traditional procurement

- Poor record on cost certainty.
- Claims become more likely as scheme complexity increases.
- Large Client team needed to supervise construction.
- Client carries much of the risk.
- Contracts can be adversarial.

12.4 Design and build

This approach to the project offers the opportunity for the highest level of risk transfer from the Client to the Contractor.

This strategy involves a tendering process based upon a set of Client's Requirements, often accompanied by a preliminary design. These Requirements have to be carefully considered as they influence the project quality. Detailed, prescriptive requirements similar to a traditional specification can be used to control quality, but this may also restrict the Contractor's ability to bring innovation to the construction. Another approach is to use high-level requirements, e.g. 'design shall be in accordance with the Design Manual for Roads and Bridges (DMRB)'. This encourages innovation, but the Contractor's interpretation of a DMRB clause may not be the same as the Client's and the tender would be based on the Contractor's view. The Contractor's opportunity for reducing costs through value engineering is linked to the flexibility in the Client's Requirements.

The Contractor's Designer would undertake some design to inform the Tender and usually submit his preliminary design with the Tender. It is expected that the appointment would not be made until after the scheme has gained statutory powers. Detailed design would start immediately after the tender process ends and the contract is awarded. Construction normally starts before detailed design is complete. Almost all risk resulting from the design is carried by the Contractor, but this depends upon the clarity of the Client's Requirements.

Value Engineering and buildability issues can be better addressed as it is likely that the design solutions would be developed by the Contractor Designer team, based upon the Contractor's methodology and approach rather than being solutions developed solely by the Designer.

This type of contract would be competitively tendered just prior to construction. The Contractor would own both the design and associated risk.

Advantages of design and build procurement

- Reduced risk to Client.
- Allows for competitive tender.
- Comparable in programme terms with traditional approach.
- Self-certification and elimination of re-measure reduces size of Client construction supervision team.
- Tender preparation reduced in comparison to traditional approach as only a preliminary illustrative design, rather than a full detailed design, is issued to tenderers.

Disadvantages of design and build procurement

- Contractor controls quality within scope of Client's Requirements – therefore a well-developed Works Information to ensure client control over specification and quality is required.
- Changes to scope can be difficult and costly.
- Contractor's opportunity to maximise profit is through reducing costs which could affect quality.

- Mobilisation includes a design period so contract may be longer.
- Client does not necessarily share the benefits of value engineering and innovation, brought from Early Contractor Involvement.

12.5 Role of procurement

The procurement strategy referred to at 12.3.1 includes at Section 5.9 of the strategy, the role of Manager – Procurement.

12.5.1 Manager – procurement

The Procurement Manager is a key role which will need significant and wide experience in the procurement of similar engineering projects to be performed effectively.

Knowledge and experience of the current UK procurement regulations is an essential skill.

Equally important, however, is a broad and detailed understanding of the different procurement options that might be relevant to this particular project, their benefits and in particular as the project manager, the outputs required for a successful procurement.

The Procurement Manager must have sufficient experience to be able to look well ahead of programme and advise the Project Manager well in advance when key information is required for input to the selected procurement process. It will be essential as part of the procurement process for a project of this scale and nature that the promoters are perceived by the market place to have credibility. One of the most important aspects in demonstrating this is a well-planned and managed procurement process. Once the bidders are engaged in procurement they will expect it to be an efficient process providing clear instruction according to a clear published programme. Failure to do this may undermine the credibility of both the promoters and the project.

The Procurement Manager must therefore be skilled in forward planning, communicating with the Project Manager well in advance as to the clear requirements to feed into the procurement process.

One key function of the Procurement Manager must be to ensure that due process is followed, that the process is above scrutiny and to put in place all necessary processes to ensure that the procurement is objective in every sense.

The Project Board and Project Director must have sufficient confidence in the Procurement Manager that an efficient and effective procedurally correct process will be implemented.

12.6 PRINCE2®

12.6.1 Introduction

PRINCE is an acronym for Project In Controlled Environments. It is a UK government sponsored approach intended to improve the quality of UK Project Management. PRINCE2® was launched in 1996 and intended to provide guidance on all types of projects. A signification update[8] was published in June 2009.

12.6.2 The detail

1 The PRINCE2 reference book has ten sections:
2 Introduction
3 Principles
4 Introduction to themes
5 Themes (7)
6 Introduction to processes
7 Processes (7)
8 Tailoring PRINCE2
9 Appendices (5)
10 Further information
11 Glossary and index

The seven themes are:

1 Business case
2 Organisation
3 Quality
4 Plans
5 Risk
6 Change
7 Progress

The seven processes are:

1 Starting up a Project
2 Directing a Project
3 Initiating a Project
4 Controlling a Project
5 Managing Product Delivery
6 Managing a Stage Boundaries
7 Closing a Project

12.6.3 PRINCE2 perceived deficiencies

ESI International Inc.[9] observes that there are several key project management areas that are not covered by the PRINCE2 approach. PRINCE2 hold the view that, despite the importance of those topics, they are specialist areas of knowledge and are covered elsewhere and can be managed using the method as an overall framework. The areas referred to above are:

1 PRINCE2 Planning process has a structured approach which takes you through sound planning steps, however, when identifying dependencies it proposes a list of activities accompanied by dependencies is produced. A network diagram is illustrated within PRINCE2, however, carrying out the calculations are not part of any current or proposed PRINCE2 examination.

2 Estimating techniques are covered, but with a single paragraph explanation of each given technique.

3 Scheduling within PRINCE2 does not give guidance of how to improve the schedule if overall timescales are unacceptable.

4 Costing and cost control are handled lightly within PRINCE2.

5 Quality is a major topic but PRINCE2 does not include techniques such as benefit/cost analysis, benchmarking, flowcharting techniques such as, Ishikawa or cause and effect diagrams, design of experiments and cost of quality.

6 PRINCE2 gives no guidance in regard to teamwork and communications, progress or escalating concerns.

7 Staff acquisition, performance appraisal and health and safety regulations are not mentioned in PRINCE2.

8 Whilst PRINCE2 covers communications, it goes little further than listing headings in the Communication Management Strategy product outline and providing a six step approach to stakeholder engagement.

9 EDI International Inc. further observe that 'perhaps the largest single section of project management which is not covered in the PRINCE2 approach is Project Procurement Management' – author's emphasis.

12.7 Project management issues

The Auditor General of Nova Scotia published a report[10] that provided a valuable insight in project failings. The project was the restoration of Bluenose II. The original Bluenose was launched as a Grand Banks fishing and racing schooner in 1921 in Lunenburg, Nova Scotia. It was built by the Smith and Rhuland Shipyard. Bluenose struck a reef off Isle aux Vache, Haiti on 28 January 1946. Bluenose II was launched in 1963. There is a lot of learning in the Audit Report, some extracts are shown below:

- The government as a whole … did not adequately plan the Bluenose II restoration project. This started with leaving responsibility for the project with a Department having little experience managing construction projects.
- The Department did not prepare clearly-defined goals or requirements for the project.
- A comprehensive list of risks was not completed and little was done to prepare mitigation plans or assess the potential impact of identified risks.
- The Department did not ensure a realistic and complete project budget was prepared; instead the preliminary cost estimate was used as a final budget. This estimate was prepared without using a robust process and as such was not an adequate first estimate or a final project budget.
- When the main project contractors, project manager, designer, the builder were selected, the Department did not have sufficient details to know what would be required.
- At that point in time, it was unclear what was to be built, resulting in weak contract terms.
- The contracts (for project manager and the designer did not include penalty clauses and were routinely extended throughout the life of the project.
- We also noted the project manager did not attend all required meetings and the Department did not always obtain required monthly status reports. Further, no comprehensive project schedule was prepared.
- As a result of the lack of planning and overall weak management by the Department a number of issues arose during construction.

- We found poor planning and project management by the Department contributed to the project being over budget and delivered years late.
- There was a single risk analysis meeting but no risk management process existed.
- The risk management approach should be an ongoing effort, with regular meetings to monitor the risks identified in planning and consider if any new areas of concern have arisen.
- The project cost estimates at the time the builder's contract was signed in July 2010 already showed an overage of £600,000.
- Those responsible for evaluating the tenders had limited experience with shipbuilding.
- There were two key areas of deficiency in the contracts; a lack of clarity in some of the terms; and specific terms or requirements were missing that we expected to find.
- The build contract did not include penalties for failing to meet the construction deadlines. The Department attempted to include a clause in the contract to address penalties and late fees, but the builder was unwilling to sign the contract so the clause was removed.

These extracts show the learning that can be acquired from a study of audit reports. All procurement staff who are, or will be, involved in project procurement should make a commitment to their continuous learning.

12.8 Project risk management

An MAB/MIAC report[11] states, unequivocally, 'The need to manage risk systematically applies to all organisations and to all functions and activities within an organisation and should be recognised as of fundamental importance by all managers and staff in the APS (Australian Public Service)'.

In the ADCNET audit report[12] dealing with the Australian Diplomatic Communications Network Project Management, the report stated that in addressing risk management of the ADCNET project the audit criteria had regard to better practice, which would include:

- A project risk assessment undertaken to identify, assess, prioritise and agree actions required to manage high (particularly business critical) risk issues
  - a project risk assessment undertaken to identify, assess, prioritise and agree actions required to manage high (particularly business critical) risk issues
  - risk reporting processes which ensure that risk issues are raised at the appropriate levels and forums
  - high level risks being monitored throughout the project lifecycle and the project risk assessment updated to address changing project circumstances and risk profiles
  - appropriate project acceptance criteria clearly defined and deliverables assessed against them.
- Appropriate project processes to achieve these risk management outcomes include:
  - a formal risk assessment at the commencement of the project and updated at key milestones
  - a risk management strategy defined and agreed with the project steering committee
  - appropriate risk management activities planned to address key identified risks and be appropriately executed
  - regular review of project risks to address project changes and to ensure issues are identified at the earliest possible time
  - close monitoring of risk management activities by the project steering committee.

The findings included the point that there was no evidence of the Risk Management Team meeting prior to February 1992 or after April 1993. It also included the comment that DFAT did not produce a detailed project risk assessment report until 15 months after the project commenced – author's emphasis.

12.9 Project procurement risk management

In far too many projects, procurement risk diagnostics is lightweight, unstructured and subservient to other project risks such as technical and financial. Procurement actions permeate all risks and require a structured approach to identify the project procurement risks. The author[13] has developed PROCURISK® project procurement risk diagnostic tool that consists of 50+ metrics.

Example of a metric – Project Procurement Risk 5 (PPR 5)

Description – CLARITY OF THE PROCUREMENT ROLE

(The description sets out the statement against which the organisation's positioning will be assessed) 'Prior to the project process beginning there will be complete clarity on the role and influence of procurement. They are a valued partner in a project and will be actively engaged in the project decision making process'.

POSSIBLE OUTCOMES FOR PPR5

(There are three possible outcomes for each metric. These are briefly explained to enable the assessment to be ascertained.)

For a score of 0 to be achieved the following positioning would apply:

'There is no absolute clarity of the procurement role. Their involvement is ad hoc and unplanned. Often, their role is usurped by others'.

For a score in the range 1–5 to be achieved (this gives scope for the actual procurement practice to be assessed against the statement):

'On occasions, procurement has a defined role but it is at the initiative of the project manager rather than a thought through policy. Generally, procurement is not valued as a strategic making partner. Procurement has not been pro-active to convince Project Managers that Procurement can make significant contribution'.

For a score in the range 6–10 to be achieved (this gives scope for the actual practice to be assessed against the statement):

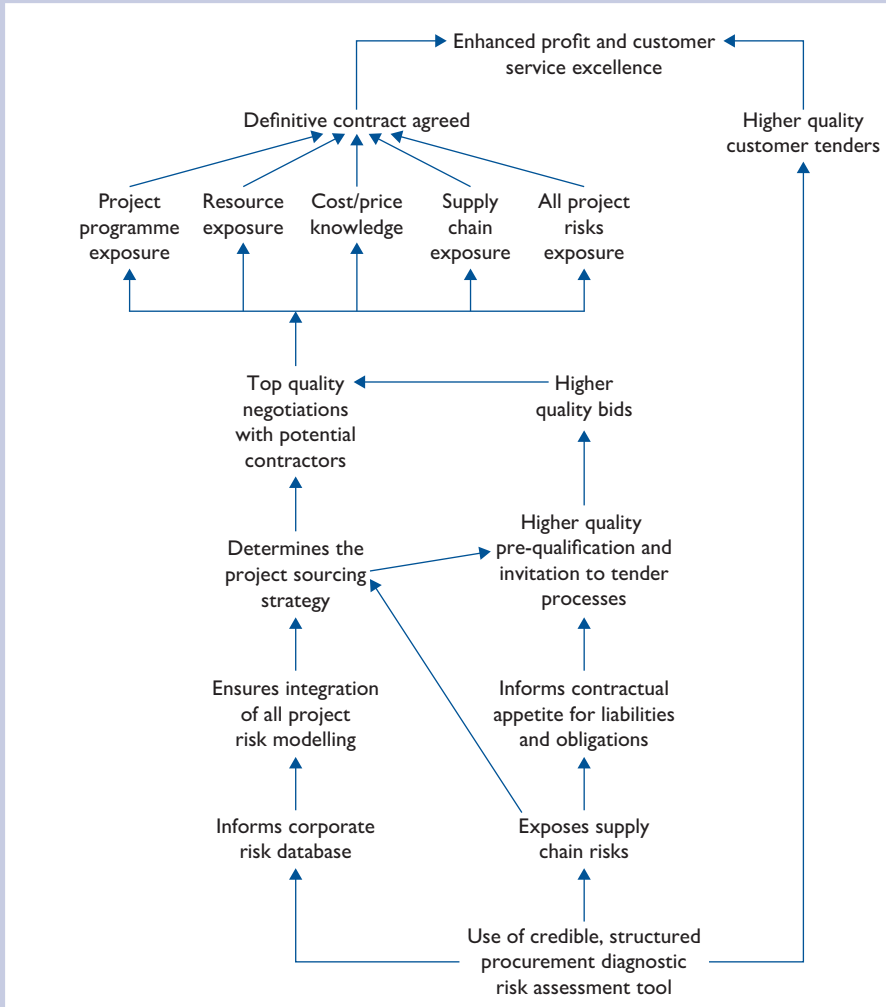
'On all our projects, there is clarity of the procurement role. The role is formulated during development of the Business Case, using an agreed Procurement Role Modelling Checklist. The role is extensive and is signed off by the Head of Procurement and Project Manager'.

The application of the Project Risk facet of PROCURISK® will, at an early stage of a project, highlight the risks and mitigation strategies that must be developed by procurement. See Figure 12.3 for the corporate benefits of world class project procurement risk management.

12.9.1 Project risk register

A risk register can be defined as, 'A risk register is a log of identified risks along with its owners, risk scores, RPNs (Risk Priority Number), risk responses, triggers, residual and secondary risks and contingency plans for cost and schedule'.

Figure 12.3 Corporate benefits of world class project procurement risk management



The risk register should be initiated at the outset of the project and procurement should be a prime contributor. The risk register embraces all categories of project risks, as evidenced by the St Helier Hospital Scheme (Phase 1)[14]. This risk register includes risks in each of the following categories:

1 BHCH (Better Healthcare Closer to Home) Programme level risks.
2 Strategic, political and commissioning risks.
3 Finance, funding, affordability and procurement risks.
4 Change management, resources, workforce planning and capacity risks.
5 Consultation and stakeholder engagement risks.
6 Land and site risks.
7 Planning risks.

8 Design risks.

9 Construction and operational risks.

10 Procurement risks.

The risk register then defines the most probable result or consequence of the risk/hazard occurring. There are five levels of severity, each tailored to the Trusts' Risk levels.

1	Insignificant	No injury, no apparent injury, minor consequence of risk to operational services, persons, facilities, media/PR or environment; financial impact minimum and risk of litigation remote; little impact on Phase 1 project;
2	Minor	Minor injury or illness, minimal; risk to operational services, persons, facilities or environment; financial impact minimum and risk of litigation minimal. Minor impact on Phase 1 project scope, time, quality, risk, or costs;
3	Moderate	Temporary incapacity, short term monitoring, some operational service disruption, potential for adverse publicity moderate impact on operational services persons, facilities or environment; financial impact moderate and risk of litigation moderate; Moderate impact on Phase 1 project scope, time, quality, risk and costs;
4	Major	Major injury, major clinical intervention, medium term monitoring, impact on reputation, major operational service disruption, adverse publicity, major impact on operational services persons, facilities or environment; financial impact major and risk of litigation expected; Major impact on Phase 1 project scope, time, quality, risk and costs;
5	Catastrophic	Death, national media coverage, severe loss of confidence in Trust, major injury, major clinical intervention, medium term monitoring, impact on reputation, severe operational service disruption, extensive adverse publicity, major impact on operational services persons, facilities or environment; financial impact high and risk of litigation major; Catastrophic impact on Phase 1 project scope, time, quality, risk and costs.

The risk register then deals with the likelihood and risk rating, as shown below:

1	Rare	Frequency very low, do not believe risk will occur, likelihood of one off or exceptional circumstances;
2	Unlikely	Frequency low and not expected but possible will occur, likelihood of occurrence at some time;
3	Possible	Frequency possible, likelihood that risk may/should occur at some time;
4	Likely	Frequency expected, likelihood that risk will occur;
5	Almost Certain	Frequency high, likelihood that risk will occur on many occasions and be a persistent issue.

12.9.2 Risk rating

The score for severity (impact or consequence) and likelihood (frequency or probability) are indicated on the risk rating table to indicate the risk score; all risks with score of 15 or more are considered Red risks and should be reported and managed on a regular basis at corporate level and summarised at the Project Board.

Likelihood (Frequency or probability)	*Severity (Consequence or impact)*	*1 (Insignificant)*	*2 (Minor)*	*3 (Moderate)*	*4 (Major)*	*5 (Catastrophic)*
5	Certain	5 - G	10 - Aa	15 - R	20 - R	25 - R
4	Likely	4 - G	8 - A	12 - A	16 - R	20 - R
3	Possible	3 - G	6 - A	9 - A	12 - A	15 - R
2	Unlikely	2 - G	4 - G	6 - A	8 - A	10 - R
1	Rare	1 - G	2 - G	3 - G	4 - A	5 - R

- **Red** – High risk, urgent action required. Notify head of risk management who will inform executive team and risk management committee. Director responsible for action plan.
- **Amber** – Medium risk provided, senior manager attention needed. Action plan required. Notify head of risk management.
- **Green** – Low risk, local manager responsibility, manage by routine procedure.

In respect of categories 1–9 inclusive, two risks are shown below to enable the reader to understand the scope of risks on a project of this kind.

R1 BHCH Programme level risk

	Ref	*Risk*	*Mitigation*	*Severity (Consequence or Impact) 1 - 5*	*Likelihood (Frequency or Probability) 1 - 5*	*Risk Rating Score*	*Risk Owner*
R1	1.	The need to carry out further Consultation causes delay to the project. The outcome of consultation is challenged or requirement for further consultation and referral to the Secretary of State leading to delays to the BHCH programme	Monitor the outcome of the JOSC review and the impact on BHCH	4	3	12	XX
	2.	Timing of opening of LCCs alters with consequent impact on the services to be provided by the St Helier hospital	Regular monitoring of building development and service uptake via the Programme Board & Steering Committee	4	4	16	XX/YY

R2 Strategic, political and commissioning risks

R2	17	Women's and Children's review may have negative financial impact on ESH	Await the outcome of the women's and children's report and then model the impact of the preferred scenario	3	3	9	Xx/yy
	18	Royal Marsden Diagnostic and Treatment Centre. Risk depends on the final configuration of services proposed	Continue conversations with Royal Marsden; use as working assumptions that the final configuration of services at Sutton will have no adverse I & E impact on ESH and a maximum impact of £140k in Wallington LCC	3	3	9	Xx/yy

R3 Finance, funding, affordability and procurement risks

R3	30	Income and expenditure, financial position and financial balance position. Risk of failure to manage and control the income and expenditure financial position and balance for project from OBC to FBC and implementation/delivery stage	Regular monitor through ESH Board and regular update to Board	5	3	15	yy
	31	Changes to land disposal assumptions from those in the OBCs during the life of the Project	Changes to the financial assumptions will be regularly monitored. Where significant alterations to assumptions occur during the life of the project these will be notified to the Project Board and the impact assessed by re running the financial model	4	3	12	yy

R4 Change management, resources, workforce planning and capacity risks

R4	39	Capacity, capability and funding to deliver the project and adequate resources within the organisation as a whole	Programme to remain a priority for ESH and SMPCT endorsed by CEOs. Regularly monitor the level of resources and plan for future capacity and capability resource requirements on the project/programme	4	3	12	yy
	40	Medical and clinical capacity to deliver the existing services and prepare for the new services	Regularly monitor the level of resources and plan for future service requirements. ESH to update BHCH on capacity of resources through governance arrangements	4	3	12	yy

R5 Consultation and stakeholder engagement risks

R5	50	The need to carry out further Consultation causes delay to the project. The outcome of consultation is challenged or requirement for further consultation and referral to the Secretary of State leading to delays to the ESH programme	Monitor the outcome of the JOSC review and the impact on ESH project	3	3	9	yy

	51	Local campaigns add delays to implementation of project proposals	Communications and regular updates and engagement with stakeholders	3	3	9	yy

R6 Land and site risks

R6	52	Risk that clarification of site ownership issues delays the planning and consequent construction phases	Legal review under way	4	3	12	yy
	53	Risk of unforeseen, unidentified or restrictive covenants at either site	Lawyers to collate and review the title deeds and contracts to assess impact	3	2	6	yy

R7 Planning risks

R7	66	Planning constraints imposed by the Planning Authority for the development of the existing St Helier site lead to changes in the scope/ scale/size of the St Helier Hospital Phase 1 redevelopment	Planning briefs and regular meetings/ discussions with the local planners and review of any planning conditions imposed	3	3	9	xx
	67	Delays in Planning Authority processing, planning applications due to capacity/resources and this impacts on the project	Regular meetings/discussions with the local planners. Shortage of planners in Sutton and Merton	4	4	16	Yy/xx

R9 Construction and operational risks

R9	80	The planning conditions impact on construction works, adding time and cost	Monitor and review the planning conditions and assess impact on BHCH Programme budgets	3	2	6	xx
	81	Competition for resources. Economic impact of the Olympics in the London area impacts on the availability of resources and on BHCH Programme, leading to time, cost and availability of resources increases. Other factors such as market conditions and fluctuations, economic pressures and credit crunch may also impact on resources availability	Monitor market and assess impact on the BHCH Programme and budget	3	3	9	Yy/xx

R10 Procurement risks

R10	91	Risks associated with the selection and packaging of the most appropriate procurement route (PPP/PFI/LIFT/ traditional) and division into individual lots etc. The procurement options are constrained by the availability of funding and the funding options and VFM	Prepare the procurement strategy and review the procurement and funding options over the next few months	3	3	9	xx
	92	PPP/PFI procurement route is complex and the competitive dialogue leads to delays, cost creep and scope erosion	Monitor and control the procurement/ competitive dialogue and keep the negotiations under control and to the programme	3	4	12	Yy/xx
	93	The availability of capital to procure using traditional or procure21 options leads to delays in commencement of the procurement	Continue discussions on the availability of capital and the benefits that this route would provide	3	3	9	
	94	Delays to the procurement lead to delays to the FBC and implementation stage	Plan the procurement and monitor and control progress with the timeline	3	2	6	
	95	The tender documents do not contain sufficient detail and lead to changes during the procurement leading to cost increases, complexity and delays	Prepare and scope comprehensive tender documents and minimise changes to scope after commencement of the procurement	3	3	9	
	96	Identify any changes from OBC stage to FBC stage and ensure that the BHCH Programme remains visible and sustainable as it develops	Sensitivity analysis and modelling during the procurement stage. Monitor and control the changes from OBC stage to FBC stage and ensure that the BHCH Programme remains viable and sustainable as it develops	3	2	6	

There following acronyms apply:
PPP = Public–Private Partnership
PFI = Private Finance Initiative
LIFT = NHS Local Improvement Finance Trust
Procure21 + National Framework with six Supply Chains selected via OJEU Tender process
OBC = Outline Business Case
FBC = Full Business Case

It can be argued that the procurement risks section suffer from superficiality. For example, consideration should be given to the additional risks of:

- the contractor's financial failure
- the contractor fails to manage his supply chain
- the procurement process fails to comply with EU Regulations
- supplier relationship management is not founded on partnering behaviour
- contractor disputes not dealt with in accordance with the Contract
- procurement inadequately represented on the Project Board.

12.9.3 Project Audit

Project audits can take place at any phase of a project, although a common approach is to conduct an audit at project closure. The scope of audit must include procurement if the audit is claimed to be robust.

12.10 Project procurement management

The questions to be addressed should include:[15]

- Is there a procurement strategy and detailed plan? Is it regularly reviewed?
- Are procurement decisions subject to Gateway reviews?
- Is there an approved process for project procurement to ensure financial and project delivery prudence?
- When the main contractor and sub-contractors are appointed has adequate due diligence taken place?
- Was procurement actively engaged in determining the specification and scope of work?
- How does procurement fit into the project organisational structure?
- Did the procurement process include pre-qualification and tender phases?
- Was the pre-qualification and tender evaluation processes fully documented and compliant with pre-agreed evaluation criteria and weightings?
- How does the project manage project-relevant information being supplied to sub-contractors?
- How did we agree the contractual requirements and ensure these were included in the final negotiated contract?
- Was a procurement risk log maintained throughout the project?
- Does the project consist of a process to ensure that all contract requirements, due dates, and records are met?
- How have we ensured that all the necessary project insurances and bonds are in place?
- Are all contract changes accounted for, documented, costed and impact on project milestones reported?
- Have we claimed damages for any contractor non-compliance with contract obligations?

12.10.1 Project contracts

Chapter 7 provides the detail of Legal and Contractual issues that face the procurement profession. Projects require very careful thought, prior to selecting the type of contract to use. Procurement should be a major influence on this decision, giving careful consideration to:

- the technical content of the project
- the project risks and who is best placed to manage them
- the extent of supply market competition
- design complexities
- project overall timescale and milestones
- the project budget and contingency provision
- the extent to which the contractor will sub-contract
- the project experience of the buying organisation
- the extent to which partnering will be applied to the project.

Essentially, there are six types of projects:

- Fixed-price contracts.
- Fixed-price incentive fee contracts.
- Cost-plus fixed fee contracts.
- Cost-plus percentage fee contracts.
- Cost-plus incentive fee contracts.
- Guaranteed maximum-shared savings contracts.

These contact types do not present a simple choice, and regardless of the choice the project world is littered with contractual disputes – see Chapter 7 for notable examples. Each of the six types is now explained in such a way as to inform procurement where their influence can be applied.

12.10.2 Fixed-price contracts

From a procurement point of view this type of contract is an attraction because, unless there are changes to the scope of the project, the price is known. This is too simplistic a view. The contractor who bids for projects requiring a fixed-price has tough decisions to make, giving consideration to such matters as:

- the accuracy and reliability of the project scope
- the inherent risks within the project and the impact on the contractor's insurances
- the pricing of long lead time items and the risk of any future price increases
- the impact of milestones and project completion times on resource costs and possible sub-contracting
- how to deal with contingency provision in a competitive situation
- the extent to which the buying organisation will negotiate price

- the contractual provision for contract change and how contract price changes will be managed
- the profit that can be realised from the project
- the reliability of in-house estimates for labour, materials, manufacturing, quality management, testing, installation, acceptance and warranty provision.

Fixed-price incentive fee contracts

These are used primarily in government contracting. The author is indebted to Robert Antonio[16] for prompting and providing most of the detail below. These contracts have a provision for adjusting the total profit after the completion of the project that has been agreed to in advance by both client and contractor. A structure could be:

Structure	*Description*
Target Cost	$76,000,000
Target Profit	$9,700,000
Target Price	$85,700,000
Ceiling Price	133 per cent of Target Cost at $101,000,000
Share Ratio	95/5 between $64,600,000 and $87,400,000
	90/10 between $64,600,000 and from $87,400,000 to Point of Total Assumption
Point of total assumption	$92,366,660

The mechanics of this type of contract include:

- Target cost: The initially negotiated figure for estimated contract costs and the point at which profit pivots
- Target profit: The initially negotiated profit at the target cost
- Target price: Target cost plus the target profit
- Ceiling price: Stated as a percentage of the target cost. This is the maximum price the government expects to pay. Once this amount is reached, the contractor pays all remaining costs for the original work
- Shared ratio: The government/contractor sharing ratio for cost savings or cost overruns that will increase or decrease the actual profit. The government percentage is listed first and the terms used are 'government share' and 'contractor share'. For example, on an 80/20 share ratio, the government share is 80 per cent and the contractor share is 20 per cent.
- Point of Total Assumption. The point where cost increases that exceed the target cost are no longer shared by the government according to the share ratio. At this point, the contractor's profit is reduced one dollar for every additional dollar of cost. The PTA is calculated with the following.
- PTA = (Ceiling Price − Target Price)/Government Share + Target Cost

Given the above explanation a procurement specialist will have to consider:

- upon what basis will the target cost be agreed? Will it be a requirement for full cost disclosure, parametric price modelling and informed negotiation?
- upon what basis will target profit be agreed? This should take into account the risk profiling and who the risks are ascribed to.
- how to base the share ratio. The more the government demands the more likely it is that the contractor will devise ways to counteract the demand.

12.10.3 Cost-plus fixed fee contracts

From a procurement view this is a potentially high risk strategy. The concept is simple. A 'cost' is agreed and the contractor receives a fixed fee on top of the 'cost'. The 'cost' may be estimated, in which case it may be argued that the contractor has an incentive to adopt a pricing strategy by which the estimated costs are the highest possible. The definition of a cost-plus fixed fee contract is a cost reimbursable contract that provides for payment to the contractor of a negotiated fee that is fixed at the inception of the contract. The fixed fee does not vary with actual cost.

This type of contract can be used for the performance of research or preliminary exploration or study, when the level of effort required is unknown.

The procurement specialist must give active consideration to the three main components of the cost-plus contract:

1. Direct costs – labour, materials, supplies, equipment and professional consultants being contracted by the contractor.
2. Overhead costs – these are usually recovered as a percentage of labour and can include office rent, insurances, communication and IT expenses and design equipment.
3. Fee (Profit) – equivocally, the contractor may be motivated by what they can get away with.

12.10.4 Cost-plus percentage fee contracts

In this type of contract, the contractor is paid all his costs, plus a pre-determined percentage fee (profit). All the pricing, risk is with the client (buying organisation). The Federal Transit Administration,[17] in a Q and A response, clarify what is a cost plus percentage fee contract.

Q. Is the contract outlined below a cost plus percentage of cost contract, even if the modifications show a target cost, base fee and maximum available award fee?

- Cost plus award fee contract. 8 per cent base. 7 per cent award fee.
- Contract ceiling $508 million. Contract grows due to scope changes over a six-month period to almost $1 billion
- Agency continues to pay the award and base fee on the increased cost at the original percentage rates
- First 20 of original contract modifications do not restrict or provide either a target amount for the base or award fee. Contract modifications thereafter contained an identified scope of work and target cost, base fee, and maximum available award fee. These fees, of course, were calculated using the predetermined rates.

A. It is not uncommon to negotiate a profit or fee on changes or added scope using the negotiated percentage in the original contract. This is not the recommended approach but it is not prohibited. The additional fee should be based on such matters as the degree of risk in the added work, the amount of investment, the percentage of work subcontracted, etc. The award fee cannot be a percentage of cost.

However, it is important to distinguish between using ('negotiating') projected/estimated costs vs actual costs in arriving at the profit or fee dollars. If the agency is using the Contractor's projected/estimated (proposed) costs as the basis to negotiate

fee, then this is not a CPPC situation. If, however, the agency uses actual costs (i.e. after the costs are incurred) as the basis to establish fee, then we would have a 'de facto' illegal CPPC situation (this principle has been established by the GAO on Federal contracts). We would also note that it would not be legal to establish terms in a contract that promised to pay the Contractor for actual costs incurred plus a predetermined rate of profit on those costs. This too would be a CPPC contract. The fee payable must always be expressed and fixed in the contract in $ terms, not % terms so that if the Contractor overruns the estimated costs in completing the statement of work, there must be no additional fee paid on those cost overruns $. The fee to be paid for completion the scope of work must be fixed and payable regardless of how much it actually costs the Contractor to finish the work.

If the agency is treating all cost growth as fee bearing $ they should document the file to explain that the Contractor in fact completed the scope of work originally established, so that it is clear that the additional estimated costs, and fee negotiated, are associated with 'new' or 'changed' work as defined in the contract modifications.

(Reviewed October 2010)

12.10.5 Cost-plus incentive fee contracts

In this type of contract the client (buying organisation) pays for all allowable costs plus a predetermined fee plus an incentive bonus. This approach is not for the faint hearted. The first issue is what is meant by 'allowable costs'? How does the buyer determine

(i) what these are?

(ii) how they shall be monitored?

The predetermined fee is a matter for risk handling and negotiation. The incentive bonus is aimed at the contractor reducing the expected cost of the project. If the expected cost of a project is £2,000,000 with a fee of £150,000 and the sharing ratio is 80/20 and the final price is £1,800,000; the contractor will get paid the final price, the fee of £150,000 and an incentive of 25% of the £200,000 savings, i.e. £40,000.

12.10.6 Guaranteed maximum-shared savings contracts

In this type of contract there is a ceiling price. The contractor is paid the actual costs incurred up to the guaranteed maximum. Savings below this amount are shared between client and contractor in accordance with a pre-determined percentage split. The contractor assumes the responsibility for any cost overruns beyond the maximum.

The Sub-committee T1 of the International Bar Association[18] undertook to compile a library of standard conditions of contract for construction in various jurisdictions across the globe and we are indebted for their permission to use their output. There is a health warning for anyone considering adopting a specific type of contract. Seek legal advice!

The Contracts

(i) need negotiating and

(ii) they change from time to time.

1 Federation Internationale des Ingénieurs – Conseils (FIDIC)[19]

Latest contracts 1999.

1. Conditions of Contract for Construction – The Red Book
2. Conditions of Contract for Plant and Design Build – The Yellow Book
3. Conditions of Contract for EPC/Turnkey Projects – The Silver Book
4. Short Form of Contract – The Green Book
5. Form of Contract for Dredging and Reclamation Works – The Blue Book
6. A form of agreement for engagement of consultants – The White Book
7. A form of agreement for Subcontractors
8. A joint venture agreement form.

2 Institute of Civil Engineers (ICE)[20]

1. ICE Conditions of Contract Measurement 7th Edition
2. ICE Conditions of Contract Design & Contract 2nd Edition
3. ICE Conditions of Contract Minor Works 3rd Edition
4. ICE Conditions of Contract Term Version July 2004
5. ICE Conditions of Contract Ground Investigation 2nd Edition
6. Agreement for Consultancy Work on receipt of Domestic or Small Work amended Dec 1999.

3 The New Engineering Contract (the NEC)[21]

The main NEC contract, the Engineering and Construction Contract – omnibus edition, and its associated sub-contract, are based on the employer selecting a contract form from six options.

Option A	Priced contract with activity schedule
Option B	Priced contract with bill of quantities
Option C	Target contract with activity schedule
Option D	Target contract with bill of quantities
Option E	Cost reimbursement contract
Option F	Management contract.

The chosen contractual approach is then further refined by selecting from up to secondary options depending on the main option selected. These are:

Option H	Parent company guarantee
Option J	Advance payment to the Contractor
Option K	Multiple currencies
Option L	Sectional completion
Option M	Limitation of the Contractor's liability for his design to reasonable skill and care
Option N	Price adjustment for inflation
Option P	Retention

Option Q	Bonus for early completion
Option R	Delay damages
Option S	Changes in the law
Option U	The Construction (Design and Management) Regulations 1994
Option V	Trust Fund
Option Z	Additional conditions of contract.

4 Institute of Electrical Engineers (IEE)[22]

The Institute of Engineering and Technology, jointly with the Institution of Mechanical Engineers issues a range of model forms of general conditions of contract.

MF/1 Revision 6	-	Engineering Projects
MF/2 Revision 1	-	Supply of Electrical, Electronics or Mechanical Plant home or overseas contracts
MF/3 Revision 1	-	Supply of Electrical and Mechanical Goods without Erection – home contracts
MF/4	-	Provision of consultancy services by Engineering Consultants – home or overseas contracts

5 Institute of Chemical Engineers (IChemE)[23]

IChemE (Green) Form of Contract – Reimbursable Contracts

IChemE (Brown) Form of Contracts – Subcontract for Civil Engineering Works

IChemE (Grey) Form of Contract – Adjudication Procedures

IChemE (Orange) Minor Works 2nd ed 2003

IChemE (Pink) Form of Contract – Arbitration Procedures

IChemE (Red) Form of Contract – Lump Sum Contracts

IChemE (White) Rules for Expert Determination 3rd ed 2001

IChemE (Yellow) Sub Contracts 3rd ed 2003

IChemE (Green) Reimbursable

6 The Joint Contracts Tribunal (JCT)[24]

1. Major Project Form
2. PCC 2005 Standard Form of Prime Cost Contract
3. WCD 2005 Standard Form of Building Contract With Contractor's Design
4. 2005 Standard Form of Building Contract
5. MC 2005 Standard Form of Management Contract
6. IC 2005 Intermediate Form of Building Contract
7. MW 2005 Agreement for Minor Building Works
8. MTC 2005 Standard Form of Measured Term Contract

In addition JCT publish subcontracts, trade contracts and forms of warranty to be used with the particular contract in question. In addition forms of framework agreement and facilities management agreements are available.

7 The Association of Consultant Architects (ACA)[25]

ACA is the national professional body representing architects in private practice throughout the UK. ACA has drawn up its own form of Building Contract with ancillary documents. In 2000 it published the first construction industry Project Partnership Contract PPC2000.

Available Documents

1. PPC 2000 – ACA Standard Form of Contract for Project Partnering (Amended 2003)
2. SPC2000 – ACA Standard Form of Specialist Contract for Project Partnering (Amended 2004)
3. ACA Form of Building Agreement 1982 Third Edition 1998 (2003 Revision)
4. ACA98 The Appointment of a Consultant Architect For Small Works, Works of Simple Content and Specialist Services (2000 Edition).

8 BE Collaboration Contract[26]

The BE Collaborative Contract is a new form of contract for construction projects that underpins collaborative behaviour. The contract has been created by BE (Collaborating for the Built Environment). BE is the largest independent association for companies across the supply chain in the UK, committed to the research design and delivery of sustainable built development. The Collaborative Contract is a new contract framework for the delivery of successful construction projects. This contract is intended for use by parties who genuinely want a contractual framework that assists a collaborative approach and who want to identify and manage risks, rather than simple passing them on under contract conditions. The BE Collaborative Contract aims to underpin collaborative behaviour, provide flexibility in use and be clear and concise.

9 GC Works Contracts

At the time of drafting this section of the book, the suite of standard Government Conditions of Contract, GC Works, were still available but were no longer being updated by the Government who are moving to the New Engineering Contract.

10 International Chamber of Commerce (ICC)[27]

- ICC Model Turnkey Supply of an Industrial Plant Contract
- ICC Model Major Project Turnkey Contract

11 Liaison Group of the European Mechanical, Electrical, Electronic and Metalworking Industries (ORGALIME)[28]

ORGALIME issued a new standard contract – the ORGALIME Turnkey Contract for Industrial Works – its most comprehensive contract publication to date. ORGALIME's premise was that purchasers and contractors in the engineering sector, who had used existing models, had not found them as suitable for industrial works as for civil engineering contracts.

Discussion questions

12.1 Define a 'Project' and explain how procurement contributes to the success of a Project.

12.2 In what respects is project procurement different to the procurement of goods and services that are in regular demand?

12.3 Explain a project lifecycle, ideally using an example from within your organisation or one that you have researched on the Internet.

12.4 When suppliers are pre-qualifying to receive an Invitation to Tender, what six areas of capability would you expect to probe as a procurement specialist?

12.5 What should a Project Initiation Document include and why is it important?

12.6 Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of adopting PRINCE2® as the basis for project management.

12.7 Discuss six commercial risks that may apply to a project and explain how these risks can be mitigated.

12.8 Do you believe that most projects will have their scope changed during the lifetime of the project? If you have answered 'yes' what is the role of procurement to manage project change?

12.9 Do you believe it is astute business practice to incentivise a supplier to complete a project before the planned completion date? Why do you have this belief?

References

[1] Meredith, J. R. and Mantel, S. J., *Project Management: A Managerial Approach*, 6th Edition, NJ: John Wiley & Sons

[2] Project procurement business contribution to project success. Research Report Brian Farrington Ltd. www.brianfarrington.com

[3] Metrolink – Governed by the Southern California Regional Rail Authority (SCRRA)

[4] Vaidyanathan, G., *Project Management: Process, Technology and Practice*, Pearson International Edition, 2013

[5] Association for Project Management, Summerleys Road, Princes Risborough, Bucks, HP27 9LE

[6] 1007_2.17_002 SEMMS Management Plan Rev 4.0, Oct 2012

[7] Ibid

[8] Managing Successful Projects with PRINCE2. Registered trademark of the Cabinet Office

[9] www.esi-intl.co.uk

[10] Bluenose II Restoration Project, Jan 2015

[11] Guidelines for Managing Risk in the Australian Public Service MAB/MIAC No.22 1996

[12] The Australian Diplomatic Communications Network – Project Management. anao.gov.au

[13] www.brianfarrington.com

[14] Epsom and St Helier University Hospital NHS Trust Project Risk Register, September 2009

[15] Adapted from *Project Management: Process, Technology and Practice*, Ganesh Vaidyanathan, Pearson International Edition, 2013

[16] Antonio, R., 'The fixed-price incentive firm target contract: not as firm as the name suggests, November 2003, www.wifcon.com

[17] US Department of Transportation, 'Cost plus percentage of cost contracts' http://www.fta.dot.gov/13057_6115.html

[18] http://www.ibanet.org

[19] http://fidic.org/

[20] http://www.ice.org.uk

[21] http:// www.neccontract.com

[22] http://www.iee.org

[23] http://www.icheme.org

[24] www.jctltd.co.uk

[25] http://www.acarchitects.co.uk

[26] http://www.beonline.co.uk

[27] http://www.iccwbo.org

[28] http://www.orgalime.org

Chapter 13

Global sourcing

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- the terminology of global sourcing
- motives for buying globally
- overcoming challenges when sourcing globally
- cultural factors
- environmental and social considerations
- Incoterms 2010
- foreign exchange risks
- shipping terms
- transport systems, costs and considerations
- methods of payment in overseas trade
- services provided by freight forwarders
- countertrade
- factors in successful global sourcing.

Key ideas

- Motives and benefits of global sourcing.
- Information sources for access by procurement specialists.
- Cultural, political, ethical, quality, exchange risk and legal considerations.
- The format and definitions of Incoterms 2010.
- Complexities of Customs and Excise requirements.
- Factors in determining freight costs
- Freight agents and freight forwarders roles.
- Open accounts, bills for collection and letters of credit.
- Countertrade.
- Ascertaining the true cost of global sourcing.
- Factors in successful global sourcing decisions.

13.1 Terminology

Birou and Fawcett[1] distinguish between international sourcing, multinational sourcing, foreign sourcing and strategic global sourcing. They define the first three terms as:

> buying outside the firm's country of manufacture in such a way that does not coordinate requirements among worldwide business units of a single firm.

Strategic global sourcing is defined as:

> the coordination and integration of procurement requirements across worldwide business units, looking at common items, processes, technologies and suppliers.

Trent and Monczka[2] also differentiate between international and global sourcing. International procurement is:

> a commercial transaction between a buyer and a seller located in different countries.

Global sourcing involves:

> positively integrating and coordinating common items and materials, processes, designs, technologies and suppliers across worldwide purchasing, engineering and operating locations.

Among other important findings, Trent and Monczka conclude that firms engaging in global sourcing are likely to have competitors and be larger than those engaging in international procurement, and that 'one can easily conclude that international procurement is best described as a functional activity while global sourcing represents a strategic direction and organisational process'.

These views are supported by Rexha, Miyamoto and Grainger[3] who suggest that, in general, smaller firms are restricted in their capacity to search for and secure overseas suppliers by their lack of managerial knowledge and capital resources, so that 'any supplier found among a small pool of qualified overseas suppliers is a potential candidate so long as it can meet their procurement requirements'. Moreover, the small quantities they are purchasing make the business of smaller firms less attractive to first-class overseas suppliers. In contrast, 'a depth of resource capacity allows large firms to aggressively pursue the full potential of international sourcing by capitalising on the world's best suppliers'.

Regarded from a strategic perspective, global sourcing is more complicated than international procurement. There are, however, aspects where the two approaches converge, and international procurement is strategic as well as tactical. Smaller firms also engage in the development and early involvement of their overseas suppliers. Because of such convergence, Trent and Monczka use the generic term 'worldwide sourcing' to describe international procurement and global sourcing. The phrase 'buying offshore', used in this chapter, while also generic, is probably more closely equated with 'international procurement'.

13.2 Motives for buying offshore

There are many motives for buying offshore, not all driven by the buying organisation's initiatives and self-interests. Table 13.1 shows the drivers for buying offshore, identified and experienced by Brian Farrington Limited[4] – a specialist procurement and supply chain consultancy company.

Table 13.1 The drivers for buying offshore

Business drivers	*Reasoning*[*]
Requirement for offsets	The business requirement where an offshore customer demands the procurement of local content. Offsets may include technology transfer, training and licensed production
OJEU advertisements	The public sector place OJEU advertisements and these sometimes attract offshore tenders. If such a tender is the 'best deal' then the contract will be placed with an offshore supplier
Pressure to reduce costs	There are good examples in IT and retail where advantage is taken of low cost economies, e.g. the outsourcing of call centres to India and the production of clothing in Sri Lanka
Manufacturing flexibility	Where there are capacity restrictions on UK-based manufacturing organisations, contracts can be placed offshore to guarantee additional capacity. An example is a railway rolling stock manufacturing company contracting supplies from Poland
Access to specialist skills	The UK has deskilled in some fields, e.g. engineering design and, on occasions, will need to access relatively new skills, e.g. offshore wind farms and satellite technology
Market penetration	The desire to enter a new market can be greatly facilitated by procuring goods and services in the target market. An example is contracting for a local supply of components to create employment and overcome restrictive quotas
Domestic non-availability for raw materials	There are some essential raw materials that are not available in the UK, e.g. reserves of commodities such as copper, zinc and gold. This leaves no choice but to purchase offshore

[*]The above are strategic reasons to purchase offshore and others will arise from time to time.

13.3 Sources of information for offshore suppliers

A well-organised and structured research programme is required to identify potential offshore suppliers. Clearly, there is a risk to be managed if contracts are placed with suppliers who cannot maintain a high quality supply. There are many information sources including:

- UK Trade & Investment International Trade Team Database
- foreign embassies and high commissions
- import brokers
- trade journals
- directories, such as *Kompass*, *Thompson*, *Jaegar* and *Waldman*
- trade fairs and exhibitions
- the World Bank

- *The Official Journal of the European Communities*
- shipping and forwarding agents
- specialist enquiry agents, such as Dun & Bradstreet
- procurement consultants, such as Brian Farrington Ltd
- trading company web sites
- professional and trade organisations
- the Internet.

13.4 Overcoming challenges when sourcing off-shore

There are challenges when sourcing offshore because the professional degree of difficulty is a lot higher than when purchasing in the home market. Some key considerations are shown in Table 13.2.

13.4.1 Cultural factors

The active involvement in international trade requires an in-depth understanding of the cultures with which procurement and firms interact.

> Firms that rely on their familiar home culture to compete in a new market can jeopardise their international success. Indeed, virtually all facets of an international firm's business – including contract negotiations, production operations, marketing decisions and human resource management policies – may be affected by cultural variations.[5]

Culture is the collection of values, beliefs, behaviours, customs and attitudes that distinguish one society from another. The elements of culture[6] are:

- language
- communication
- religion
- values and attitudes
- social structure.

Language

When a buyer engages with another culture it would be wise to remember there are more than 3,000 different languages. In India there are 16 official languages and approximately 3,000 dialects are spoken within its boundaries. The dominance of English puts many English speakers are at a disadvantage when negotiating on foreign turf. In some instances, translators are used but words of caution are advisable. Translators must be sensitive to subtleties in the connotations of words and focus on translating ideas, not the words themselves. The words 'Yes' and 'No' are not straightforward in any international context. The Japanese often use 'Yes' to mean 'Yes, I understand what is being said'. Directly uttering 'No' is considered impolite or inhospitable in Japan, as well as in China, India and the Middle East.

Communication

The ability of a buyer to communicate their organisation's requirements can be a challenge. The complexities of the specification, pricing model, request for information,

Table 13.2 Key considerations when sourcing offshore

Descriptor	*Considerations*
1 Buyer's experience	Requires the ability to research sources of supply, conduct vendor appraisal, negotiate and put in place a contract that effectively deals with the risks
2 Currency fluctuations	Requires expert advice from finance/banking specialists to optimise the risk derived from currency fluctuation during the life of the contract
3 Supplier evaluation	There is a need to develop and apply a tailored RFI document to probe logistics, product support, contract terms, supply chain, finances and quality management
4 Culture and language	Expert knowledge of cultural differences and how to deal with language barriers will be needed to prevent misunderstandings and breakdowns in communication
5 Political stability	From time to time there are serious political instabilities and uncertainties that impact on trade. Examples are Thailand, Zimbabwe, Egypt, Libya and Cuba
6 Logistics support	The ability to move goods around the world in a timely manner is vital, as is the certainty of shipping, use of special containers and availability of emergency stocks
7 Duty and Customs regulations	This is an ever changing scene and requires expert support either from in-house specialists or freight forwarders. Delays in customs clearance can lead to contract failures
8 Contractual risk	The basis of legal jurisdiction, dispute resolution, currency, quality standards and inspection rights are classic areas requiring the attention of procurement
9 Contract management	Either the buying organisation or a third party will have to undertake contract management, otherwise there is the risk of non-compliance with the contractual obligations
10 International quality standards	The buyer will need to identify the international quality standards that must apply to a specific purchase, recognising that some standards will exceed British Standards specifications.

the tender evaluation model, instructions to tenderers and contractual requirements make it possible that communication has the potential for misinterpretation and misunderstandings. Verbal communication requires clarity of expression although, of course, there are nuances of nonverbal communication. Ferraro[7] identifies the forms of nonverbal communication:

- dress: fashionable, flashy or conservative
- hand gestures
- facial expressions: smiles, frowns, nods, eye contact (or lack of it)
- hair styles
- greetings: bows, hugs, kisses and hand shakes
- perfumes and colognes

- physical contact: hand holding, pats on the back
- posture: formal or relaxed
- time: arrive promptly, early or late?
- waiting your turn: queue up or not?
- walking: fast, slow; in group or single file; position of leader within group.

Sadly, the skill of communication is not a focus in the learning and developing of procurement specialists. Launching unskilled people into the international arena is unlikely to deliver significant benefits, and it is unlikely to create partnering relationships.

Religion

According to *The Economist*[8], 77 per cent of the World's population adheres to one of four religions: Christianity (31.5 per cent), including Roman Catholics, Protestants and Eastern Orthodox; Islam (23.2 per cent); Hinduism (15.0 per cent) and Buddhism (7.1 per cent). Religion may permeate business relationships, thus requiring the utmost sensitivity when negotiating contracts. It is good advice to consider religious standpoints prior to entering a specific market. It is also good advice not to pointedly introduce religious discussions until there is absolute confidence in the likely response and the person's reaction.

Values and attitudes

Values are the principles and standards accepted by the members of a society; attitudes encompass the actions, feelings, and thoughts that result from those values. An informed procurement specialist will conduct self-analysis, giving consideration to such matters as:

- desire to achieve promotion at expense of colleagues
- actions driven by a role model
- adopting a 'win at all cost' strategy
- preparedness to engage in dubious and/or illegal practices
- insensitivity to the feelings of others
- negative thoughts about contractor's motives
- ability to build long-term business relationships
- output driven regardless of the consequences.

Social structure

This is directly linked to a person's status. The procurement specialist will ignore this factor at their peril. In Japan, a person's status depends on the status of the group to which he or she belongs. In India, status is affected by one's caste. In the United States, hardworking entrepreneurs are honoured. The British social structure is often driven by the quality of education and the individual's network. There is, then, the illogicality of 'knocking' the successful entrepreneurs, driven by envy, jealously or resentment?

13.4.2 Environment and social considerations

Worldwide Responsible Accredited Production (WRAP)

WRAP is an independent, objective, non-profit team of global social compliance experts dedicated to promoting safe, lawful, humane and ethical manufacturing

around the world through certification and education.[9] There is a certification process for which a registration fee of US$ 1,195 is payable. There are three certification levels, platinum, gold and silver. In November 2011, there were 1,757 WRAP factories employing 1,570,758 people. The initiative is admirable but the number of factories involved in the initiative is uninspiring.

N. Brown Group plc. – approach to social responsibility

The N Brown Group is a UK-based retailer[10] who has established a Corporate Social Responsibility (CSR) Committee. Some highlights of the Group's initiative are:

- currently deal with 1,564 suppliers, which equates to around 3,400 factories
- suppliers are regularly audited and risk assessed
- the ethical trading team is 3 FTEs
- signed up to the Accord on Fire & Building Safety in Bangladesh
- the Accord is a five-year commitment to make all garment factories in Bangladesh safe workplaces
- recently joined SEDEX (Supplier Ethical Data Exchange)
- ethical trading manager seconded to work on the Accord staff full-time for the past six months
- worked with other retailers and Oxfam in the Vietnam Wooden Furniture supply chain
- signed up to the United Nations Global Compact scheme
- signed up to a government funded scheme, SCAP (Sustainable Clothing Action Plan).

Supplier Ethical Data Exchange (SEDEX)

SEDEX[11] offers a simple and effective way of managing ethical and responsible practices in a supply chain. The core product is a secure, online database which allows members to store, share and report on information on four key areas:

1 labour standards
2 health & safety
3 the environment
4 business ethics.

SEDEX has three membership types, namely:

'A Membership'	–	for organisations that only wish to view and run reports on their supply chain
'AB Membership'	–	for organisations that wish to view and run reports on their supply chain and share information with their customers
'B Membership'	–	for organisations that only wish to share information with their customers

The SEDEX website is very helpful for the procurement community. There are numerous briefings available, including a 'Sedex Supplier Workbook' and 'Future Supply Chain'.

Restriction on the use of Certain Hazardous Substances in Electrical and Electronic Equipment (RoHS) Regulations 2012

The Department for Business Innovation & Skills has produced 'Government Guidance Notes for RoHS 2[12]'. These are updated from time to time. The RoHS Regulations 2012 impose obligations on economic operators throughout the supply chain. The key restriction is that economic operators may not place, or make available, EEE containing lead, mercury, cadmium, hexavalent chromium , polybrominated biphenyls (PBB) and polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDE), in amounts exceeding the established maximum concentration values, on the market. Of specific relevance to procurement is the requirement that economic operators must be able to demonstrate compliance by submitting an EU Declaration of Conformity and technical documentation or other information to the market surveillance authority on request and must retain such documentation for a period of ten years after the EEE is placed on the market.

Business Social Compliance Initiative

The Business Social Compliance Initiative (BSCI)[13] is an initiative of the Foreign Trade Association (FTA).[14] Its ultimate goal is to provide companies with the best system to improve working conditions in the global supply chain. To participate in BSCI, companies and associations are required to first become members of the FTA. There is a BSCI Code of Conduct aimed at setting out the values and principles that BSCI participants strive to implement in their supply chains. The Code sets out 11 core labour rights that should be monitored within their supply chain in a step-by-step development approach. These rights are:

1. The rights of freedom of association and collective bargaining
2. Fair remuneration
3. Occupational health & safety
4. Special protection for young workers
5. No bonded labour
6. Ethical business behaviour
7. No discrimination
8. Decent working hours
9. No child labour
10. No precarious employment
11. Protection of the environment.

Ethical Trading Initiative

The Ethical Trading Initiative (ETI)[15] is a leading alliance of companies, trade unions and NGOs that promotes respect for workers' rights around the globe. ETI observe that "'Doing" ethical trade is much harder than it sounds. Modern supply chains are vast, complex and span the globe. Labour issues are themselves challenging. For example, what exactly is a "living wage"?' ETI claim to have galvanised members to work together, to resolve major crises for workers in Cambodia, Turkey, Bangladesh and elsewhere.

13.4.3 Foreign exchange risks

This is the risk that a purchaser of an offshore product will be required to pay more (or less) than expected as a result of fluctuations in the exchange rates between the purchaser's currency and that of the supplier's currency in which payment may be made.

Assume that a UK company buys an item of capital equipment costing $100,000 at a 'spot' price of $2 to the pound, payable in six months' time meaning £50,000. If, at the time of payment, the pound has strengthened against the dollar, so that the exchange rate is $2.5 to the pound, the number of pounds required will be lower – in fact, £44,445. Conversely, if the pound has weakened against the dollar so that the exchange rate is $1.75 to the pound, the number of pounds required to buy $100,000 will be greater – in fact, £57,142. The risk of a rise in price due to an adverse exchange rate is termed *transaction exposure*.

Companies buying offshore can minimise foreign exchange risk in several ways, including the following:

- *Arranging to buy in the currency of the buyer* – This effectively transfers the risk of fluctuations in exchange rates to the supplier. This may not, however, be the best policy. Scott suggests that, when negotiating international deals, purchasers should:
  - research exchange rates for one or two years previously to benchmark the range of fluctuations in the respective currencies
  - price goods in the currency of the supplier if it is anticipated that the purchaser's currency will strengthen further
  - price goods in the currency of the purchaser if it is anticipated that the purchaser's currency will weaken
  - when agreeing to price adjustment clauses, ensure that currency fluctuations are kept separate from cost increases.
- *Reduce the uncertainty by hedging with forward contracts* for a period of no longer than six months. If a purchaser knows that a supplier must be paid a fixed amount in foreign currency in, say, six months, the purchaser can arrange a six-month forward contract with the bank under which the bank will provide a fixed amount of the foreign currency at the end of that time.
- *Buy currency options* such contracts give the purchaser the right (but not the obligation) to buy or sell foreign currency at a specified price within a specified time period. Under forward contracts, options allow the purchaser to benefit from favourable fluctuations in exchange rates.
- *Buy the offshore currency at the spot price on the day on which the offshore purchase is made* – this uses up capital, but interest may be earned on the currency held and the exchange rate is known from the outset.
- *Negotiate currency adjustment clauses* – these may include clauses specifying that:
  - payments may be in a currency other than that of the purchaser or supplier, such as sterling, US dollars, Swiss francs
  - 'this contract is subject to an exchange rate of X, plus or minus Y per cent. If the exchange rate exceeds these parameters then the contract price shall be renegotiated'
  - 'the contract shall be subject to an exchange rate fluctuation equal to the average of the exchange rate at the time of signing the contract and that at the date of the delivery'.

Developments such as that of the single European currency may help to simplify currency prices and exchange rates in an international context.

13.4.4 Legal considerations

Contracting with an offshore supplier requires diligent attention to detail regarding the terms and conditions of contract. The detail will include:

- whose legal jurisdiction shall apply? For example, in the USA there is State Law and the Uniform Commercial Code (UCC)
- what are the arrangements for dispute resolution, arbitration or mediation?
- the different types of insurance required to cover off the risks of a transaction including Incoterms (see section 13.5)
- the scope of *force majeure* provisions, recognising the potential for *force majeure* across the whole supply chain, including shipment
- rights of inspection through in-house quality management or by a third party
- the certainty of price, taking into account currency movements, price change mechanism and impact of commodity price changes, e.g. copper, zinc and gold
- specifications, including units of measurement, national standards and terminology
- documentation, such as bills of lading, certificates of origin and customs entry forms
- redress of complaints – that is, the return to the supplier of goods rejected or damaged in transit – and, as the recovery of damages is awarded to the buyer by the courts or arbitration, it is useful to ascertain what assets, if any, the supplier has in the buyer's country so these can be restrained by the courts in payment of damages due
- avoidance of translation errors when converting an overseas contract into own language
- rights of cancellation and termination
- prevention of use of child labour, e.g. India
- rights of supplier to sub-contract or assign
- provision of performance bond/parent company guarantee.

The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods 1980 ('CISG') and the process by which it was created, by the United Nations Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL), established a benchmark for the unification of commercial law in the post-war era. The CISG is an important document, since it establishes a comprehensive code of legal rules governing the formation of contracts for the international sale of goods, the obligations of the buyer and seller, remedies for breach of contract and other aspects of the contract. Readers may also wish to note that there is a 'United Nations Convention on the Use of Electronic Communication in International Contracts'.

The CISG has been adopted by 72 states but there has not been ratification by the United Kingdom. In 2005 it was noted that companies doing business in Europe had to deal with 25 different jurisdictions. A number of reasons have been given for the UK's lack of ratification, including the vagueness of some of the convention's provision, such as Article 7 on statutory interpretation and good faith.

The Principles of European Contract Law (PECL) represent a groundbreaking project on the road to a common European Private Law. The principles were compiled by

the Commission on European Contract Law ('Lendo-Commission') in the early 1980s and comprise three parts. Parts I and II dedicate themselves to the formation of contracts, validity, performance and remedies for non-performance. Part III focuses upon general contract law questions, prescription, set-off, plurality of debtors, illegality, unconscionability, conditions and capitalisation interest.

The International Chamber of Commerce (ICC) International Court of Arbitration is the world's leading institution for resolving international commercial and business disputes. In 2012, 759 cases were filed, of which North American parties made up 8.4 per cent. The following standard clause is recommended, subject to adjustment to fit national law and the special needs of the deal: 'All disputes arising out of or in connection with the present contract shall be finally settled under the Rules of Arbitration of the International Chamber of Commerce by one or more arbitrators appointed in accordance with the said Rules'.

13.5 Incoterms®

13.5.1 What are Incoterms®?

Incoterms® refer to the set of international rules for the interpretation of the chief terms used in foreign trade contracts first published by the International Chamber of Trade in 1936 (now International Chamber of Commerce) and amended in 1953, 1967, 1976, 1980, 1990, 2000 and 2010.

The reason Incoterms® are periodically revised is to ensure that they represent current practice. In the 1990 version, for example, the clause dealing with the seller's obligation to provide proof of delivery allowed paper documentation to be replaced by e-mail for that purpose for the first time.

Although the use of Incoterms® is optional, they can materially reduce difficulties encountered by importers and exporters.

13.5.2 Knowledge of Incoterms®

Prior to deciding which Incoterms® to include in a Contract it is essential that all the implications are known. Corporate Compliance Insights[16] judiciously comment,

> Incoterms® rules bring predictability to international commercial contracts by defining the responsibilities of the buyer and seller with respect to the packing, transportation and insurance of goods as they are transferred form the seller to the buyer. Incoterms® rules can be invaluable for shifting costs and liability associated with exporting, importing and shipping and for avoiding disputes down the road – but only if companies understand how to use them properly. While many businesses employ Incoterms® rules in their commercial contracts, **these Contracts are often negotiated by individuals who don't really understand what the Incoterms® rule means and don't know how to use them effectively.** (author's emphasis)

Corporate Compliance Insights give an example of EXW (Ex Works), a commonly used Incoterm. They explain that if the producer contracts to sell to the buyer 1,000 widgets 'EXW (Guangzhou factory) on January 1, 2013', the Producer's obligation is to put the 1,000 widgets at the buyer's disposal at the producer's factory in Guangzhou on January 1. The price quoted for the goods applies only at the factory and all charges for shipping and insurance, including even the loading of the goods at the Producer's factory, are the responsibility of the buyer. Title to the goods and, consequently, the

risk of loss and damage pass to the buyer once the goods have been made available to the buyer (or its agent) at the Guangzhou factory.

The author advised a retail organisation that purchased clothing from a producer in Portugal, EXW. These 20 foot sea containers were loaded one afternoon, thereby 'making them available to the buyer'. Overnight a disastrous fire at the producer's factory destroyed the contents of the containers. The consequence was that the goods were then at the buyer's risk, for which, in this instance, they were uninsured. There was a complete financial loss and a failure to meet market demand, resulting in reputation damage.

13.5.3 Format of Incoterms®

The Incoterms®[17] rules explain a set of three-letter trade terms reflecting business-to-business practice in contracts for the sale of goods. The Incoterms® rules describe mainly the tasks, costs and risks involved in the delivery of goods from sellers to buyers. See Table 13.3 for the rules for any mode of transport and Table 13.4 for other rules regarding sea and inland waterway transport.

13.5.4 How to use the Incoterms® 2010 rules

a) If you want the Incoterms® 2010 rules to apply to your contract, you should make this clear in the contract, through such words as [the chosen Incoterms rule including the named place, followed by] Incoterms® 2010

b) The chosen Incoterm® rule needs to be appropriate to the goods, to the means of their transport, and above all to whether the parties intend to put additional obligations, for example, the obligation to organise carriage or insurance on the seller or on the buyer

c) The chosen Incoterms rule can work only if the parties name a place or port and will work best if the parties specify the place or port as precisely as possible. A good example of such precision would be: 'FCA 38 Cours Albertler, Paris, France', Incoterm® 2010.

13.5.5 Main features of the Incoterms® 2010 rules

The number of Incoterms® rules was reduced from 13 to 11. This was achieved by substituting two new rules that may be used irrespective of the agreed mode of transport – DAT, Delivered at Terminal, and DAP, Delivered at Place – for the Incoterms 2000 rules DAF, DES, DEQ and DDU.

13.5.6 Classes of Incoterms®

The 11 Incoterms® 2010 rules are presented in two distinct classes:

For a full and complete description of all Incoterms® 2010, it will be necessary to purchase the ICC rules for the use of domestic and international trade terms.[18]

13.6 Shipping terms

It is useful for procurement to have a grasp of some of the salient shipping terms, examples of which follow. For further information, see Glossary of Shipping Terms:[19]

AIR WAYBILL A bill of lading (see bill of) that covers both domestic and international flights transporting goods to a specified destination. This is a non-negotiable instrument of air transport that serves as a receipt for the shipper, indicating

Table 13.3 Incoterms®: Rules for any mode of transport

EXW Ex Works	Ex Works means that the seller delivers when it places the goods at the disposal of the buyer at the seller's premises or at another named place (i.e., works factory, warehouse, etc.). The seller does not need to load the goods on any collecting vehicle, nor does it need to clear the goods for export, where such clearance is applicable
FCA Free Carrier	Free Carrier means that the seller delivers the goods to the carrier or another person nominated by the buyer at the seller's premises or another named place. The parties are well advised to specify as clearly as possible the point within the named place of delivery, as the risk passes to the buyer at that point
CPT Carriage Paid To	Carriage Paid To means that the seller delivers the goods to the carrier or another person nominated by the seller at an agreed place (if any such place is agreed between parties) and that the seller must contract for and pay the costs of carriage necessary to bring the goods to the named place of destination
CIP Carriage and Insurance Paid To	Carriage and Insurance Paid To means that the seller delivers the goods to the carrier or another person nominated by the seller at an agreed place (if any such place is agreed between parties), and that the seller must contract for and pay the costs of carriage necessary to bring the goods to the named place of destination. The seller also contracts for insurance cover against the buyer's risk of loss of or damage to the goods during the carriage. The buyer should note that under CIP the seller is required to obtain insurance only on minimum cover. Should the buyer wish to have more insurance protection, it will need either to agree as much expressly with the seller or to make its own extra insurance arrangements
DAT Delivered at Terminal	Delivered at Terminal means that the seller delivers when the goods, once unloaded from the arriving means of transport, are placed at the disposal of the buyer at a named terminal at the named port or place of destination. Terminal includes a place, whether covered or not, such as a quay, warehouse, container yard or road, rail or air cargo terminal. The seller bears all risks involved in bringing the goods to and unloading them at the terminal at the named port or place of destination
DAP Delivered at Place	Delivered at Place means that the seller delivers when the goods are placed at the disposal of the buyer on the arriving means of transport ready for unloading at the named place of destination. The seller bears all risks involved in bringing the goods to the named place
DDP Delivered Duty Paid	Delivery Duty Paid means that the seller delivers the goods when the goods are placed at the disposal of the buyer, cleared for import on the arriving means of transport ready for unloading at the named place of destination. The seller bears all the costs and risks involved in bringing the goods to the place of destination and has an obligation to clear the goods not only for export but also for import, to pay any duty for both export and import and to carry out all customs formalities

Table 13.4 Incoterms: Rules for sea and inland waterway transport

FAS Free Alongside Ship	Free Alongside Ship means that the seller delivers when the goods are placed alongside the vessel (e.g., on a quay or a barge) nominated by the buyer at the named port of shipment. The risk of loss of or damage to the goods passes when the goods are alongside the ship, and the buyer bears all costs from that moment onwards
FOB Free On Board	Free On Board means that the seller delivers the goods on board the vessel nominated by the buyer at the named port of shipment or procures the goods already so delivered. The risk of loss of or damage to the goods passes when the goods are on board the vessel, and the buyer bears all costs from that moment onwards
CFR Cost and Freight	Cost and Freight means that the seller delivers the goods on board the vessel or procures the goods already so delivered. The risk of loss of or damage to the goods passes when the goods are on board the vessel. The seller must contract for and pay the costs and freight necessary to bring the goods to the named port of destination
CIF Cost, Insurance and Freight	Cost, Insurance and Freight means that the seller delivers the goods on board the vessel or procures the goods already so delivered. The risk of loss of or damage to the goods passes when the goods are on board the vessel. The seller must contract for and pay the costs and freight necessary to bring the goods to the named port of destination 'The seller also contracts for insurance cover against the buyer's risk of loss of or damage to the goods during the carriage. The buyer should note that under CIF the seller is required to obtain insurance only on minimum cover. Should the buyer wish to have more insurance protection, it will need either to agree as much expressly with the seller or to make its own extra insurance arrangements'

that the carrier has accepted the goods listed and obligates itself to carry the consignment to the airport of destination according to specified conditions.

ALL RISK The broadest form of coverage available, providing protection against risks of physical loss or damage from any external cause. Does not cover loss or damage due to delay, inherent vice, preshipment condition, inadequate packaging or loss of market.

BILL OF LADING The document issued on behalf of the carrier describing the kind and quantity of goods being shipped, the shipper, the consignee, the ports of loading and discharge and the carrying vessel. It serves as a document of title, a contract of carriage and a receipt for goods.

BULK SHIPMENTS Shipments which are not packed, but are loaded directly into the vessel's holds. Examples of commodities that can be shipped in bulk are ores, coal, scrap, iron, grain, rice, vegetable oil, tallow, fuel oil, fertilisers and similar commodities.

CARNET A customs document permitting the holder to carry or send merchandise temporarily into certain foreign countries (for display, demonstration or similar purposes) without paying duties or posting bonds.

CONTAINERISATION	Shipping systems based on large cargo-carrying containers ranging up to 48 feet long that can be easily interchanged between trucks, trains and ships without re-handling the contents.
DEMURRAGE	A charge assessed by carriers to users who fail to unload and return equipment promptly.
DOCUMENTARY CREDIT	A commercial letter of credit providing for payment by a bank to the name beneficiary, usually the seller of merchandise, against delivery of documents specified in the credit.
DUTY	(a) ad valorem duty means an assessed amount at a certain percentage rate on the monetary value of an import. (b) Specific duty: an assessment on the weight or quantity of an article without preference to its monetary value or market price. (c) Drawback: a recovery in whole or in part of duty paid on imported merchandise at the time of exportation, in the same or different form.
FREE TRADE ZONE	A port designed by the government of a country for duty-free entry of any non-prohibited goods. Merchandise may be stored, displayed, used for manufacturing, etc., within the zone and reexported without duties being paid. Duties are imposed on the merchandise (or items manufactured from the merchandise) only when the goods pass from the zone into an area of the country subject to the Customs Authority. Also called FOREIGN TRADE ZONE.
IN BOND	A term applied to the status of merchandise admitted provisionally to a country without payment of duties – either for storage in a bonded warehouse or for trans-shipment to another point, where duties will eventually be imposed.
LCL	(Less-than-carload, also, Less-than-container load) A shipment that occupies less space than is available in a railcar or cargo-carrying container.
PERILS OF THE SEA	Fortuitous accidents or casualties, peculiar to transportation on a navigable water, such as stranding, sinking, collision of the vessel, striking a submerged object ort encountering heavy weather or other unusual forces of nature.
REEFER	A reference to refrigerated cargo-handling services utilising trucks, trailers, containers or railcars equipped with cooling units.
SHIPPING CONFERENCE	A group of ocean carriers that set identical rates for each member of the conference. Each conference operates only between specified origin and destination ports.
VALUATION CLAUSE	The clause in the Marine Policy that contains a fixed basis of valuation agreed upon by the assured and the Underwriter and which establishes the insured value of the merchandise. The clause determines the amount payable under any recoverable loss or General Average contribution.

WAR RISKS Those risks related to two (or more) belligerents engaging in hostilities, whether or not there has been a formal declaration of war. Such risks are excluded by the F C & S (Free of Capture and Seizure) Warranty, but may be covered by a separate War Risk Policy, at an additional premium.

WHARFAGE A charge assessed by a pier or dock owner for handling incoming or outgoing cargo.

13.7 Customs and Excise

All goods new or used, imported into the EU from outside the EU are subject to customs duty (import duty or import tax) and value added tax (VAT) according to their value and import tax classification. All goods imported into the UK from outside the EU must be declared to HM Revenue and Customs and, in most cases, this includes goods bought via the Internet. The importer is legally liable for import duty and VAT.

There is a UK Integrated Tariff, available online, as a subscription service. The Tariff is used to confirm commodity codes and find duty rates and compliance requirements for each type of 'good' commodity. The Tariff is split into three volumes: Volume 1 contains background and business-oriented information for importers and exporters about policy in specific areas. Volume 2 contains 16,600 goods descriptions with their Commodity Codes and special measures, which can be applied. Volume 3 is essential for importers and exporters. It contains a box-by-box guide for both manual and electronic C88 import and export declaration forms and a complete lot of Customs Procedure Codes (CPCs).

The rate of import duty varies according to the type of goods imported and the country of origin. Normally, import duty is based on a percentage of the value of the goods, plus the transport and insurance costs to the country of destination and may also include such costs as tools, dies, moulds, design work, royalties and licence fees. VAT, which varies across EU member states, is then added. The process is exemplified by the following illustration:

	£	£
Value of goods, say	100.00	
Shipping and insurance costs to the UK, say	15.00	
Total value for import duty	115.00	
Import duty payable at, say, 5 per cent	5.75	5.75
	120.75	
VAT on £120.75 at 20%	24.15	24.15
	144.90	29.90

From the above example, it can be seen that, in most cases, VAT will be the largest tax to pay on importation. The total tax payable is £29.90 on the original price of these goods.

In addition, a customs clearance fee will be charged by the courier, carrier, freight forwarder or import agent (including the Royal Mail or Parcel Force) for clearing the product through customs. There can be further charges for storage if the goods are held up in customs or due to late payment.

Further details of customs charges can be obtained from the websites of HM Revenue and Customs and the UK Department for Business, Innovation and Skills. Member states of the EU hold commodity codes in a database called the TARIC, or Tariff Intégré Communautaire. The UK Tariff is published once a year with ten monthly updates using data from the TARIC and is supplemented by UK-specific data on VAT, licensing, restrictions and excise duties.

13.8 Transport systems, costs and considerations

13.8.1 Road transport

The road system has developed a long way from the first asphalt road in Babylon by 625 BC. China had, in 2007, a national highway system of 53,000 km. The road system and distribution now raises vital considerations of emissions, noise, safety, congestion, economy and weight of vehicles going across national boundaries.

There is very limited potential to achieve economies of scale, largely because of impositions by governments. Road transport does have advantages over other modes, including:

- market entry is relatively low cost
- capital costs of vehicles and distribution points are relatively low
- point-to-point delivery times can be effectively managed
- flexibility of route choice gives flexibility when bad weather or accidents occur
- market dominance for short-medium distance journeys
- road users do not bear the full operating costs, e.g. they do not pay for road building and maintenance, despite road taxes and tolls.

13.8.2 Rail transport

The characteristics of rail transport must take account of economic and territorial control. Many rail networks are monopolies or oligopolies. In North America there are seven large rail freight carriers.

Key considerations of rail transportation include:

- there is effective use of space for the rail lines but distribution points (terminals) require vast space
- freight trains have severe gradient restrictions, e.g. approximately 10 metres per kilometre
- the design of freight wagons is quite flexible, such as hopper wagons for fertilisers and triple hopper wagons for coal
- the standard gauge of 1.435 metres is in wide use
- initial capital costs are very high with some rail companies investing close to 50 per cent of operating revenues in capital and maintenance costs
- the potential for more intermodal transport, for example, using COFC (containers on flat cars)
- emergence and development of high-speed rail networks
- the complexities of tracking shipments.

13.8.3 Pipelines

Under most circumstances, buyers rarely have occasion to consider pipelines as a transportation mode. Pipelines do, however, play a key role in strategic considerations. Some considerations are:

- pipelines invariably are designed for a specific commodity, e.g. oil and gas
- they can be subjected to disruption through acts of terrorism
- they can be subjected to political intervention, e.g. Russia with natural gas
- terrain difficulties can be overcome, e.g. the trans-Alaskan pipeline
- operating costs are low.

13.8.4 Maritime

This facet of international supply chain is of great interest to purchasers. There has been very significant growth in freight traffic, occasioned by:

- it being a low cost mode, strengthened by containerisation
- the growth in globalisation, e.g. retailers in the UK purchasing from the Far East
- movement of energy and mineral cargoes
- technology improvements in terminals.

There are two categories of freight – bulk cargo (commodity cargo), classified as dry or liquid that is not packaged, such as iron ore (dry), gasoline (liquid). It often has a single client, origin and destination. Break-bulk cargo (general cargo) is the second category and is packaged in bags, boxes or drums.

Key considerations of maritime transportation include:

- bulk cargo approximates to some 65 per cent of all ton miles shipped
- slow speeds averaging 15 knots
- severe delays in some ports
- significant capital outlay
- economies of scale, particularly with full container loads
- difficulties for the buyer to control transit times
- the operation of conference (formal agreements between companies engaged on particular trading routes).

13.8.5 Air transport

This is a vital aspect of international trade and transportation. It has a significant speed advantage, e.g. moving foodstuffs overnight and access to many geographic locations around the world. Some key considerations are:

- the threat to supply where there is severe weather, e.g. the Icelandic volcanic ash issue
- use of airspace and political interventions
- relatively high cost but fast speed and flexibility of routes
- high levels of investment and fixed costs

- possible impact of terrorism and security
- fluctuations in fuel prices which can be circa 30 per cent of operating costs.

13.8.6 Intermodalism

The need for an integrated supply chain management system played a large role in the evolution of intermodalism. Some key considerations are:

- containerisation facilitates a quick turnaround
- relatively low cost
- clients can use one bill of lading to get a through rate
- the TEU (Twenty-foot Equivalent Unit) can move 10 tons of cargo and a 40-foot box, circa 22 tons of cargo.

13.9 Freight agents

The freight agent has always played an important role in commerce and international carriage of goods. The freight agent acts as the agent for the cargo owner and in some cases at the same time for the carriers. In modern days the freight forwarder has adopted a new role in which he is not only assisting the parties in the transportation of goods, but in 'undertaking' the carriage by his own means of transport or by making arrangements with other transport providers.[20]

13.9.1 What is a freight agent or forwarder?

A freight agent or forwarder is a person or company, who, for a fee, undertakes to have goods carried and delivered to a destination. The services of freight agents are normally engaged when the carriage of goods involves successive carriers or the use of successive means of transport.

Traditionally, freight agents make contracts of carriage for their principals. Under the principles of the law of agency, a freight agent is under an obligation to the principal to conclude the contract on the agreed terms. Although in civil law freight agents are distinguished from carriers, the latter sometimes also act as freight agents.

13.9.2 The services of freight agents

Foley[21] has identified the services provided by freight forwarders as:

1. international freight quotations
2. export packing
3. providing scheduling of carriers
4. booking inland and international freight movements
5. containerisation and consolidation of freight
6. transshipments
7. supervising freight movements (such as loading of goods onto carriers)
8. computerised tracking of international freight movements
9. export and import documentation
10. applying for export licenses

11 overseas documentation and foreign government requirements
12 preshipment inspections
13 marine and air insurance
14 warehousing
15 overseas logistics strategies such as free trade zones and warehousing
16 assisting with insurance claims.

Other services offered by forwarders may include:

- consolidation or groupage – that is, the grouping of consignments from several consignors in a single load
- road haulage, such as the operation of a cargo collection and delivery service to and from sea or airports
- containers – some forwarders may operate container services or lease containers
- provision of warehousing, packing, insurance, financial and market research services
- coordination of the deliveries of multiple consignments.

13.9.3 Freight agents' fees

Freight agents or forwarders are paid a negotiated fee by the shipper or importer depending on the service or documents required. Fees are related to Incoterms® in that they depend on the responsibilities undertaken by the different parties. They will be lower, for example, if the responsibilities end FOB at the departure port and increase as responsibilities extend DDP to the destination terminal.

13.9.4 Freight agents and the future

Willmott[22] points out that the development of logistics and supply chain management requires:

> the services of 'logistics practitioners' who can mesh themselves into the overall pattern, not just as suppliers of freight forwarding services but as links that might encompass several business functions.

Such functions are listed by Willmott as being:

- customerisation, or tailoring for individual markets or customers
- sourcing and delivery of raw materials
- allocation of materials and packaging
- manufacturing and capacity planning
- inventory determination and allocation to warehouses
- international movement by sea, road, rail and air
- domestic trunking and primary and multidrop distribution
- order fulfilment, including picking, packing and dispatch/delivery to customers
- e-commerce support of supply chain visibility
- reverse logistics, perhaps involving call centre management and collections for repair or servicing and so on.

Possible developments include:

- establishing 'one stop' entities by merging logistics and forwarding services, providing increased capabilities as suppliers of materials and components, enabling manufacturers to outsource non-core logistic and transport activities
- the secondment of the freight forwarder's staff to major customers to provide on-site freight expertise
- whole supply chains setting up in competition with each other rather than individual companies in that chain doing so, with the consequence that a freight forwarder may become a link in more than one chain.

13.10 Methods of payment

Overseas suppliers (exporters) may be unwilling to release goods until they have received payment. Conversely, buyers may be unwilling to pay before the goods have been delivered. SITPRO[23] (Simplifying International Trade) has produced the payments risk ladder shown in Figure 13.1, setting out some methods of payment and the risks of each to exporters and importers respectively.

Each of the four methods of payment shown in Figure 13.1 is briefly described below. SITPRO also advises that importers and exporters should consider their options carefully and hedge the risks with appropriate insurance and credit checks on overseas suppliers or customers.

13.10.1 Open account

This is similar to most home transactions. Goods are shipped and documents remitted to the buyer with an invoice for payment on previously agreed terms, such as 'net 30 days'.

13.10.2 Bills for collection

Under this system, the shipping documents – including the *bill of lading* (which is a receipt signed by a ship's master specifying the goods shipped on board and constituting a negotiable bill of title to such goods) are sent to the buyer's bank rather than direct to the buyer. These will be handed to the importer only when payment has been

Figure 13.1 The payments risk ladder for exporters and importers

Exporter	Least secure →	Less secure →	More secure →	Most secure →
	Open account	Bills for collection	Documentary credits	Advance payment
Importer	← Most secure	← More secure	← Less secure	← Least secure

made (documents against payment) or against a promise to pay (documents against acceptance) and, until the documents are received, the title to the goods remains with the exporter. Documents against acceptance are usually accompanied by a *draft* or *bill of exchange* drawn on the buyer. Bills of exchange are the oldest method of payment for goods bought overseas. A bill of exchange (B/E) is defined as:[24]

> An unconditional order in writing, addressed by one person to another, signed by the person giving it, requiring the person to whom it is addressed to pay on demand, or at a fixed or determinable future date, a sum certain in money to or to the order of a specified person or to the bearer.

A cheque is a specialised form of B/E drawn on a bank to pay a specified sum to X on demand.

When a buyer (drawee) agrees to pay on a certain date – say, '30 days from acceptance' – the draft is said to have been accepted. It is against this acceptance that the goods are released to the buyer.

The *bills for collection* process is governed by the 'Uniform rules for collections' (Document 522, published by the International Chamber of Commerce). Over 90 per cent of the world's banks adhere to Document 522.

13.10.3 Letters of credit

With bills for collection, the bank acts only as an intermediary and enters into no payment undertaking. It is therefore a cheaper arrangement than a *letter of credit* (LOC), which is a legal instrument constituting a cash guarantee, obligating the bank to make a payment to a named beneficiary, such as an exporter, within a specified time against the presentation of documents such as the bill of lading, certificate of quality, insurance and origin, packing list and a commercial invoice. The risk of non-payment by the buyer is therefore transferred to the issuing bank. Letters of credit are governed by the ICC rules 'Uniform customs and practice for documentary credits' (Document UCP 500).

An LOC is opened by an importer (applicant) to ensure that the documentation requested proves that the seller has fulfilled the requirements of the underlying sales contract by making such requirements conditions of the LOC.

From the exporter's perspective, apart from cash in advance, an LOC is the most secure method of payment in international trade. The conditional nature of an LOC means that payment will not be made to the exporter unless all the credit terms have been precisely met.

LOCs may be conditional, standby or transactional:

- a *conditional* LOC may require some burden of proof by the owner that the contractor has not failed to perform before the bank will pay
- a *standby* LOC is normally used for open accounts (see section 13.10.1) and deals only with payment of documented sums within a specified period
- a *transactional* LOC applies to one specific transaction.

Most LOCs are irrevocable, which means that both parties must agree to any changes in terms.

While LOCs are a very secure method of payment, the security comes at a price. The security must therefore be weighed against the cost of higher bank charges.

13.10.4 Payment in advance

As shown in Figure 13.1, this is the least secure and most secure method of payment from the standpoint of buyers and sellers respectively. Often this method takes the form of a payment up front of, say, 50 per cent of the selling price, with the remainder payable on agreed credit terms.

13.10.5 What method of payment to use?

SITPRO[25] lists the following factors to bear in mind when deciding which method to choose:

- company policy
- cash flow considerations
- relationship with the overseas supplier
- the market conditions under which the overseas supplier operates
- the buyer's gut feeling.

The effectiveness and expeditiousness of all the processes involved in the exchange of documents and payments have been greatly facilitated by the various electronic means at our disposal.

13.11 Countertrade

13.11.1 What is countertrade?

Yavas and Freed[26] define countertrade (CT) as:

> a generic term for parallel business transactions, linking sellers and buyers in reciprocal commitments that usually lie outside the realm of typical money-mediated trade.

Essentially, CT is a form of international reciprocal trading in which an order is placed by a purchaser with a supplier in another country (or vice versa) on condition that goods of an equal or specified value are sold or bought in the opposite direction.

CT often, but not necessarily, takes place in less well-developed, more centrally planned economies. The rising price of oil, higher interest rates and foreign debt have meant that many countries are unable to generate sufficient hard-core earnings by means of their exports to service their debts, but desperately need imports. As a result of economic, financial and political forces, CT has become an established feature of modern markets. Estimates vary, but approximately 25 per cent of all world trade is accounted for by CT.

13.11.2 Forms of countertrade

Carter and Gagne[27] identify five distinct types of CT.

- *Barter or swaps* – a one-off, direct, simultaneous exchange of goods or services between trading partners without a cash transaction, such as an exchange of New Zealand lamb for Iranian crude oil. The term 'swap' is used when goods are exchanged to save transportation costs.

Kreuze[28] instances the shipping of Russian oil to Greece rather than Cuba and the sending of Mexican oil to Cuba instead of Greece, thereby saving considerable transportation costs for both nations.

- *Counterpurchase* occurs when a company in country X sells to a foreign country Y on the understanding that a set percentage of the sale's proceeds will be spent on importing goods produced in country Y. Both trading partners agree to fulfil their obligations within a fixed time period and pay for the major part of their respective purchases in cash.

  In 1977, Volkswagen sold 10,000 cars to the then East Germany and agreed to purchase goods from a list compiled by the East Germans up to the value of the cars over the ensuing two years.

- *Buy-back or compensation* occurs when the exporter agrees to accept, as full or partial payment, products manufactured by the original exported product.

  Occidental Petroleum negotiated a deal with the former USSR under which they agreed to build several plants in the Soviet Union and receive partial payment in ammonia over a 20-year period.

  The main differences between buy-back and counterpurchase are that, in buy-backs:

  – the goods and services taken back are tied to the original goods exported, while this is not the case with counterpurchase

  – buy-back deals usually stretch over a longer period of time than counterpurchase ones.

  The Xerox Corporation sold plant and technology for the production of low-value photocopying machines to the People's Republic of China and contractually agreed to repurchase a large proportion of the machines produced in the Chinese plant.

- *Switch trading* refers to the transfer of unused or unusable credit balances in one country to overcome an imbalance of money by a trading partner in another country. Country X sells goods of a certain value to country Y. Country Y credits country X with the value of the goods, which X can use to buy goods from Y. Country X, however, does not wish to buy goods from Y. X therefore sells the credits to a third party trading house at a discount. The trading house then locates a country or company wishing to buy goods from Y. In return for a small profit, the trading house sells the credits to the country or company wishing to buy from Y.

- *Offset* – this is similar to counterpurchase, except that the supplier can fulfil the undertaking to import goods or services of a certain percentage value by dealing with any company in the country to which the original goods were supplied.

  This can be shown diagrammatically as in Figure 13.2.

13.11.3 The advantages and disadvantages of countertrade

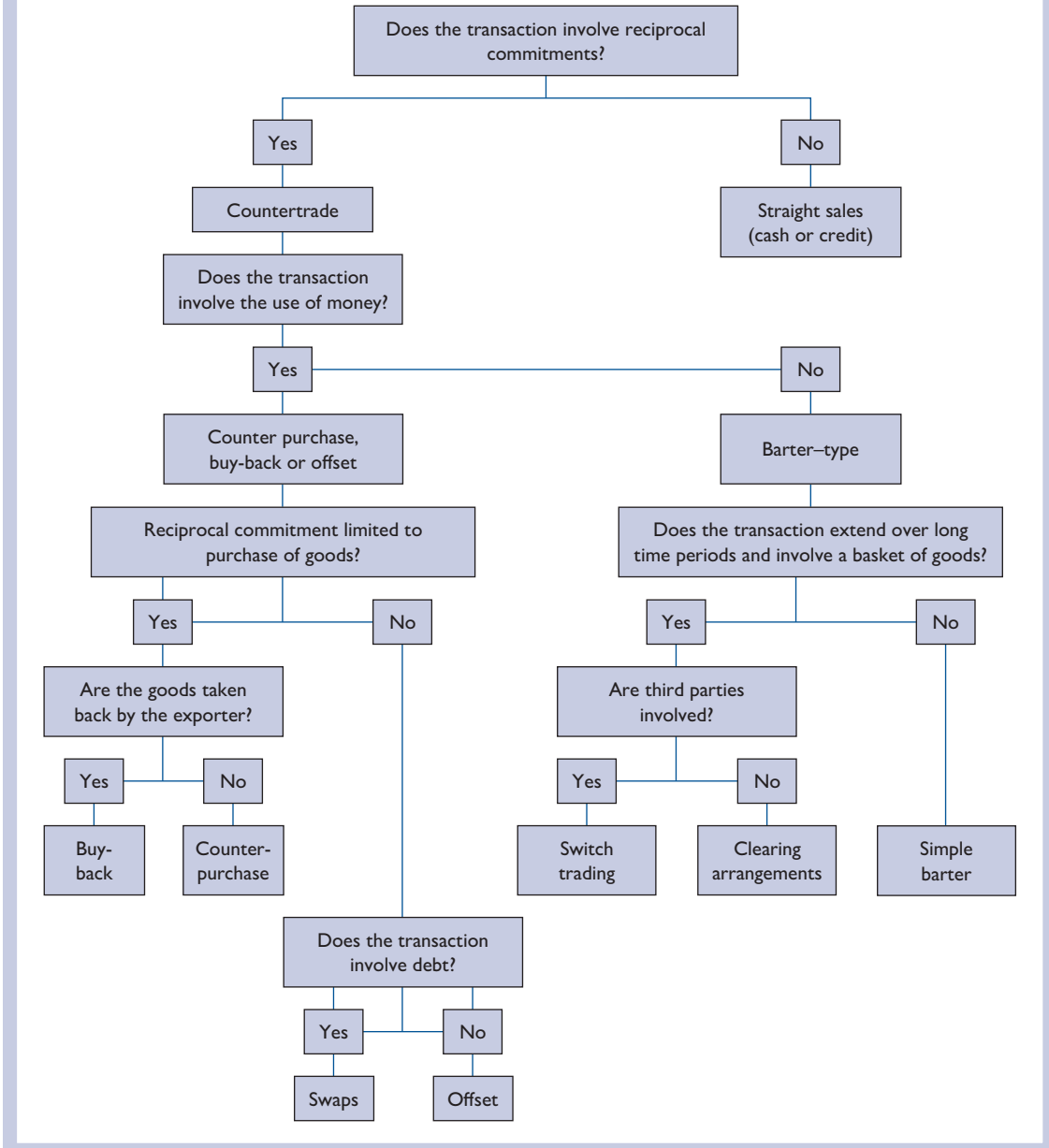
These have been identified by Forker[29], as shown in Table 13.5.

13.11.4 Problems of Countertrade

The implementation of CT requires special expertise. The problems encountered will fall into one of the following categories: marketing, negotiation ability, attitudinal, managerial and pricing and procurement. Examples include:

- no control over quality of products traded and possible absence of specification detail
- pricing decisions and lack of knowledge on cost drivers
- lack of CT knowledge and relevant expertise

Figure 13.2 Preferred items for export in countertrade transactions[30]



- difficult, complex and negotiations with multi-participants when there is no common agenda
- contractual relationships lacking clarity with jurisdictional issues
- difficulty reselling products

Table 13.5 Advantages and disadvantages of countertrade

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
Acceptance of goods or services as payment can: ■ avoid exchange controls ■ promote trade with countries with inconvertible currencies ■ reduce risks associated with unstable currency values Overcoming the above financial obstacles enables countertrading enterprises to: ■ enter new or formerly closed markets ■ expand business and sales volume ■ reduce the impact of foreign protectionism on overseas business Countertrade has enabled participants to: ■ make fuller use of plant capacity ■ have longer production runs ■ reduce unit expenses due to greater sales volume ■ find valuable outlets for declining products	Countertrade negotiations tend to be longer and more complicated than conventional sales negotiations and must, sometimes, be conducted with powerful government procurement agencies Additional expenses, such as brokerage fees and other transaction costs, reduce the profitability of countertrade deals There may be difficulties with the quality, availability and disposal of goods taken as countertrade Countertrade may give rise to pricing problems associated with the assignment of values to products/commodities received in exchange Offset customers can, later, become competitors Commodity prices can vary widely during the lengthy periods of countertrade negotiation and delivery

- added third party costs
- unknown and unquantifiable risks.

13.12 The true cost of offshore buying

As indicated in earlier sections of this chapter, while the benefits of buying offshore can be substantial, there are also significant financial costs and risks. It is therefore important that such costs and risks should be evaluated before deciding to source offshore. Tables such as 13.6 facilitate comparisons between the true costs of buying offshore and from home-based suppliers. They also provide a list of some possible items for negotiation.

Many of the costs shown in Table 13.6 will also attract VAT. Costs will vary according to different weights, sizes and quantities. The effects of such variances are easily computed with the aid of a spreadsheet.

13.13 Buying capital equipment offshore

13.13.1 Reasons for buying capital equipment offshore

Capital equipment can be sourced offshore for numerous reasons, including:

- compatibility with existing equipment
- the technology is protected by patents
- to meet stringent 'offset' commitments
- to achieve high quality specifications

Table 13.6 Comparisons of costs of offshore and UK suppliers

Expense category	*Costs: areas of expenditure*	*Offshore supplier*	*Home supplier*
Basic price	Supplier's quoted price per item Packaging Sea/air freight Marine insurance Supplier's final price CIF/destination		
Handling/transportation charges	Handling charges (port of entry) Storage Port costs Internal transport to buyer Freight forwarding fees Insurance		
Customs and associated charges	Customs duties Customs clearance fees		
International financing	Costs of documentation Currency conversion rates Exchange rate fluctuations Bank fees		
Inventory costs	Holding costs of higher inventory Levels at x per cent per annum		
Sourcing costs	Costs of visit to offshore supplier Estimated communication costs Costs of inspection by offshore agent Special fees, such as translation, legal		
Total actual or estimated costs			

- access to 24/365 expert service support
- access to cutting edge technology
- long-term through life support
- high quality operator training and support
- competitive prices of equipment and support
- ability to negotiate stringent contract performance specification and penalties for non-performance.

13.13.2 Technical requirements of equipment bought offshore

Essentially, these are listed in section 13.4, although special attention will be given to lifecycle costs and the availability of spares – especially the speed at which they can be provided by air transport or other methods. Other important factors are international standardisation and, with some complex equipment, the provision of assistance with installation and post-purchase maintenance advice and services.

13.13.3 Cultural, contractual and currency factors

The cultural, political, ethical and foreign exchange factors referred to in this chapter apply equally to the purchase of capital equipment.

Legal factors will also need special consideration, especially what legal system is applicable, and the provision for the international settlement of disputes by means of such agencies as the International Chamber of Commerce (ICC). Special clauses may need to be included in the contract, such as an undertaking by the supplier of the equipment to maintain stocks of spare parts for a prescribed minimum number of years.

Currency considerations which need to be taken into account are the same as those referred to in section 13.4.3. In some cases countertrade may be applicable, especially buy-back arrangements, whereby the country exporting capital equipment undertakes to buy back some of the products made in the buyer's country.

13.13.4 Import factors

These include the most suitable forms of transport and the way in which freight and import agents can provide assistance. All buyers of capital equipment offshore should have a thorough understanding of Incoterms® especially FOB, CIF and CFR.

Finally it is essential to make an evaluation, as shown in section 13.12, of the comparative costs of buying capital equipment from offshore and home sources, when these alternatives are available.

13.14 Factors in successful offshore procurement

The Birou and Fawcett research referred to earlier in this chapter identified the factors listed in Table 13.7.

Table 13.7 Factors influencing success in international sourcing (Birou and Fawcett, 1993)

Rank	*Factor*	*Rating*
1	Top management support	5.68
2	Developing communication skills	5.67
3	Establishing long-term relationships	5.65
4	Developing global sourcing skills	5.62
5	Understanding global opportunities	5.13
6	Knowledge of foreign business practices	5.09
7	Foreign supplier certification and qualifications	5.02
8	Planning for global sourcing	5.02
9	Obtaining expert assistance	4.79
10	Knowledge of exchange rates	4.53
11	Use of third-party logistics services	4.12

Note: All ratings are on a seven-point Likert scale, with seven for major challenge.

Other important considerations include ascertaining the total cost of ownership for all significant purchases, using offshore suppliers that practice TQM, providing offshore suppliers with accurate demand forecasts, a boundary-spanning philosophy for supply chain participants, as opposed to a narrow vision of business processes, and sensitivity to the interests and cultures of overseas suppliers. Most purchasing professionals can benefit from training in buying offshore, but hands-on experience is usually the best teacher of all.

Discussion questions

13.1 What are the potential risks when purchasing offshore, particularly in regard to financial and supply chain considerations?

13.2 Would you prefer to deal with a local agent of an offshore supplier or deal direct with them?

13.3 Define countertrade and identify the five distinct types of countertrade.

13.4 If you were selecting a freight agent to represent your interests what would be the top six qualities you would be looking for?

13.5 What are the main differences between a letter of credit and a bill for collection?

13.6 If you purchased capital equipment from a supplier in Japan, how would you guarantee a continuing supply of spare parts?

13.7 Compare and contrast the movement of goods, internationally, by sea and air freight.

13.8 Why should a procurement specialist be concerned about foreign exchange risk and how can this risk be mitigated?

13.9 Name six Incoterms® and explain their strengths and weaknesses from the buyer's point of view.

13.10 What are the dangers of signing a contract subject to a foreign jurisdiction?

13.11 When a buyer contracts for supply from an offshore supplier it reduces employment in the home country. How is offshore buying justified in economic terms?

13.12 It is a fact that some countries make extensive use of child labour and sometimes have a disregard for health and safety. How would you seek to redress this when negotiating a contract?

13.13 Other than price, there are few other reasons to purchase offshore. Do you agree?

13.14 Environmental impacts of offshore purchases are very difficult to ascertain. Do you agree?

References

[1] Birou, L. M. and Fawcett, S. E., 'International purchasing: benefits, requirements and challenges', *International Journal of Purchasing and Supply*, Jan., 1993, pp. 22–25

[2] Trent, R.J. and Monczka, R.M., 'International purchasing and global sourcing: what are the differences?', *Journal of Supply Chain Management*, Vol 39, Iss. 3, 2003, pp. 26–36

[3] Rexha, N. Miyamoto, T., and Grainger, R., 'International sourcing: an Australian perspective', ISM *Resource* Article, Winter, 2000

[4] Brian Farrington Limited www.brianfarrington.com

[5] Griffin, R., W. and Pustay, M. W., *International Business: A Management Perspective*, Pearson Education Ltd, Global Edition

[6] Op. cit

[7] Ferraro, G., *The Cultural Dimension of International Business*, Prentice Hall, 2010

[8] 'The World's Religious Make-Up', *The Economist*, December 22, 2012, p. 102

[9] info@wrapcompliance.org

[10] http:www.nbrown.co.uk/suppliers

[11] E-mail: helpdesk@sedexglobal.com

[12] Available from Department for Business Innovation & Skills: https://www.gov.uk/government/organisations/department-for-business-innovation-skills

[13] www.bsci-intl.org

[14] www.fta-intl.org

[15] www.ethicaltrade.org

[16] www.corporatecomplianceinsights.com 'Incoterms rules - how they can improve your company's compliance, reduce your risk and maximise your profit', January 21, 2013

[17] 'Incoterms' is a registered trademark of the International Chamber of Commerce

[18] Obtainable from ICC United Kingdom. The British affiliate of ICC, 12 Grosvenor Place, London, SW1X 7HH

[19] Glossary of Shipping Terms, 2008, U.S. Department of Transportation Maritime Administration, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE Washington, DC 20590

[20] www.forwarderlaw.com 'Stuck in the middle - Part 1 Functions of a freight forwarder'

[21] Foley, J. F., *The Global Entrepreneur: Taking Your Business International*, Jamme Press International, 2nd Edition, 2004

[22] Willmott, K., *Understanding the freight business*, in as 3 above, pp. 203–204

[23] SITPRO (Simplifying International Trade) at:www.sitpro.org.uk/trade/paymentmethods.htm

[24] Bills of Exchange Act 1882, section 3(1)

[25] As 23 above – SITPRO is the UK's Trade Facilitation Agency, supported by the DTI

[26] Yavas, B. F. and Freed, R., 'An economic rationale for countertrade', *The International Trade Journal*, Vol. 15, No.2, 2001, pp. 127–155

[27] Carter, J. R. and Gagne, J., 'The dos and don'ts of countertrade', *Sloan Management Review*, *Spring*, 1988, pp. 31–37

[28] Kreuze, J. G., 'International countertrade', *Internal Auditor*, Vol. 54, No. 2, April, 1997, pp. 42–47

[29] Forker, L. B., 'Purchasing's views on countertrade', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol. 28, No. 2, 1992, pp. 10–19

[30] Czinkota et al, czinkota@georgetown.edu. 2005, p. 587

Chapter 14

Negotiation skills, practice and business benefits

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- the business impact of negotiation
- approaches to negotiation
- the skills required for professional negotiation
- the scope of negotiation issues
- the structure of negotiation
- the negotiation process
- negotiation and relationship management
- negotiation ethics.

Key ideas

- The distinction between adversarial or distributive and collaborative or integrative negotiations.
- Methods of influencing others for positive outcomes.
- Substance and relationship negotiating roles.
- Time and location as a factor in negotiations.
- Planning as a key negotiation element.
- The key stages of the negotiation process.
- Pre-negotiation, negotiation and post-negotiation activities and considerations.
- Negotiating interactions and analysis.
- Negotiation reviews and transfer of learning.
- Positional and principled negotiation.
- Ethical aspects of negotiation.

Introduction

Negotiation has been described as:[1]

> Perhaps the finest opportunity for the buyer to improve his (or her) company's profits and obtain recognition.

There must be specific conditions that pertain before negotiation is used in an attempt to resolve differences between buyers and sellers. These will include any situation where:

- It is believed that a tender or quotation contains cost elements that are uncompetitive when compared with other bidders, or where there is internal financial and technical expertise to show that bid costs are too high.
- A tender or quotation is unclear on major features; for example, the delivery date is unsupported by a detailed production plan showing key points of manufacture, or where service implementation fails to identify milestones. This would require negotiation to probe these key points and to identify how the contract will include the delivery obligations required.
- There is reason to believe that the seller has a high probability of not fulfilling a critical feature of the contract, and where, in consequence, contractual safeguards are required. An example of this is a failure to mobilise resources on a project.
- IT product support is necessary and different levels, e.g. gold, silver and bronze, are available, and where the proposed cost in use is unclear or unacceptable. This will require negotiation to obtain definitive prices, service levels and understand the consequences of non-performance and to include these in the contract.
- There is good reason to believe that the tenderers are not pricing competitively. This could be through collusive practices, estimating deficiencies or a desire to price in such a way as to make excessive profit.
- The supply market is monopolistic thereby diminishing the normal forces of competition.
- The tenderers are reluctant to explain how they arrived at their price, particularly on high value contracts. If this situation is also accompanied by circumstances which make it probable that contract changes will be inevitable, negotiation is required to identify the price review mechanism which will operate in the contract.
- The purchase has a unique element, such as a once only purchase in a specialist area where the buyer has little expertise. This can occur in Information Technology procurement where the seller will usually have expert knowledge.
- There is a contractual dispute that requires a detailed understanding of all the circumstances leading to the dispute.
- The buying company is contemplating a long-term contract such as outsourcing back office services for ten years and, hence, where the decision will involve long-term pricing considerations. In this case negotiation is necessary to ensure appropriate price control mechanisms such as indexation, continuous improvement, price benchmarking and possible incentivisation mechanisms.
- Technology refreshments are to be incorporated as an element of contract performance and where the recovery on investment needs to be specifically identified.

- There is a price increase request from a seller, which will have an adverse effect on operating costs, budgets and ability to compete in their markets.
- Supply market research identifies opportunities to obtain buying company competitive advantages previously denied them. Examples have been provided by outsourcing and offshoring.
- It can be demonstrated that existing contracts are no longer competitive and/or where the technical solution is outdated.

This is not a comprehensive listing, although it identifies reasons why negotiation is frequently necessary. It must not become a predictable routine, such as asking for 5 per cent off the bid price. It must not involve disclosing one bidder's data to a competitor to gain a price reduction or some other contractual advantage. It must not involve the classic 'Dutch auction' in which bidders are continually played off against each other within short time spans.

The best negotiations are conducted under circumstances where there is mutual respect between buyer and seller, and where both parties perceive that there are valid professional reasons for negotiations taking place. Subtle negotiations can take place in situations where relationships need strengthening to provide future business opportunities. This emphasises the point that not all negotiations are prompted by differences of opinion or actual disputes.

Definitions

There are numerous definitions of negotiation. Three typical examples are given and commented on below.

> The process whereby two or more parties decide what each will give and take in an exchange between them.[2]

This definition of negotiation highlights:

- its interpersonal nature
- the interdependence of the parties
- its allocation of resources.

A formal negotiation is:

> An occasion where one or more representatives of two or more parties interact in an explicit attempt to reach a jointly acceptable position on one or more divisive issues about which they would like to agree.[3]

This definition highlights that negotiation:

- is restricted to occasions when two or more parties need to reach agreement
- involves *representatives of the parties* – the buyer, sales executive and legal representatives, for example
- is *explicit* – that is, the process genuinely and deliberately attempts to reach an agreement
- involves *divisive issues* about which the parties would like to agree.

Third, negotiation is:

> Any form of verbal communication in which the participants seek to exploit their relative competitive advantages and needs to achieve explicit or implicit objectives within the overall purpose of seeking to resolve problems that are barriers to agreement.[4]

This definition stresses three elements of negotiation:

- it involves communication – that is, the exchange of information
- it takes place in a context in which the participants use their comparative competitive advantages, and the perceived needs of the other party to influence the outcome of the negotiation process
- each participant has implicit as well as explicit objectives that determine the negotiating strategies – a seller will explicitly wish to obtain the best price, for example, but, implicitly, will be seeking a contribution to fixed overheads and endeavouring to keep the plant and workforce employed.

Identifying aspects for negotiation

It is essential that quotations and tenders are professionally evaluated to identify those aspects which are unacceptable because of the seller's stance, and/or where there has been a non-compliant offer. The procurement specialist will be able to identify those aspects which can be accepted without further discussion, and those areas where the attendant risk is unacceptable and where negotiation is a desirable business approach.

It is impossible to be prescriptive regarding everything that may be negotiable but it is possible to predict those aspects which would typically require negotiation effort:

- obtain compliance with the specification
- delivery milestones, completion dates and consequences of failure to meet them
- financial safeguards, e.g. bank guarantees, performance bonds, and parent company guarantees
- pricing of products and services, disclosure of data
- long-term product support, e.g. releases of software and period of supportability
- product guarantee conditions, e.g. repair/replace, then extension to guarantee?
- compliance with statutory regulations, e.g. health and safety at work
- pricing of non-recurring costs, e.g. tooling and software source code development
- seller's requests for enhanced payment terms including advance payments
- seller's exclusion clause proposals
- insurance requirements, e.g. values and whether 'per claim' or 'in the aggregate'
- termination clauses and consequences for both parties
- price review mechanisms on long-term contracts, e.g. indexation
- redetermination of prices for increased quantities
- discount and/or rebate structures
- use of licenses for computer software and payment, e.g. a site licence or user numbers
- hourly rate composition and charges for weekends
- *force majeure* – what is included

- rights to intellectual property in design, copyright, etc.
- use of sub-contractors and flow down of contract conditions
- charges for commissioning, e.g. IT software
- arbitration mediation and dispute resolution rights under contract
- jurisdiction
- mobilisation charges on major projects
- liquidated or unliquidated damages.

Note – these are broad headings only and would require a significant amount of planning to ensure that the detail is dealt with in ensuing negotiations.

14.1 Approaches to negotiation

Approaches to negotiation may be classified as adversarial or collaborative:

- *adversarial negotiation* – also termed *distributive* or *win–lose negotiation* – is an approach in which the focus is on 'positions' staked out by the participants, the assumption being that every time one party wins, the other loses, so, as a result, the other party is regarded as an adversary
- *collaborative negotiation* – also called *integrative* or *win–win negotiation* – is an approach in which the assumption is that, by means of creative problem-solving, one or both parties can gain without the other having to lose and, as the other party is regarded as a collaborator rather than an adversary, the participants may be more willing to share concerns, ideas and expectations than would otherwise be the case.

The characteristics of adversarial and collaborative negotiation are summarised in Table 14.1.

14.1.1 An evaluation of adversarial and collaborative strategies

Adversarial strategies may, on occasion, be appropriate in the following situations:

- where there is no ongoing relationship or the potential for one exists or it is desired – the deal is a one-off
- a quick, simple solution to a disagreement is required.

Collaborative strategies, while more time-consuming and difficult to achieve, have the following advantages:

- they are more stable and lead to long-term relationships and creative solutions to mutual problems
- they may also be the only way to obtain agreements when both parties to a negotiation have high aspirations and resist making concessions on these issues.

14.1.2 Transforming adversarial attitudes

Fisher and Ury[5] suggest five tactics designed to transform an adversarial into a collaborative approach. These approaches are discussed in section 14.10.

Table 14.1 Adversarial and collaborative negotiation contrasted

Adversarial negotiation	*Collaborative negotiation*
■ The emphasis is on competing to attain goals at the adversary's expenses ■ Strategy is based on secrecy, retention of information and low level of trust in the perceived adversary ■ The desired outcomes of the negotiations are often misrepresented so that the adversary does not know what the opponent really requires the outcome of the negotiation to be. There is little concern for or empathy with the other party ■ Strategies are unpredictable, based on various negotiating ploys designed to outmanoeuvre or 'throw' the other ■ Parties use threats, bluffs and ultimatums with the aim of keeping the adversary on the defensive ■ There is an inflexible adherence to a fixed position that may be defended by both rational and irrational arguments. Primarily, the approach is destructive ■ The approach is essentially hostile and aggressive – 'us against them'. This antagonism may be enhanced in team negotiations where members of the team may seek to outdo their colleagues in displaying macho attitudes ■ The unhealthy extreme of an adversarial approach is reached when it is assumed that movement towards one's own goal is facilitated by blocking measures that prevent the other party from attaining the goal ■ The key attitude is that of: 'We win, you lose' ■ If an impasse occurs, the negotiation may be broken off	■ The emphasis is on ascertaining goals held in common with the other party ■ Strategy is based on openness, sharing of information and high level of trust in the perceived partner ■ The desired outcomes of the negotiation are made known so that there are no hidden agendas and issues are clearly understood. Each party is concerned for and has empathy with the other ■ Strategies are predictable. Whilst flexible, such strategies are aimed at reaching an agreement acceptable to the other party ■ Parties refrain from threats and so on, which are seen as counterproductive to the rational solution of perceived problems ■ The need for flexibility in the positions taken is assumed. The emphasis is on the use of imaginative, creative, logical ideas and approaches to a constructive resolution of differences ■ The approach is essentially friendly and non-aggressive, 'We are in this together'. This involves downplaying hostility and giving credit to constructive contributions made by either party to the negotiations ■ The healthy extreme of the partnership approach is reached when it is assumed that whatever is good for the other party to the negotiation is necessarily good for both ■ The key attitude is, 'How can the respective goals of each party be achieved so that both win?' ■ If an impasse occurs, this is regarded as a further problem to be solved, possibly by the intervention of higher management or an internal or external mediator or arbitrator

14.2 The content of negotiation

In any negotiation, two types of goals should receive consideration. These may be referred to as *substance goals* and *relationship goals*.

14.2.1 Substance goals

Substance goals are concerned with the content issues of the negotiation. The possible content issues are legion and depend on the requirements relating to a situation. Most negotiations will be about high-value/usage items – that is, the 15–20 per cent of items that constitutes the major portion of inventory investment. Negotiation also applies to non-standard items, although a large user will seek, if possible, to negotiate preferential terms for standard supplies. Most negotiation topics affect price (and cost), either directly or indirectly. There are numerous ways in which content issues can be grouped, including overseas buying and buying for construction projects. Groupings may also

relate to products such as IT or commodities. Three typical groupings – shown in Figures 14.1,14.2 and 14.3 respectively – relate to price, contractual and delivery issues in negotiation. The issues listed are in no way exhaustive and the lists often overlap.

Figure 14.1 The price content of negotiation – some issues

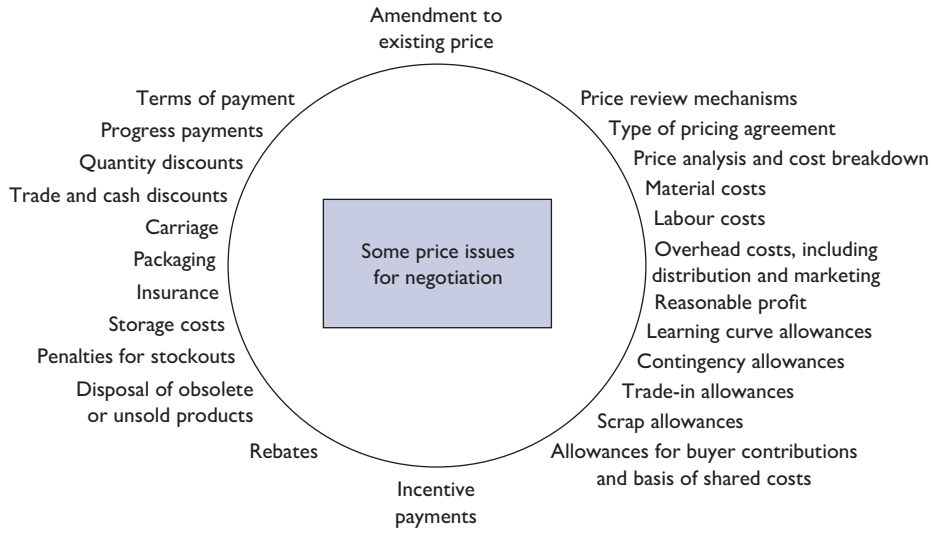


Figure 14.2 The contractual content of negotiation – some issues

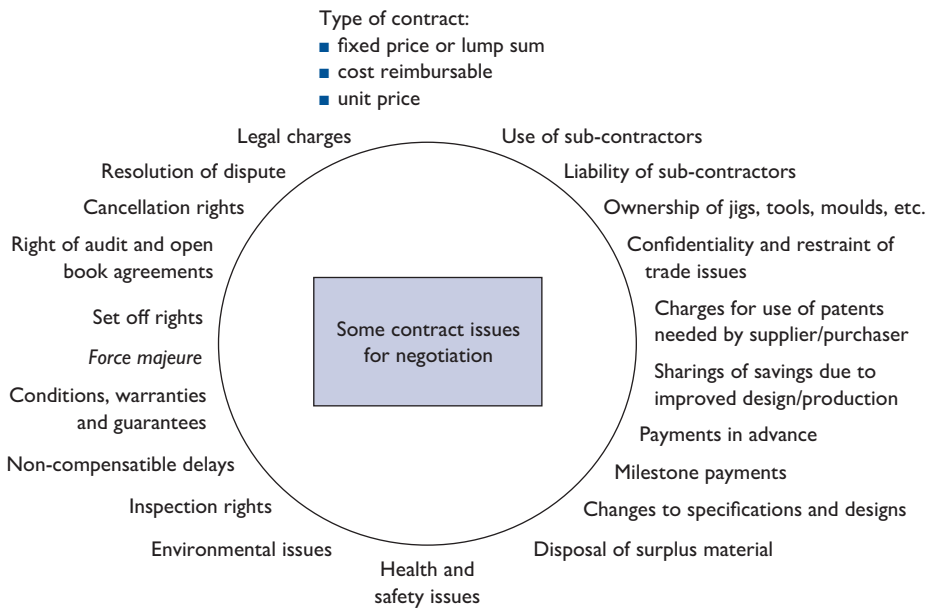
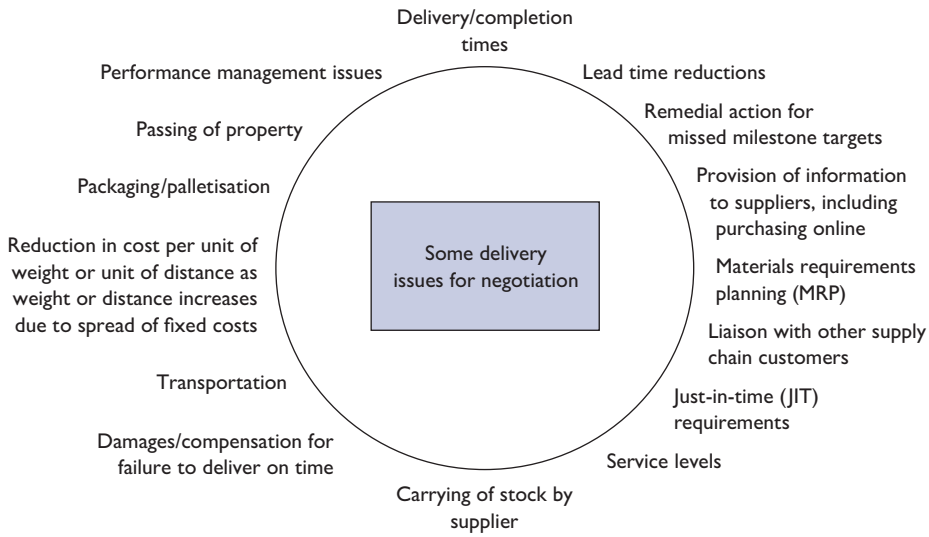


Figure 14.3 The delivery content of negotiation – some issues



14.2.2 Relationship goals

Relationship goals are concerned with outcomes relating to how well those involved in the negotiations are able to work together once the process is completed and how well their respective organisations or 'constituencies' may work together. Some areas for relationship goals include:

- partnering sourcing
- preferred supplier status
- supplier involvement in design, development and value analysis
- sharing of technology.

14.2.3 Legal implications of negotiations

Some negotiations focus on a single issue, while others are complex with multi-issue discussions taking place. It is quite usual for legal specialists to become engaged in complex negotiations, and buyers need to be aware of the legal implications of actions taken during and subsequent to negotiations.

If we assume that an offer has been made by the supplier, either through a quotation or tender, then any attempt to negotiate will amount, in law, to a counter-offer. This puts the seller into a position by which the counter-offer can be accepted in full, or it can be rejected, or the seller may make a counter-offer. This is simply following the legal rules of formation of a contract through the rules of offer and acceptance.

The buyer must also be aware that the moment the seller's offer is challenged and any term(s) rejected this gives the seller the right to withdraw their bid. That is unlikely to happen except in extreme circumstances, but it could!

The Misrepresentation Act 1967 is relevant to negotiations. This states that where a person has entered into a contract after a misrepresentation has been made to him, and – (a) the misrepresentation has become a term of the contract; or (b) the contract has been performed; or both, then, if otherwise he would be entitled to rescind the contract without alleging fraud, he shall be so entitled, subject to the provisions of this Act, notwithstanding the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of Section 2 of the Act.

The inclusion of this reference is to emphasise the need to make contemporaneous notes of negotiations for future reference. Key words and phrases used in the negotiations should be noted and kept as part of the audit trail.

14.3 Factors in negotiation

Three important factors in negotiation are the negotiators, the negotiating situation and time.

14.3.1 The negotiators

In negotiations, buyers and sales people are individuals usually acting as representatives of their respective organisations. Their behaviour in negotiations will be influenced partly by their personalities and partly by their roles as representatives, influenced by their organisational culture.

Personality

This may be defined as:[6]

> The relatively enduring and stable patterns of behaving, thinking and feeling which characterise an individual.

It should be recognised, however, that there is no universal agreement about the meaning of personality because behavioural scientists define the term from different perspectives. In the present context, it can be loosely considered to mean 'how people affect others and how they understand and view themselves'. How people affect others depends primarily on:

- their external appearance – height, facial features, colour and physical aspects
- their behaviour – vulgar, aggressive, friendly, courteous and so on.

Studies have shown that personality variables such as authoritarianism, anxiety, dogmatism, risk avoidance, self-esteem and suspiciousness affect the degree of cooperation or competitiveness present in a negotiating situation. The implementation of negotiating strategies may be affected by personality factors and, equally, the mix of personality characteristics of the participants may determine the outcome of negotiations.

Transactional analysis, developed by Eric Berne in the 1950s, has considerable relevance to the understanding of negotiating behaviour. A 'transaction' is the unit of social interaction: 'If two or more people encounter each other . . . sooner or later one of them will speak, or give some other indication of acknowledging the presence of others'. This is called the *transactional stimulus*. Another person will then say or do something that is in some way related to the stimulus and that is called the *transactional response*.

Transactions tend to proceed in chains, so that each response is in turn a stimulus. Transactional analysis is based on the concept that people respond to each other in terms of three ego states – namely Parent, Adult and Child – or frames of mind, which lead to certain types of behaviour. It is impractical to fully describe transactional analysis in this book. Readers should refer to Eric Berne's book *Games People Play*[7] or the later account by T. Harris, *I'm OK – You're OK*.[8]

Negotiators as representatives

In negotiations, it is important for participants to know the extent of their authority to commit the organisations that they are representing as such authority prescribes their options and responsibility for the outcome of the negotiations.

The degree of authority may range from that of an emissary, commissioned to present, without variation, a position determined by his or her superiors to that of a free agent. The buyer must establish at the outset of negotiations that the person(s) who represent(s) the seller have the authority to commit their organisation on technical, legal, financial and commercial issues. This authority is not necessarily related to job titles. It could be that a person with the title of Key Account Executive has no authority to negotiate all or any aspects of a deal. If it is established that the person has no authority the negotiation should not continue, otherwise the buyer will reveal his position, leaving nothing available in tactical terms, when, and if, the negotiations continue. There must be no embarrassment in asking if the negotiators have the appropriate authority.

There is evidence that the fewer constraints imposed on a negotiator, the greater will be the scope for his or her personal characteristics such as knowledge, experience and personality to influence the negotiation process. Five sets of conditions prevent negotiators from responding spontaneously to their opposite number when:

- they have little latitude in determining either their positions or posture
- they are held responsible for their performance
- a negotiator has sole responsibility for the outcome of negotiations
- negotiators are responsible to a constituency that is present in the negotiations
- they are appointed rather than elected.

In the above situations, the behaviour of negotiators will be constrained by their obligations. The more complicated and open-ended the negotiations, the greater should be the status of the negotiators.

14.3.2 The negotiating situation

This relates to the strengths and weakness of the participants in the negotiation. The factors identified by Porter as affecting the relative strengths of supplier and buyer groups are outlined in Chapter 2 (see Figure 2.6). There are a number of factors that will impact upon the buyer's ability to negotiate, including:

- knowledge of the supply market and available competition
- technical and other data of the product or service being purchased
- intelligence on supplier's finances, organisation, production capability, etc.
- professional knowledge of buying and interface subjects
- perceived status of buying power

- use of appropriate negotiation skills, including comprehensive planning
- courage of convictions and persistence with demands
- ability to deal with long-term issues and to see the 'big picture'
- ability to handle time constraints imposed by others
- knowledge of past negotiations with seller, their behavioural pattern and concession pattern
- confidence in own ability to negotiate and to create an effective team.

In any negotiating situation, it is important to consider how to manage the process and influence the outcome. Having done so, there must be a concentration on the limited number of methods that can be used to influence others. There is a restricted choice (see Ashcroft, S. G., 'Commercial negotiation skills')[9] although more than one is likely to arise in a specific negotiation. The ability is recognising which one, and why it is being deployed.

Adversarial – power and coercion

This is potentially the most dangerous form of negotiation and is likely to be destructive. Power is never one sided and therefore the person using power invites a like response. Unquestionably, there may be short-term gains for one party but in the longer term it will not foster positive relationships between buyer and seller. Each side may have the upper hand when power is available to them but when market forces change, e.g. when demand exceeds supply, the buyer who has used power may find supplies impossible to obtain. The large buyer who uses power to drive prices down to uneconomic levels may find the seller withdrawing from the market. The unsophisticated use of power can often be attributed to buyers with outsize egos who lack the finesse to act differently.

Attitude change involving emotion

Negotiations based purely on emotion require little investigative effort. The success of this approach is largely dependent upon the gullibility, inexperience and weakness of the seller. The experienced negotiator can readily counter such an approach on the basis of hard facts. The unprepared buyer will not be in a position to refute the detailed counter attack. Requests based on emotion are easily spotted because they will often be prefixed by anguished pleas such as 'surely you can . . .' and 'we will all be in trouble if you can't . . .' and 'my boss will make me redundant if you don't agree . . .'. There are occasions when emotion may have a place in the negotiation, but it is not the ideal approach.

There are a number of negotiators who adopt a two-person approach, the hard and soft negotiators to play on emotions. This is potentially a foolish tactic which can be spotted from afar by an experienced negotiator. When faced with this tactic the other party's confidence will be boosted on the basis that if this is the quality of the case it lacks substance. The negotiator who has a sound case should not need to resort to such shallow tactics.

Search for middle ground compromise

It is necessary, in all negotiations, to set targets for outcomes. Such targets may be derived from knowledge, pure emotion or brinkmanship. Once a target has been made known in a negotiation it must be persevered with until the judgment is that it cannot

be achieved. At that point, the next demand must be tested at a level close to the original, otherwise the first lacks credibility. The buyer who persistently asks for 10 per cent off the price and will settle at 5 per cent is an amateur negotiator. If the negotiator offers in one move to 'split the difference' this should be viewed as a weakness and/or lack of planning.

The negotiator who hears expressions such as 'let's split the difference . . .' or 'meet me half way . . .' should be mindful of what is happening and should refuse such movements in the original position. Concessions may have to be made but it is their scale and timing which require careful thought in the heat of a negotiation.

Trading mutually advantageous concessions

The ability to trade concessions is the hallmark of a professional negotiator. The sales representative is trained to 'trade concessions, never give them away'. The buyer must carefully prepare what can be traded and must put a value on those factors. That value must be the value to the other party, not the cost to the buyer. The value to the other party may have an enhanced value. The buyer must get accustomed to making proposals for action in which demands are put on the table. The seller may offer one concession, say a slight reduction in price, providing the buyer agrees to enhanced payment terms and takes a greater quantity. At all times when concessions are being made or accepted a value must be placed upon them.

Logical persuasion

This tactic requires sophisticated purchase research because it depends entirely on detailed, factual knowledge. The buyer who seeks concessions on quotations and tenders through the use of logical persuasion will typically have available:

- comprehensive market knowledge
- a wide range of quotations/tenders
- economic analysis
- product knowledge
- raw material sources and prices
- product or service cost analysis
- supplier financial data
- supplier activity/capacity data.

A skilled negotiator with this extent of knowledge is a formidable opponent. Whatever is said by the other party, the facts opposing that view can be assembled and put forward in a non-emotive manner and a response sought. The remorseless tabling of demands, supported by accurate knowledge will have a positive, conditioning effect. It will also engender confidence and make the other party realise that the particular negotiation can be conducted in a spirit of factual exchange of information. This is the basis for sensible negotiations, leading to contractual agreements which have a high chance of being honoured.

Genuine business objectives

This method of negotiation demands integrity on both sides and accurate exchange of confidential information. It has as its base, a genuine desire to form long-term trading

relationships. It is not the usual type of negotiation which ensues between buyer and seller where each party is 'keeping something up their sleeves'. This is usually evidenced at a late stage in negotiation when one party says, 'let's put all our cards on the table'. The obvious implication being that up to that point something was being withheld, hardly inspiring trust.

If this style of negotiation is to be pursued it does require an opening statement from the buyer which is quickly supported by action which demonstrates goodwill. When this is reciprocated by the seller the negotiations should then continue with a positive psychology. It is important, however, not to put all your 'cards on the table' until the seller has demonstrated their reciprocal goodwill. The creation of trust is a challenge.

14.3.3 The impact of time on negotiations

Time is a vital consideration when planning negotiations. Procurement specialists must ensure there is an appropriate context to:

- Convince all those engaged in a procurement process that sufficient time must be provided to facilitate (if necessary) complex and prolonged negotiations.
- Prevent the other party engaging in procrastination and delaying tactics to put the buyer against a deadline and thereby preventing negotiation on difficult issues.
- Ensure that when negotiating overseas the buyer allows sufficient time to make return travel arrangements only when the objectives have been achieved.
- Ensure that the planned agenda is timed by topic, allowing sufficient time for active debate, review of positions and, for example, reworking cost models or redrafting contract clauses.
- Allow for respective decision making at executive level. It is not unusual for the outcome of negotiation to have to be approved at a senior level. In the public sector this could add at least a month to the procurement process.
- Prepare for the intervention of specialist advisers in a negotiation process, particularly lawyers, who are not noted for timely and speedy responses.

14.3.4 Influential factors

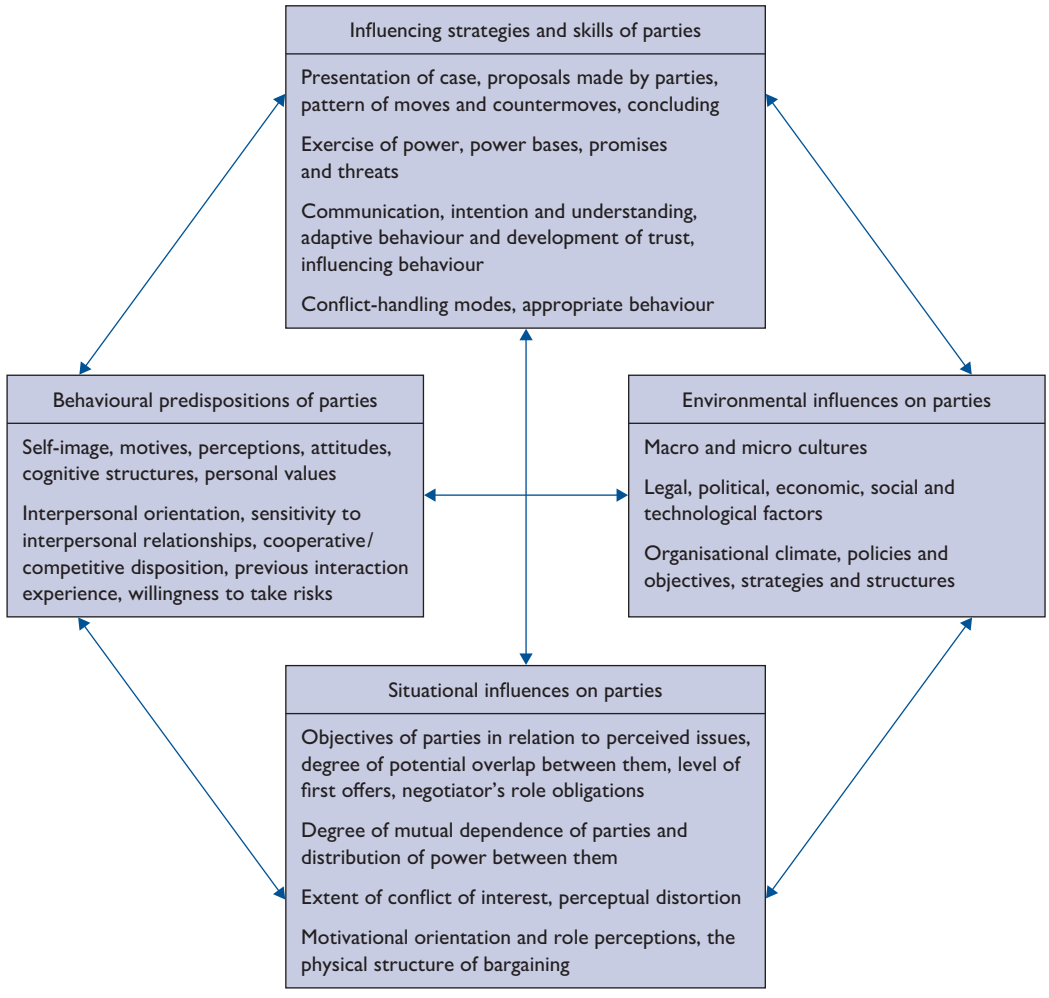
McCall and Worrington[10] have modelled the relationship between the behavioural predispositions of the negotiators and other factors influencing negotiation outcomes. This model is shown in Figure 14.4.

14.4 The negotiation process

Some negotiations concern a single issue and are relatively straightforward. A simple example is that of a product priced at, say, £9.70 each, when the buyer's objective is to purchase it at a price of, say, £8.30. All other aspects of the transaction may be agreed and it is the buyer's task to negotiate the lower price.

As shown by Figures 14.1,14.2 and 14.3, other negotiations can be far more complicated and give rise to a multiplicity of issues relating to price, cost, contracts and delivery. Whether simple or complicated, however, the negotiation process will involve three phases: pre-negotiation, the actual negotiation and post negotiation.

Figure 14.4 Factors influencing negotiations and their outcomes



14.5 Pre-negotiation

'Cases are won in chambers' is the guiding principle in pre-negotiation – that is, legal victories are often the outcome of the preceding research and planning of strategy on the part of counsel. Buyers can learn much by studying the strategies and tactics of legal, diplomatic and industrial relations and applying them to the procurement field. The skilled negotiator will pay equal attention to all phases of negotiation which impact on the outcome. The early stages of negotiation, will, of course, be very important. The matters to be considered at the pre-negotiation stage include:

- who is to negotiate
- the venue

- intelligence gathering
- negotiation objectives
- strategy and tactics
- rehearsal.

14.5.1 Negotiating agenda

It is inconceivable that serious negotiations could be conducted without an agenda. The agenda serves many purposes, it:

- instills discipline into the planning process
- establishes the content of the specific negotiation meeting
- establishes the order in which points will be raised
- assists in control of the meeting
- demonstrates a professional approach
- conditions the attitude and response of the other party
- demands attention to time management
- assists in the clarity of roles when in a team negotiation.

Agendas can be overt and circulated in advance. They can also be covert and used as an aide-mémoire. In the latter situation it has the advantage of not displaying the potential scope of the negotiation. Each party will have their different perceptions, intended structures and objectives for a negotiation. The process must seek to accommodate both; otherwise it runs the risk of being unproductive.

When planning the agenda, the following checklist is relevant:

- Identify the range of subjects to be dealt with.
- Consider the sequence in which subjects will be raised.
- Predict the other party's likely subjects.
- Decide the starting and finishing time (the latter may not be disclosed).
- Predict the possible time each subject will take.
- Plan for breakout sessions.
- Decide who will chair the negotiation (lead negotiator role).
- Decide the specific roles of team members.
- If flexibility is required, how will this be accommodated?
- Do not forget the need to make notes and summarise agreements.
- Permit time at the end for other subjects to be raised.
- Agree the next actions and who is accountable for them.

14.5.2 Who is to negotiate?

Negotiations can be between individual representatives or teams representing the buying and selling organisations respectively.

The *individual* approach

When negotiations are to be between two individuals, both should normally have sufficient status to settle unconditionally without having to refer back to a higher authority other than in exceptional circumstances. The other party's authority must be established. If it emerges that they have no negotiation authority the meeting should be terminated, unless key information can be obtained which will later help the buyer.

The majority of rebuy and modified rebuy negotiations are conducted on an interpersonal basis. The challenge for the individual undertaking negotiation is the ability to ask a question, note or document the response and prepare to ask the next question. This is a demanding task.

The *team* approach

For complex negotiations, where, for example, technical, legal, financial and other issues are involved or for new buy or capital purchases, a team approach is preferred. An individual buyer is rarely capable to act as sole negotiator in such situations.

In team negotiations it is important to:

- *allocate roles* – typical 'players' include:
  - the *spokesperson*, who actually presents the case and acts as captain of the team in terms of deciding how to respond to the situations arising in the course of the negotiation
  - the *recorder*, who takes notes of the negotiation
  - the *experts*, such as management accountants, engineers or other technical design or production staff, legal advisers, who provide back-up for the spokesperson – it is not essential for every member of the team to speak during negotiations in order to make a useful contribution to the negotiation
- *avoid disagreement* – there should be no outward disagreement between team members while negotiations are in progress, so any differences should be resolved in private sessions, but the desirability of devising a code of signals, enabling team members to communicate imperceptibly during negotiations, should be considered to avoid having to wait to make a decision.

There are drawbacks to team negotiation. These include:

- *the tendency for groupthink;* that is, for team members to hold illusions of group invulnerability, stereotyped perceptions of perceived opponents and unquestioning belief in group morality
- *the emphasis on win–win* (Cox[11]) is, unless modified by the spokesperson, greater in team negotiations as team members may wish to demonstrate their 'toughness', inflexibility and ability to demolish rather than consider the merits of proposals made by the other side, so the importance of the role of spokesperson on each side in setting the 'tone' of the negotiations cannot be overemphasised.

14.5.3 The venue

Buyers, traditionally expect the seller to attend the buyer's premises. Both parties are comfortable with this arrangement and that may be advantageous. Two other potential locations of the negotiation are the seller's site or a neutral third-party location such as

a conference centre. The buyer may learn more about the seller and his operation by visiting his site. It is a tactic worth considering, mindful of time constraints. A neutral location may be appropriate for longer, complex negotiations particularly where the ethos of partnering is being explored – neither party would be on 'home turf'.

14.5.4 Gathering intelligence

This normally involves:

- ascertaining the strengths and weaknesses of the respective negotiating positions
- assembling relevant data relating to costs, production, sales and so on
- preparing data that is to be presented at the negotiation in the form of graphs, charts, tables and so on, so that it can be quickly assimilated.

Three important negotiation tools are:

1. price and cost analysis (see section 11.6)
2. situational analysis (see section 14.9)
3. value analysis (see section 8.11.3).

14.5.5 Determining objectives

The buyer's objectives must have been determined for the negotiation. They should also empathise with the likely objectives of other parties to the negotiation. Peña-Mora and Tamaki,[12] in a study of collaborative negotiations for large-scale infrastructure projects, draw attention to the different interests of owners/users, designers/engineers and contractors/suppliers. These differing interests are shown in Figure 14.5.

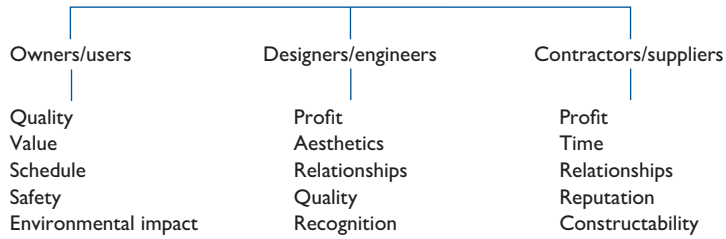
Players in a negotiation process will have both cooperative and competitive characteristics. Sensitivity to the goals of other players by all participants will set the tone of negotiations and contribute to planned outcomes, including win-win. A model of bargaining applicable to negotiations relating to procurement issues is shown in Figure 14.6. Thus assuming that the negotiation relates to a pricing issue:

- axis A–B represents the range of positions that the negotiators could take
- IS_B represents the buyer's ideal settlement – the most favourable price that can, realistically, be achieved in negotiation – that is, £5
- IS_V represents the vendor's ideal settlement, which is £13.

(*Note*: In most cases, IS will represent the starting position of each of the negotiators, subject, of course, to the fact that, if there is to be negotiation, the initial demands must not be too far apart to preclude bargaining.)

- RS_B is the buyer's realistic settlement – here, about £8 – or that point of settlement fully justified by bargaining power that would be reached with reasonable skill in negotiation and no adverse, unforeseen circumstances
- RS_V is the vendor's realistic settlement – around £10
- FBP_B is the buyer's fall-back position – around £10 – or the price beyond which they will not go; after this point, they break off negotiations or seek alternative means of meeting their requirements

Figure 14.5 Varying interests of participants in negotiations relating to design and construction projects

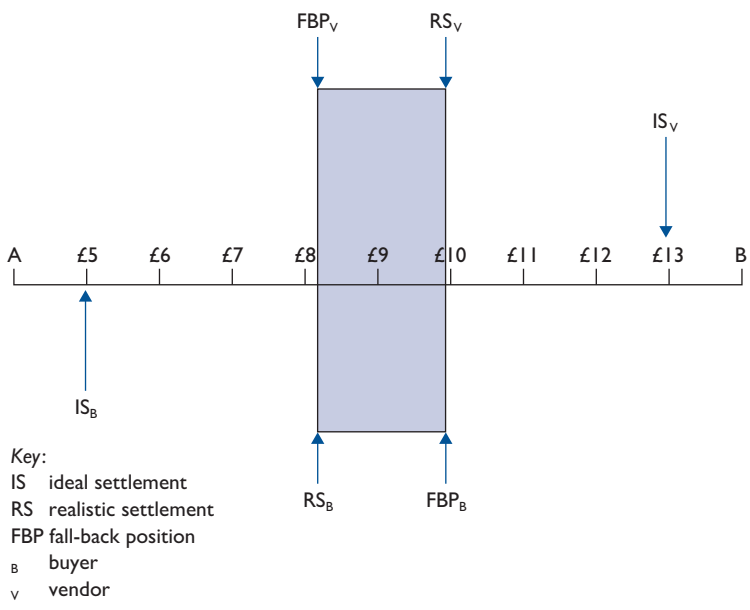


Source: Adapted from Peña-Mora and Tamaki

- FBP_V is the vendor's fall-back position – around £8
- the shaded portion represents the area of settlement and this model is based on the convention that each side will normally be prepared to move from their original positions, so the negotiated price will typically be between £8 and £10, depending on the skills of the negotiators and assuming that the bargaining positions are approximately equal.

Before commencing negotiations, the buyer should have a clear mandate from his or her superiors to settle at any point not exceeding an agreed fall-back position. It is important to stress the importance of determining in advance what a *good* agreement is.

Figure 14.6 A model of bargaining in a purchasing context



Too often, negotiators consider that their goal is to arrive at *an* agreement or even *any* agreement. They should therefore determine what is their own and what is likely to be the other side's BATNA. A BATNA is the 'best alternative to a negotiated agreement' – a concept introduced by Fisher and Ury.[13]

While BATNAs and fall-back or reserve positions are similar in many respects, they are not the same. For example, if you are trying to outsource your catering function, the BATNA may be to continue to provide this facility in-house.

14.5.6 Strategy and tactics

Strategy is the overall plan that aims to achieve, as nearly as possible, the objectives of the negotiation as seen from the perspective of each participant. A *tactic* is a position, manoeuvre or attitude to be taken or adopted at an appropriate point in the negotiation process. Among the tactics to be decided are the following:

- The order in which the issues to be negotiated shall be dealt with.
- Whether to speak first or allow the other side to open the negotiations. Galinsky[14] states that 'substantial psychological research suggests that, more often than not, negotiators who make first offers come out ahead' and suggests that 'making a first offer is related to one's confidence and sense of control at the bargaining table'. The same writer, however, suggests that making the first offer may not be advantageous when the other side has much more information about the item to be negotiated or the relevant market or industry than they do. This situation can be remedied by information gathering prior to the negotiation so that a more level playing field is achieved.
- Whether to build in recesses for discussion. Recesses may cause a negotiation to lose its momentum. Conversely, recesses provide opportunities for reflection on the negotiation so far, for devising new or alternative proposals and sometimes for 'cooling down' and face-saving.
- What concessions to make should the need arise? Some writers suggest that negotiators should only make concessions in return for trade-offs – that is, they should seek to get something in return for everything they concede.
- The timing of concessions.
- What issues can be linked, such as price and quality.
- What the other party's likely reaction will be to each tactic you're thinking of using.
- What tactics the opponent is likely to adopt and how these can be countered.

14.5.7 Rehearsal

Before an important negotiation, it is advisable to subject all arguments, tactics and overall strategies to critical scrutiny. The negotiator will have prepared and indeed may have rehearsed the 'opening speech' which will be made when the negotiation opens. This is a crucial conditioning statement and should include clarity of the benefits of the contract on offer, the fact that the seller must deal with each point as requested and a summary of the contract and its intended operation. The negotiator must prepare and create an environment within which the negotiation will take place. It is possible to create a hostile or relaxed atmosphere, and either party may influence this by actions and words.

14.6 The actual negotiation

14.6.1 Stages

Even with a philosophy of collaborative negotiation, the activities of the participants will change at each stage of the negotiation process. These activities alternate between competition and cooperation. It is useful for a negotiator to recognise this pattern of interaction and the stage that has been reached in a particular negotiation. At this time the following points will be relevant:

- Recap, from time to time, on points that have been agreed and make an appropriate record.
- If there has been a time lapse between negotiations, the negotiator must make a resume of action points outstanding from the last meeting. If information has not been generated by the other side as agreed, it must be sought, ideally prior to the meeting.
- The negotiator must ensure that there has been no major change in the other party's circumstances since the last meeting. This will require some due diligence and research.
- If the other party tables new information, or retracts previously agreed points, a recess must be called to evaluate the new position but only when the detail is understood.
- If any costs or prices change the buyer must check the new calculations. The seller's interpretation must not be accepted without checking and confirming.
- Take the initiative by making proposals for the other side to consider. If the seller takes the initiative be mindful that it has happened and make counter demands.
- Whenever the buyer makes a concession its value to the other party must be calculated. It should be noted that the value to the other party is not necessarily the cost to the buyer.
- Try to link previously unconnected points. If the seller seeks a contractual concession, the buyer should look for the corresponding price change.
- Know your walk-away point, where you are prepared for the negotiations to cease. This cannot be a bluff!
- If the negotiation is failing with the seller's negotiators, it may be necessary to request a change in personnel to make progress. This can be done by escalating the negotiations to a higher level in the sellers' business.
- Control your emotions at all times. If a negotiation becomes personal there is a danger that there will be a lack of focus.
- Try to recognise when the seller is bluffing and entering into brinkmanship.
- Acknowledge positively concessions made and allow a loss of face. This behaviour may motivate more concessions.
- Be mindful of unwittingly creating contractual agreement.

The stages that occur during negotiation are indicated in Figure 14.7.

14.6.2 Techniques

Specialist books of negotiation usually list a number of techniques available to negotiators. It is not possible to detail these in this book, although a more detailed description

Figure 14.7 The stages in the negotiating process

Introductions, agreement of an agenda and rules of procedure

Ascertaining the 'negotiating range'
This means the issues that the negotiation will attempt to resolve
With *adversarial* negotiations, this may be a lengthy stage as the participants often overstate their opening positions
With *collaborative* negotiations, 'openness saves time'

Agreement of common goals that must be achieved if the negotiation is to reach a successful outcome
This will usually require some movement on both sides from the original negotiating range, but the movement will be less or unnecessary in partnership negotiations

Identification of and, when possible, removal of barriers that prevent attainment of agreed common goals
At this stage there will be:
- problem solving
- consideration of solutions put forward by each
- determination of what concessions can be made

It may also be useful to:
- review what has been agreed
- allow a recess for each side to reconsider its position and make proposals or concessions that may enable further progress to be made

If no progress can be made, it may be decided to:
- refer the issues back to higher management
- change the negotiators
- abandon the negotiations with the least possible damage to relationships

Agreement and closure
Drafting of a statement setting out as clearly as possible the agreement(s) reached and circulating it to all parties for comment and signature

of Fisher and Ury's approach is given in section 14.10. Some general findings include the following:

- In framing an agenda, ensure that the more difficult issues appear later, thus enabling some agreement to be reached early in the negotiation on less controversial matters, smoothing the way to agreement on less straightforward points.
- Questions are a means of both eliciting information and keeping pressure on an opponent and can also be used to control the pattern and progress of the negotiation.
- Concessions are a means of securing movement when negotiations are deadlocked. Research findings show that 'losers' tend to make the first concession and that each concession tends to raise the aspirational level of the opponent, so buyers should avoid a 'pattern of concession' in which they are forced to concede more and more. The convention is that concessions should be reciprocated. While flexibility is essential, there is no compulsion to make a counter-concession and the aim should

be to concede less than has been obtained. The outcome tends to be more favourable when the concessions made are small rather than large. An experienced negotiator will often 'throw a sprat to catch a mackerel'.

- Negotiation is between people, so it is essential to be able to weigh up the personalities of one's opponents and the drivers that motivate them, such as achievement, fear and similar factors.

14.6.3 Deadlocked negotiations

Negotiations sometimes come to an impasse when both sides see no prospect of further movement or concessions. Techniques for resolving such deadlock include those suggested by Fisher and Ury's concept of principled negotiation (see section 14.10).

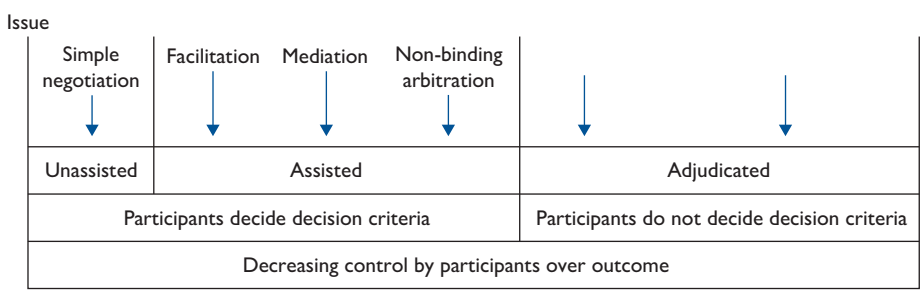
Other approaches to such situations include:

- taking a break for each party to refocus
- lightening the atmosphere by the use of humour
- breaking down an issue into sub-issues
- agreeing to 'agree in principle' – if the parties agree in principle, they also agree on objectives
- considering the consequences of non-agreement for the parties concerned
- obtaining third-party assistance as they can listen objectively to arguments, clarify issues and, where required, adjudicate.

The degree of third-party involvement can vary. Susskind and Cruikshank[15] provide a useful model of this, expressing their involvement as lying along a continuum and depending on whether the final decision is made by the parties to the negotiation or an adjudicator. This model is shown in Figure 14.8.

Not every situation can be negotiated. For example, the decision of a contractor to refuse to work in situations that might put them in breach of Health and Safety Regulations or expose their employees to physical danger, such as from violent protests or terrorists, has to be accepted.

Figure 14.8 The dispute resolution continuum



Source: Adapted from Susskind and Cruikshank

14.6.4 Negotiating behaviour

All negotiations involve interpersonal skills. The negotiating styles that are applicable vary according to the specific situation. Training in negotiation should, therefore, include training in behaviour analysis, which should lead to an understanding of the responses likely to be evoked by particular behaviour. For example, shouting usually causes the other person to shout back, while humour may diffuse a tense situation.

Lee and Lawrence[16] have identified seven categories of behaviour, all of which may be encountered in negotiations (see Table 14.2).

14.6.5 Effects of behaviour on other parties

The main fact that the negotiator can learn from the generalisations given in Table 14.2 is that our outward behaviour must be arranged to have the desired effect on those with whom we are negotiating. The desired effect depends on the negotiator's goals. Thus, development behaviour is more likely than emotional disagreement to persuade the other party to accept our viewpoint. Providing and giving information is indispensable

Table 14.2 Types of behaviour and likely responses to them

Types of behaviour	*Likely response*
Proposing behaviour Such as suggesting actions: 'Shall we look at sub-contracting?'	Usually elicits either development behaviour in the form of support or reasoned negative behaviour in the form of difficulty solving
Development behaviour Such as building on or supporting proposals made by others: 'Having decided to sub-contract, who shall we approach?'	Usually leads to further development behaviour or, perhaps, a question in return, asking for further explanation
Reasoned negative behaviour Such as disagreeing with others in a reasoned way, stating difficulties with their ideas: 'Price is likely to be a difficulty because their material costs don't attract our quantity discounts'	Tends to evoke similar negative behaviour in response, leading to a downward spiral in terms of communications and emotions. This spiral can be avoided by stating difficulties and identifying differences as reasonably as possible, perhaps by asking further questions
Emotional negative behaviour Such as attacking others, being critical, defending against attacks in the same way: 'Rubbish'	In general, attack begets either attack or defence. It can make resumption of constructive negotiation difficult
Clarifying behaviour Such as checking whether or not people understand, summarising previous discussion: 'As I see it, this is what we agreed'	Tends to lead to supportive development behaviour, although there can be disagreement
Seeking information behaviour Such as seeking facts, opinions, ideas: 'How much discount if we doubled the quantity?' 'What if . . .'	This almost always results in information being given. The certainty of response makes this a powerful shaping behaviour
Giving information behaviour Such as giving facts, opinions, ideas: 'We need to reach a decision today'	This is usually a response to other behaviour, especially seeking information. It is uncertain in its effect, as it depends largely on the content of the statement

to influencing a group. Sometimes it is better to begin a negotiation by asking questions than giving information about the subject matter.

14.6.6 Ploys

A *ploy* is a manoeuvre in a negotiation aimed at achieving a particular result. This is a complex aspect of negotiation, requiring specific application to meet the needs of a particular negotiation. This section deals with some common issues.

1 Priority of demands

Having decided the range of demands there is a key decision to be made regarding which one shall be made first. It could be argued that demanding a rather simple concession which does not carry great financial burden will persuade the seller to make that concession, whereas if a large concession is sought first this will motivate resistance and, possible, intransigence. If there are absolute 'must haves' these should be raised first because if these cannot be agreed everything else is a relative waste of time.

2 Managing timescales

There will inevitably be situations where timescales are tight. The buyer must make a decision about the negotiation sequencing. In some circumstances it would be better to insist that once the negotiations have commenced they will continue until agreement is reached. If this is not the case then there will be a number of 'breaks' which can work against the buyer's interests by having the ending of 'quotation validity' as a closing pressure. In many negotiations it is better to finish negotiations in one go, even if this means spreading them over more than one day.

3 Use of jargon

Every profession has its jargon and sellers will use it to test the buyer's knowledge. It can also be used to undermine confidence. It is therefore a quite deliberate tactic. If jargon is used and the term is not known, clarification must be sought, although the more times this is done by the buyer the more credibility will be lost.

4 Use of figures

The seller's tactics may include a quite deliberate use of numbers to confuse the buyer. Whenever the numbers change the buyer must recalculate and work out their full impact on the contract value.

5 Handling objections

The seller will have prepared standard responses to buyer demands. These will come in the form of objections. The ideal counter from the buyer is a range of tactics which use logical persuasion as the basis for a request, where each demand can be explained in a business-like manner.

6 Use of silence

This will cause problems to the inexperienced negotiator. The skilled seller will, on receiving a demand which he does not wish to accept, fail to respond. The silence can be overwhelming and embarrassing. The danger is that the buyer will break the silence

and change the subject. This relieves the seller of a responsibility to respond and weakens the buyer's case. The buyer must therefore maintain the discipline of silence.

Part of a negotiator's skill is being able to appraise people and situations quickly. Learn to discern the hidden meanings in the other person's words. Evaluate statements against what you know. Be patient and be aware of the 'pace' of the negotiation. Often a little stubbornness and conscious competence can yield high returns.

14.6.7 Planning points at concluding stage of negotiations

Depending upon the length of time the negotiations have been in progress, at this time the negotiator may be tired and in danger of lapses of concentration. This is a risk because it is precisely now, that concentration and evaluation facilities must be at their highest. The following points are relevant:

- Make sure that progress is related to the objectives that you set. Ensure that the buyer's resolve has not waned due to the seller's conditioning with such tactics as blocking and refusing to concede major points.
- Determine the financial implications of all actions and agreements reached.
- Summarise the total agreement and test this on the other side. If there is a disagreement of fundamental points they must be debated and resolved.
- Maintain pressure on the other party for remaining concessions that you require.
- Listen for attempts to 'close the sale' by the seller. This takes courage on their part and usually means they are confident that no more concessions are required.
- Be prepared to make additional demands if an opportunity presents itself, even if they had not been planned.
- When it is appropriate (this is a matter of judgment) make a statement of the buyer's final position.
- Explain the contract award process from that point onwards.
- Explain to the other party that all agreements and changes to quotations/tender documents must be evidenced in writing.
- Agree the basis of contract reporting and monitoring.
- File hard and electronic copy of notes of negotiations.
- Arrange for later debriefing of unsuccessful tenderers.
- Undertake a personal evaluation of opportunities lost, successes and mistakes made in the negotiation.
- List the benefits obtained and evaluate if they could apply to other buyers or sellers.

14.7 Post-negotiation actions

This involves:

- drafting a statement detailing as clearly as possible the agreements reached and circulating it to all parties for comment and signature
- selling the agreement to the constituents of both parties – that is, what has been agreed, why it is the best possible agreement and what benefits will accrue

- implementing the agreements, such as planning contracts, setting up joint implementation teams performance review and continuous improvement events
- establishing procedures for monitoring the implementation of the agreements and dealing with any problems that may arise.

14.8 What is effective negotiation?

14.8.1 Characteristics

An effective negotiation may be said to have taken place when:

- substance issues are satisfactorily resolved – that is, an agreement has been reached that is satisfactory to all parties
- working relationships are preserved or even enhanced.

Fisher and Ury[17] have identified the following three criteria for an effective negotiation:

- the negotiation has produced a *wise agreement* – one that is satisfactory for both sides
- the negotiation is *efficient* – no more time-consuming or costly than necessary
- the negotiation is *harmonious* – fosters rather than inhibits good interpersonal relationships.

14.8.2 Negotiation post-mortems

Many organisations hold post-negotiation meetings for the purpose of discussing:

- *negotiating strategies and tactics* – the extent to which they were satisfactory and how they might be improved
- *negotiating costs* – the number and duration of negotiating sessions and how these might be reduced
- *negotiating methods* – tools such as e-mail and video conferencing enable more rapid and frequent communication exchange, both of which are key components in the negotiation process
- *the whole procurement process prior to negotiation* – investing time and resources in optimising the process aspects, such as those identified at the introduction to this chapter will result in less necessity for negotiation.

14.9 Negotiation and relationships

14.9.1 Situational and institutional approaches

Ertel[18] states that only rarely do companies think about their negotiating activities as a whole:

> Rather they take a situational view, seeing each negotiation as a separate event, with its own goals, its own tactics and its own measures of success. That approach can produce good results in particular instances, but it can be counterproductive when viewed from a higher, more strategic plane. Hammering out advantageous terms in a procurement contract may torpedo an important long-term relationship with a supplier.

14.9.2 Changing from a situational to an institutional approach

Ertel, therefore, advocates treating negotiation as an institutional capability rather than a series of discrete events. He identifies four changes instituted by companies that had moved away from a situational view of negotiation to a corporate approach concerned with long-term relationships:

- *Creation of a company-wide negotiation infrastructure* – this implies that the outcome of a negotiation does not rely solely on the skill of an individual negotiator. Such negotiators can be supported by databases providing better information to negotiators, drawing lessons from past negotiations, guidance in strategy selection, examples of creative bargaining approaches and evaluation of outcomes. Such an infrastructure not only improves negotiating results but also breaks down the assumption that every negotiation is 'unique and immune to coordination and control'.
- Broadening the measures used to evaluate the performance of negotiators beyond matters of cost and price:

  > To be judged successful, negotiators have to show, for example, that they explicitly discussed several creative alternatives, used objective criteria to choose among the alternatives and that the final deal fulfils not only the company's interests but the other parties' as well.

  Such an approach forces negotiators to think more broadly and creatively about negotiations, both when strategies are initially established and as the bargaining develops.
- *Recognition of the distinction between deals and relationships* – too frequently, negotiators confuse the deal with the broader relationship. To improve a strained relationship, they may offer a price concession. To gain a price concession, they may threaten to terminate the relationship. Such approaches, however, are counterproductive in that they create an adversarial climate in which both parties withhold information to protect their bargaining positions, thereby creating enhanced suspicion, which may adversely affect both the present deal and long-term relationships. If there is a previously established climate of trust, in which the terms of a deal can be discussed without prejudice to long-term relationships, this facilitates the free exchange of information and enhanced creative and collaborative problem-solving, leading to more valuable deals and stronger trading relationships.
- *Understanding of when to walk away from a deal* – successful and unsuccessful negotiations are usually evaluated, respectively, in terms of deals completed or uncompleted. Completion of deals, however, usually involves concessions on the part of one or both parties that may be in the interests of neither. When, however, a deal is struck that is unattractive to the purchaser, seller or both, the possibility arises that less time and effort will be invested in working together and relationships will be strained. Companies should therefore encourage their negotiators to see their role not as producing *agreements* that may be mutually unsatisfactory, but, rather, as making good *choices*. Prior to meeting, the negotiators of each side should have established their respective BATNAs or the objective hurdles that any negotiated agreement has to clear. Neither should accept an agreement that is not at least as good as their BATNA. To do so is likely to have an adverse effect on relationships. Before concluding a deal, purchasers should consider whether or not a prospective supplier can possibly meet quality, delivery and other requirements, such as the

price. If not, they should reject the deal and seek other supply sources. Negotiators should be made aware of the fact that, rather than arrive at a deal on the basis of concessions that would take the agreement below their BATNA, it is better to walk away. Ertel points out that not only do executives have to send the right messages internally, they also need to be aware of how external communications may affect negotiations and quotes the following example:

> In an interview published in a widely read magazine the CEO of a large computer company stated that when he was a sales representative he never lost a customer. . . . Imagine how the statement was interpreted by the company's sales force. The CEO was in effect telling the sales representatives that they could never say no and signalling customers that they held all the leverage. The negotiators' BATNAs were instantly rendered inconsequential with one public statement.

14.10 Negotiation ethics

Negotiation ethics is an aspect of the wider subject of procurement ethics, considered in Chapter 17, and relationships, covered above. This topic is considered here because ethical perspectives largely determine whether or not a particular negotiation is adversarial or integrative.

Fisher and Ury[19] distinguish between positional and principled negotiation.

14.10.1 Positional negotiation

Positional negotiation views negotiation as an adversarial or conflict situation in which the other party is the enemy. It is based on four assumptions:

- we have the correct and only answer to a particular problem
- there is a 'fixed price'
- opposite positions equal opposite interests
- it is not our responsibility to solve the problems of the other party.

Positions and interests are closely related. Often negotiators will not move from a fixed position because of psychological pressures or needs. A leader of a negotiating team may refuse to consider alternatives for fear of losing face or being seen by team members as backing down.

Positional negotiation has at least two drawbacks:

- it is win–lose – it has only two ways to go, which are forwards to victory or backwards to defeat
- from an ethical standpoint, positional negotiation leads to such questionable tactics as:
  - misrepresentation of a position
  - bluffing (see section 17.10.3)
  - lying or deception
  - only providing selected information or being economical with the truth
  - threatening
  - manipulating.

14.10.2 Principled negotiation

Principled negotiation is fundamentally different from positional negotiation. The very term 'principled' has an ethical connotation. Fisher and Ury criticise positional negotiating on four grounds:

- *arguing about positions produces unwise agreements* – compromising, for example, involves both parties giving up something, so neither is completely satisfied with the outcome
- *arguing about positions is unwise* – time is wasted in trying to reconcile extreme positions
- *ongoing relationships are endangered* – anger and resentment result when one side sees itself as being forced to bend to the rigid will of the other
- *positional bargaining is worse when there are many partners* – it is harder to change group or constituency positions than those of individuals.

Fisher and Ury also see principled bargaining as an alternative to 'hard' or 'soft' bargaining. Soft bargainers may make concessions to cultivate or maintain relationships. Hard bargainers demand concessions as a condition of the relationship.

14.10.3 The Fisher and Ury principles

Apart from 'Don't bargain about positions', Fisher and Ury lay down four elements that parties must follow to obtain an ideal settlement:

1 Separate the people from the problem

This involves viewing the problem as the central issue to be resolved rather than regarding the other person as an adversary. Failure to do so can lead to antagonism between the parties. Fisher and Ury put forward 18 propositions under the 4 headings of perception, emotion, communication and prevention, of which the following are typical.

- Perception
  - put yourself in the other party's shoes
  - don't blame the other party for your problem
  - discuss each other's perceptions
  - look for opportunities to act inconsistently with their perceptions.
- Emotion
  - first, recognise and understand emotions – theirs and yours
  - allow the other side to let off steam
  - don't react to emotional outbursts.
- Communication
  - listen actively and acknowledge what is being said
  - speak about how you feel, not how you feel about them.
- Prevention
  - where possible, build pre-negotiation relationships that will enable parties to absorb the knocks incurred in the actual negotiation.

2 Focus on interests, not positions

Positions are symbolic representations of a participant's underlying interests. Each side has multiple needs. To find out about interests, ask 'Why?' and 'Why not?' questions.

3 Invent options for mutual gain

Again, Fisher and Ury classify their approaches under five headings – diagnosis, prescription, broadening options, searching for mutual gain and facilitating the other party's decisions.

- Diagnosis

  This includes avoiding:
  - premature judgments
  - searching for a single answer
  - assuming a 'fixed price'.
- Prescription
  - separating inventing from deciding
  - engaging in brainstorming, including brainstorming with the other party.
- Broadening options
  - look through the eyes of different experts
  - invent agreements of different strengths, such as substantive versus procedural, permanent versus provisional and so on.
- Searching for mutual gain
  - identify shared interests
  - dovetail differing interests.
- Facilitating the other party's decision
  - help the other party to sell a decision to his/her constituency
  - look for precedents
  - provide a range of options.

4 Insist on using objective criteria

This requires:

- fair standards, such as objective criteria, including market value, professional or moral standards, legal criteria, custom and practice
- fair procedures for resolving conflicting interests
- reasoning and openness to reasoning
- never yielding to pressure, only to principle.

14.10.4 Criticisms of principled negotiation

A number of criticisms have been made of principled negotiation, some of which Fisher and Ury recognise. Thus, where the other party has some negotiating advantage, they

suggest that the answer is to improve your BATNA. The only reason we negotiate is to produce something better than the results we could obtain without negotiating. BATNAs offer protection against accepting terms that are too unfavourable and rejecting terms that it would be beneficial to accept.

Where the other party will not play or uses dirty tricks, the answer is to insist on principled negotiation in a way that is most acceptable to the competitor. Thus, principled negotiators might ask about the other party's concerns to show that they understand such concerns and ask the competitor to recognise all concerns.

Where the other party refuses to respond, two techniques to try are those of 'negotiation jujitsu', in which, instead of directly resisting the force of the other party, it is channelled into exploring interests, inventing options and searching for independent standards, and using outside intervention or mediation.

McCarthy[20] offers two main criticisms of the Fisher and Ury approach. The first is that it does not provide an adequate analysis of the role of power. The concept of negotiation jujitsu, for example, does not actually turn power back on the other party, but encourages both to ignore dirty tricks and minor power plays. McCarthy holds that the balance of power between the two parties is the key element in determining the limits of a mutually acceptable settlement and concludes 'in the area of collective bargaining at least I know of no set of maxims or principles that will enable any of us to escape from the limits set by a given power situation'.

McCarthy's second point is that Fisher and Ury assume, rather than argue, that the factors that make for effective negotiation in widely differing situations from domestic quarrels to international disputes are the same. There may be situations in which positional is preferable to principled negotiation.

14.10.5 Can negotiation be ethical?

Arguments that negotiation cannot be completely ethical include:

- it is commonly believed that success in negotiation is enhanced by the successful use of deceitful tactics, such as bluffing and outright misrepresentation
- negotiators have the responsibility of obtaining the best results for those they represent
- what is ethical is affected by cultural factors, such as bribery and deception that may be acceptable in some global negotiations, that 'When in Rome, do as the Romans do'
- self-interest is the most powerful of all motivations – few negotiations can be wholly altruistic
- ethical negotiation is an idealistic concept that does not work in practice
- sharing information may put a negotiator at a disadvantage.

Cramton and Dees[21] list a number of reasons for it being possible to gain from deceptive tactics:

- information asymmetry is great – the greater the information disparity between the two parties, the greater the opportunity one has for profitable deception
- verification of such details as long-term maintenance costs and performance is difficult
- the intention to deceive is difficult to establish – it is hard to distinguish it from a mistake or an oversight

- the parties have insufficient resources to adequately safeguard against deception
- interaction between the parties is infrequent – deception is more likely in one-off relationships
- ex-post redress is too costly – the deceived party may, however, prefer to make an effort, even when the costs exceed the expected compensation
- reputable information is unavailable, unreliable or very costly to communicate
- the circumstances are unusual in a way that limits inferences about future behaviour and deceptions are unlikely to damage future negotiations because they occur in distinctly different circumstances
- one party has little to lose (or much to gain) from deception – a negotiator may not be concerned about the prospect of being caught, providing that it does not occur before the deal has been closed.

Cramton and Dees state that they cannot recommend a single strategy that will work effectively to promote honesty in all negotiations, but they make the following suggestions:

- *Assess the situation* – this involves considering the incentives for deception. What incentives are there for suppressing or misrepresenting information? What is known about the principles of the other side? What is the competence and character of the other side?
- *Build mutual trust* – in most cases, the incentive for deception in negotiation is defensive. It arises from the fear that the other party will unfairly exploit any weakness. This also involves building mutual benevolence, creating opportunities for displaying trust and demonstrating trustworthiness.
- *Place the negotiation in a long-term context*. *Caveat emptor* is reasonable advice for negotiators. Select negotiating partners wisely, verify when you can, request bonds and warranties, get important claims in writing and, where applicable, such as in IT and outsourcing negotiations, it may be advisable to hire a skilled intermediary.

Ethical negotiation can only take place in a climate of trust. Ascertaining whether or not such a climate exists requires negotiators to answer two questions – 'Can the other party trust us?' and 'Can we trust them?' Each party can answer the first question with some certainty, although they should be aware of self-deception. Not until both sides have established a working relationship can a certain answer be given to the second question. In the interim, both sides should show diligence in obtaining information to provide assurance that the other party will negotiate ethically.

Discussion questions

14.1 In a negotiation, each party knows that the other has some power to influence the outcome. What powers have:
(a) a council buying a branded IT system?
(b) an international airline buying aviation fuel?
(c) a monopoly seller and a customer in a price negotiation?

14.2 If you were asked to negotiate a contract to purchase IT software what would be your top five 'must haves' in terms of contractual obligations on the supplier?

14.3 A supplier refuses to provide a 'fixed price' for a piece of equipment. They insist on an 'ROM' (Rough Order of Magnitude) price that will be finalised when the equipment has been manufactured. How would you plan to deal with this issue in the negotiation?

14.4 Many writers confuse consultation with negotiation. What is the difference between the two concepts?

14.5 Who is the best negotiator you know? What are their distinguishing personal qualities?

14.6 How may time affect your negotiating position with regard to price, quality, negotiating style and future seller relationships?

14.7 You have been asked to negotiate with the lowest priced supplier in a tender process. Their sales director attends the meeting and immediately says, 'Do not even mention the price because we will not change it'. What are your response options?

14.8 Using 'power and coercion' is a negotiation strategy. Under what circumstances could you see it being used?

14.9 Suggest five ways in which to resolve an apparent deadlock in a negotiation.

14.10 Discuss the following statements:

(a) 'Once you consent to some concession, you can never cancel it and put things back the way they were'

(b) 'We cannot negotiate with those who say "What's mine is mine, what's yours is negotiable" ' (John F. Kennedy)

(c) 'Flattery is the infantry of negotiation' (Lord Chandos)

(d) 'Always define your terms' (Eric Partridge).

14.11 There are many 'public' negotiations where trade unions and employers put their positions or postures to the media. Why do they do this?

14.12 Name six reasons why negotiations fail when there is a significant contractual dispute. Why do many disputes end up in court?

References

[1] Aljian, G. W., *Purchasing Handbook*, 4th edn, McGraw-Hill, 1982, section 11, p. 11.5

[2] Rubin, J. Z. and Brown, B. R., *The Social Psychology of Bargaining and Negotiation*, Academic Press, 1975

[3] Gottschal, R. A. W., 'The background to the negotiating process' in Torrington, D., *Code of Personnel Management*, Gower, 1979

[4] Lysons, C. K., Modified version of definition in *Purchasing*, 3rd edn, Pitman, 1993

[5] Fisher, R. and Ury, W., *Getting to Yes*, Penguin, 1983

[6] Cooper, C. L. and Makin, P., *Psychology for Managers*, British Psychological Society in association with Macmillan, 1988, p. 58

[7] Berne, E., *Games People Play*, Penguin, 1968

[8] Harris, T. A., *I'm OK – You're OK*, Pan Macmillan, 1986

[9] Ashcroft, S. G., 'Commercial negotiation skills', *Industrial and Commercial Training Journal*, Vol. 36, No. 6, 2004, pp. 229–233

[10] McCall, J. B. and Worrington, M. B., *Marketing by Agreement: A Cross-cultural Approach to Business Negotiations*, Wiley, 1986

[11] Cox, A., *Win-Win?: The Paradox of Value and Interests in Business Relationships*, Earlsgate Press, 2004

[12] Peña-Mora, F. and Tamaki, T., 'Effect of delivery systems on collaborative negotiations for large-scale infrastructure projects', *Journal of Management in Engineering*, Vol. 17, No. 2, 2001, pp. 105–121

[13] As 5 above

[14] Galinsky, A. D., 'Should you make the first offer?', *Negotiation*, Harvard Business School, 2004

[15] Susskind, L. and Cruikshank, J., *Breaking the Impasse*, Basic Books, 1987

[16] Lee, R. and Lawrence, P., *Organisational Behaviour: Politics at Work*, Hutchinson, 1988, p. 182

[17] As 5 above

[18] Ertel, D., 'Turning negotiation into a corporate capability', *Harvard Business Review*, May–June, 1999, pp. 55–70

[19] As 5 above

[20] McCarthy, W., 'The role of power and principle in getting to yes', in Breslin, J. W. and Rubin, J. Z., *Negotiation Theory and Practice*, Cambridge University Press, 1991, pp. 115–122

[21] Cramton, P. C. and Dees, J. G., 'Promoting honesty in negotiation: an exercise in practical ethics', *Journal of Business Ethics*, March, 2002, pp. 1–28

Chapter 15

Contract management

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- scope of contract management
- components of contract management
- role, skills and knowledge requirements of a contract manager
- contract management plans
- managing specifications
- managing contract performance
- contract monitoring audit
- commencement of contract considerations
- contract provisions
- interpreting contract clauses.

Key ideas

- The importance of contract management to business success.
- The breadth of scope of contract management.
- What skills and knowledge is required.
- Effectiveness of contract management plans.
- Why specifications are vital.
- Ensuring contract performance is beyond reproach.
- Actions at contract commencement.
- Continuing contract management actions.
- Understanding the provisions of clauses.
- Dependencies of a contract manager.

Introduction

The emphasis of this chapter is the post contract award actions and decisions that should occur to ensure the contractual obligations are met by the supplier. Contract management, for many reasons to be explored in this chapter, is often an inadequate activity. There are, potentially, many reasons for this including:

- lack of investment in contract management
- a failure to ensure contract managers have appropriate skills and knowledge
- a failure to consider contract management at the pre-contract award phases
- inadequate provision of Management Information by suppliers/contracts
- inadequate contract reviews
- lack of knowledge about Key Performance Indicators
- lack of detailed knowledge of the contract
- a failure to manage contract change
- inadequate supplier relationship management
- lack of attention to risk management
- failure to inculcate a desire for continuous improvement
- lack of engagement with stakeholders
- failure to take decisive action when contract default occurs.

The scope of contract management is shown in Figure 15.1.

A careful scrutiny of the scope of contract management demonstrates that the contract manager's role is far more than administration and routine. It requires intellect, high personal values, commitment to detail, business acumen and an astute knowledge of contractual detail.

The four components of contract management[1] are shown in Figures 15.2 and 15.3.

15.1 The pre-contract award activities impact on contract management

Contract management must not be viewed as only commencing when a contract award has been made. The author has engaged in many procurements that have given careful thought to the contract management activity, taking into account:

1. *The complexity of the contract* – This is a key determinant of the skills and knowledge required from the contract manager. There may be complex specifications, complex cost models, and interfaces between contractors, a need for complex relationship management and an array of stakeholders.
2. *The contract performance regime* – There may be a demanding contract performance regime involving many KPIs together with a contractor's obligation to deliver continuous improvement. This latter requirement may be linked to incentive payments.
3. *The resources and cost of contract management* – Sufficient resources must be allocated to the contract management activity. The cost of contract management will need to be circa 10 per cent of the contract price on complex contracts. It should be

Figure 15.1 The scope of contract management



recognised that the contractor will allocate sufficient contract management resources because they will be accountable for profit that is derived from the contract.

4 *Managing future contract risks* – The tender stage must identify future risks and develop risk mitigation strategies that will constantly be reviewed by the contract manager. This must include the risks that are the responsibility of the buying organisation.

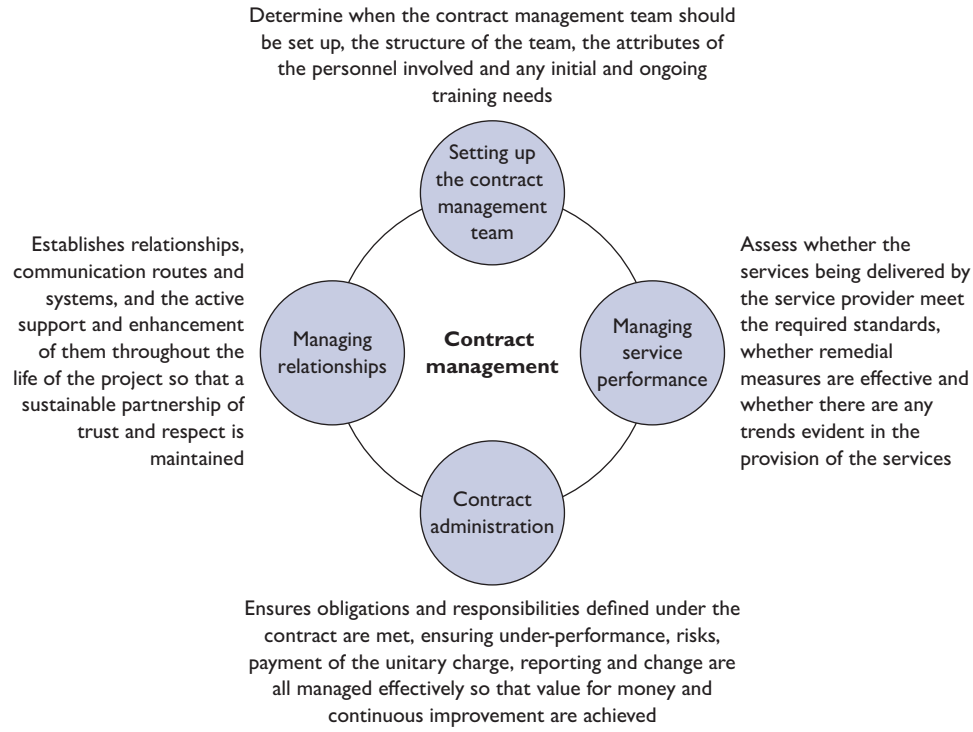
15.2 The contract manager's role, skills and knowledge

The contract manager's role, skills and knowledge were adequately set out by 4ps.[2]

The contract manager plays a key role in developing relationships with the service provider and monitoring the service provider's performance, and therefore is a critical appointment. As such, the appointment is likely to be full-time and will take account of the risk and complexity of the project. The contract manager is required to:

- have clarity of his/her role, levels of delegated authority and reporting lines
- be empowered to make decisions to enable the contract to successfully operate on a daily basis

Figure 15.2 The four components of contract management



- have the requisite seniority and experience to reflect the level of delegated authority and complexity of the project
- have the appropriate skills and experience in contract management
- have the ability to lead a team – which may be multi-disciplinary
- communicate effectively with all members of the contract management team, Partnering Board, stakeholders, users and the wider community
- put in place an appropriate contract management methodology and risk register
- put in place an appropriate performance monitoring and audit system
- oversee and ensure the service provider mobilises effectively and on programme
- keep the output specification and method statements up to date
- form a good, long-term, sustainable relationship with the service provider
- ensure that service standards are provided and maintained and have day-to-day links with the service provider
- monitor the service provider's ongoing performance and service delivery
- agree monthly payments/deductions to the service provider
- ensure Best Value is obtained
- identify key trends in the service delivery and the service provider's performance

Figure 15.3 The four components of contract management – key tasks

Setting up the contract management team	Managing relationships	Managing service performance	Contract administration
When should contract management commence?	Identification and development of good partnership working	Why should service performance be monitored and measured?	The payment mechanism
Determine the contract management team structure	Development of partnership protocols and behaviours	The fundamentals of performance measurement	Dealing with disputes
Determining and securing the resources required for contract management	Defining communication protocols, routes and systems	Working with the service provider to mobilise services	Variations to the contract
Job profiles, skills, and competencies required for contract management	Overcoming relationship difficulties	Monthly performance monitoring processes and payment	Benchmarking and market testing
Identifying the initial and ongoing training requirements	Developing successful relationships	Monitoring the provision of the services	Contract administration Checklists Payment mechanism checklist Benchmarking market testing checklist Dispute resolution checklist Service variation checklist
Ensuring continuity of the contract management function	Practical problem and dispute resolution	Tools for measuring performance – helpdesk	
Setting up the contract management team checklist	Managing relationships checklist	Managing service performance checklist	

- ensure remedial measures for improving service delivery are implemented when required, and monitor the service provider's approach to rectifying non-compliance
- manage changes in legislation within the contract
- manage variations, benchmarking, market testing and change
- monitor and manage risk
- be responsible for the ongoing training requirements of the contract management team
- deal with disputes and default

- ensure the contract remains up to date with changes and variations agreed
- provide quality assurance
- undertake business planning with the service provider, looking for opportunities to enhance delivery and improve value for money
- review service specifications on a periodic basis
- network with other local authorities to understand and share best practice
- review exit strategy and handback procedures.

The main skills and knowledge for the contract manager and the contract management team collectively are:

Skills, attitude and experience

- demonstrates strong leadership skills
- has good people skills (interpersonal and management)
- has a partnering 'win–win' ethos for relationship management
- has a positive outlook and attitude and is proactive
- demonstrates effective negotiating skills
- is able to manage relationships successfully and resolve conflict
- is able to manage users and their demands
- is able to work effectively with a team
- is able to plan resource requirements effectively
- exercises good judgment based on experience and sound analysis
- has experience in managing complex services
- has experience in performing contract monitoring
- can establish processes for monitoring performance
- has the ability to anticipate and respond to future business needs
- possesses well developed analytical skills
- has good organisational and QA skills
- has a realistic and practical approach to change and innovation
- is able to develop strategies to meet changing contractual needs
- is able to apply contract management procedures
- is able to evaluate and control expenditure.

Knowledge of:

- relationship management
- partnership working
- managing a team
- developing a team
- service monitoring processes and the data required to do so
- output specifications and performance measurement systems
- end user requirements (e.g. the requirements of schools)
- procurement processes

- government accounting principles
- benchmarking/market testing
- the private sector and its business drivers
- changes and developments in the relevant service markets.

15.3 Contract management plans

15.4.1 Sample procurement – relatively low value – low risk

The following checklist has been adapted from the Australian National Audit Office (ANAO) 'Example contract management plans'.[3]

This example shows the key elements of contract management for a simple procurement. It could be used by the contract manager as the basis for developing a contract management plan.

Contract management plan

Contractor	Name: Address: Contractor Representative: Position: Telephone: Email: SME: Yes/No Charity Yes/No BME: Yes/No
Contract Deliverable(s):	Summary of deliverables
Contract Manager:	
Contract Sponsor:	
Key Stakeholder:	
Contract Start Date:	
Contract End Date:	
Contract Extension Options:	Detail process for managing and assessing possible contract extension options.
Payment Schedule: Total Contract Value: Payment Arrangements:	Detail how often payments are to be made (e.g. on completion of deliverables, at milestones or monthly).
Invoice Verification:	Who will confirm invoices are correct? (should be Contract Manager). Who will authorise payment of invoices? (should be Contract Sponsor).
Incentive or Penalty Payments:	List any incentive or penalty provisions in the contract.
Milestones:	List all milestones and key dates.
Performance Measures:	List performance measures and methods of data collection and analysis.

Reporting Requirements:	Format/frequency.
Communication Protocols:	How regularly will the entity and contractor communicate and format of communication?
Risk Assessment and Review:	What is the risk assessment at the beginning of the contract? Regularly review the contract to determine if risk status has changed in any significant way.
Contract Review	How will lessons learned be identified and recorded?

15.4.2 Large or more complex procurements – relatively high value – high risk

The following checklist has been adapted from the ANAO 'Example contract management plan for large or more complex procurements'.[4]

This example shows the key elements of a contract management plan for large or more complex procurements. It could be used by the contract manager as the basis for developing a contract management plan. The amount of detail required for any section that is used should be adjusted to reflect the complexity of the contract, the level of risk associated with it and the internal processes of the entity.

Contract Management Plan:	Title and purpose	Insert title of plan and summarise its purpose. Also include details of name and date of the delegate approving the plan, including arrangements for reviewing and updating the plan.
Contract Structure:	Contract summary	Summarise key contract details; for example, contract number, commencement date, contract term, procurement process (e.g. panel, open tender), delegate details, approved users of the contract, estimated contract value, reporting obligations completed (yes/no).
	Background	Provide a brief summary of the procurement process that led to the contract. This may include the purpose, objectives, scope and key deliverables of the contract. Note: information should be detailed enough to allow a person, with no prior involvement in the contract to have a clear understanding of a contract's background.
	Documentation	List all documentation relating to the contract that is held by the contract management team. This may include, for example, transition plans, tender evaluation reports, risk management plans etc., and identification of their location and when they were last updated.
	Contract term and extension options	List contract start and end dates and contract extension options, if applicable.
	Pricing	Total contract value, pricing arrangements and fee variations. If applicable, a fee schedule may also be included.
Roles and Responsibilities:	Contact details	At a minimum, the contract managers for both the acquiring entity and the contractor should be listed with their contact details.

	Identified roles and their descriptions	List key stakeholders, where they come from and their major responsibilities in relation to the contract. In some contracts there will be a number of parties with various levels of contractual, financial and reporting involvement. A map of these relationships may be useful for illustrating these relationships.
	Stakeholder management and communications strategies	Identify key methods to be used for liaison, reporting, signalling issues to, and building relationships with, key stakeholders identified above.
Conditions of the Contract:	General conditions	Identify if any standard form contract is used
	Special conditions	List any special conditions that are not covered elsewhere in this plan. For example, warranties, intellectual property ownership etc.
	Contract variations (price, product/ services or other)	List contract variations and requirements that need to be met to implement a variation. This should be consistent with the provisions in the contract.
	Insurance	Record details of currency and adequacy of insurance certificates and procedures for obtaining evidence from the contractor of future currency.
Financial Considerations:	Payment conditions	Insert any clauses from the contract on payment conditions. The payment schedule should also be described; for example, the schedule may provide for monthly payment, or payment on completion of deliverables.
	Incentives or rebates	Describe any incentive arrangements included in the contract and how they are to be calculated.
	Penalties or disincentives	Describe any penalties that may be included in the contract and how they are to be calculated and applied.
	Invoicing	Detail the invoicing requirements for the contract.
Performance Measurement:	Key performance measures	List key performance measures/indicators to be used for measuring the performance of contract. These should be consistent with the performance measures identified in the tender documentation and the contract.
	Performance incentives/ disincentives	List any non-financial performance incentives or disincentives that are applicable to the contract and the key performance indicators that trigger them.
	Performance monitoring	Describe the data collection and analysis methods to be used for monitoring and assessing performance (e.g. user surveys, third-party accreditation, benchmarking) Also detail who will undertake performance monitoring including: responsibility for collecting and analysing data; how frequently monitoring will take place; the reporting arrangements and any processes to review the arrangements.

Contract Administration:	Provider's obligations	Detail all obligations the contractor has under the contract. This may include goods or services to be provided, any other deliverables covered by the contract, timeframes to be met, specified personnel, reporting requirements, provision of equipment and back-up arrangements.
	Product or service standards expected	Detail any requirements included in the contract relating to product or service standards and how they are to be administered.
	Compliance management	Detail relevant procurement connected polices and obligations that the entity and the contractor are required to comply with and how these will be managed. Note: the contract manager is responsible for the management of these obligations. It may be useful to include these as an attachment to the plan.
	Transition	Include here arrangements for managing any transition and attach transition strategies or plans.
	Reporting requirements	List the reporting requirements; for example, what is to be reported and the format/frequency of reporting.
	Audit requirements	Detail any requirements for both internal and independent audits, and the elements of the contract to be audited. The timeframe for the audit, along with resources required (in-house or external) should also be identified.
	Contractor meetings	Detail a schedule of meetings specific to the contract and the process for inviting and reminding relevant parties.
Risk Assessment and Management Strategy:	Procurement risk plan	Include details of earlier risk planning conducted for earlier procurement phases and highlight any risks that carry through to the contract management phase.
	Contract risk plan	Insert details of contract risk planning, risks and mitigation strategies. Attach the completed contract risk plan to this plan. An example of a contract risk and treatment plan is included in this Guide.
	Issue register	Record any issues (realised risks) that may arise and how they are to be managed, including by whom.
	Contract review	Outline regular reviews (for example, quarterly, annually). Detail how they will be conducted, including what data needs to be collected and by whom. Outline the trigger point(s) at which contract review becomes necessary due to underperformance.
	Dispute resolution process	Detail any clauses specified in tender documents and the contract and detail procedures for addressing the dispute.
	Termination	Detail any clauses in the contract which may give rise to termination and detail the termination process to be followed.
Contract Review:	Renewal or extension	Outline the process to be followed in assessing whether to renew or extend a contract and the steps that need to be followed as the contract nears expiry.

	Contract closure	List the tasks that are required to successfully complete and close the contract. Handover procedures; security and access closure; contract evaluation, including the process and resources required (in-house or external); documentation of lessons learned and notification to stakeholders.
Attachments:		Depending on the type and scope of the contract a variety of attachments may be required. Examples include compliance management, risk management plans, transition plans, invoicing and payment schedules, service level agreements and user/client survey questionnaires.

15.4 The contract management of specifications/standards

The contract manager has the accountability, with support from other colleagues, to ensure that the specifications/standards set out in the contract are completely satisfied. The potential extent of this accountability is evidenced in the Standards for Highways[5]; for example, 'Series 1500 Motorway Communications'. Extracts are shown below.

1502 General Requirements

2 All operations shall be arranged so that the communications installation is completed, tested and the test results approved by the Overseeing Organisation at least 8 weeks before the date for completion of the Works and, where required in Appendix 15/1 any Section thereof, in order to allow time for the Overseeing Organisation to commission the system. The Contractor shall allow sufficient time in his programme for any repairs and retesting which may be required to be completed satisfactorily before the aforementioned 8 week commissioning periods.

4 The Contractor shall provide the Overseeing Organisation with full details of all personnel whom he proposes to employ on the testing and terminating of cables. Such details shall be provided in writing, 14 days prior to the commencement of cable termination. The written approval of the Overseeing Organisation shall be obtained prior to the commencement of such work.

1504 Site Records

1 (05/01) The Contractor shall keep a daily record in duplicate in a clear and legible form, on drawings, of all work carried out as it proceeds. One copy shall be kept available for the use of the Overseeing Organisation during the Contract and shall, at completion of the Works, be handed to the Overseeing Organisation for record purposes.

3 The Contractor shall keep a daily record of the work in sufficient detail including type and drum number of underground cables to enable site records to be completed. A copy of the daily record shall be provided by the Contractor on the next working day for retention and use by the Overseeing Organisation.

1505 Provision of Cabinets, Cables and Ancillary Items

4 (02/03) The Contractor shall be responsible for all bulk purchased equipment and cable once received from the Overseeing Organisation's store, including its unloading and secure storage. The Contractor shall provide a dry and heated store for the equipment as described in Appendix 15/1. Any equipment or cable damaged or missing after receipt from the Overseeing Organisation's store shall be replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the Overseeing Organisation.

5 (02/03) The Contractor will be supplied with 2 master keys for the equipment, which shall be returned to the Overseeing Organisation on the completion of the works.

6 (02/03) The Contractor shall maintain an up to date record of all bulk purchased equipment, and cable, received from the Overseeing Organisation's store. The record shall include details of the number and type of equipment and serial numbers (drum numbers for cable).

Further examples of 'Performance Parameters' that require contract management can be illustrated by reference to Fiona Stanley Hospital[6] documents.

Fleet Management Service

Ref	*Performance Parameters*
1	Each Fleet Vehicle (excluding those under repair, maintenance and cleaning) is available for use or in use 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.
2	Fleet Vehicles are procured and replaced according to recommendations made in Annual Service Plan and compliance with the WA Health Motor Vehicle Fleet Policy.
3	Safe and secure storage for each Fleet Vehicle is provided when that Fleet Vehicle is not allocated to an individual.
4	Booking systems and fleet management information is available electronically / online for Hospital Employee's use.
5	Each request for Booking Fleet Vehicles made between 6:30 am and 5:30 pm is responded to and confirmed (where an appropriate vehicle is available) or alternatives are suggested (where an appropriate vehicle is not available) within 1 hour of the relevant request being made.
6	Each request for Booking Fleet Vehicles made between 5:30 pm and 6:30 am the following morning is confirmed (where an appropriate vehicle is available) or alternatives are suggested (where an appropriate vehicle is not available) by 7.30am the next morning.
7	Each user who has Booked a Fleet Vehicle is provided with an appropriate vehicle at the Booked time.
8	Each Fleet Vehicle is maintained in accordance with relevant manufacturers' recommendations, lease agreements and insurance requirements.
9	The Facilities Manager develops and implements the processes described in paragraph 2.2(l) of this Specific Service Specification
10	All Fleet Vehicles and users of those vehicles are equipped with all licences, permits and accreditations required by Law at all times.
11	Two or more fuel cards from different issuers are present in all Fleet Vehicles for use with the designated Fleet Vehicle only.
12	Fleet Vehicles that have suffered Major Damage are taken from the pool, booked into an appropriate repairer and the relevant insurer is contacted within 4 hours of Handback.
13	All Minor Damage to a Fleet Vehicle approved for repair by the Principal is repaired within 4 weeks of the Facilities Manager becoming aware of the damage.
14	Fleet Vehicles are able to be conveniently returned After Hours.
15	Each infringement notice received is managed in accordance with the Fleet Management Service Plan.

Ref	*Performance Parameters*
16	Except to the extent covered by other KPIs, the Principal's obligations under the Fleet Management CUA, and lease agreements entered into, are performed at all times.
17	Green range is achieved for each Continuous Improvement Indicator on an annual basis.

Helpdesk and Communications Service

Ref	*Performance Parameters*
1	Helpdesk is operational for the Service Times.
2	Each day's Helpdesk data and records are maintained and available to the Principal's Personnel, including following partial or complete failure of the Helpdesk.
3	A Disaster Recovery and Business Continuity Plan is annually provided to and approved by the Principal, to ensure, in the event of a fault, no impact to the operation of the Hospital and no Health Functions Disruption occurs.
4	Helpdesk systems, Software and Hardware comply at all times with the Facilities Reference Guide.
5	All licences relevant to the Helpdesk and Communications Equipment are up to date and renewed prior to their expiry date.
6	Operational policies, procedures and record keeping methods are in compliance with and allow the operation of the Performance Regime in accordance with the Contract.
7	The Helpdesk has real time access to appropriate records for the Services at all times.
8	The Principal has electronic access to the Software, systems and records as per paragraph 2.3(c) (3) of this Specific Service Specification and as stated in the Helpdesk and Communications Service Plan.
9	All Helpdesk staff have training in customer service in accordance with the Helpdesk and Communications Services Plan.
10	All staff providing the Helpdesk and Communications Service have the ability to speak, understand, read and comprehend English to a level sufficient to undertake the duties of the relevant position and can communicate to Hospital Users effectively, having regard to the requirements of their position.
11	98% of requests logged through the Helpdesk in any month are logged with the correct details fully completed.
12	At all times at least one staff member operating the Helpdesk has completed a basic medical terminology course as stated in the Helpdesk and Communications Service Plan.
13	A translator service is available through Helpdesk for 98% of the time in any month as stated in the Helpdesk and Communications Service Plan.
14	A personal, non-automated answer is provided within 15 seconds for 95% of Non Helpdesk Calls in any month.
15	A personal, non-automated answer is provided within 30 seconds for 99% of Non Helpdesk Calls in any month.
16	A personal, non-automated answer is provided within 30 seconds for 70% of Helpdesk Calls in any month.

Ref	*Performance Parameters*
17	A personal, non-automated answer is provided within 60 seconds for 99% of Helpdesk Calls in any month.
18	The Helpdesk provides a non-automated response to electronic mail enquiries within 10 minutes of receipt.
19	The Helpdesk provides a non-automated response to facsimile enquiries within 30 minutes of receipt.
20	The Helpdesk responds to written mail enquiries received via the mail room within 2 Business Days of receipt.
21	Where required by the eligible Hospital User, Helpdesk and Communications Service Staff provide verbal or written progress reports and proposed rectification times within 2 hours of a request to do so.
22	An activity report for each request or fault reported is generated in accordance with the requirements of this Specific Service Specification and demonstrably communicated to the relevant service provider.
23	Helpdesk and Communications Service staff provide responses to enquiries in accordance with the Emergency Management Plan in the event of an Emergency.
24	Amber or Green range is achieved for all Continuous Improvement Indicators on an annual basis.

15.5 Managing contract performance

When the contract is being drafted it is essential that the statement of deliverables is accompanied by a performance management regime. The author acknowledges the ANAO[7] permission to include the following expert views.

Performance measures

Performance measures include indicators with related targets and performance standards. The aim of establishing performance measures is to provide evidence about performance that is collected and used systematically to maintain and assess performance over the life of the contract.

Performance measures need to be sufficiently comprehensive and specific to allow the contract manager to certify that the work meets contractual requirements. They also provide the basis for authorising payments.

The contract should also include performance measures that will alert the contract manager to potential problems, so that remedial action can be taken if needed. In developing the performance regime, the issues discussed in this section need to be considered in order to provide a balanced set of measures that address all aspects of expected performance.

Establishing performance measures requires decisions about:

- what and how often to measure
- what indicators and targets, and/or standards will be used.

Selecting performance indicators

Performance indicators need to be selected on the basis that they measure something that is important in achieving the contract deliverables and are not necessarily those activities or processes that are easy to measure. The performance regime should be reviewed periodically to ensure its ongoing relevance.

Setting targets

For performance indicators to be useful, a target or other basis for comparison needs to be provided to allow a judgement to be made whether performance is satisfactory or not.

Targets express quantifiable performance levels or changes of level to be attained. They can focus on overall performance or the factors which contribute to success.

There are many different ways of expressing targets, or providing a basis for comparison to assess whether performance is satisfactory or not. In some cases targets will be expressed as a number or a percentage. In other cases targets will be set to measure the quality rather than the quantity of services provided. Targets can also be set to encourage improved performance; that is, they are challenging or stretching targets.

Targets can be established with reference to past performance, performance achieved by other entities providing similar services or based on research of similar circumstances.

It is not always possible to set targets when a performance regime is being established. In this case the process to establish targets during the life of the contract should be included in the contract itself when data and/or experience are available to allow them to be set in a realistic way.

Targets may need to be reviewed and adjusted during the life of the contract to make them more relevant and useful. This should not be done to mask poor performance. Targets could be expressed, for example, as:

- a specific number of clients assisted
- the percentage of clients satisfied with the service provided
- the number of interviews conducted with clients that met certain time and content requirements and resulted in an agreed percentage of clients moving to the next step in the process
- resolution of client enquiries being above an agreed percentage of all callers on a daily basis
- response time for IT services being between an agreed time span.

When establishing targets, care needs to be taken to ensure that a focus on achieving individual targets does not occur to the detriment of overall performance. For example, client inquiries can be answered within a two minute response target by not properly determining the full extent of the client's problem or by not resolving it. The use of a balanced set of targets can assist in measuring all aspects of performance. As well as measuring response times the acquiring entity could measure increases in complaints or the level of client satisfaction with the advice received.

Establishing standards

Performance standards relate to pre-defined levels of excellence or performance specifications. They can relate to technical aspects of goods or the quality of services to

be provided. Standards can be set by external bodies, such as specific standard setting bodies, accreditation agencies or professional bodies. As a first step, acquiring entities should determine whether relevant standards have been developed by an external, standard setting body. Using existing standards can save both time and money and can reduce the risk of disputation with the contractor.

To be clear about which standards are to be met, acquiring entities should specify in the contract the particular standard(s) that is to be used. A general statement regarding compliance with industry standards should be avoided. The acquiring entity should also specify whether the standards to be applied were set at a particular date or whether it is the standard that is applicable at the date of assessment.

In some cases, the assessment of whether standards have been met could be undertaken by an independent third party or an accreditation body. This should be specified in the contract. Such an approach has the advantage that those making the assessment are likely to have the requisite technical knowledge and will bring a level of objectivity and independence to the assessment. In such cases the contract should also specify which party will bear the costs involved.

Costs, data collection and analysis

As measuring performance can be both time-consuming and costly, measures should be considered carefully, taking into account the costs and benefits involved. Not all aspects of performance will need to be measured or assessed with the same frequency. There may be some measures that will require daily measurement while others may only require assessment at longer intervals, such as quarterly or yearly. Other factors to consider when establishing performance measures include how the data to allow measurement will be collected and the potential burden on clients of that collection, the costs of collecting and analysing it and what assurance the acquiring entity has in regard to its accuracy.

In establishing a performance regime it is important to consider the costs and benefits of it. An overly complex set of measures can result in an increase in the contract price that outweighs the potential benefits.

In addition to the costs of collecting performance data, consideration also needs to be given to the level and type of resources that will be needed to analyse data to determine whether performance is satisfactory or not.

Where the contract deliverables are of a technical nature, relevant technical knowledge may be required to assess whether the deliverables meet the required standard. Where the required expertise does not exist within the acquiring entity, external expert advice may need to be engaged to obtain the necessary level of assurance that performance standards have been met.

The periodic independent testing or certification of performance reports provided by contractors can also be a useful means of obtaining additional assurance to test the accuracy of performance reports submitted by the contractor.

15.6 Social services contract monitoring audit

The Office of the City Auditor[8] published a report that is indicative of the problems facing contract management. The audit report is included in this chapter to highlight issues that unquestionably apply elsewhere. Concerns had been expressed by the

Health & Human Services Department (HHSD) related to contracting policies, procedures and processes.

From FY 2009 through FY 2011, there were 82 social services contracts (funded from City revenues), which totalled approximately $54 million. The audit objective was to determine whether the contract monitoring process ensured compliance with contract terms and conditions.

The Audit Report included:

Contract monitoring activities are insufficient and hinder the Health and Human Services Department's (HHSD) ability to provide reasonable assurance that services are delivered according to contract terms and that City funds are not misused.

In general, HHSD has not performed contract monitoring as required by internal policies and procedures, applicable contract requirements, or industry best practices. While issues regarding monitoring were raised in 2009 related to fraud by an HHSD contractor, management did not ensure staff performed contract monitoring duties as required. In addition, most staff members did not have prior contract monitoring experience, and HHSD does not have a training program in place to ensure staff is trained to perform contract monitoring duties. Documentation of monitoring performed is not maintained consistently by staff, and is not maintained consistently by HHSD for official record retention purposes. Further, IT controls over the contract management system used by HHSD do not provide sufficient assurance for security or data reliability.

Finding 1: HHSD has draft policies and procedures for conducting contract monitoring; however, contract monitoring has not been conducted consistently, and HHSD cannot provide assurance that contracted services are provided as purchased by the City.

Contract monitoring is subject to HHSD policy. The draft HHSD procedure manual states that on-site reviews for contracts should be performed on a three-year cycle with invoice verification reviews (IVR) occurring in Year 1, administrative and financial review (AFR) in Year 2, and programmatic reviews (PR) in Year 3. HHSD does not have policies and procedures related to reviews of performance measure reports submitted by contractors; however, according to management, staff is required to review these reports in practice.

Management oversight of and communication with staff is insufficient, and staff are not held accountable for performing contract monitoring duties as required. For example, staff reported that management redirected resources to the development of the new contracting process instead of enforcing expectations related to contract monitoring. Staff also stated they did not conduct on-site visits during the new contracting process out of concern for violating the City's anti-lobbying ordinance, but management stated contract monitoring could be performed without violating the ordinance. In addition, staff reported that policies are in draft form because procedures are changing and have not been finalised by management.

Additionally, staff reported that their job duties also include funding application review, technical assistance, and regular communication with the contractors. Some staff believes this creates conflicts of interest and hinders their ability to conduct objective contract reviews.

Without consistent monitoring, HHSD cannot ensure that services are provided in accordance with contract terms and conditions. For example, during site visits at 9 agencies, auditors found that one contractor, LEAP, could not provide documentation of services provided. Furthermore, HHSD cannot provide assurance that agencies are using City funds as intended.

For example:

- LEAP was unable to provide documentation to reconcile revenues and expenditures and LEAP commingled City funds. In 2010, HHSD staff notified LEAP of the need to modify its accounting practices.

- Austin Area Urban League had not paid payroll taxes for several months during our scope period and did not have support for the resulting adjustments made to their HHSD payment requests.
- The Council on At-Risk Youth did not have documentation to tie their accounting statements to their expenditure reports to HHSD.

Overall, HHSD's contract monitoring practices allowed for payment of invoices without proof of service or verification of invoice validity, and appropriate follow up was not performed to ensure deficiencies identified were corrected.

FINDING 2: HHSD's contract monitoring program does not adhere to best practices, which decreases HHSD's ability to detect fraud, waste, or abuse, identify contract non-compliance, or protect against the misuse of City funds.

According to the best practice guidance offered by the State of Texas Contract Management Guide and the City of Austin Contract Monitoring Guide, contract monitoring programs should include such protocols as:

- standardizing contract monitoring practices across the division,
- creating risk-based monitoring plans,
- reviewing invoices prior to payment,
- ensuring payment is tied to performance, and
- establishing minimum expectations for staff training and expertise.

According to staff, not all contract terms are represented in the review process. Notably missing is monitoring to ensure that contractors perform background checks on individuals that work with children, and monitoring to ensure contractor funds are not commingled. We reviewed the processes in place for the contractors who should have conducted background checks and did not note any exceptions. One contractor comingled funds, and although HHSD identified the issue, staff did not follow up to ensure it was corrected. Furthermore, HHSD does not maintain a centralised listing of all grants and contracts, or track grantor audits performed, so there is no mechanism to ensure appropriate monitoring of all contracts under HHSD's purview.

In terms of conducting risk-based monitoring, according to staff, some contractors are subject to additional levels of review as a result of past non-compliance, but these decisions are not documented and clear criteria for additional review levels do not exist.

In addition, best practice calls for reviewing all invoices prior to payment. However, HHSD policy requires invoice verification once every three years, and HHSD does not have a process in place for reviewing or confirming reported expenditures on a more regular basis. For example, we found that invoices were not reviewed prior to payment in two of the five (20%) sampled contracts.

Furthermore, best practice calls for tying payment to performance, but the social services contracts sampled do not include performance requirements. Performance goals are included in the statement of work but are not enforced as part of the contract monitoring process or tied to payment.

Other weaknesses reported by HHSD staff regarding the contract monitoring program include:

- training is not provided,
- most employees assigned to perform contract monitoring duties have limited or no prior contract monitoring experience,
- inconsistent use of the contract management system by staff,

- support documentation is not always submitted by or requested from contractors, and
- inconsistent maintenance and retention of contract documentation.

According to HHSD management, many of the weaknesses noted above are due to a cultural shift Citywide between a contracting approach that focuses on supporting agencies (providing funding with limited oversight) and purchasing services (tying service provision directly to funding.) In addition, monitoring activities are decentralised across the Human Services Division and, as previously noted, are performed by staff who also work closely with contractors in planning and capacity-building roles.

Overall, the weaknesses identified above hinder HHSD's ability to detect fraud, waste, or abuse, identify contractor non-compliance, or protect against the misuse of City funds. Insufficient contractor accountability standards increases the risk that the City will pay for services that were not delivered or pay contractors who did not meet contractual expectations. Failure to confirm background checks potentially jeopardises client safety. Without an integrated risk assessment process, non-compliant contractors may not receive the necessary level of oversight. These risks are compounded by the lack of centralised tracking of grants and contracts.

FINDING 3: Security and data reliability controls over the contract management system are insufficient, increasing the risk for unauthorised access to data and maintenance of inaccurate contract information.

HHSD's password security procedures for the contract management system do not comply with best practice. Since this system is web-based, it can be accessed from any computer, increasing the risk exposure.

The management system has optional features that would comply with some components of industry best practices, however they have not been implemented. According to staff, the system's password requirements were established to make the system friendly to users (both HHSD staff and contractors), and the contract with the system's vendor does not require the vendor to adhere to best practice.

During our review of data, we also noted that two levels of authorisation are required for payment approval, but for 11 out of 53 contractors (21%), the same HHS staff person routinely authorises payments for both levels.

In addition, we noted that data entered into the management system is not always accurate.

For example, report date entered as a date prior to the date the monitoring was performed, and

- risk scores[9] are entered via a drop down menu and via manual entry, and 2 out of 10 (20%) of the agencies sampled revealed that the risk scores did not match

The management system produces exception reports for illogical dates, but these reports are not used consistently by staff. There is no process in place to verify the accuracy and completeness of data entered into the system, prevent entry of illogical dates, or enforce segregation of duties for payment approval.

As a result, although we found no instances of unauthorized access during the course of our audit, HHSD's control system is inadequate to provide assurance that such access has not occurred. In addition, we did not identify any inappropriate payments in our audit, but without safeguards for segregated duties, HHSD cannot protect against unauthorised payments to contractors, which could result from collusion between the staff and the contractors to which they are assigned. Inaccurate and incomplete information within the database limits staff's ability to use the information for decision-making, and places the City at risk for housing inaccurate public records.

Recommendations:

The recommendations listed below are a result of our audit effort and subject to the limitation of our scope of work. We believe that these recommendations provide reasonable approaches to help resolve the issues identified. We also believe that operational management is in a unique position to best understand their operations and may be able to identify more efficient and effective approaches and we encourage them to do so when providing their response to our recommendations. As such, we strongly recommend the following:

1. **The HHSD Director should create a complete contract monitoring system that includes the following components:**
   - **contract monitoring policies and procedures that comply with best practices, are formally adopted, and communicated to staff;**
   - **contract monitoring is performed and documented in accordance with HHSD policies, procedures, and best practices;**
   - **review of organisational structure, job duties, and personnel within the contract monitoring function, in order to determine whether changes are needed to ensure objectivity and independence in performing contract monitoring roles and responsibilities; and,**
   - **a formal, documented training program specific to training needs that is provided to staff.**

15.7 Contract management checklist

The following checklist is indicative of a methodology to evaluate the effectiveness of contract management. It provides assurance that the necessary governance arrangements are in place.

Commencement of contract considerations	
Was there a formal handover to the contract manager at contract award?	☐
Is the contract manager fully briefed, and understands the contract terms and conditions and schedules to the contract?	☐
Does the contract manager have requisite training to ensure the appropriate skills and knowledge are present?	☐
Is there a contract mobilisation period to be managed?	☐
Is there a contract management plan?	☐
Is there a comprehensive risk register together with the mitigation strategies?	☐
Is there clarity on who is accountable for contract change and payment?	☐
Are there milestones to be managed?	☐
Are the insurances and Bonds (if required) in place?	☐
Are the key stakeholders identified and actively engaged?	☐
Are KPIs defined and agreed?	☐

Continuing management of the contracts	
Is timely Management Information being provided by the contractor?	☐
Are contract reviews taking place in accordance with the contract?	☐
Have any contract changes taken place?	☐
Were the contract changes in accordance with the contract?	☐
Is the risk register regularly reviewed and changed as necessary?	☐
Has there been any example(s) of contract non-performance?	☐
Are the KPI performance outcomes monitored?	☐
Are we monitoring the contract's sub-contracting?	☐
Have we used our Right to Audit contract provision?	☐
Are we conducting inspections and quality management assurance?	☐
Has the contractor's Key Personnel changed?	☐

15.8 Contract provisions

Contract provisions vary, widely, depending on the nature of the procurement. A contract will create legal obligations and liabilities for the parties to a contract. Prior to contract award it is probable, on more complex contracts, that procurement, legal advisors, stakeholders and contract negotiators will all play a part in determining the final contract provisions. What cannot be ignored is the fact that the supplier and their legal advisor will leave their fingerprint on the final contract outcome. This is for the obvious business purpose of limiting their liabilities and ensuring their obligations are clear and achievable.

The contract manager must be briefed on the detail of the contract, including schedules to the contract. The intent, application of the clauses and consequences of non-compliance must be clearly understood. The content of this section of the chapter carries a health warning for readers. **NEVER** interpret a contract clause unless appropriate advice has been received. The purpose of contract management is to avoid disputes.

It is probable that most contract managers will encounter a need to understand the following clauses (and others):

- Access to premises
- Audit rights
- Assignment
- Assistance to the supplier
- Confidential information
- Contract change
- Contract variations
- Key personnel
- Liabilities and indemnities
- Milestones
- Payment and price
- Penalties and incentives
- Rejection
- Security arrangements

- Dispute resolution
- Force majeure
- Guarantees
- Indexation of price
- Inspection rights
- Insurance
- Intellectual property rights
- Securities and guarantees
- Step-in rights
- Sub-contracting
- Termination
- Transition arrangements
- Warranties.

15.9 Contract clauses and what they mean

At some stage in the life of every contract manger the question will arise, 'What does this clause mean?' The following worked example is taken from a contract, at Clause 7, 'Performance Indicators'. A good starting point to understand a clause is to bullet point the key provisions, which, in this example, are:

- meet or exceed the Target Performance Level for each Performance Indicator
- monitoring and reporting performance
- deduction of service credits
- rectification plans
- Material Performance Indicator failure
- exceptions to service credits as exclusive financial remedy
- rights of buying organisation for unacceptable KPI failure
- supplier accepts consequences of unacceptable KPI failure.

The bullet points are the lay person's shorthand for the provisions. The requirement for the contract manager is to drill into the detailed wording and understand it. The provisions are:

Provision	*Commentary*
Clause 7.1 (a) The supplier shall provide the Operational Services in such a manner so as to meet or exceed the Target Performance Level for each Performance Indicator from the Milestone Date for each relevant CPP Milestone.	All words or phrases that are capitalised should be a defined term – to be found in the Definitions part of the contract. There is no obligation for the supplier to exceed the TPL 'meet or exceed' is the requirement. The contract manager must understand the TPL, PI and CPP Milestones.
Clause 7.1 (b) comply with the provisions of Schedule 2.2 (Performance Levels) in relation to the monitoring and reporting in its performance against the Performance Indicators.	The Schedules to a contract are essential reading for the contract manager. Within Schedule 2.2 it will set out the 'monitoring and reporting' requirements. For example, the frequency and content of reporting is crucial to holding effective contract review meetings.

Provision	*Commentary*
Clause 7.2 introduces Performance Failures and says, 'If in any Service Period (a) a KPI Failure occurs, service credits shall be deducted from the Service Charges in accordance with Paragraph 3 of Part c of Schedule 7.1 (Charges and Invoicing)'.	It should be noted here that there are a number of defined terms, each of which will have a specific meaning. A KPI Failure is important to the contract manager as is the need to deduct Service Credits. There are a form of damages, which if not deducted leave the buying company out of pocket.
Clause 7.2 (b) provides 'if a Material KPI Failure occurs, the Supplier shall comply with the Rectification Plan Process (in addition to Service Credits accruing in accordance with Clause 7.2 (a)'.	The contract manager will need to understand what a 'Material KPI Failure' actually means. The word 'Material' usually means something of substance that drives at the heart of a contract. The 'Rectification Plan Process' is very relevant to the work of a contract manager. When has the plan to be submitted? To who? In what format? Who approves it? What happens if the plan after approval isn't met?
Clause 7.2 (c) provides 'a PI Failure occurs; the Supplier shall notify the Authority of the action (if any) it will take to rectify the PI Failure and/or to prevent the PI Failure from recurring'.	The wording of this clause is loose, note the words 'shall notify'. It doesn't say how! It would, ideally, say in writing to avoid a future situation where the supplier claims to have told someone verbally. The contract manager would need to fully understand any proposed rectification actions. It is important to note that the contact manager's agreement to the rectification actions does not relieve the supplier from performing their obligations under the contract.

The above analysis relates to specific facets of one clause in a contract. The analysis shows the detail that a contract manager must pay attention to. It requires an investment of time and guidance on any facets with which the contract manager is unfamiliar or which requires explanation.

Discussion questions

15.1 What is the scope of contract management, and how does contract management contribute to business success?

15.2 Why is it important to create positive relationships with a supplier?

15.3 If you were managing a contract for the supply of catering services to your organisation's Head Office, what monthly information would you require from the supplier to assure you that the contractual obligations are being satisfied?

15.4 Would you agree with the statement that: 'Conflict is inevitable between a supplier and a contract manager because the former is intent on maximising their profit?'

15.5 Why is it important for a contract manger to understand all the content of a contract?

15.6 If a contract manager has ascertained that the supplier has removed some Key Personnel, without authority, what remedies are available to a contract manager to correct the situation?

15.7 Is it the contract manager's responsibility to ensure that the contract risk register is continually reviewed, and, when necessary, changed? Why?

15.8 Is the contract manager accountable for ensuring that the contact price is not exceeded?

15.9 Can you name six skills that a contract manager should have?

References

[1] A guide to contract management for PFI and PPP projects, 4ps

[2] A guide to contract management for PFI and PPP projects, 4ps, pp. 16–17

[3] ANAO Better Practice Guide

[4] Op. cit.

[5] Standardsforhighways.co.uk

[6] Fsh.health.wa.gov.au. Fiona Stanley Hospital Facilities Management Contract Performance Indicators

[7] Australian National Audit Office

[8] City of Austin (Texas USA) Audit Report, 'Social services contract monitoring audit', October 2011

[9] As noted in Finding 2, HHSD's risk-based decisions are not fully documented. There is also a risk-assessment process as part of contract close-out, which is recorded in the contract management system. However, it does not drive monitoring devices

Chapter 16

Category and commodity procurement

Learning outcomes

This chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- the concept and practice of category management
- category management groupings
- strategic implications of category management
- issues and challenges presented by category management
- procurement risk profiling
- energy procurement
- commodities procurement
- capital equipment procurement
- construction related procurement.

Key ideas

- Differentiation of procurement practices depending on the category.
- Complexity of capital equipment procurement.
- Financing considerations.
- Procurement risk consideration.
- Complexity of energy markets and cost generators.
- Characteristics of construction supplies.
- Commodity dealing.
- Raw material procurement.
- Expert sources of market data.
- Opportunities for procurement expertise to be applied to category management.

Introduction

The CIPS definition of category management is:

> Category Management is a strategic approach which organises procurement resources to focus on specific areas of spends. This enables category managers to focus their time and conduct in depth market analysis to fully leverage their procurement decisions on behalf of the whole organisation. The results can be significantly greater than traditional transactional based procurement methods.

16.1 Defining categories

CIPS Australia published 'The state of the art of category management' in 2011 and identified the following categories:

- Information & Communications Technology
- Maintenance, Repairs & Overhaul
- Professional Services
- Raw Material & Ingredients
- Travel
- Specific Directs (discreet category or related direct spend categories)
- Other Indirects (multiple unrelated or unspecified indirect categories)
- Facilities Management
- Logistics & Transport
- Capex
- Fleet Services
- Other Directs (multiple or unrelated direct categories)
- Equipment
- Medical
- Print
- Energy
- Recruitment & Labour Hire
- Packaging
- Marketing Services
- Stationery & Office Supplies
- Fuels & Lubricants
- Chemicals
- Other (multiple or unrelated direct and indirect categories)

The nature and range of categories will vary from one organisation to another. So will the emphasis on particular categories. APQC[1] identified 14 compelling category management findings, grouped by the following themes:

Strategic Implications

- Adopt a business – not cost – driven focus
- Balance long-term vision and planning with short-term agility
- Separate strategic pressures from tactical processes
- Recognise supplier segmentation as a foundation for category management
- Engage procurement in the full value chain with a specific focus on customer needs and values.

Resource Commitment and Talent Management

- Empower visible, focused category management teams with diverse membership
- Provide opportunities for career progression and skills acquisition through clearly articulated and differentiated requirements across the procurement organisation
- Seek to incorporate procurement and sourcing early in the new product development process.

Category-Specific Processes and Tools

- Create a standardised category approach to enable working and resourcing across categories and the ability to decide how much to invest by category
- Implement category risk management to monitor external market risks at the market or category level
- Conduct supplier risk assessments as part of the strategic sourcing process and on an ongoing basis
- Maintain an Intranet portal to provide one source for information that all relevant employees can access.

Extending Supplier Relationships

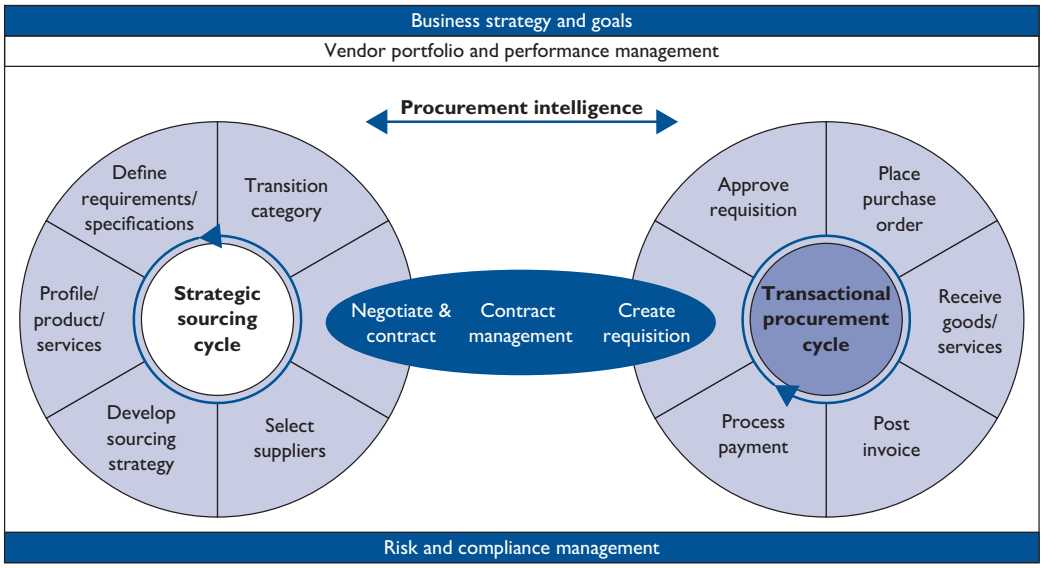
- Invest in building strong suppliers
- Give suppliers tools to succeed and create a symbiotic relationship.

16.2 Illustrations of category management issues

The APQC report is informative, thought provoking and worthy of detailed consideration by those contemplating transforming their approach to category management. Insightful commentary includes actual real-life illustrations of category management issues, including:

- Seeing sourcing through the lens of business success or failure, not just the cost to purchase, helps put the sourcing organisation in alignment with the larger enterprise
- In order of priority, FMC's strategic goals for sourcing and procurement focus on its core strategic areas: safety, quality, delivery and cost
- Changes that can impact category management may come from both inside the organisation (e.g. shifts in strategy or product mix) and outside (e.g. market volatility or supply disruption)

Figure 16.1 Risk and compliance management

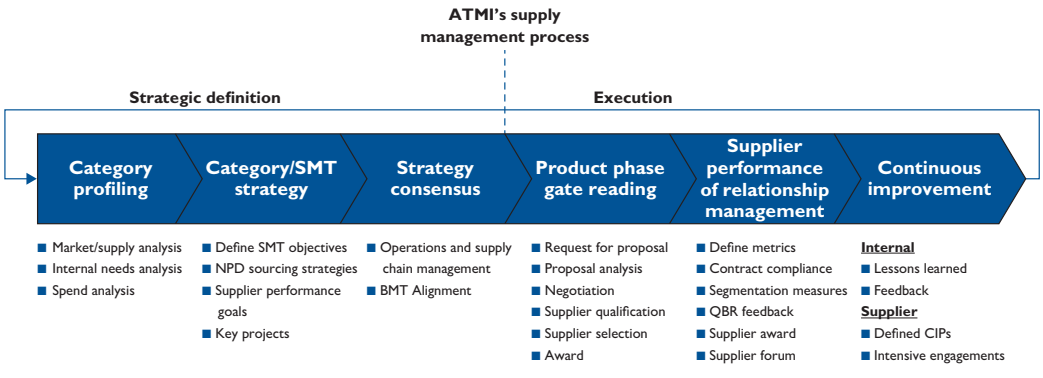


- Strategically, sourcing and procurement focus on leveraging global spend to achieve high-quality products, import product integrity, attain superior cycle times and lower the total cost of ownership.

The APQC report explains that KPMG view of procurement's core value proposition and responsibilities reflects the following organisational construct. See Figure 16.1.

The APQC report sets out the ATMI process for the management of each of its categories that pulls in different functions at various points. See Figure 16.2.

Figure 16.2 ATMI's supplier management process



16.3 The talent challenge

The APQC report draws attention to a growing talent challenge across procurement organisations, and highlights the key attributes of a strategic business partner that requires significant human capital, see Figure 16.3.

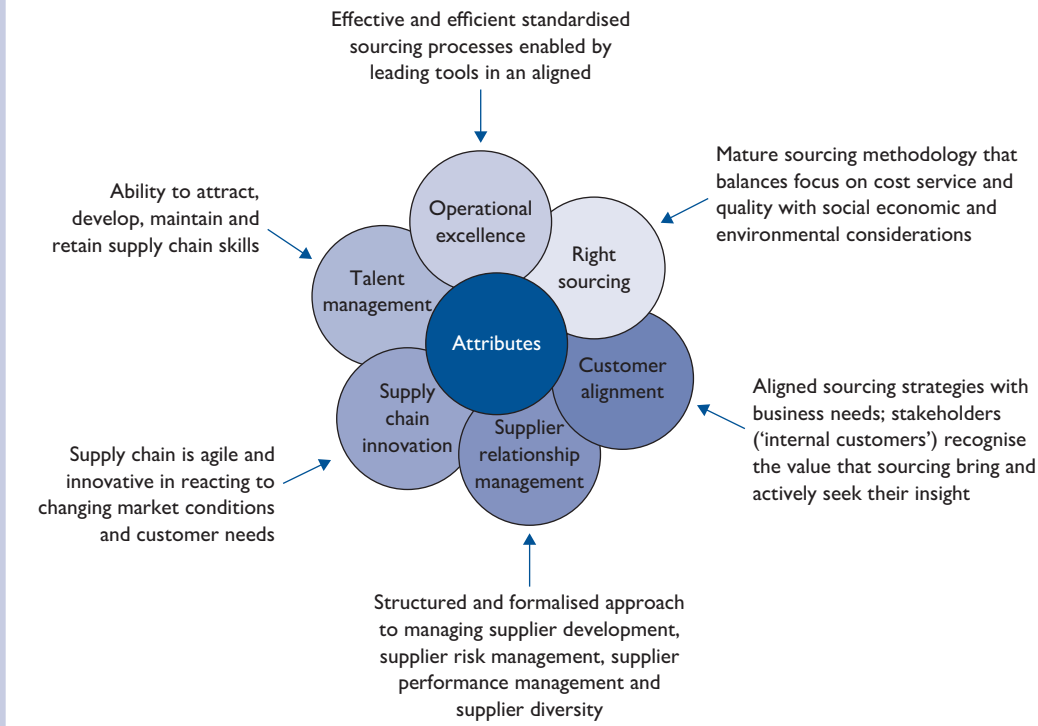
16.4 Category management risk profiling

The author has engaged with a number of national and international organisations to implement category management. These organisations have included aerospace, automotive, financial services, petroleum and airlines.

Procurement risk profiling has been very high on the agenda, requiring considerable investment in research, supply market visits, scenario testing and modelling and supply chain mapping. The PROCURISK® procurement risk modelling tool has been designed to expose risks in the following areas and to devise risk mitigation strategies:

- intellectual property risks
- safety critical warranty risks

Figure 16.3 APQC report – key attributes of strategic business partners



- procurement performance visibility risks
- procurement dependency risks
- ICT compatibility with key players in a market segment
- project procurement risks
- financial risks
- quality management risks
- product obsolescence risks
- through life product support risks
- supplier relationship management risks
- contract pricing risks
- stability of the labour market (trade unions, payment of workers, strike record)
- contract management risks
- environmental risks.

16.5 Category management – corporate travel

GBTA[2] in their KPI Reference Guide aim the KPIs at key stakeholders of corporate travel programmes, which includes the travel category manager and procurement, finance and corporate social responsibility managers, as well as the travel programme's suppliers.

The typical programme metrics describing a company's profile include:

- Travel spend: How much do we spend on travel and related expenses by business unit/region, etc.?
- Destinations: Where are we travelling?
- Travel expense productivity: What is our travel spend compared to the output of our core business (e.g. revenue, sales)?
- Spend concentration: How concentrated is our travel spend on specific routes/cities…?
- Prices: What is the trend of spend and pricing per category (e.g. Average Ticket Price, Average Daily Rate) and against the industry?
- Business Travel intensity: How much are our employees travelling to conduct business (number of trips, duration, distance, frequency…)?
- Number of frequent travellers: How many frequent travellers do we have?
- Travel risk exposure: How risky are our destinations (security/health/extreme weather)?

The overview of KPI determined as shown in Figure 16.4.
GBTA suggest the following KPIs for managing corporate travel see Figure 16.5.
The details of three KPIs are shown below:

(1) Booking Visibility (KPI ID 2)

Booking Visibility

Spend and Savings; Behaviour/Policy

Figure 16.4 Overview of KPIs determined by the author for key categories

Spend and Savings	Behaviour and Policy	Suppliers	Process	Traveller Safety	CSR	Data Quality
■ Spend under contract ■ Booking visibility ■ Payment visibility ■ Realised negotiated savings ■ Contract competitiveness ■ Cost of managed travel	■ Cabin non-compliance ■ Lowest Logical Airfare (LLA) non-compliance ■ Advance booking non-compliance ■ Online adoption rate ■ Hotel visibility ■ Hotel quality	■ Traveller satisfaction ■ Contract support	■ Re-booking rate ■ Reimbursement days	■ Location insights ■ Profile completion	■ Carbon visibility ■ Rail vs. air	■ Data quality

Figure 16.5 GBTA KPIs for managing corporate travel

Suggested key performance indicators	
■ Spend under contract	■ Re-booking rate
■ Booking visibility	■ Hotel quality
■ Payment visibility	■ Traveller satisfaction
■ Realised negotiated savings	■ Contract support
■ Contract competitiveness	■ Reimbursement days
■ Cost of managed travel	■ Location insight
■ Cabin non-compliance	■ Profile completion
■ Lowest logical airfare non-compliance	■ Carbon visibility
■ Advance booking non-compliance	■ Rail vs. air
■ Online adoption	■ Data quality
■ Hotel visibility	

Priority 1, Complex

KPI ID 2

Key Question: What share of our travel is booked via the approved Travel Management Company and self-booking tool (Self-Booking Tool)?

Why this KPI: Booking visibility measures the degree to which travellers are using the approved booking channels. It also measures the degree of data visibility one has, as bookings made through approved channels are captured for reporting. Data from bookings made through non-approved channels is not captured and so weakens a managed travel programme.

Definition: (Ticketed and Booked Spend) divided by Total Travel Spend.

Buyer must capture the ticketed airfare and rail spend, and the booked hotel and rental car spend (booked rate * room nights or rental days), as reported by the approved Travel Management Company, hotel booking agencies and Self-Booking Tool.

Buyers may choose as the denominator the total travel spend as captured either by their general ledger or by their Expense Reporting System.

Example: 60 per cent of our travel spend is booked through the approved Travel Management Companies or our corporate self-booking tool. This means 40 per cent of our travel spend is booked in a way that gives us no visibility to that data.

Desired Direction: Higher is better. 100 per cent is ideal.

Considerations: Obtaining the numerator should not be difficult. It is the denominator that can get messy due to the noisy and inconsistent data often included in the general ledger and expense reporting data sources.

An alternative form of this KPI is to measure the amount of travel spend booked via approved channels, and ignore the need to calculate a percentage.

Likely Data Sources: General ledger, Expense Reporting System, Travel Management Company, Self-Booking Tool.

(2) Contract Competitiveness - Suppliers KPI ID 5

Contract Competitiveness

Suppliers.

Priority 1, Complex

KPI ID 5

Key Question: How good are our negotiated contracts (air, hotel, car, Travel Management Company)?

Why this KPI: Key stakeholders want to know how cost-effective their company's negotiated prices are.

Definition: A supplier's contracted prices need to be compared to the relevant undiscounted fares or rates. Multiply the difference (the price savings) by the unit volume purchased. Sum this amount across all purchases made with the supplier. This is the contract's savings.

Convert all purchases made with the supplier to the supplier's undiscounted (a.k.a., pre-discounted, or gross) spend. This quantifies the amount of pre-discounted spend.

Divide the contract's savings by the supplier's undiscounted spend. This is the contract's savings rate.

Construct a ratio by placing the buyer's savings rate in the numerator, and the benchmarked peer group's average savings rate in the denominator. The result is the Contract Competitiveness Ratio.

Example: Our airline contract produces a 12 per cent overall savings rate, compared to our peer group's benchmarked average of 20 per cent. Our Contract Competitiveness for this airline contract is 12/20, or 60 per cent.

Our airline contract delivers 60 per cent of the savings rate achieved by our benchmarked peer group.

Desired Direction: Higher is better.

Considerations: It is very difficult to obtain apples-to-apples price benchmark data. Any such data provided by Travel Management Companies or third parties should be viewed as very rough indicators. Care must be taken to properly calculate the undiscounted (a.k.a. pre-discounted, or gross) spend.

Likely Data Sources: Supplier contracts, Travel Management Company, Self-Booking Tool, suppliers (e.g., rental cars).

(3) Carbon Visibility – Sustainability KPI ID 19

Carbon Visibility

Sustainability.

Priority 2, Simple

KPI ID 19

Key Question: How well do we measure our travel programme's carbon impact?

Why this KPI: Travel managers are often asked about the carbon impact of their travel programme. This measure indicates the ability to do that.

Definition: For each category, rate the current quality of measuring CO_2 emissions associated with corporate travel. Use a standard scale across each category, such as:

- Excellent – We use a leading-edge carbon calculator designed for the relevant travel category and we collect sufficient data; score of 5 points
- Adequate – We use a GHG Protocol-approved method for estimating the category's emissions (see http://www.ghgprotocol.org/) and we collect sufficient data; score of 3 points
- Inadequate – We don't capture sufficient data or don't have a method in place to estimate carbon emissions for this category; score of 1 point.

Example: Our carbon visibility for air travel is excellent (5 points); for hotel stays, car and rail it is inadequate (1 point for each category). We chose to weight air at 70 per cent, hotel at 10 per cent, car at 10 per cent and rail at 10 per cent, so our overall score is 3.8 out of possible 5.0, or 76 per cent.

Desired Direction: Higher ratings are better.

Considerations: Travel managers should seek guidance from their corporate social responsibility colleagues about how to best estimate a travel programme's carbon impact. The Icarus Project is a source of excellent information on this topic. See http://www.icarus.itm.org.uk/

Likely Data Sources: Travel Management Company, Self-Booking Tool, car rental suppliers.

16.6 Category management – ICT

ICT is, in many organisations, a significant procurement category. There are many influences on ICT expenditure, including:

- ICT technical specialists lacking commercial and contractual acumen
- absence of a long-term ICT strategy
- some ICT market segments dominated by a few large multinationals
- ownership of intellectual property
- high cost of technology change
- outsourcing actions
- disparate systems in use across corporate bodies
- procurement specialists lacking ICT technical knowledge and expertise
- difficulty negotiating contracts with dominant market leaders
- reputational damage when new systems fail.

In the UK, the scale of the issues is highlighted in the 'National ICT Commercial Category Strategy for Local Government'. The report includes a spend analysis, included here to give an indication of the scale of the issues and top four suppliers as shown in Figure 16.6.

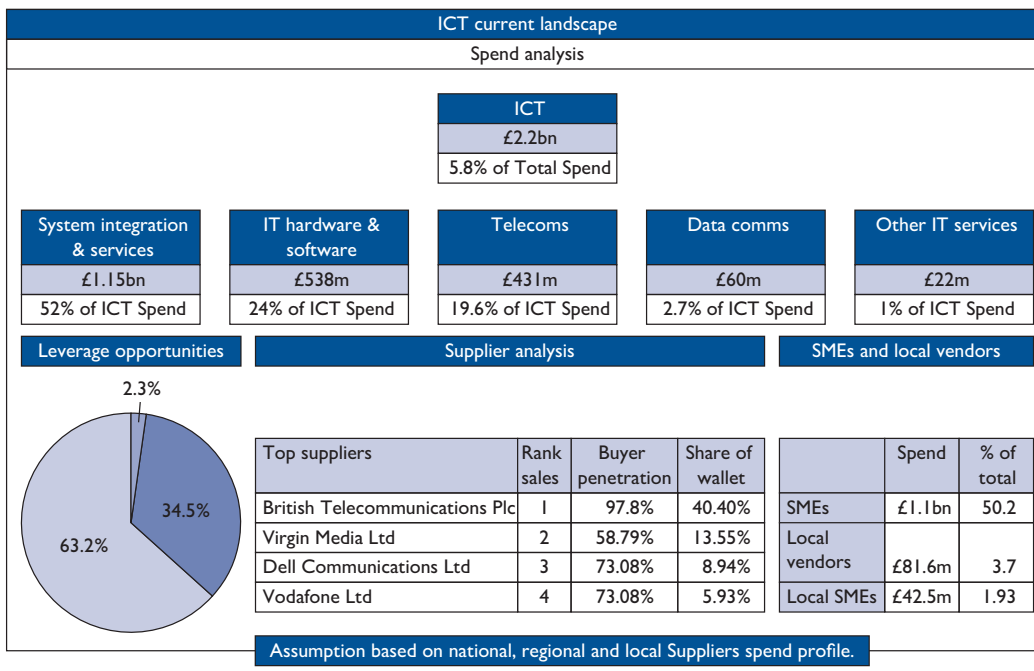
The South Australia Government published a report in 2013 'Strategic Procurement of ICT Products & Services', which provides a useful insight into the implementation of a change programme across ICT. In tranche 1 (Table 16.1) the following contracts were included:

Tranche 2 and 3 detail is also included in the report.

Table 16.1 Tranche 1 of implementation programme for ICT

Distributed Computing Support Services	Two suppliers, responsible for the provision of server management and support services on agencies distributed server infrastructure
Electronic Messaging Services	A single supplier of electronic messaging services to the State (based on the Microsoft Exchange 2007 application)
Hosting Services	A panel of hosting services, including unmanaged colocation, shared hosting and dedicated hosting
Internet Services Provider	A single supplier of ISP services
Mainframe Computing Services	A single supplier of mainframe computing services, where the mainframe and operating system are owned, managed and maintained by the supplier, and user agencies own, manage and monitor the applications running on the mainframe
Managed Network Services	A single supplier responsible for the management, maintenance and support of the State's central and local data networks
Microsoft Large Account Reseller	A single supplier of Microsoft LAR services to State agencies
Threat Management & Protection Services	State agencies must adhere to the State's Technical Standard for Anti-Virus product (these products include Computer Associates/Total Defence, McAfee and Microsoft)

Figure 16.6 ICT current landscape



16.7 Capital investment procurement

16.7.1 Definitions

Capital equipment has been defined by Aljian[3] as:

> One of the subclasses of the fixed asset category and includes industrial and office machinery and tools, transportation equipment, furniture and fixtures and others. As such, these items are properly chargeable to a capital account rather than to expense.

Alternative terms include 'capital goods', 'capital assets' and 'capital expenditure', which can be defined as follows:

- *Capital goods*

  Capital in the form of fixed assets used to produce goods, such as plant, equipment, rolling stock.[4]

- *Capital assets*

  Assets used to generate revenues on cost savings by providing production, distribution or service capabilities for more than one year.[5]

- *Capital expenditure*

  An expenditure on acquisition of tangible productive assets which yield continuous service beyond the accounting period in which they are purchased.[6]

Of the above definitions, that for capital expenditure is the most useful as it emphasises the three most important characteristics of capital equipment, namely:

- *tangibility* – capital equipment can be physically touched or handled
- *productivity* – capital equipment is used to produce goods or services
- *durability* – capital equipment has a life longer than one year.

16.7.2 Characteristics of capital expenditure

Expenditure on capital equipment differs from that on materials and components in many ways, including the following:

- the cost per item is usually greater and is often a one-off cost
- the items bought are used to facilitate production rather than as a part of the end product, or in a service environment are used to increase efficiency
- capital expenditure is financed by long-term capital or appropriations of profit rather than from working capital or charges against profit
- tax considerations, such as capital allowances and investment grants, have an important bearing on whether or not to purchase capital equipment and the timing of such purchases
- government financial assistance towards the cost of capital equipment may be available, such as where a manufacturing organisation is locating to, or is in a development area
- the procurement of capital equipment can be postponable, at least in the short term

- the decision to buy capital equipment often results in consequential decisions relating to sales, output and labour – in the latter case, consultations with the appropriate unions may be necessary.

Capital equipment procurement requires tailed contract terms and conditions to deal with such matters as guarantees, support services, intellectual property, output availability, through life cost and installation/testing.

All of these considerations mean that the procurement of capital equipment is usually more complicated than that of materials and components, a large proportion of which can be handled using repeat procedures.

16.7.3 Factors to be considered when buying capital equipment

Apart from the mode of purchase, finance and the required return on the investment, the following factors should be considered when buying capital equipment.

- *Purpose* – what is the prime purpose of the equipment?
- *Flexibility* – how versatile is the equipment? Can it be used for purposes other than those for which it is primarily being acquired?
- *Spares* – cost, lead times, initial purchase of essential spares, Escrow for drawings and length of time spares will be provided.
- *Standardisation* – is the equipment standardised with any already installed in our organisation, thus reducing the cost of holding spares?
- *Compatibility with existing equipment* – is there any compatibility offering financial and/or operational benefits?
- *Life* – this usually refers to the period before the equipment will have to be written off due to depreciation or obsolescence. It is, however, not necessarily linked to the total lifespan of the item if it is intended that the asset will be disposed of before it is obsolete or unusable.
- *Reliability* – breakdowns mean greater costs, loss of goodwill due to delayed deliveries and possibly a high investment in spares.
- *Durability* – is the equipment sufficiently robust for its intended use?
- *Product quality* – defective output proportionately increases the cost per unit of output.
- *Cost of operation* – costs of fuel, power and maintenance. Will special labour or additional labour costs be incurred? Is consultation with the trade unions advisable?
- *Cost of installation* – does the price include the cost of installation, commissioning and training of operators?
- *Cost of maintenance* – can the equipment be maintained by our own staff or will special service support agreements with the vendor be necessary? What estimates of maintenance costs can be provided before purchase? How reliable are these?
- *Miscellaneous* – these include appearance, space requirements, quietness of operation (decibel level), safety and aspects of ergonomics affecting the performance of the operator.
- *Intellectual property rights* – who owns the design? Will the 'as built' drawings be provided?

Table 16.2 Advantages and disadvantages of outright purchase of equipment

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
■ The total cost, particularly in comparison to rental, is low ■ Equipment may have a residual or second-hand value ■ User has total control over the equipment (there may, however, be maintenance and software constraints) ■ Capital allowances (normally 25 per cent annually on the reducing balance) may be set against tax	■ Investment in fixed capital resources will reduce liquidity ■ Obsolescence or market changes may drastically reduce residual or second-hand market expectations ■ Long-term commitment to maintenance and software may be necessary to protect the capital equipment investment ■ Equipment may rapidly become obsolete and the costs of upgrading by means of sale, trade-in or leasing may be expensive

16.7.4 Financing the acquisition of capital equipment

The acquisition of new or capital equipment may be financed by:

- outright purchase
- hire purchase
- leasing.

16.7.5 Outright purchase

The most obvious acquisition strategy for the purchase of equipment is for the buying organisation to pay the full price to the seller. The relative advantages and disadvantages of this strategy are shown in Table 16.2.

The effect of an outright purchase is to increase fixed (equipment) and reduce current (cash) assets. The capital cost of acquisition and the revenue cost of maintenance may adversely affect the working capital of an enterprise and so must, in the long term, be expected to create a positive return on the investment.

16.7.6 Hire purchase

With a hire purchase (HP) agreement, when all the payments have been made, the business customer becomes the owner of the equipment. This ownership is transferred either automatically or on payment of an option to purchase fee.

For tax purposes, from the beginning of the agreement the business customer is treated as the owner of the equipment and can therefore claim capital allowance. This can be a significant tax incentive to invest in new plant and machinery.

HP agreements are different from ordinary credit agreements. With a HP agreement there are certain rules which apply, including:

- you may not sell the goods until the money's paid off
- creditors may ask you to return the goods if you don't make regular payments.

The relative advantages and disadvantages of hire purchase of equipment are shown in Table 16.3.

Table 16.3 Advantages and disadvantages of hire purchase for equipment

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
■ Provides a compromise between straight purchase and leasing. Hire purchase agreements are easily negotiated and available	■ Financing arrangements impose more restrictions than when equipment is purchased outright
■ Subject to such factors as interest rates and the user's rate of return, hire purchase may be more financially effective than outright purchase or leasing	■ Interest rates and the user's rate of return may make hire purchase a less financially effective method than outright purchase or leasing
■ The most up-to-date technology may be hired and used to increase the company's productivity and efficiency	■ There will, in general, be no opportunity to upgrade
■ After all the payments have been made, the user becomes the owner of the equipment, either automatically or on payment of an option to purchase fee	■ The disadvantages of outright purchase as stated in Table 16.2
■ For tax purposes, the user is, from the start, regarded as the owner of the equipment and can claim capital allowance and VAT on the equipment	

16.7.7 Leasing

Leasing is a contract between the leasing company – the *lessor* – and the customer, the *lessee*.

- The leasing company buys and owns the asset that the lessee requires.
- The customer hires the asset from the leasing company and pays rental over a predetermined period for the use of the asset.

As shown in Figure 16.7, there are two types of leases: finance leases and operating leases. Leasing has both advantages and disadvantages, as listed in Table 16.4.

Other advantages of leasing include easier replacement decisions. Ownership of an asset sometimes has the psychological effect of locking the owner into the use of an asset that

Figure 16.7 Types of lease

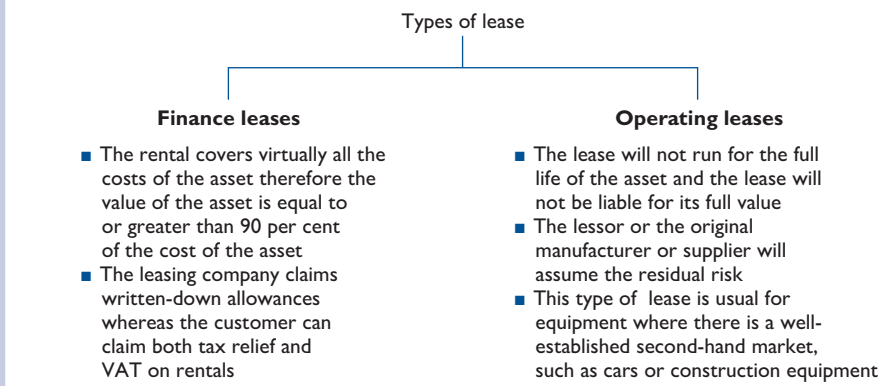


Table 16.4 Advantages and disadvantages of leasing equipment

Advantages	*Disadvantages*
■ Costs are known in advance and cannot be amended without agreement once the lease has been signed	■ Fixed obligation to pay rental may create an embarrassment in depressed conditions
■ Reduced need to tie up capital in fixed assets. Use of an asset can be obtained without capital outlay	■ Does not provide the prestige or flexibility of ownership
■ Leasing is concerned only with rentals and not with grants, allowances, depreciation or other calculations	■ Large organisations may be able to obtain capital or equal terms with lessors and, because of a steady flow of taxable profit, be able to obtain the use of capital allowances for themselves
■ Leasing provides a hedge against the risk of obsolescence	■ The flexibility to dispose of obsolete equipment before the end of the lease may be reduced

should be replaced by a more efficient item of equipment. Leasing is also a hedge against inflation. The use of the asset is obtained immediately. The payments are met out of future earnings and are made in real money terms with the real costs falling over the years.

16.7.8 Leasing or buying

In practice, the decision to lease or buy is complicated, depending on operating, legal and financial considerations.

- *Operating factors* relate to the advantages of a trial period before purchase, the immediate availability of cost-saving equipment, the period for which the assets are required and the hedges provided against obsolescence and inflation.
- *Legal factors* are important as the leasing agreements are one-sided in that most risks are transferred to the lessee. The lessee should therefore carefully examine the terms and conditions of the contract, especially with regard to such aspects as limitations on the use of the equipment and responsibilities for its insurance, maintenance and so on. Where possible, improved terms should be negotiated.
- *Financial factors* are usually crucial in deciding whether to lease or buy. These include:
  - the *opportunity cost* of capital – that is, what the purchase price of the equipment would earn if used for other purposes or invested elsewhere
  - the *discounted cost* of meeting the periodical rental payments over the period of the lease – note that 'flat' interest rates, calculated on the initial amount owing rather than on the average amount owed, can be misleading.

Example 16.1

How to work out whether it is best to lease or buy

(Taken from *The Lease–Buy Decision*, BIM)

Cash price of asset £1000	Leased cost – 20 payments of £75 per quarter over 5 years £1500	Excess cost of leasing over purchase £500 or 50 per cent	Annual flat rate of interest 50%/5 = 10%

The true rate, however, is just over 20.4 per cent per annum, as can be seen from the following table.

Quarterly periods	*Balance brought forward £*	*Repayment in advance £*	*Interest 20.4064% compound £*	*Balance carried forward £*
1	1000.00	–75.00	43.95	968.95
2	968.95	–75.00	42.48	936.43
3	936.43	–75.00	40.94	902.37
4	902.37	–75.00	39.32	866.69
5	866.69	–75.00	37.62	829.31
6	829.31	–75.00	35.85	790.16
7	790.16	–75.00	33.98	749.14
8	749.14	–75.00	32.04	706.18
9	706.18	–75.00	29.99	661.17
10	661.17	–75.00	27.85	614.02
11	614.02	–75.00	25.62	564.64
12	564.64	–75.00	23.27	512.91
13	512.91	–75.00	20.81	458.72
14	458.72	–75.00	18.23	401.95
15	401.95	–75.00	15.54	342.49
16	342.49	–75.00	12.71	280.20
17	280.20	–75.00	9.75	214.95
18	214.95	–75.00	6.65	146.60
19	146.60	–75.00	3.40	75.00
20	75.00	–75.00	0.00	0.00
		–1500.00	500.00	

Ignoring tax, the lessee will be indifferent, on cost grounds, about whether to lease or buy if the opportunity cost of capital is about 20.4 per cent. If the cost of capital exceeds 20.4 per cent, however, then leasing will be cheaper in net present value (NPV) terms. If it is less, then leasing will be the most expensive proposition.

Excluding such factors as the time value of money, capital allowances and maintenance and other ownership costs, the simple lease versus buy break-even point can be calculated by using the formula:

$$N = \frac{P}{L}$$

Where:

P = purchase cost of equipment

L = monthly leasing payment

N = the number of months needed to break even

Thus, if the equipment costs £5000 and the leasing payment is £200 monthly, the simple break-even point is 25 months. This indicates that, other considerations apart, owning is preferable to leasing if the equipment is going to be used for more than 25 months.

16.7.9 Selecting suppliers of capital equipment

The decision about which of several possible suppliers to accept is normally undertaken by an evaluation panel consisting of procurement, technical and financial specialists because the acquisition of capital equipment is a high-risk, high-cost issue.

In general, the greater the technical nature and complexity of an item, the greater will be the influence of the technical staff as both users and deciders. This will apply to both the acquisition of new or used equipment and purchase or lease decisions and, although there tend to be differences between the criteria for outright purchase and leasing, the most important considerations in both cases are technical and cost factors.

16.7.10 Technical factors relating to capital equipment

A matrix for the comparison and evaluation of quotations or tenders received from, say, three potential suppliers on the basis of technical factors is shown in Table 16.5. Points may be awarded to each factor or, alternatively, to a group of factors. The points awarded may be weighted according to the importance of the factor, as shown in Table 16.6.

Table 16.5 Capital equipment: technical factors evaluation sheet

Factor	*Supplier*			*Points*	*Aggregate*	*Recommendations*
	A	*B*	*C*			
General suitability for purpose						
Ease of installation						
Convenience of operation						
Ease of maintenance						
Power demand (kVA) ■ Normal running ■ Peak running						
Energy consumption ■ Power (kWh) ■ Fuel						
Other utility consumption ■ Steam ■ Water ■ Compressed air						
Equipment warranties						
Estimated life						
Life of items not subject to equipment warranties: estimates of normal operational wear						
Environmental considerations ■ Noise ■ Pollution ■ Effluent treatment						
Appraisal of ■ Electrical equipment ■ Instrumental and control equipment						
Standardisation with existing equipment						
Spare parts to be carried						
Interchangeability of spare parts						
Initial spares or tools to be supplied						

Factor	*Supplier*			*Points*	*Aggregate*	*Recommendations*
	A	*B*	*C*			
Services to be provided (if any) by supplier regarding: ■ Installation ■ Commissioning ■ Operator training						
Supplier's after-sales service and spare parts availability						
Other relevant factors ■ Delivery time ■ Insurance ■ General reputation or previous experience of supplier						
Totals						

Note: kVA – kilovolt ampere; kWh – kilowatt hour

The example given in Table 16.6 illustrates the difficulties of using a points system of evaluation. Using this system, the equipment supplied by B scores higher than that of A. If the evaluation teams, however, regarded A as having a greater suitability for use, then clearly the points allocation is flawed or the awarding of points is not based on a correct judgment.

16.7.11 Cost factors

References to the important financial factors relating to the acquisition of capital equipment are made in sections 16.7.4 and 16.7.12. Some additional cost aspects that apply to the acquisition of capital items are set out in Table 16.7.

16.7.12 Evaluating capital investments

Although this is the province of the finance department, buyers should have an awareness of the methods of appraising expenditure on capital items. Three highly simplified examples of these approaches – payback, average rate of return and two applications of discounted cash flow – are briefly considered below.

Table 16.6 Weighting factors according to their importance for capital equipment

Factor	*Assigned number of points*	*Points achieved*	
		A	B
Overall suitability for purpose	500	400	300
General quality of technical design	400	300	400
Estimated life	400	300	400
Economy of performance and reliability	300	200	300
Economy of maintenance and after-sales service	300	250	200
Environment factors	300	200	300
General reputation of supplier	200	200	300
Estimated trade-in value at end of life or on disposal	200	200	300
Total	**2600**	**2050**	**2500**

Table 16.7 Factors to be considered in quotations for capital equipment

Factor	*Supplier*			*Notes*
	A £	B £	C £	
Ex-works cost of equipment				
Delivery and handling costs				
Cost of insurance				
Additional costs for essential spares				
Installation costs for essential spares				
Installation costs payable to supplier				
Cost of extra work specified by purchaser				
Customs or other duties/tariffs for imported equipment				
Price escalation charges computed by using accepted formulae				
Terms of payment				
Warranty/guarantee payments				
Servicing, if any by supplier				
Less discounts				
trade-ins				
other deductions				
Less capital allowances				
Final cost				

16.7.13 Payback

This is the time required for cash returns to equal the initial cash expenditure.

Example 16.2

The payback approach

An enterprise buys two machines, each costing £20,000. The net cash flows – after operating costs and expenses but not allowing for depreciation – are expected to be as shown below.

Year	*Cash flow machine A (£)*	*Cash flow machine B (£)*
1	5000	4500
2	5000	4500
3	5000	4500
4	5000	4500
5	5000	4500
6	–	4500
7	–	4500
	25,000	31,500

$$\text{Payback} = \frac{£20{,}000}{5000} = 4 \text{ years or } \frac{£20{,}000}{4500} = 4.4 \text{ years}$$

Example 16.2 shows the principle and fallacy of the payback approach. Machine A has the better payback figure as the initial cost is recovered in less time than for machine B. Machine B has an inferior payback, but the return extends over two further years.

Because of its simplicity, The payback method is probably the most popular method of investment appraisal. With this approach, the emphasis is on risk rather than profitability – that is, the risk with machine B is somewhat greater because it has a longer payback period.

16.7.14 Average rate of return (prior to tax)

This method aims to assess the average annual net profit after depreciation and other cash outlays as a percentage of the original cost. Three simple calculations are required:

1 *The annual rate of depreciation* – this is calculated by the 'straight line' method, namely:

$$\frac{\text{Cost} - \text{Residual value}}{\text{Estimated value}}$$

Assuming that machines A and B each had an estimated residual value of £1000, their annual depreciation rates would be:

$$\text{Machine B} = \frac{£20{,}000 - £1000}{7} = £2714$$

2 *Deduct depreciation from the average annual profit*

$$\text{Machine A} = £5000 - £3800 = £1200$$
$$\text{Machine B} = £4500 - £2714 = £1786$$

3 *Express net annual profit after depreciation as a percentage of the initial cost*

$$\text{Machine A} = \frac{£1200 \times 100}{£20{,}000} = 6 \text{ per cent}$$

$$\text{Machine B} = \frac{£1786 \times 100}{£20{,}000} = 8.93 \text{ per cent}$$

An alternative formula is that of return on capital employed (ROCE):

$$\frac{\text{Average annual profit after depreciation}}{\text{Original capital invested}} \times 100 \text{ per cent}$$

This method shows that the investment in machine B is the most profitable and allows comparison with the returns anticipated from alternative investments.

16.7.15 Discounting

Discounting is the opposite process to compounding. *Compounding* shows the extent to which a sum of money invested now will grow over a period of years at a given rate of compound interest. Thus, £100 invested now at 10 per cent compound interest will be worth £110 in one year's time and £121 at the end of two years.

Discounting shows the value at the present time of a sum of money payable or receivable at some future time. This present value can be obtained by dividing the amount now held by that to which it would have grown at a given rate of compound interest. So:

$$\frac{£100}{£110} = 0.9091 \text{ or } \frac{£100}{£121} = 0.08264 \text{ or } \frac{1}{(1+r)^n}$$

where r is the rate of interest and n the number of years we are discounting.

These present values are *discount factors* and state that £100 at the end of one year at 10 per cent is worth £0.9091 or £0.8264 at the end of two years. In practice, the discount factors would be obtained from present value tables, which give the following for £1 at 10 per cent and 12 per cent respectively:

Years	*10%*	*12%*
1	£0.9091	£0.8929
2	£0.8264	£0.7972
3	£0.7513	£0.7118
4	£0.6830	£0.6355
5	£0.6209	£0.5674
6	£0.5645	£0.5066
7	£0.5132	£0.4523

Net present value and yield methods illustrate two of a number of approaches based on discounted cash flow.

16.7.16 Net present value (NPV)

In this method the minimum required return on the capital investment is determined. The present value of anticipated future cash flows is that discounted at this rate. If the sum of these discounted cash flows exceeds the initial expenditure, then the investment will be given a higher return than forecast. Using the figures given above and a minimum required rate of 10 per cent, the discounted cash flows for machines A and B would be:

Machine A

Year	*Cash return*	*10% factor*	*Net present value*
1	£5000	0.909	£4545
2	£5000	0.826	£4130
3	£5000	0.751	£3755
4	£5000	0.683	£3415
5	£5000	0.621	£3105
6	–	–	–
7	–	–	–
	£25,000		£18,950

Machine B

Year	*Cash return*	*10% factor*	*Net present value*
1	£4500	0.909	£4090
2	£4500	0.826	£3717
3	£4500	0.751	£3379
4	£4500	0.683	£3073
5	£4500	0.621	£2794
6	£4500	0.565	£2542
7	£4500	0.513	£2308
	£31,500		£21,903

Machine A has a total return that is less than the initial expenditure of £20,000 – that is, less than the 10 per cent required. In contrast, machine B will exceed the given figure. This approach is very useful in evaluating which of two alternative investment propositions to adopt.

16.7.17 The buyer and capital investment purchases

Purchasing capital equipment requires extensive liaison between procurement, technical specialists and finance to ensure that when a purchase is made the company/organisation is completely satisfied. So far as procurement is concerned, the following considerations are paramount:

- It is likely to be a one-off procurement event for which there is no technical, contractual or commercial precedent.
- The specification must reflect the performance required, with sufficient allowance for the total capacity that may be required.
- The detail to be included in the contract must be established. Some facets of the contract include the right to reject for failure to meet the specification; damages for late delivery; provision of drawings; provision of spare parts and their cost.
- The price and payment terms (including foreign currency considerations) must be thought out.
- The lifecycle cost of the equipment must be calculated.
- Supply market research should be conducted to identify potential suppliers.
- Disposal of displaced assets should follow a defined process.

16.8 Production materials

Risley[7] has classified materials and parts for use in manufacture under the following three headings:

- *Raw materials* – primarily from agriculture and the various extractive industries – minerals, ores, timber, petroleum and scrap – as well as dairy products, fruits and vegetables sold to a processor.
- *Semi-finished goods and processed materials* – to which some work has been applied or value added. Such items are finished only in part or may have been formed into

shapes and specifications to make them readily usable by the buyer. These products lose their identity when incorporated into other products. Examples include: metal sections, rods, sheets, tubing, wires, castings, chemicals, cloth, leather, sugar and paper.

- *Component parts and assemblies* – completely finished products of one manufacturer that can be used as part of a more complicated product by another manufacturer. These do not lose their original identity when incorporated into other products. Examples include: bearings, controls, gauges, gears, wheels, transistors, radio and TV tubes, car engines and windscreens.

16.9 Raw materials

16.9.1 Characteristics of raw materials

Raw materials are:

- often 'sensitive' commodities
- frequently dealt with in recognised commodity markets
- safeguarded in many organisations by backward integration strategies.

16.9.2 Sensitive commodities

Sensitive commodities are raw materials – copper, cotton, lead, zinc, hides and rubber – the prices of which fluctuate daily. Here the buyer will aim to time purchases to fulfil requirements at the most competitive prices.

The main economic and political factors that influence market conditions are:

- interest rates, such as the minimum lending rate
- currency fluctuations, such as the strength of sterling
- inflation, such as the effect of increased material and labour costs
- government policies, such as import controls or stockpiling
- 'glut' or shortage supply factors, such as crop failure
- relationships between the exporting and importing country, such as oil as a political weapon.

16.9.3 Information regarding market conditions

The main sources of information regarding present and future market conditions for a commodity such as copper are as follows:

- *Government sources* – in the UK, the Department for Business, Innovation and Skills.
- *Documentary sources* – these may be 'general', such as the *Financial Times*, or specialised, such as *World Metal Statistics*, published by the World Bureau of Metal Statistics, or the *Metal Bulletin* and the *Mining Journal*.
- *Federations* – the British Non-ferrous Metals Federation or International Wrought Copper Council, Eurometaux – the European Association of Metals.

- *Exchanges* – these include independent research undertaken by brokers and dealers into metal resources and the short-term and long-term prospects for the commodity and daily prices of commodities dealt with by the exchange.
- *Analysts* – these include economists and statisticians employed by undertakings to advise on corporate planning and purchasing policies and external units, such as the Commodities Research Unit and the Commodity Research Bureau.

The task of the buyer is to evaluate information and recommendations from sources including the above when relevant, and put forward appropriate policies that fall broadly into two classes: hand-to-mouth and forward buying.

16.9.4 Hand-to-mouth buying

This is buying according to need rather than in the quantities that are most economical. Circumstances in which this policy might be adopted are where prices are falling or where a change in design is imminent and it is desirable to avoid large stocks.

16.9.5 Forward buying

This applies to all purchases made for the purpose of increasing stocks beyond the minimum quantities required to meet normal production needs based on average delivery times.

Forward buying may be undertaken:

- to obtain the benefit of economic order quantities (EOQs)
- when savings made by buying in anticipation of a price increase will be greater than the interest lost on increased stocks or the cost of storage
- to prevent suspension of production, due to occurrences such as strikes, by stockpiling to avoid shortages
- to secure materials for future requirements when the opportunity arises, for example, some steel sections are only rolled at infrequent intervals.

Forward buying can apply to any material or equipment. A particular aspect of forward buying applicable to commodities is dealing in 'futures'.

16.10 Futures dealing

Futures dealing is an example of dealing in derivatives. *Derivatives* are financial contracts that have no intrinsic value but instead derive their value from something else. They hedge the risk of owning things that are subject to unexpected price fluctuations, such as foreign currencies and sensitive commodities. There are two main types of derivatives: futures and contracts for future delivery at a specified price and options that give one party the opportunity to buy from or sell to the other at a prearranged price.

A commodity such as copper may be bought direct from the producer or a commodity market. The latter provides the advantages of futures dealing. The London markets are divided into two main areas: metals and soft commodities. The

six major primary non-ferrous metals dealt with on the London Metal Exchange (LME) are:

- primary high-grade aluminium
- 'A' grade copper
- high-grade zinc
- primary nickel
- standard lead
- tin.

The LME also offers contracts for secondary aluminium and silver. The soft commodities markets dealing in cocoa, sugar, vegetable oils, wool and rubber are the concern of the Futures and Options Exchange. The International Petroleum Exchange covers crude oil, gas, gasoline, naphtha and heavy fuel oil.

16.10.1 Functions of exchanges

Four functions of exchanges are to:

- enable customers, merchants and dealers to obtain supplies readily and at a competitive market price – on the LME, for example, contracts traded are for delivery on any market day within the period of three months ahead, except for silver, which can be dealt in up to seven months ahead
- smooth out price fluctuations due to changes in demand and supply
- provide insurance against price fluctuations by means of the procedure known as 'hedging' (see Example 16.3)
- provide appropriately located storage facilities to enable participants to make or take physical delivery of approved brands of commodities.

16.10.2 Differences between forward and futures dealing

- Futures are always traded on a recognised exchange.
- Futures contracts have standardised terms (see section 16.10.4).
- Futures exchanges use clearing houses to ensure that futures contracts are fulfilled. The London Clearing House (LCH), for example, is a professional, international clearing house owned by the six UK clearing banks. The responsibility for completing the execution of trade across the LME ring is transferred from the brokers to the LCH by what is called *novation*. The clearing house is, thus, the buyer and seller of last resort.
- Futures trading requires margins and daily settlements. A *margin* is a cash deposit paid by a trader to a broker who, in effect, lends money to enable the futures contract to be purchased. Traders hope to sell their futures contracts for more than their purchase price, enabling them to repay the broker's loan, have their margins returned and take their profits. No broker may margin a contract for less than the exchange minimum. Each trading day, every futures contract is assessed for liquidity. If the margin drops below a certain level, the trader must deposit an additional, or 'maintenance margin'. Futures positions are easily closed as the trader has the option of taking physical delivery.

16.10.3 The purpose of and conditions for futures dealing

The purpose of futures dealing is to reduce uncertainty arising from price fluctuations due to supply and demand changes. This benefits both producers and consumers as the producer can sell forward at a sure price and the consumer can buy forward and fix material costs in accordance with a predetermined price. Manufacturers of copper wire, for example, might be able to obtain an order based on the current price of copper. If they think the price of copper may rise before they can obtain their raw materials, they can immediately cover their copper requirements by buying on the LME at the current price for delivery three months ahead, thus avoiding any risk of an increase in price.

For futures dealing to be undertaken, five conditions *must* apply:

1. The commodity must be capable of being stored without deterioration for a reasonable period.
2. The commodity must be capable of being graded for the purpose of providing a basis for description in the contract.
3. The commodity must be capable of being traded in its raw or semi-raw state.
4. Producers and consumers must approve the concept of futures dealing in the commodity.
5. There must be a free market in the commodity, with many buyers and sellers, making it impossible for a few traders to control the market and, thus, prevent perfect competition.

16.10.4 Some terms used in futures contracts

- *Arbitrage* – the (usually) simultaneous purchase of futures in one market against the sale of futures in a different market to profit from a difference in price.
- *Backwardation* – the backwardation situation exists when forward prices are less than current 'spot' ones.
- *Contango* – a contango situation exists when forward prices are greater than current 'spot' ones.
- *Force majeure* – the clause that absolves the seller or buyer from the contract due to events beyond their control, such as unavoidable export delays in producing countries due to strikes at the supplier's plant. Note that there is now no *force majeure* clause in a London Metal Exchange contract. Customers affected by a *force majeure* declared by a producer or refiner can always turn to the LME as a source of supply. Equally, suppliers can deliver their metal to the LME if their customers declare *force majeure*.
- *Futures* – contracts for the purpose of selling commodities for delivery sometime in the future on an organised exchange and subject to all the terms and conditions included in the rules of that exchange.
- *Hedging* – the use of futures contracts to insure against losses due to the effect of price fluctuations on the value of stocks of a commodity either held or to be acquired. Essentially, this is done by establishing a position in the futures market opposite one's position in the physical commodity. The operations of hedging can be described by means of a simplified example, given in Example 16.3.

Example 16.3

Hedging

1 On 1 June, X (manufacturer) buys stocks of copper to the value of £1000, which X hopes to make into cable wire and sell on 1 August for £2000, of which £750 represents manufacturing costs and £250 profit.
2 The price of copper falls by 1 August to £750 so X sells at £1750 – that is, X makes no profit.
3 To insure against the situation in (2), X, on 1 June, sells futures contracts in copper for £1000.
4 In August, if the price remains stable X will buy at this price, thus making a profit of £250 on the futures contract, which will offset any loss in manufacturing. If the price rises to £1250, X will lose on the futures contract, but this will be offset by gains on manufacturing. While trading refers to actual physical copper trading, a futures transaction is really dealing in price differences and the contract would be discharged by paying over or receiving the balance due.

- *Options* – a buyer who expects the price of a commodity to rise may pay option money to a dealer for the right to buy it at a stated future date – a *call option* – or sell at a future date – a *put option*.
- *Spot price* – the price for immediate cash payment.
- *Spot month* – the first deliverable month for which a quotation is available in the futures market.
- *Options contracts* – relate to the sale or purchasing of commodities that will occur at a specified price on a specified future date, but only if the prospective buyer or seller wishes to exercise the option to buy or sell at the predetermined *strike* or *exercise price*. Options, as we saw above, can be either 'call' or 'put'. Buyers of call options are exposed to limited risk as the most they can lose is the amount of the premium or the sum of money paid when the option is purchased. They have, however, an unlimited profit potential. Conversely, writers of put options have unlimited risk but limited profit potential. Mathematically, however, the odds favour the put option writer.

16.10.5 Commodities at the right price

Buying commodities is the province of specialists who have access to current and relevant information. Such specialists use two approaches to determine the right price, namely *fundamental analysis* and *technical analysis*.

- *Fundamental analysis* relies heavily on an assessment, both statistically and in other ways, of supply and demand. Statistics in particular, indicate whether the trend of prices is up or down. In addition to trends, fundamentalists take into account production, consumption and stocks. Thus an imbalance in production and consumption will affect prices. Prices will rise or fall according to whether less or more of a commodity is being produced than is consumed. Stock figures, according to the mood of the market, may be counted either way. In a *bull*, or rising, *market*, stocks tend to be held by producers or merchants, thus forcing consumers to bid

higher for available stocks of the commodity. In a falling, or *bear market*, consumers hive off their stocks and buy less of the commodity than they are using, while producers reduce prices to a level at which they can turn unsold stock into cash. Additionally, fundamental analysis pays attention to news items that affect sensitive commodities, such as wars, weather, natural disasters, political developments, environmental legislation, labour unrest and macroeconomic statistics from major economies.

- *Technical analysis* claims to be quicker and more comprehensive than fundamental analysis as the market is efficient and the current market price clears the market or brings it into equilibrium. If this is so, it is unnecessary to do more than look at the record of prices to read the future of prices. Technical analysis, therefore, makes great use of chart formations, such as can be obtained from plotting prices on two different timescales, such as daily price movements and the one-year rolling average – that is, every day, the latest day's price is added to the list of prices, the oldest year ago price is dropped and a new average for the past year is calculated. Chartists have developed a language of their own for interpreting their charts, such as 'base formation', 'break out', 'overprofit', 'oversold' and so on, to name a few. The results of charting are offered to commodity market makers, often at a considerable charge. The basic concept is that of using the past to predict the future. Chartists, however, are no more able to forecast the effects of news than those who rely on fundamental analysis. In practice, a combination of the two approaches is often used. It has been rightly observed that 'the whole point of having an idea of the "right price" is to spot when the market price is wrong'. Companies have been forced into liquidation by making long-term forecasts on the assumption that today's price is right when, in fact, it is wrong and vice versa.

16.10.6 Commodity trade financing

There are financing needs of all stages of the supply chain, including producers/exporters, trading companies, processors, importers, end users/distributors.

A Trade Finance example[8] is shown in Figure 16.8.

Understanding the commodity and risk profiling is shown in Figure 16.9.

16.11 Methods of commodity dealing

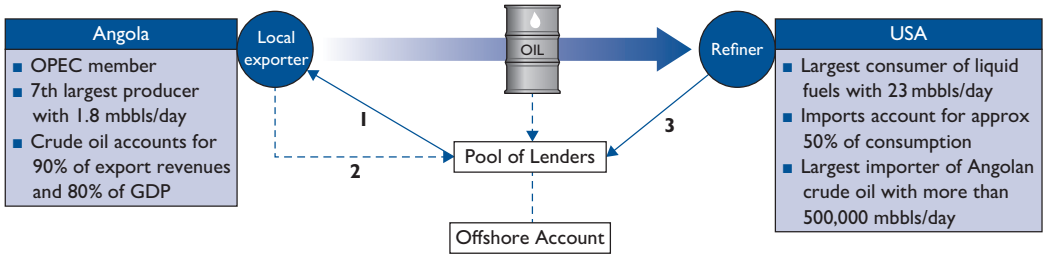
Dealing in commodities or derivatives is a highly complicated activity involving the possibilities of heavy gains or losses. In 1995 Barings Bank 'went bust' when one of its employees, Nick Leeson, gambled that the Nikkei 225 index of 225 leading Japanese company shares would not move materially from its normal trading range. That assumption was shattered by the Kobe earthquake on 17 January 1995. Leeson, who attempted to conceal his gamble, lost the bank $14 billion. Warren Buffett[9] said:

> We view them [derivatives] as time bombs both for the parties that deal in them and the economic system . . . In our view derivatives are financial weapons of mass destruction, carrying dangers that, while now latent, are potentially lethal.

An organisation buying large quantities of a commodity will therefore employ a specialist buyer who has made a specialist study of that commodity and its

Figure 16.8 Trade finance example – crude oil from Angola to the US

Pre-export financing example of Angolan crude oil exports to US refineries



1 Based on solid track record of Angolan crude oil exports to US refiners, a pool of lenders will pre-finance future exports of Angolan crude oil by a local exporter (the Borrower) to US refiners.

2 The financing is secured as the Borrower assigns the proceeds of the exports contracts payable in an offshore collection account pledged to the Lenders.

The actual and future value of the export proceeds (based on prevailing market prices) shall at all times represent more than 100+% of the outstanding amounts under the financing.

Additional security package can include security interest in onshore current and fixed assets.

3 On receipt of cargo the Refiner pays into an Offshore Account pledged to the Lenders. The financing is then repeated.

During the whole transaction price risk is mitigated.

Figure 16.9 Understanding the commodity and risk profiling

Understanding and mitigating the risks behind a commodity transaction is at the heart of the expertise

Commodity (Collateral)

		Mitigants
Performance	The risk that an exporter does not deliver the goods in the context of a commercial contract backing a credit facility	**Track record,** contractual terms, capacity and cost analysis
Commodity price	The risk that commodities' price volatility negatively impact the cash flows of a specific transaction or the value of assets	Overcollateralisation, **marked-to-market adjustments** or hedging
Country	The risks inherent to the situation of a particular country that may directly or indirectly negatively affect a transaction	Analysis of **commodity's strategic importance,** offshore repayments, political risk insurance
Corporate	The risk related to the financial health of a counterparty based in most cases on an assessment of the business model, balance sheet and income statements and cash flow analysis	Financial analysis of the company, ownership and strategy. **In-depth liquidity analysis**
Payment	The risk that an importer does not comply with its payment obligation in the context of a commercial contract backing a credit facility	**Track record,** letter of credit or payment guarantee
Damage or loss of goods	Self explanatory	Track record, **insurance**
Quality & quantity	Goods delivered do not comply with contractual specifications in terms of quantity and quality	Track record, Clients–Supplier relationship, **overcollateralisation,** first class inspection companies
FX	Self explanatory	Trade is **back to back in USD,** offshore repayments
Legal	Self explanatory	**Legal opinions** (local and international)

markets. Often, commodity buying will be a separate department distinct from other procurement operations. Where quantities or the undertaking are smaller, a broker may be retained to procure commodity requirements – in effect, subcontracting this aspect of procurement.

Other approaches are designed to enable non-specialists to undertake commodity buying with a minimum of risk. These include the following.

16.11.1 Time budgeting or averaging

This is an application of hand-to-mouth buying in which supplies of the commodity are bought as required and no stocks are held. As supplies are always bought at the ruling price, losses are divided, but, of course, the prospect of windfall gains is obviated. This policy cannot be applied if it is necessary to carry inventory.

16.11.2 Budgeting or cost averaging

This approach is based on spending a fixed amount of money in each period, say, monthly. The quantity purchased therefore increases when the price falls and reduces when the price rises.

Example 16.4

The budgeting or cost averaging approach

Assume the monthly requirement for commodity X is 100 tonnes, the average price of which, from experience, is estimated at £100. We therefore budget to spend £100 × 100 = £10,000 monthly. The price fluctuates as shown below.

Date	*Cost per tonne*	*Amount spent*	*Tonnes purchased*
January	£98	£10,000	102.04
February	£97	£10,000	103.09
March	£95	£10,000	105.26
April	£96	£10,000	104.16
May	£95	£10,000	105.26
June	£93	£10,000	107.52
July	£92	£10,000	108.69
August	£95	£10,000	105.26
September	£97	£10,000	103.09
October	£100	£10,000	100.00
November	£102	£10,000	98.03
December	£104	£10,000	96.15
		£120,000	1238.55

$$\text{Average cost per tonne, total cycle} = \frac{£120{,}000}{1238.55} = £96.89$$

Purchases over the total cycle exceed requirements by 38.55 tonnes. There is thus an average saving of £3.11 per tonne.

16.11.3 Volume timing of purchases

This approach is based on forward buying when prices are falling and hand-to-mouth buying when prices are rising. Its success depends on accurate forecasting of market trends.

Example 16.5

The volume timing approach

Assume that the price of a commodity with a constant monthly requirement of 100 tonnes is between £100 and £120 per tonne. The buyer is authorised to purchase up to three months' supply.

In January, market intelligence is that the current price of £100 is likely to rise over the next three months to £120. An order is therefore placed for 300 tonnes at £100 per tonne.

In early March, intelligence is that, over the next 3 months – April to June – the price of £120 will rise further to £135. A further 300 tonnes are ordered at £120 per tonne. In early June, it is forecast that prices will fall. For each of the months July, August, September and October, therefore, only one month's supply is bought, at £130, £125, £120 and £110 respectively. In September, the forecast is of a further rise to £125. Therefore, a forward order for three months' supply is placed at £110 per tonne.

The savings from forward buying on the upswing and hand-to-mouth buying on the downswing are shown in the table.

Date	*Quantity purchased (tonnes)*	*Price paid per tonne* £	*Market price per tonne* £	*Actual cost* £	*Market cost* £
January	100	100	100	10,000	10,000
February	100	100	110	10,000	11,000
March	100	100	120	10,000	12,000
April	100	120	125	12,000	12,500
May	100	120	130	12,000	13,000
June	100	120	135	12,000	13,500
July	100	130	130	13,000	13,000
August	100	125	125	12,500	12,500
September	100	120	120	12,000	12,000
October	100	110	110	11,000	11,000
November	100	110	120	11,000	12,000
December	100	110	125	11,000	12,500
	1200			136,500	145,000

$$\text{Average price paid per tonne over year} = \frac{£136{,}500}{1200} = £113.75$$

$$\text{Average market price per tonne} = \frac{£145{,}000}{1200} = £120.83$$

$$\text{Saving over total period} = \frac{\text{Average market price} - \text{Average price paid}}{\text{Average market price}}$$

$$= \frac{£120.83 - £113.75}{120.83} \times 100 = \frac{7.08}{120.83} \times 100$$

$$= 5.86\ \%$$

16.12 Procurement of non-domestic gas and electricity

The deregulation of energy supply started in the UK with the implementation of the Gas Act 1986. Then the Electricity Act 1989 brought chances and opportunities, risks and complexities for those responsible for the procurement non-domestic energy supplies. To exploit these opportunities and minimise the risks, purchasers of gas and electricity require knowledge of energy regulation, the relevant supply chains and energy markets, pricing, the process of switching suppliers, the use of online retail energy marketplaces and energy consultants and management.

16.13 Energy regulation

The Office of Gas and Electricity Markets (Ofgem) is the regulator of Britain's gas and electricity. Ofgem was established in 1999 by the merger of the Office of Gas Supply (Ofgas) and Office of Electricity Regulation (Offer); set up under the Gas Act 1986 and the Electricity Act 1989 respectively. Under the Utilities Act 2000, Ofgem ceased to be an independent regulator and now reports to the Gas and Electricity Markets Authority (GEMA) and the Gas and Electricity Consumer Council. The Utilities Act also put Ofgem under the direct control of the Secretary of State for Trade and Industry (now DECC).

Ofgem also has enforcement powers under the Competition Act 1998 and the power to enforce consumer protection law under the Enterprise Act 2002. It can also name and shame companies that it believes are acting against the interests of gas and electricity consumers. In February 2008 Ofgem made a decision that National Grid had breached the Chapter II prohibition of the Competition Act 1998 and Article 82 of the EC Treaty. Ofgem fined National Grid £41.6 million. National Grid appealed to the Competition Appeal Tribunal against the decision. CAT upheld Ofgem's decision but reduced the penalty to £30 million.

Any organisation seeking to supply gas and electricity to customers has to be licensed by Ofgem, which is one of its powers under the Gas and Electricity Acts. One area it does not licence is the offshore gas industry, which is regulated by the Department of Energy and Climate Change (DECC).

16.14 Energy supply chains in the UK

Electric generation in the UK from renewable sources increased by 21 per cent between 2013 and 2014, to reach 64.7 TWh. Capacity grew by 24 per cent (to 24.6 GW) over the same period.[10] Solar photovoltaic generation more than doubled in 2014 to 4.1 TWh. Offshore wind generation was 17 per cent higher than in 2013, with capacity up 22 per cent.

In Q3 of 2012 the electricity generated from Coal was 35.4%, Oil 0.9%, Nuclear 22.3%, Gas 28.2% and Renewables 11.7%.[11]

In the UK gas is delivered to nine reception points, or terminals, by gas producers. The gas producers deliver gas to the terminals from offshore facilities at fields beneath the sea around the British Isles and through pipelines which connect to the UK from Norway, Holland and Belgium. Terminals at the Isle of Grain and Milford Haven allow LNG to be delivered by boat from producers all over the world. The National

Transmission System (NTS) is the high pressure part of National Grid's transmission system and it consists of more than 7600 kilometres of top quality welded steel pipeline operating at pressures of up to 85 bar. The gas is pushed through the system using 23 strategically placed compressor stations. In the UK there are twelve local distribution zones (LDZs) managed by four distribution network operators. The National Grid has the LDZs for the purpose of calculating shipper's charges for transporting gas within the National Transmission System (NTS).

16.15 Markets

Markets for gas and electricity are both wholesale and retail.

16.15.1 Wholesale markets

Wholesale markets are those in which electricity and gas are traded between parties before being sold to suppliers that, in turn, sell to consumers. In the present context, the parties to the wholesale market are gas producers, electricity generators, transmitters, distributors and suppliers.

The distributors or transmitters are monopolies regulated by price controls based on the RPI – X formula. Using this formula, the prices that transmitters or distributors can charge is limited to the increase in the retail price index less a proportion to drive up transmitter or distribution efficiency. Thus if the RPI is 3 per cent and X is 2 per cent, prices cannot be increased by more than 1 per cent annually.

In 1999 Ofgem announced new (wholesale) trading arrangements for gas (NGTA) and electricity (NETA), which were implemented in 2001. These arrangements are designed to produce prices that respond to competitive pressure and balance the supply for a utility. The aims are to be achieved by online trading on power exchanges – a balancing mechanism operated by the National Grid, a settlement process and associated derivatives markets. Like other exchanges, those for energy enable suppliers to place contracts with producers and generators either for several years ahead or on a daily basis for gas and at half-hour intervals for electricity. They can also reduce price volatility by means of the classic approaches of futures, hedging and options.

In 2014 Ofgem has referred the energy market to the Competition and Markets Authority (CMA) for a full investigation. At the time of the referral it was anticipated that CMA would publish its final decisions by the end of 2015.

The process of balancing is best illustrated by reference to electricity supply. Approximately 24 hours before its physical delivery, suppliers begin to fine-tune their positions to cover any shortfall between their actual positions and that covered by their contracts on the forwards and futures market. Any shortages will be covered by short-term spot trading. Suppliers must declare their positions up to 35 hours before delivery. This is known as *gate closure*. From gate closure to the time of physical delivery, the operator (the National Grid) works to ensure that 'the lights stay on'. This is possible because the UK transmission systems are fully interconnected and the operator can use the bids made on the power exchanges to balance demand and supply.

16.15.2 Retail markets

Retail markets are those in which suppliers sell gas or electricity to consumers.

16.16 Pricing

16.16.1 Gas pricing

Gas was traditionally invoiced in therms but now, like electricity, is charged in kilowatt hours (kWh). There are approximately 29.3 kilowatt hours to a therm.

UKERC[12] point out that natural gas production in the UK peaked in 2000, and in 2004 it became a net importer. A decade later and the UK now imports about half the natural gas it consumes. Given the nature of the UK's gas balance, two arenas are of particular significance: development in the Northwest European gas market (and the broader EU strategy of gas market integration) and developments in the global liquefied Natural Gas market.

The report then hypothesised that,

> The supply chain approach addresses the shortcomings of the current energy security literature that we consider to be fourfold: first, it tends to be too abstract and fails to engage with the specific characteristics of natural gas; second, it assumes that oil and gas are the same when it comes to assessing energy security; third, it is too state-centric and tends to ignore the crucial role of companies and other stakeholders involved in the gas markets; and fourth, it is overly concerned with upstream physical security of supply.

The price paid for gas comprises:

- operating costs
- other costs (network and environmental/social)
- network costs
- wholesale costs
- profit
- VAT.

The price of gas can vary due to such factors as:

- the season – the price of gas is more in winter than summer
- the annual volume of gas used
- the location of the customer
- the duration of the contract
- whether the contract for the supply of gas is firm or interruptible – a firm supply is guaranteed unless there is an emergency whereas, due to weather or market conditions, interruptible customers may be required to interrupt their use of natural gas either by switching to an alternative fuel source or to curtail their use, but, in return, they enjoy lower rates than firm commercial customers.

16.16.2 Electricity pricing

For a detailed overview of Electricity Distribution Price Control Cost and Revenue reporting see the Ofgem Regulatory Instructions and Guidance: version 3.1 published in March 2014.

A typical invoice for electricity will be broken down into the following elements.

- *Total kilowatts used* – this is known as the *energy charge*. The energy charge along with the profit, are the only negotiable elements. The most important aspect of the energy charge is the time at which the energy is used.

- *Transmission charge* – this is the amount paid to the National Grid (NG) in England and differs according to capacity and location. Such charges, for example, tend to be low in the north and high in the south of England. Suppliers pay three forms of transmission charges:
  - demand charges, based on demand during the three annual peak demand periods (triads), which differ depending on zones
  - energy consumption charges, based on the energy consumed between 1600 and 1900 hours throughout the year
  - charges for non-energy ancillary services, covering reserve generation and standby services to facilitate balancing.
- *Distribution charges* – these also vary according to the customer's regional location and the capacity held for the customer.
- *Meter charges* – these are discussed later.
- *Fossil fuel levy (FFL)* – a charge to reduce consumption of electricity produced by using fossil fuels, such as coal and oil, and increase usage of electricity produced by renewable energy sources, such as wind power and geothermal energy.
- *The Climate Change Levy (CCL)* is a tax on the use of energy in industry, commerce and the public sector. It was introduced in 2001. More information can be found on the Department of Energy and Climate Change website. The current CCL rates can be found on the HM Revenue and Customs website. A general guide to CCL is available at www.hmrc.gov.uk (click on the 'Environmental taxes' section of 'Excise and other').

16.17 Procuring energy contracts

The procurement of energy contracts is a highly specialised task requiring considerable expertise. The traditional annual tender routine brings with it significant price risks. If the tender process coincides with high market prices the buyer could pay circa 50 per cent more than another buyer whose tender coincides with low prices. Gas and electricity markets are highly volatile and complex.

16.17.1 Price structure

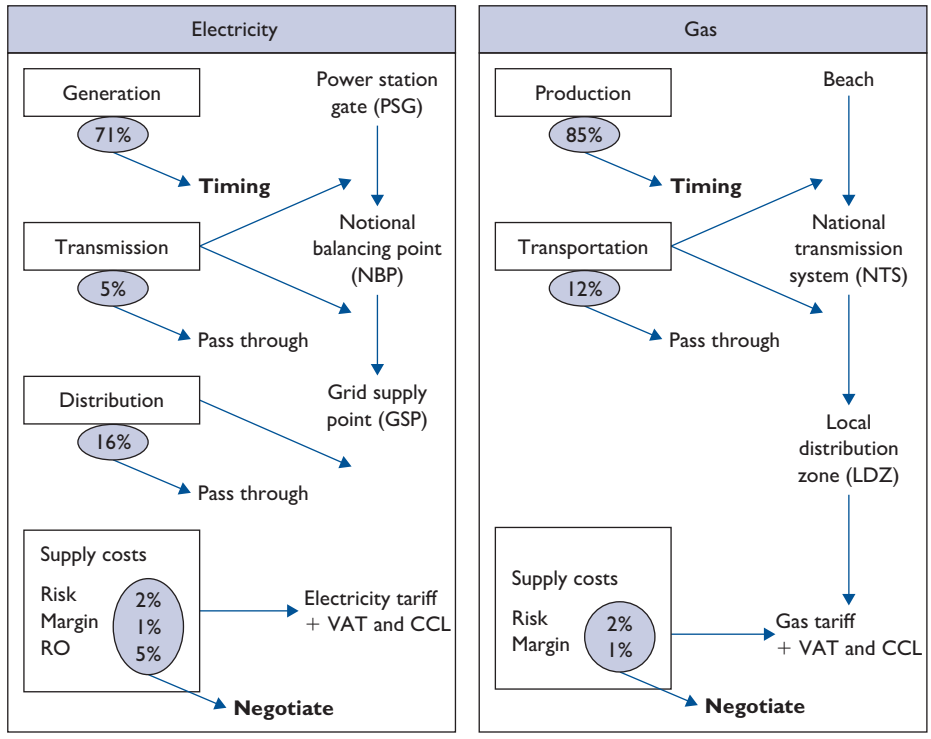
Electricity and gas prices (see Figure 16.10) are made up of the raw energy cost, transmission and distribution costs, data and meter service costs and supplier costs. Price elements are either fixed, such as regulated pass-through costs, or flexible, such as time-to-market decisions (when in the year to buy) or supplier negotiation.

Electricity generated from fossil fuels, known as brown electricity, is subject to the Climate Change Levy (CCL). CCL was initially set at 0.43p/kWh, a rate which increased in April 2015 to 0.554p/kWh. Electricity generated from renewable sources, known as green electricity, was exempt from CCL but this exemption was removed in the UK budget of 2015.

16.17.2 Market analysis

In 2014, total UK overall primary energy consumption in primary energy terms (that is, fuels obtained directly from natural sources) was 193.4 million tonnes of oil

Figure 16.10 Electricity and gas price structures



equivalent (Mtoe), 6.6 per cent lower than in 2013, and 7.0 per cent lower than the 2012 level.[13]

16.17.3 Organising to procure energy

Prior to tendering a great deal of information will have to be gathered and collated, including:

- full details of site(s) including activities, addresses and special characteristics
- electricity Meter Point Administration (MPA) number (a 21-digit reference introduced in 1998)
- all MPANs for gas and electricity
- meter serial number
- meter operator
- half-hourly data files for last twelve months
- working days
- shift patterns/hours of work
- details of any planned changes in usage
- agreed supply capacity.

16.17.4 Price risks

So what is the price risks involved?[14] There are four main aspects of price risk in energy contracts, which should be covered in a robust risk management strategy:

- *Volume risk* refers to the change in consumption either planned or unplanned which will affect budgets. Other volume considerations such as any minimum or maximum consumption clauses in contracts should also be taken into account in your risk strategy. These can attract high financial penalties and without proper control, they could have a significant impact on the overall costs.
- *Procurement risk* refers to the level of authorisation and expertise of the person making the contract decision. In a stable market, no significant energy procurement expertise is required to choose the time to buy energy. However, in a volatile market, prices can be missed by a lack of necessary authorisation, and any price that is held open for a long period of time attracts a high price premium. Energy market analysis and expertise are therefore essential to ensure an understanding of the price drivers for the short-, medium- and long-term markets.
- *Operational risk* details contingency plans for dealing with problems which may prevent the procurement of energy such as ICT issues or key personnel being unavailable from both the supplier and purchaser side.
- *Value risk* essentially details the price risk and the measures being taken to minimise 100 per cent exposure to the markets. This can be achieved, for example, by having stops and targets on time periods or choosing to build up the volume over time.

16.18 Energy consultants and management

Because of the complexity of energy management, companies may outsource both their energy buying and energy management. Gas and electricity brokers such as EnergyQuote undertake both to negotiate the best deals on behalf of clients and provide services beyond the procurement stage too, such as energy audits, monitoring and bill checking. A register of approved energy consultants is kept by the Energy Institute, (Register of Professional Energy Consultants (RPEC)). It may be noted that in the UK from 2015, all large organisations employing over 250 people will be required to undertake energy audits under the new Energy Savings opportunity scheme (ESOS). When consultants are used they should be remunerated with fixed fees, not shared savings agreements.

Buyers of gas and electricity can obtain much help from associations of purchasers that share information and expertise in exchange for a fee. Such associations include the Energy Information Centre, the government's Energy Efficiency Best Practice Programme and, for big companies, the Major Energy Users Council. There is also the European Council for an Energy Efficient Economy (ECEEE). Details of these organisations are available on the Internet.

16.19 Component parts and assemblies

A *component* is a structure that has parts and connections. The parts are also components and the *connections* are to other components. Essentially, components are proprietary, where the supplier owns the intellectual property, or the buyer's organisation owns the intellectual property.

When buying components there are many considerations, including:

Make *vs* buy	There is, sometimes, the option of make or buy to which the buyer should be alert
Pricing	The price of proprietary components can be negotiated and discounts/rebates applied in specific circumstances
Tooling	Some components require tooling to be paid for. This may be a one-off charge or amortised over an agreed quantity
Free issue	The buyer may consider supplying raw materials for conversion into components but will need to consider scrap arising
Specification	The specification is vital for components, particularly when components have safety critical applications
Quality	Agreement must be reached about how components will be checked for quality compliance, e.g. tested to destruction
Quantity	There will be a relationship between price and quantity so it is an important decision to make how many to purchase
Continuing supply	For proprietary components the buyer must make sure there is a continuing supply available otherwise there will be a resourcing cost
Availability of drawings	If it is a proprietary item the buyer may consider requesting a copy of the drawings to facilitate supply if the supplier goes into administration or cannot meet an agreed lead time
Inventory	The buyer may ask the supplier to supply on the basis of consignment stock or to guarantee supply from his own stock.

16.20 Procurement and consumables

Apart from negotiating the actual procurement of consumables and MRO items, the procurement function can:

- liaise with maintenance staff to ensure that information regarding the cost, availability and delivery times is available, especially for 'critical' items
- advocate a policy of standardisation to avoid holding a variety of 'critical' spares
- suggest alternatives, such as outsourcing of catering and cleaning, which can obviate the need to hold stocks of food and cleaning materials
- minimise administrative and storage costs by the application of small order procedures and direct requisitioning by users against 'call-off' contracts, subject to approved safeguards
- analyse proposed maintenance contracts offered by suppliers and advise whether or not these should be accepted.

16.21 Construction supplies and bills of quantities

16.21.1 Construction supplies

Construction supplies differ in a number of respects from supplies purchased for manufacturing and service organisations.

- Construction supplies are purchased for use on a site that may be distant from the office that placed the orders or even in another country.
- Many construction supplies have a high bulk relative to their value, such as bricks and steel. Because of the high cost of transport, it is desirable that construction supplies are procured as near as possible to the site where they will be used.
- With many construction schemes, the procurement department will probably be asked to negotiate agreements for electricity, gas and water supplies and, occasionally, for sewage or effluent disposal.
- Specification of construction supplies will often be on the basis of:
  - instructions given by the client to an architect or civil engineer
  - architect's specifications.
- These specifications are often stated in the bill of quantities.
- In the interests of security, it is important that purchased supplies are delivered to site as close as possible to the time that they will be used.
- Because of the remoteness of the site from the contractor's office, procedures for recording of supplies received and issued will have to be agreed between the contractor's procurement department and site engineer.
- Some construction supplies may be 'free issue' supplies or 'customer furnished equipment' (CFE) – that is, items provided by the client for use in connection with a construction project that is being undertaken on the client's behalf.
- Sub-contracting is an important aspect of procurement for construction projects. Examples would be contracts for foundations, drainage, air-conditioning, lift installation, ventilation, structural steelwork and so on.
- Some construction supplies involve intra-company procurement. Thus, a construction company may also own stone, sand and gravel quarries that supply other companies within the group.
- Supplies may be transferred from one site or construction contract to another. It is therefore important to know what supplies are available at each site.
- Some discretion must be allowed to the site engineer to arrange for the supply of materials and services, such as hiring plant for particular parts of the project. All such orders should be notified to the contractor's procurement department to ensure that orders are placed and amounts due to suppliers are duly paid.

16.21.2 Bills of quantities

Bills of quantities are documents prepared by quantity surveyors from drawings and specifications prepared by architects or engineers, setting out as priceable items the detailed requirements of the work and the quantities involved.

Bills of quantities are usually formidable documents running to many pages and incorporating schedules of conditions of the contract in addition to the specifications of labour and materials required for the particular construction project. A typical bill of quantities will have the following six sections.

- *Section 1: Preliminary items and general conditions* – this sets out the terms and conditions of the contract and responsibilities of the contractor, architect and other parties involved in the contract, altogether with provision for the settlement of disputes arising from the contract.
- *Section 2: Trade preambles* – this sets out the general requirements relating to such aspects of a construction contract as:
  - excavation and earthwork
  - concrete work
  - brickwork and blockwork
  - roofing
  - woodwork
  - structural steelwork
  - metalwork
  - plumbing installation
  - foul drainage above ground
  - holes/chases/covers/supports for services
  - electrical and heating installations
  - floor, wall and ceiling finishes
  - glazing
  - painting and decorating.
- *Section 3: Demolition and spot items* – Foundation work
- *Section 4: General alteration and refurbishment work*
- *Section 5: Provisional sums and contingencies*
- *Section 6: Grand summary*

} These sections set out the quantities of work to be done

Typical extracts from Sections 2 and 4 relating to plumbing installations are shown in Figures 16.11 and 16.12.

The main aims of bills of quantities are to:

- enable tenderers to show against each item on the unpriced bill of quantities a price per unit covering labour, materials, overheads and profit and, when totalled in the 'grand summary', the items will provide the tender price for the contract
- enable the quantity surveyor, on receipt of the successful tender, to ensure that the contractor has made no serious errors that could cause complications at a later date
- avoid the inclusion by the tenderer of a large amount for contingencies
- assist in verifying the valuation of variations due to changes in design requested or agreed by the client after the contract has been placed.

Figure 16.11 Extract from a bill of quantities

Clause	SECTION 2 Plumbing installation — Trade Preambles
R1	**General** Before pricing the specification, contractors tendering are requested to visit the site, peruse the drawings and make themselves fully conversant with the nature of the works for which they are tendering.
	HOT AND COLD WATER
	GENERAL INFORMATION/REQUIREMENTS
R2	**The installation** – Drawing references: See architect's layout – Cold water: Mains fed – Hot water – direct system(s): Unvented direct water storage cylinder Heat source(s): Immersion heaters Control: Thermostat on immersion heater – Other requirements: Remove existing pipework Allow for general builder's work
R3	ELECTRICAL WORK in connection with the installation is not included, and will be carried out by the electrical contractor. Provide all information necessary for the completion of such work.
R4	SERVICE CONNECTIONS are covered elsewhere by a provisional sum.
R5	FUEL FOR TESTING: Costs incurred in the provision of fuel for testing and commissioning the installation are to be included in clause B40 section 1.
	GENERAL TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS
R6	PIPELINE SIZES: Calculate sizes to suit the probable simultaneous demand for the building and to ensure: – a water velocity of not more than 1.3 m/s for hot water and 2.0 m/s for cold water – suitable discharge rates at draw-off points – a filling time for the cold water storage cistern of not more than 1 hour.
R7	INSTALLATION GENERALLY: – Install, test and commission the hot and cold water systems so that they comply with BS 6700, water supply bye-laws, and the requirements of this section to provide a system free from leaks and the audible effects of expansion, vibration and water hammer. – All installation work to be carried out by qualified operatives. – Store all equipment, components and accessories in original packaging in dry conditions. – Protect plastic pipework from prolonged exposure to sunlight. Wherever practicable retain protective wrappings until practical completion. – Securely fix equipment, components and accessories in specified/approved locations, parallel or perpendicular to the structure of the building unless specified otherwise, using fixing brackets/mountings etc. recommended for the purpose by the equipment manufacturer. – In locations where moisture is present or may occur, use corrosion-resistant fittings/fixtures and avoid contact between dissimilar metals by use of suitable washers, gaskets, etc. – All equipment, pipework, components, valves, etc., forming the installation to be fully accessible for maintenance, repair or replacement unless specified or shown otherwise.

Figure 16.12 Extract from a bill of quantities

SECTION 4

Item	PLUMBING INSTALLATION			Plumbing Installations £	p
	GENERAL				
A	Bring to site and remove from site on completion all plant required for the work in this section		Item		
B	Maintain on site all plant required for the work in this section	...	Item		
	Installation as shown in the following sections to be carried out to the architect's drawings and specifications				
C	Soil and waste pipes	...	Item		
D	Hot and cold water supply including all fittings and rising mains	...	Item		
E	Dry riser installation	...	Item		
F	Sanitary fittings	...	Item		
G	Allow for carrying out all builder's work in connection with the plumbing installations as described including cutting and forming chases, cutting and forming holes, forming ducts through walls and floors, timber support battens, all dire stopping to walls and floors and everything necessary to complete the whole of the works to the reasonable satisfaction of the architect		Item		
H	Allow for testing and commissioning to plumbing installations including obtaining any certificates to be handed to the architect		Item		
I	Hand to the architect at practical completion of the works copies of the manufacturer's operation and maintenance instructions together with two sets of 'as fitted' drawings.		Item		
	PLUMBING INSTALLATIONS CARRIED TO SUMMARY FOLIO NO. 4/63				
			£		

16.22 Procurement of services

16.22.1 Procurement and services

In any large organisation, expenditure on services is a major element of total corporate spend. Fearon and Bales[15] in a study of 116 large USA organisations reported that:

- over half of the purchase dollars (54 per cent) were spent on services
- only 27 per cent of the expenditure on services in their sample organisation was handled by procurement staff
- of the total spend, the largest categories were utilities (9 per cent), insurance (82 per cent), sales/promotions (7.2 per cent), health benefit plans (6.1 per cent) and travel – air tickets (58 per cent), and in none of these areas was the procurement department handling more than half the total expenditure

- two explanations for the low involvement of procurement departments in the procurement of services are:
  - the users of services considered that they had greater expertise in the particular area of service buying than procurement department staff
  - the purchase of services involves a closer personal relationship with suppliers than does the purchase of goods, yet Fearon and Bales suggest that 'if a logical procurement process as normally used by procurement professionals was employed substantial savings might be possible regardless of by whom the actual buying is done' and they also concluded that 'the opportunity to increase profits through more effective procurement probably is greater in the buying of services than in the purchase of goods'.

16.22.2 Differences in the procurement of goods and services

Services can be defined as:

> Those procurements that arise within the framework of a project (such as the translation of software) or with regard to regular maintenance of facilities, legal services, audit work and so on.

Characteristics of services are:

- *intangibility* – the result of a service transaction is not a transfer of ownership as with physical goods; a service is a process or act.
- *simultaneity* – the actualisation of a service implies the presence of a supplier as well as a customer, both of whom play an active part in the realisation of services.

Intangibility and simultaneity imply two further service characteristics:

- intangibility implies *perishability* – unlike tangible goods, services cannot be stored and used or resold at a future date.
- simultaneity implies *heterogeneity* – or the large risk of a service being performed differently depending on such factors as the provider of the service, the particular customer, the physical setting or even the hour of the day.

These differences between services and goods are shown in Table 16.8.

Table 16.8 Comparison of services and goods

Services	*Goods*
■ An activity or process	■ A physical object
■ Intangible	■ Tangible
■ Service is produced and consumed simultaneously	■ Separation of production and consumption
■ Customers participate in production	■ Customer may or may not participate in production
■ Heterogeneous	■ Homogenous
■ Perishable – cannot be stored for future use	■ Can be stored for future use or sale

From a procurement perspective, there are other differences.

- Boshoff[16] suggests that, because of their intangibility, services are riskier to purchase than physical products. This enhanced risk is due to:
  - service buyers only knowing what they have bought after the buying decision
  - the high level of human involvement and interaction, which makes the standardisation of a service not only difficult but, over time, almost impossible
  - customers differing in the amount of information they seek before purchasing a service and satisfaction depending on factors such as prior experience and recommendations.
- Boshoff suggests that service guarantees reduce the anxiety and uncertainty of potential service buyers.
  - Specifications for goods are generally more specific than service statements of work.
  - Cost analysis and negotiation are more difficult with services than for goods.
  - Services are likely to become a significant proportion of total spend as many non-core service competences are outsourced.

16.22.3 Segmentation of services

Services can be segmented or categorised in several ways.

- The Kraljic matrix is equally applicable to services as it is to goods.
- Hadfield[17] provides a matrix that categorises services according to their cost and strategic impact on a particular organisation. As applied to a bank, an example of this matrix is shown in Figure 16.13.

Figure 16.13 Hadfield's matrix of services arranged according to their cost and strategic impact for a bank

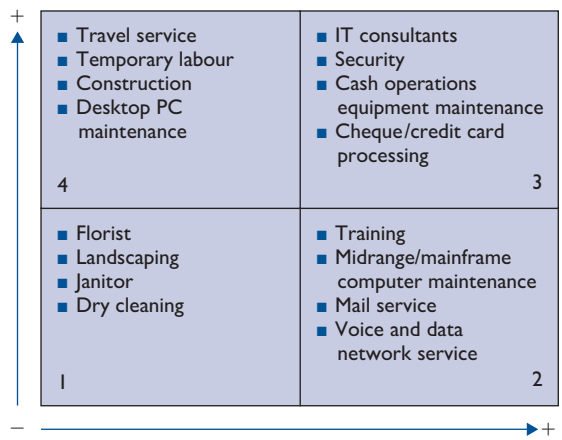
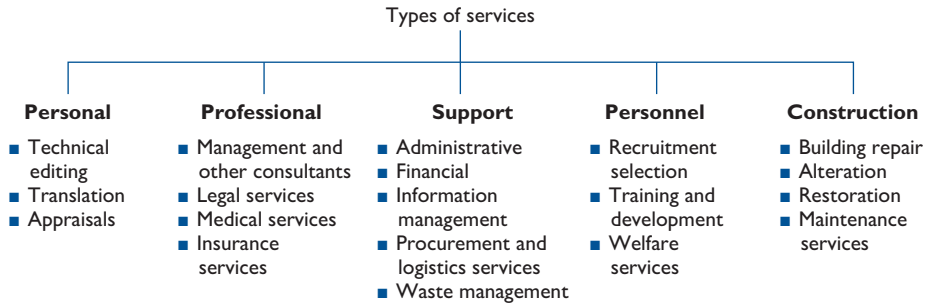


Figure 16.14 Lallatin's typology of services



- In Figure 16.13 the lower and upper quadrants respectively reflect lower and higher cost services. The left quadrants show services of the commodity type, of less importance to the bank's operations. The right quadrants hold services that are either essential or of strategic importance to the particular bank. Thus security is of critical importance, dry cleaning is not.
- Lallatin[18] suggests simple groupings of five major types of service – personal, professional, support, personnel and construction – each of which has special characteristics from a purchasing standpoint. Typical examples of each type are shown in Figure 16.14.
- Some services in Figure 16.14 can be categorised under more than one heading. Finance, for example, can be either 'support' or 'professional'.

Segmenting services as described above is essential for the analysis of what to spend and their importance.
From the standpoint of *spend*, such analysis shows:

- *volume aggregation* – that is, the process of collecting and categorising procurement spend to determine what services are being purchased throughout the entire organisation who buys and from which suppliers
- the percentage of spend relating to each category of service
- areas of excessive service spending where control is required.

From the standpoint of importance, such analysis shows:

- where a particular service falls on a Kraljic matrix or a cost/strategy matrix
- whether a service should be provided internally or outsourced.

16.22.4 Processing the procurement of services

This normally involves six steps.

- **Step 1**: Determine the appropriate process for procuring the service
- This involves consideration of:
  - the nature and strategic importance of the service, with reference to the Kraljic matrix – Duffy and Flynn[19] advise:

In general automate or routinise non-critical and leverage buys; identify a champion for each strategic service and form a team to eliminate bottlenecks

– where procurement of services such as insurance, advertising, transport or energy is done by non-procurement personnel, provide training in specialist procurement techniques.

- **Step 2**: Prepare a statement of work
- A statement of work is defined as:[20]

  A statement outlining the specific services a contractor is expected to perform, generally indicating the type, level and quality of service as well as the time schedule required.

- Much of the information relating to the content and principles of specification writing given in sections 9.4.6 and 9.4.7 applies equally to statements of work. Statements of work should clearly indicate:
  - the services required
  - where, when and to whom the services are to be provided
  - under what conditions
  - standards or levels of performance required
  - period of initial provision and renewal intervals
  - roles, if any, to be undertaken by the purchaser of the service(s), such as assistance with coordination, equipment, staff or research.
- As with specifications, special attention should be given to language, such as the use of mandatory words 'shall', 'will' and 'must' and avoidance of ambiguous words or words with multiple meanings, such as 'adequate', 'necessary', 'as required'.
- **Step 3**: List the statement of work as the basis of a request for proposals (RFP) or quotations (RFQs)
  - Request that potential suppliers suggest their solution(s) for a given requirement.
  - Provide scope for supplier innovation and suggestions.
  - Such documents are useful for locating solutions or sources of supply.
- **Step 4**: Obtain quotations or tenders from potential suppliers
  - Invitations may be advertised generally, thus giving all potential suppliers an equal opportunity to make proposals or quotations. Alternatively, RFPs or RFQs may be restricted to three or four selected suppliers. Reverse auctions are increasingly used as a means of obtaining the lowest price and allowing bidders to see those submitted by competitors. Reverse auctions need the requirements for a service to be clearly specified.
- **Step 5**: Evaluate quotations or tenders
  - Evaluation should be by a cross-functional team. Individual evaluators should rank the offers received. The team should then discuss the individual rankings. The final decision should be on the basis of a consensus rather than a majority vote and should be recorded.
- **Step 6**: Notification and issue of contract
  - Notify the successful and unsuccessful suppliers and issue the contract. Pohlig[21] states that it is critical – to make the contract enforceable – that the statement of work is either incorporated into the contract or included as an appendix.

Discussion questions

16.1 Discuss the reasons why category management offers strategic and operational benefits to an organisation.

16.2 Explain the key facets on the strategic sourcing cycle.

16.3 What is the talent challenge for procurement and how will the challenge be met?

16.4 Discuss six procurement risks and how they may be mitigated in the real world.

16.5 Discuss three KPIs for measuring the effectiveness of Corporate Travel procurement solutions.

16.6 Why does procurement find it difficult, in some organisations, to influence ICT expenditure?

16.7 When procurement is involved in buying new capital equipment what specific commercial knowledge and skills can they apply to ensure the best value for money is obtained?

16.8 What criteria would you use to decide if new equipment should be purchased?

16.9 XYZ is considering whether to lease or buy a machine. The machine will cost £2000 and have a life of 3 years, at the end of which it will have no residual value. A loan for the purchase of the machine can be obtained for an annual interest rate of 7 per cent, payable at the end of each of the three years. The machine can also be leased from an equipment hire company in return for an annual payment of £762.50, payable at the end of each year.

Ignoring taxation factors, which option will be the lowest-cost solution? What factors might you consider when making a decision?

16.10 Calculate the ROCE from the following figures.

Cost of machine	£160,000
Expected life	5 years
Estimated scrap value	£20,000
Estimated profits before depreciation	
Year 1	£40,000
Year 2	£80,000
Year 3	£60,000
Year 4	£30,000
Year 5	£10,000

Solution

Note: Average profit before depreciation = £220,000/5 = £44,000

Total depreciation = £160,000 − £20,000 = £140,000

Average depreciation = £140,000/5 = £28,000

Average annual profit after depreciation = £44,000 − £28,000 = £16,000

$$\therefore \text{ROCE} = \frac{£16{,}000}{£160{,}000} \times 100\% = 10 \text{ per cent}$$

[Answer: 10 per cent]

16.11 How would you explain hedging to the lay person?

16.12 Why is the price of gas so volatile? What role does the international market play?

16.13 In relation to futures markets, ascertain the meaning of the following terms:
- **(a)** going long
- **(b)** going short
- **(c)** spot market price index.

16.14 What makes procurement for the construction sector quite different to buying parts for production assembly?

16.15 If you were asked to purchase a proprietary IT system what would be the major considerations?

16.16 If you were asked to purchase chemicals on a sample source contractual agreement with a supplier in Japan what risks could you identify?

References

[1] APQC, (123 North Post Oak Lane, Houston, Texas) 'Supplier category management – driving value through the procurement organisation', 2012

[2] Global Business Travel Association, 'Key performance indicators for Corporaten Travel – a reference guide development for the Global Business Travel Association', 2012

[3] Aljian, G. W., *Purchasing Handbook*, National Association of Purchasing Management, 1958, section 16.1

[4] Brownstone, D. M., (ed), *Dictionary of Business and Finance*, Van Nostrand, 1980

[5] Barfield, J. T., Raiborn, C. A. and Kinney, M. R., *Cost Accounting*, West Publishing, 1994, p. 709

[6] Definition provided by the Inland Revenue

[7] Risley, G., *Modern Industrial Marketing*, McGraw-Hill, 1972, pp. 24–25

[8] Galena Asset Management Zurich

[9] 'Apocalypse is nigh, Buffett tells Berkshire faithful', *The Telegraph*, 4 April, 2005

[10] DUKES 2015 https://www.gov.uk/government/statistics/renewable-sources-of-energy-chapter-6-digest-of-united-kingdom-energy-statistics-dukes

[11] Department of Energy and Climate Change UK Energy Statistics, Ref 2012/165

[12] UK Energy Research Centre, 'The UK's global gas challenge', research report, November 2014

[13] Department of Energy & Climate Change, Energy Consumption in the UK (2015)

[14] As 10 above

[15] Fearon, H. E. and Bales, W. A., *Purchasing of Nontraditional Goods and Services*, Center for Advanced Purchasing Studies, USA, focus study executive summary, 1995

[16] Boshoff, C., 'Intention to buy a service: the influence of service guarantees: general information and price information advertising', *South African Journal of Business Management*, Vol. 34(1), 2003, pp. 39–43

[17] Hatfield, J. E., 'Purchasing services on the Internet', *Inside Supply Management*, May, 2002, p. 20

[18] Lallatin, C. S., 'How can I categorise my service purchases', *Purchasing Today*, November, 1997

[19] Duffy, R. J. and Flynn, A. E., 'Services purchases: not your typical grind', *Inside Supply Management*, Vol. 14, No. 9, p. 28

[20] ISM, 'Glossary of Key Supply Management Terms': www.ism.ws

[21] Pohlig, H. M., 'Legal issues of contracting for services', *Inside Supply Management*, September, 2002, pp. 22–25

Chapter 17

World-class procurement to enhance business performance

Learning outcomes

With reference, where applicable, to procurement and supply management, this chapter aims to provide an understanding of:

- product and process innovation
- procurement research
- new product development
- supplier development
- green procurement
- procurement management audit
- concurrent engineering
- procurement performance evaluation
- the innovative nature of procurement.

Key ideas

- Innovation and supplier continuous improvement.
- The stages of new product development.
- Environmental aspects of procurement.
- Procurement contributions to new product development.
- Results and process-orientated supplier development.
- Procurement ethics.
- Procurement fraud.

17.1 Innovation and supplier continuous improvement

Procurement has a significant role to play in influencing strategic suppliers to be innovative and provide continuous improvement. It can be argued that procurement has not yet been successful in the quest to achieve these goals. In the author's opinion there are four dominant reasons for the lack of success:

- procurement specialists lacking technical knowledge to drive change
- procurement lacking the commercial imagination to reward suppliers for their innovative developments
- procurement lacking credibility with technical colleagues and therefore unable to influence change
- buying organisations unwilling to invest in product/service research and development.

17.1.1 Innovation

Innovation generally refers to changing or creating more effective processes, products or ideas, and can increase the likelihood of a business succeeding.[1]

- *Product innovation* is the process of transforming technical ideas or market needs and opportunities into a new product (or service) that is launched on to the market.
- *Process innovation* is the introduction or development of new methods or technology by means of which products or services can be manufactured or delivered more

Table 17.1 Differences between innovation and *kaizen*

Characteristics	*Innovation*	*Kaizen*
Focus	Large, short-term, radical changes in products	Small, frequent, gradual improvements over a long time
Expertise	Leading-edge breakthrough	Conventional know-how
Sources	Scientific or technological discovery or invention	Design, production and marketing
Capital requirements	Substantial investment in equipment and technology	Relatively modest investment
Progress	Dramatic breakthroughs	Small incremental steps
Results	Spontaneous	Continuous
Risks	High	Low
Involvement	Corporate activity	Individual or small team
Recognition	Results	Effort

effectively or efficiently. An example of process innovation is the introduction of robots and other forms of automated equipment.

- *Breakthrough innovation* is completely new or revolutionary products, such as new scientific discoveries in pharmaceuticals. Commonplace products, such as the radio, television and aircraft were once breakthrough innovations.
- *Incremental innovations* are gradual improvements in a product or service.

17.1.2 Kaizen

Kaizen is a Japanese term and means continuous improvement. The concept of *kaizen* is the basis of total quality management (TQM) and is strongly associated with Japanese lean production.

Although analogous to incremental innovation, *kaizen* is, as shown by Table 17.1, generally different from innovation.

Both innovation and *kaizen*, however, share the common objective of enabling an organisation to achieve a sustainable advantage.

Computer-aided engineering (CAE) eliminates entirely some of the traditional steps in the new product development process and allows others to be performed simultaneously. Mileham *et al.*[2] state that, where used properly, appropriate software can reduce cycle times, costs and risks by 90 per cent.

17.2 Innovation

17.2.1 Concurrent engineering

Definition

Concurrent engineering is a systematic approach to the integrated, concurrent design of products and their related processes, including manufacture and support.[3]

Typically, concurrent engineering involves the formation of cross-functional teams, which allows engineers and managers of different disciplines to work together simultaneously in developing product and process design. This approach is intended to cause the developers, from the outset, to consider all elements of the product lifecycle from concept through disposal, including quality, cost, schedule and user requirements.

Australia's National Institute for Manufacturing Management[4] has published *A Guide to Introducing Concurrent Engineering in Your Organisation*. They pose a question for companies to ascertain whether concurrent engineering is for them:

'Does my company face any of the following problems in product development?

- increasing competitive pressure to develop new products
- product launch delays
- higher costs in processing and developing products than is acceptable
- a predominantly internally focused product development process
- little or no direct knowledge of customer requirements
- no or low involvement by marketing in the early stages of product development

- shift in responsibility for product development from one function to another as the project progresses and transfer points often characterised by conflict
- poor transfer of learning from one product development project to the next.'

A proactive procurement function can positively influence the concurrent engineering process by:

- promoting the logic for the early involvement of suppliers in the design process to ensure the true cost and maintainability of materials and components
- becoming a key member of the concurrent engineering team, through an effective challenge to specifications
- the effective management of the procurement of samples for test and production prototypes
- ensuring that emerging contractual detail includes supplier's obligations for replacing faulty materials and components
- providing training to the concurrent engineering teams on all facets of cost drivers impacting on through life costs
- assisting in networking with other organisations who have successfully implemented concurrent engineering
- ensuring that a rigorous risk assessment process is in place for all facets of supplier engagement
- assisting in overcoming cross-functional team barriers by the application of negotiation skills.

17.3 Environmentally sensitive design

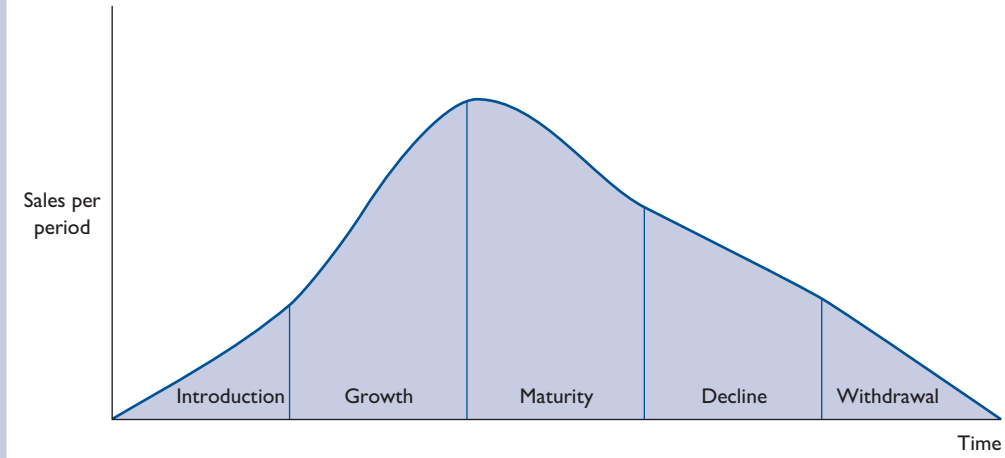
17.3.1 Factors in environmentally sensitive design

Pressures exerted by environmental groups and relevant legislation, such as the UK Clean Air Act 1993, the Radioactive Substances Act 1993 and the Environmental Protection Act 1990; require designers to devise socially responsible products. In the design of such products, special consideration must be given to:

- increasing their efficiency and economy in the use of materials, energy and other resources
- minimising pollution from chosen materials
- reducing any long-term harm to the environment caused by using the product
- ensuring that the planned life of the product is the most appropriate in environmental terms and that the product functions efficiently for its full life
- ensuring that full account is taken of the end-disposal of the product
- specifying packaging that can be recycled easily
- minimising nuisances, such as noise or odour
- analysing and minimising safety hazards.

Attention given to the above factors at the design stage can simplify production, enhance the manufacturer's reputation and prevent investment in products and processes that environmental legislation may make obsolete.

Figure 17.1 Product lifecycle



17.3.2 Approaches to environmentally sensitive design

Four important approaches are lifecycle analysis (LCA), design for disassembly (DFD), the use of environmentally preferred materials and guidance by the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO).

17.3.3 Lifecycle analysis

This is based on the concept that all products have a lifecycle. The product lifecycle, or Gopertz curve, is shown in Figure 17.1.

17.3.4 Design for disassembly (DFD)

This has two aspects:

- *Recyclability* – this saves both energy and resources. Recycling aluminium, for example, requires 95 per cent less energy than producing aluminium from bauxite ore. Making paper from recycled stock requires 64 per cent less energy than using wood pulp. About 70 per cent of all metal is used only once before it is discarded.
- *Repairability* – the aim is to prolong the life of products by ensuring that they can be repaired easily at low cost.

17.3.5 Use of environmentally preferred materials

Industrial ecology aims to manage human activity on a sustainable basis by:

- minimising energy and materials usage
- ensuring acceptable quality of life for human beings
- conserving energy and natural resources, such as minerals and forests.

Industrial ecology advocates the application of the following principles when selecting materials for product design:

- choose abundant, non-toxic materials whenever possible
- choose materials familiar to nature – for example, cellulose, rather than synthetic materials, such as chlorinated aromatics
- minimise the number of materials used in a production process
- use, where possible, recyclable materials
- where appropriate, use recycled materials.

17.3.6 Green procurement

There is a tremendous challenge facing all organisations to be innovative in their approach to green procurement. The challenge presents an opportunity for procurement to make on impact on strategy and policy direction. On the 5 March 2007 the UK government launched its Sustainable Procurement Action Plan. It presented a package of actions to deliver the step change needed to ensure that supply chains and public services will be increasingly low carbon, low waste and water efficient, respect biodiversity and deliver wider sustainable development goals. The Financial Secretary to the Treasury said, 'Over the next decade procurement will become more central still in achieving value for money for the taxpayer and delivering the public services people need and expect'.

17.3.7 Guidance from the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO)

The main ISO environmental standards are BS EN 14001, 14004, 14010, 14011, 14012, 14040 and 14050. ISO Guide 64 relates to the inclusion of environmental aspects in production standards.

17.4 Procurement involvement in product development

Wynstra *et al.*[5] have identified four areas of procurement involvement in product development, each of which has a different time horizon and each involves different activities. These are shown in Table 17.2.

17.5 Supplier development

17.5.1 Definition

Supplier development has been defined as:

> Any activity that a buyer undertakes to improve a supplier's performance and/or capabilities to meet the buyer's short-term or long-term supply needs.[6]

Supplier development programmes can be either results-orientated or process-orientated.

- *Results-orientated programmes* focus on solving specific problems for suppliers and normally involve step-by-step changes relating to supplier's costs, quality and delivery. Hartley and Jones[7] identify three characteristics of results-orientated supplier development:

Table 17.2 Areas of procurement involvement in product development

Area of involvement	*Associated activities*
Development management The higher the level of availability and stability and the lower the level of dependence, the greater the possibilities to 'buy' the technology and leave the development to suppliers	Determining which technologies to keep/develop in-house and which to outsource Policy formulation for supplier involvement Policy formulation for procurement-related activities of internal departments Internal and external communication of policies
Supplier interface management Proactive, continuous research with the aim of identifying suppliers or technologies that may be relevant for the development of new products	Monitoring supplier markets for technological developments Pre-selecting suppliers for product development collaboration Motivating suppliers to build up/maintain specific knowledge or develop certain products Exploiting the technological capabilities of suppliers Evaluating suppliers' development performance
Project management Involves two sub-areas – product planning and project execution	Product planning activities are primarily carried out during or before initial development and include: ■ determining specific develop-or-buy solutions ■ selecting suppliers for involvement in the development project ■ determining the extent of supplier involvement Project execution involves activities during the project and includes: ■ coordinating development activities between suppliers and manufacturers ■ coordinating development activities between different first-tier suppliers ■ coordinating development activities between first-tier and second-tier suppliers ■ ordering and chasing prototypes
Product management Directly contributing to the specifications of the new product	Activities can be divided into two categories: ■ extending activities – those aimed at increasing the number of alternatives, including: – providing information on new products and technologies already available or in course of development – suggesting alternative suppliers, products and technologies that can yield higher-quality results ■ restrictive activities – those aimed at limiting the number of alternative specifications: – evaluating product designs in terms of part availability, manufacturability, lead time, quality and costs – promoting standardisation and simplification

– the process is standardised and buyer-driven
– the changes made are primarily technical
– the process is of short duration and requires limited follow-up.

With this approach, the supplier improves while the buyer's supplier development team is on site and the achieved level of performance can be maintained after the team has left. The results approach is basically an attempt to transfer an organisation's in-house capabilities across boundaries.

■ *Process-orientated programmes* focus on increasing the supplier's ability to make production improvements without hands-on assistance from the buyer. This requires

the supplier to learn the problem-solving techniques required for continuous improvements. Such learning is complicated, may require the 'unlearning' of old practices and the encoding of new knowledge in organisational routines.

17.5.2 The steps of supplier development

The actual process may differ according to the organisation and, as stated above, whether the development is primarily results-orientated or process-orientated. There are nine steps in a typical supplier development programme. These are briefly explained as follows:

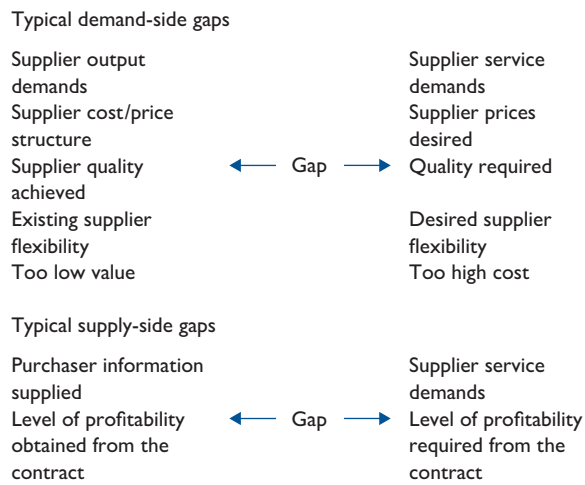
1 *Identify critical products* – this is done using a portfolio approach, such as that of Kraljic. These will be mainly strategic and bottleneck products.

2 *Identify critical suppliers* – this involves consideration of such questions as the following.

- What is the capability of the suppliers? Sako[8] identifies three levels of capability:
  - *maintenance capability* – the ability to maintain a particular level of performance consistently
  - *improvement capability* – that which affects the pace of performance improvements
  - *evolutionary capability* – the capacity for capability building, which is different from dynamic capabilities in that the emphasis is less on 'adapting, integrating and reconfiguring internal resources in response to changing environments and more on the sustained accumulation of the other two capabilities'.
- Are the present suppliers capable of meeting future needs?
- Are the present suppliers worth developing or is it time to source new ones?

3 *Appraise supplier performance*

4 *Determine the gap between present and desired supplier performance* – gap analysis involves identifying the differences between the current and a desired business situation. It is important to recognise that gaps may be considered from a supply-side as well as a demand-side perspective.



There may also be combined gaps, such as the level of collaboration or where the level of purchaser–supplier relationships satisfies neither party.

5 *Form cross-functional supplier development team* – this team will be responsible for appraising present and potential suppliers, identifying gaps and negotiating with suppliers to try to devise mutually acceptable resolution of problems.

6 *Meet with supplier's top management team* – meeting with the top management team of the supplier provides an insight into the extent to which a collaborative relationship with the purchaser is required. It also provides an opportunity for both sides to know each other as individuals, discuss areas of cooperation not previously identified, exchange views frankly and build trust. Negotiated improvements can also be minuted and thereby provide an agreed record of decisions made.

7 *Agree how the perceived gaps can be bridged* – approaches may include:

- seconding purchaser's staff to the supplier
- seconding supplier's staff to the purchaser
- purchaser on site audits at the supplier's premises
- third-party assessment, as is required for ISO 9000 registration
- loan of machinery and IT hardware
- granting access to IT systems, such as CAD
- negotiating improved transportation contracts
- joint value analysis exercises
- improved costing approaches
- using the purchaser's leverage to obtain materials and other items for the supplier at cheaper cost
- the offer of incentives

8 *Set deadlines for achieving improvements* – these should be reasonable, agreed by both parties and strictly enforced. The supplier should understand that failure to effect improvements by the agreed date may lead to loss of business. The emphasis, however, should be on constructive help rather than punitive measures.

9 *Monitor improvements* – even after achievement of the required standards, the performance of suppliers should be carefully monitored. Handfield *et al.*[9] state that the pitfalls of supplier development fall into three categories: supplier-specific, buyer-specific and buyer–supplier interface. Supplier-specific pitfalls stem chiefly from the supplier's lack of commitment or lack of technical or human resources. Buyer-specific factors derive from a reluctance to commit to supplier development fully when the purchaser sees no obvious potential benefits in so doing, such as a supplier being considered of insufficient importance to justify the investment. The principal buyer–supplier interface pitfalls are due to lack of mutual trust, poor alignment of organisational cultures and insufficient inducements to the supplier. As Handfield and his co-authors state:

> Initiating supplier performance improvement is not an easy task . . . Our findings suggest that such an accomplishment takes time and is only achieved by patient relationship managers who are tenacious enough to pay follow-up visits to suppliers and continually enforce a strong programme of supplier evaluation and performance feedback.

17.6 Procurement research

17.6.1 Definition

Procurement research has been defined by Fearon[10] as:

> The systematic gathering, recording and analysing of data about problems relating to the purchasing of goods and services.

The importance of procurement research has been enhanced by the following:

- rapid changes in technology and economic circumstances are increasing the complexity of procurement
- much procurement is undertaken in conditions of uncertainty so that strategic decisions have to be made involving individuals, organisations and events outside the direct control of the purchasing company
- electronic data processing provides the facility to store and process vast quantities of data that, when processed, can improve decision making
- the increased outsourcing of non-core business functions
- the new focus on partnering and evaluation of the benefits
- e-procurement facilitating real-time ordering and payment by line employees
- procurement as a function is increasingly required to quantify its contribution to profitability and its strategic function in the supply chain.

17.6.2 Areas of research

In selecting topics for research, it should be remembered that the greater the expenditure on an area, the greater is the potential for significant cost savings. Among the most important areas of research are the following:

- *materials and commodities*
  - trends in the requirements of the company for specific materials
  - price and cost analysis
  - substitute materials or items
  - specifications and standardisation
  - value analysis, value engineering
  - usage analysis
  - use of learning curves
- *procurement policies and procedures*
  - whether or not any policies are in need of revision
  - if it is more economical to make in rather than buy out or vice versa
  - whether or not any opportunities exist for the consolidation of procurement requirements
  - procurement contributions to competitive advantage
  - forms design, distribution and elimination
  - the application of activity-based costing to the procurement function

  - how the information made available by EDP can be used more effectively
  - whether or not the procurement organisation for materials can be improved by regrouping the procurement, stores and other related subsystems, such as by means of materials or logistics management approaches
  - to what extent operational research methods can be applied to procurement
  - internal and external customer satisfaction with the purchasing function
- *suppliers*
  - supplier appraisal
  - supplier performance
  - the possibilities for supplier development
  - contracting simultaneously with two suppliers to design and build
  - supplier reviews – how often suppliers are changed and how new suppliers are found
  - supply chain – analysis of at least one level back
  - procurement consortium
  - price monitoring after contracting
  - outsourcing the procurement process
  - global sourcing
- *staff*
  - staff responsibilities
  - staff turnover, absenteeism, morale
  - what overtime, if any, is worked
  - staff succession
  - staff training and development
  - staff remuneration, facilities and incentives
- *miscellaneous*
  - procurement applications of IT
  - expert systems and artificial intelligence
  - transportation of bought-out items
  - securing supplies in conditions of uncertainty
  - disposal of scrap and obsolete stores equipment
  - terms and conditions of contract
  - the measurement of procurement performance
  - procurement ethics
  - identification and management of supply chain risk.

17.6.3 Organisation for research

Some research is undertaken by all procurement departments, even though this may be only rudimentary, such as consulting trade directories or the Internet to locate possible suppliers of an item not previously bought. A willingness to initiate research is essential

to the development of the status of procurement. Unless such an initiative is taken by procurement, the research role will be assumed by other functions, such as design, marketing and production. Procurement research may be formal or informal.

- *Small business units* – these may be unable to allocate resources such as personnel and finance to establish a formal procurement research section. Staff should nevertheless be encouraged to keep up to date by meeting supplier representatives, attending trade exhibitions, attending appropriate short courses, having access to and opportunities for studying journals and other relevant literature, as well as networking with other procurement staff at meetings of professional bodies, such as the CIPS.
- *Research sections* – systematic research requires time and freedom from other distractions. These conditions can be best provided when the organisation is large enough, by establishing a special procurement research section as a centralised staff activity to provide assistance to line members of the procurement function. Experience has shown that companies with formal procurement research arrangements:
  - engage in more research projects
  - do so in greater depth
  - make a significant contribution to profitability and operational effectiveness.
- *Other approaches* – when a specialised research section is not feasible, formalised procurement research may be undertaken by the following groups:
  - *Project teams* concerned with a specific problem or range of problems – probably including staff from outside the procurement function, such as design, production, finance and marketing, as in a value research or engineering project.
  - *Supplier associations.*
  - *Research consortiums.*
  - *Use of specialised outside research facilities*, such as the Commodities Research Unit of the International Monetary Fund.
  - *Collaboration with universities* – this may be 'contract' or 'collaborative' research. In contract research, the agenda for a project is set by the industrial partner with a university providing a research service at a commercial price on the same basis as any other supplier, while collaborative research's goals are jointly defined by both company or companies and the university. 'Clubs' or 'networks' are often set up by an individual university or consortium of universities to focus on a particular research topic. Companies wishing to become members usually pay an agreed annual subscription. Thus the Centre for Research in Strategic Purchasing and Supply at Bath University claims to work, at any one time, with over 100 companies, often organised into 'project clubs'.
  - *Support of individuals working for higher degrees* in procurement and supply chain management.
  - *Use of consultants* to investigate a specific matter. Some large consultancy organisations also undertake independent research that is made available to the relevant industries at a cost.
  - *Professional institutes* – The Institute of Logistics and Transport maintains a logistics research network – a special interest group of academics with some interested practitioner members. The network produces the *International Journal of Logistics Research and Applications.* The CIPS supports chairs in procurement at several

UK universities. In the USA, the *Center for Advanced Studies (CAPS Research)* was established in 1986 as a national affiliation agreement between the NAPM (now ISM®) and Arizona State University.

17.6.4 Research methodology

As with all other research, the first step in a procurement or supply chain investigation is to adopt a plan or model of the research, from inception to completion. Sarantakos[11] states that the general assumption made by researchers who employ a research model in their work rests on the belief that:

- research can be perceived as evolving in a series of steps that are closely interrelated and the success of each depends on the successful completion of the preceding step
- the steps must be executed in a given order
- planning and execution of the research is more successful if a research model is employed – a typical one being that shown in Figure 17.2.

17.7 Procurement performance evaluation

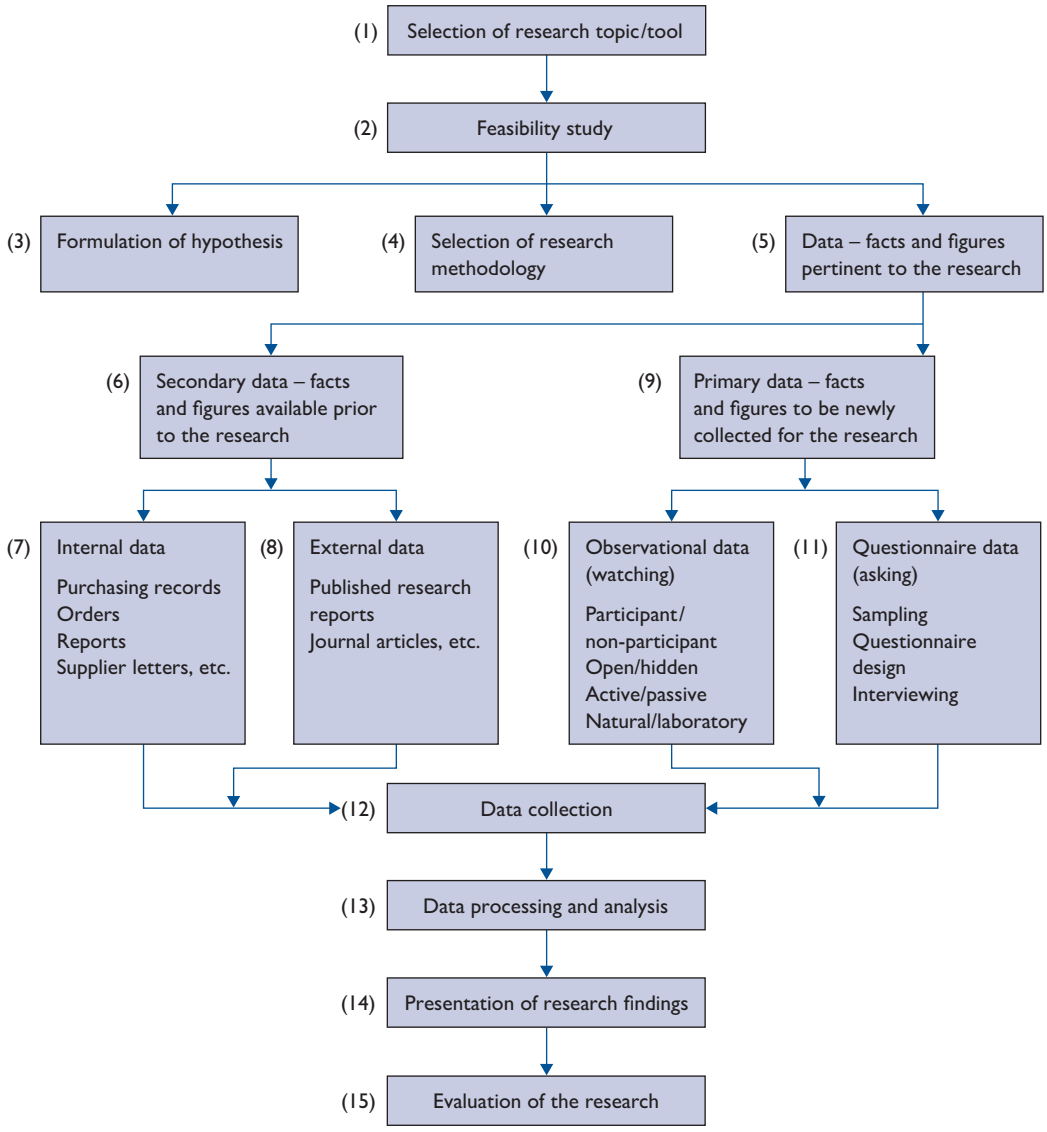
17.7.1 Definition

Procurement performance evaluation may be defined as the quantitative or qualitative assessment over a given time towards the achievement of corporate or operational goals and objectives relating to procurement economies, efficiency and effectiveness.

The significant words in this definition are the following:

- *Quantitative or qualitative – quantitative* assessments are objective and measurable, using such measures as numbers of orders placed, reduction in lead times, price savings and reduced administrative costs, and will tend to be used where procurement is regarded as a mainly clerical or transactional activity. *Qualitative* assessments use judgmental impressions regarding the contribution of procurement to suppliers' goodwill, partnership sourcing, value analysis and internal customer satisfaction and is applicable when procurement is regarded as a strategic function.
- *Performance evaluation – evaluation* is a more accurate term than *measurement*. By definition, 'measurement' implies quantification or the expression of a quality or attribute in numerical terms. Although the performance of procurement managers is usually assessed by means of objective, quantified measures such as cost/price reductions and contributions to added value or profitability, performance evaluation frequently uses subjective, qualitative assessment approaches.
- *Over a given time* – evaluations may relate to long-term (over one year) or short-term performance. Long-term objectives frequently extend several years into the future. Periodical reviews look at progress and outstanding actions needing to be undertaken. Progress can only be measured by reference to what was achieved in a past period and targets set for a future period. For this purpose, evaluations should always relate to specific time intervals.
- *Corporate or operational goals and objectives* – goals or objectives are basic to performance evaluation: 'If we don't know where we are going, we shall not know when we

Figure 17.2 A purchasing research model



arrive'. *Corporate objectives* will usually be set at board level. Such goals are relatively permanent, expressed in broad terms and derive from the mission statement of an organisation. Today, most corporate objectives relate to the provision of 'customer satisfaction'.

Organisational goals must be 'congruent' – that is, consistent with corporate goals, not only over time but also vertically and horizontally. *Vertically* means that the objectives should be consistent at all levels of the organisation; *horizontally*, that the

objectives set for different activities concerned with delivering value to the ultimate customer, as in a supply chain, must be consistent and integrated.

Corporate objectives – usually expressed in broad qualitative terms – must be turned into specifics for operational purposes. Thus the general strategy of 'delivering a cost-effective procurement service' may, for the next financial year, require procurement to:

- achieve savings of 10 per cent on purchases
- award contracts for an e-tendering and supplier information database not later than [specify date], subject to availability of funds
- ensure that not less than 70 per cent of procurement staff are working towards an approved procurement qualification.

Operational goals, such as those shown above, can be expressed as quantified (SMART) objectives – that is, they should be **S**pecific, **M**easurable, **A**ttainable, **R**esults-orientated and **T**ime-based.

- *Economies, efficiency and effectiveness – economies* means minimising the cost of resources acquired without loss of quality, which is achieved by spending less. Important tools in achieving economy are value engineering and value analysis.

  Efficiency covers the relationship between the output of goods or services and the resources used to produce them, which means spending well. Efficiency and productivity are related as productivity is measured by the following ratio:

$$\text{Productivity} = \frac{\text{Outputs produced}}{\text{Inputs consumed}}$$

  Effectiveness covers the relationship between the intended and the actual results of projects and programmes – that is, spending wisely. Economy, efficiency and effectiveness – commonly referred to as the three Es – constitute value for money (VFM). Securing and improving VFM is an important corporate objective and responsibility for its achievement lies primarily with operational managers. The terms efficiency and effectiveness will occur again in this text, but, from the standpoint of performance evaluation, some further aspects include the following:

  - Organisations, functions, processes and the people concerned may be efficient but not effective – being the lowest-cost producer of products or services that no one wants is efficient but not effective and, as Kaydos[12] observes:

    > Nothing is more wasteful than doing with greater efficiency that which is totally unnecessary.

  - Conversely, we can be effective without being efficient – using a steam hammer to crack the proverbial nut is effective, but not efficient.
  - Managers can delegate efficiency, but must deal personally with effectiveness.
  - Efficiency and effectiveness are not mutually exclusive – acceptable performance may reflect a combination of efficiency and effectiveness.

17.7.2 Some difficulties in measuring procurement performance

Van Weele[13] has identified four 'problems' that, he states, 'seriously limit an objective and accurate assessment of the procurement function':

- *lack of definition* – concepts such as procurement performance, efficiency and effectiveness are often not clearly defined or are used interchangeably
- *lack of formal objectives and performance standards* – the problem, as the author sees it, however, is not the lack of standards – which receive considerable attention in textbooks and academic articles – but that many procurement practitioners are either unaware of such standards or unwilling to apply them
- *problems of accurate measurement* – Van Weele rightly states:

  > Procurement is not an isolated function; procurement performance is the result of many activities which, due to their intangible character, are difficult to evaluate. In general, direct input–output relationships are difficult to identify; this seriously limits the possibility of measuring and evaluating procurement activities in an accurate and comprehensive way.

- *differences in the scope of organisational procurement* – procurement is not a homogenous activity and with such factors as status, responsibilities, organisation, policies and procedures, it differs widely from one enterprise to another and those differences preclude the development of uniform measurement systems, so they also detract from the attention given to procurement performance evaluation.

As stated above, a major problem when evaluating procurement performance is the heterogeneous nature of the procurement activity. In a USA study of the absence of a consistent system for measuring procurement performance, Fearon and Bales[14] report that:

> Anyone who wants a single group of performance measures for procurement activities at every organisation is going to be disappointed. The measures that are important to the individual organisation may not be important to another. Therefore, the measures for procurement performance have to be customised for virtually every organisation.

Measurement of procurement performance is, however, important for all organisations as:

- if an activity cannot be measured, it cannot be effectively managed, nor can continuous and sustainable improvements be made
- measurement is critical for maintaining the competitive edge of companies in an increasingly crowded global marketplace.

17.7.3 Approaches to performance measurement

These may be grouped under five main headings:

- accounting approaches, namely:
  - profit centres
  - activity-based costing
  - standard costing and budgetary control
- the procurement management audit approach
- comparative approaches
  - benchmarking and ratio
  - integrated benchmarking, such as EFQM and balanced scorecards (see sections 17.11.1 and 17.11.2)
- miscellaneous approaches, such as Six Sigma (see section 8.9.3).

17.8 Accounting approaches

17.8.1 The profit centre approach

In this approach, the procurement function or activity is regarded as the part of the company that controls assets and is responsible not only for expenditure but also income.

The aim of this approach is to demonstrate that the procurement function is a profit rather than a cost centre.

The profit centre approach involves establishing a centralised procurement organisation that controls assets. The profitability of this centralised procurement function is generated by an internal accounting transfer of items and services procured by procurement to other functions at a price above their actual direct cost. In effect, procurement sells to other functions at what is termed a *transfer price*. The executive in charge of procurement is therefore expected to base any decisions, where applicable, on profit criteria and performance is measured in terms of the profits generated by the function. An example of the profit centre approach is given in Example 17.1.

Example 17.1

A procurement department treated as a profit centre

Value of assets controlled by the supplies manager		£
Inventory		1,500,000
Procurement function's floor space and equipment		250,000
Stores' floor space and equipment		750,000
		2,500,000
Annual rate of return required by the company on assets employed	15%	375,000
Estimated annual operating expenses		
Procurement	£150,000	
Stores	£475,000	625,000
Total expenses and return (a)		1,000,000
Total purchases for year (b)		20,000,000
(a) + (b)		21,000,000

Transfer cost of supplies to user function (i.e. internal customers) will therefore be 5%, i.e.

$$\frac{£1{,}000{,}000 \times 100}{£20{,}000{,}000}$$

Assume notional supplies profit (1%)	
Therefore profit on turnover of £20,000,000	200,000

$$\text{Return on assets controlled by supplies} = \frac{(£200{,}000 \times 100)}{£2{,}500{,}000} = 8\%$$

To reach the expected return of 15 per cent, other than by increasing the notional profit, the supplies function will either have to reduce the investment in inventory or operating expenses.

This approach is theoretical rather than practical, although it is advocated on the grounds that it:

- provides a measure of the efficiency of the supplies function
- allows supplier managers to control their budgets and spend to save money
- enhances the status of the supplies function by providing measurable objectives.

17.9 The procurement management audit approach

17.9.1 Definition

An *audit* may be defined, inter alia, as a check or examination. The term *procurement management audit* has been defined by Scheuing[15] as:

> A comprehensive, systematic, independent and periodic examination of a company's procurement environment, objectives and tactics to identify problems and opportunities and facilitate the development of appropriate action plans.

Scheuing states that the operative words in this definition are:

- *comprehensive* – the audit should cover every aspect of procurement
- *systematic* – a standard set of questions should be developed and used respectively
- *independent* – procurement personnel should not evaluate themselves
- *periodic* – audits yield the greatest value if they are performed periodically – annually – thus facilitating comparisons, checks and balances and an evaluation of progress.

17.9.2 The purpose of conducting procurement management audits

A review of some standard procurement texts by Evans and Dale[16] indicated that procurement audits serve four main purposes. They:

- police the extent to which the procurement policies laid down by senior management are adhered to
- help to ensure that the organisation is using techniques, procedures and methods that conform to best working practice
- monitor and measure the extent to, that resources are used effectively
- assist in the prevention and detection of fraud and malpractice.

17.9.3 Who should carry out the procurement management audit?

Such audits can be carried out by:

- external auditors
- internal auditors
- a corporate procurement function
- a procurement research function (independent of operational decision making)
- external management consultants.

Two principles are suggested to govern who should carry out the audit:

- the auditors should be external to the function or department that is the subject of the audit
- the auditors should have an in-depth knowledge of the procurement function, which will enable them not only to monitor adherence to policies and procedures but also to understand procurement perspectives and problems and make recommendations as to how policies, procedures and practice can be improved, and, if external with specialist knowledge and experience, are likely to carry greater authority and provide greater objectivity in relation to procurement audits.

17.9.4 The content of procurement audits

Suggested headings and typical items for a management – as distinct from a financial – audit of the procurement function are as follows:

- *Procurement perspectives, problems and opportunities*
  - What are the perceptions of a sample of procurement staff of their:
    - status in the organisation
    - involvement in strategic decision making
    - contribution to profitability and competitive advantage?
  - What are the job satisfactions and job dissatisfactions identified by the procurement staff interviewed?
  - What are the main problems encountered by procurement staff in doing their job? To what extent are these problems related to:
    - management
    - colleagues
    - internal customers
    - suppliers
    - information
    - resources
    - other internal or external factors?
  - What is the level of morale in the procurement function?
- *Procurement organisation*
  - To whom does the person in charge of the procurement function report?
  - What aspects of procurement are centralised/decentralised?
  - Would any centralised aspects of procurement benefit from decentralisation or vice versa?
  - With what other functional activities does procurement interrelate?
  - What are the formal mechanisms for the coordination of procurement activities with other functions?
  - What is the assessment of procurement function performance by its internal customers?
  - On what interfunctional/departmental committees is the procurement function represented or could be represented?

- How might the internal organisation of the procurement function be improved?
- How might the integration of procurement with other related functions be improved?

This information can be obtained from organisational charts and formal/informal interviews.

- *Procurement personnel*
  - How many members of staff are employed in the procurement function?
  - What are their grades, qualifications and respective lengths of service?
  - Has every member of the procurement function an appropriate job description?
  - How do actual duties carried out relate to the job descriptions?
  - Which staff members are over/under deployed?
  - Is an attempt made to 'empower' procurement staff?
  - What training and development opportunities are provided for procurement staff?
  - How do salaries and remuneration packages compare with those in similar enterprises/industries?
  - What is the staff turnover as measured by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Number of leavers in function for a specified period (usually 1 year)}}{\text{Average number of employees in function during the same period}} \times 100$$

  - What is the stability of employment in the function as measured by the formula:

$$\frac{\text{Number of staff with 1 year's service or more}}{\text{Number employed 1 year ago}} \times 100$$

  - What staff will reach retirement age within the next five years?

This information can be obtained from job descriptions or specifications, training documents, human resource plans and formal or informal interviews.

- *Procurement policies*
  - What written/unwritten policies apply to the procurement function?
  - Is there a procurement manual? How and how frequently is this updated?
  - What guidance is provided to procurement staff about:
    - the value an individual at a particular grade can commit the enterprise to spending
    - supplier relationships, such as disputes, prompt payment
    - conflicts of interest, such as gifts and entertainment
    - buying from abroad
    - environmental policies
    - reciprocal, local and intra-company procurement?
  - What machinery exists for the investigation and enforcement of reported departures from policy compliance?

This information can be obtained, in the main, from relevant documents, manuals, memoranda, instructions and so on.

- *Procurement procedures*
  - From what sources are requests to purchase obtained?

- How quickly are such requests processed?
- What procedures are laid down for such operational activities as requesting and evaluating quotations, issuing purchase orders, receipt of goods and payment for supplies?
- Are all appropriate procedures computerised?
- To what extent does the procurement function make use of EDI and e-procurement?
- How are small orders processed?
- Which procedures/activities add value and which do not add value?
- How might procurement documentation be improved, simplified or eliminated?
- How much time does procurement staff spend on seeing supplier representatives and engaging in relationship management?
- What are the procedures for the procurement of capital equipment?
- What e-procurement security methods are in place to prevent fraud?

Much of this information can be obtained from trailing a sample of purchase orders through from the receipt of the requisition to receipt of goods and payment of the suppliers and from formal and informal interviews.

- *Procurement reports*
  - What reports are prepared by the procurement function?
  - Who prepares each report?
  - At what intervals is each report prepared?
  - What is the cost of preparing each report?
  - To whom is each report sent?
  - What use is made of each report by the receiver?
  - Is the report really necessary?

  Much of this information can be obtained by trailing reports through from their inception to storage or disposal.
- *Purchases, suppliers and prices*
  - What is the procurement expenditure budget – in quantities and value – for the period under review?
  - What are the principal purchases?
  - Who are the principal suppliers?
  - What attempts have been made to achieve single and partnership sourcing?
  - How and by what criteria are suppliers appraised?
  - Are the results of appraisals communicated to suppliers?
  - How do prices paid for samples of purchases compare with what is obtainable in the market?
  - In what ways does the procurement function seek to obtain value for money?
  - How and by whom are specifications prepared? Is there any procurement involvement?
  - What environmental procurement policy/policies are in existence and how successfully are these implemented?
  - What savings have been achieved in the period under review and how have these been achieved?

Much of this information can be obtained from the examination of a sample of orders and other procurement documentation and formal and informal interviews.

- *Inventory*
  - Does the company make use of ABC analysis?
  - How much inventory are carried, i.e. strategic items, bottleneck items, leverage items and non-critical items?
  - What is the rate of turnover of a sample of items under each category?
  - What items of inventory have been in stock for more than one year?
  - What procedures are in place for the identification of obsolescent, slow-moving or damaged inventory and for the prevention of pilfering?
  - What procedures are in place for the disposal of surplus stock, obsolete or scrap supplies or discarded capital items?
  - What stockouts have been experienced in the period and why?
  - What attempts have the procurement/supplies function made to reduce inventory investment?

Much of this information can be obtained from an investigation of stores records, the physical inspection of inventory and stores procedures and formal and informal interviews. From the above, it can be seen that the main 'tools' used in procurement performance audit include:

- formal or informal interviews
- sampling
- trailing a procedure or document through from its inception to its end or storage or disposal
- observation.

These 'tools' can be supported by such procedures as benchmarking and ratio analysis.

17.9.5 Procurement management audit reports

After compiling the findings into a report with summarised recommendations and supporting reasons, the audit should be presented to senior management. When preparing such reports, auditors should:

- highlight policies, procedures and personnel where efficiency and effectiveness can be improved
- commend good practice and performance
- think beyond simple quantitative measures of performance and consider the full consequences, side-effects and reactions likely to occur when these recommendations are presented
- support constructive proposals made by procurement staff that may receive greater attention if made by an outside source.

17.10 Benchmarking and ratios

17.10.1 Benchmarks

A benchmark may be defined as:

> a measured 'best in class' achievement – a reference or measurement standard for comparison that is recognised as the standard of excellence for a specific business process.

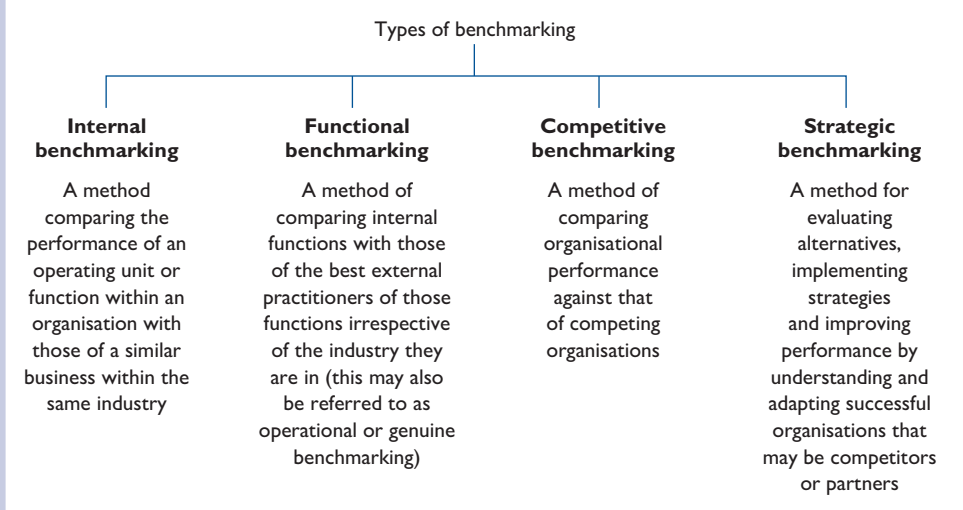
As shown in Figure 17.3 benchmarking may take four main forms.

17.10.2 The benefits and criticisms of benchmarking

Benchmarking offers the following benefits:

- provision of a 'gap analysis' tool – that is, the gap between where we are and 'best in class' organisations
- the opportunity to creatively incorporate the best practice from any industry into an organisation's operations
- decision support for setting objectives and a basis for cost–benefit analysis
- it is motivating as it identifies objectives that have been achieved by others
- resistance to change can be diminished when ideas for improved performance come from external sources
- innovations and technical breakthroughs from other industries can be identified earlier and their applicability assessed
- the experience and knowledge bases of employees can be enhanced.

Figure 17.3 The four main forms of benchmarking



The importance of benchmarking as a basis of comparison is indicated by examples given by Business Link:[17]

- in the top 25 per cent of firms, only 0.5 per cent of suppliers are substandard, whereas those in the lower quartile have six times as many substandard suppliers
- the top 25 per cent of organisations appear to be getting an average of 97 per cent of supplies on time, while in the lower quartile, only an average of 66.5 per cent of supplies are delivered on time
- the upper quartile performers use one ninth (or less) of the number of suppliers used by lower-quartile performers
- the bottom 25 per cent of firms reported an average of eight stock turns per year compared to 32 stock turns achieved by the top 25 per cent of firms in the sample.

There are, however, four main criticisms of benchmarking. These are that:

- benchmarking implies there is only one best method of performing, but there may be approaches other than those chosen as benchmarks that can be better ways of resolving an issue or improving performance
- benchmarking may indicate yesterday's solutions to tomorrow's problems
- price comparisons may be difficult because customised specifications may be unique to the buying institution
- price drivers, such as volume, procurement practices and terms and conditions, may further complicate comparisons.

17.11 Integrated benchmarking

A number of 'frameworks' have been devised to provide a holistic means of evaluating organisational performance and promoting continuous improvement by means of effective and integrated benchmarking. Two of the best-known frameworks are the European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) model and balanced scorecards.

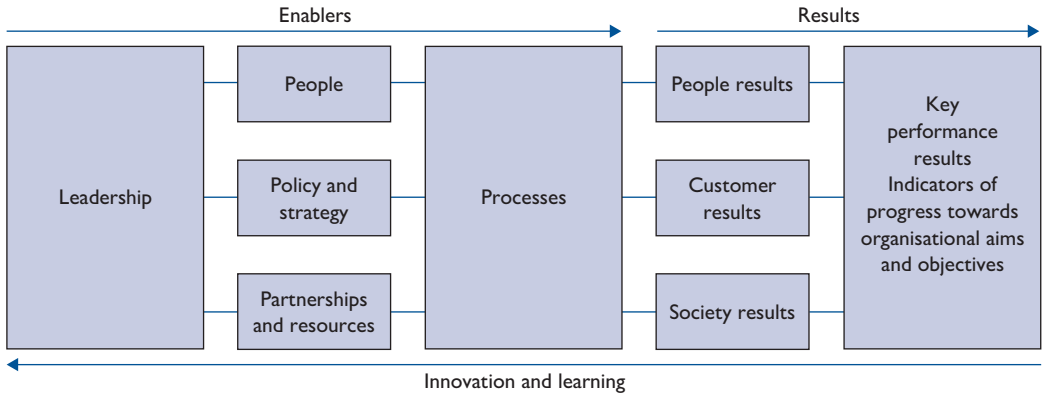
17.11.1 The EFQM model

The EFQM model – shown in Figure 17.4 – consists of nine elements, classified into *enablers* and *results*. As a tool for self-assessment, the model allocates 1000 points on a weighted basis between the nine elements, of which 500 points are allocated to enablers and 500 to results. The *enabler elements* are *how* the organisation approaches the criteria of each element. The *results elements* are *what* the organisation has achieved, and, is likely to achieve. The degree of excellence in the results, the extent to which the results are being achieved and the degree to which they address all relevant facets of the criteria all form the basis for the assessment of results.

17.11.2 The balanced scorecard

The balanced scorecard shown in Figure 17.5 was developed in the early 1990s by Robert Kaplan and David Norton of the Harvard Business School. They describe the innovation of the balanced scorecard as follows:

Figure 17.4 The EFQM business excellence model



The balanced scorecard retains financial measures, but financial measures tell the story of past events. An adequate story for industrial-age companies for which investments in long-term capabilities and customer relationships were not critical for success. These financial measures are inadequate, however, for guiding and evaluating the journey that information-age companies must make to create future value through investment in customers, suppliers, employees, processes, technology and innovation.

As shown, the balanced scorecard is not only a measurement system but also a framework that enables organisations to clarify their vision and strategy and translate them into action. The balanced scorecard approach suggests that we view the organisation from four perspectives: customer, financial, internal business processes and learning and growth. For each of these perspectives, the scorecard suggests that we should develop metrics and collect and analyse data.

The advantage of the scorecard is that it presents many of the seemingly disparate elements of an organisation's agenda in a single report. It also encourages managers to consider all relevant operational measures at the same time.

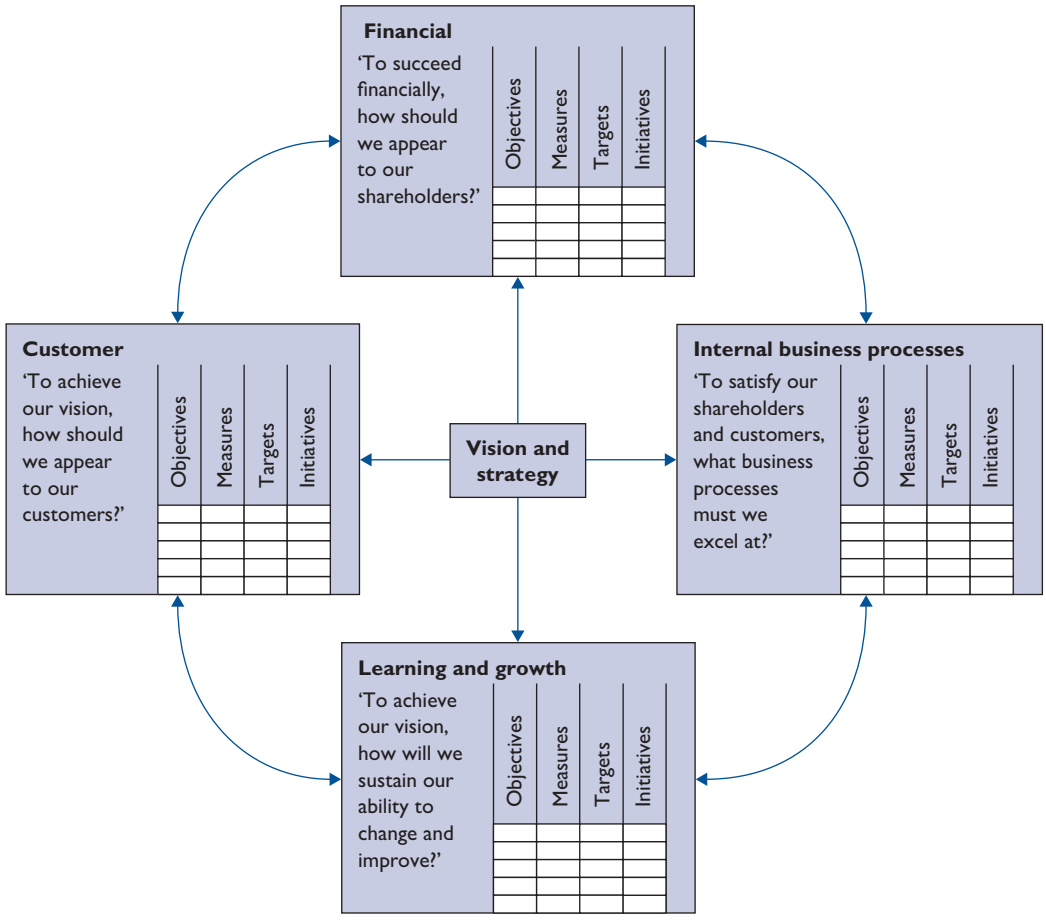
The *performance prism* is a development of the balanced scorecard developed by Andy Neeley of the Cranfield School of Management and Chris Adams of Anderson Consulting.

For reasons of space, it is not possible to provide a detailed description of EFQM, balanced scorecards and performance prism approaches here. Further information on the EFQM model can be obtained from the British Quality Foundation.[18] The foundation also publishes *Assessing for Excellence: A Practical Guide to Self Assessment* and *The EFQM Excellence Model*.

Much has been published on the balanced scorecard. A good place to start is with the books by R. Kaplan, D. Norton and A. Lowes – *The Balanced Scorecard: Measures that Drive Performance*, *Putting the Balanced Scorecard to Work* and *Using the Balanced Scorecard as a Strategic Management System*.[19]

Two other useful books are Paul R. Niven's, *Balanced Scorecard Step-by-Step*[20] and M. C. S. Bourne and P. A. Bourne's, *Understanding the Balanced Scorecard in a Week*.[21]

Figure 17.5 The balance scorecard



The Balanced Scorecard Software Report, published by the Centre for Business Performance, Cranfield University, provides evaluations of 28 existing software packages relating to the selection of balanced scorecard software.

The pioneering book on the performance prism is by A. Neely, C. Adams and M. Kennerley, *The Performance Prism: The Scorecard for Measuring and Managing Business Success*.[22]

17.12 Procurement ethics

17.12.1 Definitions

Procurement ethics is a subdivision of business ethics, which in turn is the application of general ethical principles in a commercial or industrial context. Procurement ethics are also related to professional ethics.

Ethics as a general field of study may be defined as:

> The principles of conduct governing an individual or group; concern for what is right or wrong, good or bad.

Business ethics is just the application of the above definition to the workplace and business relationships specifically.

- *Professional ethics* are guidelines or best practice that embody ideals and responsibilities that inform practitioners as to the principles and conduct they should adopt in certain situations.

17.12.2 Principles

The main principles of professional ethics are:

- impartiality or objectivity
- openness and full disclosure
- confidentiality
- due diligence, competency and a duty of care
- fidelity to professional responsibilities
- avoiding potential or apparent conflicts of interest.

These principles are to be interpreted in the light of the wider fields of personal and global ethics shown in Figure 17.6.

The range of corporal and individual issues relating to business ethics that might be considered under the above headings is infinite. Reasons of space prevent more than a brief reference to the following organisational issues that are of particular relevance to procurement

Figure 17.6 Principles of personal and global ethics[23]



17.13 Ethical issues relating to suppliers

These are the provision of practical help and advice, prompt payment, honesty and openness, e-ethics and courtesy to supplier representatives.

17.13.1 Provision of practical help and advice

This can take such forms as:

- helping suppliers to procure their own supplies more effectively and economically
- assistance in finding alternative customers to prevent too great a reliance on a single source
- provision of feedback on unsuccessful tenders
- collaboration on design and production
- supplier development
- placing a proportion of orders with local suppliers, thus assisting the prosperity of the community in which the procurement organisation is located.

17.13.2 Prompt payment

The organisation should help suppliers maintain their cash flow by:

- paying invoices on time
- ensuring that both finance and procurement departments are aware of the organisation's prompt payment policy and adhere to it (bearing in mind a failure to pay on time puts the buying organisation in breach of their own contract)
- dealing with complaints as expeditiously as possible so that payments are not needlessly deferred.

Under the UK Late Payments of Commercial Debts (Interest) Act 1998, which is based on an EU directive, bills must be paid within 30 days. The act provides that, after 30 days, small businesses (those with 50 or fewer employees) can claim interest retrospectively.

17.13.3 Honesty and openness

Honesty and openness are the opposite of deception, as defined by Robertson and Rymon:[24] 'one party's intention to create or perpetuate a false belief in another party'.

The same writers identify four types of 'bluffing' that some procurement agents may adopt on the premise that, in negotiations, their responsibility is to obtain the best possible price, quality and delivery and that deception and manipulation of the supplier is an acceptable means of achieving the desired end.

The four examples of deception instanced by Robertson and Rymon are giving a false impression to suppliers that:

- other vendors are aggressively competing for a particular contract
- time limits for the completion of negotiations apply
- a competitor is offering a better deal
- the selling firm is in danger of losing the contract.

From their research, Robertson and Rymon reported that:

- 29 per cent of their respondents admitted to having deceived the seller
- the suggestions that there were other vendors and that the vendors might lose the contract were, respectively, the most and least common forms of deception
- deceptive behaviour is likely to be the outcome of organisational pressure to perform or lack of clear guidance regarding what is permissible, so there is 'ethical ambiguity'
- deception may be a recognised negotiating ploy: 'the buyer may be selling a false deadline but the seller knows that the deadline is false'.

The writers also suggest that the replacement of short-term, arm's length by long-term collaborative procurement arrangements is likely to be conducive to the development of cooperation, interdependence and trust between buyers and suppliers.

17.13.4 E-ethics

The CIPS[25] suggests that the Internet 'is creating a new environment in which unethical behaviour has far greater implications for companies than was previously the case'. In particular, the balance of power in e-trading, as exemplified by e-auctions, is shifting in favour of the purchaser. A typical code of ethics for e-auctions is that of Dow Chemicals:[26]

> Initiate the auction with the intent to award the business. Do not use an online auction as a prospecting tool. Do not solicit, negotiate or accept offline offers once invitations have been sent to auction participants or upon completion of the auction.
>
> Ensure bidders have a clear understanding of what to expect before, during and after the auction: develop and distribute clear auction rules and specifications.
>
> Provide bidders time to prepare for the event, including strategic development and training.
>
> Document and distribute the business criteria that will be used to award business.
>
> Train bidders prior to auction:
>
> – ensure bidders are comfortable with the online e-auction tool
> – inform all participants of auction results in a timely fashion.
>
> Only invite bidders to participate if they can meet your auction requirements.
>
> Do not allow phantom bidding.

The CIPS further suggests that, with B2B e-commerce, the issues of trust, access, identity, security, privacy, property and confidentiality take on new dimensions.

17.13.5 Courtesy to suppliers' representatives

There is evidence that sales representatives often have a poor opinion of buyers. This is likely to be enhanced where sales representatives are prior to meetings kept waiting unnecessarily. It should be appreciated by procurement staff that, allowing for travelling time and discussions, a sales representative has a relatively short working day in which to fit calls. Unsolicited sales calls tend to be unwelcome before 9.30am, between 12.15pm and 1.30pm and after 4.30pm. If kept waiting, the salesperson's whole programme of visits in a particular area may be disrupted. Other factors to bear in mind when receiving sales representatives should include:

- using a suitable room for interviews
- giving information regarding the times between which representatives will be seen
- providing them with honest information.

While procurement staff should be open to information about new products and suppliers, they should be frank, but courteous, about informing a representative, if there is no possibility of business, to avoid making future calls. Above all, a buyer should never be patronising, rude or supercilious. Such behaviour demeans both the representative and the buyer and is clearly not conducive to establishing supplier goodwill. While there must clearly be an exchange of pleasantries, it should be remembered that 'time is money', for both the purchaser and the supplier.

Kennedy[27] instances 22 different tactics used by unscrupulous buyers when dealing with representatives. Not only are such tactics unprofessional, but they also negate a golden rule – always treat others as you would like them to treat you.[28] This rule is unambiguous and easy to understand. The motives for endorsing it may be altruistic, but are actually a reflection of precautionary, defensive self-interest.

17.13.6 Business gifts and hospitality

Policies with regard to the receipt by members of the procurement staff of gifts from suppliers, especially at Christmas, and hospitality at other times vary widely. The three most common policies for procurement are that members of the procurement staff:

- are forbidden to accept gifts of any kind and those received must be returned
- may retain gifts that are clearly of an advertising nature, such as calendars, diaries, pencils and so on
- are allowed to decide for themselves whether a proffered gift of hospitality is an appreciation of a cordial business relationship or an attempt at commercial bribery.

Our considered view is that the third bullet point of the above policies is the best as it regards staff as responsible individuals, capable of distinguishing a gift or hospitality from a bribe. There is also the fact that the first two policies encourage subterfuge, such as having gifts sent to the buyer's home address. There is, however, the danger that younger, less experienced, lower-paid members of staff are likely to be flattered to receive gifts, the implications of which are not always recognised. For this reason, it is useful for all members of the procurement staff to receive guidance on ethical practice from professional and organisational ethical codes and ethical training.

17.14 Ethical codes of conduct

In Chapter 1, it was stated that one of the essentials of a profession is 'adherence to a code of conduct'. Professions as diverse as medicine, law, accountancy and architecture have issued codes of conduct. Codes of conduct are issued by the Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS) in the UK and Institute of Supply Management (ISM) in the USA.

There are also national and international codes. A good example of a national code is the UK government's *Procurement Code of Good Practice for Customers and Suppliers*. An example of an international code is the *Global Compact*, introduced by the United

Nations' secretary general in 1999. This challenges world business leaders to help build the social and environmental pillars required to sustain the new global economy and covers ten principles under four headings on which companies are asked to act.

- Human rights
  - *Principle 1* – businesses should support and respect the protection of internationally proclaimed human rights
  - *Principle 2* – make sure that they are not complicit in human rights abuses.
- Labour
  - *Principle 3* – businesses should uphold the freedom of association and the effective recognition of the right to collective bargaining
  - *Principle 4* – the elimination of all forms of forced and compulsory labour
  - *Principle 5* – the effective abolition of child labour
  - *Principle 6* – the elimination of discrimination in respect of employment and occupation.
- Environment
  - *Principle 7* – businesses should support a precautionary approach to environmental challenges
  - *Principle 8* – undertake initiatives to promote greater environmental responsibility
  - *Principle 9* – encourage the development and diffusion of environmentally friendly technologies.
- Anti-corruption
  - *Principle 10* – businesses should work against corruption in all its forms, including extortion and bribery.

Other international codes are those of the *Ethical Trading Initiative (ETI)* and the *International Labour Organisation (ILO)*.

The ETI is an alliance of companies, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and trade union organisations. The ultimate ETI goal is to ensure that the working conditions of workers producing for the UK market meet or exceed international labour standards.

The ILO's *Declaration on Fundamental Principles and Rights at Work*, adopted in 1998, covers four areas:

- freedom of association and the effective recognition of the right to collective bargaining
- the elimination of all forms of forced or compulsory labour
- the effective abolition of child labour
- the elimination of discrimination in the respect of employment and occupation.

17.14.1 The benefits of ethical codes

Karp and Abramms[29] suggest that both professional and organisational codes are useful in:

- *providing a basis for working together* – most codes require that people treat each other with respect
- *setting boundaries as to what constitutes ethical behaviour* as determined by organisational human rights and professional values, examples of which are declarations of interest, confidentiality of information, competition, business gifts and hospitality

- *providing a safe environment for all subscribers to the code* – without the guidance provided by a code of ethics, employees are always subject and accountable to the value system of anyone in a higher position
- *providing a commonly held set of guidelines* enabling what is right and wrong in a given situation to be judged on a consistent basis, so they help to dispel 'ethical ambiguity'.

17.14.2 Some criticism of codes

Probably, most procurement people think of ethical codes as being remote from the real world. This may be because pressurised work often leaves little time for reflection. The requirement to maintain an unimpeachable standard of integrity in all business relationships is fine until one questions the meaning of integrity and to whom the duty of integrity is due. The most prominently cited obstacle to managing ethically is when there is a conflict between employees' own or their profession's ethical code and the ethics of their organisation or their immediate superior, employees may have to choose between remaining silent or speaking out and facing the consequences of being seen as disloyal. They may even have to face termination of employment, which, under conditions of redundancy and restructuring, is not to be lightly contemplated. Some comments from Brigley's[30] respondents include:

- high unemployment affects your ethics – cynical but true
- what people say and what people do are very different
- people suppress their own ethical values in order to be generally accepted and get on in business
- the more senior you are, the easier it is to maintain an ethical stance.

The ISM's code of conduct, for example, lays down that subscribers must denounce all forms or manifestations of commercial bribery. What do you do, though, knowing full well what happens to whistleblowers, if you discover that your boss or colleague is receiving bribes? In summary, it seems that, to be effective, both organisational and professional codes need to be made more relevant to those they apply to and be supported by administrative procedures designed to assist in creating an ethical culture. This in turn means that, to be effective, procurement ethics require appropriate training and education.

17.14.3 Training in ethics

Ethical training sessions for procurement staff can provide a number of benefits. They reinforce the organisation's ethical codes and policies, remind staff that top management expects participants to consider ethical issues when making procurement decisions and clarify what is and what is not acceptable. Such training can include the following:

- the field of ethics
- the feasibility of ethics in business
- how people may rationalise their unethical behaviour
  - 'I was only doing what I was told'
  - 'It's not really illegal'

  - 'It's in everyone's interest'
  - 'Everybody does it'
  - 'No one will ever know'
  - 'The company owes me this because it doesn't pay me enough'
- factors to be considered when receiving a gift or the offer of hospitality, including:
  - the motive of the donor – whether a gift is a token of appreciation or a bribe
  - the value of the gift or the hospitality – when it exceeds what is permissible
  - the type of gift or the nature of the hospitality
  - the manner in which the offer is made – openly or surreptitiously
  - what strings, if any, are attached
  - what impressions the gift or hospitality will make on superiors, colleagues, sub-ordinates, bearing in mind the human propensity to think the worst
  - what the employer's reaction would be if the matter was brought to his or her attention
  - whether the buyer can honestly be satisfied that the gift will not influence his or her objectivity when dealing with suppliers.

If the buyer has doubts about any of the above, the gift or hospitality should be refused.

- double standards – some companies offer gifts to customers' buyers, but refuse permission to their own staff to receive gifts, for example
- what members of the procurement staff should do if they discover a superior, colleagues or subordinates acting contrary to the company's ethical code
- whistleblowing
- what the possible penalties are for unethical behaviour
- fostering ethical standards:
  - dealing with ethical suppliers
  - management support for ethical behaviour.

Badaracco and Webb,[31] in a study of organisational ethics as perceived by younger managers, conclude that ethics as 'viewed from the trenches' is very different from that viewed from the 'general's headquarters':

> The younger managers believed that, in effect, the people who pressured them to act in sleazy ways were responding to four powerful organisational commandments. First, performance is what really counts so make your numbers. Second, be loyal and show us that you're a team player. Third, don't break the law. Fourth, don't overinvest in ethical behaviour.

The researchers also point out:

> In short, a clear pattern of implicit norms and values had taken shape in the minds of many of these younger managers. This pattern is what we have called the fourth commandment. In only a minority of cases did ethics seem to pay. Middle managers who pressed subordinates for sleazy or illegal behaviour went unpunished. Whistleblowing was often a professional hazard and sleazy behaviour didn't hurt or even seemed to accelerate career advancement especially in the short run and sometimes in the long run too.

Two important conclusions from this research are:

- codes of ethics can be helpful, though not decisive, particularly if they are specific about acceptable and unacceptable behaviour
- codes are more likely to be credible if they are enforced and violations of the code are punished.

Brigley[32] considers that codes are easier to introduce and implement in larger organisations. Smaller companies generally prefer an informal approach to ethical issues. Brigley also reports that, within organisations, senior management's attitudes and tactics and conflicts of values with senior management are mainly concerned with pressures arising from harshly competitive climates and the need for a good bottom-line performance.

17.15 Procurement and fraud

17.15.1 What is fraud?

Fraud is defined by the CIMA[33] as:

> Dishonestly obtaining an advantage, avoiding an obligation or causing loss to another party.

The term 'fraud' commonly includes activities such as theft, corruption, conspiracy, embezzlement, deception, bribery and extortion.

The World Bank has identified the following violations that should be referred to their Department of Institutional Integrity:

- contract irregularities and violations of the bank's procurement guidelines
- bid rigging
- collusion by bidders
- fraudulent bids
- fraud in contract performance
- fraud in an audit enquiry
- product substitution
- defective pricing and parts
- cost/labour mischarging
- bribery and acceptance of gratuities
- solicitation and/or receipt of kickbacks
- misuse of bank funds or positions
- travel fraud
- theft and embezzlement
- gross waste of bank funds.

The possibility of procurement fraud is of great concern to all organisations. The three essential ingredients of fraud are intent, capability and opportunity. This situation creates a need to maintain effective communication of accepted behaviour and codes of conduct, thereby clarifying what is and is not acceptable behaviour. Procurement guidelines should always be clearly communicated to all staff, contractors and suppliers.

17.15.2 Distinction between fraud and error

The basic distinction between fraud and error is that of the intention. Any error is unintentional – that is, the person committing the error does not do so knowingly. Errors are accidental and may arise due to negligence, genuine misunderstanding or incompetence. With fraud, however, it is intentional. The person committing fraud does so knowingly, wilfully and with the motive of gaining advantage or benefit by cheating or causing loss or injury to others, acting alone or in collusion with one another.

17.15.3 Indicators of procurement fraud

There are many indicators of potential procurement fraud. They include:

- excessive supplier hospitality to selected staff
- new suppliers continually facing entry 'obstacles'
- budget holders pressurising buyers to place work with named suppliers
- a buyer's lifestyle changing dramatically
- pricing schedules being completed in pencil
- suppliers and contractors being very familiar with senior staff
- specifications favouring a particular supplier
- supplier payments going unchallenged
- the absence of supplier approval data
- no supplier visits or audits.

As indicated in Table 17.3, opportunities for fraud occur at every stage in the procurement process.

17.15.4 E-procurement and fraud

E-procurement clearly provides many opportunities for both input and output fraud. *Input fraud* can take such forms as the opening of accounts for non-existent suppliers who are paid electronically, the payments going into an account designated by the fraudster, over-stating or understating inventory amounts, deleting inventory records, copying of credit card numbers and so on.

Output fraud tends to be comparatively rare. One example is that of sending unauthorised e-mails with intentionally false information.

17.15.5 The prevention of fraud

The threat of fraud can be reduced in four ways.

- *Establish a culture of integrity* – Casabona[34] points out that 85–90 per cent of computer fraud is the result of an insider job. Some computer experts therefore claim that the most effective security system is the integrity of company employees. Much fraud can be eliminated by careful employee selection. Organisations that communicate and support a commitment to integrity will create environments hostile to fraud. When employees leave, organisations should immediately delete all access information of the former worker and inform all relevant people of the termination.

Table 17.3 Fraud at different points in the procurement process

Phase of procurement process	*Possible fraudulent activity*
1 Establishing need for goods or services	■ Maintaining excessive stock levels to justify purchases ■ Declaring serviceable items as excess or selling them as surplus while continuing to purchase ■ Buying in response to aggressive sales activities ■ Estimates prepared after RFQs requested ■ Failure to develop alternative sources
2 Development of specifications	■ Defining specifications to fit capabilities of a single contractor ■ Defining specifications to fit a specific product ■ Advanced release of information to favoured contractors ■ Selective release of information to favoured contractors ■ Breaking up of requirements to allow rotation of bids ■ Vague specifications that make comparisons of estimates complicated
3 Pre-solicitation	■ Unwarranted sole source justifications ■ Erroneous statements to justify sole source ■ Justification of sole source signed by managers with no authority ■ Technical personnel providing advance information to carefully selected suppliers ■ Invalid restrictions in RFQ documents to limit competition
4 Solicitation	■ Restriction on procurement to prevent/obstruct qualified suppliers ■ Limiting time for submission of tenders so that only those with advance information can respond ■ Improper social contact with supplier representatives ■ Conducting bid conferences in such a way that bid rigging or price fixing is facilitated ■ Discussions with personnel about likely employment with a supplier or sub-contractor ■ Rendering special assistance to a supplier in preparing their bid
5 Bid acceptance	■ Improper acceptance of a late bid ■ Falsification of documents or receipts to get a late bid accepted ■ Change in the bid after other bidders' prices are known ■ Falsification in supplier's qualifications, financial capability, successful completion of previous jobs and so on ■ Submission of the bids by one bidder in a different party's name ■ False certificates, such as insurance ■ Rejection of bids without any valid reason ■ Deliberate loss of bids ■ Exercising favouritism towards a particular supplier during the evaluation process ■ Using biased individuals on the evaluation panel ■ Failing to forfeit bid bonds when a supplier withdraws improperly
6 Post contract award	■ Certifying goods without conducting inspections ■ Action not taken for the non-compliance with contract terms and conditions ■ Double payments for same items/services ■ Contract files are incomplete ■ Substitution of specified goods with used or inferior products ■ Time sheets signed for hours not expended ■ Expenses paid when not incurred ■ Essential spares not delivered but invoiced ■ Invoices settled earlier than contract requires ■ Payment for non-delivered goods/services ■ Unsubstantiated cost growth ■ Charges for skills levels below those contractually agreed

- *Be alert to giveaway signs* – giveaway signs of fraud include:
  - unfolded invoices that have not come through the post
  - too many orders to one supplier, except where single-sourcing applies
  - loss of supporting documentation
  - sudden, unexplained affluence
  - unwillingness of the employee to take holidays or accept a transfer or promotion to other work.

  Evans and Maguire[35] state that the commonest source of discoveries of fraud is outside information. This includes the reporting of fraudulent practices by colleagues and disgruntled mistresses.
- *Take appropriate e-security measures* – technological concerns in e-commerce are usually divided into two broad categories – client server security and data and transaction security. *Client server security* uses various authorisation methods, such as passwords and firewalls, to ensure that only valid users have access to databases. *Data and transaction security* involves ensuring the privacy of electronic messages by using encryption.
- *Recognise the importance of audits* – audits may be internal or external. *Internal audits* in relation to procurement were described in section 17.9. *External audits*, by members of a recognised professional accountancy body approved by the UK Department of Trade and Industry, are a statutory requirement under the UK companies acts. Contrary to popular belief, it is not an auditor's primary duty to prevent fraud, but, rather, make an independent examination of the books, accounts and vouchers of a business for the purpose of reporting whether or not the balance sheet and profit and loss account show a 'true and fair view' of the affairs and profit (or loss) of the business according to the best information and explanations obtained. An audit may include a physical verification of assets, such as inventory, and the auditors may also make recommendations that can make the business less susceptible to fraud by its customers, suppliers and employees. Where a fraud is discovered, the auditor has a duty to prove that fraud to its full extent, regardless of the amount in question.

17.15.6 Bribery

The Bribery Act 2010 modernised the law on bribery and came into force in the United Kingdom in April 2011. The Act repealed and replaced England's old, much-criticised, laws on bribery with a new comprehensive anti-bribery code. There were a number of Acts repealed or revoked, including:

- Public Bodies Corrupt Practices Act 1889 – The whole Act
- Prevention of Corruption Act 1906 – The whole Act
- Prevention of Corruption Act 1916 – The whole Act
- Scotland Act 1998 – Section 43
- Government of Wales Act 2006 – Section 44

The full list can be found in Schedule 2 'Repeals and Revocations' of the Bribery Act 2010.

There are six principles to guide organisations, namely, proportionality, top level commitment, risk assessment, due diligence, communication and, monitoring and review.

There are far reaching consequences of the new Act, some of which have direct relevance to procurement activities. There are two general offences as follows:

- Paying bribes: it will be an offence to offer or give a financial or other advantage with the intention of inducing that person to perform a 'relevant function or activity' 'improperly' or to reward that person for doing so.
- Receiving bribes: it will be an offence to receive a financial or other advantage intending that a 'relevant function or activity' should be performed 'improperly' as a result.

'Relevant function or activity' includes any function of a public nature and any activity connected with a business. The person performing that activity must be expected to perform it in good faith or impartiality or be in a position of trust.

There is a controversial new offence which can be committed only by commercial organisations (companies and partnerships). It will be committed where:

- a person associated with a relevant commercial organisation (which includes not only employees, but agents and external third parties) bribes another person intending to obtain or retain a business advantage
- the organisation cannot show that it had adequate procedures in place to prevent bribes being paid.

There are practical steps that organisations should consider to demonstrate that they have 'adequate procedures'. These steps may include:

- procurement issue guidance to all suppliers and sub-contractors; publish a code of conduct and then monitor and revise it
- establish an internal anti-corruption committee
- corruption training and testing for staff
- prohibitions on facilitation payments
- clear policies on corporate hospitality
- robust screening processes for third-party payments
- conduct due diligence around selection and appointments of suppliers and sub-contractors
- disciplinary measures and remedial action arising from unethical behaviour.

The Bribery Act 2010 raises the maximum jail term for bribery by an individual from seven years to ten years. A company convicted of failing to prevent bribery could receive an unlimited fine.

Figure 17.7 shows the impact on firms of the UK Bribery Act, and Figure 17.8 shows an overview of the Bribery Act 2010.[36]

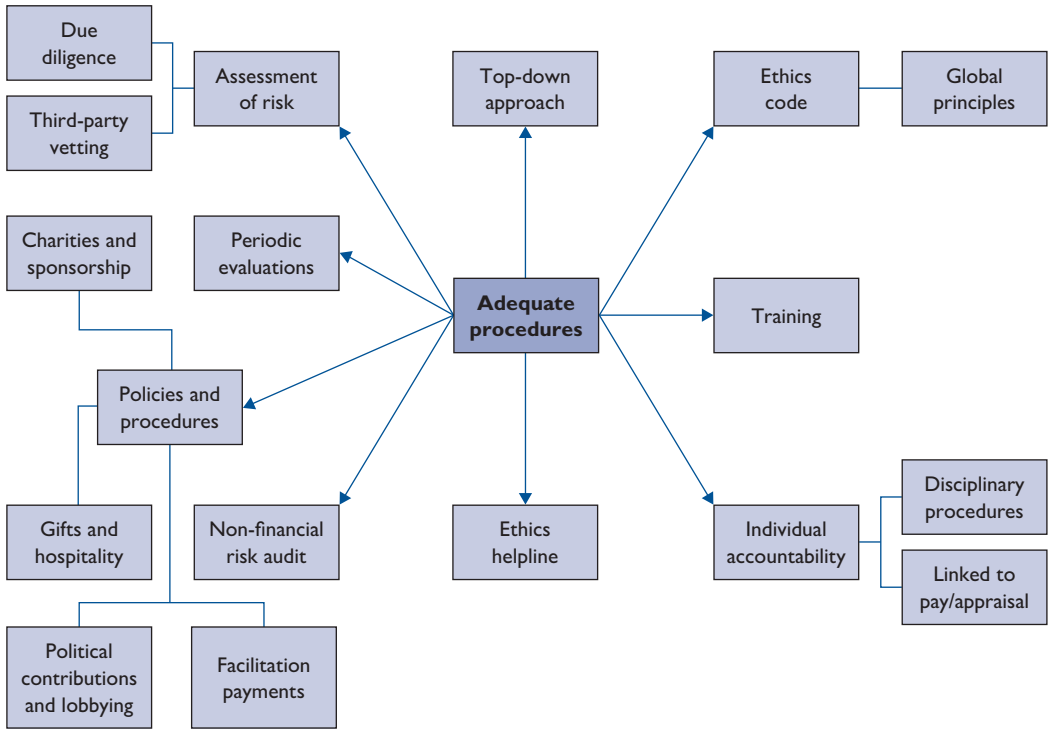
17.16 Environmental aspects of procurement

17.16.1 Being responsible towards the environment

Being responsible towards the environment is one aspect of the social responsibility of business and should be a consideration when devising strategies.

According to the UK's Environmental Protection Act 1990:

Figure 17.7 UK Bribery Act: Impact on firms



> The environment consists of all or any of the following media, namely, the air, water and land; and the medium of air includes the air within buildings and the air within the natural or man-made structures above or below the ground.

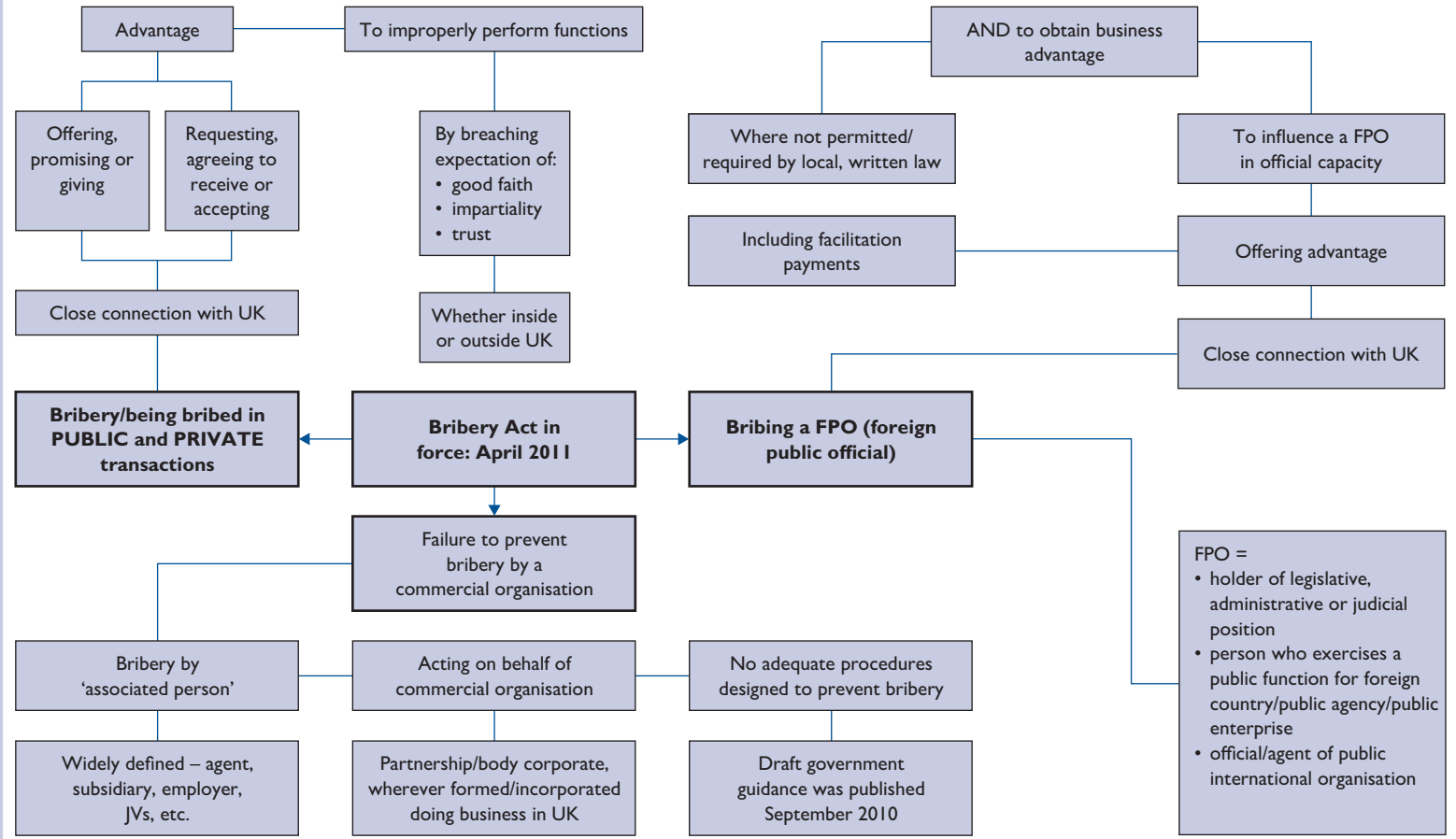
Important areas of environmental concern include the following:

- *More efficient use of raw materials in manufacturing operations* – this applies especially to timber and minerals. Consumer concern about rainforests has had a direct impact on the demand for tropical hardwoods, which has affected timber producers, wholesalers and users. Of about 80 minerals used by industry, some 18 – including lead, sulphur, tungsten and zinc – are in relatively short supply. Such materials will be subject to rising prices and demands for recycling.
- *Pollution and waste* – pollution is defined by the Environmental Protection Act 1990 as:

  > Pollution of the environment due to the release (into an environmental medium) from any process of substances which are capable of causing harm to man or any other living organism supported by the environment.

- *Energy savings* – energy to power industry is provided by the environment from such sources as wood, fossil fuels, water, sunlight, wind and uranium.

Figure 17.8 UK Bribery Act 2010: An overview



17.16.2 Legislation

Environmental procurement may be defined as:[37]

> Procurement involvement in supply chain activities in order to facilitate recycling, reuse and resource reduction.

It is subject to a 'vast range of international and national environmental legislation and directives'.

International legislation

Most international law is enforced by means of national processes, although EU laws can be enforced via the European Court of Human Rights.

A large number of EU environmental directives have been issued relating to quality, water, waste, chemicals and packaging and packaging waste. European legislation represents the minimum environmental demands and is legally binding for all EU member states. A current list of all pertinent legislation is provided by the European Information Service[38] and the European Information Centres.

UK legislation

There is a plethora of legislation on the theme 'Environment' including the Climate Change Act 2008, the Clean Air Act 1993, the Water Act 2014, the Flood and Water Management Act 2010, the Radioactive Substances Act 1993, the Packaging (Essential Requirements) (Amendment) Regulations 2013, the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Amendment) Regulations 2009 and the Environmental Protection Act 1990. The latter contains important provisions relating to:

- integrated pollution control
- best available technology not entailing excessive cost (BATNEEC), requiring companies using major polluting processes to spend as much on clean technology as they can afford
- air pollution control
- waste disposal and recycling – *waste* is defined in the Act as:
  - any substance which constitutes a scrap material or an efficient or other unwanted surplus substance from the application of any process
  - any substance or article which requires to be disposed of as being broken, worn out, contaminated or otherwise spoiled; anything which is discarded or otherwise dealt with as if it were waste shall be presumed to be waste unless the contrary is proved
- control of dangerous substances and nuisances.

There are also many directives relating to such environmental areas as air, chemicals, energy, land, noise and statutory nuisance, plant protection, pollution, radioactive substances and waste. Details of these are available from the Department of the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (DEFRA) and websites such as www.netregs.org.uk – the UK's environmental regulations on the Internet.

The Environment Agency, which combined HM Inspector of Pollution, the National Rivers Authority and Local Authority Waste Regulators, was established by the Environmental Act 1995 and is responsible for pollution prevention and control in England and Wales.

17.16.3 Environmental procurement policies and management

DEFRA[39] has stated that:

> The procurement of supplies and equipment is a potent instrument of environmental policy. Careful purchasing gives full weight to environmental considerations in the selection of products and can help improve environmental standards by reducing pollution and waste. It can also, through the natural operation of the market, influence purchasers and suppliers in their pricing policies and product ranges.

The steps required to give effect to these objectives are shown in Figure 17.9. These nine steps are discussed below.

Step 1: Prepare environmental policy

When prepared, the environmental procurement policy should be:

- endorsed by senior management
- reflect the nature of the business – that is, if the business is a chemical one, it should address the issues associated with chemical production rather than issues relating to, say, recycled paper or lease cars
- form part of the overall corporate strategy.

Step 2: Communicate policy

From the standpoint of employees, the policy communications should be cross-functional to ensure the integration of its implementation throughout the organisation.

Figure 17.9 Nine steps to implementing an environmental purchasing policy



Step 3: Prepare guidelines

A good example of guidelines for *employees* – especially procurement personnel – are those of the Central Purchasing Group of the University of Oxford.[40] In making procurement decisions, members of staff are instructed to give attention to the following environmental factors:

- ask first if this purchase is really necessary (reduce consumption)
- consider 'whole life' costs and impact when assessing equipment for purchase
- wherever practical, purchase goods and services that may be manufactured, used and disposed of in an environmentally responsible way
- where items are of a similar cost, try to give preference to those that are manufactured with a high recycled content
- wherever practical, specify items that can be recycled or reused
- wherever practical, use suppliers that are committed to environmental improvement
- wherever practical, work with the community at large to progress environmental initiatives and exchange best practice
- can the need be met in another way, by buying used equipment
- think whether or not the quantities/quality requested are essential.

In particular, purchasers should consider:

- energy usage, including mains water and drainage water
- waste minimisation and process efficiencies
- reuse and recycling opportunities
- packaging material and how it can best be disposed of
- waste disposal implications
- avoidance of ozone-depleting substances
- reduction of volatile organic compounds
- reduction of materials containing heavy metals
- control of discharges to air, land and water
- noise levels generated by plant and machinery
- eco-toxicity of materials released to land, air and water
- transport choice and pollution.

When comparing environmental with competing products that serve the same purpose, procurement staff should ensure that environmental products are:

- fit for the purpose and provide value for money
- energy-efficient and resource-efficient
- making the minimum use of virgin materials
- making the maximum use of post-consumer materials
- non- (or reduced) polluting
- durable, easily upgraded and repairable
- reusable and recyclable.

An example of guidance for *suppliers* is 'The green supplier guidelines', issued by Toyota Manufacturing North America Inc. Suppliers that provide parts, materials and components directly or indirectly to Toyota are required to complete one or more of the following initiatives:

- obtain ISO 14001 certification
- comply with Toyota's chemical ban list – Toyota has identified 450 chemicals and substances that suppliers of raw materials must phase out from new and/or reformulated materials, beginning 1 August 2000 (this list is regularly updated)
- comply with Toyota's hazardous materials management transportation system.

Step 4: Appraise suppliers

Methods and criteria for the appraisal of actual and potential suppliers are discussed in section 17.16.4.

Step 5: Incorporate environmental requirements into specifications

The incorporation of environmental requirements into specifications can be general, as with Toyota's chemical and transportation requirements referred to in Step 3 above or specific to a particular product or application, such as office furniture. The range of such environmental requirements is virtually limitless, but will normally cover such aspects as air, chemicals, energy, land, noise and statutory nuisances, plant protection, pollution and radioactive substances, together with requirements relating to installation, finishing, health and safety, testing and disposal. Reference to some factors in environmentally sensitive design was made in section 17.3.

Step 6: Adopt lifecycle approaches

Lifecycles and lifecycle costing have been discussed elsewhere in the book. The terms lifecycle inventory (LCI) and lifecycle analysis (LCA) are also used. Other terms, such as cradle to grave analysis and eco-balancing, cover the same ground. In the case of manufactured products, an LCA involves making a detailed analysis of the costs and environmental impacts of the product, from the mining of the raw materials used in its production and distribution through to its use, possible reuse or recycling and its ultimate disposal. A useful matrix for indicating the environmental impacts of products produced by the International Council for Local Environmental Initiatives is shown in Figure 17.10.

Step 7: Prepare guidelines for proposals

'Surplus' is an omnibus term covering materials or equipment that are in excess of requirements, no longer usable in their original form or have been superseded. Surplus items may still have a value. Many companies have waste-reduction programmes aimed at reducing losses due to scrap or obsolescence.

'Residual' applies to no-value waste resulting from production operations and it must be disposed of in the most efficient manner with regard to environmental directives and pollution and health hazard considerations.

Procurement can play a major part in waste disposal by doing the following:

- Identifying surplus materials or equipment.
- Arranging for the segregation of scrap, such as into ferrous or non-ferrous metals. Segregation can be facilitated by appropriate colour coding – red for steel, white for

Figure 17.10 International Council for Local Environmental Initiatives: matrix for environmental impacts

Product characteristics	Ecological alternative	Environmental consequences				Action examples
		Material	Energy	Emissions	Waste	
Material composition	Recycled material	X	X		X	Use recycled toilet and towel papers Procure refuse sacks made of recycled plastics
	Renewable materials	X				Choose recycled concrete or crushed rock rather than gravel as a construction material
	No toxic substance			X	X	Use chlorine-free paper, PCB-free electronics or PVC-free floor coverings
Transport	Short distance		X	X		Buy your fruit and vegetables from local producers
	Transport means		X	X		Make use of rail and boat versus road and plane transport
Manufacturing	Taking into account the environment	X	X	X	X	Choose a producer that has an environmental management system
Packaging	Reduction	X			X	Prefer recyclable, easily returnable or, if possible, no packaging at all
Product use	Durability	X			X	Buy long-term guaranteed carpets
	Repairability/ upgradability	X			X	Choose computers that can be upgraded and do not need to be replaced completely when becoming outdated
	Compatibility with equipment/users' habits	X	X	X	X	When changing to a recycled paper, test its compatibility with copiers and printers before distributing it throughout your organisation
	Energy requirements		X			Choose low-energy lightbulbs to save energy (and reduce your annual costs by up to 70 per cent)
	Safety for users	X	X	X	X	Use alternative pesticides or alternative methods of pest control
End of line	Re-use potential	X			X	Buy refillable toner cartridges for laser and ink jet printers
	Recyclability	X	X		X	When buying white goods, make sure that they can easily be dismantled and their material recycled
	Disposal			X	X	Use biodegradable synthetic vegetable-based hydraulic oil for fleet maintenance

cast iron, blue for carbon steel and so on. Scrap should be collected in separate containers for disposal.

- Creating an awareness of the possibilities of salvaging or recycling. 'Salvage' may be defined as 'the realistic value of an asset at the end of its useful life when it is no longer suitable for its original use'. Scrap or spoiled work may possibly be reprocessed or recycled. Reprocessing is the use of scrap to make a different item. This should only be done if it is certain that the cost of salvaging is less than the expenditure on reprocessing. Recycled materials are especially useful to the industries that consume them because they are more cost-effective than the primary variety as none of the initial costs of extracting, processing, transporting or smelting are involved. It has been estimated that every tonne of metal recycled in the UK results in a saving of 1.5 tonnes of iron ore, 0.5 tonnes of coke and, when tin plate is recovered, a 0.3–5-kilogram reduction in the purchase of expensive primary tin. There is also the environmental factor that, when discarded products are allowed to stay out of the recycling system, they may pollute air, land and water and disfigure the countryside. Disposal of scrap – whether metal, wood, paper or other materials – is therefore best done via a recognised broker affiliated to an appropriate body, such as the British Metals Federation. Better prices may be negotiated if:
  - the seller keeps abreast of the current scrap prices – the price of scrap is quoted daily on the London Metal Exchange
  - the scrap is segregated according to the buyer's requirements
  - scrap is suitably bailed.

  Equipment or components may be disposed of by:

- sale via the trade press
- sale to a stockist or dealer
- auction or via trade auctions
- returning them to the supplier – usually this will be at a discount, but stock will have been turned into cash
- sale to employees – especially cars, computers and office equipment
- donating them to schools or charitable organisations.

Step 8: Provide appropriate training

The aim of appropriate training is to enable staff and, possibly, suppliers to learn how to think and act in an environmentally conscious way in the field of procurement.

Step 9: Ensure regular audit of compliance

Monitoring the environmental procurement policy and its implementation should form part of the periodical procurement management audit referred to in section 17.9.

17.16.4 Screening suppliers for good environmental performance

Screening of suppliers can be done via questionnaires, requiring compliance with international standards and the use of specialist assessment tools.

As stated in section 10.8, prescreening suppliers is a good idea and prequalification questionnaires (PQQs) are often used for this purpose, gathering information on a supplier's financial and technical capability, and can be adapted to cover environmental issues, too. A good example is the UK's NHS Supplier Evaluation Performance Evaluation Question Set. The content of this questionnaire has been agreed with NHS representatives, industry and the Office of Government Commerce Buying Solutions and has become the standard for use throughout the NHS and wider government. The questionnaire can, however, be usefully adapted to private-sector use.

Compliance standards

Such standards include EU eco labels and those awarded by the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO).

Eco labels are an internationally accepted way of differentiating products from an environmental perspective. Although aimed primarily at domestic consumers, the scheme can also be useful for professional purchasers.

The EU eco-labelling scheme uses a product lifecycle approach involving the following stages:

- pre-production
- production
- packaging and distribution
- utilisation
- disposal.

For each stage, environmental effects are considered according to eight criteria:

1. waste relevance
2. noise
3. air contamination
4. water contamination
5. effects on eco-systems
6. consumption of energy
7. consumption of natural resources
8. soil pollution and degradation.

The eco-management and audit scheme (EMAS)

This is a voluntary initiative, now directed by EC No 1221/2009, which replaced the European Commission Regulation 761/2001.

The aim of EMAS is to recognise and reward organisations that go beyond the minimum legal requirements and improve their environmental performance.

As with ISO 14000 and 9000, EMAS requires a planned, comprehensive, periodic (the minimum frequency is once every three years) audit of an organisation's environmental management system by an accredited EMAS verifier. The environmental policy that all participants must publish provides the initial foundation and direction for the organisation's management system and is more stringently reviewed than a similar ISO 14000 and ISO 9000 policy.

Use of special assessment tools

A danger with questionnaires is that the answers given by suppliers may receive little or no examination by the issuing procurement organisation. Reliance on environmental standards may also be unsatisfactory. Knight[41] provides an example of a timber supplier that satisfied ISO 14000 requirements because of its methods of wood treatment:

> They had convinced themselves that they were environmentally responsible even though they had never considered where the trees were coming from.

Ericsson[42] specifies 'Supplier Environmental Requirements' as follows:

REQUIREMENT 1:

ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (EMS)

Ericsson requires that the Supplier must fulfill the following minimum EMS requirements:

- The Supplier must have an environmental policy. The policy must be based on an analysis of the supplier's current environmental position and be used as a basis for improvement.
- The Supplier must identify and document its significant environmental aspects.
- The Supplier must consider environmental aspects in its operational system.
- The Supplier must have an environmental improvement program, with objectives and action plans.
- The Supplier must be aware of and comply with environmental legislation and common practice.
- The Supplier must ensure that the employees have adequate and documented environmental education.

An environmental certification in accordance with ISO 14001 or equivalent is viewed favourably.

The Supplier must be prepared to supply life cycle data for supplier processes and products.

REQUIREMENT 2:

DESIGN FOR ENVIRONMENT & MANUFACTURING

The Supplier must be able to demonstrate design activities to minimise its products' environmental impact during its entire life cycle by considering energy and materials use and end-of-life treatment efficiency.

The Supplier must comply with the requirements in the Ericsson lists of banned and restricted substances.

The Supplier must…,

- not use any substances (including process chemicals) on Ericsson's lists of banned and restricted substances
- substitute substances on the Observation list when alternatives that are technically, economically and environmentally feasible are available.

REQUIREMENT 3:

PRODUCT INFORMATION

- The Supplier must be prepared to declare, in accordance with Ericsson standards, the material content of products delivered to Ericsson.
- The Supplier must be prepared to provide information concerning the process for handling and treatment of delivered material upon it becoming end-of-life.

REQUIREMENT 4:

TRANSPORT

- The Supplier is expected to minimise the environmental impact from transportation by using surface transport (truck, sea and rail) whenever possible.
- The Supplier is expected to use fuel-efficient vehicles when transporting goods for Ericsson.
- The Supplier must be prepared to provide information about the environmental aspects of transportation of goods to Ericsson, for example transportation type, packaging material, and production locations.

Discussion questions

17.1 Give two examples each of:
(a) product innovation
(b) process innovation
(c) incremental innovation.

17.2 When a company is involved with breakthrough innovation, such as a new drug, what is the role for procurement?

17.3 What is 'concurrent engineering'? What specific roles can procurement play to ensure the success of new product development?

17.4 If you were asked to ensure that your suppliers are using environmentally preferred materials, how would you find out if they were doing so? If you went to audit their processes, what six practices would you expect to find?

17.5 A multi-functional team is being created to develop a new waste recycling process. The basis of the new process is the use of advanced engineering and electronics. Your director has asked you if you could contribute to the supply chain risk management and developing new contracts with suppliers. The director wants to know what would be the major benefits of involving procurement at this very early stage. What are they?

17.6 'Supplier development is a structured approach to creating additional, competent, sources of supply. In consequence, no buyer should ever be in a position where they are a captive buyer and unable to negotiate'. Do you agree?

17.7 Long-standing barriers between design, production and purchasing can be difficult to overcome. Suggest how such barriers might be broken down and what benefits might accrue from replacing conflict with collaboration.

17.8 How should procurement and/or other managers weigh the relative strengths and weaknesses of potential suppliers in areas such as technological knowledge, manufacturing capabilities, length of relationship with the supplier, degree of trust and alignment of technology?

17.9 You have been asked to make a presentation on behalf of procurement to the board of directors of a key supplier. They have a reputation of being old-fashioned, unresponsive to design queries and lacking in customer care. It has got to the point where your engineering director wants you to find an alternative supplier. What points would you make to the board of directors at your supplier?

17.10 Discuss the viewpoints that, in supplier involvement or development:
- **(a)** 'the customer receives most of the benefits and the supplier receives few'
- **(b)** 'cooperative relationships are often cooperative in name and suppliers do more than their fair share of cooperating'.

How might you seek to deal constructively with these objections?

17.11 Comment on the following statements:
- **(a)** Much academic research into procurement is of little practical benefit to practising procurement people.
- **(b)** Much academic research is published in journals that purchasing professionals never read.

17.12 If you were employed as the head of procurement in a private sector, privately owned power station that could not generate electricity competitively and the chief operating officer wanted 15 per cent saved on the total amount of expenditure:
- **(1)** how would you tackle this task?
- **(2)** would you talk to buyers in other power stations?
- **(3)** what would you say to your strategic suppliers?

17.13 In some procurement situations, suppliers own the intellectual property rights in what they supply, including software source codes and patents. What steps can the buyer take to encourage other suppliers to bid for business?

17.14 Benchmarking of procurement performance is rarely done in either the public or private sectors. Why?

17.15 Your head of internal audit has asked you to help her to devise an audit plan to check on the way which purchase prices are agreed and how the process links to accounts payable. What elements of the procurement and payment process would you advise be included in the audit?

17.16 The CIPS policy statement on environmental procurement suggests that products or services should be selected that 'use or emit fewer substances that damage the environment or health'. How can you do this if you are not a chemist and have no specialised knowledge of the chemical content or disposal difficulties of the products or materials you are buying?

17.17 Consider how, from an ethical standpoint, you would react in each of the following cases.
- **(a)** A sales representative telephones you to say that he has left the employment of a supplier from whom you are currently buying large quantities of a component. He knows the price you are paying and states that his new company can undercut your present price by 20 per cent. You have been dealing satisfactorily with your present supplier for a number of years.
- **(b)** You are negotiating on a one-to-one basis with a small machine shop to carry out operations on 100,000 items to relieve capacity in your own production department. You inadvertently mention that you are very pleased with the price and that, subject to discussion with your own production manager, the sub-contractor is likely to receive an order. He then asks, 'Why not let me increase the price by another £1 – 50p for me and 50p for you?'
- **(c)** You can buy cheaper from an overseas supplier, but you know he has starvation levels of pay and the loss of the local order will cause unemployment.
- **(d)** You have negotiated and signed a contract with a supplier. When you arrive home, you find that an expensive piece of jewellery has been sent anonymously to your wife.

(e) You mention to the sales representative of a steel stockist that you are proposing to build an extension to your home. He says, 'Why not let us supply you with the steelwork at cost price?'

(f) On two occasions, a supplier has delivered sub-standard components that can nevertheless be used. You telephone the supplier's production manager to complain. He says, 'Don't write about it because it might affect a promotion I'm expecting. Let's keep it to ourselves and I will put it right'.

(g) You inform a potential supplier that, on average, your company buys 100,000 units of a certain item each year and, as a result, obtain a substantial quantity discount. You know that the average usage is only 50,000 units.

(h) A supplier asks you, in confidence, to give details of competitive quotes, saying that he will beat any price offered and 'that must be good for you'.

(i) A supplier offers you a bribe, saying, 'We do exactly the same for your boss and he has no worries'.

(j) One of your subordinates tells you that, last night, he took his family to a football match and had the use of a hospitality box (including dinner), provided by a company that you know is seeking a share of your business.

17.18 The procurement department is in an ideal position to be accountable for the value of inventory held in a business. That way, procurement and inventory management would be truly integrated. Do you agree, or is there an alternative approach(es)?

References

[1] www.business.gov.au

[2] Mileham, A. R., Morgan, E. J. and Chatting, I., 'An attribute approach to concurrent engineering', *Proceedings of the Institute of Mechanical Engineers*, Vol. 218, Part B, 2004, pp. 995–1005

[3] Winner, R. L., Pennel, J. P., Bertrand, H. E. and Slusarczuk, M. M. G., 'The role of concurrent engineering in weapons system acquisition', Institute for Defense Analyses, Alexandria, VA, USA, IDA Report R-338

[4] Website – www.smartlink.net.au

[5] Wynstra, F., Van Weele, A. and Axelsson, B., 'Purchasing involvement in product development', *European Journal of Purchasing*, Vol. 5, 1999, pp. 129–141

[6] Handfield, R. B., Krause, D. R., Scannell, T. V. and Monczka, R. M., 'Avoid the pitfalls in supplier development', *Sloan Management Review*, January, 2000, pp. 37–48

[7] Hartley, J., and Jones, G., 'Process oriented supplier development', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Vol. 33 (2), 1997, pp. 24–29

[8] Sako, M., 'Supplier development at Honda, Nissan and Toyota: comparative case studies of organisational capability enhancement', November, 2003

[9] As 6 above

[10] Fearon, H., *Purchasing Research: Concepts and Current Practice*, American Management Association, 1976, p. 5

[11] Sarantakos, S., *Social Research*, Macmillan, 1993, p. 91

[12] Kaydos, W., *Measuring, Managing and Maximising Performance*, Productivity Press, 1991, p. 17

[13] Van Weele, A. J., *Purchasing Management*, Chapman and Hall, 1995, pp. 201–202

[14] Fearon, H. E. and Bales, W. A., *Measures of Purchasing Effectiveness*, Arizona State University, 1997

[15] Scheuing, E. E., *Purchasing Management*, Prentice Hall, 1989, p. 137

[16] Evans, E. F. and Dale, B. G., 'The use of audits in purchasing', *International Journal of Physical Distribution and Materials Management*, Vol. 18, No. 7, 1988, pp. 17–23

[17] Business Link, 'Closing the marketing gap', obtainable from Benchmark Index at Field House, Mount Road, Stone, Staffordshire, ST15 8LI, (0870 111143)

[18] The British Quality Foundation, 32–34 Great Peter Street, London, SW1P 2QX, (020 7654 5000), or visit www.quality-foundation.co.uk

[19] Published by Harvard Business School Press (*Harvard Business Review*: Sept–Oct 1992; Sept–Oct 1993; Jan–Feb 1996)

[20] Niven, P. R., *The Balanced Scorecard Step-by-Step*, John Wiley, 2002

[21] Bourne, M. C. S. and Bourne, P. A., *Understanding the Balanced Scorecard*, Hodder, 2000

[22] Neely, A., Adams, C. and Kennerley, M., *The Performance Prism: The Scorecard for Measuring and Managing Business Success*, Financial Times Prentice Hall 2002

[23] Adapted from Colera, L., *A Framework for Universal Principles of Ethics* at: www.ethics.ubc.ca/papers/invited/colera.html

[24] Robertson, D. C. and Rymon, T., 'Purchasing agents' deceptive behaviour: a randomised response technique study', *Business Ethics Quarterly*, Vol. 11, No. 3, 2001, pp. 455–479

[25] CIPS, 'E-ethics: position on practice guide', prepared by the CIPS Consulting Group: www.cips.org

[26] IPMM Forum at: www.dow.com

[27] Kennedy, G., *Everything is Negotiable*, Business Books, 1989, pp. 220–225

[28] Matthew 7, verse 12

[29] Karp, H. B. and Abramms, B., 'Doing the right thing', *Training and Development*, August, 1992, pp. 37–41

[30] Brigley, S., *Walking the Tightrope: A Survey of Ethics in Management*, Institute of Management/Bath University, 1994, p. 36

[31] Badaracco Jr, J. L. and Webb, A. P., 'Business ethics: the a view from the trenches', *California Management Review*, Vol. 37, No. 2, Winter, 1995, pp. 64–79

[32] As 30 above

[33] CIMA, 'Fraud risk management: a guide to good practice', 2008

[34] Casabona, P. and Songmei, Y., 'Computer fraud: financial and ethical implications', *Review of Business*, Vol. 20, Issue 1, Fall, 1988

[35] Evans, E. and Maguire, R., 'Purchasing fraud: a growing phenomenon', *Purchasing and Supply Management*, May, 1993, pp. 24–26

[36] Included by kind permission of Linklaters

[37] Carter, R., Ellram, L. M. and Ready, K. J., 'Environmental purchasing: benchmarking our German competitors', *International Journal of Purchasing and Materials Management*, Fall, 1998, pp. 28–38

[38] European Information Service, Local Government International Bureau, Local Government House, Smith Square, London, SW1P 3HZ, (020 7664 3100)

[39] Department of the Environment, 'Environmental action guide for building and purchasing managers', HMSO, 1991, p. 6

[40] We are grateful to the University of Oxford's Central Purchasing Group for permission to quote from the Group's environmental purchasing policy

[41] Knight, A., in a discussion published under the title 'Here today, green tomorrow', *Supply Management*, 11 December, 1997

[42] www.ericsson.com 'Supplier Environmental Requirements' update, p. 4

Appendix 1

Code of professional ethics – Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply (CIPS) (Approved by the CIPS Council, 11 March 2009)

As a member of The Chartered Institute of Procurement and Supply, I will:

- maintain the highest standard of integrity in all my business relationships
- reject any business practice which might reasonably be deemed improper
- never use my authority or position for my own personal gain
- enhance the proficiency and stature of the profession by acquiring and applying knowledge in the most appropriate way
- foster the highest standards of professional competence amongst those for whom I am responsible
- optimise the use of resources which I have influence over for the benefit of my organisation
- comply with both the letter and the intent of:
  - the law of countries in which I practice
  - agreed contractual obligations
  - CIPS guidance on professional practice
- declare any personal interest that might affect, or be seen by others to affect, my impartiality or decision making
- ensure that the information I give in the course of my work is accurate
- respect the confidentiality of information I receive and never use it for personal gain
- strive for genuine, fair and transparent competition
- not accept inducements or gifts, other than items of small value such as business diaries or calendars
- always declare the offer or acceptance of hospitality and never allow hospitality to influence a business decision
- remain impartial in all business dealing and not be influenced by those with vested interest.

Use of the code

Members of CIPS are required to uphold this code and to seek commitment to it by all those with whom they engage in their professional practice.

Members are expected to encourage their organisation to adopt an ethical procurement policy based on the principles of this code and to raise any matter of concern relating to business ethics at an appropriate level.

The Institute's Royal Charter sets out a disciplinary procedure which enables the CIPS Council to investigate complaints against any of our members and, if it is found that they have breached the Code of Ethics to take appropriate action.

Appendix 2

Principles and standards of ethical supply management conduct (ISM)

(Adopted May 2008)

The following principles are advocated by the Institute of Supply Management (ISM) in the USA:

- Integrity in your decisions and actions
- Value for your employer
- Loyalty to your profession.

From these principles are derived the ISM standards of supply management conduct:

1 PERCEIVED IMPROPRIETY. Prevent the intent and appearance of unethical or compromising conduct in relationships, actions and communications.

2 CONFLICTS OF INTEREST. Ensure that any personal, business or other activity does not conflict with the lawful interests of your employer.

3 ISSUES OF INFLUENCE. Avoid behaviours or actions that may negatively influence, or appear to influence, supply management decisions.

4 RESPONSIBILITIES TO YOUR EMPLOYER. Uphold fiduciary and other responsibilities using reasonable care and granted authority to deliver value to your employer.

5 SUPPLIER AND CUSTOMER RELATIONSHIPS. Promote positive supplier and customer relationships.

6 SUSTAINABILITY AND SOCIAL RESPONSIBILITY. Champion social responsibility and sustainability practices in supply management.

7 CONFIDENTIAL AND PROPRIETARY INFORMATION. Protect confidential and proprietary information.

8 RECIPROCITY. Avoid improper reciprocal agreements.

9 APPLICABLE LAWS, REGULATIONS AND TRADE AGREEMENTS. Know and obey the letter and spirit of laws, regulations and trade agreements applicable to supply management.

10 PROFESSIONAL COMPETENCE. Develop skills, expand knowledge and conduct business that demonstrates competence and promotes the supply management profession.

Electronic versions of the *Principles and Standards of Ethical Supply Management Conduct* and ISM *Principles of Sustainability and Social Responsibility With a Guide to Adoption and Implementation* are available on ISM's Sustainability and Social Responsibility web pages: www.ism.ws.

Definitions, acronyms and foreign words and phrases

Definitions

acceptance 219
agile production 135
agility 135
audit 611

B2B marketplace 173
balanced scorecard 617–18
benchmark 616
benchmarking 105
bid bond 219
bill of exchange 478
breach of contract 230
business ethics 620
buying network 391

capacity 350
capital assets 556
capital equipment 556
capital expenditure 556
capital goods 556
category management 546
centralised procurement 146
change of ownership 233
Codes of Practice 250
collusive tendering 419
components 582
compounding 566
concurrent engineering 596
continuous replenishment programs 332
cost-benefit analysis 56
cost of quality 275
countertrade 479
critical success factors 50
cross-functional procurement 148

decentralisation 148
decoupling 137
derivatives 569
direct losses 233
discounting 566
distribution requirements planning (DRP) 330
downstream supply chain 86
due diligence 5
dynamic network 123

e-auctions 176
e-procurement 165, 345
e-sourcing 345
e-supply chain management 163
economic order quantities (EOQ) 312
effective negotiation 512
effectiveness 21
efficiency 21
efficient customer response (ECR) 332
electronic data interchange (EDI) 165
enterprise resource planning 83
environmental procurement 631
environmental scanning 44
error 628
ethics 620

failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) 272
forecasting 304
foreign exchange risks 465
foreign sourcing 458
forwarder 475
fraud 627
freight agents 475
functional analysis 282
futures 569

hub 171

incoterms 467
independent purchasing function 12
innovation 595
integrative purchasing function 12
internal network 123
international sourcing 458
inventory 291

just-in-time (JIT) 315–16

Kaizen (continuous improvement) 596
kanban 317

leasing 559
leverage 18
logistics 79

manufacturing resource planning (MRP II) 326
margin 570
marginal costing 363
market 342
marketplace 172
materials management (MM) 80–1
materials requirements planning (MRP) 322
misrepresentation 227
models 71
moving average 308
multinational sourcing 458

negotiation 488–90
network 86
network structure 122

offer 217
opportunity costs 365
optimised contractor involvement (OCI) 158
organisational buyers 7
organisational change 143–4
organisational culture 144
organisational structure 113
outsourcing 361

partnering 376
passive purchasing function 12
penetration pricing 412
periodic review inventory system 313
personality 495
physical distribution management 81–2
ploy 510
positional negotiation 514
postponement 135
pre-negotiation 500–1
price 399
principled negotiation 515
private sector 45
procedure 159
process innovation 595–6
process mapping 139–40
process-oriented organisations 134
procurement 4
procurement consortia 388
procurement ethics 619
procurement management audit 611
procurement performance evaluation 606
procurement research 603
procurement task 51
procurement teams 390
product innovation 595
professional ethics 620
professionalisation 23
professionalism in purchasing 23
profit impact 60
project 428–30
public sector 45
pull strategy 310
push strategy 310

quality 242
quality control 263
quality system 244

relationship 194
relationship goals 494
reliability 243
retail markets 578
reverse auction 177–8
reverse logistics 85
right quantity 303
risk analysis 57
risk register 440

sensitivity 308
sourcing 339
specification 249–50
stable network 123
standard 250
strategic analysis 43–5
strategic global sourcing 458
strategic supply chain 139–40
strategy 31–2, 505
sub-contracting 373
substance goals 492
supplier-assisted inventory management 332
supplier-assisted inventory replenishment 332
supplier development 599–600
supplier management 8
supplier manuals 187
supplier relationship management 194
supplies 292
supply chain 86
supply chain management 95
supply chain optimisation 103
supportive purchasing function 12
sustainable development 389

tactic 505
tiering 130
time series 307
tender bond 219
total quality management (TQM) 244–5
trade-off 82

upstream supply chain 86

value 87, 281
value analysis 278
value chain 95
value engineering (VE) 277
vendor-managed inventory (VMI) 332
voluntary sector 45

waste 634
world class purchasing 16–18

Acronyms

ABC (activity-based costing) 98
ABCB (Association of British Certification Bodies) 261
ACA (Association of Consultant Architects) 454
ADCNET (Australian Diplomatic Communications network) 439
AMS (acquisition management system, MOD) 73
APS (Australian Public Service) 439
AQL (acceptable quality level) 242
ARR (average rate of return) 565

BAILII (British and Irish Legal Information Institute) 431
BATNA (best alternative to a negotiated agreement) 505, 513
BATNEEC (best available technology not entailing excessive cost) 634
BEAMA (British Electrotechnical and Allied Manufacturers Association) 420
BOM (bill of materials) 325
BPI (Business Process Integration) 171
BQF (British Quality Foundation) 618
BSI (British Standards Institution) 168, 244

CAD (computer-aided design) 138
CAE (Computer-aided engineering) 596
CAE (computer-aided estimates) 138
CCL (climate change levy) 580
CCN (contract change notice) 408
CE (computer engineering) 138
CEN (European Committee for Standardisation) 277
CER (cost estimating relationship) 409
CFR (Cost and Freight) 470
CFR (customer furnished equipment) 584
CIF (Cost Insurance and Freight) 470
CIMA (Chartered Institute of Management accountants) 627
CIP (Carriage and Insurance paid To) 469
CIPS (Chartered Institute of Purchasing and Supply) 4, 73, 165, 344, 546, 605, 622, 646
CISG (UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods) 466
COFC (containers on flat cars) 473
CPA (contract pricer adjustment) 408
CPC (Customs Procedure Code) 472
CPT (Carriage paid To) 469
CRL (Crossrail Ltd) 156
CRM (customer relationship management) 90
CRP (capacity requirements planning) 93
CRP (continuous replenishment programs) 332
CSF (critical success factor) 50
CSM (customer service management) 91
CT (countertrade) 479–480

DAP (Delivered at Place) 468
DAT (Delivered at Terminal) 468
DBIS (Department for Business, Innovation and Skills) 418, 473, 568
DCFR (Draft Common Frame of Reference) 218
DDP (Delivered Duty Paid) 469
DECC (Department of Energy and Climate Change) 580
DEFRA (Department of the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs) 634–635
DFD (design for disassembly) 598
DMAIC (define, measure, analyse, improve and control) 266
DMRB (Design Manual for Roads and Bridges) 435
DPMO (defects per million operations) 266
DRP (distribution requirements planning) 330–332

e-SCM (e-Supply Chain Management) 163–164
EAI (enterprise application integration) 94
ECR (efficient customer response) 91
EDI (electronic data interchange) 165–171
EDIFACT (EDI for Administration, Commerce and Transport) 165
EFQM (European Foundation for Quality Management) 73
EOQ (economic order quantities) 312–313
EPOS (electronic point of sale) 168, 296
ERP (enterprise resource planning) 83
ESI (early supplier involvement) 437
ETI (Ethical Trading Initiative) 624
EWAM (exponentially weighted average method) 308–309
EXW (Ex Works) 469

FA (functional analysis) 281–282
FAS (Free Alongside Ship) 470
FC & S (Free of Capture and Seizure) 472
FCA (Free Carrier) 469
FFL (fossil fuel levy) 580
FIDIC (Federation Internationale des Ingénieurs – Conseils) 452
FMEA (failure mode and effects analysis) 243
FMS (flexible manufacturing systems) 83
FOB (Free On Board) 470

GEMA (Gas and Electricity Markets Authority) 577
General Accounting Office (GAO, US) 161

ICC (International Chamber of Commerce) 482
ICE (Institute of Civil Engineers) 452
IChemE (Institute of Chemical Engineers) 453
IEE (Institute of Electrical Engineers) 453
IEEMA (Indian Electrical and Electronics Manufacturers Association) 420
ILO (International Labour Organisation) 624
ISM (Institute of Supply Management) 23
ISO (International Organisation for Standardisation) 598, 640
ITTs (invitations to tender) 160, 218

JCT (Joint Contracts Tribunal) 453
JIT (just-in-time) 17, 133

KPPs (Key Policy Principles) 157–159

LCH (London Clearing House) 570
LCL (less-than carload) 471
LOC (letters of credit) 478

MES (manufacturing execution systems) 91
MM (materials management) 80–81
most economically advantageous tender (MEAT) 178
MRO (maintenance and repair or operating) 292
MRP (materials and requirements planning) 322–326
MRP II (manufacturing resource planning) 326–327
MTM (many-to-many) 172

NACCB (National Accreditation Council for Certification Bodies) 262
NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) 79–80
NETA (trading arrangements for electricity) 578
NGTA (trading arrangements for gas) 578
NHS (National Health Service) 7, 18
NPV (net present value) 566
NTDB (National Trade Data Bank) 343
NTS (National Transmission System) 578

OCI (Optimised Contractor Involvement) 158
ODETTE (Organisation for Data Exchange by Tele-Transmission in Europe) 166
OEM (original equipment manufacturer) 99
Offer (Office of the Electricity Regulation) 577
Ofgas (Office of Gas Supply) 577
Ofgem (Office of Gas and Electricity Markets) 577
OFT (Office of Fair Trading) 418–419
OGC (Office of Government Commerce) 339
OM (operations management) 91
OPT (optimised production technology) 138

PAS (Publicly Available Specification) 194
PD (product development) 91, 599–600
PDM (physical distribution management) 81–82
PECL (Principles of European Contract Law) 466
PERT (programme evaluation and review techniques) 374
PESTEL (political, economic, social, technological, environmental, and legal conditions) 119
PFI (Private Finance Initiative) 433
PID (Project Initiation Document) 432
PPP (Public-Private Partnership) 371–372
PPR 5 (Project Procurement Risk 5) 440
PQQ (pre-qualification questionnaire) 372
PRINCE (Project In Controlled Environments) 436–438
PRO (pricing and revenue optimisation) 103–104
PVF (price variation formula) 408, 420–422

QAS (quality assessment schedule) 259
QFD (quality function deployment) 269–272
QLF (quality loss function) 266–267
QRM (quick response manufacturing) 91

RBT (resource-based theory) 200–201
RFC (Report on Formation of Contract) 218
RFID (radio frequency identification) 297–298
RFPs (requests for proposals) 251, 591
RFQs (requests for quotations) 160, 251, 413, 591
ROCE (return on capital employed) 565
ROM (rough order of magnitude) 404

SAIM (supplier-assisted inventory management) 332
SAIR (supplier-assisted inventory replenishment) 332
SAVE (Society of American Value Engineers) 277
SBU (strategic business units) 40
SCM (supply chain management) 89–94
SCOR (supply chain operations reference) 73
SGGA (*Supply of Goods and Services Act* 1982) 255
SITPRO (Simplifying International Trade Procedures Board) 168
SKU (stock keeping unit) 300
SLA (service level agreement) 358
SME (small- and medium-sized enterprises) 68
SPC (statistical process control) 248, 264
SRM (supplier relationship management) 91
SSGA (Supply and Sale of Goods Act 1994) 253, 255
STM (strategic lead time management) 83
SWOT (strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats) 34

TCO (total cost of ownership) 19
TCT (transaction cost theory) 199–200
The NEC (The New Engineering Contract) 452–453
TQM (total quality management) 17, 144
TUPE (Transfer of Undertakings Protection of Employment) 18

UCC (Uniform Commercial Code) 466
UCTA (Unfair Contract Terms Act) 222–223

VAN (value-added networks) 128, 167, 169
VAT (value-added tax) 472
VE (value engineering) 277–278
VFM (value for money) 608
VM (value management) 277
VMI (vendor-managed inventory) 87
VOP (variation of price) 408

WBS (work breakdown structure) 405
WEEE (*Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Regulations* 2006) 85

Foreign words and phrases

caveat emptor (let the buyer beware) 518
citius, altius, fortius (faster, higher, stronger) 16

force majeure (events completely outside the control of the contracting parties) 571

Hin Shitsu Ki Ten Kai (how do we understand the quality that our customers expect and make it happen in a dynamic way?) 269

kaizen (continuous improvement) 596
kanban (ticket) 317
keiretsu (affiliated chain) 39

muda (waste) 132

Poka-Yoke (fool proofing) 247

strategia (generalship) 31

Index of names and organisations and some publications mentioned in the text

Abstracts of Statistics 343
Adams, C. 618–9
Aitken, J. 135, 138
Aljian, G.W. 556
American Production and Inventory Control Society 315
Ammer, D.S. 400
Anderson Consulting 618
Ansari, A. 318
Antonio, R. 449
Applegate Directory 346
APQC 546–9
Arbulu, R.J. and Tommelein, I.D. 129
Armstrong, V. and Jackson, D. 168
Ashcroft, S.G. 497
Ashton, T. C. 258
Association for Project Management 429
Association of British Certification Bodies (ABCB) 261
Association of Consultant Architects (ACA) 454
Atkinson, J. and Meager, N. 368
Austin Rover 166
The Australian Diplomatic Communications Network (ADCNET) 439
Australian National Audit Office (ANAO) 431, 527

Babbage, Charles 9
Badaracco, J.L. Jr. and Webb, A.P. 626
BAE Systems 91
Bank of England Reports (UK) 343
Barings Bank 573
Bath University 132, 605
Bayer Group 205, 207
BCS 166
Beauchamp, M. 368
Beesley, A.T. 104
Belgian Federal Public Service 173
Bensaou, M. 64, 202, 204
Berne, E. 495–6
Beulen, E.J.J. 369
Birmingham, P.A. 205
Birou, L.M. and Fawcett, S.E. 458, 484
Bluewater Energy Services BV 229, 236
Boeing Corporation 91
Bosch 166, 187
Bose Corporation 321
Boshoff, C. 589
Bourne, M.C.S. 618
Bourne, P.A. 618
Bowersox, D.J. 135
Bradford Chamber of Commerce 261–2
Brian Farrington Ltd 278, 458
Brigley, S. 625, 627
Bristor, J.M. and Ryan, M.S. 391–2
British Electrotechnical and Allied Manufacturers Association (BEAMA) 420
British Non-ferrous Metals Federation 568
British Petroleum (BP) 88
British Quality Foundation (BQF) 618
British Standards Institution (BSI) 168, 194, 244
British Standards Online 254
Buffett, Warren 573
Business Link 617

Campbell, P. and Pollard, W.M. 208, 210–11
Cannon, S. 246
Carnegie Mellon University 68
Carr-Saunders, A.M. 22
Carrington, L. 370
Carter, J.R. and Gagne, J. 479
Carter, R. 358
Casabona, P. 628
Census of Production (UK) 343
Center for Advanced Purchasing Studies 17, 606
Center for International Business Education and Research 343
Centre for Constructive Innovation 382
Chandler, A.D. 119
Chartered Institute of Management accountants (CIMA) 627
Chartered Institute of Purchasing and Supply (CIPS) 4, 73, 546, 605, 622, 646
Chisnall, P.M. 393
Choo, C.W. 44
Chopra, S. and Meindl, P. 334
Christopher, M. 88, 137
Christopher, M. and Towill, D. R. 137
CIPS Australia Pty Ltd 4
Citroën 166
Coase, R.H. 199
Collins, D. 146
Commission on International Trade Law (UNCITRAL) 466
Commodities Research Bureau 569
Commodities Research Unit 569
Competition Appeal Tribunal 418
Competition Commission 418
Cooper, M.C. 86
Court of Appeal 218, 232, 237
Cox, A. 23, 199, 201–2, 504
Cramton, P. C. and Dees, J.G. 519
Cranfield School of Management 618–9
Craven, D.W. 123 125, 128
Crosby, P.B. 242, 248
Cudahy, G. 103–4

Daft, R.L. 143
The Daily Telegraph, 35
David, F.R. 37
Davis, T. 104–5
Day, A. 205
Deccan Systems Inc 404
Deccapro 404
Dell Computing 123
Deming, W.E. 245, 247
Denning, Lord 220, 223, 225
Department for Business, Innovation and Skills (DBIS) 418, 473, 568
Department of Commerce (USA) 343
Department of Defence (USA) 278
Department of Energy and Climate Change (DECC) 577, 580
Department of Health 146
Department of the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs (DEFRA) 634
Department of Trade and Industry 630
Dow Chemicals 622
Downes, L. 48
Duffy, R.J. and Flynn, A.E. 590
Dun and Bradstreet 349

Economic Trends (UK) 343
The Economist 344
Effective Partnering 381
Ellram, L.M. 383–4
England, W.B. 254
England, W. B. and Leenders, M. R. 400
Environmental Agency 634
ePedas 346
Ertel, D. 512–13
Ethical Trading Initiative (ETI) 624
European Association of Metals 568
European Commission 418
European Committee for Standardisation (CEN) 277
European Federation of Quality Management (EFQM) 73
European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) 617
European Information Service 634
Evans, E. and Maguire, R. 630
Evans, E.F. and Dale, B.G. 611

Fahey, L. and Prusak, L. 34
Farmer, D. 21
Fearon, H. 603
Fearon, H. E. and Bales, W. A. 587–8, 609
Federation of International Trade Associations 343
Federation of National Associations 277
Feigenbaum, A.V. 247
Ferraro, G. 461
Fiat 166
Financial Times 344
Fisher, L. 60
Fisher, M. L. 124
Fisher, R. and Ury, W. 491, 505, 507–8, 512, 514–17
Fitchett, P. and Haslam, J. M. 255
Foley, J. F. 475
Ford, D. 122
Ford Motor Company 10, 166, 272
Forker, L.B. 480
Fredriksson, P. and Gadde, L-E. 358
French, P. Jr. and Raven, B. 22, 118
Futures and Options Exchange 570

Gadde-Lars, E. and Hakansson, H. 107
Galinsky, A.D. 505
Gardner, J.T. and Cooper, M.C. 139–40
Gartner 329
Garvin, D.A. 242
Gas and Electricity Markets Authority (GEMA) 577
Gattorna, 84
Gelderman, C.J. and van Weele, A.J. 60, 63
General Electric Company 278, 281
General Motors 166
Giunipero, L.C. and Pearcy, D.H. 24
GKN 166
Global Business Travel Association (GBTA) 550
Goldman, S.L. 135
Grainger, R. 458
Greenstein, M. and Feinmann, T. 162
Grinnell, S. and Apple, H.P. 114
Grove, A. S. 35
Gunasekaran, A. 137

Hackbarth, G. and Kettinger, W. J. 162
Hadtield, J.E. 589
Handfield, R. B. 602
Handy, C. 51
Harland, C. M. 123–4, 127
Harris, T. A. 496
Hartley, J. and Jones, G. 599
Hartley, J. L. 287
Hastings, C. 121
Hatfield, J. E. 589
Hayes, R.H. and Pisano, G.P. 320
Heald Solicitors 225
Hellriegel, D. 144
Hill, J.A. 10
Hines, P. 95, 97–9
Hines, P. and Rich, N. 142–3
Hitt, R. 243
Hoekstra, S. and Romme, J. 137
Holmlund, M. and Strandvik, T. 197–8
Hoskisson, R. 243
Humbert, X.P. and Passarelli, C.P.M. 375

Ibarra, H. 22
Indian Electrical and Electronics Manufacturers Association (IEEMA) 420
Institute of Logistics and Transport 291, 605
Institute of Purchasing and Supply 23

Institute of Supply Management (ISM) 23, 148, 623, 625
Institute of Value Management 277
Intergraf 177
International Bank 183
International Centre for Competitive Excellence 90
International Chamber of Commerce (ICC) 467, 484
International Court of Arbitration 467
International Federation of Procurement and Materials Management 23
International Labour Organisation (ILO) 624
International Monetary Fund 605
International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) 598–9, 640
International Petroleum Exchange 570
International Wrought Copper Council 568
Ireland, D. 243
Ishikawa, K. 248

Jarvelin, A.M. 199
Johnson, G. and Scholes, K. 32, 71
Johnson, S. 198
The Joint Contracts Tribunal (JCT) 237–8, 453
Jones, D. 12
Juran, J.M. 242, 247, 250

Kalakota, R. and Robinson, M. 90, 165–6
Kamann, D. 64–5
Kanter, R.M. 22
Kaplan, R. 617–8
Karp, H.B. and Abramms, B. 624
Kay, J. 200
Kaydos, W. 608
Kearney, A.T. 25
Kennedy, G. 623
Kennerley, M. 619
Killen, K.H. and Kamauff, J.W. 168
Knemeyer, A.M. 376
Knight, A. 641
Kolchin, C. 24
Kotter, J. P. 113
Kotter, J.P. and Schlesinger, L.A. 145
Kozak, R.A. and Cohen, D.H. 357
Kraljic, P. 42, 60–1, 64, 383, 589, 601
Kreuze, J. G. 480

Lacity, M.C. and Hirschheim, R. 369, 371
Lallatin, C.S. 590
Lambert, D.H. 129, 131
Lambert, D.M. 376
Lamming, R. 8, 25, 107, 123–4, 126, 130
Lawrence, E. 30, 34, 50
Lee, H.-C. 164
Lee, R. and Lawrence, P. 511
Leeson, Nick 573
Leighton, D.S.R. 400
Lewin, K. 145
Lewis, H.T. 9
Liedtka, J.M. 30
Lindblom, C. 34
Local Authority Waste Regulators 634
Lockhead Martin 91
London Clearing House (LCH) 570
London Metals Exchange 570, 641
London Textile Trading House 262
Lowes, A. 618
Lucas 166
Lucas, H.C. and Baroudi, J. 144

Manchester Chamber of Commerce 261
Marien, E.J. 92
Marrian, J. 7
Mason-Jones, R. 138
McCall, J.M. and Worrington, M.B. 499
McCarthy, W. 517
McGinnis, M.A. and Vallopra, R.H. 108
McGregor, D.M. 115
McKinsey, 120
Mentzer, J.T. 88–9
Mercedes Motors 86
Meredith, J. R. and Mantel, S. J. 428
Mileham, A.R. 596
Miles, L.D. 278, 286
Miles, R.E. and Snow, C.C. 40–1
Miller, J. 281
Minahan, T. 17
Ministry of Defence (UK) 182
  acquisition management system (AMS) 73
Mintzberg, H. 32–4, 113, 117–9
Mitchell, L.K. 208–9
Miyamoto, T. 456
Moller, C. 248
Monczka, R.M. 369
Monczka, R.M. and Carter, J.R. 169
Morris, N. and Calantone, R.J. 11
Motorola Corporation 123

National Accreditation Council for Certification Bodies (NACCB) 262
National Association of Procurement Agents 10
National Audit Office 415
National Computing Centre 171
National Health Service (NHS) 7, 18, 147, 344, 640
National Institute for Manufacturing Management (Australia) 596
National Rivers Authority 634
National Trade Data Bank (NTDB) 343
National Transmission System (NTS) 578
Naylor, J. B. 105, 138–9
NEC (New Engineering Contract) 238
Neely, A. 619
Nellore, R. and Söderquist, K. 60
Niven, P.R. 618
Norman, G. 169
North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) 79–80
Norton, D. 617–8

Occidental Petroleum 480
Office of Communications (Ofcom) 418
Office of Fair Trading (OFT) 418–19
Office of Gas and Electricity Markets (Ofgem) 418, 577
Office of Gas Supply (Ofgas) 577
Office of Government Commerce (OGC) 339
Office of Rail Regulation 418
Office of the Electricity Market 577
Office of the Electricity Regulation (Offer) 577
Office of the Gas Market 577
Ohmae, K. 31
Ohno, T. 316
Organisation for Data Exchange by Tele-Transmission in Europe (ODETTE) 166
Ouchi, W.G. 209

Pareto, V. 294
Parker, G.M. 150
Partnering Sourcing Ltd. 376, 378, 380
Peña-Mora, F. and Tamaki, T. 503
Pennsylvania Railroad 9
Perkins 166
Perkins, B. 371
Peters, T. 248
Pohlig, H. M. 591
Poirier, C. C. 102
Porter, M.E. 40, 45, 48, 54, 87, 95–102, 201, 496
Pragman, C.H. 322
Prahalad, C.K. and Hamel, G. 113
Principles of European Contract Law 466
Probert, D.R. 362
Procter & Gamble 129
Public Works and Government Services Canada 183
Purdy, D.C. 253

Queensland Health Payroll System 211
Quinn, J.B. 121

Ramsay, J. 383
Raytheon 91
The Reason Foundation, 384
Reck, R.F. and Long, B. 11–13
Reebok 123
Reilly, P. and Tamkin, P. 371
Renault 166
Rexha, N. 458
Rhys, D.G. 320
RIBA (Royal Institute of British Architects) 239
Richardson, T. 184
Risley, G. 567
Robertson, D. C. and Rymon, T. 621–2
Rumelt, R.P. 54

Saab 166
Sako, M. 601
Sarantakos, S. 606
Saunders, M. 18
Scheuing, E.E. 611
Schonberger, R.J. 16, 263, 318
Shingo, S. 248
Shirley Institute 262
SIGMA 148
Simplifying International Trade Procedures Board (SITPRO) 168
Simpson, P. M. 357
Sitkin, S.B. and Roth, N.L. 209
SKF 166
Snow, C. C. 40, 123
Sobek, I.I. 150
Society of American Value Engineers (SAVE) 277
Solar Energy Market Express 11
Southey, P. 208, 376, 378
Spekman, R.E. 69
Susskind, L. and Cruikshank, J. 508
Sustainable Procurement Action Plan 599
Syson, R. 11, 20–1

Taguchi, G. 248, 266–8
Technical Indexes Ltd. 254
Tesco 129
Thomas Global Register Europe 346
Toni, A.D. and Tonchia, S. 134
Torrington, D. and Hall, L 149
Toyota Motors 316, 637
Transfer of Undertakings Protection of Employment (TUPE) 18, 210
Trent, R.J. and Monczka, R.M. 458
Tuns, M. 400

UK Energy Research Centre (UKERC) 579
UK Institute of Logistics and Transport 95
UK Purchasing and Supply Lead Body 52
UK Trade & Investment International Trade Team 459
UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods (CISG) 466
UN Convention on Electronic Communication in International Contracts 466
US General Accounting Office 161
US Government Specifications Service 254

Vaidyanathan, G. 428
Van Hoek, R. 136
van Weele, A.J. 60, 63–4, 608
Venkatesan, R. 361
Vodafone 67
Volkswagen 480
Vollman, T.E. 331
Volvo 359

Waller, A. 345
Walmart 129
Warwick University 132
Waterman, R.H. 35, 120

Webster, F.E. and Wind, Y.J. 390–1
Wheelan, T. L. and Hunger, J. D. 29–30
Whittington, E. 24
Wilding, R. 104
Williamson, O.E. 199
Willmott, K. 476
Winkler, J. 400
Womack, J.P. 132–3
Woodroffe, G. 256
World Bank 627
World Wide Web 346
Wynstra, F. 599

Xerox Corporation 480

Yavas, B.F. and Freed, R. 479
Yorkshire Wolds and Coast Primary Care Trust 68

Zaire, M. 246
Zwass, V. 162

Subject Index

ABC analysis, inventory and 294–6
acceptable quality level (AQL) 242
acceptance 217–21
  sampling 264
accounting in performance evaluation 610–11
acquisition
  costs 298–9
  logistics 79
  in procurement strategy 72
activity-based costing (ABC) 98–9
adaptive strategies 40
added value of logistics 83
adversarial approach 6
adversarial leverage 201
adversarial negotiation 491, 497
agile characteristics 135
agile manufacturing 137–8
agile production and supply 135–9
  decoupling 137
  and lean production 138–9
  postponement 135–6
air transport 474–5
Air Waybill 468–70
Alfred McAlpine Capital Projects Ltd v Tilebox 236
All Risk 470
anti-corruption issues 624
arbitrage 571
ATMI's supplier management process 548
audits
  eco-management scheme 640
  external and internal 630
  and fraud 628–2
  management 611–15
average rate of return (ARR) 565

backward integration 37–8
backwardation 571
balanced scorecard 617–19
barcoding 296–7
barter 479
batch manufacture chains 87
battle of the forms 218, 220, 225
BCG portfolio 59
BE collaborative contract 454
bear market 573
benchmarking 105, 616–19
  balanced scorecard 617–19
  EFQM model 617
  forms of 616
  integrated 617–19
  ratios 616–19
  of supply chains 105
best alternative to a negotiated agreement (BATNA) 505, 513
best available technology not entailing excessive cost (BATNEEC) 634
bid bond 219
bill of exchange 478
bill of lading 470, 477
bill of materials (BOM)
  in MRP 325
bills for collection 477–8
bills of quantities 584–7,
Blackpool and Fylde Aero Club Ltd v Blackpool Borough Council 218
Bluenose II 438
Bluewater Energy Services BV v Mercon Steel Structures BV & Ors 229, 236
'bolt-on' sub-clause 232
bottleneck items 63
brand or trade names 254–5
breach of contract 230
break-even point 365
breakthrough innovation 596
breakthroughs in total quality management 245
bribery 630–1
Bribery Act (2010) 630–1
British and Irish Legal Information Institute (BAILII) 431
British Standards
  5750 quality management systems 258
  7373-3:2005 Specifications 251–2
  7850-1:1992 total quality management 258
  BBS EN 9004:2009 quality systems 260
  BS 6143-1:1992 economics of quality 258, 275
  BS 11000-1: 2010 Collaborative business relationships – Part 1: A framework specification 194
  BS EN ISO 6433:1995 technical drawing 257
  BS EN ISO 9000: 2005 quality systems 263, 259–60
  BS EN ISO 9000:2005 standardisation 258–60
  BS EN ISO 12973:2000 value management 277
  BS EN ISO 14000 series 260
  BS EN ISO 14001:2004 environmental performance 257
budgeting or cost averaging 575
Bulk Shipments 470
bull market 572
bullwhip effect 309–10
business ethics 620
business gifts 623
Business Process Integration (BPI) 171

Butler Machine Tool Co. Ltd. v Ex-Cell-O Corporation (England) Ltd. 220
buy-back 480
buy-side catalogues 174–5
buy-side exchange 172
buyer
  of capital investments 567
  captive 203–4
  related pricing 412
buying
  of capital equipment 560–1
  centres, teams and networks 390–1
  network 391–2
  product factors in 393

capacity requirements planning (CRP) 93
capital equipment
  buying 557–60
  buying offshore 480–4
  financing 558
  hire purchase 558–9
  leasing 559–2
  leasing or buying 560–1
  outright purchase 558
  suppliers, selecting 561–2
capital investment procurement 556–69
  average rate of return 565
  and buyer 567
  capital assets 556
  capital expenditure 556–7
  capital goods 556
  discounting 566
  evaluating 563
  forward buying 569
  hand-to-mouth buying 569
  market conditions 568–1
  net present value 566–9
  payback 564–9
  production materials 567–8
  raw materials 568–1
  sensitive commodities 568
captive buyer 203–4
captive supplier 203–4
Carlill v Carbolic Smoke Ball Co 219
Carnet 470
category management 546
  corporate travel 550–4
  ICT 554–5
  issues 547–8
  risk profiling 549–2
centralised procurement 146–8
certification 261–2
certification authorisations 182
change of ownership 233
Clean Air Act (1956) 597, 634
climate change levy (CCL) 580
cognitive school of strategy 33
collaboration in tiering 131
collaborative business relationships 194–7
collaborative negotiation 491
collusive tendering 419–20
combination strategies 39–40
commodities dealing 572–6
Communications Act (2003) 418
Companies Act (2006) 224, 630
compensation 480
Competition Act (1998) 417–19, 577
competition legislation 417–19
  in UK 418–19
competitive benchmarking 616
competitive strategy 40–1
component make-or-buy 363
component parts and assemblies 582–3
concentrated supply chains 87
concentric diversification strategies 39
concessions, trading in negotiation 498
concurrent engineering 596–9
configuration school of strategy 33–4
conformance, cost of 275
conglomerate diversification strategies 39
congruent operational goals 607–8
consortia, procurement 388–9
construction supplies 584
consumables and procurement 583
consumer logistics 80
consumer products 254
Containerisation 471
containers on flat cars (COFC) 473
contango 571
contract change notice (CCN) 408
contract management 161
contract price adjustment (CPA) 408
contracts
  battle of the forms 220
  capacity 224–6
  clauses 226–7
  in energy markets 580–2
    market analysis 580–1
    price structure 580
    risks 582
  law 216–17
  legally binding 160
  management phase 161
  standard forms 237–9
  termination 228–30
contractual relationships 201–2
contractual requirements 195
contractual terms 221
cooperative planning 82–4
coordination structures 114–17
copyright 386
core competences 201
corporate objectives 608
corporate strategy 37
cost
  analysis 414–15
  averaging 575
  function analysis 282–5

cost estimating relationships (CER) 409
cost-plus
  fixed fee contracts 450
  incentive fee contracts 451
  percentage fee contracts 450–1
costs
  of buying offshore 480
  of capital procurement 563
  direct 450
  drivers 101
  of quality 275–6
  true, of buying offshore 480
  in value chain analysis 100–1
  variable 56
counterpurchase 480
countertrade (CT) 479–82
Cox model 199–202
critical success factors (CSFs) 50
CRJ Services Ltd v Lanstar Ltd 224
CRL (Crossrail Ltd) 156
  key policy principles 157–9
cross-functional procurement 148–51
cross-functional supplier development team 602
cross-functional teams 133
crossrail procurement policy 156
cultural factors (buying offshore) 460–2
cultural school of strategy 33
culture 49
culture, scanning of 49
customer furnished equipment (CFE) 584
customer relationship management (CRM) 90
customer service management (CSM) 91
customs and excise (UK) 472–3
Customs Procedure Codes (CPCs) 472

deadlocked negotiations 508
decentralised procurement 148
decoupling 137
defects per million operations (DPMO) 266
define, measure, analyse, improve and control (DMAIC) 266
Delphi method 307
demand
  forecasting 304–10
    qualitative approaches 306–7
    quantitative approaches 307–8
  management 91
  nature of 304
Demurrage 471
dependent demand 304, 315
derivatives 569
descriptive school of strategy 33
design
  for disassembly (DFD) 598
  FMEA 272
design rights 386
differentiation of value chains 101–2
direct costs 450
direct losses 233
direct supply chains 88
directives for sourcing suppliers 344–5
  companies 345
  European Union 344–5
  local and central government 345
discounting capital investments 566
diseconomies of scale 101
distribution requirements planning (DRP) 330–2
  and MRP 331–2
diversification strategies 39
diversionary pricing 413
divestiture strategies 40
Documentary Credit 471
due diligence 5
Dutch bid auctions 176–7
Duty 471
dynamic network 123–4

e-auctions 176–7
e-business 162–3
e-catalogues 173–6
e-commerce 161–2
e-ethics 622
e-payment 182
e-procurement 16, 165
e-purchasing fraud 628
e-sourcing 345–6
e-Supply Chain Management (e-SCM) 163–4
e-tendering 608
echelon 330
eco-management and audit scheme 640
economic order quantities (EOQ) 312–13, 569
economics of inventory 298–9
  acquisition costs 298–9
  holding costs 299
  stockout costs 299
economies of scale in purchasing 147–8
EDI for Administration, Commerce and Transport (EDIFACT) 167
effective negotiation 512
effectiveness 21, 608
efficiency 21, 608
efficient customer response (ECR) 91, 332
Electricity Act (1989) 577
electricity pricing in energy markets 579–2
electronic data interchange (EDI) 99, 138, 165–71
  standards 166–7
  transaction in 165
electronic marketplace 172–3
electronic point of sale (EPOS) 168, 296
encrypted technologies 182
energy markets (UK) 577–82
  consultants and management 582
  contracts, procuring 580–2
    market analysis 580–1
    price structure 580
    risks 582

energy markets (UK) (continued)
and energy regulation 577
pricing 579–80
electricity 579–80
gas 579
retail 578
supply chains 577–78
wholesale 578
energy regulation 577
energy savings 632
English bid auctions 176
Enterprise Act (2002) 417, 419
enterprise application integration (EAI) 94
enterprise resource planning (ERP) 83, 327–30
and MRP 328
entrepreneurial school of strategy 33
Environmental Act 1995 634
environmental aspects of procurement 631–42
compliance standards 640
legislation 634
policies and management 635–39
suppliers, screening 639–42
environmental ethics 624
environmental management
in sourcing suppliers 352
Environmental Management System (EMS), 641
Environmental Protection Act (1990) 597, 631–2
environmental scanning 44–8
environmental school of strategy 33
environmental standards 599
environmental structure of organisations 119
environmentally preferred materials 598–99
environmentally sensitive design 597–599
green procurement 599
preferred materials 598–9
error and fraud 628
esteem value 278
ethical codes 623–7
ethical training 625–7
ethics
in negotiation 514–18
in procurement 619–0
of suppliers 621–3
European Foundation for Quality Management (EFQM) 617
exchange (B2B) 172
exemplar procurement policy 156–9
contracting arrangements 159
CRL key policy principles 157–9
overarching objectives 157
purpose 156
exercise price 572
expert systems 306
exponentially weighted average method (EWAM) 308–9
extended supply chains 88
external audits 630
external resource management 8

failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA) 138, 243, 272–5
FG Wilson Ltd v John Holt & Company Ltd 223
financing of capital equipment 558
fixed costs 101
fixed order quantities 311–12, 314
fixed-price contracts 448–9
fixed-price incentive fee contracts 449
flexible manufacturing systems (FMS) 83
flexible networks 128
Flood and Water Management Act (2010) 634
force majeure 235–6, 571
forecasting 304–10
qualitative approaches 306–7
quantitative approaches 307–8
foreign exchange risks in buying offshore 465–6
foreign sourcing 458
forward buying 569
forward and futures dealing 570
forward integration 37–9
fossil fuel levy (FFL) 580
fraud 627–33
in e-purchasing 628
and error 628
prevention of 628–2
procurement 628
Free Trade Zone 471
freight agents 475–7
full cost pricing 412
functional analysis (FA) 281–2
costs 282–5
functional benchmarking 616
functional strategies 41–2
fundamental analysis 572–3
futures 569–73
futures contracts 571–2

Gas Act (1986) 577
gas pricing in energy markets 579
General Accounting Office (GAO, US) 161
GHSP Inc v AB Electronic Ltd 225
global competition and TQM 246
global sourcing 457–86
agents 475–7
capital equipment 480–4
and countertrade 479–82
cultural factors 460–2
customs and excise 472–3
definitions 458
foreign exchange risks 465–6
incoterms® 467–8
information 459–60
legal difficulties 466–7
motive for 458–9
payment methods 477–9
shipping terms 468–72
success factors 482–5
terminology 458, 468–72

global sourcing (*continued*)
transport systems and costs 473–5
true costs of 480
goods, purchasing 588–89
Gopertz curve 55, 598
green procurement 599
growth strategies 37–40
guaranteed maximum-shared savings contracts 451–4

hand-to-mouth buying 569
harvesting strategies 40
Health and Safety in sourcing suppliers 352
hedging 571–2
hire purchase of capital equipment 558
HM Revenue and Customs 472–3
holding costs 299
hollow networks 128
honesty and openness 621–4
horizontal diversification strategies 39
horizontal integration 39
hospitality 623
HOT TOPIC
breach of contract 230–1
contract definitions 232–3
force majeure 235–6
key personnel 236
letters of intent 233–4
limit of liability cap 234–5
liquidated damages 236–7
retention of title 232
hubs 171

In Bond 471
incoterms® 467–8
features 468
format 468
use of 468
incremental innovation 596
independent demand 305, 311–15
independent purchasing function 12
individual approach to negotiation 502
information
on market conditions in sourcing 342
for offshore suppliers 459–60
information technology in purchasing 16
innovation 595–7
input fraud 628
inspection 263–4
institutional approach to negotiations 512–14
insurance 349–50
integrated benchmarking 617–19
integration strategies 37–9
integrative procurement function 12
intellectual property rights 385–6
intelligence gathering 503
intensive strategies 39
intermodalism 475
internal audits 630
internal benchmarking 616
internal network 123
internal scrutiny 49–50
international sourcing 458
international standards 257–62
intra-company trading 387–8
intra-organisational integration 114–16
inventory 291–304
classifications 292
economic order quantities (EOQ) 312–13
economics of 298–9
acquisition costs 298–9
holding costs 299
stockout costs 299
fixed order quantities 311–12, 314
just-in-time 315–22
management 292–3
management tools 294–8
ABC analysis 294–6
barcoding 296–7
radio frequency identification 297–8
software for 298
performance measures 298–9
periodic review 313–14
and procurement 335
'push' and 'pull' 310–11
right quantity 303–4
vendor-managed 332–4
invitation to tender (ITT) 160, 218–19

just-in-time (JIT) 17, 82–3, 133, 291
benefits of 318–19
definitions 315–16
in inventory management 315–22
and JIT II 321–2
and *kanban* systems 317–18
and MRP 322–3
objectives 316–17
and purchasing 320–1
and TQM 247

kaizen 595, 596
kanban and just-in-time systems 317–18
key performance indicators (KPIs) 105, 357
key policy principles (KPPs) 157–9
Kingspan Environmental & Ors v Borealis A/s & Anor 227

labour ethics 624
Late Payments of Commercial Debts (Interest) Act (1998) 621
lead times in inventory management 300
leadership 105
lean organisations 132–5
lean production 133–4, 138–9
learning school of strategy 33
leasing of capital equipment 559–61
legally binding contract 160, 217

legislation
  competition 417–19
    in UK 418–19
  environmental aspects of procurement 634
less-than-carload (LCL) 471
letters of credit (LOC) 478
leverage 18–20
  adversarial 201
leverage items 63
life cycle analysis 55–6, 598, 637
life cycle inventory 637
lifecycle costing 637
liquidation strategies 40
Lloyds Bank Ltd v Bundy 223
local distribution zones (for energy) 578
local suppliers 388
logical persuasion 498
logistics and supply chain 78–111
  distribution management 80–4
  military applications 79
  non-military applications 79–80
  reverse 85–6
  what is 79–80

maintenance, repair and operating (MRO) 168, 292, 332, 446–7
make-or-buy decisions 362–7
  cost factors 363–5
    marginal cost 363–5
    opportunity cost 365
  qualitative factor 366–7
  quantitative factors 366
  types of 362–3
manufacturing execution systems (MES) 91
manufacturing flow management 91
manufacturing resource planning (MRP II) 83, 326–7
  and ERP 327
margin 570
marginal costing 363–5
maritime transport 474
market conditions
  for capital investments 568–1
  in sourcing suppliers 342–4
market development strategy 39
market exchange 203–4
market penetration strategy 39
marketing and sourcing 386–7
marketplace, electronic 172–3
master production schedule 324
materials budgets 304
materials management (MM) 80–1, 291
materials requirements planning (MRP) 83, 322–6
  and DRP 331
  inputs and outputs 324–6
  and JIT 322–3
  terminology 323
misrepresentation 227–8
Misrepresentation Act (1967) 227, 495
most economically advantageous tender (MEAT) 178
moving averages 308
multinational sourcing 458
MW High Tech Projects UK Ltd v Haase Environmental Consulting GmbH 226

negotiation skills, practice and business benefits 487–520
  actual 506–11
    behaviour 509
    concluding stage 511
    deadlocked 508
    ploys 510–11
    stages 506–7
    techniques 506–08
  adversarial 491, 497
  agenda 501
  approaches to 491–2
  aspects of 490–1
  BATNAs 505, 513–14
  business objectives of 498–99
  collaborative 491
  compromise in 497–498
  concessions, trading 498
  content of 492–5
  deadlocked 508
  definitions 488–91
  effective 512
  ethics 514–18
  factors in 495–499
    negotiators 495–6
    representatives 496
    strengths and weaknesses 496–499
  individual approach 502
  institutional approach to 513–14
  intelligence gathering 503
  legal implications 494–5
  logical persuasion 498
  objectives, determining 503–5
  ploys in 510–11
  positional 514
  post-mortems 512
  post-negotiation 511–12
  pre-negotiation 500–5
  principled 515
  process 499–500
  relationship goals of 492, 494
  relationships 512–16
  situational approach to 512–14
  strategy and tactics 505
  substance goals of 492–4
  team approach 502
  time, impact of 499
  venue 502–3
negotiators as representatives 496
net present value (NPV) 566–7
network sourcing 201–2

networks 122–9
basics 122–3
buying 391–2
classification 123–6
configuration 126–32
internal 123
optimisation 129
new buy phase in pricing 401
no set-off clause 223
non-conformance, cost of 275
non-critical items 61
non-value-adding activities 99, 104
novation 570

offer 217–19
offset 387
in countertrade 480
open account payments 477
openness 621–2
operational logistics 79
operational objectives 606–7
operational risk 582
operational sourcing 339
operations management (OM) 91
opportunity costs 365
optimised contractor involvement (OCI) 158
optimised production technology (OPT) 83
options 572
options contracts 572
ORGALIME 454
organic structures 122
organisational buyers 7–8
organisational change in procurement 143–6
cultural change 144
implementation of 145–6
individual change 145
structural change 144
organisational strategy 36
organisational structures 113–21
original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) 99
output fraud 628
outright purchase of capital equipment 558
outsourcing 361–73, 375–6
benefits of 370
drivers of 369
handling 371–3
of manufacturing 362–7
problems of 370–1
procurement 368–9
of services 367–9
types of 369–70
overdesign 204

Packaging (Essential Requirements) (Amendment) Regulations (2013) 634
Pareto analysis 294
Pareto diagram 296
partnering 375–85, 391, 494
partnership sourcing 375–85
drivers 376–8
effectiveness 381–2
failure 383–4
implementation 379–81
relationships 201–2, 378
passive procurement function 12
patents 386
pattern, strategy as 32
payback 564–5
payment
in advance 479
prompt 621
penetration pricing 412
performance evaluation
budgetary control in 609
profit centre approach in 610–1
in sourcing suppliers 356–9
performance prism 618
performance specification 255–6
Perils of the Sea 471
periodic review inventory system 313–4
perspective, strategy as 32
physical distribution management (PDM) 81–2, 291
pipelines 474
plan, strategy as 32
ploys
in negotiations 510–1
strategy as 32
Poka-Yoke 247
political, economic, social, technological, environmental, and legal conditions (PESTEL) 119
pollution and waste 632
portals 172
portfolio planning and analysis 59
position, strategy as 32
positional negotiation 514
post-mortems in negotiation 512
post-tender negotiations 372
postponement 135–6
power 118–9
power school of strategy 33
pre-negotiation 500–5
pre-qualification questionnaire (PQQ) 161, 372
preferred suppliers 201
prescriptive school of strategy 33
prestige pricing 413
Prevention of Corruption Acts (1906, 1916) 630
price
analysis 414
buyer's control of 415, 417
buyer's role in, pre-tender 400–1, 403–4
cost estimating 400–4
parametric cost estimating 404, 406, 409–10
procurement cost reduction 410
supplier's decisions 411
what is? 399

price variation formula (PVF) 408, 420–2
pricing
  in energy markets 579–80
    electricity 579–80
    gas 579
  new buy phase in 401
  re-buy phase in 402
pricing and revenue optimisation (PRO) 103
prime business asset 6
PRINCE2® 436–8
principled negotiation 515
Principles of European Contract Law (PECL) 466
private finance initiative (PFI) 433
proactive variety reduction 262
procedure, definition 159
process control 264
process FMEA 272
process innovation 595–6
process links 132
process map 142
process-orientated programmes 600–1
procurement
  and change 15–16
  consideration
    adequacy 224
    elements 223
  consortia 388–9
  cost reduction 410
  definition 4–5
  department 21
  design and build 435–6
  economies of scale 147–8
  environmental aspects 631–42
    legislation 634
    policies and management 635–39
    suppliers, screening 639–42
  ethics 619–27
  and fraud 627–31
  goods 588–9
  green 599
  and intellectual property rights 385–6
  and inventory 335
  and just-in-time systems 320–1
  management 447–54
  manager 436
  manuals 185–7
  as organisational buying 7–8
  perspectives, problems and opportunities 612
  portfolio management 60–5
  positioning in business 25
  procedures 159–61
  process 161
  and product development 599–2
  professionalism in 22–5
  relationships 194
  research 603–6
  risks 446, 582
  services 587–8
  specialist 216–17, 235, 450
  and standardisation 261
  strategic roles
    due diligence 5
    relationship management 6
    risk management of supply chain 5–6
    supplier performance 6
    supplier's investment 6–7
  as supplier management 8
  supply chains and 106–9
    development 108–9
    rationalisation 108
  teams 390
  traditional 434
  and value analysis 286–7
Procurement Code of Good Practice for Customers and Suppliers 623
procurement function, development of 12
procurement management audit approach 611–15
procurement performance evaluation 606–19
  accounting, profit centre approach 610–11
  management audit approach 611–15
  measurement difficulties 608–9
procurement and supply management (PSM) 18–25
PROCURISK® 440, 549
product development (PD) 91
product factors in buying 393
product innovation 595
  strategy 39
product lifecycle 598
product quality *see* quality
production logistics 80
professional ethics 620
professionalisation 22–3
professionalism in purchasing 22–5
profit centre approach to performance evaluation 610–11
profit goal, 56–7
programme, evaluation and review techniques (PERT) 374
project
  contracts 448
  definition 428–30
  lifecycle 428–32
  procurement risk management 440–7
  scope and nature 429
project initiation document (PID) 432–4
project management 427–55
  issues 438–9
  in procurement area 600
promotion pricing 412
Public Bodies Corrupt Practices Act (1889) 630
Public Contracts Regulations (2015) 256, 344
Public-Private Partnership (PPP) 371–2
public sector buyers 256–7
Public Supply Contract Regulations 161
Publicly Available Specification 11000 (PAS) 194
pull inventory strategy 310–11

purchases, low-value 183–5
purchasing
  authority notification to 160
  cards 68
  evolution of 9–14
  petty cash 184
  as resource management 8
  self-billing 184
  standing orders 184
  stockless 185
  strategy 41–3
push inventory strategy 310–11

qualitative assessments 606
quality 241–89
  assurance 261–2
  costs of 275–6
  definitions 242
  dimensions of 242–3
  failure mode and effects analysis (FEMA) 243
  gurus 247–8
    Crosby 248
    Deming 247
    Feigenbaum 247
    Ishikawa 248
    Juran 247
    Moller 248
    Peters 248
    Shingo 248
    Taguchi 248
  management of (TQM) 244–9
  reliability and 243
  systems 244
quality assessment schedule (QAS) 259
quality assurance 262–3
quality control 262–75
quality function deployment (QFD) 138, 269–72
quality loss function (QLF) 266–8
quantitative assessments 606
quick response manufacturing (QRM) 91

radio frequency identification (RFID) 297–8
Radioactive Substances Act (1993) 597, 634
rail transport 473
rapid business approach 7
ratios 616–17
re-buy phase in pricing 402
  modified 403
reactive variety reduction 262
reciprocity and sourcing 386–7
Reefer 471
registered designs 386
relationship formation hierarchy 197–9
relationship goals of negotiation 492, 494
relationship procurement 194
reliability 243
requests for proposals (RFPs) 251, 591
requests for quotations (RFQs) 160, 251, 413, 591
research organisations 604–6
research sections 605
resource-based theory (RBT) 200–1
resources, scanning of 49
resulted-oriented programmes in supplier development 599–600
retail and distribution supply chains 87
retail energy markets (UK) 578
retrenchment strategies 39–40
return analysis 56
return on capital employed (ROCE) 565
returns management 91–2
reverse auctions 177–82
reverse-bid auctions 176–7
reverse logistics 85–6
risk and compliance management 548
risk(s)
  analysis 57–8
  in buying offshore 465–4
  in energy markets 582
  management 427–55
  rating 442–7
  register 440–2
  to supply chains 94–5
road transport 473
robust design 268–9
rough order of magnitude 404
RTS Flexible Systems Ltd v Molkerei Alois Müller GmbH 225

safety stocks 300–3
sale by description 222
Sale of Goods Act (1979) 221–2, 226, 253
sale of goods contracts 221–2
sampling 264
  specification by 255
satisfactory quality 222
scenario planning 56
sealed-bid auctions 176–7
secrecy 385
segmentation of services 589–90
sell-side exchange 172
sensitive commodities 568
service chains 87
service level agreements (SLAs) 358
service levels in inventory management 300–3
services
  nature of 588
  procurement 587–8
  segmentation of 589–90
Shipping Conference 471
Simplifying International Trade (SITPRO) 477, 479
single sourcing 201
single sourcing relationships 201
situational approach to negotiations 512–14
Six Sigma 265–6, 609
skimming pricing 411–12
small business units 605

small- and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs) 68, 148, 348, 407
sourcing 338–97
buying centres, teams and networks 390–2
decisions 390–2
directives 344–5
e-sourcing 345–6
finance 348–9
and in-house marketing 386–7
information 341
insurance 349–50
intellectual property rights 385–6
intra-company trading 387–8
local suppliers 388
market conditions 342–4
offset 387
operational 339
outsourcing 361–73
partnering 375–85
policies 359–60
process 339–41
purchasing consortia 388–9
reciprocity in 386–7
strategic 339
sub-contracting 373–5
supplier base 360–1
suppliers
approval of 355–6
assessment of 347–55
environmental management of 352
locating 346–7
performance evaluation 356–9
productive capacity of 350–1
quality of 351
visits 354–5
sustainability 389–90
tactical 339
what is? 339
where to buy decisions 392–4
specialisation structures 113–4
specification 249–54
alternative method of specifying 254–6
alternatives to individual specifications 254–6
content of 251–3
definitions 250
existing specifications 254
procurement and 249
and public sector buyers 256–7
purpose of 250
sample by 255
types 250–1
writing 253–4
spot price 572
stability 39–40
stable network 123
standardisation 257–62
application 258
BS EN ISO 9000:2005 258–9
procurement and 261
purpose 257
subject matter 275
statistical process control (SPC) 264, 265
statistical quality control 264–5
Statutes (UK)
Bribery Act (2010) 630—3
Clean Air Act (1993) 597, 634
Communications Act (2003) 418
Competition Act (1998) 417–19, 577
Electricity Act (1989) 577
Enterprise Act (2002) 417–19, 577
Environmental Act (1995) 634
Environmental Protection Act (1990) 597, 631, 634
Flood and Water Management Act (2010)634
Gas Act (1986) 577
Late Payments of Commercial Debts (Interest) Act (1998) 621
Misrepresentation Act (1967) 227, 495
Packaging (Essential Requirements) (Amendment) Regulations (2013) 634
Prevention of Corruption Acts (1906, 1916) 630
Public Bodies Corrupt Practices Act (1889) 630
Public Supply Contract Regulations 161
Radioactive Substances Act (1993) 597, 634
Sale of Goods Act (1979) 221–2, 226, 253
Supply and Sale of Goods Act (1994) (SSGA) 221, 253, 255
Supply of Goods and Services Act (1982) (SGGA) 22–2, 255
Trades Descriptions Act (1968) 221
Utilities Act (2000) 577
Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Amendment) Regulations (2009) 85, 634
Water Act (2014) 634
stock cover 300
stock keeping unit (SKU) 300
stock turn rates in inventory management 300
stockout costs 299
stockouts 300
strategic analysis 43–5
strategic benchmarking 616
strategic business units (SBU) 40
strategic drift 35–6
strategic global sourcing 458
strategic lead time management (STM) 83
strategic make-or-buy 362
strategic management 43–4
strategic partnerships 203–4
strategic, political and commissioning risks 444
strategic pricing 399
strategic procurement 41–2
strategic procurement and supply chain models 71–5
strategic sourcing 339
strategic supplier alliances 202
strategic thinking 30–1
strategy 31–2
characteristics of 32

strategy (*continued*)
development 32–6
formulation 50–4
implementation 65–9
post-implementation review 69, 71
strengths, weaknesses, opportunities and threats (SWOT) 34
strike price 572
structures
control 117
coordination 114–17
determinants of 117–19
networks 122–9
power 118–19
sub-contracting 373–5
substance goals of negotiation 492–4
supplier
benefits of e-SCM 163–4
captive 203–4
development 599–602
factors in buying 393
management 8
manuals 187
pricing decisions 411
pricing strategy 411–13
selection and evaluation 207–8
supplier-assisted inventory management (SAIM) 332
supplier-assisted inventory replenishment (SAIR) 332
supplier associations (SA) 605
supplier management 8
supplier relationship management (SRM) 91, 194, 205–8
model for 206
supplier relationships 193–215
models of 199–205
optimisation of 207–7
termination of 208–11
suppliers
of capital equipment, selecting 561–2
environmental screening of 639–42
ethics 621–3
local 388
misrepresentation 228
preferred 201
representatives, courtesy to 622–3
sourcing, performance management and selection of
approval of 355–6
assessment of 347–55
environmental management of 352
Health and Safety 352
locating 346–7
performance evaluation 356–9
productive capacity of 350–1
quality of 351
visits 354–5
Supply and Sale of Goods Act (SSGA) (1994) 253, 255
supply chain management (SCM) 89–94, 291
enablers 92–4
inventory systems 330
and logistics 95
as management processes 90–2
supply chain management and engagement
key policy principles 158–9
supply chain networks 122–3
supply chain operations reference (SCOR) 73
supply chain process models 71–5
supply chain risks 5–6
supply chains 86–9
characteristics 88
in energy markets 577–78
mapping 139–43
optimisation of 103–6
and procurement 106–9
development 108–9
rationalisation 108
risks to 94–5
types of 87–9
vulnerability of 94–5
Supply of Goods and Services Act (SGGA) (1982) 221–2, 255
supply networks 127
optimisation of 129
supply of services contract 222–3
support tools 155–89
supportive procurement function 12
sustainability
and sourcing 389–90
sustainable development 389
swaps 479–80
switch trading 480
SWOT analysis 34, 53–4
system, defintion 159
systems FMEA 272

tactical make-or-buy 363
tactical sourcing 339
target costing 133
target pricing 413
teams
approach in negotiation 502
cross-functional 149–51
procurement 390
technical analysis 572–3
tender bond *see* bid bond
tendering, collusive 419–20
tenders
bond 219
buyer's action pre-tender 400–4
stage considerations 406
term partnering agreement 230
termination of supplier relationships 208–11
legal considerations 210
process 209
timing 209

test marketing 307
The Crossrail Project 156–9
Thermal Energy Construction Ltd v AE & E Lantjes UK Ltd 226
third-party catalogues 175–6
tiering 130–2
  and linking 131–2
time budgeting 575
time series 307
title, contract term 222
total cycle time reduction 17
total quality management (TQM) 17, 99, 144–5, 244–9
  benefits 248–9
  criticisms of 249
  development of 247–8
  kaizen and 596
  principles 245–6
total systems management 82
trade names 254–5
trade-offs 82
trademarks 386
Trades Descriptions Act (1968) 221
trading arrangements for electricity (NETA) 578
trading arrangements for gas (NGTA) 578
training, ethical 625–7
transaction cost theory (TCT) 199–200
transaction exposure 465
transaction in EDI 165
transactional
  analysis 495
  linkages 126
  procurement 194–5
  response 495
  stimulus 495
transfer price 610
transformation school of strategy 34
Transformers & Rectifiers Ltd v Needs Ltd 220
true costs of buying offshore 480
turnaround strategies 40

UK Integrated Tariff 472
UK Purchasing and Supply Lead Body 52
ultimate customer 87
ultimate supply chains 88
uncertainty in supply chain analysis 104–5
Unfair Contract Terms Act (1977) (UCTA) 221–3
Uniform Commercial Code (UCC) 466
Utilities Act (2000) 577

Valuation Clause 471
value-added networks (VANs) 128, 167, 169
value-added tax (VAT) 472
value analysis 278–81
  and functional analysis 281–2
  and procurement 286–7
value chain analysis 100–2
  cost drivers 100–1
  differentiation 101–2
  steps in 102
value chains 95–100
  mapping 139–43
  mapping tools 142–3
  optimisation of 103–6
value engineering (VE) 133, 277–8
  change proposals 278
value management (VM) 277
value for money (VFM) 608
value risk 582
value stream mapping 142–3
variation of price (VOP) 408
variety reduction 262
vendor-managed inventory (VMI) 332–4
vertical integration strategies 37
virtual networks 128
vision statements 51
volume risk 582
volume timing of purchases 576

War Risks 472
waste 632, 634
Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (Amendment) Regulations (WEEE) (2009) 85, 646
Water Act (2014) 634
Welsh Procurement Consortium 388
Wharfage 472
wholesale energy markets (UK) 578
work breakdown structure (WBS) 405
world class procurement 16–18

Yorkshire Wolds and Coast Primary Care Trust 68